A World Leading Source in Aeronautics for over 80 Years

From the Ground Up®

Based on the original text by
"Sandy" A. F. MacDonald

ELEVATIONS IN FEET

Kilometres 10 0 20 40 60 80 100 Kilometres
Nautical Miles 5 0 10 20 30 40 50 Nautical Miles
Statute Miles 5 0 10 20 30 40 50 60 Statute Miles

SCALE 1:500 000

FOR EXAMINATION PURPOSES ONLY

From the Ground Up®

Based on the original text by
"Sandy" A. F. MacDonald

Published by Aviation Publishers Co. Ltd.

Acknowledgments

The publisher wishes to express grateful appreciation for the assistance and co-operation that has been received towards the development of this edition of this title from the many government and corporate sources from which material and/or recommendations were provided and collected. These include:

Aircraft Owners & Pilots Association
Aspen Avionics Inc.
Aviation Supplies & Academics Inc
Avidyne Corporation
BendixKing
Bombardier Inc.
Canada Aviation & Space Museum
Canadian Owners & Pilots Association
CFS Aeroproducts Limited
Cirrus Aircraft
Continental Aerospace Technologies
CubCrafters Inc.
Department of National Defence
Diamond Aircraft Industries
Dynon Avionics
Environment Canada
Federal Aviation Administration
Garmin Corporation
GE Aerospace
Global Skyship Industries Inc.
Honeywell International Inc.
International Civil Aviation Organization
Natural Resources Canada
Nav Canada
Pilatus Aircraft Ltd.
Pratt & Whitney Canada
Radial Engines Limited
Textron Aviation Inc.
Transport Canada Civil Aviation
Velocity Aircraft
Zenith Aircraft Company

The publisher would like to further thank the following individuals for their respective helpful contributing roles in this edition's development: Chris Hobbs, Caroline Doucet, Dan Engel, Don Wong, Simon Berry, and Simon Garrett. Finally, the publisher would like to extend its appreciation to the many officials of Transport Canada – Civil Aviation, and to those at Nav Canada, as well as to flying instructors, ground school lecturers, flight school owners, readers and students all of whom continue to provide valued and enthusiastic feedback, input and suggestions in support of this title's on-going evolution.

Follow us on Social Media

Find out more and hear what's new about our publications. Follow trending aviation topics, learn about being a better and safer pilot, and connect with your aviation community. Follow us @

From the Ground Up®

30th Edition

ISBN 978-1-990849-02-2

© 2023 Aviation Publishers Co. Ltd. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, re-printed, transmitted or translated in any form without the written permission of the publisher.

No content in this textbook supersedes any regulatory material or operational documentation issued by Transport Canada, Nav Canada or any other regulatory or advisory sources, including aircraft manufacturers or operators. The Canada Air Pilot (CAP), Canada Flight Supplement (CFS), TC Aeronautical Information Manual (TC AIM), NOTAMs, Information Circulars, and amendments to the Canadian Aviation Regulations (CARs) which are issued subsequent to the publishing of this textbook may amend or supplement the information contained herein.

Published by:
Aviation Publishers Co. Ltd.
P.O. Box 1361, Station B
Ottawa, Ontario
Canada, K1P 5R4

Production, illustration & design by:
Daniel Engel

Printed by:
Gilmore Printing Services
110 Herzberg Road
Ottawa, Ontario
Canada, K2K 3B7

Cover design by:
Don Wong

Cover photo provided by:
Diamond Aircraft Industries Inc.
1560 Crumlin Sideroad
London, Ontario
Canada, N5V 1S2

Also from Aviation Publishers Co. Ltd.:

- *From the Ground Up Workbook*
- *Flight Test Notes*
- *Canadian Private Pilot Answer Guide*
- *Canadian Instrument Pilot Answer Guide*
- *Canadian Commercial Pilot Answer Guide*
- *Flying Beyond: The Canadian Commercial Pilot Textbook*
- *Instrument Procedures Manual*
- *Unmanned: Textbook for RPAS Studies*

Contents

Part 1 Aircraft Operations

1 The Aeroplane

1.1 Aircraft Components 3
1.2 Aircraft Control Systems 10
1.3 Airframe Construction Materials 12
1.4 Airframe Loads & Load Factors 14
1.5 Aircraft Logbooks & Inspections 16
1.6 Aircraft Categories & Classes 16

2 Theory of Flight

2.1 Aeronautical Fundamentals 19
2.2 Flight Instruments 39

3 Aero Engines

3.1 Definitions & Configurations 53
3.2 The Fuel System 62
3.3 The Carburetor & Fuel Injection 65
3.4 The Exhaust System 72
3.5 The Ignition System 73
3.6 The FADEC System 75
3.7 The Electrical System 75
3.8 The Propeller 76
3.9 Engine Instruments 79
3.10 Operation of the Engine 83
3.11 Jet Propulsion 90

Part 2 Air Law

4 Aerodromes & Airspace

4.1 Aerodromes 97
4.2 The Canadian Airspace System 107
4.3 The U.S. Airspace System 114

5 Air Rules & Procedures

5.1 Rules of the Air 117
5.2 Air Traffic Rules & Procedures 122

Part 3 Meteorology

6 Aviation Weather

6.1 The Atmosphere 137
6.2 Clouds 138
6.3 Pressure 141
6.4 Winds 144
6.5 Humidity, Temperature & Stability 150
6.6 Air Masses 154
6.7 Fronts 156
6.8 Precipitation & Fog 161
6.9 Thunderstorms 164
6.10 Icing 168
6.11 Turbulence 171
6.12 High Level Weather 173
6.13 Weather Awareness 174
6.14 Weather Information 174

Part 4 Navigation & Communications

7 Air Navigation

7.1 Latitude & Longitude 195
7.2 The Earth's Magnetism 197
7.3 Units of Distance & Speed 203
7.4 Aeronautical Charts 203
7.5 Navigation Problems 214

8 Radio Communication

8.1 Radio Theory & Principals 227
8.2 Radio Communication Equipment 231
8.3 Radio Communication & Air Traffic Services (ATS) 233
8.4 Radio Communication Procedures 239

9 Radio Navigation

9.1 VHF Omnirange Navigation System (VOR) 251
9.2 Radio Beacons 258
9.3 Automatic Direction Finder (ADF) 258
9.4 Distance Measuring Equipment (DME) 263
9.5 Instrument Landing System (ILS) 265
9.6 Area Navigation 266
9.7 Radar & Surveillance Systems 269
9.8 Navigation Systems & Displays 274
9.9 Emergency Locator Transmitter (ELT) 276

Part 5 General Airmanship

10 Airmanship

10.1 Care of the Aeroplane 281
10.2 Weight & Balance 286
10.3 Aeroplane Performance 291
10.4 Wake Turbulence 299
10.5 Flight Preparations 302
10.6 Emergency Procedures 319
10.7 Remote Area Flying: Having "Bush Sense" 324
10.8 STOL Aircraft 329
10.9 Ultralights 330
10.10 Gliders 331

11 Human Factors

11.1 Physical Factors 333
11.2 Psychosocial Factors 343

12 Air Safety

12.1 State of Mind 349
12.2 Checklists for Safety 349
12.3 Ensuring Safe Outcomes 354

Part 6 Appendices

Appendix A

Examination Guide 359

Appendix B

Wx Chart 377

Appendix C

Glossary 379

Appendix D

Index 393

Welcome to the 30th Edition

For over 80 years, *From The Ground Up* has stood as a literary benchmark for the teaching of the multitude of aviation-related concepts inherent in the stimulating topic of aeronautics, and the alluring activity of learning to fly.

Through its evolving editions, several generations of readers have been challenged by the theories that require thorough understanding in advance of the sought-after hours of flying enjoyment that are the ultimate goal of all who seek to earn their wings and expand their knowledge of flight theory and practice.

The content of *From The Ground Up* touches upon a multitude of topics, many of which may, at times, seem quite complex; but the path to understanding the fundamentals of flight is one that reaps much in the way of personal reward for all who maintain the course. Indeed, it was by design that its original author, "Sandy" A.F. MacDonald – a man recognized as a "father" of what still stands today as the standard curriculum for ground school instruction – devised this aeronautical book to be comprehensive and current while conveying its material in such a way as to enhance the reader's understanding of the written word.

Not one to permit his vast experience to allow for foregone conclusions, "Sandy" MacDonald's meticulous care in the creation of *From The Ground Up* has become the hallmark for its widespread use and respect as the reference book of choice in hundreds of flying schools throughout Canada and around the world.

It has been said that there is probably not one airline pilot flying in Canada today who has not, at one time or another, studied from *From the Ground Up*. Indeed, the same may be stated of virtually every student pilot who has ever studied in the nation since 1941 when this title was first introduced. Whatever part of the world it is in which you intend to fly – and whether you intend to fly commercially, recreationally or you simply want to obtain a better understanding of aviation's many facets – it is the publisher's hope that you will gain every advantage in your understanding of the scope and breadth of aviation theory from this latest edition of this title.

Aviation Publishers Co. Limited is dedicated to maintaining the vision and integrity that was intended for *From The Ground Up* from its origin. With this 30th edition, readers will find the most up-to-date information on a wide, and essential cross-section of topics that are fundamental to the safety, and ultimate personal gratification, of one's flying activities.

As *From The Ground Up* soars into its ninth decade of publication, may this 30th edition be your launchpad into a whole new world of insight, experience and flying pleasure, as it has been for hundreds of thousands of new aviators over the course of the eight decades gone by.

Have a safe and enjoyable flight.

Aviation Publishers Co. Limited

From the Ground Up: A Heritage in Training

The British Commonwealth Air Training Plan (BCATP) was a joint military aircrew training program created by the United Kingdom, Canada, Australia and New Zealand, during World War II. It remains the single largest aviation training program in history, and was responsible for training nearly half the pilots and crew who served with the Royal Air Force, the Royal Australian Air Force, the Royal Canadian Air Force, and the Royal New Zealand Air Force during the War.

Canada was chosen as the primary location for the BCATP owing to the vastness of its size and its consequent suitability for training, its established industry for manufacturing of training aircraft, its abundance of supplies, and its security. In all, over 130,000 aircrew are estimated to have trained in Canada under the BCATP, with many of those trainees having come from other countries such as France, Holland, Denmark, Greece, Poland, and the United States.

The Royal Canadian Air Force ran the plan in Canada. At its height, it included well-over 200 training locations, more than 10,000 aircraft, and approximately 100,000 military administrative personnel. At its conclusion, tens-of-thousands of pilots had been trained under the BCATP in Canada between 1940 and 1945.

In his capacity as chief ground school instructor, Alexander Forsyth MacDonald was responsible for the graduation, in ground school subjects, of more than thirty-five percent of the Elementary Flying Instructors engaged in the BCATP. It was during this period that the seeds were planted for *From the Ground Up*. The structure devised for his courses became the material that served as the foundation upon which "Sandy" MacDonald created the original version of this textbook.

In the passing of years since its first publication, *From the Ground Up* has received continual acclaim for its authorship and contribution to the advancement of aviation and of flying. In many ways, the storied history of the BCATP was the precursor that has contributed to the nation of Canada as being recognized continually as one of the most significant countries in the world in which to train as a pilot or aircrew.

For its part in the development of a nation where flight training leads by international example, *From the Ground Up* is a memorial to its original author, and to the thousands of men and women who, through their dedication, participation and sacrifice in the BCATP, contributed to the establishment of a framework that has since set the standard by which those who choose to look skyward, can soundly earn their wings to fly.

Award of Excellence

From the Ground Up

"...an outstanding contribution to the betterment of the transportation industry..."

De Havilland Tiger Moth, Elementary Flying Training School (EFTS), British Commonwealth Air Training Plan (BCATP), Prince Albert, Saskatchewan, circa 1942.
Credit: Canada Aviation and Space Museum

So You Want To Be A Pilot

So you want to learn to fly. You are about to join a very select fraternity of those privileged individuals who have, in the words of the poet J. G. Magee, "slipped the surly bonds of earth and danced the skies on laughter-silvered wing."

Learning to fly is easy. The skill to handle an aeroplane in the air and during landing and take-off is acquired with a few hundred hours of patient application. Learning to be a proficient, professional and safe pilot is not so simple. It is a skill acquired through experience, judgment, persistent practice and ongoing training. It is, in fact, a challenge that never ends.

Professional pilots are, and always will be, highly-sought, well-paid individual specialists because they are master craftsmen in their trade. So, what are the special skills that the professional pilot has?

Weather sense, for one thing: a knowledge of squall lines and thunderstorms and icing conditions, of stable and unstable air masses, of cold fronts, dewpoint and all the odds and ends that go to make up the science of meteorology.

They are expert navigators and understand how to plot headings and bearings. They have in depth knowledge of wind and drift problems. They are thoroughly conversant with such things as azimuth, isogonic lines and great circle tracks. They calculate altitude and airspeed corrections and understand the importance of determining density altitude before departing on a flight in hot weather conditions. They are proficient in the use of all traditional and state-of-the-art navigation aids.

Professional pilots know their aeroplanes and their engines. The lives of their passengers depend on the airworthiness of their equipment as much as on their own skills and knowledge — so they conscientiously superintend the service and maintenance of their aeroplanes. They understand fuel-air ratio and know how to get the last ounce of power and the most miles out of a given volume of fuel. They are familiar with all the invisible forces and couples that act on an aeroplane in flight and they know when the aeroplane has been subjected to any abnormal stresses that may lead to a structural strain.

In other words, professional pilots are individuals with whom one can fly with utmost confidence, based on the assurance that they not only rate officially as Grade A pilots and navigators but also as thorough technicians who are completely versed in every last-minute detail of their profession both on the ground and in the air.

"But," you may point out, "I have no ambition to become an airline captain. I am only interested in learning to fly as a private pilot. Is it necessary that I should learn all this technical stuff as well?"

Of course, it is necessary. Is your own life not every bit as precious to you as are the lives of its passengers to an airline company?

An aeroplane moves in a medium known as the atmosphere. This layer of air surrounding the earth for a depth of thousands of feet is a turbulent region of shifting winds, cross currents, storms, gusts and squalls. Invisible giants, the polar and equatorial air masses forever in conflict, make this atmosphere of ours a perpetual proving ground for the science of air navigation by frequent blanketing of entire areas with dense drop-curtains of cloud, fog, rain or snow.

An aeroplane moves in three-dimensional space which involves three-fold problems in its control. It lacks buoyancy, is heavier than air and, hence, is dependent on the power from its engine to sustain it in flight. A forced landing, while not necessarily a hazardous undertaking, is nevertheless an undesirable course of action. Reliability is therefore a matter of vastly greater importance in the air than on land or sea. And reliability refers not only to the mechanical perfection of the aeroplane and its engine(s) but also to the knowledge, judgment, and all-round proficiency that rides in the cockpit.

Time was when an older generation learned to fly by the seat of its pants. But time marches on and aviation has since swept ahead with giant strides. Many a private owner today will casually climb aboard his/her aeroplane to start off on a flight that to the pioneers of aviation would have seemed an epic undertaking. The pilot of today is equipped with information and knowledge that many decades of trial and error, of toil and effort and human sacrifice have placed at our disposal.

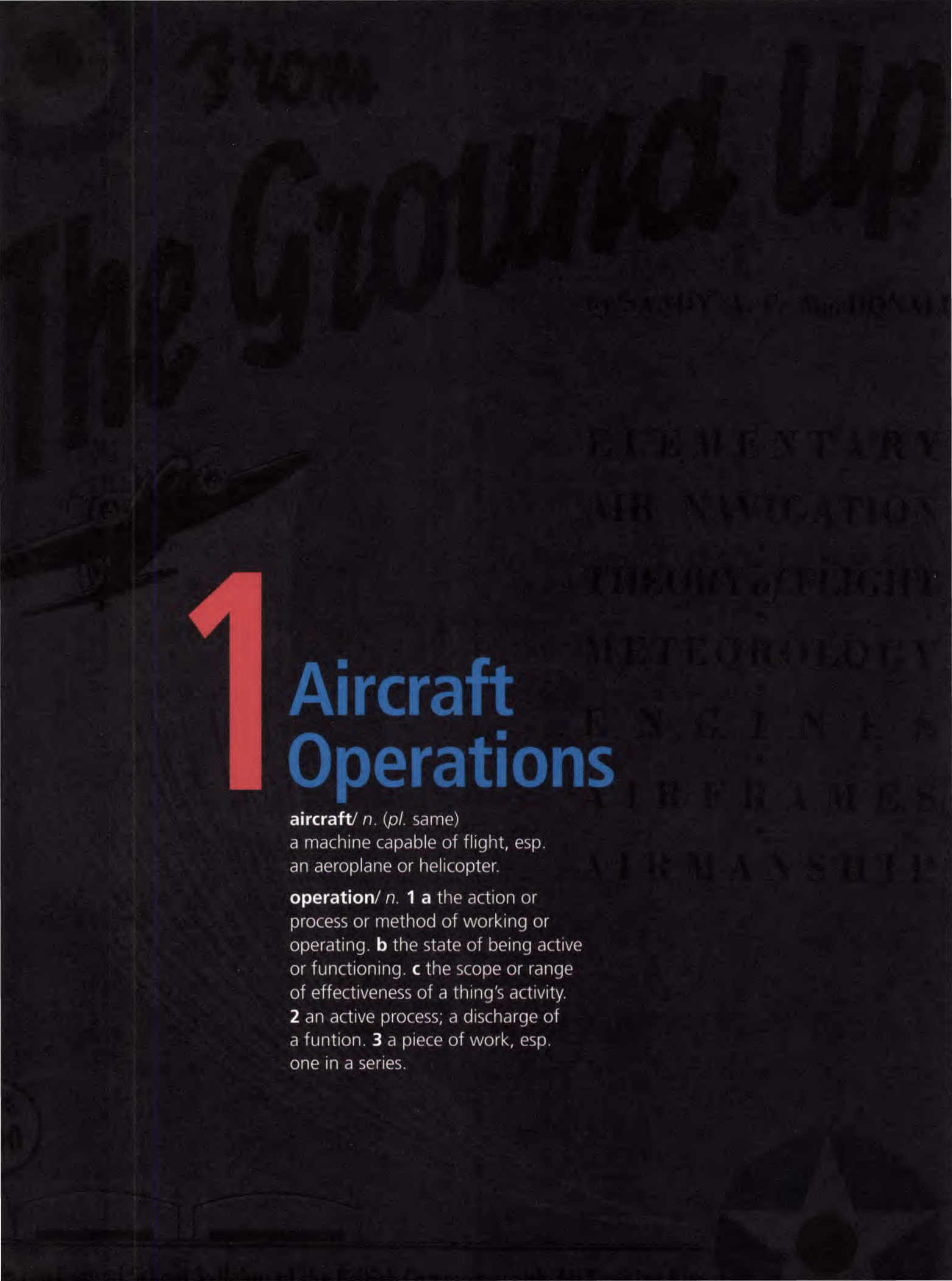
The pioneers in aviation had to get their experience the hard way and bore the scars of many a near thing. Today the ground school has become an international institution where those who want to fly the scientifically sure way, may learn the things they should know the only sound and thorough way — FROM THE GROUND UP.

—Alexander Forsyth MacDonald
Founding Author, *From the Ground Up*

Dedicated to the life and memory
of
William "Bill" Peppler

Senior Contributor & Publisher
From the Ground Up
1967 - 2012

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com



1 Aircraft Operations

aircraft/ *n.* (*pl.* same)
a machine capable of flight, esp. an aeroplane or helicopter.

operation/ *n.* **1 a** the action or process or method of working or operating. **b** the state of being active or functioning. **c** the scope or range of effectiveness of a thing's activity. **2** an active process; a discharge of a funtion. **3** a piece of work, esp. one in a series.

Overview of Part 1

1 The Aeroplane

1.1 Aircraft Components ... 3
1.1.1 The Aeroplane ... 3
1.1.2 Parts of an Aeroplane ... 3
1.2 Aircraft Control Systems ... 10
1.2.1 The Control Systems ... 10
1.2.2 Cabin Pressurization Control ... 12
1.3 Airframe Construction Materials ... 12
1.3.1 Common Materials ... 12
1.3.2 Airframe Corrosion ... 13
1.3.3 Airframe Stresses ... 14
1.4 Airframe Loads & Load Factors ... 14
1.4.1 Loads ... 14
1.4.2 Load Factors ... 15
1.5 Aircraft Logbooks & Inspections ... 16
1.5.1 Aircraft Technical Logbooks ... 16
1.5.2 Aircraft Inspection Requirements ... 16
1.6 Aircraft Categories & Classes ... 16
1.6.1 Normal Category ... 16
1.6.2 Utility Category ... 17
1.6.3 Aerobatic Category ... 17
1.6.4 Commuter Category ... 17
1.6.5 Transport Category ... 17
1.6.6 Additional Categories ... 18

2 Theory of Flight

2.1 Aeronautical Fundamentals ... 19
2.1.1 Forces Acting on an Aeroplane in Flight ... 19
2.1.2 Design of the Wing ... 24
2.1.3 The Axes of an Aeroplane ... 28
2.1.4 Stability ... 29
2.1.5 Flight Performance Factors ... 31
2.1.6 Airspeed Limitations ... 38
2.1.7 Mach Number ... 38
2.2 Flight Instruments ... 39
2.2.1 Pitot Static Instruments ... 39
2.2.2 Gyro Instruments ... 44
2.2.3 EFIS Instruments ... 49
2.2.4 The Radar Altimeter ... 51
2.2.5 Angle of Attack Indicator ... 51
2.2.6 Mach Indicator ... 52

3 Aero Engines

3.1 Definitions & Configurations ... 53
3.1.1 Definition of Power ... 53
3.1.2 Types of Combustion Engines ... 54
3.1.3 Parts of a Reciprocating Engine ... 54
3.1.4 The Four-Stroke Cycle ... 55
3.1.5 The Two-Stroke Cycle ... 56
3.1.6 The Diesel Engine ... 56
3.1.7 Turbocharging ... 57
3.1.8 Supercharging ... 58
3.1.9 Engine Timing ... 58
3.1.10 Engine Cooling ... 59
3.1.11 Engine Oils & Lubrication ... 60
3.2 The Fuel System ... 62
3.2.1 Types of Fuel Systems ... 62
3.2.2 Fuel Tanks ... 62
3.2.3 Fuel Selector Valve ... 63
3.2.4 Fuel Lines & Filters ... 63
3.2.5 Fuel Quantity Gauge ... 63
3.2.6 Fuel Primer ... 63
3.2.7 Fuel Types ... 63
3.2.8 Fuel Related Problems ... 64
3.3 The Carburetor & Fuel Injection ... 65
3.3.1 How the Carburetor Works ... 65
3.3.2 Mixture Control ... 66
3.3.3 When to Lean the Engine ... 68
3.3.4 Why Lean the Engine ... 68
3.3.5 Carburetor Icing ... 69
3.3.6 Fuel Injection ... 72
3.4 The Exhaust System ... 72
3.5 The Ignition System ... 73
3.5.1 The Polarity of a Magnet ... 73
3.5.2 The Magneto ... 73
3.5.3 Dual Ignition ... 74
3.5.4 Shielding ... 74
3.5.5 Ignition Timing ... 75
3.6 The FADEC System ... 75
3.7 The Electrical System ... 75
3.8 The Propeller ... 76
3.8.1 Pitch ... 77
3.8.2 Types of Propellers ... 77
3.8.3 Feathering ... 79
3.8.4 Prop Reversing ... 79
3.8.5 Care of the Propeller ... 79
3.9 Engine Instruments ... 79
3.9.1 The Oil Pressure Gauge ... 79
3.9.2 The Oil Temperature Gauge ... 80
3.9.3 The Cylinder Head Temperature Gauge ... 80
3.9.4 The Carburetor Air Temperature Gauge ... 80
3.9.5 The Outside Air Temperature Gauge ... 80
3.9.6 The Tachometer ... 81
3.9.7 The Manifold Pressure Gauge ... 81
3.9.8 Engine Monitoring Systems (EMS) ... 83
3.10 Operation of the Engine ... 83
3.10.1 Engine Operation Considerations ... 83
3.10.2 Engine Maintenance & Care ... 84
3.10.3 Shock Cooling & Thermal Stress ... 85
3.10.4 Fuel Management Considerations ... 85
3.10.5 Starting the Engine ... 86
3.10.6 Procedure for Backfire During Starting ... 86
3.10.7 Running up the Engine ... 87
3.10.8 Engine Operation in Cold Weather ... 88
3.11 Jet Propulsion ... 90
3.11.1 The Ram Jet ... 90
3.11.2 The Turbojet Engine ... 91
3.11.3 Turboshaft & Turboprop Engines ... 92
3.11.4 The By-Pass Engine ... 92
3.11.5 The Turbofan Engine ... 92
3.11.6 Thrust Reverser ... 93

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

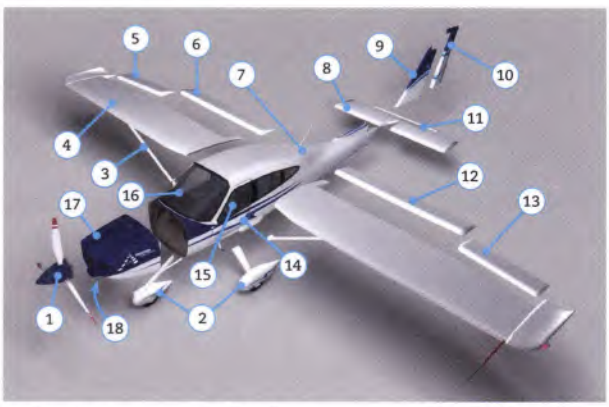
1 The Aeroplane

The reader may never experience the predicament of being down in the Arctic, 500 miles from the nearest outpost of civilization, with a damaged wing bracing strut or landing gear. Canada's north country pilots, always noted for their outstanding resourcefulness, have been known, in many such emergencies, to successfully come home on hand whittled propellers, improvised struts and other ingenious make-shift repairs. The average pilot or aircraft owner will probably never have occasion, in the course of a career, to rebuild or repair their own aeroplane, although there is these days a large fraternity of aviation enthusiasts who build their own aeroplanes. Whether one of these "home builders" flying amateur-built aeroplanes or simply a pilot who flies a production line model, a fundamental knowledge of the components of the aeroplane, their functions, structure, and particularly their limitations of strength and resistance to deterioration, is a very essential part of every pilot's qualifications.

1.1 Aircraft Components

1.1.1 The Aeroplane

The Canadian Aviation Regulations define an aeroplane as "a power-driven heavier-than-air aircraft deriving its lift in flight from aerodynamic reactions on surfaces that remain fixed under given conditions of flight". The terms "aeroplane" and "aeroplane" are for the most part interchangeable. The Canadian Air Regulations use the term "aeroplane" but common usage seems to favour "aeroplane". The latter is the form of choice of this manual.



1	Propeller	7	Fuselage	13	Left Wing Aileron
2	Landing Gear	8	Horizontal Stabilizer	14	Door
3	Wing Strut	9	Fin	15	Seat
4	Wing	10	Rudder	16	Windshield
5	Right Wing Aileron	11	Elevator	17	Engine Cowl
6	Right Wing Flap	12	Left Wing Flap	18	Landing Light

Fig.1.1 **Parts of the Aeroplane**

There are numerous ways to classify a fixed wing aeroplane: by the position of its wings in relation to the fuselage, by the number of engines and by its undercarriage configuration. Aeroplanes may be of the high wing or low wing type. An aeroplane may be classed as single-engine if it has only one engine, or multi-engine if it has two or more engines. An aeroplane is also classified according to the type of landing gear with which it is fitted for this determines the terrain from which it can operate: e.g. land, sea, ski. Landplanes can be further classified as having either conventional or retractable landing gear.

1.1.2 Parts of an Aeroplane

The essential components of an aeroplane are:

1. The fuselage or body.
2. The wings or lifting surfaces.
3. The tail section (empennage), or canard.
4. The propulsion system, i.e. engine(s) with or without propeller(s).
5. Undercarriage or landing gear.

The airframe is the term used to describe the complete structure of an aeroplane, including the fuel tanks and lines, but without instruments and engine installed. It therefore includes the fuselage, wings, tail assembly (or canard), and landing gear.

The Fuselage

The fuselage is the central body of the aeroplane, designed to accommodate the crew, passengers and cargo. It is the structural body to which the wings, tail assembly, landing gear and engine are attached.

The fuselage is usually classed according to its type of construction.

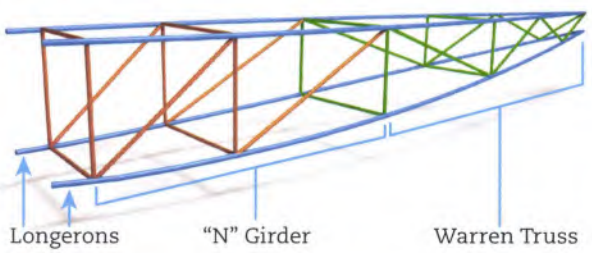


Fig.1.2 **Truss Type**

TRUSS TYPE

In the early days, the fuselage was a frame made up of wooden members, wire braced. These materials are now obsolete, having been replaced by metal. The modern truss type fuselage is made up of steel tubes, usually welded or bolted together to form the frame. The longerons (three, four or more long tubes running lengthways) are the principle members and are braced, or held together, to form the frame by vertical or diagonal members, the whole assembly being in the form of a truss. Fig.1.2 illustrates two types of steel tube truss type fuselage construction: N-Girder, and Warren Truss. The covering may be fabric, metal or composite.

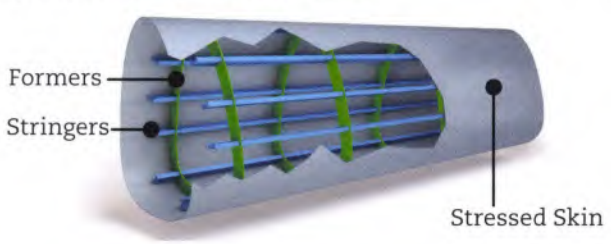
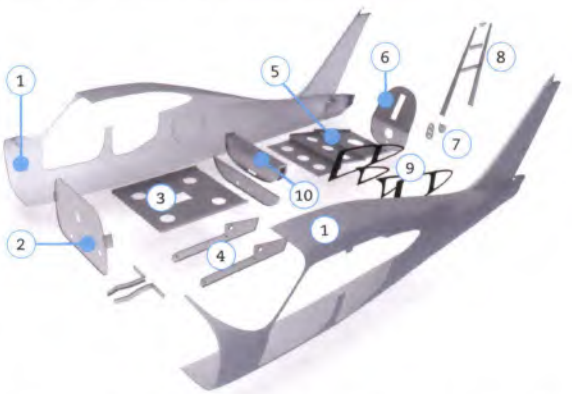


Fig.1.3 **Semi-Monocoque**

MONOCOQUE

This type of construction consists of a series of round or oval formers or bulkheads held together by stringers (long strips running lengthwise). The formers, or bulkheads, carry the loads, the stringers being merely superstructure. The early types of monocoque construction were of plywood, plywood covered. Present construction of this type is of metal, metal covered. Aluminum structures are the most common method of construction used in today's general aviation aircraft. Since the covering of the monocoque fuselage must be made stiff, the skin is capable of carrying some of the load. This is known as a stressed skin structure. A perfect stressed skin structure would be one in which the skin, in addition to providing the covering and forming the shape, would be capable of carrying all the load, without any internal bracing. When no stiffening members are used and the skin or shell is designed to resist all of the loads, the construction is called monocoque (from the French word meaning "shell only"). When stiffeners are provided to form the structure and resist part of the loads, the construction is known as semi-monocoque.



1	Fuselage half	6	AFT cabin bulkhead
2	Firewall	7	AFT fuselage bulkheads
3	Front floor	8	Vertical ribs & spars
4	Under floor ribs / longerons	9	Window rings
5	AFT (rearward) floor	10	Spar Tunnel

Fig. 1.4 **Monocoque**

Many of today's newest aircraft designs make use of composites in their construction. A composite fuselage allows manufacturers to make fewer, but usually more complicated, parts to assemble a fuselage. Composites allow easier fabrication of highly accurate and smooth complex shapes that can significantly improve aero-dynamic efficiency. This enhanced efficiency allows aeroplanes of the same size and type to go faster than less efficiently designed airframes of similar horsepower output. These fewer parts are then bonded together using special design adhesives creating a robust and nearly true monocoque structure. Fig.1.4 shows how a typical composite aircraft would look prior to bonding of the separate molded composite pieces that form the entire fuselage.

The Wing

Most aeroplanes in use in general aviation today are monoplanes; that is, they have one pair of wings. Biplanes, those with two pairs of wings, are also to be found although they are usually restored antiques, agricultural spray aeroplanes, amateur-built or aerobatic aeroplanes. Wings come in a variety of shapes: rectangular, tapered from wing root to wing tip, elliptical, delta. They may be attached in different positions on the fuselage: at the top of the fuselage, known as high wing; at the bottom of the fuselage, low wing; or in the middle, mid wing. High wing aeroplanes may be externally braced with wing struts or may be fully cantilevered.

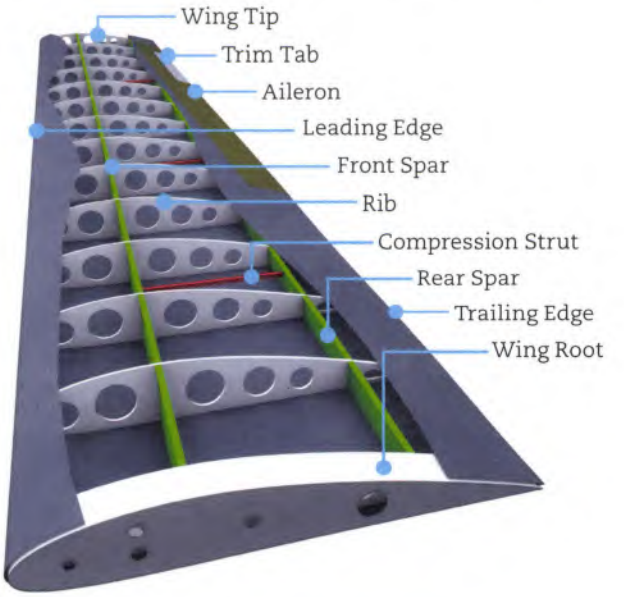


Fig. 1.5 **Two-Spar, Fabric-Covered**

Five general systems of wing construction are now in use on modern aeroplanes. These are:

1. Metal frame, metal covered (main strength in the covering, or skin, i.e. stressed skin).
2. Metal frame, metal covered (main strength in the frame).
3. Metal frame, fabric covered.
4. Composite.
5. Wooden frame, fabric covered or plywood covered (found mostly in classic and antique aeroplanes).

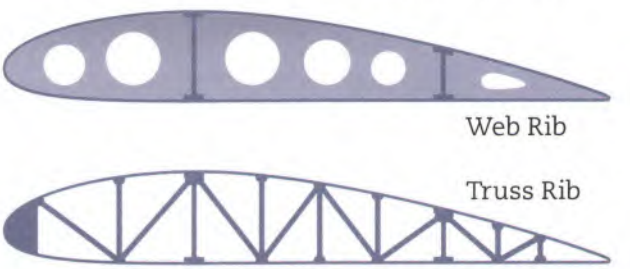


Fig. 1.6 **Ribs**

The main members in a wing are the spars. These are beams, running the length of the wing from wing root to wing tip, which carry most of the load. The spars are intended to stiffen the wing against torsion or twisting. Some wings are constructed with two or more spars (multispar) and some with only one main spar (monospar). The latter type of single spar construction is found in certain models of modern aeroplanes which use a laminar flow airfoil wing design. The ***ribs*** run from the leading to the trailing edge. They are cambered to form an airfoil section and their purpose is to give the wing its shape and to provide a framework to which the covering is fastened. To strengthen the leading edge, nose ribs are sometimes installed between the front spar and leading edge. These are generally known as false ribs.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Compression struts are spaced at regular intervals between the front and rear spars. They are usually steel tubes and are intended to take compression loads.

Further internal bracing is secured by drag and anti-drag wires. These are wires running diagonally from the front to the rear spars, the drag wires taking drag loads and the anti-drag wires anti-drag loads, as their names imply.

External bracing is secured in monoplanes by wing bracing struts which extend out from the fuselage to about the mid-section of the wing. In biplanes, struts are placed between the wings, well out towards the tips. These are braced by incidence wires which run diagonally between the struts, and by flying and landing wires which run diagonally between the struts and the fuselage. The flying wires transmit part of the load to the fuselage in flight and the landing wires support the weight of the wing on the ground.

Some wings are constructed with no external bracing at all. These are known as cantilever wings. Since there is no external support to such a wing, the spars must be made sufficiently strong to carry the load into the fuselage internally with no outside assistance.

The load on a wing comes first on the skin. It is then transmitted to the ribs and from these to the spars and thence carried into the fuselage. This is referred to as internal transmission of loads.

In an externally braced wing, part of the load is taken by the bracing struts or the flying or landing wires, and thence transmitted to the fuselage. This is referred to as external transmission of Loads.

Ailerons are surfaces, usually of airfoil section, hinged to the trailing edge of the wing, generally located from the mid-point of the wing outwards towards each wing tip. They are for the purpose of lateral control and banking of the aircraft. Their internal construction is much like that of the wing itself. They are usually hinged to the rear spar.

Flaps, when fitted, form a part of the wing structure. Like the ailerons, they are usually hinged to the rear spar. They are generally located from the mid-point of the wing inwards towards the wing root. A full description of flaps and their function appears in the Chapter **Theory of Flight**.

The wing tip bow is generally a metal tube, curved to give the wing tip its particular required shape.

The wing root is the section of the wing nearest the fuselage. On low wing aeroplanes, it is reinforced to permit the passengers and crew to walk on it for cockpit access.

Wing root fittings are fittings which attach the wing, or the separate wing panels, to the fuselage.

A winglet is a small, nearly vertical wing-like surface, usually of airfoil section, attached to the wing tip. The winglet is incorporated into the design of some aeroplanes. Winglets have become particularly common on commuter and transport category aircraft. They are usually located pointing rearward above the wing tip. They are primarily effective in reducing induced drag with a secondary effect of improving fuel efficiency. (See Chapter **Theory of Flight**.)

The chord is the straight-line length measurement between the leading edge of the wing and the trailing edge of the wing. The mean aerodynamic chord (MAC) is the average chord length measurement of the wing.

The span is the maximum length measurement from wing tip to wing tip of an airfoil, wing or stabilizer.

The Tail Section (Empennage)

The empennage – taken from the French word "empenner" which refers to the feathering of an arrow – is the tail section of the aeroplane. It consists of a fixed vertical stabilizer or fin, the rudder, the stabilizer or tailplane, the elevators and all trimming and control devices therefrom associated. Instead of a fixed stabilizer and movable elevators, some aeroplanes have a one-piece pivoting, horizontal stabilizer that is known as a stabilator.

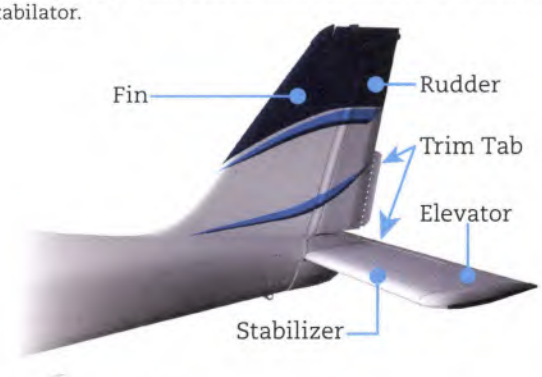


Fig.1.7 **The Tail Section**

The stabilizer or tailplane is an airfoil placed at the rear-end of the fuselage to balance the aeroplane. They provide longitudinal stability.

Elevators are surfaces hinged on the trailing edge of the stabilizer. They provide longitudinal control.

The fin is a fixed vertical surface placed ahead of the stern post to provide directional stability. It is usually slightly offset from the centre of the fuselage to compensate for the corkscrew motion of the slipstream caused by the revolving propeller.

The rudder is a movable surface hinged to the fin. It provides directional control.

A trim tab is an adjustable tab either fixed or hinged to a control surface such as a rudder, elevators and ailerons. A trim tab reduces the effort required of the pilot to exert excessive pressure on the cockpit flight controls during the various phases of flight.

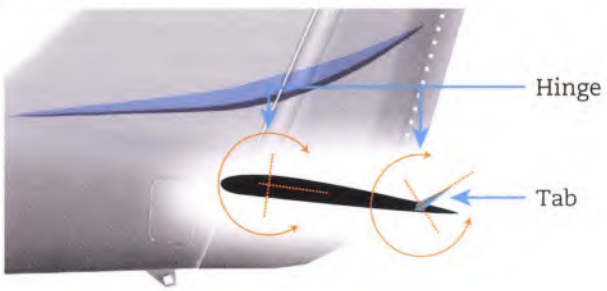


Fig.1.8 **Stabilator**

A stabilator is a single airfoil section that replaces the combination of stabilizer and elevator. It is attached to the fuselage at a point around which it pivots.

The airfoils comprising the tail unit assembly are similar to, but of lighter construction, than those of the main structure. The tail unit is positioned so that it is in the airflow but not blanketed, particularly during aloft maneurvers, by the aircraft's wings or other parts of the structure.

The Canard

A few aeroplanes of modern design have replaced the familiar tail section with a canard that incorporates a horizontal stabilizer assembly at the front of the aeroplane. A canard configuration, as shown in Fig.1.9, provides stability control functions while being positioned ahead of the primary lifting surfaces (the wings) as opposed to the more common tail section placement behind the primary lifting surfaces.

An important difference between a canard's purpose and a horizontal stabilizer on the tail is as follows: canards generate an upward lifting force while horizontal stabilizers at the tail of an aircraft generate a downward force. Thus, when the elevator is in the upward position on a canard, the nose of the aircraft drops; when the elevator is in the downward position on a canard, the nose of the aircraft goes up. This is the opposite to a horizontal stabilizer on an aircraft's tail where the elevator in the upward position raises the aircraft's nose, and the elevator in the downward position drops the aircraft's nose.

The canard arrangement is reminiscent of the original Wright brother's aeroplanes. Though a seldom used configuration, canards are most commonly found on military fighter aircraft or on home-built aircraft.

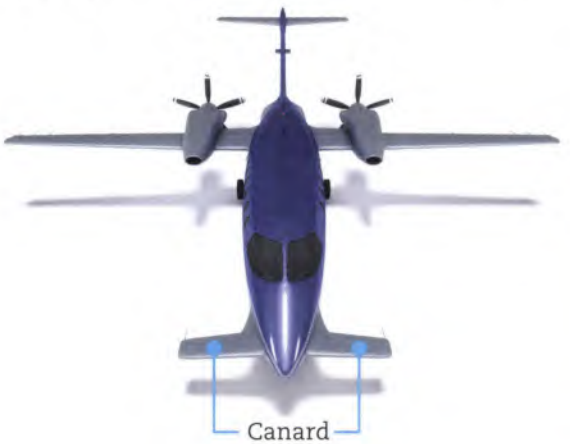


Fig.1.9 **Canard**

The Propulsion System

The propulsion system of the modern general aviation aeroplane is generally a gasoline powered, air cooled, internal combustion engine that drives a 2 or 3 bladed propeller. Many of today's business aeroplanes are jet powered as are most of the large transport aeroplanes. The gas turbine, or jet, engine can also be used to drive a propeller and, in this configuration, is known as a turboprop engine.

Powerplants and propellers are discussed in detail in the Chapter **Aero Engines**.

THE COWLING

The cowling encloses the engine and streamlines the front of the aeroplane to reduce drag. The cowling provides cooling of the engine by ducting cooling air around the engine. On high performance aeroplanes, adjustable openings called cowl flaps are incorporated into the cowling to control the amount of cooling air circulating around the engine.

ENGINE MOUNTINGS

The engine is supported by a structure, usually of steel tubing welded together, called the engine mount, which is made flexible to absorb vibration from the engine and prevent it being transmitted to the fuselage. This is usually accomplished by **engine mount bushings** which are made springy in the direction of the engine rotation but rigid otherwise, in order to hold the engine steady fore and aft.

FIREWALL

Between the main structure and the engine is the firewall. This is made of a heavy sheet of stainless steel or often a sandwich of asbestos between two sheets of dural. Openings for fuel and control lines are made small, with bushings to ensure a snug fit. The fuel tank must be behind the firewall, whereas the oil tank may be ahead of it — oil being less flammable than gasoline.

TANK INSTALLATIONS

Fuel tanks may be carried in the wings or in the fuselage. See **The Fuel System** in Chapter **Aero Engines**.

The Landing Gear (Undercarriage)

The function of the landing gear is to take the shock of landing and also to support the weight of the aeroplane and enable it to maneuver on the ground. The earliest type of main landing gear was a through axle, similar to the wheel and axle arrangement on a cart or wagon. This is now completely obsolete, having been replaced with more sophisticated, shock absorbing landing gear systems.

The landing gear on modern aeroplanes is either of the fixed gear type or retractable.

FIXED GEAR

On land aeroplanes, there are two basic classes of fixed gear undercarriage: main gear with a nosewheel, commonly called a tricycle gear, and main gear with a tailwheel. There are several types of undercarriage in use for the main gear. These are used with both the tailwheel and the tricycle gear configuration. They are split axle, tripod, single spring leaf cantilever and single strut.

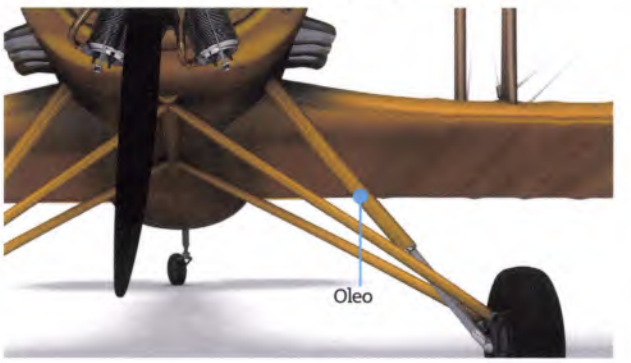


Fig.1.10 **Tripod Landing Gear**

Fig.1.11 **Split Axle**

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

The split axle type has the axle split in the centre to enable it to clear obstructions on the ground. This type is used on aeroplanes such as the Piper J3 Cub. An example (Fig.1.11) shows a split axle type landing gear using elastic shock bungee cords wound around a fuselage member which enables the whole assembly to spread when loads come on it. A strut or tie rod is usually incorporated to brace the structure against side loads.

The tripod landing gear is illustrated in Fig.1.10 and is typical of the Aeronca and Champion series of aeroplanes. This gear consists of three members hinged so as to form a triangle. Two of these are rigid. The third is an oleo leg, designed to telescope and hence shorten its length when the load comes on the wheel. On landing, the whole assembly spreads outwards and upwards until springs, rubber discs, or other devices take the weight.

The single leaf cantilever spring steel type of main landing gear is used extensively on Cessna aeroplanes and on versions of the Diamond Katana trainer. The gear consists of a single strap of chrome vanadium steel bent to form the shape of the complete undercarriage structure. It is attached to the fuselage in a cradle bulkhead by bolts. It is capable of storing energy in initial impact, thereby producing quite low load factors. Low maintenance, simplicity and long service life characterize this gear type (Fig.1.12).

Fig.1.12 **Single Leaf Cantilever Spring Steel Gear**

Fig.1.13 **Single Strut Gear**

On the Cessna Cardinal, a spring steel tubular gear replaces the more familiar single leaf gear described here. The spring steel tubular gear has the same characteristics as the single leaf type.

The single strut type is used on several low wing, fixed gear aeroplanes such as the Piper Archer III and the Socata Tobago. This gear consists of a single leg or strut extending downward from its attachment point on the main spar. The strut usually incorporates a hydraulic cylinder or rubber biscuits for the purpose of absorbing the shock (Fig.1.13).

RETRACTABLE GEAR

Retractable gears are made to retract or fold up into the wing or fuselage in flight. The mechanical means and methods for accomplishing this are many and varied. The wheel may fold sideways outwards towards the wing or inwards towards the fuselage. The latter is most common on high speed military aeroplanes when the wing camber is shallow. On some multi-engine aeroplanes the wheel folds straight back or forward into the nacelle and is left partly projecting in order to protect the belly of the ship in the case of a wheels-up landing. Some retractable undercarriages are made to turn through 90 degrees as they travel up and so fold into the side of the fuselage.

Most retractable undercarriage legs are cantilever, being a single oleo leg with no external bracing. They are hinged at the top to permit them to fold. The means of retraction may be a hand gear, electric motor, or motor-driven hydraulic pump. Where mechanical means are used, a hand gear is also provided to allow for lowering the gear in an emergency.

Making the undercarriage retractable is a common practice with both the tricycle and tailwheel configuration. In the case of tricycle gear, the nosewheel is also made retractable. In the case of a tailwheel, however, because it is small and causes little drag, it is fixed.

NOSEWHEEL VS TAILWHEEL

The practice of placing a steerable third wheel forward of the main gear has found universal acceptance in modern aeroplane design and is referred to as being a tricycle gear configuration. The landing gear configuration in which the third wheel is rearward of the main gear (i.e., at the stern of the aeroplane) is referred to as a tailwheel configuration (old timers fondly call such aeroplanes, "tail-draggers").

The prevalence of tricycle gear configurations, as used by most of today's manufacturers, is the result of certain advantages that this type of landing gear has over tailwheel configurations.

These advantages are: (1) nose-over tendencies are reduced greatly; (2) ground looping tendencies are reduced; (3) visibility over the nose when taxiing, taking off or landing is superior due to the level flight position of the aeroplane while on the ground; (4) greater maneuverability on the ground under high wind conditions due to the negative angle of attack of the wings; (5) greater controllability on the ground in crosswind conditions. Therefore, tricycle geared aeroplanes can use single runway airports (which are becoming more numerous) with greater safety in crosswind conditions than can tailwheel aeroplanes; (6) a novice can usually learn to maneuver a tricycle geared aeroplane on the ground in less time than he/she can master a tailwheel aeroplane.

Tailwheel aeroplanes have advantages too.

These are: (1) the tailwheel has less parasite drag than a nosewheel due to its smaller size; (2) the tailwheel is cheaper and easier to build and maintain; (3) a broken tailwheel will not result in as much damage to an aeroplane as would a broken nose gear; (4) a tailwheel aeroplane can be more easily man handled on the ground and, because the tail is lower than that of a tricycle-geared aeroplane, it fits into some hangar space more easily; (5) when using rough sod, sand or gravel

airports, the tailwheel aeroplane will sustain less propeller damage since the tips of the propeller are farther away from the ground and are less likely to pick up loose objects, such as stones and debris; (6) with constant use in rough fields, the tailwheel aeroplane is not as likely to sustain airframe damage since it is the main undercarriage which takes the bulk of the load and the shock when the aeroplane rides over depressions and irregularities on the ground. The main undercarriage (which hits the bumps first) is attached to a primary structure and is therefore stronger and more rigid than a nose gear (which in the tricycle gear configuration is the first to hit the bump) which is usually fastened to a weaker or non-primary part of the airframe. A tailwheel will easily absorb bumps that may be severe enough to damage a nose gear; (7) tailwheel aeroplanes are more suitable for change-over to ski operations in winter.

On most modern aeroplanes, regardless of whether they have a fixed or retractable undercarriage, the nosewheel and the tailwheel are steerable by the pilot's controls.

SHOCK ABSORBERS

The purpose of the shock absorber is to prevent landing shock damage to the fuselage or body of the aeroplane. Pilots may accidentally impose heavy stresses due to faulty landings that impose high force loads on the aircraft. If these stresses were not properly absorbed by the landing gear, they could easily cause failure in the aeroplane structure.

Shock absorption is generally achieved via one of four different methods:

1. Low Pressure Tires. On some types of light aeroplanes, low pressure tires are the sole means provided for absorbing shocks. The principal difficulty with tires (and some of the other shock absorbing devices) is that they do not dissipate the shock but store it and kick the aeroplane back into the air after a rough landing. The more force that the tire absorbs as it compresses into the surface, the more energy it needs to release resulting in the aircraft rebounding back into the air.

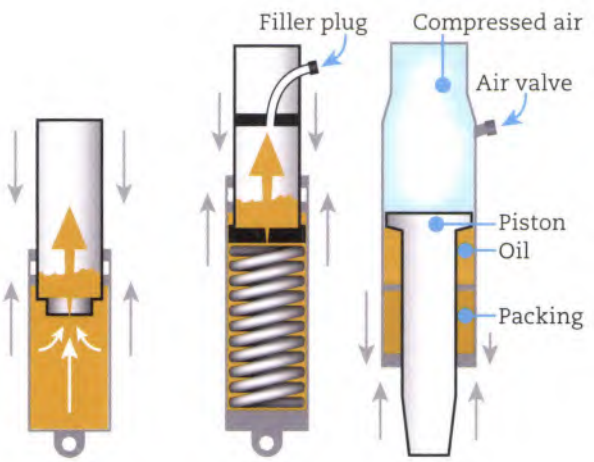


Fig.1.14 **Simple Oleo (Left), Oleo-Aerol (Middle), Oleo-Pneumatic (Right)**

2. Oleo. When the aeroplane on landing first contacts the ground, the momentum must be absorbed in the undercarriage. To absorb this energy on springs or rubber alone would result, as stated above, in the aircraft being bounced into the air again. On practically all modern aeroplanes, the energy produced on landing is dissipated by forcing oil (an incompressible fluid) from one side of a piston to the other through a small orifice. The restricted flow of the oil's displacement effectively delays the rebounding effect of the springs or tires. The bulk of the energy is absorbed in forcing the oil through the restricted orifice thereby cushioning the shock of the landing.

   The simple oleo (Fig.1.14) consists of an inner cylinder which is attached to the fuselage, and an outer cylinder fastened to the wheel. On landing, these will engage in a telescoping action. The oil will be displaced from the lower cylinder to the upper cylinder but is delayed in doing so by the restricted size of the orifice. Since the oil, once displaced, will not return to the lower cylinder until the aeroplane again leaves the ground, the oleo leg serves only to absorb the shock of landing. Further shocks experienced while taxiing or taking off are handled by devices such as the spring shown in Fig.1.14 (Oleo-Aerol), or by compressed air, as shown in Fig.1.14. (Oleo-Pneumatic).

3. Rubber. Two types of rubber shock absorbers are in use, usually in conjunction with the oleo, to cushion further shocks after landing. These take the form of rubber discs or doughnuts and shock cords, the latter of which are elastic cords wound around two moving undercarriage members.

4. Spring Steel. The spring steel type of landing gear, as described earlier in this chapter, is in itself a shock absorber capable of storing energy. It consists of cantilevered struts that flex to absorb the impact of the initial landing. The forces are then transferred into the fuselage, which dissipates the landing forces and stresses even more. Such configurations benefit from low maintenance, lower drag and long service life.

BRAKES

The advantage of the use of brakes on aeroplanes is two-fold:

1. They provide quick deceleration, or pull-up, after landing. For high speed aeroplanes that land with faster initial, or "hotter", speeds, such quick deceleration is important, especially when landing on short runways.

2. Differential, or individually-operated brakes, ensure better control after landing, to prevent ground loops, etc. They also provide better maneuverability on the ground. On some models of aeroplanes, steering while taxiing is accomplished only by the use of the brakes. They are needed to perform short radius turns.

Due to the much higher landing speeds of modern aeroplanes, brakes have to be powerful, reliable and capable of dissipating heat very rapidly.

Nearly all aeroplanes use disc brakes operated by hydraulic pressure, sandwiching a rotating disc between two brake linings called pucks.

These pucks are located in a fixed cast unit, grooved to permit the disc to float freely. Attachment of the disc is attained by splitting the periphery into the wheel hub. This floating action

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

allows the disc to move laterally during braking and permits the use of one moving puck. The fixed puck is called the anvil; the moving one is called the piston puck.

Fig. 1.15 **Hydraulic Brake**

Pressure applied against the brakes that usually are part of the rudder pedal assembly is translated into hydraulic fluid pressure. The hydraulic piston responds to the increased pressure by pushing against the piston puck which in turn pushes the rotating disc against the anvil puck, allowing equal braking force (friction) on both sides of the disc. Special flexible sealing rings keep the puck-to-disc clearance automatically adjusted by returning the hydraulic piston to a neutral position after each braking action.

Disc brakes are so reliable that, normally, visual inspection is required only at 50 hour intervals. One precaution in their use is recommended. The parking brake should be left off and wheel chocks installed if the aeroplane is to be left unattended. Changes in the ambient temperature can cause the brakes to release or to exert excessive pressure.

A further problem can occur in aeroplanes that are flown infrequently (e.g. less than 100 to 200 hours per year). Since the discs are made of steel, they are subject to corrosion and rust, especially if exposed to unusual amounts of moisture, salt or industrial pollution. In an aeroplane that is used daily, the corrosion and rust are rubbed off by repeated use.

The prime element of the braking system is the hydraulic fluid. It transmits pressure and energy, lubricates the moving parts of the system and aids in cooling the working parts. It is important to check carefully the aircraft maintenance manual to find out exactly what kind of brake fluid to use. Mixing different fluids negates the effectiveness of the hydraulic system. Some brake fluids can break down the rubber rings of incompatible systems. Brake fluid must be kept scrupulously free of contamination by dirt which can render the system effectively inoperative.

In some aeroplanes, the brakes are operated by pneumatic (air) pressure. A pressure bag is incorporated on the inside of the brake assembly. Air pressure admitted to this pressure bag causes it to expand, forcing the brake shoes to move radially outward against the surface of the brake drum.

Airframe Antennas

For their on-board avionics equipment to communicate, aircraft have to be equipped with antennas for that equipment to operate properly. Antennas come in many shapes and sizes that are defined by their function. They typically take the shape of rods, domes, and fins or blades. They are positioned on aircraft in many different ways: affixed to the top surface of wings on high-wing aircraft configurations, to an aircraft's underside (or belly), to an aircraft's vertical stabilizer, to the top of an aircraft's fuselage and/or cockpit, to a wing tip or to the tip of its tail. The frequencies at which antennas operate and their directional qualities determine their shapes and their respective placements on a given aircraft's surface.

Regardless of any antenna's purpose, they must always be kept in good physical condition to ensure their on-going proper performance. Antennas should be regularly cleaned to ensure that no build-up of oil, moisture (including wintertime snow or ice) or dirt will impede their performance. Antennas should be checked for cracks or delamination of composite layers. The bases of antennas should be checked for their structural integrity as well as to ensure that no vibrating is taking place that could fatigue or crack the skin of the aircraft to which the antenna is attached. Antennas must be grounded to the airframe. They should always be left in their manufacture-original coating and should never be painted.

COMMUNICATION ANTENNAS

Each communication transmitter in an aircraft will have its own dedicated antenna. They are usually mounted on either the top or the bottom of the aircraft. They are usually long and narrowly tapered with a backward-leaning slant. Their positions are determined so as to ensure that their range and coverage are not negatively impacted by issues of shadowing whereby a component of the aircraft itself, such as its vertical stabilizer or landing gear, can interfere with the transmitting path of communications.

An antenna on the top surface of an aircraft will typically work best for communications while the aircraft is still on the ground, thus having its signal path pointing upward towards a ground station. An antenna on the bottom surface of an aircraft will typically work best for communications while the aircraft is airborne, thus having its signal path pointing downward towards available ground stations.

UHF ANTENNAS

UHF antennas are used for transponders and distance measuring equipment (DME). (See Chapter **Radio Navigation** for information about transponders and DME.) They are usually no longer than four inches in length. Blade type antennas (also called broadband antennas) are used for DME, while spike type antennas are used for transponders. They are always found on the lower surface of an aircraft. Both antenna types are prone to residue build-up, particularly oil on the underside of the aircraft, that can reduce transmission range. Therefore, regular checks on antenna cleanliness is recommended.

NAVIGATION ANTENNAS

VHF navigation antennas are almost always mounted on the vertical tail of the aircraft. There are three types: the cat whisker, the dual blade, and the towel bar.

The cat whisker consists of two rods that typically are affixed to the top leading-edge of the aircraft's vertical stabilizer, pointing horizontally rearward at 45 degrees. They are generally poor at receiving signals from the side.

Dual blades appear as two blades, each one of which is fixed on its respective side of the tail. The towel bar looks like the bathroom fixture after which it is named. Like the dual blades, it consists of two bars affixed one each on each side of the tail. Blade and towel antennas can easily receive signals from all directions.

GPS ANTENNAS

Given that GPS frequency transmissions are very high, their line-of-sight signals require that GPS antennas be mounted

at the very top of an aircraft's fuselage. Note too that GPS satellites transmit at low power requiring that GPS antennas have a built-in amplifier to boost the signal for the receiver. On general aviation aircraft, they can often be rectangular or tear-dropped in shape, appearing like a dome on the top of the fuselage. Alternatively, they can look like typical communication antennas.

Communication radios can cause interference with GPS signals. Therefore, it is important that the antennas for communication and for GPS be mounted as far apart from each other as possible.

MARKER BEACON ANTENNAS

The VHF radio beacons that transmit instrument approach signals are ground-based and highly directional, thereby requiring that signal-receiving aircraft be almost overhead of them to properly receive their signals. They, thus, require that the aircraft's marker beacon antenna be on the bottom of the aircraft.

A common type of marker beacon antenna is long and narrow, and resembles a small fin. Another type of marker beacon antenna is a rod protruding straight down from the underside of the fuselage. At its mid-point, the rod is bent at 90 degrees where it then points towards the tail.

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER ANTENNAS

The emergency locator transmitter (ELT) antenna is almost always located on the upper surface of the fuselage. It is typically long and vertical, and is made of a flexible material to reduce the risk of breakage in the case of an accident. Other types of ELT antennas may be located inside an aircraft's tail or may resemble smaller versions of communication antennas on the top surface of the aircraft.

Fig.1.16 **Example of Typical Aircraft Antenna Layout**

The Airframe Parachute

An increasing number of general aviation aircraft are equipped with, or can be optionally fitted with, a ballistic parachute to enhance safety and survival significantly in case of total loss of aircraft control. These devices, known as ballistic recovery systems or airframe parachute systems can lower an entire aircraft to the ground under a parachute canopy should the pilot lose all control of his/her aircraft. Their use may typically result from emergency situations such as a midair collision, a stall/spin scenario, a catastrophic airframe failure, or an engine failure over terrain upon which a controlled landing is impossible.

The pulling of a handle inside the aircraft's cockpit controls the parachute's deployment. An activation cable from the handle leads to an igniter that fires a solid-fuel rocket motor which spontaneously deploys, within 0.1 seconds, the parachute from its housing inside the aircraft. The rocket will accelerate at such a velocity as to result in full parachute deployment within seconds of the system's activation.

The parachute may be housed in a softpack, or in a composite or aluminum box or canister. Direction of firing is typically rearward. Upon activation, the parachute's suspension lines go to full extension only after the aircraft has reached a safe deployment speed that is controlled by a ring-shaped slider on the lines. Once the parachute fully inflates, the aircraft begins to decelerate under the parachute until touching down safely on the ground.

Under the open parachute canopy, the aircraft will typically descend at a rate between 15 and 28 feet per second. Minimum deployment altitudes and maximum aircraft speed for deployment vary according to aircraft type and the emergency scenario for which the system is being activated.

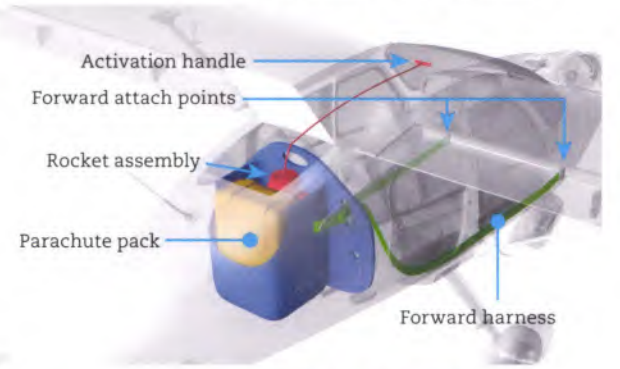


Fig.1.17 **Airframe Parachute System**

1.2 Aircraft Control Systems

1.2.1 The Control Systems

Aircraft control systems are divided into two groups: primary flight controls and secondary flight controls. The primary flight controls consist of the ailerons, the elevator and the rudder. The secondary flight controls consist of the flaps, the spoilers, any wing leading edge devices, and the pitch-trim system. All of these systems have their respective effect on the maneuverability and controllability of an aircraft by virtue of their impact on the airflow moving across their respective surfaces.

Ailerons

The ailerons are control surfaces attached to the trailing edge of the wing near the wing tip and are employed to bank the aeroplane. They move in opposite directions to each other and are controlled by movement of the control wheel or stick.

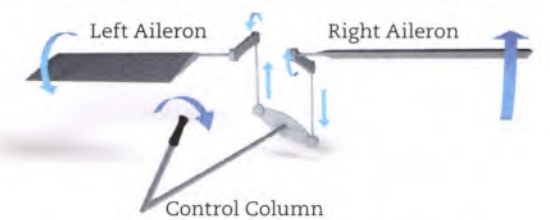


Fig.1.18 **Torque Tube Aileron Control**

Four types of control systems are used to operate the ailerons. These are: (1) cables and pulleys; (2) push and pull rods; (3) torque tubes (Fig.1.18) or (4) fly-by-wire. When stick control is

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

used, any of these systems may be employed. With wheel control, cables and pulleys are generally used, although in some cases, push and pull rods may be utilized. In larger transport aeroplanes, the control systems are usually operated by a system of cables and pulleys aided by hydraulic systems. The new generation of transport aeroplanes have incorporated computerized control systems which allow operation of the aircraft controls (ailerons and also elevators and rudder) with electronic signalling. The controls are activated by electronic signals sent through wires from computers in the cockpit. This is known as fly-by-wire.

When the control wheel is rotated to the right (or the control stick moved to the right), the left aileron moves down and the right aileron moves up. The lifting capability of the left wing is therefore increased at the same time as the lifting capability of the right wing is decreased. The left wing lifts and the right wing descends and the aeroplane rolls to the right. The aeroplane will continue to roll to the right, steepening the angle of bank, until the controls are neutralized establishing a particular angle of bank.

When the control wheel is rotated to the left, the left aileron moves up and the right one moves down and the aeroplane rolls to the left.

Elevators & Stabilators

A movable horizontal tail surface controls the movement of the aeroplane longitudinally and controls the angle of attack of the wings. The movable horizontal tail surface may be either elevators or stabilators.

The elevators or stabilators are operated by: (1) a system of cables and pulleys; (2) a rocking beam and cable; (3) a push and pull rod system or (4) fly-by-wire. These systems are connected to the pilot's control column.

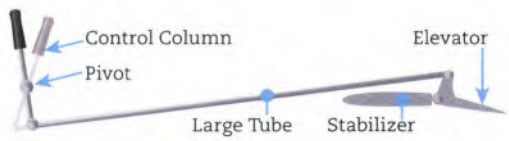


Fig.1.19 **Push & Pull Rod Elevator Control**

The elevators are hinged to the trailing edge of the horizontal stabilizer and are controlled by forward or aft movements of the control wheel. They move together. When the control wheel is pushed forward, the elevators move down, increasing the lifting capability of the tail. The tail rises and the nose of the aeroplane moves down. When the control wheel is pulled back, the elevators move up, the lift on the tail is decreased, the tail moves down and the nose of the aeroplane rises.

The stabilator is a one piece, horizontal tail surface that pivots up and down. It operates on the same principle as the elevators, moving up or down, changing its angle of attack and hence its lifting capabilities as the pilot pulls back or pushes forward on the control wheel.

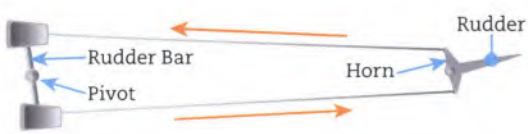


Fig.1.20 **Cable Rudder Control**

Rudder

The rudder moves the aeroplane either left or right in a motion known as yaw. The rudder is attached to the trailing edge of the vertical stabilizer, or fin, and is connected to the rudder pedals by a cable system.

Pressure applied to the left rudder pedal displaces the rudder to the left into the airstream, increasing the pressure on the left side of the tail and forcing the tail to move to the right. The nose of the aeroplane moves to the left. Pressure applied to the right rudder pedal moves the nose of the aeroplane to the right. The rudder is used with the ailerons to achieve co-ordinated turns.

Trim Systems

Several types of trim devices are incorporated into the control system to help the pilot by eliminating the need to exert excessive pressure on the cockpit flight controls during the various phases of flight.

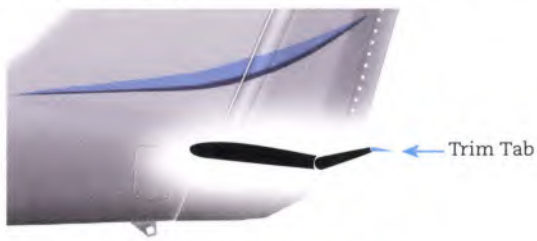


Fig.1.21 **Elevator Trim Tab**

TRIM TABS

Trim tabs are adjustable devices located at the trailing edge of control surfaces such as elevators, rudders or ailerons. Their function is to permit the pilot to fly the aeroplane in a desired attitude, under various load and airspeed conditions, without the need to apply constant pressure in any particular direction on the flight controls.

A trim tab is, in effect, a control surface hinged to another control surface. It is designed to move above or below the chord line of the control surface to which it is attached and thereby create an aerodynamic force that assists the pilot in holding the control in the desired position. The trim tab, for example, is deflected down-ward in order to hold the control surface up. (See Fig.1.21, in which a nose-up attitude is achieved by use of trim tabs.)

The trim tab is operated from the cockpit by its own control which is located so as to be within easy reach of the pilot. A tab position indicator is incorporated in the control mechanism to show the nose-up or nose-down position of the tab setting. The mechanism that operates the trim tab is usually a system of wires and pulleys.

The trim tab is not the only device for affecting trim. Some trimming devices incorporate an adjustable spring tension as a means to exert pressure on the control surface to maintain the trimmed position. These are known as bungees.

Some form of inflight adjustable trim control is incorporated into the pitching plane of even the smallest aeroplane. Trim controls are also used on aileron controls, especially on multi-engine aeroplanes, and on rudder controls.

On aeroplanes in which inflight adjustable trim is incorporated only on the elevator controls, ground adjustable trim tabs are often attached to ailerons or rudder. These have the effect

of helping to correct any slight tendency of the aeroplane to roll or yaw as the result of less than perfect rigging.

Anti-servo tabs serve as trimming devices on stabilators.

Servo tabs are a device found most often on larger aeroplanes. They are connected directly to the control column. As in the case of the elevator, if the pilot moves the control column back, the servo tab is deflected downward. Air pressure on the tab deflects the elevator control upward to achieve a nose-up attitude. The control column controls the servo tab, the elevator is free floating and moves in accordance with the tab deflection.

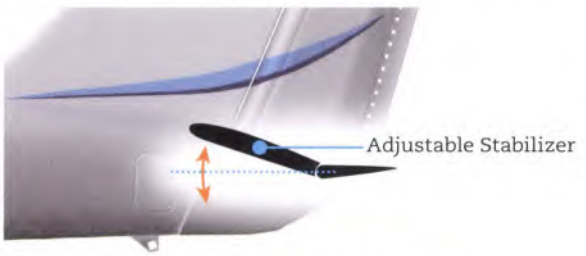


Fig.1.22 **Adjustable Stabilizer**

ADJUSTABLE STABILIZER

On some aeroplanes, longitudinal trim is achieved by adjusting the angle at which the stabilizer is attached to the fuselage. The leading edge of the stabilizer is moved up or down by means of a screw jack device that is controlled by a wheel or crank in the cabin. To effect a nose-down attitude of the aeroplane, the leading edge of the stabilizer is rotated up, giving the stabilizer a higher angle of attack. The stabilizer, like trim tabs, can be set in any position between full up and full down. The adjustable stabilizer has the advantage of producing less drag than the conventional trim tab.

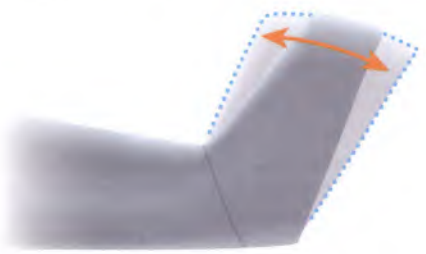


Fig.1.23 **Moveable Tail**

MOVEABLE TAIL

On some aeroplanes, the entire empennage is hinged to pivot either forward or aft. A nose-down attitude is achieved by rotating the tail aft. A nose-up attitude results from rotating the tail forward.

1.2.2 Cabin Pressurization Control

High altitude flight places the crew and passengers in a hostile environment, exposing them to the trauma of decreased oxygen in the air and decreased atmospheric pressure forces on the body. Cabin pressurization was devised as a method to maintain cabin pressure at a level lower than that of the actual flight altitude. This is done by increasing the air pressure in the cabin to provide sufficient oxygen to allow crew and passengers to breathe normally.

To have cabin pressurization, the cabin structure must be strong enough to withstand the normal twisting and flexing forces of flight. Doors, windows and control cable openings must be sealed. There must be a source of compressed air for pressurization and ventilation capable of large quantities of air flow. Regulation of temperature, pressure and rate of pressure change and a means of controlling the rate of outflow of air from the cabin all have to be addressed in designing a pressurized aeroplane.

Most general aviation aeroplanes with reciprocating engines utilize some air from their turbochargers (see **Turbochargers** in Chapter **Aero Engines**) to achieve pressurization. The compressed air to serve the needs of the cabin passes through a Venturi, called a flow control unit, that limits the flow from the turbocharger compressor so as not to starve the engine nor increase the volume of air flowing to the cabin beyond what is required. Each aircraft has a design limited maximum allowable pressure differential (PSID) between cabin and outside pressure. The greater the PSID, the higher the aircraft can fly while maintaining an acceptable cabin altitude. The PSID is the limiting factor in determining the aircraft's service ceiling.

1.3 Airframe Construction Materials

The main factors for consideration when selecting the materials to manufacture an aircraft are strength, weight and reliability. The selected materials must be able to withstand and absorb tension, compression, shear, bending and torsional stresses on the aircraft's wings, fuselage and landing gear. Aircraft materials must be light and strong.

Early aircraft were constructed of wood. Thereafter followed aircraft made of metallic materials such as aluminum, magnesium, titanium and steel alloys. Nonmetallic materials are commonly used throughout aviation today, including composite materials such as reinforced plastics and carbon fiber materials.

Below are descriptions of the various types of materials commonly used in aircraft manufacturing.

1.3.1 Common Materials

Metal Materials

STEEL

Low carbon steels are tough, ductile and readily weldable but are incapable of being surface hardened except by case hardening.

Mild steels can be hardened, are strong but less ductile, and less weldable. They are used for fuselage and control surfaces.

High carbon steels exhibit increased strength and hardness but at the sacrifice of ductility and weldability.

Alloy steels, such as chrome moly, are very strong and resistant to impact and vibration. They are used in the fabrication of fuselages and for stressed skin structures, particularly in seaplane construction. Alloy steels containing nickel (called stainless steel) are very corrosion resistant.

DURAL & ALCLAD

Dural is an aluminum wrought alloy containing copper and magnesium. It has a very high tensile strength and fatigue endurance. It is susceptible to corrosion but can be treated

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

by anodizing. It is used for ribs, tanks, bulkheads, propeller blades, fittings, etc.

Alclad is a sandwich of dural between two layers of pure aluminum. (The aluminum layers constitute about 5.5% of the whole). The aluminum protects the dural and prevents corrosion. It is, thus, very corrosion resistant and is used in seaplane construction. It requires no anodizing.

MAGNESIUM & TITANIUM

Magnesium is a very light structural material. It combines tensile strength with its light weight. (It is one-third lighter than aluminum.) It is used extensively in aircraft engine construction. It is very corrodible in sea water and should always be anodized.

Titanium is a lightweight, strong, corrosion-resistent metal. It is especially useful as a construction material where aluminum alloys are too weak and stainless steel is too heavy.

HONEYCOMB SANDWICH

A metal honeycomb pattern between sheets of metal (Fig.1.24) is what is referred to as a honeycomb construction. For cabin floor, door surfaces, etc., it offers the advantage of high strength/weight ratio, a smooth surface that does not buckle under load, and excellent bearing and bending properties in all directions. In supersonic aeroplanes, its ability to dissipate high temperatures makes it particularly suitable for wing skin structures.

Fig.1.24 **Honeycomb Sandwich Construction**

Composite Materials

Composite refers to several different materials joined together to make one. Typically, in aviation it means sandwich construction comprised of two high-strength face sheets of fiberglass, kevlar or carbon fibers embedded in a hardened epoxy or polyester resin, with a thin lightweight core material such as end-grain balsawood, honeycomb or rigid foam in the middle. The face sheets are bonded to the core using the epoxy or liquid resin to form a structure stiff enough for use as an aircraft structure.

Carbon fiber composites, which are relied upon for use in the construction of small as well as very large aircraft, have high stiffness, high tensile strength, and a very high strength-to-weight ratio. Reinforced plastic is used in the construction of aircraft, often specifically for aircraft components such as wing tips, antennas and flight controls. It is also commonly used in the fuselage construction of some homebuilt designs.

Fig.1.25 **Example of Carbon Fiber Weave**

Legacy Materials

Wood, which may be considered a composite material in its natural form, is still used in aeroplane construction for structural members. In modern aircraft, it is mostly found in the construction of some lightweight homebuilt designs; otherwise, it is commonly found in vintage aircraft. Plywood is used as a covering, giving a very smooth finish. Some aeroplanes are all wood; others are partly wood.

Aeroplanes with fuselage structures made of wood or steel tubing may be covered with cotton, linen or synthetic fabric. The fabric is drawn taut either via the use of aircraft dope (cotton or linen) or by shrinking with a hot iron (synthetics such as dacron). Fabric is also used as the covering of wings whose spars and ribs are either all wood or all metal, or a combination of both.

1.3.2 Airframe Corrosion

Corrosion must be treated as the enemy of all metal parts of an aeroplane. The attack may take place over an entire metal surface or it may be penetrating in nature, forming deep pits. There are a number of different types of corrosion.

1. Oxidation. This is produced by atmospheric conditions due to the moisture in the air. The effect is worse in the vicinity of salt water. The action consists of the dissolving of the surface by oxidation. Such oxidation is easy to detect. It may be removed and the surface treated with some preventative so further damage will not occur.
2. Intercrystalline. This type is more serious. It is caused by chemical or electrolytic action between the alloys in the metal itself. It may not become visible until considerable damage has been done. Surface protection aids very little in the prevention of this type of corrosion. The affected parts must be removed and replaced.
3. Dissimilar Metals. When metals of different chemical properties are in contact in the presence of moisture, the metal most easily oxidized will be subject to corrosion.
4. Stress Corrosion. When a metal part is overstressed over a long period of time under corrosive conditions, stress corrosion may result. Parts that are susceptible to stress corrosion are overtightened nuts in plumbing fittings, parts joined by taper pins that are overtorqued, fittings

with pressed in bearings. Stress corrosion is not easy to detect until cracks begin to appear.

5. Corrosion Fatigue is a type of stress corrosion that occurs where cyclic stresses are applied to a part or assembly. These stresses produce pores or cracks in the surface coating which allow moisture to penetrate.
6. Fretting Corrosion occurs when there is a slight movement between close fitting metal parts. The movement destroys any protective film on the metal surface and also produces fine particles of metal and oxide that tend to absorb and retain moisture.

Fig.1.26 **Example of Aircraft Corrosion**

A number of surface treatments have been developed to reduce or eliminate corrosion. Aluminum alloys are usually anodized, a process that provides a protective film. Steel parts are protected by cadmium plating, chrome plating or by phosphate processes that protect the surface from oxidation.

1.3.3 Airframe Stresses

A stress is the force, or combination of forces, exerting a strain. The pressure of your hand on the surface of a small empty box is an example of a stress.

A strain is the distortion in form or bulk of a body due to stress. If the small box is crushed, it is said to be strained. A wire stretched is another example of strain.

There are five distinct types of stress:

1. Compression or "crushing", as in the case of the small box. Aeroplane wings are subjected to compression stresses.
2. Tension or "stretching", as in the case of the wire. Bracing wires in aeroplanes are usually in tension.
3. Torsion or "twisting". A screwdriver is subjected to severe torsional stress when forcing a screw into hardwood. Landing gear must be made to withstand torsional stresses.
4. Shearing or "cutting". The blades of scissors exert a shear stress on a piece of paper, which is "sheared" as a result.
5. Bending, as the name implies, means the bending of a long member due to a load or weight being imposed on it. Aircraft spars, or beams, must resist severe bending stresses.

An aeroplane structure in flight is subjected to many stresses due to the varying loads that may be imposed. The designer's problem is to try to anticipate the possible stresses that the structure will have to endure and to build it sufficiently strong to withstand these. This problem is complicated by the fact that an aeroplane structure must be **light** as well as **strong**.

Strength and lightness are essential in the structure of an aeroplane. Another factor almost as essential as strength is rigidity. Excessive deflection or bending under a load may lead to a loss of control with serious consequences.

Lack of rigidity may also lead to flutter. This is a rolling or weaving motion which arises when a deflection of a part of the structure causes the air forces on it to change in synchronism with its natural period of vibration. Flutter is most likely to occur in wings and control surfaces and may lead to structural failure. To prevent flutter, the wing and tail structures must be made stiff against both bending and twisting.

The narrow margin of safety permitted by weight limitations in aeroplanes makes it necessary that every member must bear its proper share of the load in every condition of flight. To attain uniform and adequate structural safety, it is essential to calculate what load each part may be called upon to carry. Such a determination of loads is called a stress analysis. This is a complicated mathematical process and is distinctly a job for only the trained engineer.

1.4 Airframe Loads & Load Factors

1.4.1 Loads

Aeroplane strength is measured by the total load the wings are capable of carrying. The load imposed on the wings depends on the type of flight. The wings must support not only the weight of the aeroplane but also additional loads imposed during maneuvers.

The wing loading of an aeroplane is the gross weight of the aeroplane divided by the area of the lifting surfaces and is expressed in lb. per sq. ft., i.e. the number of lb. that each sq. ft. of lifting surface must support. (The definition of wing loading may be slightly modified for particular applications, for example, with reference to ultralight aeroplanes. See **Ultralights** in Chapter **Airmanship**.)

The span loading of an aeroplane is the gross weight divided by the span and is expressed in lb. per foot.

The power loading is the gross weight of the aeroplane divided by the horsepower of the engine(s) and is expressed in lb. per hp.

The weight of an aeroplane standing on the ground (or its weight due to gravity alone) is commonly referred to as a dead load. In flight, however, the weight of an aeroplane may be increased many times by acceleration (rate of change of speed) and/or by a change of direction. The additional loading imposed is called a live load.

The load factor is the ratio of the actual load acting on the wings to the gross weight of the aeroplane. In other words, it is the ratio of the live load to the dead load. When an aeroplane is in level flight, the lift of the wings is exactly equal to the weight of the aeroplane. The load factor is then said to be 1. In most maneuvers, such as a change in attitude, a banked turn, a pull out or any maneuver causing acceleration, centrifugal force enters the picture and brings about a change in the load factor. In a level turn at a bank angle of 30 degrees,

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

for example, the load on the wings is increased to 1.15. In a 60 degree bank, the load factor goes up to 2. In a hard landing, the total load acting upward on the wheels may be as much as three times the weight of the aeroplane. The landing load factor in this case would be 3.

A load factor of 3 is often expressed as 3G. In this case, the letter G refers to gravity. Hence, 3G means a load on the wings equal to three times the weight of the aeroplane due to gravity alone.

There are, of course, maximum limits to which an aircraft is designed. These are usually referred to as limit load factors. The fact that it is sometimes possible to exceed these limits is evidence of the safety factor that is incorporated in all aircraft designs. Nevertheless, the limit load factor should not be exceeded intentionally because of the possibility of causing permanent set or distortion of the structure.

The flight maneuvers which impose high load factors are: steep turns, pull-outs, flick rolls, tail slides, and inverted loops. These should be executed with due consideration on the pilot's part of the stresses which the particular aeroplane he/she is flying is designed to withstand.

Aeroplanes which fly at several times their stalling speed are subject to excessive G loads in some circumstances. In an aeroplane that is flying at twice its stall speed, if the angle of attack is abruptly increased to obtain maximum lift, a load factor of 4 will be produced; at three times the stall speed, 9G would result; at four times the stall speed, 16G would result.

Weight also can result in high load factors. If an aeroplane is heavily loaded, the allowable load factors will be reduced accordingly and the pilot is likely to damage the structure in maneuvers that would normally be quite safe. Therefore, when doing aerobatics, always be sure that the aeroplane is lightly loaded.

1.4.2 Load Factors

In flying a heavily loaded aeroplane, a pilot should not trust his/her senses in determining the actual load on the wings. Because the heavy aeroplane is steady even in rough air, the pilot may get the false impression that the air turbulence is not excessive. However, the wings sense the actual load and may be about at their breaking point. On the other hand, a pilot flying an aeroplane that is lightly loaded may experience a good deal of buffeting and personal discomfort in rough air. Because of this, he/she may feel that the load factor is excessive whereas the wings which sense the actual load are not being over stressed. In any degree of turbulence, it is important to reduce the airspeed to prevent damage to the aeroplane structure. (See **Gust Load** below.)

Gusts are rapid and irregular fluctuations of varying intensity in the upward and downward movement of air currents. An aeroplane in a rising or descending current of air is not affected. When, however, the speed or direction of the air current changes abruptly (such as when flying at high speed through successive up-and-down gusts), load changes are imposed on the aeroplane structure. When an aeroplane flies out of a down-gust and immediately into an up-gust, for example, the effect on the wings is to suddenly increase the angle of attack. The lift is then in excess of the weight, and the aeroplane accelerates in an upward direction, just as it would if the pilot suddenly pulled back on the controls. If the total lift were to exceed the total weight by a factor of 2, the aeroplane would experience a 2G acceleration. This is known as a gust load.

Gusts can impose very high load factors on the aeroplane. In fact, since gust loads can be sufficiently severe to be dangerous, it is wise to avoid, if at all possible, extremely rough air.

The faster the aeroplane is going, the more stress to which it is subjected when a vertical gust is encountered. For this reason, when flying in rough air conditions, it is safer to slow the aeroplane to a speed somewhat below the normal smooth air cruising speed.

On encountering any degree of turbulence, the airspeed should be reduced to the recommended maneuvering speed. Aeroplane manufacturers always specify in the pilot's operating handbook (POH) a recommended maneuvering speed (V_A) for each model of aeroplane. This is the maximum speed at which full deflection of the controls can be made without exceeding the design limit load factor and damaging the aeroplane primary structure.

The aeroplane designer determines the maneuvering speed by a formula that multiplies the flaps-up, power-off stall speed at gross weight by the square root of the design limit load factor of the aeroplane. Most general aviation, normal category aeroplanes are certificated to withstand 3.8G. The maneuvering speed works out to be 1.9 times the stall speed at gross weight and it is this airspeed that is usually published in the pilot's operating handbook. This airspeed guarantees that the aeroplane will stall at the limit load factor.

However, this maneuvering speed is not always the best speed at which to penetrate turbulence. In the first place, an aeroplane flying into turbulence is flying with power. The power-on stall speed of an aeroplane is significantly less than its power-off stall speed. In the second place, turbulence is a form of wind shear which causes airspeed fluctuations. Rapid airspeed fluctuations of 5 to 15 knots in light turbulence and up to 25 knots in severe turbulence can be expected. Consequently, the best airspeed at which to penetrate turbulence should be at least 10 knots below the published maneuvering speed to compensate for the stall delaying effects of power and the effect of wind shear.

A further consideration is the fact that the published maneuvering speed is valid only when the aeroplane is at gross weight. Because stall speed decreases as weight decreases and because the maneuvering speed is a function of stall speed, a lightly loaded aeroplane should be flown at a slower airspeed in turbulence than one that is more heavily loaded. The lightly loaded aeroplane is accelerated more easily by gusts. A 20% decrease in weight requires a 10% decrease in maneuvering speed.

All of these factors demonstrate that the safest airspeed at which to penetrate turbulence is one that is somewhat less than the published maneuvering speed and, depending on the all-up weight, would range between 1.6 and 1.9 times the flaps-up, power-off stall speed. This speed is below V_A but well above the stall.

While it is important to be concerned about subjecting the aeroplane to excessive structural loads when flying in turbulence, it is also essential to maintain control of the aeroplane at all times while in flight. Having adequate control to recover from the lateral and directional upsets that are the result of

excessive turbulence requires flying at an airspeed at which the control surfaces are effective. The airspeed at which to fly in turbulence is therefore a compromise between structural and controllability margins.

The accepted procedure for flight in turbulence is to keep the wings level, maintain a normal pitch attitude and move the controls smoothly and slowly to recover from attitude displacement. Do not try to maintain altitude. Vertical air currents will probably cause significant altitude variations. Do try to maintain attitude and airspeed.

It is quite possible in turbulent conditions for the aeroplane to stall. In most instances, the wings stall and recover before the pilot even realizes what has happened. Safety is unlikely to be jeopardized unless the aeroplane has undesirable stall characteristics or is flying near to the ground as during the approach to landing when a stall can result in an accident. In these instances, a higher airspeed nearer to the published maneuvering speed to allow for a greater margin above stall is preferable.

These facts relating to loads are of critical importance and should be understood and intelligently applied so that you never impose loads on any aeroplane that you might be flying in excess of the limit load for which it was designed.

1.5 Aircraft Logbooks & Inspections

1.5.1 Aircraft Technical Logbooks

The life of the airframe, engine(s) and propeller(s) is recorded in the Aircraft Technical Log which comprises an Airframe Log, a Record of Installations and Modifications, an Engine Log for each engine and a Propeller Log for each propeller. All maintenance, repairs, new installations, modifications, etc., must be completely recorded in the appropriate section of the Aircraft Technical Log.

A record of both flight time and air time and particulars of every flight is kept in a suitable Aircraft Journey Log. Air time is defined as the period of time commencing when the aeroplane leaves the supporting surface and terminating when it touches the supporting surface at the next point of landing. Flight time is defined as the total time from the moment an aeroplane first moves under its own power for the purpose of taking off until the moment it comes to rest at the end of the flight. Flight time is the time pilots should record in their logbooks. Air time and flight time should be recorded to the nearest 5 minutes (e.g. 1 hour 5 minutes, 1 hour 25 minutes, etc.) or to the nearest 6 minutes when using the decimal system (e.g. 1.1 hours, 1.5 hours, etc.).

Logbook information may be recorded electronically rather than in a hard copy logbook, but it must be retrievable from its electronic form.

Although regulations do not require it, it is a recommended practice to keep logbooks for an ultralight aeroplane as well, so that there is a record of maintenance, repairs, modifications, etc., and especially of time on the engine.

1.5.2 Aircraft Inspection Requirements

An aeroplane must be inspected periodically by a qualified maintenance engineer and certified as airworthy in the Aircraft Technical Log, as specified by regulations, and as detailed in the Airworthiness Manuals.

Inspections at prescribed regulated intervals must consist of checks of aircraft component groups such as: the fuselage, the cabin, the engine(s), the landing gear, the wings, the empennage, the propeller, and the radios. Such inspections are designed to look for, amongst other requirements, proper functionalities, proper installations, evidence of deterioration or defectiveness, unsatisfactory operations, dirty or loose equipment, breakages, leaks, cracks, insecure attachments, proper fluid levels, general wear and tear, and/or generally poor conditions.

Aircraft manufacturers may produce detailed inspection checklists. Such checklists may be used for required inspections so long as they include all items specified for inspection by regulations.

1.6 Aircraft Categories & Classes

Aircraft are organized into different categories and classes depending on whether they are referencing the certification of pilots or the certification of the aircraft themselves. They are further differentiated depending on their configurations and intended design applications.

For the purposes assigned to pilot certification, aircraft categories are described as follows: aeroplane, rotorcraft, glider, lighter-than-air, and powered-lift. Aircraft classes within these categories typically include the following: single-engine land, multi-engine land, single-engine sea, multi-engine sea, helicopter, gyroplane, airship, and free balloon.

As it concerns personal licences to fly aircraft, licences may take the form of the following: student pilot permit, recreational pilot permit, private pilot licence, commercial pilot licence, airline transport pilot licence. Specific ratings may be added to pilot licences identifying a pilot's additional qualifications which may include: an aircraft type rating, a night rating, an instrument rating, and a flight instructor rating.

Aircraft categories designated for the purposes of the certification of the aircraft themselves are identified as follows: normal category, utility category, aerobatic category, commuter category, transport category, as well as for other more specialized categories. Federal licencing authorities insist that intended use and operating limitations be published before civil aeroplanes can be approved for certification. This information is also found in the aircraft's Pilot's Operating Handbook (POH). The intended use and operating limitations for these categories are briefly described below.

1.6.1 Normal Category

Most small aeroplanes fall within the normal category. Maximum gross weight operations are permitted but certain maneuvers, such as spins, steep turns, etc., are prohibited. Some aeroplanes in the normal category can also be certified in the utility category.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Fig.1.27 **Normal Category, Single-Engine**

1.6.2 Utility Category

Aeroplanes that fall within this category can withstand stronger loads than those in the normal category. Certain specified maneuvers may be performed but they must be carried out at reduced weight, narrower center of gravity range and reduced airspeed. Baggage compartments and rear seats must usually be empty. When operated in the utility category, the following maneuvers are usually permitted: chandelles, lazy eights, steep turns, spins and stalls. The utility category is primarily for the purpose of instructing and training pilots in certain flight maneuvers.

Fig.1.28 **Utility Category, Single-Engine**

These operating limitations are set as a result of wing loading and center of gravity considerations.

Positive limit load factors for the normal category are 3.8 times the gross weight. The reduced gross weight of the utility category permits a limit load factor of 4.4 times the gross weight.

When operating in the utility category, higher G forces can be imposed on the airframe. With the aeroplane's weight being less than the maximum gross weight, the ultimate strength factor of the airframe will not be exceeded.

The negative limit load factors for both normal and utility categories are approximately -1.52 and -1.76 respectively.

1.6.3 Aerobatic Category

In the aerobatic category, the positive limit load factor may be as much as 6.0 times the gross weight and the negative limit may be as much as -5.0 times the gross weight (depending on the particular make and model of aeroplane). When flying an aeroplane in the aerobatic category, it is essential to ensure that the weight and balance limits recommended by the manufacturer are respected. The weight and balance envelope is usually restricted when the aeroplane is to be flown in the aerobatic category.

Fig.1.29 **Aerobatic Category, Single-Engine**

1.6.4 Commuter Category

Commuter category aircraft are designed to carry passengers. Those that fall within this category are limited by their seating capacity and by their overall weight.

Fig.1.30 **Commuter Category, Multi-Engine**

1.6.5 Transport Category

Transport category aircraft consist of airliners and other large aeroplanes which exceed certain passenger-carrying capacity and weight limits.

Fig.1.31 **Transport Category, Muli-Engine**

1.6.6 Additional Categories

The restricted category designation applies to aircraft used for special applications such as aerial fire-fighting, aerial photography and survey, aerial advertising other than banner towing, agricultural applications such as crop spraying, and any other similar services.

The limited category applies to aeroplanes which have been accepted for limited use in the civil service having once been used in military service.

The amateur-built category (also referred to as experimental aircraft) is the designation which applies to homebuilt aircraft, or kitplanes, that are built by their owners.

Fig.1.32 **Amateur-Built Category, Single-Engine**

Fig.1.33 **Rotorcraft Category, Helicopter**

Fig.1.34 **Lighter-than-Air Category, Airship**

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

2 Theory of Flight

Why learn about Theory of Flight?

The pilot today has a large variety of aeroplanes from which to choose. Some of these aeroplanes may fly at less than 100 knots top speed while others are capable of speeds well into the hundreds of knots. Some are single seaters carrying only the pilot, while others, even in the single-engine light aeroplane classification, may carry 10 or more passengers. Some aeroplanes have laminar flow airfoil sections; others have airfoils of conventional design. A few light aeroplanes fly at 3.5 times their stalling speed; others do well to cruise at 1.3 times their stalling speed. Every one of these aeroplanes has different flight characteristics. If a pilot has a good grasp of the fundamentals of flight, he/she will understand what to expect of each different aeroplane that he/she may have the opportunity to fly. Pilots will understand how best to handle each aeroplane as a result of their knowledge of the theory of design. They will comprehend the various loads to which an aeroplane of a particular design may be exposed while flying under abnormal or adverse conditions of flight. Not only to get the best performance but also to ensure the safety of each flight, an understanding of "Theory of Flight" is essential.

The study of theory of flight and aerodynamics can be a lifetime proposition. New theories are forever being put forward. Some questions have answers that are difficult to find. Others perhaps do not yet have adequate answers. The information that comprises this chapter can only be considered an introduction to a substantial but fascinating study.

2.1 Aeronautical Fundamentals

2.1.1 Forces Acting on an Aeroplane in Flight

There are four forces acting on an aeroplane in flight. These are thrust, drag, lift and weight.

1. Thrust. The force exerted by the engine and its propeller(s) which pushes air backward causing a reaction, or thrust, in the forward direction.
2. Drag. The resistance to forward motion directly opposed to thrust.
3. Lift. The force upward which sustains the aeroplane in flight.
4. Weight. The downward force due to gravity, directly opposed to lift.

When thrust and drag are equal and opposite, the aeroplane is said to be in a state of equilibrium. That is to say, it will continue to move forward at the same uniform rate of speed. (Equilibrium refers to steady motion and not to a state of rest.)

If either of these forces becomes greater than the force opposing it, the state of equilibrium will be lost. If thrust is greater than drag, the aeroplane will accelerate or gain speed. If drag is greater than thrust, the aeroplane will decelerate or lose speed.

Similarly, when lift and weight are equal and opposite, the aeroplane will be in equilibrium. If lift, however, is greater than weight, the aeroplane will climb. If weight is greater than lift, the aeroplane will sink.

Let us first consider the force of lift.

Lift

If you consider the definitions cited by air authorities, a boy flying a kite could be construed to be a pilot in charge of an aeroplane! Ponder the idea a moment and it may not appear quite as absurd as it seems at first glance.

A kite is an inclined plane, the weight of which is supported in the air by the reaction of the wind flowing against it. If we substitute for the string, which holds the kite against the wind, the engine and propeller of an aeroplane, which move the wings forward against the airflow, we will see that the analogy of the kite is not without some validity.

The wings of an aeroplane are so designed that when moved through the air horizontally, the force exerted on them produces a **reaction** as nearly vertical as possible. It is this reaction that **lifts** the weight of the aeroplane.

AIRFOILS

An airfoil, or airfoil section, may be defined as any surface designed to obtain a reaction from the air through which it moves, that is, to obtain lift. It has been found that the most suitable shape for producing lift is a curved or cambered shape.

The camber of an airfoil is the curvature of the upper and lower surfaces. In earlier days, most airfoils had flat bottoms with, thus, only the upper surface having a camber. As airfoil design matured, lower surfaces also came to incorporate cambered shapes resulting in such airfoil designs being referred to as double-cambered. Usually, the upper surface has a greater camber than the lower.

The mean camber line is the line equidistant from the upper and lower surfaces of the airfoil. Total airfoil camber is defined as the maximum distance of the mean camber line from the chord line, expressed as a percent of the chord.

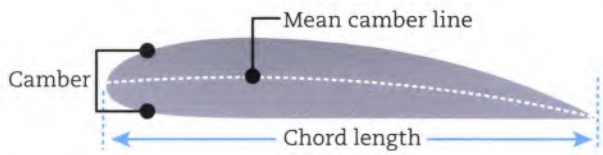


Fig.2.1 **An Airfoil Section**

HOW LIFT IS CREATED

What, then, causes this lift, you may ask.

Air flowing around an airfoil is subject to the Laws of Motion discovered by Isaac Newton. Air, being a gaseous fluid, possesses inertia and, according to Newton's First Law, when in motion tends to remain in motion. The introduction of an airfoil into the streamlined airflow alters the uniform flow of air. Newton's Second Law states that a force must be applied to alter the state of uniform motion of a body. The airfoil is the force that acts on the body (in this case, the air) to produce a change of direction. The application of such a force causes an equal and opposite reaction (Newton's Third Law) called, in this case, lift.

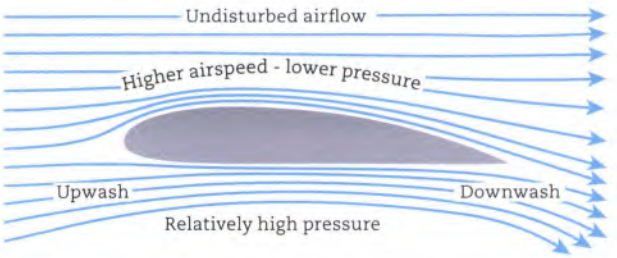


Fig.2.2 **Airflow over an Airfoil**

As the air passes over the wing towards the trailing edge, the air flows not only rearward but downward as well. This flow is called downwash. At the same time, the airflow passing under the wing is deflected downward by the bottom surface of the wing. Think of a water ski or surfboard planing over the water. In exerting a downward force upon the air, the wing receives an upward counterforce. Remember Newton's Third Law — for every action there is an opposite and equal reaction. Therefore, the more air deflected downward, the more lift is created. Air is heavy; its weight exerts a pressure of 14.7 lbs per square inch at sea level. The reaction produced by the downwash is therefore significant.

The phenomenon defined by Bernoulli's Principle also has an effect in the production of lift by the wing moving through the air. Scientist Daniel Bernoulli discovered that the total energy in any system remains constant. In other words, if one element of an energy system is increased, another decreases to counter balance it. Take the example of water flowing through a Venturi tube. Being incompressible, the water must speed up to pass through the constricted space of the Venturi. The moving water has energy in the form of both pressure and speed. Within the Venturi tube, pressure is sacrificed (decreased) to accelerate the speed of the flow.

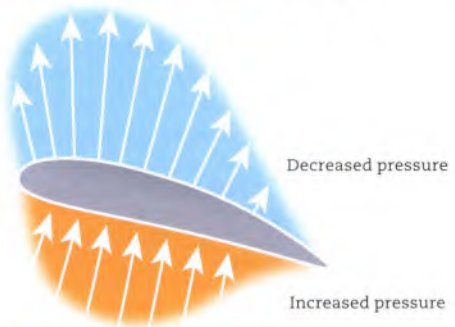


Fig.2.3 **Pressure Distribution over an Airfoil**

Air is a fluid, just like water, and can be assumed incompressible insofar as speed aerodynamics is concerned. As such, it acts exactly the same way as water in a Venturi tube.

Picture the curved upper surface of a wing as the bottom half of a Venturi tube. The upper half of this imaginary tube is the undisturbed airflow above the wing.

Air flowing over the wing's upper surface accelerates as it passes through the constricted area just as it does in the Venturi tube. The result is a decrease in pressure on the upper surface of the wing that results in the phenomenon known as lift.

RELATIVE AIRFLOW

Relative airflow is a term used to describe the direction of the airflow with respect to the wing. (In other texts, it is sometimes called relative wind.) If a wing is moving forward and downward, the relative airflow is upward and backward. If the wing is moving forward horizontally, the relative airflow moves backward horizontally. The flight path and the relative airflow are, therefore, always parallel but travel in opposite directions.

Relative airflow is created by the motion of the aeroplane through the air. It is also created by the motion of air past a stationary body or by a combination of both. Therefore, on a take-off roll, an aeroplane is subject to the relative airflow created by its motion along the ground and also by the moving mass of air (wind).

In flight, however, only the motion of the aeroplane produces a relative airflow. The direction and speed of the wind have no effect on relative airflow.

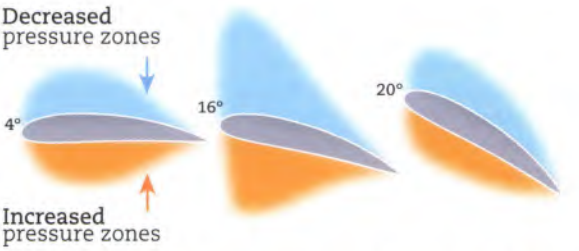


Fig.2.4 **Change of Pressure Distribution with Angle of Attack**

The envelopes indicated in Fig.2.4 do not represent the actual areas of high and low pressure. These exist only in close proximity to the surfaces. They represent the comparative distribution of pressure as determined by pressure plotting. In Fig.2.4, the darker shading represents increased pressure, the lighter shading, decreased pressure.

ANGLE OF ATTACK & CENTRE OF PRESSURE

The angle at which the airfoil meets the relative airflow is called the angle of attack (see Fig.2.5).

As the angle of attack is increased, the changes in pressure over the upper and lower surfaces and the amount of downwash (i.e. air deflected downward) increase up to a point (the stalling angle). Beyond this angle, they decrease (Fig.2.4).

If we consider all the distributed pressure to be equivalent to a single force, this force will act through a straight line. The point where this line cuts the chord of an airfoil is called the centre of pressure.

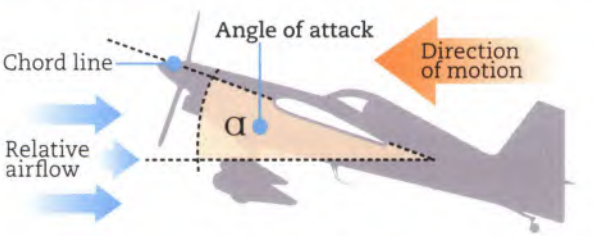


Fig.2.5 **Angle of Attack**

Thus, it will be seen that as the angle of attack of an airfoil is increased up to the point of stall, the centre of pressure will move forward. Beyond this point, it will move back. The movement of the centre of pressure causes an aeroplane to be unstable.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Weight

The weight of an aeroplane is the force which acts vertically downward toward the centre of the earth and is the result of gravity.

Just as the lift of an aeroplane acts through the centre of pressure, the weight of an aeroplane acts through the centre of gravity (C.G.). This is the point through which the resultant of the weights of all the various parts of the aeroplane passes, in every attitude that it can assume.

Thrust

Thrust provides the forward motion of the aeroplane. There are several ways to produce this force — jets, propellers or rockets — but they all depend on the principle of pushing air backward with the object of causing a reaction, or thrust, in the forward direction. The effect is the same whether the thrust is produced by a propeller moving a large mass of air backward at a relatively slow speed or by a jet moving a small mass of air backward at a relatively high speed. A full description of engines and propellers will be found in the Chapter **Aero Engines**.

Drag

Drag is the resistance an aeroplane experiences in moving forward through the air.

For an aeroplane to maintain steady flight, there must be sufficient lift to balance the weight of the aeroplane, and there must be sufficient thrust to overcome drag.

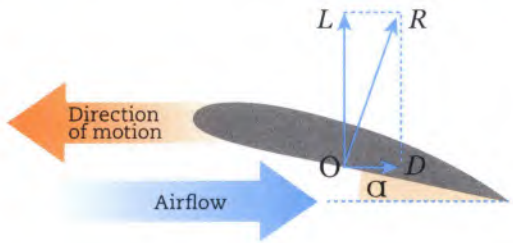


Fig.2.6 **Forces Acting on an Airfoil**

Fig.2.6 shows an airfoil moving forward through the air and depicts the principle known as the resolution of forces. The vertical component (OL) is the lift and is used to support the weight of the aeroplane. The horizontal component (OD) is the drag. OR is the resultant reaction of these two components.

Since drag is a force directly opposed to the forward motion of the airfoil and, as the work of overcoming it is performed by the engine, it is desirable to have it as small as possible.

Drag is of two principal types.

1. Parasite Drag is the term given to the drag of all those parts of the aeroplane which do not contribute to lift. This includes the fuselage, landing gear, struts, antennas, wing tip fuel tanks, etc. In addition, any loss of momentum of the airstream caused by openings, such as those in the cowling and those between the wing and the ailerons and the flaps, add to parasite drag.

   Parasite drag may be divided into three components: (1) form drag refers to the drag created by the form or shape of a body as it resists motion through the air; (2) skin friction refers to the tendency of air flowing over a body to cling to its surface; and (3) interference drag refers to the drag created by the interference in airflow between two sections of the aircraft.

   Although overall parasite drag can never be eliminated completely, it can be substantially reduced. One method is to eliminate those parts of the aeroplane that cause it. For example, retractable landing gear which fold into the wings (or into the fuselage) eliminate completely the drag created by a fixed landing gear which protrudes into the airflow. Also, wing struts have been removed from some high-wing designs in favour of fully cantilevered wings. Parasite drag reduction can also be achieved by streamlining those parts that cannot be eliminated. Skin friction can be reduced substantially by the removal of dust, dirt, mud or ice that has collected on the aeroplane.

   Even some of the most carefully designed individual parts must, however, be joined together to create the total aeroplane. Resistance caused by the interference drag of one part where it connects to another, (for example, where the wing is attached to the fuselage, or the struts are attached to the wings), can be reduced by careful design of fairings that smooth out the junctions where parts meet.

2. Induced Drag is caused by those parts of an aeroplane which are active in producing lift (i.e. the wing). It is the result of the wing's work in sustaining the aeroplane and is, therefore, a part of the lift and can never be eliminated. It increases as the angle of attack increases and decreases as the angle of attack decreases.

   Induced drag can be reduced only during the initial designing of an aeroplane. A wing with a high aspect ratio (that is, with a very long span and a narrow chord) produces less induced drag than does a wing with a short span and a wide chord. Gliders and sail planes are therefore commonly designed with high aspect ratio wings.

Fig.2.7 **Airflow over the Top Surface**

The phenomenon, known as wing tip vortices, is testimony to the existence of induced drag.

As the decreased pressure over the top of the wing is less than the atmospheric pressure around it, the air flowing over the top surface tends to flow inward.

Fig.2.8 **Airflow over the Bottom Surface**

The air flowing over the lower surface, due to the lower pressure around it, tends to flow outward and curl upward over the wing tip.

Fig.2.9 **Wing Tip Vortices**

When the two airflows unite at the trailing edge, they are flowing contra-wise. Eddies and vortices are formed which tend to unite into one large eddy at each wing tip. These are called wing tip vortices. This disturbed air exerts a resistant force against the forward motion of the wing. This resistant force is known as induced drag.

In order to support the weight of an aeroplane, a large amount of air must be displaced downward. This displaced air must have somewhere to go and tends to flow spanwise outwards, as explained above. It is seeking to escape around the wing tips and to flow into the low pressure area over the upper surface of the wing where it spoils some of the lift potential. It will be obvious that the heavier the aeroplane and the higher the span loading on the wing, the more air it will displace downward, the greater will be the circulation of air, the greater the magnitude of the wing tip vortex created and the greater the induced drag.

The operational aspects of flight in areas where wing tip vortices are present are discussed in the section Wake Turbulence in Chapter **Airmanship**.

Induced drag does not increase as the speed increases. On the contrary, it is greatest when the aeroplane is flying slowly, a few knots above the stalling speed when maximum lift is being realized at minimum speed.

The induced drag characteristics of a wing are not the same very near the ground as they are at altitude. During landing and take-off, the ground interferes with the formation of a large wing tip vortex. Induced drag is, therefore, reduced when an aeroplane is flown very near the ground. This phenomenon is known as ground effect. (See **Ground Effect** in Chapter **Airmanship**.)

Although induced drag cannot be eliminated, it can be reduced by certain design features. For example, less induced drag results from a long, narrow wing as compared to a short, broad wing. It has also been found that winglets are effective in reducing induced drag. Attached to the wing tip, the winglet – a small, vertical surface of airfoil section – is effective in producing side forces that diffuse the wing tip vortex flow.

LIFT & DRAG CURVES

As the amount of lift varies with the angle of attack, so too does the drag. Hence drag is the price we pay for lift. Although it is desirable to obtain as much lift as possible from a wing, this cannot be done without increasing the drag. It is therefore necessary to find the best compromise.

The lift and drag of an airfoil depend not only on the angle of attack, but also upon:

1. The shape of the airfoil.
2. The plan area of the airfoil (or wing area) — S.
3. The square of the velocity (or true airspeed) — V^2.
4. The density of the air — ϱ.

Hence the lift of an aircraft can be expressed as a formula by: $C_L \times \frac{1}{2} \varrho V^2 \times S$ and the drag by: $C_D \times \frac{1}{2} \varrho V^2 \times S$

The symbols CL and CD represent the lift coefficient and drag coefficient respectively. They depend on the shape of the airfoil and will alter with changes in the angle of attack.

The lift-drag ratio is used to express the relationship between lift and drag and is obtained by dividing the lift coefficient by the drag coefficient: CL/CD.

The characteristics of any particular airfoil section can conveniently be represented by curves on a graph showing the amount of lift and drag obtained at various angles of attack, the lift-drag ratio, and the movement of the centre of pressure (Fig.2.10).

Notice that the lift curve (CL) reaches its maximum for this particular wing section at 18° angle of attack and then rapidly decreases. 18° is therefore the stalling angle.

The drag curve (CD) increases very rapidly from 14° angle of attack and completely overcomes the lift at 22° angle of attack.

The lift-drag ratio (L/D) reaches its maximum at 0° angle of attack, meaning that at this angle we obtain the most lift for the least amount of drag.

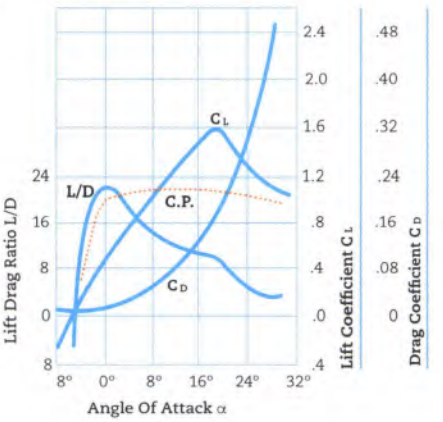


Fig.2.10 **Lift & Drag Curves**

The curves in Fig.2.10 are for a particular airfoil section, the Clark Y. The values of CL, CD and L/D vs angle of attack will differ for every individual airfoil design. The general appearance of the co-ordinates in Fig.2.10, however, is similar throughout a wide range of airfoil sections employed by aircraft designers today.

The centre of pressure (C.P.) moves gradually forward till 12° angle of attack is reached and from 18° commences to move back.

THRUST AVAILABLE & DRAG

The useful output of an aircraft engine is power. The power generated by a piston engine is used to turn a propeller which produces thrust by pushing a large volume of air backwards.

The greatest amount of thrust available from the propeller driven aeroplane engine occurs when the engine is running at full power and the aeroplane is standing stationary on the ground. As the aeroplane begins to move, the thrust available decreases with an increase in speed. The principal reason for this is that the drag curve rises rapidly as the aeroplane begins to move. Because they both have a relationship with

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

drag, weight and aeroplane configuration affect the thrust/drag scenario: weight affecting induced drag and aeroplane configuration affecting parasite drag.

On take-off, full power is used for a few minutes, but within seconds after lift-off, the power is reduced to that required for climbing. After cruise altitude is reached, the power is reduced to cruise power which is between 65% and 75% of full rated power.

If the weight of the aeroplane is increased, the performance of the aeroplane is decreased. Every extra pound of weight carried by any aeroplane reduces its performance.

More power is required by the aeroplane at every increase in speed to produce the thrust required to keep the aeroplane flying at the desired speed and altitude. The power required curve is characteristically U-shaped and similar to the drag curve. The power required to fly the aeroplane at a constant altitude varies with the drag existing at the different airspeeds. To increase the speed, with weight and aeroplane configuration remaining constant, additional thrust/power is required. Testing and graphed results of such tests indicate that four times the thrust is required to double the speed.

STREAMLINING

In this age when everything from trains to children's toys is streamlined, it hardly seems necessary to explain what streamlining means. Basically, streamlining is a design device by which a body is so shaped that drag is minimized as the body moves forward through the air. A flat plate or a round ball moving through the air disturb the smooth flow of air and set up eddies behind them.

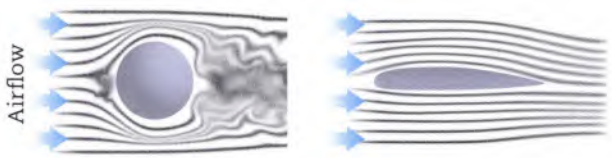


Fig.2.11 **Effects of Streamlining**

A streamlined shape smooths out the airflow, eliminates the eddies, reduces the drag and minimizes the energy required to move that body through the air, as can be seen in Fig.2.11.

AILERON DRAG

In banking to make an aeroplane turn, one aileron is depressed and the other is raised. The downgoing aileron, being depressed into the compressed airflow on the underside of the wing, causes drag. The upgoing aileron, moving up into a more streamlined position, causes less drag. The drag on the downgoing aileron is known as aileron drag and, if not corrected for in the design of the aileron, tends to cause a yaw in the opposite direction to which the bank is applied.

Both frise and differential ailerons have been designed to overcome aileron drag. On differential ailerons, the downgoing aileron moves through a smaller angle than the upgoing aileron. As a result, the downgoing aileron, although it still causes drag, causes less drag than an aileron not so designed. The upgoing aileron, moving through a larger angle, causes more drag. The combined effect is a balance that more or less eliminates aileron drag. In frise ailerons, the nose of the upgoing aileron projects into the airflow, while the downgoing aileron is streamlined.

Fig.2.12 **Differential Ailerons**

Down-going aileron streamlined into wing: **reduced drag**.
Up-going aileron leading edge projects into airflow: **increased drag**.

Fig.2.13 **Frise Ailerons**

THE BOUNDARY LAYER

The boundary layer is a very thin sheet of air lying over the surface of the wing (and, for that matter, all other surfaces of the aeroplane). Because air has viscosity, this layer of air tends to adhere to the wing. As the wing moves forward through the air, the boundary layer at first flows smoothly over the streamlined shape of the airfoil. Here the flow is called the laminar layer.

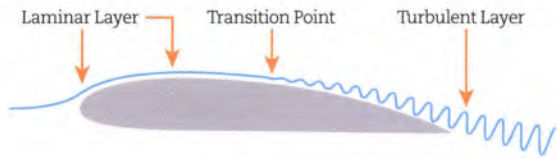


Fig.2.14 **Laminar & Turbulent Layer**

As the boundary layer approaches the centre of the wing, it begins to lose speed due to skin friction and it becomes thicker and turbulent. Here it is called the turbulent layer. The point at which the boundary layer changes from laminar to turbulent is called the transition point (Fig.2.14). Where the boundary layer becomes turbulent, drag due to skin friction is relatively high. As speed increases, the transition point tends to move forward. As the angle of attack increases, the transition point also tends to move forward. Various methods have been developed to control the boundary layer in order to reduce skin friction drag.

The suction method uses a series of thin slots in the wing running out from the wing root towards the tip. A vacuum sucks the air down through the slots, preventing the airflow from breaking away from the wing and forcing it to follow the curvature of the wing surface. The air, which is sucked in, siphons through the ducts inside the wing and is exhausted backwards to provide extra thrust.

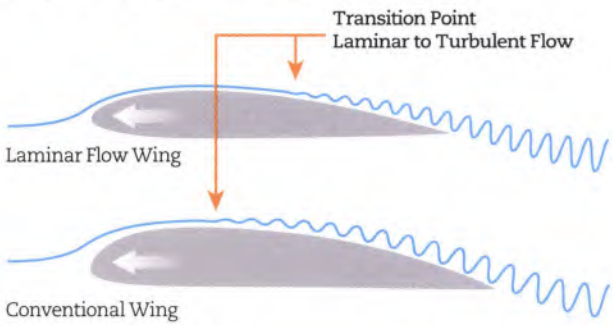


Fig.2.15 **Transition Points**

The laminar flow airfoil is itself a structural design intended to make possible better boundary layer control. The thickest part of a laminar flow wing occurs at 50% chord. The transition point at which the laminar flow of air breaks down into turbulence is at or near the thickest part. As can be seen in the accompanying illustration (Fig.2.15), the transition point at which the laminar flow of air becomes turbulent on a laminar flow airfoil is rearward of that same point on a conventional designed airfoil. (See also **Laminar Flow Airfoils**.)

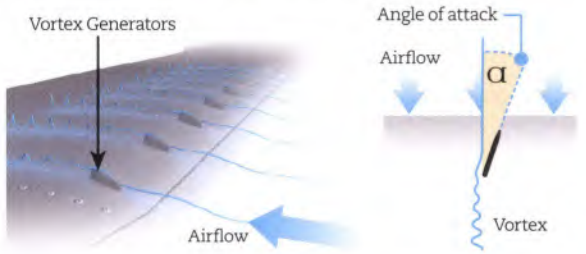


Fig.2.16 **Vortex Generators**

Vortex generators (Fig.2.16) are small plates about an inch deep standing on edge in a row spanwise along the wing. They are placed at an angle of attack and (like a wing airfoil section) generate vortices. These tend to prevent or delay the breakaway of the boundary layer by re-energizing it. They are lighter and simpler than the suction boundary layer control system described above.

Couples

The principle of equilibrium has already been introduced at the beginning of this chapter in the discussion of the forces that act on an aeroplane in flight. When two forces, such as thrust and drag, are equal and opposite but parallel, rather than passing through the same point, they are said to form a couple.

A couple will cause a turning moment about a given axis as in Fig.2.17.

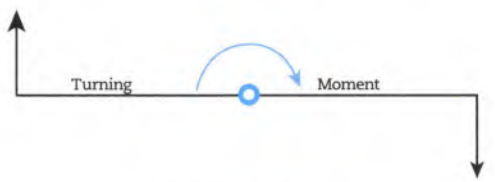


Fig.2.17 **Effect of a Couple**

If weight is ahead of lift, the couple created will turn the nose of the aeroplane down. Conversely, if lift is ahead of weight, the couple created will turn the nose of the aeroplane up.

If drag is above thrust, the couple formed will turn the nose of the aeroplane up. Conversely, if thrust is above drag, the couple formed will turn the nose of the aeroplane down.

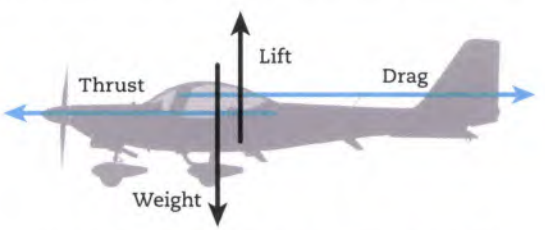


Fig.2.18 **Forces Acting on an Aeroplane in Flight**

Notice that in Fig.2.18 Forces Acting on an Aeroplane in Flight, weight is placed ahead of lift and drag is above thrust. As a result, when the engine is shut off and there is no thrust, the couple due to weight and lift will naturally tend to turn the nose down.

In the case of a flying boat (amphibian aircraft) design, when the thrust line is above the aircraft's centre of gravity, such as with a rear-facing pusher engine, the tail loads balance the pitch-down effect creating a dynamic, as opposed to weight, balance.

2.1.2 Design of the Wing

The type of operation for which an aeroplane is intended has a very important bearing on the selection of the shape and design of the wing for that aeroplane. If the aeroplane is designed for low speed, a thick airfoil is most efficient. A thin airfoil is best for high speed.

Conventional Airfoils

The following illustrations depict a selection of designs of airfoil sections. These are known as conventional airfoils.

Low Camber

Low drag, high speed, thin wing section. Suitable for race planes, fighters, interceptors, etc.

Deep Camber

High lift, low speed, thick wing section. Suitable for transports, freighters, bombers, etc.

High lift, low speed, thin wing section. Suitable as above.

Low Lift - High Drag

Reflex trailing edge wing section. Very little movement of centre of pressure. Good stability.

Symmetrical

Cambered top and bottom wing sections. Similar to above.

GA(W)-1

Thicker for better structure and lower weight, good stall characteristics. Camber is maintained farther rearward which increases lifting capability over more of the airfoil and decreases drag.

Fig.2.19 **Conventional Airfoil Designs & Characteristics**

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Laminar Flow Airfoils

Another type of airfoil, the previously mentioned laminar flow airfoil, is in common use on today's aeroplanes.

Laminar flow airfoils were originally developed for the purpose of making an aeroplane fly faster. The laminar flow wing is usually thinner than the conventional airfoil, the leading edge is more pointed and its upper and lower surfaces are nearly symmetrical. The major and most important difference between the two types of airfoil is this: the thickest part of a laminar wing occurs at 50% chord while in the conventional design the thickest part is at 25% chord.

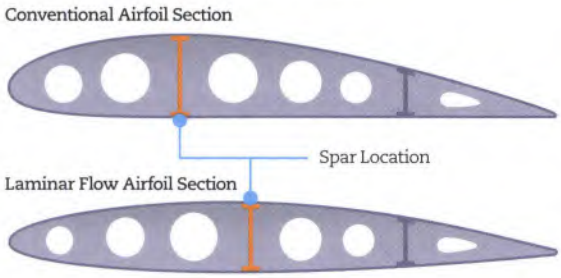


Fig.2.20 **Laminar Airfoil**

The effect achieved by this design of wing is to maintain the laminar flow of air throughout a greater percentage of the chord of the wing and to control the transition point. Drag is therefore considerably reduced since the laminar airfoil takes less energy to slide through the air. The pressure distribution on the laminar flow wing is much more even since the camber of the wing from the leading edge to the point of maximum camber is more gradual than on the conventional airfoil. However, at the point of stall, the transition point moves more rapidly forward.

Planform

Planform refers to the shape of the wing as seen from directly above. Wings may be rectangular or elliptical or delta shaped. Some wings taper from wing root to wing tip, with the taper along the leading edge or along the trailing edge or, in some cases, with a taper along both edges.

The aspect ratio of a wing is the relationship between the length or span of the wing and its width or chord. It is computed by dividing the span by the average chord (the mean aerodynamic chord, (MAC).

A wing, for example, that has a span of 24 feet and a chord of 6 feet has an aspect ratio of 4. A wing with a span of 36 feet and a chord of 4 feet has an aspect ratio of 9. The actual size, in area, of both wings is identical (144 sq. ft.) but their flight performance is quite different because of their differing aspect ratios.

A wing with a high aspect ratio will generate more lift and less induced drag than a wing with a low aspect ratio. It is for this reason that gliders have wings with high aspect ratios to maximize their time aloft.

Angle of Incidence

The angle of incidence is the angle at which the wing is permanently inclined to the longitudinal axis of the aeroplane.

Choosing the right angle of incidence can improve flight visibility, enhance take-off and landing characteristics and reduce drag in level flight.

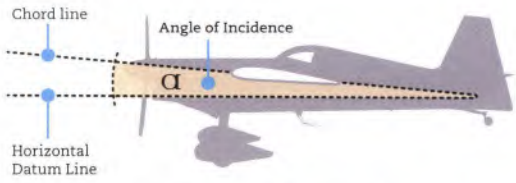


Fig.2.21 **Angle of Incidence**

The angle of incidence that is usually chosen is the angle of attack at which the lift-drag ratio is optimum (see Fig.2.10). In most modern aeroplanes, there is a small positive angle of incidence so that the wing has a slight angle of attack when the aeroplane is in level cruising flight.

Wing Tip Design

Specially designed wing tips have been found to be effective in controlling induced drag and wing tip vortices. These vortices kill lift, create drag and cause instability at high angles of attack and at low airspeed. Any method that is effective in inhibiting their development increases the efficiency of the aeroplane.

The installation of wing tip tanks has several advantages. They increase the range of the aeroplane and distribute the weight over a greater portion of the wing but they also are effective in preventing the air from spilling over the wing tip, in reducing the intensity of the vortices and in reducing induced drag.

Fig.2.22 **Winglets**

Small aeroplanes that do not use tip tanks may have wing tip plates installed on the wing tip. These plates have the same shape as the airfoil but are larger and prevent the air from spilling over the tips.

Another design feature is the droop wing tip that is also quite effective in decreasing vortex development.

Some mention has already been made of winglets (sometimes called topsails), small vertical winglike surfaces attached to the wing tip that are effective in inhibiting wing tip vortex development. They have the advantage of being able to develop sufficient lift to offset their own parasitic drag component.

Wash-Out/Wash-In

To reduce the tendency of the wing to stall suddenly as the stalling angle is approached, designers incorporate in wing design a feature known as wash-out and wash-in. The wing is twisted so that the angle of incidence at the wing tip is less than that at the root of the wing. As a result, the wing has better stall characteristics because the section towards the root will stall before the outer section of the wing. The ailerons, located towards the wing tips, are still effective even though part of the wing is stalled. Increasing the angle of incidence is called wash-in and it increases the lift. Decreasing the angle of incidence is called wash-out and it decreases the lift.

The same improved stall characteristics are achieved by the device of changing the airfoil shape from the root to the tip. The manufacturer incorporates a wing shape at the tip which has the characteristic of stalling at a slightly higher angle of attack.

Wing Fences

Wing fences are fin-like vertical surfaces attached to the upper surface of the wing and are used to control the airflow. On swept wing aeroplanes, they are located about two-thirds of the way out towards the wing tip and prevent the drifting of air toward the tip of the wing at high angles of attack. On straight wing aeroplanes, they control the airflow in the flap area. In both cases, they give better slow speed handling and stall characteristics.

Fig.2.23 **Wing Fences**

Slats, Slots & Leading Edge Flaps

Slats are auxiliary airfoils fitted to the leading edge of the wing. At high angles of attack, they automatically move out ahead of the wing. At a high angle of attack, the low pressure just behind the leading edge on the top edge of the wing pulls the slat out of the wing. When the angle of attack is lower, the greater air pressure pushes the slat back into the wing. The angle of attack of the slat being less than that of the mainplane, there is a smooth airflow over the slat which tends to smooth out the eddies forming over the wing. Slats are usually fitted to the leading edge near the wing tips to improve lateral control.

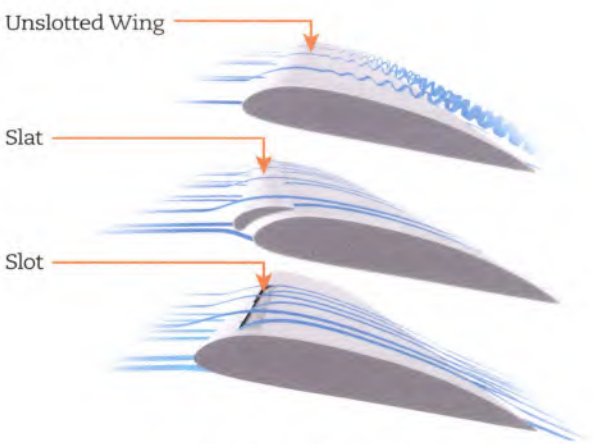


Fig.2.24 **Slotted Wings**

Slots are passageways built into the wing a short distance from the leading edge in such a way that, at high angles of attack, the air flows through the slot and over the wing, tending to smooth out the turbulence due to eddies. Sometimes the slots extend across the full span of the wing. Sometimes they are placed only ahead of the ailerons to keep the outer portion of the wing flying after the root has stalled. This installation design keeps the aileron effective and provides increased lateral control.

Some aeroplanes, particularly the large transport aeroplanes, have flaps on the leading edge of the wing. A jackscrew arrangement pushes the leading edge of the wing against a hinge on the lower surface causing the leading edge to droop. The drooped leading edge flap increases the camber of the wing and increases the lift coefficient at high angles of attack. The Kreuger flap performs much the same function. It is a special high lift shape that is extended out ahead of the leading edge by a hinged linkage.

Spoilers

Spoilers are devices fitted to the wing which increase drag and decrease lift. They usually consist of a long narrow strip of metal arranged spanwise along the top surface of the airfoil. In some aeroplanes, they are linked to the ailerons and work in unison with the ailerons for lateral control. As such, they open on the side of the upgoing aileron, spoil the lift on that wing and help drive the wing down and help the aeroplane to roll into a turn.

In some aeroplanes, spoilers have replaced ailerons as a means of roll control. The spoiler moves only upward in contrast to the aileron that moves upward to decrease lift and downward to increase lift. The spoiler moves only up, spoiling the wing lift. By using spoilers for roll control, full span flaps can be used to increase low speed lift.

Spoilers can also be connected to the brake controls and, when so fitted, work symmetrically across the aeroplane for producing drag and destroying lift after landing, thereby transferring all the weight of the aeroplane to the wheels and making braking action more effective.

Speed Brakes

Speed brakes are a feature on some high performance aeroplanes. They are a device designed to facilitate optimum descent without decreasing power enough to shock cool the engine and are especially advantageous in aeroplanes with high service ceilings. They are also of use in setting up the right approach speed and descent pattern in the landing configuration. The brakes, when extended, create drag without altering the curvature of the wing and are usually fitted far enough back along the chord so as not to disrupt too much lift and in a position laterally where they will not disturb the airflow over the tailplane. They are usually small metal blades housed in a fitting concealed in the wing that, when activated from the cockpit, pivot up to form a plate. On some types of aircraft, speed brakes are incorporated into the rear fuselage and consist of two hinged doors that open into the slipstream.

Fig.2.25 **Speed Brakes**

Flaps

Flaps are high lift devices which, in effect, increase the camber of the wing and, in some cases (as with the Fowler Flap) also increase the effective wing area. Their use gives

better take-off performance and permits steeper approach angles and lower approach and landing speeds.

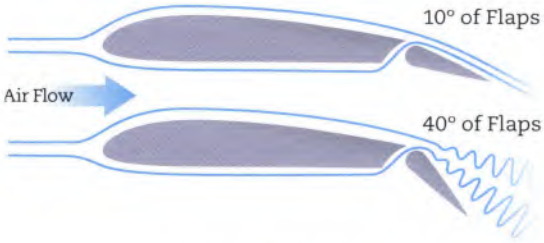


Fig.2.26 **Flap Settings**

When deflected, flaps increase the upper camber of the wing, increasing the negative pressure on the top of the wing. At the same time, they allow a build-up of pressure below the wing. During take-off, flap settings of 10° to 20° are used to give better take-off performance and a better angle of climb, especially valuable when climbing out over obstacles.

However, not all aeroplane manufacturers recommend the use of flaps during take-off. They can be used only on those aeroplanes which have sufficient take-off power to overcome the extra drag that extended flaps produce. The recommendations of the manufacturer should, therefore, always be followed.

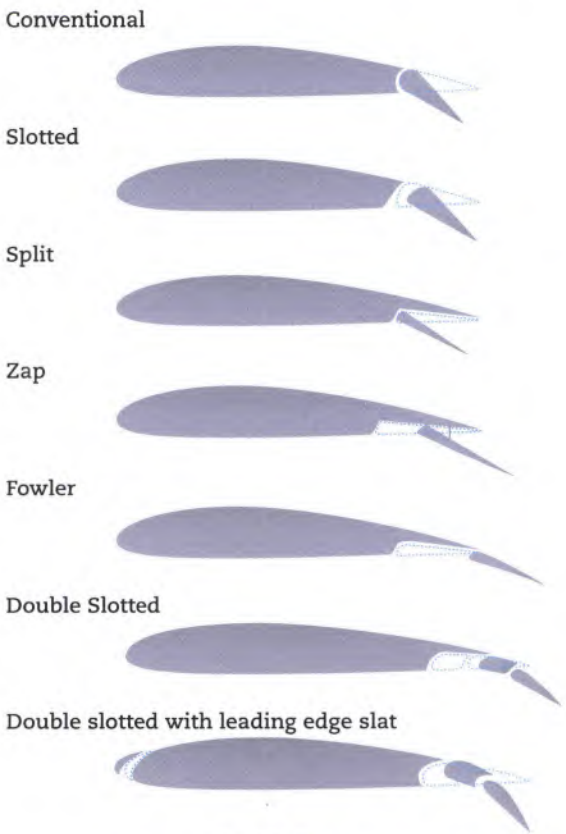


Fig.2.27 **Flaps**

Flaps do indeed increase drag. The greater the flap deflection, the greater the drag. At a point of about half of their full travel, the increased drag surpasses the increased lift and the flaps become air brakes. Most flaps can be extended to 40° from the chord of the wing. At settings between 20° and 40°, the essential function of the flaps is to improve the landing capabilities, by steepening the glide without increasing the glide speed. In an approach over obstacles, the use of flaps permits the pilot to touch down much nearer the threshold of the runway. Flaps also permit a slower landing speed and act as air brakes when the aeroplane is rolling to a stop after landing, thus reducing the need for excessive braking action. As a result, there is less wear on the undercarriage, wheels and tires. Lower landing speeds also reduce the possibility of ground looping during the landing roll.

Plain and split flaps increase the lift of a wing but, at the same time, they greatly increase the drag. For all practical purposes, they are of value only in approach and landing. They should not normally be employed for take-off because the extra drag reduces acceleration.

Slotted flaps, on the other hand, including such types as Fowler and Zap, produce lift in excess of drag and their partial use is therefore recommended for take-off.

From the standpoint of aerodynamic efficiency, the Fowler Flap is generally considered to offer the most advantages and the fewest disadvantages, especially on larger aeroplanes, while double slotted flaps have won wide approval for smaller types.

On Short Take-off and Landing (STOL) aeroplanes, a combination of double slotted flaps and leading edge slats are common.

Changes in flap setting affect the trim of an aeroplane. As flaps are lowered, the centre of pressure moves rearward creating a nose-down, pitching moment. However, in some aeroplanes, the change in airflow over the tailplane as flaps are lowered is such that the total moment created is nose-up and it becomes necessary to trim the aeroplane "nose-down".

The aeroplane is apt to lose considerable height when the flaps are raised. At low altitudes, therefore, the flaps should be raised cautiously.

Most aeroplanes are placarded to show a maximum speed above which the flaps must not be lowered, known as the maximum flap extended speed (V_{FE}). The flaps are not designed to withstand the loads imposed by high speeds. Structural failure may result from severe strain if the flaps are selected "down" at higher than the specified speed.

When the flaps have been lowered for a landing, they should not ordinarily be raised until the aeroplane is on the ground. If a landing has been missed, the flaps should not be raised until the power has been applied and the aeroplane has regained normal climbing speed. It is then advisable to raise the flaps in stages.

How much flap should be used in landing? Generally speaking, an aeroplane should be landed as slowly as is consistent with safety. This usually calls for the use of full flaps. The use of flaps affects the wing airfoil in two ways. Both lift and drag are increased. The increased lift results in a lower stalling speed and permits a lower touchdown speed. The increased drag permits a steeper approach angle without increasing airspeed. The extra drag of full flaps results in a shorter landing roll.

An aeroplane that lands at 50 knots with full flaps selected may have a landing speed as fast as 70 knots with flaps up. If a swerve occurs during the landing roll, the centrifugal force unleashed at 70 knots is twice what it would be at 50 knots, since centrifugal force increases as the square of the speed. It follows, then, that a slower landing speed reduces the potential for loss of control during the landing roll. It also means

less strain on the tires, brakes and landing gear and reduces fatigue on the airframe structure.

There are, of course, factors which at times call for variance from the procedure of using full flaps on landing. These factors would include the aeroplane's gross weight, the position of the C.G., the approach path to landing, the desired rate of descent and any unfavourable wind conditions, such as a strong crosswind component, gusty winds and extreme turbulence. With experience, a pilot learns to assess these various factors as a guide to flap selection.

In some aeroplanes, in a crosswind condition, the use of full flaps may be inadvisable. Flaps present a greater surface for the wind to act upon when the aeroplane is rolling on the ground. The wing on the side from which the wind is blowing will tend to rise. In addition, a crosswind acting on full flaps increases the weather vaning tendency, although in an aeroplane with very effective rudder control even at slow speeds, the problem is not so severe. However, in many aeroplanes, the selection of full flaps deflects the airflow from passing over the empennage, making the elevator and rudder surfaces ineffective. Positive control of the aeroplane on the ground is greatly hampered. Since maintaining control of the aeroplane throughout the landing roll is of utmost importance, it may be advisable to use less flaps in crosswind conditions. In any case, it is very important to maintain the crosswind correction throughout the landing roll.

2.1.3 The Axes of an Aeroplane

There are three axes around which the aeroplane moves. These axes all pass through the aeroplane's centre of gravity, which is that point which is the centre of the aeroplane's total weight.

The longitudinal axis extends lengthwise through the fuselage from the nose to the tail. Movement of the aeroplane around the longitudinal axis is known as roll and is controlled by movement of the ailerons. To move the ailerons, the pilot turns the control wheel either clockwise or counterclockwise (or moves the control stick either right or left). This action lowers the aileron on one wing and raises the aileron on the other wing. The downgoing aileron increases the camber of its wing, producing more lift and the wing rises. The upgoing aileron spoils the airflow on its wing, decreases the lift and the wing descends. The aeroplane rolls into a turn.

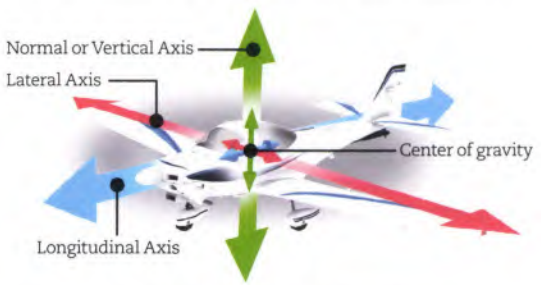


Fig.2.28 **The Axes of an Aeroplane**

The lateral axis extends crosswise from wing tip to wing tip. Movement of the aeroplane around the lateral axis is known as pitch and is controlled by movement of the elevators. To effect a nose-down attitude, the pilot pushes forward on the control wheel or stick. The elevator deflects downward, increasing the camber of the horizontal tail surface and thereby increasing the lift on the tail. To effect a nose-up attitude of the aeroplane, the pilot pulls the wheel toward himself /herself. The elevators are deflected upwards decreasing the lift on the tail, with a resultant downward movement of the tail.

The vertical or normal axis passes vertically through the centre of gravity. Movement of the aeroplane around the vertical axis is yaw and is controlled by movement of the rudder. Pressure applied to the left rudder pedal, for example, deflects the rudder to the left into the airflow. The pressure of the airflow against the rudder pushes the tail to the right. The nose of the aeroplane yaws to the left.

There is a distinct relationship between movement around the vertical and longitudinal axes of an aeroplane (i.e. yaw and roll). When rudder is applied to effect a yaw, to the right for example, the left wing (on the outside of the turn) moves faster than the inside wing, meets the relative airflow at a greater speed and produces more lift. It is apparent, therefore, that the use of rudder along with aileron enhances the lifting capacity of the outside wing and produces a better coordinated turn.

In a roll, the aeroplane has a tendency to yaw away from the intended direction of the turn. This tendency is the result of aileron drag and is called adverse yaw. The upgoing wing, as well as gaining more lift from the increased camber of the downgoing aileron, also experiences more induced drag. The aeroplane, as a result, skids outward on the turn. The coordinated use of rudder and aileron corrects for adverse yaw.

Yaw comes in two varieties: static and dynamic. Dynamic yaw is movement or rotation about the normal axis of the aeroplane. Static yaw is a condition in which the aeroplane is flying with some angle of sideslip, in which the longitudinal axis of the aeroplane is not aligned with the aeroplane's flight path. In a sideslip, the nose of the aeroplane is yawed to the left or to the right. Any change in the sideslip angle would be a form of dynamic yaw.

Balanced Controls

Controls are sometimes dynamically balanced to assist the pilot to move them. Several of the various means by which an aerodynamic reaction is used to serve this purpose are illustrated in Fig.2.29.

By having some of the control surface in front of the hinge, the air striking the forward portion helps to move the control surface in the required direction. The design also helps to counteract adverse yaw when used in aileron design.

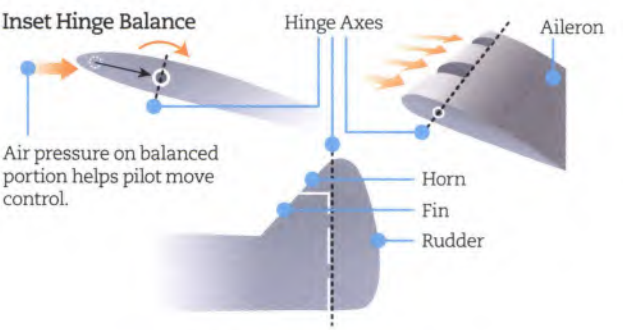


Fig.2.29 **Dynamic Balance**

Control surfaces are sometimes balanced by fitting a mass (usually of lead) of streamline shape in front of the hinge of the control surface. This is called mass balance and is incorporated to prevent flutter of the control surface which is liable to occur at high speeds. The mass may be attached as shown

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

in Fig.2.30 or it may be fitted inside that part of the control surface which lies in front of the hinge when this design feature has been used for the purpose of providing dynamic balance.

Fig.2.30 **Mass Balance**

The exact distribution of weight on a control surface is very important. For this reason, when a control surface is repainted, repaired or component parts replaced, it is essential to check for proper balance and have it rebalanced if necessary. To do this, the control surface is removed, placed in a jig and the position of the centre of gravity checked against the manufacturer's specifications. Without any airflow over the control surface, it must balance about its specified C.G. This is known as static balance. For example, the aileron of the Bonanza is designed for a static nose heavy balance of 0.2 inch pounds. The C.G. of the aileron is forward of the hinge centreline causing the control surface to be nose heavy.

2.1.4 Stability

An aeroplane in flight is constantly subjected to forces that disturb it from its normal horizontal flight path. Rising columns of hot air, downdrafts, gusty winds, etc., make the air "bumpy" and the aeroplane is thrown off its course. Its nose or tail drops or one wing dips. How the aeroplane reacts to such a disturbance from its flight attitude depends on its stability characteristics.

Stability is the tendency of an aeroplane in flight to remain in straight, level, upright flight and to return to this attitude, if displaced, without corrective action by the pilot.

Static stability is the initial tendency of an aeroplane, when disturbed, to return to the original position (the initial "wave" motion in Fig.2.31).

Fig.2.31 **Static & Dynamic Balance**

Dynamic stability is the overall tendency of an aeroplane to return to its original position, following a series of damped out oscillations (the diminishing "wave" pattern in Fig.2.31).

Stability may be (a) positive, meaning the aeroplane will develop forces or moments which tend to restore it to its original position; (b) neutral, meaning the restoring forces are absent and the aeroplane will neither return from its disturbed position nor move further away; (c) negative, meaning it will develop forces or moments which tend to move it further away. Negative stability is, in other words, the condition of instability.

A stable aeroplane is one that will fly "hands off " and is pleasant and easy to handle. An exceedingly stable aeroplane, on the other hand, may lack maneuverability.

An aeroplane which, following a disturbance, oscillates with increasing up and down movements until it eventually stalls or enters a dangerous dive would be said to be unstable, or to have negative dynamic stability.

An aeroplane that has positive dynamic stability does not automatically have positive static stability. The designers may have elected to build in, for example, negative static stability and positive dynamic stability in order to achieve their objective in maneuverability. In other words, negative and positive dynamic and static stability may be incorporated in any combination in any particular design of aeroplane.

An aeroplane may be inherently stable (that is, stable due to features incorporated in the design) but may become unstable due to changes in the position of the centre of gravity (caused by consumption of fuel, improper disposition of the disposable load, etc.).

Stability may be (a) longitudinal, (b) lateral, or (c) directional, depending on whether the disturbance has affected the airframe in the (a) pitching, (b) rolling, or (c) yawing plane.

Longitudinal Stability

Longitudinal stability is stability around the lateral axis of the aeroplane and is called pitch stability.

To obtain longitudinal stability, aeroplanes are designed to be nose heavy when correctly loaded. The centre of gravity is ahead of the centre of pressure.

This design feature is incorporated so that, in the event of engine failure, the aeroplane will assume a normal glide. It is because of this nose heavy characteristic that the aeroplane requires a tailplane. Its function is to resist this diving tendency. The tailplane is set at an angle of incidence that produces a negative lift and thereby, in effect, holds the tail down. In level, trimmed flight, the nose heavy tendency and the negative lift of the tailplane exactly balance each other.

Two principal factors influence longitudinal stability: (1) size and position of the horizontal stabilizer, and (2) position of the centre of gravity.

THE HORIZONTAL STABILIZER

The tailplane, or stabilizer, is placed on the tail end of a lever arm (the fuselage) to provide longitudinal stability. It may be quite small. However, being situated at the end of the lever arm, it has great leverage. When the angle of attack on the wings is increased by a disturbance, the centre of pressure moves forward, tending to turn the nose of the aeroplane up and the tail down. The tailplane, moving down, meets the air at a greater angle of attack, obtains more lift and tends to restore the balance.

On most aeroplanes, the stabilizer appears to be set at an angle of incidence that would produce an upward lift on the tailplane. It must, however, be remembered that the tailplane is in a position to be in the downwash from the wings. The air that strikes the stabilizer has already passed over the wings and been deflected slightly downward. The angle of the downwash is about half the angle of attack of the main airfoils. The proper angle of incidence of the stabilizer is, therefore, very important in order for it to be effective in its function.

CENTRE OF GRAVITY

The centre of gravity is, of course, very important in achieving longitudinal stability. If the aeroplane is loaded with the centre of gravity too far aft, the aeroplane may assume a nose-up rather than a nose-down attitude. The inherent stability will be lacking and, even though down elevator may correct the situation, control of the aeroplane in the

longitudinal plane will be difficult and perhaps, in extreme cases, impossible.

Lateral Stability

Lateral stability is stability around the longitudinal axis and is called roll stability.

Lateral stability is achieved through (1) dihedral, (2) sweepback, (3) keel effect, and (4) proper distribution of weight.

DIHEDRAL

The dihedral angle is the angle that each wing makes with the horizontal (Fig.2.32). The purpose of dihedral is to improve lateral stability.

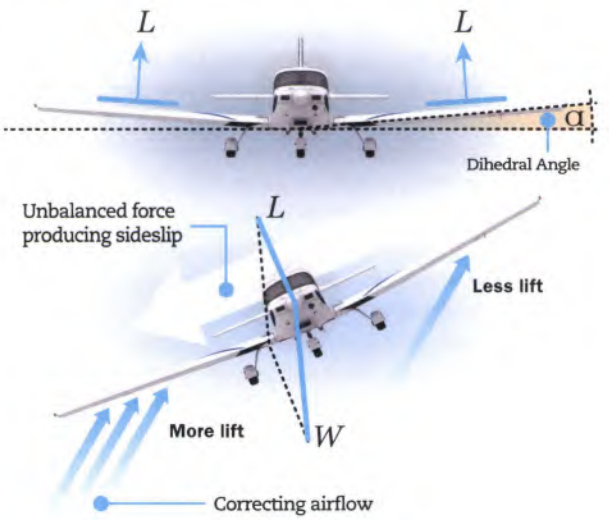


Fig.2.32 **Effect of Dihedral**

If a disturbance causes one wing to drop, the unbalanced force (Fig.2.32) produces a sideslip in the direction of the downgoing wing. This will, in effect, cause a flow of air in the opposite direction to the slip. This flow of air will strike the lower wing at a greater angle of attack than it strikes the upper wing. The lower wing will thus receive more lift and the aeroplane will roll back into its proper position.

Since dihedral inclines the wing to the horizontal, so too will the lift reaction of the wing be inclined from the vertical (Fig.2.32).

Hence an excessive amount of dihedral will, in effect, reduce the lift force opposing weight.

Some modern aeroplanes have a measure of negative dihedral, or anhedral, on the wings and/or stabilizer. The incorporation of this feature provides some advantages in overall design in certain types of aeroplanes. However, it does have an effect, probably adverse, on lateral stability.

KEEL EFFECT

Dihedral is more usually a feature on low wing aeroplanes, although some dihedral may be incorporated in high wing aeroplanes as well.

Most high wing aeroplanes are laterally stable simply because the wings are attached in a high position on the fuselage and because the weight is therefore low. When the aeroplane is disturbed and one wing dips, the weight acts as a pendulum returning the aeroplane to its original attitude.

SWEEPBACK

A sweptback wing is one in which the leading edge slopes backward.

When a disturbance causes an aeroplane with sweepback to slip or drop a wing, the low wing presents its leading edge at an angle that is perpendicular to the relative airflow. As a result, the low wing acquires more lift, rises and the aeroplane is restored to its original flight attitude.

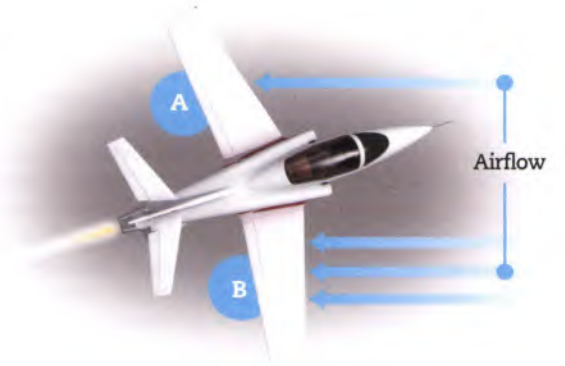


Fig.2.33 **Sweepback**

Sweepback also contributes to directional stability. When turbulence or rudder application causes the aeroplane to yaw to one side (for example, the left as in Fig.2.33), the right wing (B) presents a longer leading edge perpendicular to the relative airflow. The airspeed of the right wing increases and it acquires more drag than the left wing (A). The additional drag on the right wing pulls it back, yawing the aeroplane back to its original path.

Directional Stability

Directional stability is stability around the vertical or normal axis.

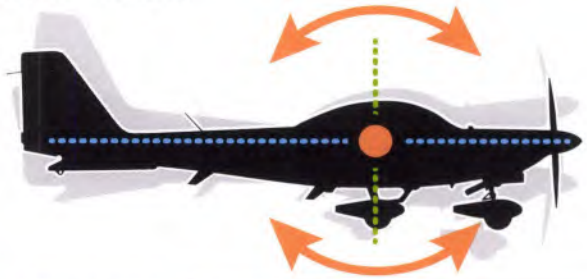
The most important feature that affects directional stability is the vertical tail surface, that is, the fin and rudder. Keel effect and sweepback also contribute to directional stability to some degree.

THE FIN

An aeroplane has the tendency always to fly head on into the relative airflow. This tendency which might be described as weather-vaning is directly attributable to the vertical tail fin and to some extent also the vertical side areas of the fuselage. If the aeroplane yaws away from its course, the airflow strikes the vertical tail surface from the side and forces it back to its original line of flight. In order for the tail surfaces to function properly in this weather vaning capacity, the side area of the aeroplane aft of the centre of gravity must be greater than the side area of the aeroplane forward of the C.G. If it were otherwise, the aeroplane would tend to rotate about its vertical axis.

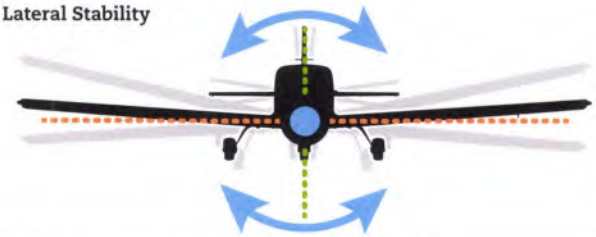
© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Longitudinal Stability



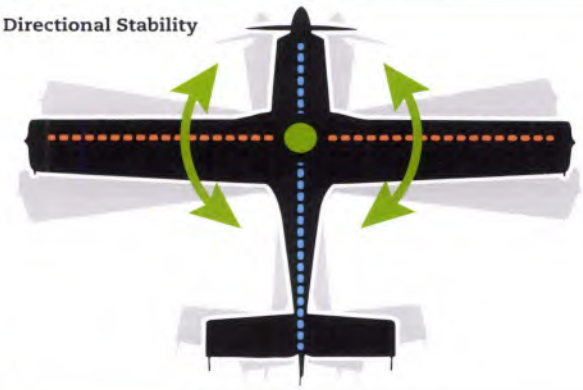
Stability Type	Longitudinal
Plane of Disturbance	Pitch
Axis of Occurrence	Lateral
Summary	Is stability in the pitching plane Is stability about the lateral axis Is known as "Pitch Stability" To be longitudinally stable, an aircraft must have a natural tendency to return to the same attitude in pitch after any disturbance.

Lateral Stability



Stability Type	Lateral
Plane of Disturbance	Roll
Axis of Occurrence	Longitudinal
Summary	Is stability in the rolling plane Is stability about the longitudinal axis Is known as "Roll Stability" To be laterally stable, an aircraft must have a natural tendency to return to the same attitude in roll after any disturbance.

Directional Stability



Stability Type	Directional
Plane of Disturbance	Yaw
Axis of Occurrence	Vertical
Summary	Is stability in the yawing plane Is stability about the vertical (normal) axis Is known as "Yaw Stability" To be directionally stable, an aircraft must have a natural tendency to return to the same attitude in yaw after any disturbance.

Fig.2.34 Summary of Stability & Stability Effects

2.1.5 Flight Performance Factors

Torque

The propeller usually rotates clockwise, as seen from the pilot's seat. The reaction to the spinning propeller causes the aeroplane to rotate counterclockwise to the left. This left turning tendency is called torque. The designer of the aeroplane compensates for torque in cruising flight by building a slight right turning tendency into the aeroplane. For example, the left wing may have a slightly greater angle of incidence than the right wing. Aileron trim tabs also are used to compensate for torque.

On take-off, torque affects directional control. Use of right rudder during the take-off roll corrects this condition.

Asymmetric Thrust

Another left turning tendency is the result of asymmetric thrust, or P Factor. At high angles of attack and high power settings, such as during take-off, the descending blade of the propeller (on the pilot's right) has a greater angle of attack than the ascending blade. This situation produces more lift from the right side of the propeller with a consequent yawing to the left. Right rudder pressure compensates for this tendency. Asymmetric thrust is significant only at high angles of attack. In level flight, both blades of the propeller meet the relative airflow equally and produce equal thrust.

On a twin-engine aircraft where both engines turn clockwise, losing the left engine is more critical to flight than losing the right, as far as P Factor is concerned. The asymmetrical disk loading on the right engine propeller, being further from the aircraft's C.G. than that for the left engine propeller, gives greater leverage to the right engine. Such a resulting scenario increases the aircraft's minimum single-engine control speed (V_{MC}) when the left engine is out. With counter-rotating propellers, the left engine turns clockwise and the right turns counterclockwise. The leverage effect is then minimized.

Precession

The spinning propeller of an aeroplane acts like a gyroscope. One of the characteristics of a gyroscope is rigidity in space; that is, the rotating gyro tends to stay in the same plane of rotation and resists any change in that plane. If forced to change, precession results.

If an aeroplane changes suddenly from a nose-up to a nose-down position, as is the case during the take-off roll in a tailwheel aeroplane, the aeroplane will yaw sharply to the left as the pilot shoves the wheel forward to raise the tail. The application of right rudder compensates for the precession tendency.

Slipstream

The air pushed backward by a revolving propeller has a corkscrew motion. This causes an increased pressure on one side of the tail unit and a decreased pressure on the other side. The tail is consequently pushed sideways from the high pressure side towards the low, causing the aeroplane to yaw. The condition is corrected by offsetting the fin, or by offsetting the engine thrust line, or by fitting trim tabs on the rudder, or by a combination of two or all of these methods. In some aeroplanes, the rudder trim is adjustable by a control in the cockpit. In this way, the pilot is better able to compensate for the

changes in pressure on the rudder as the aeroplane changes from climbing power, to cruise, to gliding.

The revolving slipstream from the propeller causes an aeroplane, especially tailwheel aeroplanes, as the throttle is opened to commence the take-off roll, to yaw to the left. As the airspeed increases, the tendency is less pronounced. Right rudder compensates.

Fig.2.35 **Slipstream**

It may be of interest at this point to mention the relative effects of the slipstreams of pusher and tractor type propellers. The tractor type of propeller located at the nose of the aeroplane pushes high speed turbulent air back over the aeroplane, thereby increasing considerably the drag of the fuselage and wing root sections. A pusher type of propeller, located at the rear of the aeroplane, allows better high speed performance due to the reduction of this drag. Because the tractor propeller bites into "clean" air, its efficiency is good whereas the pusher propeller bites into disturbed air. Nevertheless, from the standpoint of overall efficiency, the pusher propeller configuration is considered to have more to offer in performance benefits.

Climbing

The engine produces the energy that keeps an aeroplane flying. The throttle controls the output of this energy. **It is the function of the elevators to divide the energy, produced by the engine in the form of thrust, into speed and altitude.** The elevator does this by controlling the angle of attack of the wings. If, with no change in the thrust, the angle of attack is decreased, less energy is required to maintain lift and more of the total energy output is utilized to produce an increase in speed. If the angle of attack is increased, more energy is required to maintain lift and less energy is available for speed. If the pilot puts some back pressure on the control column (with no change in throttle setting), the aeroplane will climb and lose airspeed. Conversely, if the pilot puts some forward pressure on the control column (with no change in throttle setting), the aeroplane will descend and build up airspeed.

During level flight, the engine must produce a thrust equal to the drag of the aeroplane for the aeroplane to be in a state of equilibrium. If the power is increased, the pilot can maintain level flight at an increased speed by putting the nose down slightly (i.e. decreasing the angle of attack). If the pilot does not change the angle of attack, the aeroplane will begin to climb as a result of the increased thrust, since the increased speed of the relative airflow over the airfoils will produce more lift. By adjusting power (i.e. choosing any setting between that needed for normal, straight-and-level cruise and full power) and by varying the angle of attack, the pilot can flatten or steepen the angle of climb and the airspeed in the climb.

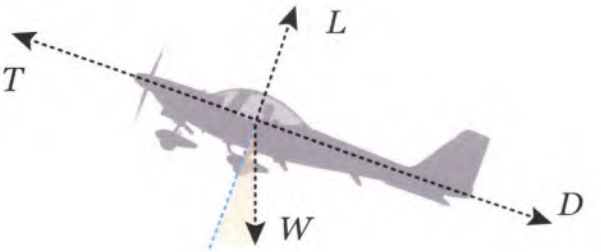


Fig.2.36 **Forces in a Climb**

Once established in a steady state of climb condition, the aeroplane is again in a state of equilibrium. In the climb attitude, the aeroplane is inclined away from the horizontal and, as a result, part of the weight acts rearward and combines with drag. Thrust, therefore, equals drag plus a component of weight, and lift equals weight less that component of weight that is acting rearward.

The ability of an aeroplane to climb is dependent on the extra power that is available from the engine. At ever increasing altitudes, the density of the air decreases and the power of the engine drops off. The climb, therefore, becomes increasingly more shallow as greater altitudes are reached until further climbing is impossible. The aeroplane has then reached its absolute ceiling.

Every aeroplane has a best rate of climb (V_y). This is the rate of climb which will gain the most altitude in the **least time.** For every aeroplane there is an airspeed at a given power setting which will give the best rate of climb. The best rate of climb is normally used on take-off (after any obstacles are cleared) and is maintained until the aeroplane leaves the traffic circuit.

The best angle of climb (V_x) is the angle which will gain the most altitude in a **given distance**. It is valuable in climbing out of restricted areas over obstacles. The airspeed for the steepest angle of climb is somewhat lower than the speed at which the best rate of climb is obtained. Because the airspeed for the best angle of climb is relatively slow, there is less air circulating around the engine to provide cooling and engine overheating is possible. The best angle of climb, therefore, should be maintained only until obstacles are cleared and then the nose of the aeroplane should be lowered to pick up the best rate of climb airspeed.

Every pilot should determine the airspeed for best rate of climb and for best angle of climb for the particular aeroplane they are flying. These airspeeds are usually given in the Pilot's Operating Handbook. However, it is necessary to bear in mind that these speeds will vary according to the gross weight of the aeroplane.

The rate of climb is not affected by the wind, since it is a vertical measurement of aeroplane performance and is not in any way related to groundspeed.

The angle of climb, on the other hand, is appreciably affected by the wind. When climbing into wind, the aeroplane moves over the ground at a lower speed and therefore takes longer to cover a given forward distance. The stronger the wind, the slower the ground speed, the steeper the angle of climb.

Normal climb is a rate of climb that should be used in any prolonged cruise climb. The airspeed for normal climb is always indicated in the Pilot's Operating Handbook. It is a speed that is usually 5 to 10 knots faster than the airspeed for best rate of climb and as such provides better engine cooling, easier control and better visibility over the nose.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Gliding

In gliding, there is no power from the engine and the aeroplane is under the influence of gravity. Of the four forces, thrust is now absent and a state of equilibrium must be maintained by lift, drag and weight only.

In Fig.2.37. Forces in a Glide, R represents the total reaction, i.e. resultant of lift and drag. This is equal and opposite to weight.

The angle at which the pilot chooses to glide determines the airspeed in the glide. The steeper the angle, the faster the airspeed; the shallower the angle, the slower the airspeed. At too fast an airspeed, structural damage to the airframe could result. At too slow an airspeed, the aeroplane could stall. The pilot must, therefore, choose a gliding angle that maintains an airspeed that is sufficient to maintain flight but not too fast to be unsafe.

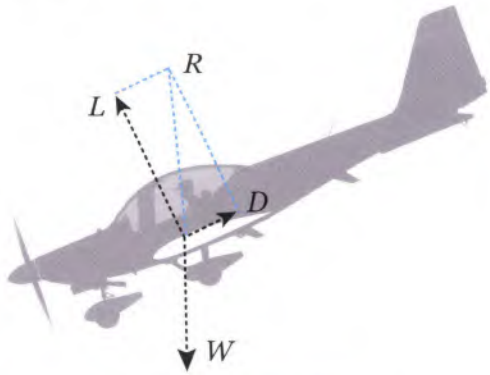


Fig.2.37 **Forces in a Glide**

When gliding with the power off, the aeroplane will tend to glide about 20% farther if the propeller is stopped than if it is windmilling. The stopped propeller produces drag that is equal only to the parasite drag of its configuration. The propeller that is spinning acts as a windmill driving the engine, but without producing power. The power required to rotate the propeller and consequently the engine of the aeroplane is derived from the airflow and is about 10% of the rated power of the engine. The energy required to drive the propeller that is not producing positive thrust is therefore negative thrust or drag. Windmilling the propeller is like coasting an automobile in gear. The windmilling propeller in a tractor engine configuration directs disturbed air back over the lifting surfaces, inhibiting lift and creating drag. (Stopping a non-feathering propeller in flight should be done only in the event of an engine failure when there is no chance of restarting the failed engine. The process of raising the nose and stopping the propeller takes skill and should be attempted only if you are confident of your ability to perform the procedure.)

GLIDING ANGLE

Best glide speed for range refers to the farthest distance that an aeroplane will glide at the airspeed which results in an angle of attack that gives the maximum lift/drag ratio. This airspeed represents the optimum glide, a combination of airspeed and sink rate that allows an aeroplane to glide the farthest distance for altitude lost. This airspeed, also called optimum glide, maximum distance glide or gliding for range, is given in the Pilot's Operating Handbook.

If the pilot attempts to glide at an angle of attack either greater or less than that which gives the maximum L/D ratio, then in each case, the range will be decreased. If the angle of attack is decreased so that the airspeed increases, drag also increases and the path of descent will be steeper in still air. If the angle of attack is increased to flatten the glide, up to a certain point the rate of descent will decrease. However, the airspeed also decreases and the resultant decrease in speed over the ground means a steeper glide angle and reduced range.

Another factor which affects the glide path is, of course, the wind. A strong headwind or tailwind will tend to steepen or flatten the glide as the case may be.

When gliding into a fairly strong wind, greater distance may be covered over the ground if the nose of the aeroplane is kept somewhat lower than the attitude for best L/D ratio. For one thing, the increase in airspeed will yield an increase in ground speed which, in this case and contrary to gliding in still air or very light winds, will yield a shallower glide path. Secondly, by gliding at a slightly higher airspeed, the aeroplane will complete its glide in less time, having been subjected to the headwind for a shorter duration.

Best glide speed for endurance refers to the airspeed that is slightly less than that which gives the maximum L/D ratio and which is used to achieve minimum sink. Sometimes, the object is to remain in the air for the longest period of time rather than to cover the greatest distance. Pilot's Operating Handbooks do not usually designate an airspeed for minimum sink since for most general aviation aeroplanes, it is not appreciably different from the airspeed for maximum L/D ratio. It is an airspeed of importance, however, under certain conditions and it is one with which glider pilots especially are very familiar. It can generally be calculated as being approximately 1.1 times the power-off stalling speed.

POWER APPROACH

The technique of gliding should be mastered by the student pilot in case at some time during their career they should have to make a forced landing with engine failure. The normal method of descent for landing, however, is the power approach. By applying power, the glide path may be flattened and the rate of descent more accurately controlled. Power approaches are advisable for light aeroplanes when landing in high winds or in gusty air conditions. Power approaches and power assisted landings are normally used when making landings on soft snow, sand or mud and by seaplanes landing on glassy water. To make a power approach: (1) reduce power; (2) allow the aeroplane to slow to approach speed; (3) adjust to desired angle of descent; (4) maintain constant airspeed and regulate rate of descent by manipulation of power. The normally recommended airspeed for power-on approaches to short field landings is 1.3 times the power-off stalling speed.

Turns

To make an aeroplane turn, the wings are rolled away from the normal horizontal position of level flight. The lift force, which always acts at 90° to the wing span, is, in a turn, inclined away from the vertical. Therefore, the vertical forces of lift and weight are no longer in balance, that is, are no longer in equilibrium. The aeroplane will descend unless the angle of attack is increased to produce more lift.

In a turn, the lift force has two components: one acting vertically and one acting horizontally. The vertical component opposes weight, while the horizontal component makes the aeroplane turn. This horizontal force is known as centripetal force and it counteracts the centrifugal force that, in a turn, tends to pull the aeroplane to the outside of the turn.

In Fig.2.38, OW represents the weight of the aeroplane. The vertical component OA balances the weight of the aeroplane.

OC represents the centripetal force necessary to counteract centrifugal force. OL is the resultant total lift factor.

The steeper the angle of bank, the more total lift is required to produce a level turn. The vertical component of the lift force must remain sufficient to compensate for weight. As the angle of bank increases, the total lift must be increased to provide sufficient centripetal force to overcome the increasing centrifugal force. This is accomplished by increasing the angle of attack by back pressure on the control column.

The steeper the angle of bank (for any given airspeed): (a) the greater the rate of turn; (b) the less the radius of turn; (c) the higher the stalling speed; (d) the greater the loading.

The higher the airspeed (for any given angle of bank): (a) the slower the rate of turn; (b) the larger the radius of turn.

Climbing and descending turns are executed like level turns. The factors acting on an aeroplane executing a climbing or descending turn are the same as those acting on the aeroplane in a level turn, except that, instead of maintaining a constant attitude, a constant climb or descent is maintained. In addition, there are considerations regarding power and attitude control.

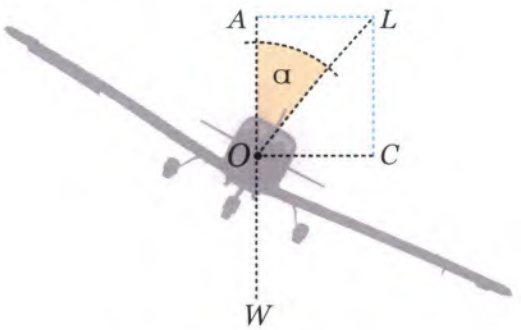


Fig.2.38 **Forces Acting in a Turn**

In a climbing turn, extra power over and above cruise power is required to achieve the climb configuration. In a descending turn, it is necessary to reduce power in varying degrees from cruise power to power fully off in order to achieve the descent speed and angle that is desired and that is safe and within limits.

The lateral stability of an aeroplane in a climbing or descending turn is affected by the angle at which the relative airflow meets each wing. In a descending turn, the inner wing, turning on a smaller radius, meets the relative airflow at a greater angle of attack and obtains more lift. The outer wing, however, because it is travelling faster also obtains more lift. The one compensates for the other and, therefore, in a descending turn, the angle of bank tends to remain constant.

In a climbing turn, the inner wing, describing an upward spiral, meets the relative airflow at the smaller angle of attack than the outer wing which is obtaining extra lift both from its extra speed and its greater angle of attack. Therefore, the angle of bank will tend to increase in a climbing turn.

LOAD FACTORS IN TURNS

In straight-and-level flight, an aeroplane has a load factor of 1, or 1G. Turns increase the load factor. The steeper the angle of bank, the greater the load factor. A 60° turn produces a load factor of 2, making the effective weight of an aeroplane twice its normal weight. If an aeroplane weighs 2,500 pounds in level flight, in a 60° turn, it will have an equivalent weight of 5,000 pounds. A very steep turn may impose an increase in the loading as high as ten times the normal load. With some types of light aeroplanes, a bank of 80° or over can result in possible structural failure.

By reference to Fig.2.39, it is readily apparent that the G load on the aeroplane structure increases with the angle of bank. However, other maneuvers than just turns impose high load factors on the aeroplane.

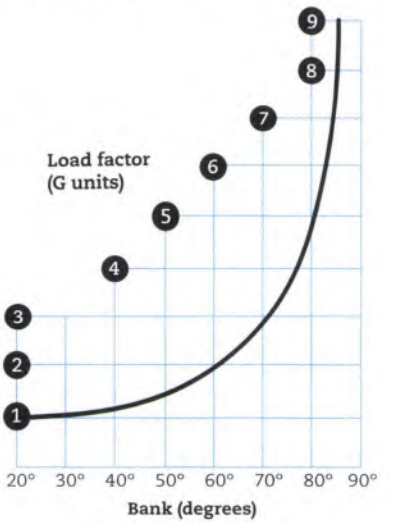


Fig.2.39 **Load Factors in a Turn**

For example, when an aeroplane is pitched up more or less abruptly, the load factor is increased correspondingly. Therefore, while in a turn, should the pilot cause the aeroplane to abruptly pitch up, the G forces resulting from the pitching maneuver will be added to those caused by banking the aeroplane. The combined load factor may exceed the design limits of the aeroplane. As a result pilots should be cautious about conducting maneuvers which require excessive movement of the controls in more than one plane.

Stall

A stall occurs when the wing is no longer capable of producing sufficient lift to counteract the weight of the aeroplane. A smooth laminar flow of air over the wing is necessary to produce lift. The stall occurs when the angle of attack is increased to the point where the steady streamlined flow of air is unable to follow the upper camber of the airfoil. The airflow separates from the wing, becomes turbulent or "burbles", the downwash and pressure differential are greatly reduced and loss of lift occurs. The aeroplane ceases to fly. This is called the stall condition.

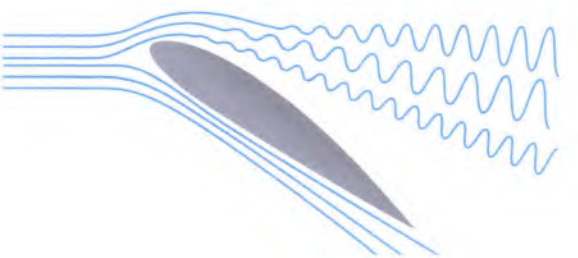


Fig.2.40 **Stall**

The point at which the airflow pulls away from the wing is called the separation point.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

At high cruising speeds, the positive angle of attack is very low and the separation point is near the trailing edge of the wing. At slower speeds, the angle of attack must be increased to maintain a constant altitude and the separation point moves forward. When the angle of attack is increased to the point that the separation point moves forward far enough to exceed the design factor of the wing, the wing must stall. The stalling angle is commonly in the vicinity of 20° but varies with the shape of the airfoil.

An aeroplane will stall if the critical angle of attack is exceeded. It will stall at any airspeed if the critical angle of attack is exceeded. It will stall at any attitude if the critical angle of attack is exceeded.

Since few light aeroplanes have an angle of attack indicator, airspeed must be used as a guide in identifying the approach to a stall. On some aeroplanes, the approaching condition can be recognized by a light buffeting on the airframe as the air begins to burble over the wing. This buffeting may also be felt in the control wheel. As the angle of attack is further increased, the buffeting becomes more general and lateral control drops sharply as the ailerons lose their effectiveness in the separated airflow. When fully stalled, the wings lose all lift and the nose of the aeroplane drops.

On most aeroplanes, the stall occurs gradually. Because of the washout of the wings, the wing roots will stall before the wing tips. The alert pilot will recognize the symptoms and take corrective action while there is still aileron control and before all lift is lost.

The high lift airfoil, with a curved upper surface and a nearly flat bottom surface, generally stalls at a lower speed and a greater angle of attack than the more efficient high speed symmetrical or laminar flow airfoil commonly used in general aviation aeroplanes today.

An aeroplane properly loaded will stall at an indicated airspeed somewhere near the stalling speed published in the Pilot's Operating Handbook. This stalling speed, for all practical purposes, remains the same regardless of altitude.

It must be remembered that aeroplane attitude, airspeed and angle of attack are not consistently related.

FACTORS AFFECTING STALL

A number of factors affect the stall of an aircraft. These factors are listed immediately below, and their respective impacts are described thereafter.

1. Weight.
2. Centre of Gravity.
3. Turbulence.
4. Turns.
5. Flaps.
6. Snow, Frost and Ice.
7. Heavy Rain.

Weight affects the stalling speed of an aeroplane. Weight added to an aeroplane requires that it be operated at a higher angle of attack to produce the lift necessary to support that weight. Therefore, the critical angle of attack will be reached at a higher airspeed.

Centre of Gravity location affects the stalling speed of an aeroplane. As the weight distribution moves within the allowable C.G. limits, the stalling speed as well as stability characteristics will be affected. As the aeroplane's centre of gravity moves from the most aft allowable position towards the most forward allowable position, the aeroplane's stalling speed will increase. The download on the horizontal tail surfaces increases as the aeroplane's centre of gravity moves forward. This download can be considered as part of the aeroplane's weight since it acts in the same direction as the weight force. Stalling speed, as we know, increases as the weight increases.

Turbulence affects stall speed of an aeroplane. An upward vertical gust causes an abrupt increase in angle of attack because of the change in direction of the air relative to the wing and could result in a stall if the airspeed of the aeroplane is at the same time relatively low.

Turns affect the stalling speed of an aeroplane. As the angle of bank increases, the amount of lift required to sustain level flight also increases because of the increasing load factor that is integral to the action of banking an aeroplane. To increase lift, the pilot must increase the angle of attack of the airfoils. Therefore, in a turn, the stall angle is reached at a higher airspeed than in level flight. Most Pilot's Operating Handbook have a chart similar to Fig.2.42 that depicts the stalling speed at various angles of bank. There is, however, a fairly simple formula for determining stalling speed: normal stalling speed times the square root of the load factor being imposed. Typical load factor values and their square roots are shown in the following table:

Degree of Bank	Load Factor	Square Root
15°	1.04	1.02
30°	1.15	1.07
45°	1.41	1.19
60°	2.00	1.41
75°	3.86	1.96

Fig.2.41 **Typical Load Factors & their Square Roots**

Flaps affect the stall speed of an aeroplane. The use of flaps, by increasing the lift potential of the wing, results in a reduction in the stall speed, as indicated in Fig.2.42.

Snow, Frost and Ice affect the stall characteristics of an aeroplane. An accumulation of frost, snow or ice on the wings will substantially alter the lifting characteristics of the airfoil and cause an increase in the stall speed and a decrease in the stall angle of attack. Even a very light layer of frost spoils the smooth flow of air over the airfoil by separating the vital boundary layer air. The airflow separates much farther forward than would normally be expected for the particular angle of attack. Lift is reduced substantially, the stall angle is decreased and the stalling airspeed is increased.

Stall Speed, Power OFF			
Gross Weight 2800 lbs.	Angle of Bank		
Configuration	0°	30°	60°
Flaps Up	64	69	91
Flaps 20°	57	61	81
Flaps 40°	55	59	78

Fig.2.42 **Stall Chart**

On the clean airfoil in Fig.2.43, the separation point between the laminar and the turbulent airflow occurs near the trailing edge and the downwash angle is high. Downwash angle, it must be remembered, is a very important function of lift. On the frost covered airfoil in Fig.2.44, the separation point has moved much further forward, despite the fact that the angle of attack of the two airfoils is the same (about 12° which is about the angle for best angle of climb). The downwash angle is substantially reduced, as is lift.

It is contrary to air regulations to take off in an aeroplane that has frost, snow or ice adhering to any of its critical surfaces. Critical surfaces are the wings, control surfaces, rotors, propellers, horizontal stabilizers, vertical stabilizers or any other stabilizing surfaces of the aeroplane and, in the case of an aeroplane that has rear mounted engines, the upper surface of the fuselage.

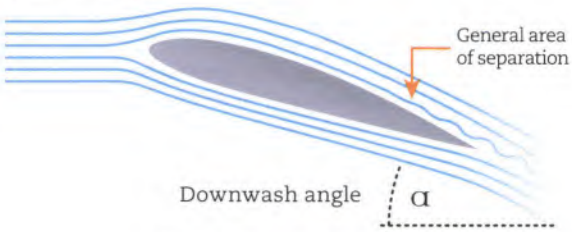


Fig.2.43 **Clean Airfoil Separation**

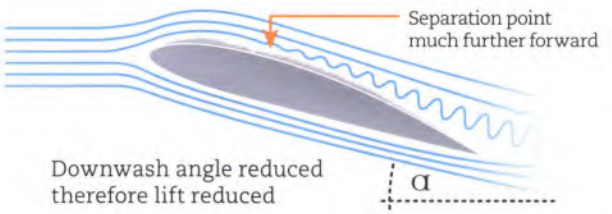


Fig.2.44 **Contaminated Airfoil Separation**

This is known as the clean aircraft concept and it is essential to the maintenance of flight safety. The critical surfaces must be inspected and determined to be free of contamination prior to take-off. Any accumulation of snow, frost or ice must be removed by placing the aeroplane in a heated hangar or by using approved de-icing solutions and/or methods. It is not acceptable to rely on the aeroplane's de-icing and anti-icing devices to do the job after take-off.

Frost, ice or snow formations that have a thickness and surface roughness comparable to medium or coarse sandpaper can reduce wing lift by as much as 30% and increase drag by as much as 40%. With a coating of frost such as this that appears relatively thin and insignificant, the aeroplane may manage to take off but as soon as the nose is raised to climb away, a stall may result at an angle of attack that would normally, on a clean wing, represent a safe climbing angle. The loss of lift and the decrease in the stalling angle of attack is not just the result of contamination of the wing surface but also, and perhaps most significantly, the contamination of the leading edge of the wing.

If a minimal coating of frost can have such a detrimental effect on lifting capacity, an accumulation of snow and ice will be even worse. It is possible for the stalling speed to be increased to such a degree that the aeroplane cannot reach a speed sufficient to achieve take-off, or if having achieved take-off, to maintain flight. The weight of an accumulation of ice or snow, of course, adds to the total weight of the aeroplane but the weight factor is secondary to the effect the accumulation has on the airflow over the wing. Frost, snow, ice and slush should always be removed before take-off.

Dirt and bugs also disrupt the smooth surface and should be removed so that the surface is clean and uncontaminated.

It should never be assumed that loose snow or slush, or even water, will blow off during the take-off run. In fact, these may very well freeze to the wing and tail surfaces during take-off. There is evidence to show that there is a temperature decrease in the airflow over the wing as the pressure drops and lift is created. The temperature drop is only a few degrees, but, under the right conditions at ambient temperatures very near the freezing point, the airfoil surfaces could be cooled sufficiently during the take-off roll for any liquid to change to ice.

In aeroplanes where fuel tanks are located in the wings, the temperature of the fuel can significantly affect the surface temperature of the wing above and below these tanks. After a flight, the temperature of the fuel may be considerably colder than the ambient temperature and, depending on certain variables such as the water content of the precipitation and the wing surface temperature, clear ice may form on the wings above the fuel tanks. Such clear ice is hard to detect. This phenomenon is called cold soaking. Cold soaking can also cause frost to form on the wing under conditions of high relative humidity. This is a phenomenon that can occur in above freezing temperatures. In such instances, the frost tends to re-form quickly even when it has been removed.

On the other hand, warm fuel that is loaded into fuel tanks on a cold day may melt snow around the tanks. This liquid may then refreeze before take-off.

See also **Icing** in Chapter **Meteorology** and **Critical Surface Contamination** in Chapter **Airmanship**.

Heavy Rain affects the stalling speed of an aeroplane. Recent studies have indicated that an aircraft exposed to heavy rain experiences a loss of lift and an increase in drag as a result of the effect the rain has on the boundary layer and the surface of the airfoil. The rain drops that strike the leading edge are accelerated backward into the boundary layer and decrease air flow velocity. This causes premature separation of the boundary layer, an increase in drag and early stall.

The rain also causes a roughness of the airfoil surface. A thin water film forms on the surface. Raindrop impact craters and surface waves in the water film roughen the airfoil surface. The effect on lift and drag is not unlike that caused by frost.

It is possible that the aircraft may stall before the stall warning devices activate. These devices provide a warning signal just prior to the normal stall angle of attack. Airfoils contaminated with ice, snow, frost or heavy rain stall at an angle of attack much lower than this predetermined value.

Laminar airfoils are very sensitive to any surface roughness that changes the nature of the boundary layer and can be expected to be affected by heavy rain. Aircraft with a canard have also been shown to experience control difficulties in heavy rain.

The effect of heavy rain is more pronounced in high-lift configurations such as during take-off. The most significant and devastating decreases in aerodynamic performance are believed to be caused by torrential downpours associated with showers and thunderstorms.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Obviously the key to preventing the problems associated with heavy rain is to avoid the phenomenon. Do not penetrate heavy rain cells when landing, taking off or going around. Unfortunately, such heavy downpours cannot be predicted. If caught in one, expect a significant increase in descent rate and a decrease in airspeed.

STALL WARNING DEVICES

Many light aeroplanes are fitted with a stall warning. This is a device which measures the angle of attack by means, usually, of a small hole in the wing, or a vane extending forward of the leading edge of the wing. When the critical angle of attack is approached, it activates a warning device in the cockpit. Depending on the aircraft, the warning usually occurs five to ten knots before an aerodynamic stall occurs. The warning device can sometimes be a red light or a bell, but it is most often a very audible buzzer or horn.

The stall warning device is, however, calibrated to perform under clean wing conditions. It does not recognize the degraded performance of a contaminated wing and it cannot, therefore, be relied upon to give warning of an impending stall in icing conditions.

The best stall warning device is the pilot's training and experience in reaction to stalls. All pilots receive training in stalls but, after receiving their licence, many have such an aversion to them that they never go out and practice slow flight and stalls again. It is important for pilots to practice stalls sufficiently often to develop an instinctive recognition of an incipient stall and an automatic reaction to avoid it.

STALL RECOVERY

Because insufficient lift is being generated by the wings to maintain flight, a stalled aeroplane starts to lose altitude. To recover from a stall, the pilot can:

1. Lower the nose to decrease the angle of attack, or
2. Apply more power to accelerate the aeroplane. If, however, the aeroplane is already under full power when the stall occurs, the only option for recovery from the stall is to lower the nose of the aeroplane.

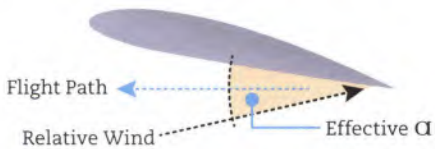


Fig.2.45 **Downgoing Wing**

SPINNING

Spinning may be defined as autorotation which develops after an aggravated stall.

When a wing is stalled, an increase in the angle of attack will decrease lift. If a disturbance causes a stalled aeroplane to drop one wing, or if rudder is applied to produce a yaw, the downgoing wing will have a greater angle of attack to the relative airflow, will receive less lift and will tend to drop more rapidly (Fig.2.45). Drag on the down-going wing increases sharply increasing the angle of attack of the downgoing wing still further and stalling it further. The nose of the aeroplane drops and autorotation sets in.

The upgoing wing will have a relative downward airflow, hence a **decreased** angle of attack and **increased lift**, and will rise more rapidly (Fig.2.46).

The effect is to **accelerate** the rolling moment in the direction in which it first started. This is spinning.

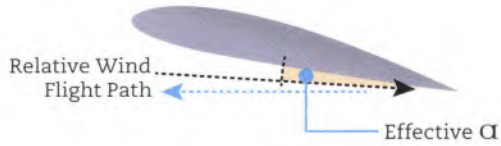


Fig.2.46 **Upgoing Wing**

Any attempt to correct a spin with aileron will only aggravate the roll. If the aileron on the downgoing wing is moved downward to bring the wing up, it will meet the airflow at a higher angle of attack and will therefore become more stalled than the wing itself. The upgoing aileron, on the other hand, will be unstalled and will have increased lift.

The spinning motion involves rolling, yawing and pitching. The aeroplane follows a helical or corkscrew path nose downward, rotating about a vertical axis. Pitch attitudes may vary from flat to steep. Forward and vertical speeds are both comparatively low.

The view from the cockpit is a steep, nose-down attitude with a rolling motion about the spin axis. The airspeed is near stall. An angle of attack indicator (if installed) would show a fully stalled condition. The turn needle is fully deflected in the direction of the spin and the rate of descent is rapid. The G force acting on the aeroplane is 1.

The spin maneuver consists of three stages. The incipient stage occurs from the time the aeroplane stalls and rotation starts until the spin axis becomes vertical or nearly vertical. In the developed stage, the angles and motions of the aeroplane are stabilized and the flight path is nearly vertical. The third stage is recovery.

The aim in recovery from a spin is to upset the balance between the aerodynamic and inertia movements. Spin characteristics of different aeroplanes necessarily differ and the technique for spin recovery outlined in the Pilot's Operating Handbook must be followed. In the absence of manufacturer's recommendations, however, most light aeroplanes can be brought out of a spin by following these steps.

1. Power to idle, ailerons neutralized.
2. Apply and hold full rudder opposite to the direction of rotation.
3. Control column positively forward far enough to unstall the aeroplane.
4. When rotation stops, neutralize the rudder, level the wings and recover smoothly from the resulting dive.

Spiral Dive

A spiral dive is a steep descending turn in which the aeroplane is in an excessively nose-down attitude. Excessive angle of bank, rapidly increasing airspeed and rapidly increasing rate of descent characterize it. It is, in fact, a hazardous maneuver. Structural damage can occur to the aeroplane if the airspeed is allowed to increase beyond normal limits. Excessive load factors may be produced in the pull up from the dive during recovery.

In some ways, a spiral dive resembles a spin. Don't confuse the two. In a spin, the airspeed is constant and low. In a spiral, the airspeed increases rapidly.

Recovery from a spiral dive must be taken promptly and in this sequence.

1. Close the throttle and level the wings as nearly simultaneously as possible.
2. Keep straight.
3. Ease out of the dive.
4. Apply power as required to maintain altitude.

2.1.6 Airspeed Limitations

Airspeed is the rate of movement of an aeroplane relative to the air mass through which it is flying. It is thrust impeded by drag. All airspeeds are a balance between thrust and drag, pitch attitude and power setting.

Loads greater than the weight of the aeroplane are produced by certain maneuvers and by gust conditions. In straight-and-level flight, the lift is equal to the weight. But an increase in speed will produce an increase in lift, which, in turn, will cause the aeroplane to climb. In order to maintain level flight when the airspeed is increased, the angle of attack must be reduced. An aeroplane flying in turbulent air may be subjected to severe vertical gusts which will, in effect, change the angle of attack on the wings. If the aeroplane is flying too slowly, the increased angle of attack may be great enough to cause the wings to stall. If, on the other hand, the aeroplane is flying too fast, the vertical acceleration may impose a load factor on the wings in excess of what they are strong enough to bear. For this reason, certain speeds are established by the manufacturer of each particular aeroplane and specified in the aircraft's Pilot's Operating Handbook.

NEVER EXCEED SPEED/MAXIMUM PERMISSIBLE DIVE SPEED (V_{NE})

This is the maximum speed at which the aeroplane can be safely operated in smooth air. A higher speed may result in structural failure, flutter, or loss of control. (If you ever find yourself over the Never Exceed Speed inadvertently, throttle back and execute pull-outs with slow and firm pressure on the controls.)

MAXIMUM STRUCTURAL CRUISE SPEED/ NORMAL OPERATING LIMIT SPEED (V_{NO})

This is the cruise speed for which the aeroplane was designed and is the maximum safe speed at which the aeroplane should be operated in the normal category. Warning: do not ever exceed this speed intentionally, even during descent, because of the possibility of unexpected gust loads. The speed range between V_{NO} and V_{NE} (erroneously described as the caution range) should never be entered deliberately during normal operation.

MANEUVERING SPEED (V_A)

This is the maximum speed at which the flight controls can be fully deflected without damage to the aeroplane structure. This speed is used for abrupt maneuvers or when flying in very rough air or in severe turbulence. At this speed, it is impossible for gusts to produce dangerous load factors. This is the speed least likely to result in structural damage to the aeroplane and yet allow a sufficient margin of safety above the stalling speed in gusty air. Maneuvers which involve an approach to a stall, or full use of rudder or aileron control, should never be attempted above this speed. (See also Loads and Load Factors in Chapter **The Aeroplane**.)

MAXIMUM GUST INTENSITY SPEED (V_B)

The maximum speed for penetration of gusts of maximum intensity. In most light aeroplanes, the manufacturer does not recommend differing design speeds for V_B and V_A. However, for larger transport aeroplanes, there is a recommended design speed for maximum gust intensity as well as a maneuvering speed.

Pilots flying high speed jets at high altitude may elect to maintain somewhat higher speeds when penetrating turbulent air. This is because the risk of an inadvertent stall (due to severe gust loads at high altitude) may present as great a hazard as the risk of structural strain. (Bear in mind when you get in the supersonic league that you can stall an aeroplane at almost any speed if you subject it to a sufficiently high g load.)

MAXIMUM FLAPS EXTENDED SPEED (V_{FE})

This is the maximum speed at which the aeroplane may be flown with the flaps lowered. A speed in excess of this value may lead to a structural failure of the flaps.

For other airspeed limitations, see **V Speeds** in the **Glossary**.

2.1.7 Mach Number

The Mach number (pronounced "mock") is the ratio of the speed of a body to the speed of sound in the air surrounding the body. The speed of sound, the rate at which sound travels in air, varies according to the temperature of the air. It is, by formula, proportional to the square root of the absolute temperature. At sea level at standard atmosphere conditions (15°C), the speed of sound is 660 knots. In the stratosphere where the temperature is about -60°C, the speed of sound will be only 575 knots.

The speed of sound is not dependent on temperature alone. Density also has a bearing but, temperature and density being so related, temperature is the controlling factor. The speed of sound is not, therefore, a function of altitude. In the Arctic regions of the world where temperatures commonly drop to -60°C, the speed of sound at sea level will drop to 575 knots. In tropical regions where the temperature even at considerable altitude may be well above 15°C, the speed of sound will be well over 660 knots.

The Mach number is found by dividing the airspeed of the aeroplane by the speed of sound in the atmospheric temperature conditions existing at the time of the flight. An aeroplane flying at a Mach number of .85 would be travelling at 85% of the speed of sound.

There is a critical Mach number at which the airflow over the wing becomes sonic. At this airspeed, shock waves are formed on the wing and compressibility effects become apparent; drag increases, buffeting occurs and changes in lift and in the position of the centre of pressure cause changes in pitch. The shock wave on the upper surface upsets the lift distribution and causes a reduction in downwash over the tail. The aeroplane becomes increasingly unstable at increasing Mach number. The swept wing design is somewhat effective in retarding this phenomenon. The shock wave tends to be experienced at the thick root first while the tips maintain lift. As a result, the critical Mach number is raised. For this reason, high speed aeroplanes usually are designed with a swept wing. Some aeroplanes are designed so that, as there is an increase in Mach number, stability tends to return.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

2.2 Flight Instruments

An understanding of the various flight instruments and the way they work is essential to the pilot. With a basic knowledge of their characteristics and especially their limitations, a pilot is better able to interpret the information displayed on the instruments during various flight conditions.

2.2.1 Pitot Static Instruments

Instruments connected to the pitot static pressure system include the airspeed indicator, the altimeter and the vertical speed indicator. The system includes a pitot pressure source and a static pressure source.

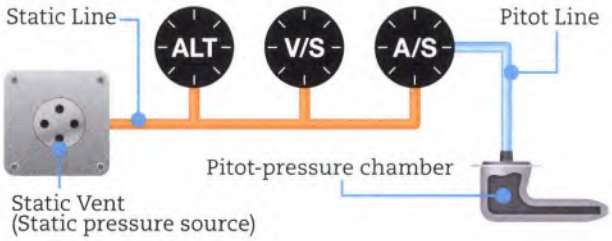


Fig.2.47 **Pitot Static System**

The pitot pressure source is usually located on the leading edge of the wing where it is clear of the slipstream, in a position to be as free as possible of air disturbance and facing the line of flight. When the aeroplane is in flight, the atmospheric pressure in the pitot pressure system is increased by dynamic pressure due to the forward motion of the aeroplane through the air. The airspeed indicator is the only instrument connected to the pitot pressure source.

The airspeed indicator, the altimeter and the vertical speed indicator are all connected to the static pressure source through which they are vented to allow air pressure inside their cases to equalize with the outside barometric pressure as the aeroplane gains or loses altitude. The ports, or vents (usually there are two), of the static pressure system are commonly located on opposite sides of the fuselage where they will not be affected by turbulence or by ram air pressures. Having two vents also compensates for any possible error in pressure that might occur on one of the vents when there are erratic changes in attitude, as in a steep turn.

One of the problems of the pitot pressure system is that the source is susceptible to the accumulation of dirt, water and ice. Blocked or partially blocked sources will cause inaccurate readings of the instruments. Complete blockage of the pitot pressure source, for example, (in combination with blocked drain holes) will trap pressure in the airspeed indicator and turn it into an altimeter. If the pitot pressure source is not completely blocked or if the system lacks integrity (has some air leaks), the airspeed indicator needle will rotate back to 0. On many modern aeroplanes, the pitot pressure source is electrically heated to prevent the build-up of ice during flight. Failure to turn on pitot heat or failure of the electrical element does, however, happen. As ice builds up, gradually restricting the flow of dynamic pressure air through the pitot pressure system, the airspeed indication will gradually fall off. This situation could be particularly dangerous if the pilot, while flying in IFR conditions, tries to keep up airspeed by continually reducing the angle of attack without referring to other flight and engine instruments that would alert to the failed airspeed indicator. The airspeed of the aircraft could rapidly build up and exceed the red line, never exceed speed. Structural failure and inflight break up of the aeroplane would be the probable result.

Helicopter pilots should also be aware that helicopters are particularly prone to pitot tube freezing when operating in winter conditions while landing or taking off in powder snow. Snow kicked up from the rotor blade wash may easily enter the pitot tube and freeze, thereby causing pressure system blockage.

A partially clogged static pressure system can also cause problems. Altimeter, airspeed and vertical speed indicator will under-read in the climb, then slowly catch up when the aeroplane is levelled off. In the descent, the airspeed indicator will over-read, the vertical speed indicator will indicate less than the true rate of descent and the altimeter will over-read.

For this reason, the pitot and static pressure sources should always be checked before a flight to see that they are clear. The pitot heat should always be turned on to prevent blockage of the dynamic pressure source. If ever, during a flight, you suspect blockage of the static pressure system because of contradictory readings of the instruments, open the alternate static source (most aeroplanes are so equipped) or, if necessary, remove the static source line entirely. If the needles move significantly, there is static pressure blockage.

Although the static pressure sources are located in a position where they ought not to be affected by ram air pressures, in certain maneuvers such as a sideslip, ram air will enter the static pressure source and cause erroneous readings on the pitot static instruments. On an aeroplane that has only one static pressure source, sideslipping in one direction (into the side where the port is located) will affect the instruments but sideslipping the other way will not.

The Altimeter

The altimeter is a special form of aneroid barometer (a barometer without liquid) which measures the pressure of the atmosphere. It is connected to the static pressure source through an outlet in the back of the case. This outlet serves as a vent to allow static atmospheric pressure to move into and out of the altimeter case as the aeroplane climbs or descends.

The atmospheric pressure at any point is due to the weight of the overlying air above, which decreases as the height above sea level increases. Hence, the instrument can be calibrated to read in terms of height. Under standard air conditions of 15°C, the weight of a column of air, one square inch in area, is 14.7 lb. at sea level. It exerts a pressure of 14.7 lb. per sq. in. This pressure is recorded on a barometer as 29.92 inches of mercury and by an altimeter as 0 feet.

Fig.2.48 **Sensitive Altimeter**

At 10,000 feet the weight of a one square inch air column has decreased to 10.11 lb., the corresponding barometric pressure to 20.58 inches, and the altimeter records 10,000 feet. The **decrease** in pressure is sensed by the altimeter and registered as an **increase** in height.

The basic components of the altimeter are a stack of aneroid capsules located inside the case. These capsules are sealed and are 99 percent evacuated of air. Atmospheric pressure admitted to the case through the static pressure system causes these capsules to expand and contract. The expansion and contraction of these capsules transmits motion directly to gears and levers which rotate hands on the face of the altimeter. A large hand records altitude changes in hundreds of feet; a smaller hand records altitude in units of thousands of feet; and a third still smaller hand records altitude in units of ten thousand feet. The altimeter depicted in Fig.2.48 is reading 10,400 feet.

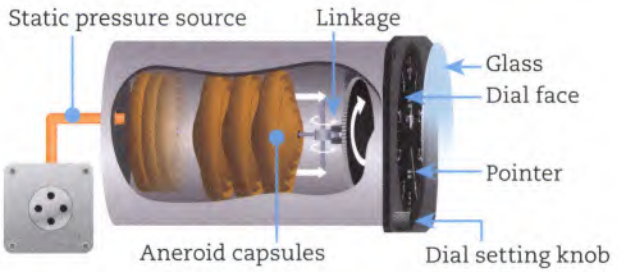


Fig.2.49 **Schematic of Simple Altimeter**

As the aeroplane climbs, the outside barometric pressure decreases and air moves out of the case through the static pressure system. As a result, the aneroid capsules expand, causing an increased altitude reading. As the aeroplane descends, air moves into the altimeter case and the capsules contract, causing a decreased altitude reading.

Pressure altimeters are calibrated during manufacture to indicate a true altitude in standard atmosphere conditions. The maximum allowable tolerance is plus or minus 20 feet at sea level. If, having set the current altimeter setting on the subscale and having compared the altimeter reading to the known airport elevation, there is an error of more than plus or minus 50 feet, the instrument should be checked by maintenance.

Altimeters are calibrated to one of two sets of values, each of which lays down certain empirical values for the state of the atmosphere. These are called respectively the Isothermal Atmosphere and the International Standard Atmosphere.

ALTIMETER PRESSURE ERROR

The heights at which aeroplanes are required to fly for air navigation purposes are indicated altitudes above sea level. Since the barometric pressure varies from place to place, an altimeter set to indicate height above sea level at the point of departure may give an erroneous indication after the aeroplane has flown some distance towards its destination. To correct for this, altimeters are fitted with a barometric scale, calibrated in inches of mercury, which allows the pilot to set the current altimeter setting in the altimeter setting window on the face of the instrument.

The altimeter setting, which is given in inches of mercury, may be obtained from towers and flight service stations in any particular locality over which the aeroplane is operating. In Fig.2.48, the altimeter setting is 29.92 inches.

It is important, on a long cross-country flight, for a pilot to get up-dated altimeter settings and regularly reset the altimeter. It is true that, if the aeroplane is operating well above the earth's surface, knowledge of the exact distance above the ground is of little immediate importance. However, if the aeroplane is operating at no great height above the ground or above the highest ground enroute, especially in conditions of poor visibility or when on instruments, knowledge of the actual separation between the aeroplane and the ground is of vital importance. Take, for example, a situation in which a flight altitude of 6,000 feet has been selected to clear a 4,800 foot mountain ridge that lies across the course near the destination. The altimeter setting at the airport of departure was 29.80". The altimeter setting at the destination airport, however, is only 29.20". If the pilot does not reset his/her altimeter, the aeroplane will clear the mountain ridge by only 600 feet instead of the 1,200 feet expected.

An altimeter setting that is too high will give an altimeter reading that is too high. Each .10" Hg that is added to the altimeter setting will increase the indicated altitude recorded by the altimeter by approximately 100 feet. An altimeter setting that is too low will give an altimeter reading that is too low. Therefore, when an aeroplane is flying from an area of high pressure into an area of low pressure (or from warm air into colder air) if a corrected altimeter setting has not been obtained by radio, the altimeter will read high. To best remain mindful when flying in such circumstances, pilots should remember the mnemonic that follows when flying from a high pressure system into a low pressure system:

From high to low — watch out below.

In the Northern Hemisphere a drift to the right or starboard indicates that an aeroplane is flying towards an area of low pressure. A glance at the wind circulation around a low pressure area (see Fig.6.12) will indicate why this is so. Continued drift to starboard over a long period should act as a warning that an uncorrected altimeter may be reading high.

Abnormally high pressure factors can result in altimeter pressure errors. Cold, dry air masses can produce barometric pressures higher than 31.00" Hg. On most standard altimeters, the barometric setting scale does not go higher than 31.00" Hg and the instrument will not indicate altitude accurately in conditions when the barometric pressure exceeds this figure. In such conditions, the aircraft's true altitude will be higher than the indicated altitude. It is possible to estimate the error in the indicated altitude for pressures above 31.00" Hg by adding 100 feet in aircraft altitude for each .10" Hg. Aircraft operating IFR and VFR, and especially those operating VFR at night, must exercise extra diligence both in flight planning and during the flight. When such conditions of abnormally high pressure exist, ATC will issue the actual altimeter setting and pilots are advised to set 31.00" Hg on their altimeters throughout the duration of the flight. To determine the suitability of an aerodrome from which or to which you intend to operate, increase the ceiling requirements by 100 feet and the visibility requirements by 1/4 s.m. for each .10" hg over 31.00" Hg.

The Altimeter Setting Region must be considered in the context of possible altimeter pressure errors. When the altimeter setting is set on the barometric scale, the altimeter will register the indicated height above sea level. When you land at an airport from which the altimeter setting was obtained by radio, your altimeter will record the altitude of the field above sea level.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

The altitude at which an aeroplane flies when using indicated height above mean sea level (MSL) as its reference is known as cruising altitude.

The area in which the indicated height above sea level is used is known as the altimeter setting region. See also **Altimeter Setting Region** in Chapter **Aerodromes & Airspace**.

When taking off within the altimeter setting region, or approaching to land, the altimeter should be set to the current altimeter setting of the field. If the altimeter setting is not available, prior to take-off, you can set the altimeter to read the elevation of the field above sea level. During flight, the altimeter should be progressively reset to the altimeter setting of the nearest station along the route of flight.

The Standard Pressure Region must be considered in the context of possible altimeter pressure errors. Over transoceanic routes and certain continental areas, altimeter settings are not available. Flights over these areas are flown at pressure altitude (defined below). Because the altimeter is less reliable at high altitudes, flights above 18,000 feet msl are also flown at pressure altitude.

Pressure altitude is the height above sea level corresponding to a given barometric pressure under standard air conditions. When the barometric scale is set to read 29.92" Hg, the height recorded by the altimeter is pressure altitude.

In this case, the altitude at which the aeroplane is flying is referred to as the flight level. In reporting the flight level, the last two digits of the altitude are omitted. For example, an aeroplane flying at a pressure altitude of 15,000 feet would report its height as "Flight Level 150 (FL 150)".

The region in which the altimeter setting of 29.92" Hg. (1013.2 Millibars) is used is known as the standard pressure region. See also **Standard Pressure Region** in Chapter **Aerodromes and Airspace**.

When taking off within the standard pressure region, the altimeter should be set to the current altimeter setting of the field; if this is not obtainable, to the elevation of the field above sea level. Immediately before reaching cruising altitude, the altimeter should be re-set to 29.92" Hg. When approaching to land at an airport within the Standard Pressure Region, the altimeter should be re-set to the current altimeter setting of the field just prior to commencing the descent from cruising altitude or just prior to descending below the flight level at which a holding procedure has been conducted.

When flying out of the Standard Pressure Region into the Altimeter Setting Region, or vice versa, the altimeter should be adjusted to the setting appropriate to the area in which the aeroplane is being flown. See also **Cruising Altitudes**.

Field level pressure is the actual barometric pressure (not corrected to sea level) at any particular airport. If a pilot obtains the field level pressure by radio from an airport they are approaching and sets it on their barometric scale, their altimeter will register 0 feet when they land.

ALTIMETER TEMPERATURE ERROR

The pressure altimeter is calibrated to indicate true altitude in standard atmosphere conditions (see **Standard Atmosphere** in Part III **Meteorology**). Due to continual heating and cooling, the atmosphere at any given point is seldom at the temperature of standard air. In fact, the only time a pilot can be certain that the altimeter indicates true altitude is when the aircraft is on the ground at the airport for which the current altimeter setting is set on the sub-scale of an altimeter that has been precisely and accurately calibrated. When an aircraft is in flight, it can be assumed that the altitude indication of an altimeter is always in error as a result of temperature variations.

	Height above the elevation of the altimeter source (feet)													
A/D Temp °C	200	300	400	500	600	700	800	900	1000	1500	2000	3000	4000	5000
0°	0	20	20	20	20	40	40	40	40	60	80	140	180	220
-10°	20	20	40	40	40	60	80	80	80	120	160	260	340	420
-20°	20	40	40	60	80	80	100	120	120	180	240	380	500	620
-30°	40	40	60	80	100	120	140	140	160	240	320	500	660	820
-40°	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200	300	400	620	820	1020
-50°	40	80	100	120	140	180	200	220	240	360	480	740	980	1220

Note: Values should be added to published altitudes

Example: Aerodrome Elevation 2262 Aerodrome Temperature -50°C

	Altitude	HAA	Correction	Indicated Alt.
Procedure Turn	4000 ft.	1738 ft.	+420 ft.	4420 ft.
FAF	3300 ft.	1038 ft.	+240 ft.	3540 ft.
MDA Straight-in	2840 ft.	578 ft.	+140 ft.	2980 ft.
Circling MDA	2840 ft.	578 ft.	+140 ft.	2980 ft.

Fig.2.50 **Altitude Correction Chart**

The amount of error depends on the degree to which the average temperature of the column of air between the aircraft and the ground differs from the average temperature of the standard atmosphere for the same column of air. If the actual temperature of the air column in which the aeroplane is flying is colder than standard air, the true altitude of the aeroplane above sea level will be lower than the indicated altitude. If the actual temperature is warmer than standard air, the true altitude will be higher. Extreme variations in temperature may cause the altimeter to register an indicated altitude as much as 2,500 feet above or below the true altitude. Since all altimeters in the same area are equally affected by temperature error, air traffic regulations require you to fly **only at indicated altitude**.

Abnormally cold temperature factors can result in altimeter temperature errors. It is important for a pilot to be able to calculate his/her true altitude above sea level. This is particularly essential in mountainous areas when the temperatures are very low. Pressure altimeters are calibrated to indicate true altitude under conditions of international standard atmosphere (ISA). Any deviation from ISA will result in an erroneous reading on the altimeter. In very cold temperatures, the true altitude will be much lower than the indicated altitude and could be critical in obstacle clearance. The very cold, dense air will cause an altimeter error of as much as 20%. The altimeter might read 8,000 feet, for example, when the true altitude of the aircraft is only 6,400 feet. In IFR operation, an aircraft maintaining the minimum obstacle clearance altitude (MOCA) while flying through the mountains may be well below a safe altitude if the pilot is trusting the altimeter indication and has not calculated the true altitude. Pilots experienced in winter operations in the mountains must always be conscientious about calculating true altitude before commencing any instrument approach to landing in order to ensure the safety of the flight.

The values derived from an altitude correction chart such as the one shown in Fig.2.50 should be added to the published procedure altitudes, minimum sector altitudes and DME arcs to ensure adequate obstacle clearance. The altimeter setting of the destination airport should be that used in the calculations.

To calculate true altitude, it is important to know that all computers currently in use are fitted with a sliding scale for correcting temperature error and converting indicated altitude to true altitude. However, the correction is based on the pressure altitude rather than the indicated altitude. To find the former at any time, simply set the barometric scale to 29.92 and

the altimeter will record the pressure altitude. See **Altitude Correction** in **Solving Problems with the Circular Slide Rule** in Chapter **Navigation**.

Density Altitude is a critical consideration for pilots to understand when operating their aircraft. Barometric pressure and temperature both affect density. Density is an important factor in the takeoff performance of modern aeroplanes. Low densities reduce engine thrust and aerodynamic lift. Density altitude, which is pressure altitude corrected for temperature, is important in calculating the safe fuel and payload permissible for takeoff. Density altitude can be determined when the pressure altitude (at the airport) and the temperature are known. Most modern circular slide rules are calibrated to compute density altitude. However, if a computer is not available, the approximate density altitude may be found by the following simple formula:

Density altitude = pressure altitude + [100 x (actual temperature - standard temperature)]

To use this formula, there are three facts to remember.

1. The temperature of standard air is 15°C at sea level.
2. The temperature of standard air decreases 2°C per 1,000 feet of altitude.
3. For every 1°C difference from standard air, there is a 100 foot increase (or decrease, if the actual temperature is less than standard air) in the pressure altitude.

For Example:

To find the density altitude:

Pressure altitude at airport	2,000 feet
Actual temperature	25°C

The temperature of standard air at 2,000 feet should be: (15°C less 2° per 1,000 feet) = 11°C.

Therefore, the density altitude is:
2,000 + [100 x (25° - 11°)]= 3,400 feet.

See also **Density Altitude** in Chapter **Airmanship**.

ALTIMETER MOUNTAIN EFFECT ERROR

Winds which are deflected around large single mountain peaks or through valleys of mountain ranges tend to increase speed which results in a local decrease in pressure (Bernoulli's Principle). A pressure altimeter in such an airflow would be subject to the decrease in pressure and would give an altitude reading that is too high. The error will be present until the airflow returns to its normal speed some distance downwind of the mountain or mountain range.

Winds blowing over a mountain range often create a phenomenon that is known as the mountain wave. The effect of a mountain wave often extends as far as 100 miles downwind of the mountains and up to altitudes much above the actual elevation of the mountain ridge. Within the mountain wave, downdrafts are usually very intense. They are normally more severe near the mountain and at the same height as the summit of the range. The increase in wind speeds that extend throughout the mountain wave causes a local drop in pressure within the wave. In addition, temperatures that vary from standard temperature complicate the situation, setting up the altimeter for a major error in altitude reading. In fact, altimeters may read as much as 3,000 feet too high in severe mountain wave conditions. See also **The Mountain Wave** in Chapter **Aviation Weather**.

Although mountain waves usually generate severe turbulence, on occasion flight through a mountain wave may be very smooth. Such smooth conditions usually occur at night or when an overcast exists. As a result, there is no warning of the unusual flight conditions. An aeroplane, entering such a smooth and intense downdraft, will begin to descend but the altimeter will not register the descent until the aeroplane descends through an altitude level equal to the altimeter error caused by the mountain wave. Thus the pilot of the aeroplane in this intense downdraft may end up with much less ground separation than expected without ever knowing that they were in an intense downdraft.

ALTITUDE DEFINITIONS

Indicated altitude is the reading on the altimeter when it is set to the current barometric pressure.

Pressure altitude is the reading on the altimeter when it is set to standard barometric pressure (29.92" Hg).

Density altitude is pressure altitude corrected for temperature.

True altitude is exact height above mean sea level.

Absolute altitude is actual height above the earth's surface (altimeter set to field level pressure).

The Airspeed Indicator (ASI)

The airspeed indicator tells the pilot the speed at which he/she is travelling through the air (not over the ground). The dial is calibrated in knots and miles per hour (Fig.2.51).

Fig.2.51 **Airspeed Indicator**

The airspeed indicator is connected to both the pitot and static pressure sources. To give a reading of speed through the air, the instrument measures the difference between the pressure in the pitot pressure system and the pressure in the static system. When the aeroplane is standing on the ground, the pressure in the two systems is equal and the airspeed indicator registers 0. When the aeroplane is in motion, the pressure in the pitot pressure system is increased by dynamic pressure due to the forward motion of the aeroplane through the air (pitot pressure is therefore the sum of atmospheric pressure and dynamic pressure). The airspeed indicator senses the total pressure in the pitot pressure system, subtracts the pressure in the static system and gives a reading of the dynamic pressure, the measure of the aeroplane's forward speed. This reading is displayed on a graduated scale on the face of the instrument and is called indicated airspeed (IAS).

The pitot pressure source is connected to the interior of a thin corrugated metal expansion box called the aneroid capsule

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

and admits pitot pressure into this capsule. The static pressure source is connected to the inside of the instrument case and maintains the air in the case at the prevailing atmospheric pressure. Changes in dynamic pressure inside the aneroid capsule cause it to expand or contract. This movement is transmitted through a linkage system to a hand which rotates around a dial calibrated in knots and/or miles per hour.

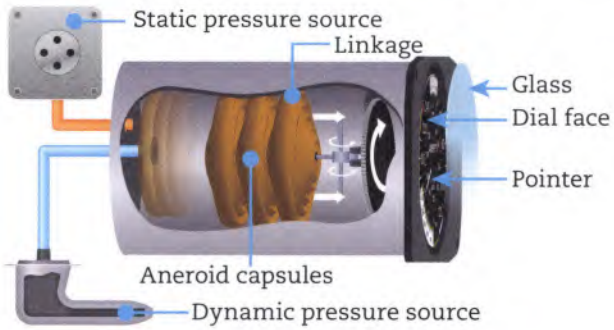


Fig.2.52 **Schematic of Simple Airspeed Indicator**

AIRSPEED INDICATOR MARKINGS

Colour coded markings are used on the airspeed indicator to indicate safe operating ranges and operating limits.

1. **Red**. A red line is placed at the Never Exceed Speed (V_{NE}). This is the maximum speed at which the aeroplane can be operated.
2. **Yellow**. A yellow arc indicates the "caution speed" range. The lowest limit of the yellow arc is the Maximum Structural Cruising Speed (V_{NO}). The aeroplane should be operated in the "caution speed" range only in smooth air. However, since it is impossible to guarantee that turbulence will not be encountered and that the air will be smooth, the aeroplane should not be operated intentionally in this range.
3. **Green**. A green arc indicates the normal operating range. The lower limit of the green arc is the Power Off Stalling Speed with flaps and gear up (V_{SL}). The upper limit of the green arc is V_{NO} (the maximum cruising speed for normal operation).
4. **White**. A white arc depicts the speed range in which fully extended flaps may be used. The lower limit of the white arc is the Power Off Stalling Speed with flaps and gear down (V_{SO}). The upper limit on the white arc is the Maximum Flaps Extended Speed (V_{FE}).

On the airspeed indicator depicted in Fig.2.51, V_{SO} is 58 knots (67 mph), V_{FE} is 109 knots (125 mph), V_{SL} is 65 knots (75 mph), V_{NO} is 156 knots (180 mph) and V_{N} is 197 knots (226 mph).

Maneuvering Speed is not marked on the face of the indicator.

AIRSPEED INDICATOR ERRORS

The airspeed indicator is affected by several errors for which correction must be made. These errors are listed below and described in further detail thereafter.

1. Density Error.
2. Position Error.
3. Lag Error.
4. Icing Error.
5. Water Error.

Density error must be considered as a factor in airspeed indicator errors. The density of the air depends on atmospheric pressure and temperature. These are variable factors. Consequently, a standard value for density has to be assumed in order for the airspeed indicator to be calibrated.

The standard for calibrating airspeed indicators is normal sea level pressure, 29.92 inches of mercury, at a temperature of 15°C. A rough correction may be made by adding 2% to the indicated airspeed for every 1,000 feet of pressure altitude.

For Example:

Indicated airspeed at 10,000 feet is 130 knots

The correction is: 10 x 2% = 20%

Therefore, 20% of 130 kts. = 26 kts.

Therefore, true airspeed = 130 + 26 = 156 kts.

More accurate corrections, allowing for the actual temperature and pressure, can be obtained with any suitable circular slide rule computer.

Some airspeed indicators, such as the one shown in Fig.2.51, incorporate such a computer into the instrument. To determine true airspeed (TAS), pressure altitude and the outside air temperature must be known. The pressure altitude is set against the temperature in the window at the top of the instrument. TAS is read against the pointer on the window in the cruising speed range of the instrument (lower left.)

Airspeed Correction Table									
Flaps Up	IAS	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	–
	CAS	68	83	100	118	137	156	175	–
***Flaps Down 20°-40°**	IAS	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110
	CAS	58	63	68	75	84	92	101	110

*Maximum Flap Speed 110 knots, CAS

Fig.2.53 **Airspeed Correction Table**

Position error is another factor that must be considered as a factor in airspeed indicator errors. Eddies that are formed as the air passes over the wings and struts are responsible for position error. The angle at which the pitot pressure source meets the airflow is also a cause. Position error is reduced by placing the pitot pressure source as far ahead of the leading edge of the wing as is practicable. The position error remaining is tabulated on a cockpit calibration card, or in tables in the Pilot's Operating Handbook. See Fig.2.53.

Lag error is a factor in airspeed indicator errors. This is a mechanical error due to the friction of the working parts of the instrument.

Icing error is a factor in airspeed indicator errors. Ice formation, blocking the pitot and/or static pressure sources, has been a source of considerable trouble with airspeed indicators in the past. It should be noted that any such blockage that prevents air from being vented through the system may result in the airspeed indicator becoming stuck at the exact reading from the moment the blockage occurred. Icing error has been largely eliminated in present day instruments by the adoption of electrically heated pitot pressure sources.

The question, of course, is when should pitot heat be used. Generally, in summer, it is not necessary to be concerned about moisture or ice in the pressure system. In spring, fall and winter, when outside temperatures drop and the moisture content of the air increases, the situation can be more critical. Any moisture, either in solid or liquid form, may cause an erroneous reading of the airspeed indicator. An accumulation of ice that completely blocks the pitot pressure source will cause a complete loss of airspeed indication. Even while the

aeroplane is parked, if the pitot pressure source is not covered, rain, snow or frost may collect in the system and obstruct the free passage of air. For this reason, it is advisable to use pitot heat whenever the aeroplane is being operated in sensitive temperature or moisture conditions. As a rule of thumb, 10°C might be selected as the critical temperature. Turn the pitot heat on just prior to take-off and turn it off after landing since extended use of pitot heat on the ground may cause the heater element to burn out.

Water Error is a factor in airspeed indicator errors. Water in the system can cause very erratic airspeed indications. The errors may be high or low, depending on whether the water is in the dynamic or static pressure systems. Sufficient water in the pitot pressure system may block it off completely. The pitot pressure source should be covered when an aeroplane is standing in the open to prevent water getting into the system.

AIRSPEED DEFINITIONS

Indicated airspeed (IAS) is the uncorrected speed read from the airspeed dial. It is the measurement of the difference between the total pressure (that is, the pitot pressure which is the sum of the atmospheric pressure and the dynamic pressure) and the atmospheric pressure in the pitot-static system.

Calibrated airspeed (CAS) is indicated airspeed corrected for instrument error and installation error in the pitot-static pressure system. As the aeroplane flight attitude or configuration is changed, the airflow in the vicinity of the static pressure sources may introduce impact pressure into the static source, which results in erroneous airspeed indications. The pitot section of the system is subject to error at high angles of attack, since the impact pressure entering the system is reduced when the pitot pressure source is not parallel to the relative airflow. Performance data in the Pilot's Operating Handbook is normally based on calibrated airspeed.

Equivalent airspeed (EAS) is calibrated airspeed corrected for compressibility factor. This value is very significant to pilots of high speed aircraft, but relatively unimportant to pilots operating at speeds below 250 knots at altitudes below 10,000 feet.

True airspeed (TAS) is calibrated (or equivalent) airspeed corrected for the airspeed indicator error due to density and temperature. In other words, it is indicated airspeed corrected for temperature and altitude. TAS is the actual speed of the aeroplane through the air mass.

The Vertical Speed Indicator (VSI)

The vertical speed (vertical velocity, or rate of climb) indicator shows the rate, in feet per minute, at which the aeroplane is ascending or descending. The principle on which it operates is the change in barometric pressure which occurs with any change in height. This instrument is contained in a sealed case and is also connected to the static air pressure system.

Fig.2.54 **Vertical Speed Indicator**

Atmospheric pressure is led from the static pressure source directly into an aneroid capsule, or diaphragm, contained within the case of the instrument. Air is also permitted to leak at a relatively slow rate through a capillary tube into the case of the instrument. The difference between the quick change in pressure which occurs within the aneroid capsule and the relatively slow rate at which this pressure is equalized within the case causes the capsule to expand or contract. This movement is amplified and transmitted by linkage to the pointer on the dial of the instrument.

When the aeroplane loses altitude, pressure within the capsule increases almost immediately, while pressure within the case changes slowly. The capsule therefore expands and the pointer indicates DOWN in feet per minute.

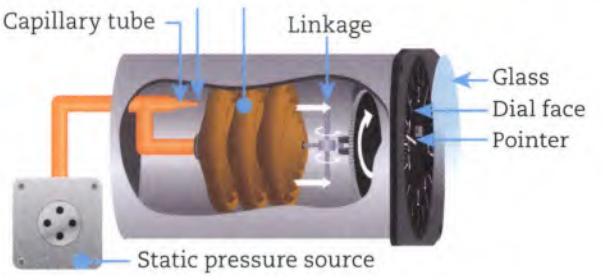


Fig.2.55 **Schematic of Simple Vertical Speed Indicator**

When the aeroplane gains altitude, the process is reversed and the pointer indicates UP. When the aeroplane remains level, the pressures equalize and the pointer indicates 0.

Note that the vertical speed indicator registers the rate of climb or descent, not the attitude of the aeroplane. An aeroplane may gain height in a vertical up-current of air when it is flying perfectly level. The vertical speed indicator should be closely co-ordinated with the airspeed indicator. Corrections for altitude gained or lost in cruising flight should be made by nosing the aeroplane up or down (by use of the elevators). Intentional change in altitude should be made by increasing or decreasing power at a given airspeed (by use of the throttle).

LAG

A change in altitude must occur before the vertical speed indicator can indicate such a change. Although the indicator will show quite quickly a climbing or descending trend, there is a lag of from 6 to 9 seconds before it will indicate the correct rate of climb or descent. The instrument too will still indicate a vertical speed for a short time after the aeroplane has levelled off. If pitch changes are made slowly, the lag is minimal and the instrument will give a fairly accurate representation of the vertical speed at any given moment. If the pitch changes are large and rapid, the amount of lag in the instrument will be sizeable.

Instantaneous vertical speed indicators are available that do not have lag and are therefore very accurate. They operate on a more complicated arrangement of pistons and cylinders that give an almost instantaneous indication of change in vertical speed.

2.2.2 Gyro Instruments

Gyro instruments have made the art of piloting an aeroplane more precise. They are very useful in VFR flight. In instrument flight, they are invaluable. In most general aviation aeroplanes, there are three gyro instruments: the heading indicator, the attitude indicator, and the turn and slip indicator.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

The Gyroscope

The gyroscope is a rotor, or spinning wheel, rotating at high speed in a universal mounting, called a gimbal, so its axle can be pointed in any direction (Fig.2.56).

The peculiar actions of a gyroscope, though they may appear to defy physical laws, actually depend entirely upon Sir Isaac Newton's Laws of Motion.

All of the practical applications of the gyroscope are based upon two fundamental characteristics: gyroscopic inertia (or rigidity in space) and precession.

Gyroscopic Inertia is the tendency of any rotating body, if undisturbed, to maintain its plane of rotation. When the rotor in Fig.2.56 is spinning about its axis A-B, the direction of this axis will remain fixed in space, regardless of how the base of the gyroscope is moved around it.

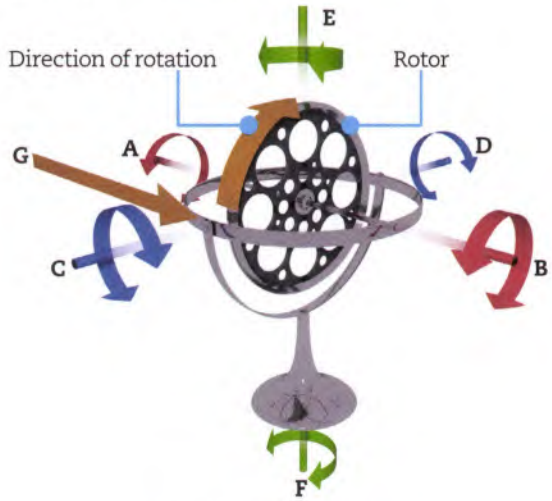


Fig.2.56 **The Gyroscope**

The Wheel, or rotor, is free to revolve in its supporting ring about the axis A-B. The supporting ring is free to revolve in the outer ring about the axis C-D at right angles to the rotation axis of the rotor. The outer ring is free to revolve about the vertical axis E-F on the pivot at F.

Precession is the tendency of a rotating body, when a force is applied perpendicular to its plane of rotation, to turn in the direction of its rotation 90 degrees to its axis and take up a new plane of rotation parallel to the applied force. The following is a simple illustration: imagine a bicycle wheel spinning rapidly on a broom handle which is held horizontally in your hands. Attempt to push either end forward and one end will automatically raise in your hand while the other will drop. A push applied in the direction of the arrow at G (Fig.2.56) would cause the rotor in its supporting ring to tend to rotate around the axis C-D.

Power Sources for Gyro Instruments

The gyro instruments require a source of power to drive their gyros. This power is supplied either by the electrical system of the aeroplane or by a vacuum system that functions by means of an engine-driven pump or a Venturi.

ENGINE DRIVEN VACUUM SYSTEM

Air pressure differential is the principle on which the vacuum driven gyro instruments operate. A vacuum pump run by the aeroplane engine creates a partial vacuum in the system. A filtered air inlet upstream of the gyros allows air to rush into the system causing the gyro wheels to spin.

The gyro instruments require a suction of from 4 to 6 inches of mercury to operate. (Various manufacturers require differing vacuum settings for their particular instruments.) A vacuum pressure gauge, mounted on the instrument panel, indicates the amount of suction being generated in the system. The gauge indicates the relative difference between the outside air pressure and the air in the vacuum system. If there is not enough suction, the gyros will not spin fast enough for reliable operation. If there is too much suction, excessive wear of the gyro bearings will result from the gyros spinning too quickly.

The advantage of the engine driven vacuum system is that it starts operating as soon as the engine starts. On the other hand, in the event of engine failure, all power to the gyro instruments will be lost.

Some gyro instruments are driven by an engine powered pump that provides positive pressure, rather than a vacuum. High speed air is directed through the system causing the gyro wheels to spin.

VENTURI DRIVEN VACUUM SYSTEM

In some cases, a Venturi is used in place of a vacuum pump, particularly on many older light aeroplanes. It has the advantage of being inexpensive to install and simple to operate. However, its efficiency is dependent on the airspeed of the aeroplane and the Venturi tubes themselves cause some aerodynamic drag.

The Venturi tubes (there may be one or more) are usually mounted on the side of the aeroplane in a position to be in the airflow from the propeller. As the airflow enters the constriction of the Venturi, the velocity of the airflow increases. A low pressure area is created within the Venturi that results in a partial vacuum in the line leading from the Venturi to the gyro instruments.

ELECTRICALLY DRIVEN GYROS

Electrically driven gyros were first developed for use in aeroplanes that flew at very high altitudes where atmospheric pressure was too low to operate a vacuum system. Alternating current from engine driven alternators or generators provides the power to drive the gyros.

Many of the newer electrically operated gyro instruments have the feature that they will not tumble in aerobatic maneuvers.

It is common practice to use a combination of electric and vacuum driven instruments for safety's sake, in case one system fails. Often the heading indicator and the attitude indicator operate on the vacuum system while the turn and slip is electrically operated. Large aeroplanes usually have two complete sets of instruments, one driven by a vacuum system, the other by electricity. A standby Venturi powered system is also available for those aeroplanes whose gyro instruments rely only on an engine driven vacuum system. A three way valve ties the Venturi into the system and automatically brings it on line if the engine driven vacuum pump fails.

Care of Gyro Instruments

The gyro is a precise instrument and requires special care. Gyro driven instruments should be caged before aerobatics to avoid tumbling the gyros which action can cause damage to the bearings. In addition, of course, the instrument is useless until the gyro is erected again.

Abrupt brake use should also be avoided, since it can impose acceleration loads on the gyro bearings.

Since airborne contaminants can damage the gyro bearings, it is good practice to periodically clean or replace the air filters of air driven units, especially if your aeroplane operates out of a dusty airport.

Gyro instruments that are driven by a Venturi system will be disabled if ice forms in the Venturi, blocking off the supply of air. Atmospheric conditions that are conducive to the formation of carburetor ice may also produce ice in the Venturi.

Gyro instruments do regrettably sometimes fail but usually give some indication in advance that things are not well with them. Any abnormal operation, such as excessive precession, sluggish response or noise, should be viewed as an indication of impending failure. Gyro instruments, however, can fail without prior warning leaving the pilot without any indication that the instrument he/she is monitoring is giving incorrect information. Gyro instruments have been developed that incorporate a warning flag that warns of aberrant operation of the gyros.

Since shock damage is a sure way to turn a gyro instrument into junk, be sure that instruments are handled with care during removal for repair.

The Heading Indicator (HI)

The heading indicator (also known as the directional gyro) is an instrument designed to indicate the heading of the aeroplane and, because it is steady and accurate, to enable the pilot to steer that heading with the least effort.

Fig.2.57 **Heading Indicator**

The gyro wheel in the heading indicator is mounted vertically and spins about its horizontal axis at approximately 12,000 rpm. The spinning gyro wheel is mounted in an inner gimbal ring that is free to turn about the horizontal axis. The inner ring is, in turn, mounted inside an outer gimbal ring. The compass rose card on the face of the instrument is attached by a series of gears to the outer gimbal ring. As the aeroplane turns, the compass card rotates indicating a turn to the left or right.

Once the gyro starts spinning, it obeys the fundamental gyroscopic principle of rigidity in space. Thus the gyro wheel and the gimbal rings take up a fixed position in relation to the earth and it is the aeroplane that moves about them.

A heading indicator in common use today is shown in Fig.2.57. The compass rose card turns as the aeroplane turns and the heading is read opposite the nose of the aeroplane pointer. As in the case of the compass, the figures are printed with the last 0 left off — 3 stands for 30°, 12 for 120°, etc.

The gyro is not, of its own accord, north seeking. It must, therefore, be synchronized with the magnetic compass at the beginning of a flight. For this purpose the instrument is fitted with a small knob (bottom left on the instrument in Fig.2.57). Pushing this knob in cages, or locks, the gyro system upright. By turning the knob, the compass rose card can be turned to any desired heading. Pulling the knob out releases the locking mechanism and leaves the gyro free to indicate changes in direction.

The magnetic compass is afflicted with many vagaries, including northerly turning error, acceleration and deceleration errors.

The heading indicator remains constant without swinging or oscillating and provides a means of accurate steering even in rough air. Precise turns can be made and stopped at any desired heading, as the instrument responds instantly without lag.

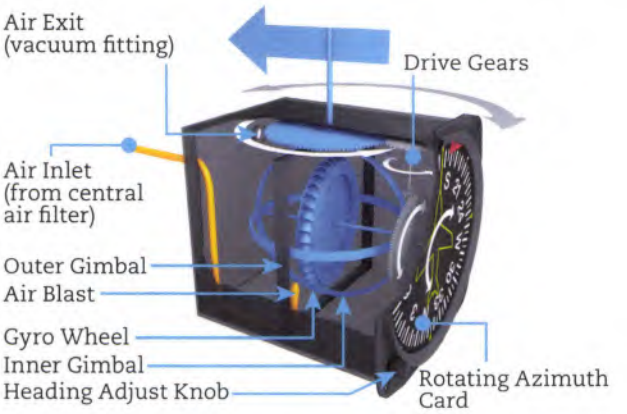


Fig.2.58 **Schematic of Simple Heading Indicator**

From all of this, it might appear that the magnetic compass has had its day. Such would indeed be the case were it not for the fact that the heading indicator has a pet little gremlin of its own and must from time to time be reset, using the magnetic compass as a reference!

PRECESSION ERROR

Frictional forces in the gyro system cause it to precess. This precession causes a creep or drift in the reading on the card, amounting to approximately 3° in 15 minutes.

The gyro is also subject to apparent precession. Gyroscopic inertia keeps the spinning gyro fixed in space so that, relative to space, it does not move. But the earth rotating underneath it gives it an apparent motion relative to the earth. This causes an apparent drift, or precession, which varies with latitude. At the equator, apparent precession is zero. At the poles, it is 15° per hour.

Precession error, both mechanical and apparent, must be corrected for at regular intervals of about 15 minutes. It is important, while synchronizing the heading indicator with the magnetic compass, to hold the aeroplane straight-and-level to ensure that there is no compass error.

LIMITATIONS OF THE HEADING INDICATOR

A gyro that operates on a vacuum system requires from 4 to 6 inches of mercury vacuum to operate. It should not be used for take-off until it has run for 5 minutes. This time is required to get up to operating speed. (If the gyro is operated by a Venturi tube instead of a vacuum pump, it cannot be used for take-off at all.)

Heading indicators, such as that shown in Fig.2.57, incorporate spill proof gyros. Because they have a self-erecting mechanism, they remain functional in banks, climbs and glides at angles up to 85°. However, in maneuvers exceeding 85°, they give incorrect readings and must be reset.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

The Attitude Indicator (AI)

The attitude indicator (also called the artificial horizon or the gyro horizon) provides the pilot with an artificial horizon as a means of reference when the natural horizon cannot be seen because of cloud, fog, rain or other obstructions to visibility. It shows the pilot the relationship between the wings and nose of the aeroplane and the horizon of the earth.

The natural horizon is represented by a horizon bar on the face of the instrument (Fig.2.59). The attitude of the aircraft in relation to the horizon is indicated by a split bar or, on some instruments, by a miniature aeroplane. A pointer at the top indicates degrees of bank on an index scale graduated from 0° to 90°right or left.

Fig.2.59 **Attitude Indicator**

In the attitude indicator, the gyro wheel is mounted horizontally and spins about its vertical axis. It is mounted in a universal gimbal ring system, free about both the pitching and rolling axes of the aeroplane and is therefore able to remain spinning in a horizontal plane parallel to the true horizon, regardless of the rolling or pitching movements of the aeroplane around it.

The horizon bar is attached by a pivoted arm to the gimbal ring and remains parallel to the natural horizon. The relationship of the split bar (miniature aeroplane) to the horizon bar is the same as the relationship of the actual aeroplane to the actual horizon. When the aeroplane is flying level, the split bar is lined up level with the horizon bar.

When the aeroplane noses up, the gyro wheel remains horizontal. A relative down force is exerted on the pivoted arm to which the horizon bar is attached, causing the horizon bar to sink below the split bar.

In the case of a nose-down condition the reverse action takes place.

The attitude indicator may be thought of and used in either of two ways:

1. Some pilots like to consider it as a window through the instrument panel and through the fog or clouds, in which case the horizon bar is where the natural horizon would be.
2. Others like to fly the miniature aeroplane with respect to the horizon bar.

When the aeroplane noses up, the miniature aeroplane rises above the horizon bar, indicating a nose high condition. When the aeroplane noses down, the miniature aeroplane sinks below the horizon bar, indicating a nose-down condition. When the aeroplane banks, the miniature aeroplane banks on the horizon bar and the pointer indicates the degree of bank on the index scale.

When it is necessary to fly the aeroplane slightly nose-up or down, according to altitude, power and load, the miniature aeroplane can be adjusted to match the horizon bar by means of a knob at the bottom of the case.

In the caged position, the gyro is locked with the miniature aeroplane showing level flight. If the instrument is uncaged during flight, the actual attitude of the aeroplane must be identical to that of the miniature aeroplane in the instrument (straight-and-level), otherwise the instrument will show false indications when uncaged.

LIMITATIONS OF THE ATTITUDE INDICATOR

The gyro of an attitude indicator that is driven by a vacuum system, requires 4 or more inches of mercury vacuum to operate and 5 minutes to get up to operational speed. An attitude indicator that is electrically driven is operational almost immediately.

Attitude indicators, such as that shown in Fig.2.59 and especially those that are electrically driven, have virtually no limits of pitch and roll and will accurately indicate pitch attitudes up to 85° and will not tumble even in 360° roll maneuvers. The traditional style of attitude indicator that will frequently be found installed in aeroplanes of older manufacturer permits dives or climbs only up to 70° and banks up to 90° (vertical). If these limits are exceeded, the gyro will tumble. Therefore, during aerobatic maneuvers, the gyro should be caged.

Any force that disturbs the free rotation of the gyro will cause errors in the indications presented by the attitude indicator. Poorly balanced components, clogged filters, improperly adjusted valves, pump malfunctions, friction and worn parts will result in erratic and inaccurate indications.

Other errors are induced during normal operation. In a skidding turn, the gyro precesses toward the inside of the turn. After return of the aircraft to straight-and-level flight, the instrument shows a turn in the direction of the skid. In a normal turn, the gyro precesses towards the inside of the turn. The precession error is quickly corrected by the erecting mechanism.

Acceleration and deceleration also induce precession errors. During acceleration, the horizon bar moves down indicating a climb. During deceleration, the horizon bar moves up indicating descent.

The Turn & Slip Indicator

The turn & slip (or turn & bank) indicator combines two instruments in one and is sometimes called the needle and ball. The needle indicates the direction and approximate rate of turn of the aeroplane. The ball indicates the amount of bank in the turn; that is, whether there is any slipping or skidding in the turn (Fig.2.60).

Fig.2.60 **Turn & Slip Indicator**

The ball is controlled by gravity and centrifugal force. It is simply an agate or steel ball in a liquid filled, curved glass tube. In a balanced turn, the ball will remain in the centre as

centrifugal force offsets the pull of gravity. In a slip, there is not enough rate of turn for the amount of bank. The centrifugal force will be weak and this imbalance will be shown by the ball falling down toward the inside of the turn. In a skid, the rate of turn is too high for the amount of bank. The centrifugal force is too strong and this imbalance is indicated by the ball sliding toward the outside of the turn.

The turn needle is actuated by a gyro wheel operated either electrically or by a Venturi tube or vacuum pump. Free air entering through a nozzle impinges on the paddles of the gyro wheel, causing it to rotate at approximately 9,000 rpm. The gyro wheel is mounted vertically and rotates about its horizontal axis.

The basic principle which governs the operation of the turn needle is gyroscopic precession. The spinning gyro wheel, or rotor, is mounted in a gimbal ring. When the aeroplane turns to the right or left, the gyro wheel precesses about its turning axis and rolls the gimbal ring. The rolling motion of the gimbal ring in turn rotates the turn needle on the face of the instrument. A spring returns the gyro to neutral when the aeroplane ceases to turn.

The turn indicator indicates the rate of the turn, not the amount of the turn. Thus a standard rate, or rate one, turn will give a rate of turn of 3° per second, or 360° in two minutes.

The instrument is usually calibrated to indicate a rate one turn when the turn needle is centred on one of the indexes seen either side of the centre index (Fig.2.60).

In a straight-and-level flight, the ball and needle are both centred (Fig.2.61, A).

In a correctly banked turn, the needle indicates the rate of the turn and the forces acting on the ball cause it to remain centred (Fig.2.61, B).

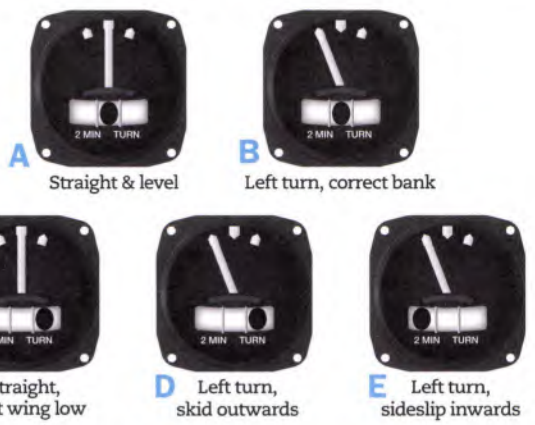


Fig.2.61 **Turn & Slip Indications**

If one wing is permitted to drop, the ball will roll towards the side of the low wing. The needle in Fig.2.61, C shows the aeroplane to be flying straight, but the ball indicates it to be right wing low.

If the aeroplane is not sufficiently banked in a turn, a skid towards the outside of the turn will occur. In Fig.2.61, D, the needle indicates a left turn, the ball a right skid outwards.

When the aeroplane is overbanked in a turn, it will sideslip inwards.

The needle in Fig.2.61, E indicates a left turn, the ball a sideslip inwards.

The Turn Co-Ordinator

Many modern aeroplane instrument panels use a turn co-ordinator to replace the more familiar turn and slip instrument. It works on the same principle as the turn and slip, although there are some differences in the construction of the instrument that enable it to react to roll as well as yaw. The gyro, instead of rotating about its horizontal axis as it does in the turn and slip, is canted at approximately 35°. As a result, during movement about both the yaw and roll axes, precession causes the gyro mechanism to roll slightly.

The gyro gimbal is connected to a miniature aeroplane on the face of the instrument. This little aeroplane tilts to inform the pilot of the rate of both yaw and roll. When the aeroplane is turning left or right, the miniature aeroplane banks in the direction of the turn. When the wing of the aeroplane is aligned with one of the marks, the aeroplane is in a standard rate, or rate one, turn.

The ball indicator gives the same indications as the ball indicator of the turn and slip indicator.

Fig.2.62 **Turn Co-ordinator**

A significant advantage of the turn co-ordinator is that it can be used to keep the wings level in straight flight if the attitude indicator has failed. The wings of the turn co-ordinator will react first to roll and then to yaw. The turn co-ordinator shows rate of roll as well as rate of turn whereas the turn and slip indicator shows only rate of turn.

The Gyrosyn Compass

The gyrosyn compass combines the functions of both the directional gyro and the magnetic compass. Though not considered a primary instrument, it is still found in some aircraft today.

It provides stable compass headings in rough air, is north seeking like a magnetic compass, but is free from northerly turning error and oscillation. It does not precess and, therefore, does not require resetting as does the directional gyro.

The gyrosyn compass system incorporates a flux valve that senses the earth's magnetic lines of force through electromagnetic induction. They induce a voltage in the coils of a sensing unit in the flux valve. Direction can be determined from the induced voltages, which change with each change in the heading of the aeroplane. The flux valve is pendulously installed (to keep it horizontal) inside a case filled with damping fluid, usually in a wing tip, remote from local magnetic disturbances in the airframe.

The directional gyro unit is essentially the same as a standard directional gyro, except that it is slaved to the earth's magnetic lines of force by the signal received from the flux valve.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

The dial of the gyrosyn compass system is a movable pointer that points to the magnetic heading of the aeroplane. The course indicator (parallel lines) can be set to any desired heading for easy reference.

Some gyrosyn compasses are fitted with a dial switch. In one position, the complete system is in operation. In the other position, the flux valve is shut off and the instrument operates as a free directional gyro. This feature is for use in high polar latitudes or under any other circumstances where magnetic indications are unreliable.

2.2.3 EFIS Instruments

An Electronic Flight Instrument System (EFIS) is a cockpit instrumentation system that uses electronic rather than electromechanical technology. EFIS normally consists of two panel-mounted display units: a primary flight display (PFD) and a multifunction display (MFD). The liquid crystal display (LCD) used for these systems has resulted in their being referred to as glass cockpits, or glss panels. (Also, see **EFIS** in Chapter **Radio Navigation**.)

Category	Glass Cockpit	Analog Cockpit
Ease of Use	Pros: Information displayed on one screen; no need to reset headings Cons: Training required to understand all the functions and controls; controls are not standardized across manufacturers	Pros: Instruments are universal across aircraft types Cons: Pilot must scan six instruments; heading indicator needs to be frequently reset; more mechanical parts
Reliability, Flexibility & Redundancy	Pros: Proven reliability; displays can be custom configured; engine performance displays can be integrated to reduce pilot workload; in case of PFD failure, functions can be transferred to the MFD; glass cockpits often have backup attitude, airspeed and altimeter instruments Cons: Dependent on electrical power and software stability; requires backup instruments	Pros: Instruments can function during loss of electrical power Cons: Instruments require regular maintenance and overhaul; can fail due to vacuum or electrical failures; each instrument performs a single function; pilots must know failure modes and resolutions for each instrument; backups must use independent vacuum/static/electrical systems
Visibility	Pros: Doesn't suffer from parallax view from the right seat; colors on panel make it easier to distinguish important information Cons: Glare may affect display clarity	Pros: Gauges can provide quick updates without focusing on exact numbers Cons: Round dials can be difficult to read from the right seat due to distance and parallax
Alerts	Pros: Visual and aural annunciations and warnings are standard for airspeed, altitude and others	Pros: You can set bugs on the altimeter and heading indicators as reminders
Weather & Traffic Avoidance	Pros: Provide access to weather forecasts, radar reports, etc.; traffic awareness functionality integrated into systems	Cons: Radar capability requires additional systems and hardware; additional hardware required for traffic awareness functionality
Connectivity	Pros: Bluetooth connectivity for uploading flight plans, cockpit communication and entertainment	Cons: Analog instruments don't connect to Bluetooth or other technology

Fig.2.63 **General Pros & Cons of Glass Cockpit & Analog Cockpit Functions**

The glass cockpit was first introduced into new generations of jet transports having first been developed for military aircraft. They then found their way into the cockpits of business aircraft. Consisting of the PFD/MFD and engine monitoring systems mentioned above, EFIS glass cockpits are now also found in virtually all new general aviation piston aircraft being produced worldwide today.

Glass cockpits are similar in appearance to computer and laptop displays, with data-displaying windows that the pilots use to see the information they need while flying their aircraft. The systems provide pilots with controls allowing them to change display modes, and to enter data (such as a heading) when required.

Glass cockpits have been credited with improving flight safety by enhancing situational awareness for pilots during flight. With traditional analog instruments, pilots are required to monitor six individual instruments, commonly referred to as the "six-pack.". Glass cockpits, by contrast, integrate all six instruments into one display rendering the pilot's monitoring of the aircraft quicker and more efficient.

The Primary Flight Display (PFD)

The PFD presents information dedicated to depicting all aspects critical to flight, including airspeed, altitude, heading, attitude, vertical speed and yaw. It displays on one LCD unit what the traditional pitot static and gyro analog instruments require six individual instruments to show.

The centrepiece of a PFD is typically a simulated attitude indicator in the middle, or upper-half, of the screen. A simulated heading indicator will commonly be displayed on the lower half of the PFD screen. Additional information is typically superimposed on and arranged around these graphics. For instance, a vertical tape may show airspeed to the left of the attitude indicator, while two additional vertical tapes may show altitude and vertical speed to the right of the attitude indicator within the screen. Fig.2.64 shows the characteristic appearance of a PFD screen.

Fig.2.64 **Primary Flight Display (PFD)**

PFD systems are driven by attitude and heading reference systems (AHRS). AHRS are three-axis sensors that provide heading, attitude and yaw information for the aircraft. They consist of either solid-state or gyroscopes, accelerometers and magnetometers that drive the attitude indicator and heading

indicator. They replace mechanical gyroscopic flight instruments that are found in aircraft equipped with traditional analog (i.e., round dial or "steam gauge") flight instruments.

When combined with high-speed microchips that process air data, AHRS form an air data attitude and heading reference system (ADAHRS). An aircraft with ADAHRS has three rate sensors for each axis, and three accelerometers for each axis. This provides additional information such as airspeed, altitude and outside air temperature, thus enabling the PFD to provide the full representation of analog instruments in one electronic LCD display.

PFD systems typically have built-in means by which to alert pilots of potentially hazardous conditions. By changing the colour of a display, by changing its shape, or by triggering an audio alert, any condition (such as too low an airspeed) can be immediately brought to the pilot's attention. A system failure, such as the failure of an input sensor, may (depending on the type of PFD unit) drop a warning bar across data that is no longer valid on the display.

The Multifunction Display (MFD)

The MFD displays the constant relationship between the aircraft and its environment. Its most significant use is for displaying of navigation and weather information. It typically displays GPS-derived moving maps upon which aircrew can overlay different information. Information overlayed on the MFD may include the aircraft's current route plan, weather information, terrain and obstacle depiction, restricted airspace and aircraft traffic. The MFD can also display information about aircraft systems, such as fuel status and electrical system status. Furthermore, it can display engine monitoring data, and constantly scan for out-of-range conditions. Like the PFD, the MFD is a single multi-function display, usually in colour, and is generally identical in size and shape to the PFD. The MFD can be thought of as a cockpit management system designed, like the PFD, to reduce pilot workload and to enhance "eyes up" operations.

Fig.2.65 **Multifunction Display (MFD) Cockpit Management**

PFD and MFD features are accessed via softkeys and knobs that surround their respective LCD screens. Some MFD units have touchscreen functionality. (See **Moving Map Display** in Chapter **Radio Navigation** for information about MFD use for navigation.)

Back-Up EFIS Display

Aircraft equipped with glass cockpits are required to have back-up flight instruments. In the earlier days of glass cockpit installations, such back-ups consisted of traditional mechanical analog instruments. Many glass cockpit aircraft continue to have such analog back-up configurations. Newer aircraft, however, may now be equipped with back-up flight instrument systems that are EFIS themselves.

A back-up EFIS system typically functions as a smaller, more compact PFD. In the event of a loss of power on a primary display, a back-up display delivers primary instrument functions driven by its own emergency power source. Depending on the manufacturer, the emergency power will be available for a prescribed duration, thereby allowing the pilot to fly to the safety of an alternate airport, if not to the intended destination airport itself.

The more advanced back-up EFIS displays that are available for glass-paneled aircraft have attitude, altitude and airspeed tapes, turn rate indicators, vertical speed indicators, horizontal situation indicators, angle of attack indicators and more. Given their independence from the primary display, a back-up display can also function as a standby unit available to the pilot for cross-comparison with the primary display during normal operations.

The Heads-Up Display (HUD)

An extension in the development of EFIS technology is a system that projects the displayed information onto the front windscreen of the aeroplane. This heads-up display (HUD) system permits the pilot to monitor both the instrumentation and the progress of the aeroplane, especially during the approach and landing, while always having their eyes looking forward and over the nose of the aircraft. In addition, thermal imaging systems are now developed that project real-time, real-world images of the view outside the cockpit window on a heads-up display in the cockpit. Aircraft with such advanced technology allow pilots to see through fog and darkness, providing for greater safety during all phases of very low visibility flight operations.

Smartphones & Tablets

Personal smartphones and tablets can be used for multiple applications within the cockpit. In-cockpit applications ("apps") supported by personal electronic devices (such as iPads, iPhones, Android-based tablets and phones) provide panel-mounted instrument capability from their handheld architecture. The power of primary flight displays (PFD) and multifunction displays (MFD) is, thus, available from common handheld equipment. These have the functionality to provide features such as attitude, airspeed, altitude, heading, compass and vertical speed. They also provide navigation, weather, and flight planning support.

The functionality available to pilots from their smartphones and tablets effectively provides a personal backup glass cockpit that can help pilots stay aware of their position and surroundings in normal and emergency situations.

Like the glass panel-mounted EFIS systems used as primary instrumentation in aircraft, smartphones and tablets that provide attitude and heading reference system (AHRS) data typically use microelectromechanical system (MEMS) gyros to generate their screen information. In addition to providing information such as pitch and bank, these handheld units

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

can also provide automatic dependent surveillance broadcast (ADS-B) information, wide area augmentation system (WAAS) GPS data, and air traffic and weather information. Airspeed data can be displayed via connectivity to the aircraft's pitot and static ports, or it can be GPS derived. Engine instrumentation data can also be integrated into the units. Airport information and flight plan filing are also served by use of smartphone and tablet technology.

Smartphone and tablet solutions for the cockpit also have the power to display synthetic vision systems (SVS) that provide a 3-D reality of the environment in which an aircraft is flying. Sometimes referred to as "highway in the sky" technology, this feature provides situational awareness by linking displays to databases of known terrain and obstacles. The navigation component of a synthetic vision system is achieved through the use of GPS and inertial reference systems.

Some avionics manufacturers offer interconnectivity between smartphone and tablet apps, and panel-mounted EFIS displays in the cockpit. Thus, such connected panel technology allows a pilot to transfer from their smartphone or tablet, for example, a flight plan to the installed avionics that reside permanently on their aircraft's panel.

Split-screen displays can be configured into some smartphones and tablets. This accommodates the showing of aircraft attitude information alongside weather and/or navigation data. Landscape or portrait displays are preference options that can also be selected on various units, and through various apps.

Information that is transmitted to smartphones or tablets uses off-the-shelf software apps to interpret and display its data. Such apps are acquired from vendors by means of Internet downloads.

Within the cockpit, the units are commonly held in place by means of windscreen or cockpit frame-mounted cradles, or by means of kneeboards with straps, or control yoke mounts.

One of the primary benefits brought about by the use of such handheld devices is their positive impact on the reduction of cockpit clutter and paper documents that are required, or advisable, to be carried on board during flights. The downside of such devices is their susceptibility to software failure and power outages. The screens on such devices are often hard to see owing to sun glare, and they are also very susceptible to the effects of overheating. Poor calibration and display lag can also detrimentally impact their reliability and usefulness in the cockpit.

Smartphones and tablets must never be used as primary flight instruments in place of panel-mounted equipment. They are best used as personal back-up instruments only, as flight support solutions.

2.2.4 The Radar Altimeter

The radar altimeter (also known as the absolute altimeter or the radio altimeter) indicates the actual height of the aeroplane above the earth, or above any object on the earth over which the aeroplane is passing. The principle is extremely simple. A radio transmitter in the aeroplane sends a signal towards the earth whose frequency changes at a definite rate with respect to time. This signal is reflected by the earth and returns as an echo after a time interval equal to twice the height divided by the velocity of the signal. During this interval, the frequency of the transmitter has changed and now differs from that of the echo by the rate of change of frequency times the time of transit. The reflected wave is combined with some of the outgoing wave in the aeroplane receiver and the difference, or "beat" frequency, is measured by a frequency meter. Since the reading of the meter is that of the "beat" frequency, it is proportional to the time delay of the echo, and hence to the **height**, and can thus be calibrated in feet.

Fig. 2.66 **Radar Altimeter**

The radar altimeter depicted in Fig.2.66 incorporates an AGL altitude scale with indications from 0 to 2,500 feet and a decision height (DH) select bug which the pilot, by rotating the DH knob, can select to the desired decision height on the altitude scale. The DH lamp lights when the decision height has been reached. A flag, when it drops into view, indicates that invalid altitude information is being displayed.

The radar altimeter is of immense value in an aeroplane flying on an IFR or night VFR flight. By displaying to the pilot exact information about height above the ground, it is an important instrument for use during landing approaches and in any other situation in which the pilot wants to maintain a safe altitude above the minimum enroute or minimum obstruction clearance altitude. Radar altimeters are also used extensively by aeroplanes engaged in specialized types of flying, such as aerial survey, agriculture, etc., to maintain positive altitude above the ground regardless of rolling terrain, hills or valleys. The radar altimeter is also useful in determining the position of pressure systems. By comparing the readings of the radar altimeter and an altimeter set to pressure altitude, current changes in atmospheric pressure may be determined. In combination with his/her basic knowledge of the characteristics of pressure systems (i.e. highs and lows), a pilot is able to determine which direction to fly around a pressure system to take advantage of the best winds.

2.2.5 Angle of Attack Indicator

The angle of attack indicator provides for the pilot a continuous read-out of the margin above stall, regardless of aircraft weight, C.G. location, angle of bank or any of the other factors that affect indicated stall speed.

As a wing moves forward through the air, the airflow is divided into one section that flows over the wing and one section that flows under the wing. The point at which the airflow separates is known as the stagnation point. The stagnation point moves chordwise on the undersurface of the wing as the angle of attack changes. It moves forward as angle of attack decreases and aft as angle of attack increases to a maximum aft position at which the wing stalls.

The angle of attack indicator senses the changing position of the stagnation point by means of a sensing unit, or pressure

probe, that is installed on the wing slightly beneath the leading edge. In some angle of attack indicator designs, a spring-loaded vane moves up and down as the stagnation point changes position and relays this information to the cockpit display. In other angle of attack indicator designs, air pressure passes from the sensing probe through to pressure sensors co-located with an air data computer microprocessor. This processing unit translates the pressure readings into electronic signals that are sent to the cockpit indicator.

Most angle of attack indicators are designed such that green bars illuminate at the bottom of the display as the angle of attack increases. Additional green bars illuminate as the angle of attack continues to increase. If the angle of attack moves towards a critical point, the green bars will turn to yellow as a caution to the pilot. Ultimately, if the wing's angle of attack is advancing close to a stall, the display bars will switch to red.

An angle of attack indicator does not relate to airspeed and can therefore give a continuous, accurate readout of margin above stall, no matter what the flight attitude. It is an especially useful instrument during take-off, landing and steep banking maneuvers.

Fig.2.67 **Example of Angle of Attack Indicator**

2.2.6 Mach Indicator

A Mach indicator provides a continuous indication of the ratio of an aeroplane's airspeed to the local speed of sound. It expresses airspeed as a Mach number by measuring and correlating dynamic and static pressures.

The instrument comprises two aneroid capsules enclosed in a sealed case that is connected to the aeroplane's static pressure system. One aneroid capsule is connected to the dynamic (pitot) pressure source, while the other is sealed and partly evacuated.

This latter reacts only to static pressure and therefore measures altitude. The former reacts to both dynamic and static pressure and therefore measures airspeed. (Note: Mach number equals airspeed divided by the speed of sound.)

A change in any sensed pressure causes appropriate expansion or contraction in one or both capsules. The capsules are geared to a pointer on the face of the instrument. This pointer reacting to the expanding and contracting capsules indicates the airspeed of the aeroplane in which it is installed.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

3 Aero Engines

Present day aircraft engines are precision-made power-producing devices made of quality material that represent the achievement of years of research and engineering experience in their design. While true that piston engine technology reached a peak in the 1950's, engine manufacturers are now investing in new programs to re-enhance the development of piston engine technology. Requirements for lead-free fuels, advances in computer-controlled electronic engine management and ignition systems have brought about the demand for newer, cheaper, and easier-to-maintain powerplants.

But the fact remains that the life and efficiency of an aero engine still depend to an appreciable extent upon the use or abuse the motor suffers at the hands of the pilot. Sudden "gunning" of the throttle places undesirable stresses on the working parts of an engine. Switching off an overheated motor is a form of torture that should be punishable by a heavy fine. Operating an aero engine at continuously high power settings may progressively reduce the reliability of the engine and the safe period between overhauls.

Proper care and concern in the handling and running of an aero engine at the hands of an experienced pilot will keep that engine off the old age pension long beyond its normal span.

While it is by no means necessary that a pilot should learn to be a mechanical engineer to look after the powerplant that propels his/her aircraft, an elementary knowledge of the principles and construction of internal combustion engines is necessary if its proper handling and running procedures are to be observed.

Very possibly some students who expect to fly as private pilots only will choose to skip over some of the details of engine design and construction that are described in this chapter. Those aspiring to be commercial pilots and who may some day fly as bush pilots in the more isolated areas of the world should have a more detailed knowledge of how an engine operates. Many a bush pilot has had to be his/her own mechanic. For this reason, a detailed description of an engine's operation is contained in the following pages.

3.1 Definitions & Configurations

3.1.1 Definition of Power

A piston driven aero engine is frequently referred to as a "powerplant" and its product is power. First then, let us consider briefly the basic meaning of these terms. Power may be simply defined as the rate of doing work. Work, in turn, is heat transformed into energy. The amount of power an internal combustion engine can produce depends on the amount of heat which can be generated by the burning gases. This, in turn, is limited by the mechanical ability of the engine to transform as much of this heat as possible into useful work.

The standard unit in use for measuring the power produced by an engine is one horsepower. This represents the amount of work done when 33,000 lbs. are raised 1 ft. in one minute.

The power developed within an internal combustion engine is called indicated horsepower. Due to friction, etc., all this power is not available for useful work. The power which is available, after friction and other losses, is called brake horsepower (BHP).

The total amount of indicated horsepower an engine can produce may be represented by the formula:

$$\frac{PLANK}{33{,}000} \quad \text{That is:} \quad \frac{P \times L \times A \times N \times K}{33{,}000}$$

Where

P = The mean pressure in lb. per sq. inch.

L = The length of the stroke in feet.

A = The area of the piston in sq. inches.

N = The number of impulses (or power strokes) per minute.

K = The number of cylinders.

"P", the pressure, in an internal combustion engine is obtained by admitting a mixture of vaporized gasoline and air into a cylinder, compressing this mixture, and burning it. As the gasses burn, they expand, exerting an enormous pressure on the piston head. The piston is driven down, pushing the connecting rod down, which in turn forces the crankshaft to turn at high speed. Note that the piston is driven down not by an "explosion" of gases, as is commonly supposed by beginners, but by their burning (or combustion) expansion and resultant pressure.

"L", the length of the stroke, is the distance the piston travels up or down inside the cylinder.

"A", the area of the piston, means the area of the top or "head" of the piston.

"N", the number of impulses, is the number of times the engine fires in one minute. In a 4-stroke engine this would be equivalent to half the number of revolutions of the crankshaft for each cylinder.

"K" is the number of cylinders in the engine.

Aviation progress demands a continued search for greater and greater power output from aircraft motors. This involves constant improvement in the mechanical ability of engines to produce power from heat.

Since the horsepower (hp) of an engine is the total product of the four factors referred to in the formula, it is obvious that an increase of all, or any one or more, of these will increase the power output of the engine.

"L" and "A", being dependent on the length of the stroke and area of the piston, are fixed and cannot be varied without altering the design of the engine. "P", "N", and "K", however, are variable and are the factors which can be stepped up in the search for greater power.

Some of the means adopted to boost "P" (mean effective pressure) are high compression ratios, higher octane fuels, supercharging, improved scavenging, etc.

A pilot may at will vary "N" by manipulation of the throttle (in the case of an aeroplane fitted with a fixed pitch propeller). Designers seek to improve this factor by designing high speed engines.

Mean Effective Pressure (M.E.P.) is the average pressure within the cylinder during the entire period of the power stroke, from the time the piston is at top dead centre (T.D.C.) until it reaches

bottom dead centre (B.D.C.). It measures an engine's capacity to do work independent of engine displacement. (See T.D.C. and B.D.C. definitions under **Engine Timing**.)

Brake Mean Effective Pressure (B.M.E.P.) is the M.E.P. available to produce the net power delivered at the propeller shaft (BHP). It shows the brake power produced by the engine per unit displacement of engine volume thereby providing a means by which to evaluate the efficiency of a given engine at producing torque from a given displacement.

3.1.2 Types of Combustion Engines

The three main types of piston engines in current use are the radial, in-line, and horizontally opposed. They derive their names from the arrangement of their cylinders around the central crankshaft.

The horizontally opposed type is most commonly used in general aviation aeroplanes.

Horizontally Opposed

The horizontally opposed engine, as the name implies, has two banks of cylinders working on the same crankshaft which lie directly opposite to each other in the horizontal plane. There may be four, six or eight cylinders.

Fig.3.1 **Horizontally Opposed Engine**

The outstanding advantage of this engine design is its flat, or "pancake" shape. Its small frontal area generates less drag. The vast majority of engines in piston-engined aircraft are of this configuration.

Radial

The cylinders are arranged radially around a "barrel-shaped" crankcase. This type of engine always has an odd number of cylinders (five, seven, nine, etc.). This is necessary because the firing order is alternate (e.g. 1-3-5-2-4). The usual limitation is nine cylinders in a row. Larger engines of this type have two, three, or more rows working on a two or three throw crankshaft.

Radial engines are dry sump or pressure lubricated.

Fig.3.2 **Radial Engine**

The radial engine has an acceptable ratio of weight to horsepower developed and is easy to maintain. However, these advantages are outweighed by its poor shape that considerably increases parasite drag and reduces forward visibility from the cabin. This engine configuration is mostly found in vintage aircraft.

In-Line

In this type of engine, the cylinders are arranged side by side in a row along the crankcase. Each separate piston works on an individual crank-throw.

Fig.3.3 **In-Line Engine**

The practical limit is six cylinders in one row, the reason being that a crankshaft long enough to accommodate a greater number of cylinders would be difficult to make stiff enough to avoid vibration. Where a larger number of cylinders is required, it is customary to arrange these in two or more banks. Hence, multi-bank in-line engines have V-Type, X-Type and H-Type configurations in which the banks normally share a common crankshaft.

Some in-line engines are inverted, that is, the engine is installed upside down to provide better visibility for the pilot. These obviously must be of the dry sump or pressure lubricated type.

The single in-line engine, with its small frontal area, generates little parasite drag. Streamlined though it may be, such configurations are found today mostly in vintage aeroplanes.

Recent developments in aero engine technology have seen the common V-Type automotive engine configuration applied to aviation use. V-6 and V-8 designs, with their roots in automotive engine block design, are seeing their way into limited use in general aviation aircraft. Lower overall operating costs and improved performance are at the root of these applications. While all manufacturers certify their aircraft with purpose-built and proven aero engines such as those from noted companies Lycoming and Continental, there are those who are engaged in the practice of retro-fitting (i.e. replacing) engines found in older aircraft with engines of newer technology.

3.1.3 Parts of a Reciprocating Engine

The basic parts of a reciprocating engine are the crankcase, cylinders, pistons, connecting rods, valves, valve operating mechanism, camshaft and crankshaft. In the head of each cylinder are located the valves and spark plugs. One of the valves is in a passage leading to the induction system; the other in a passage leading to the exhaust system. Inside each cylinder is a movable piston connected to a crankshaft by a connecting rod.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

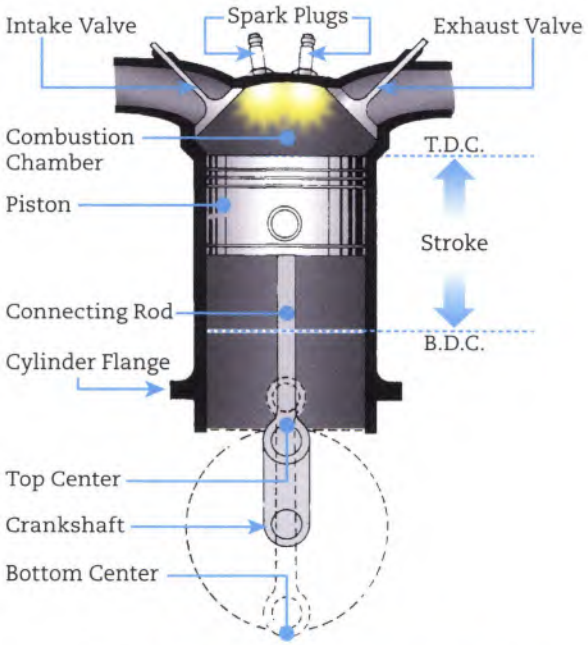


Fig.3.4 **Basic Parts of a Reciprocating Engine**

The cylinder and the cylinder head are finned to dissipate heat. The crankshaft converts the reciprocating motion of the piston into rotation and transmits power from the piston to drive the propeller. The bore of a cylinder is its inside diameter. The stroke is the distance the piston moves from one end of the cylinder to the other, that is, from T.D.C. (top dead centre) to B.D.C. (bottom dead centre). See Fig.3.4.

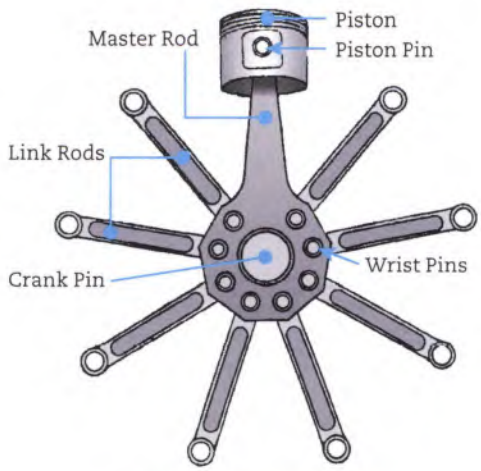


Fig.3.5 **Radial Connecting Rod**

Reduction Gears

Many modern engines are geared. This means that the engine turns at a higher speed than the propeller which it drives. In this way, geared engines are made to develop greater power than direct drive engines with the same propeller speed.

The gearing consists of two sets of gear wheels. One of these is driven by the crankshaft and meshes with the other which, in turn, drives the propeller hub shaft. The reduction in speed is governed by the relative number of teeth in the two sets of gears.

Auxiliary Drives

The crankshaft drives the propeller. It is also made to drive various auxiliary gears which in turn drive oil pumps, magnetos, generators, dynamos, air compressors, and other essential auxiliaries.

The auxiliary gears are generally grouped in a gearbox placed at the rear of the engine, to avoid increasing the frontal area.

In some cases a single flexible half-time shaft, driven by the crankshaft, is used to drive all the auxiliary gears.

3.1.4 The Four-Stroke Cycle

Almost all piston engines in use operate on what is known as the four-stroke cycle. This means that the piston travels four strokes (two up and two down) to complete one cycle. During this operation, the crankshaft revolves through 2 complete revolutions.

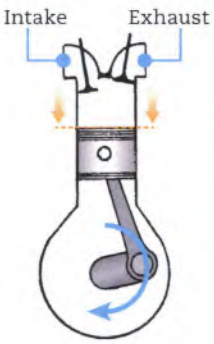


Fig.3.6 **Induction**

Fig.3.7 **Compression**

The Induction Stroke

The intake (sometimes called the inlet) valve open, the piston moves down from the top to the bottom of the cylinder creating a negative pressure. By this action, air, which surrounds the conventional suction carburetor and which is approximately at atmospheric pressure, is drawn through the carburetor where it picks up a suitable amount of fuel (about one part gasoline to fifteen parts air) and the resulting fuel/air mixture rushes in past the open intake valve into the cylinder to fill the space above the piston. The amount of mixture which enters the cylinder will depend on the throttle opening. The exhaust valve remains closed.

The Compression Stroke

Both valves closed, the piston moves up from the bottom to the top of the cylinder, compressing the mixture.

The volume in the cylinder above the piston when it is at the bottom of the compression stroke compared to the volume when it has moved up to the top of the stroke is known as the compression ratio. Most gasoline engines use a ratio of between 6:1 and 7:1.

The Power Stroke

Both valves closed, the compressed mixture is fired by a spark plug. The burning gases, expanding under tremendous heat, create the pressure which drives the piston down with terrific force. This force is sufficient to complete the other three strokes in addition to providing the energy required for useful work.

Fig.3.8 **Power**

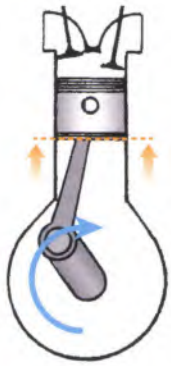


Fig.3.9 **Exhaust**

The Exhaust Stroke

Exhaust valve open, the piston moves up from the bottom to the top of the cylinder, pushing the burned gases out past the open exhaust valve. The intake valve remains closed.

3.1.5 The Two-Stroke Cycle

Small engines that operate on the principle of a two-stroke cycle are in common use in ultralight aircraft that are popular among recreational flying enthusiasts.

This engine takes only two strokes of the piston (one up and one down) to go through a complete power cycle. It differs from the four-stroke cycle engine in that it uses the crankcase as a fuel mixture transfer pump. Charging the crankcase with fuel, compression of the fuel charge and ignition all take place on the upward stroke of the piston. Exhaust of the burned gases and transfer of the fuel to the cylinder take place on the downward stroke.

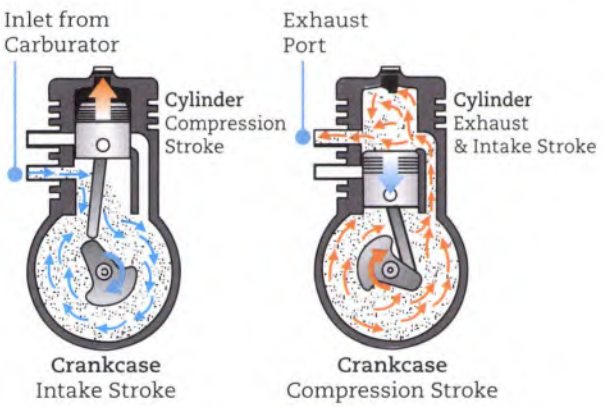


Fig.3.10 **Two-Stroke Cycle**

To accomplish all of this, there are three openings or ports in the cylinder (see Fig.3.10). One port leads from the combustion chamber and carries away the exhaust gases (exhaust port). One port leads from the crankcase to the combustion chamber (inlet port.) The third opening is the inlet from the carburetor. These ports have no valve mechanism to open and close them as does the four-stroke cycle engine. Instead, the piston acts as a slide valve as it moves up and down in the cylinder.

On the upward stroke of the piston, a vacuum is created in the crankcase and the fuel/air mixture is sucked into the crankcase through the inlet from the carburetor that is uncovered as the piston moves upward in the cylinder. At the same time, the piston seals off the exhaust and inlet ports and compresses the fuel/air mixture that is in the combustion chamber. Near the top of the stroke, the spark plug fires the compressed mixture. The hot, burning and expanding gases create the pressure that drives the piston down.

The descending piston seals off the inlet from the carburetor and begins to build up pressure in the crankcase. As the piston descends farther in the full travel of the stroke, it uncovers the exhaust port and the burned gases are allowed to escape. At the bottom of the stroke, the inlet port is uncovered and the compressed fuel/air mixture rushes through the inlet port from the crankcase into the combustion chamber. Some of the fuel/air mixture does escape through the exhaust port since both ports are uncovered at the same time. To reduce this loss to a minimum, the top of the piston is shaped to act as a barrier and direct the fuel mixture away from the exhaust port.

The four-stroke cycle engine, as will be explained in more detail in the section **Lubrication**, uses the hollow crankshaft to distribute oil throughout the engine. The two-stroke cycle engine, however, uses its hollow crankshaft as a transfer pump for the fuel/air mixture and must therefore depend on a different lubricating system. In a two-stroke cycle engine, fuel and oil are mixed in proportions specified by the manufacturer and this mixture is used to fill the fuel tank.

When the fuel/oil mixture passes through the carburetor, the fuel is vaporized and mixes with the air. The oil is broken up by the stream of air into tiny droplets which lubricate all the surfaces of the crankcase, piston and cylinder. Some oil remains in the crankcase, but most passes into the combustion chamber where it is burned.

The engine manufacturer usually recommends the use of an oil that has no detergents as additives. Such additives do not burn completely and may leave undesirable carbon deposits on the pistons, spark plugs and cylinder surfaces.

Regular automobile gasoline is used in the two-stroke cycle engine but the engine manufacturer usually recommends regular grade rather than premium. The lead in the latter causes lead deposits on the spark plugs.

The basic principles of carburetion and ignition are as applicable to the two-stroke cycle engine as they are to the four-stroke cycle engine, although the individual systems for achieving ignition and, more especially, carburetion will vary between the two types of engines. The explanations of carburetion and ignition which follow in this chapter are, nevertheless, applicable to both engine types.

3.1.6 The Diesel Engine

The internal operating and design principles, and most moving parts, of a diesel engine are almost identical to those of a gasoline engine but there are some significant operational differences. Whereas the air/fuel mixture used in a gasoline engine requires a separate source to produce an electric current to ignite a spark plug located in the cylinder's combustion chamber, the air/fuel mixture used in a diesel engine is ignited by heat resulting from the piston's compression of air into the top of the cylinder. Diesels, therefore, require no separate electric ignition source. Also, they require no carburetor.

The compression ratio in a diesel engine (also, in aeronautical parlance, called a compression-ignition, or a Jet-A, engine) generally runs from 15:1 to 20:1 with operating temperatures between 500°C and 700°C. Air, at such hot temperatures, causes ignition of the fuel which is sprayed

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

into the combustion chamber in metered quantities by an injector pump under pressures reaching 500 lbs per square inch. Normal gasoline engines could not work with such high temperatures at the end of the compression stroke without the gasoline igniting long before the proper time in the cycle.

Diesel engines have fewer moving parts than gasoline engines, generate greater power per pound of fuel, and have more beneficial time-between-overhaul (T.B.O.) requirements. Conversely, diesels develop less horsepower per pound of total weight compared to gasoline engines, are more costly than comparable horsepower gasoline engines, and require more complex dampening of torsional vibrations.

Pilots flying aircraft that are powered either by a diesel engine or a gasoline engine will find the operation of the throttle and propeller pitch control to be identical. The diesel, however, does not require a mixture control, carburetor heat, or ignition control. See **Pitch** under **The Propeller**, **Mixture Control**, **Prevention of Carburetor Icing**, and **The Ignition System** for information on these aero engine controls.

3.1.7 Turbocharging

An engine designed to operate at normal sea level atmospheric pressure is called a normally aspirated engine. As we know, as altitude increases, the density of the air decreases. As the air becomes less and less dense with altitude, the engine is capable of producing less and less power as indicated by the decreasing rate of climb. Eventually, the aeroplane becomes unable to climb any higher.

In many modern aeroplanes, the job of supplying the engine with dense air when the aeroplane is operating in the thin air at altitude is accomplished by a turbocharger. A turbocharger is powered by the energy of the exhaust gases.

The hot exhaust gases, which are discharged as wasted energy in a normally aspirated engine, are directed through a turbine wheel, or impeller, and turn this wheel at high rpm. The turbine wheel is mounted on a shaft on which also is mounted a centrifugal air compressor. Each is enclosed in its own housing. The compressor, therefore, turns at the same speed as the turbine wheel. As more exhaust gases are directed over the turbine, the compressor will turn faster and the air supplied to the engine by the compressor will be denser allowing the engine to produce more power. The turbocharger is a particularly efficient system since it uses engine energy to maintain horsepower without using any engine horsepower as its source of power.

The turbocharger is installed between the air intake and the carburetor so that it compresses the air before it is mixed with the metered fuel in the carburetor.

The speed of the turbine depends on the difference in pressure between the exhaust gas and the outside air. The greater the difference, the less back pressure on the escaping exhaust gases and hence the higher the speed of the turbine and the greater the degree of compression provided by the turbocharger. As the plane climbs higher and higher into the area of less atmospheric pressure, the turbocharger provides the engine with practically the same weight of air from sea level up to the critical altitude. At this altitude, the turbocharger is operating at its maximum capacity. If the aeroplane continues to climb above the critical altitude, engine power will diminish.

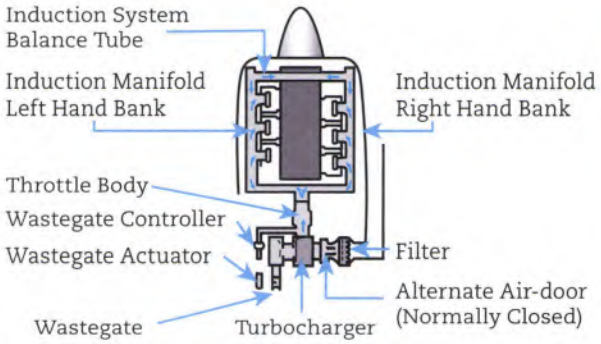


Fig.3.11 **Turbocharging**

Incorporated into the turbocharger system is a control that regulates the amount of exhaust gas which is directed to the turbine and that, therefore, regulates the speed of the turbocharger. When air of increased density is not needed from the turbocharger (at low altitudes or low power), a wastegate in the exhaust system is allowed to remain open and the exhaust gas is vented around the turbine wheel into the atmosphere. When dense air is required, the wastegate can be closed and the exhaust gases are forced into the turbine. Adjusting turbocharger speed to meet changing power requirements is a matter of controlling the flow of exhaust gases.

Control of the turbocharger is provided by either an automatic control or a manual control. There are two types of the latter.

The simplest form of manual control is the fixed bleed system which does not have a wastegate. Instead, some exhaust gas continuously escapes through an opening of predetermined size. The rest of the exhaust gas turns the turbocharger anytime the engine is running. Engine power is adjusted by the throttle and the amount of exhaust gas available to turn the turbocharger is directly related to the power developed at that particular throttle setting.

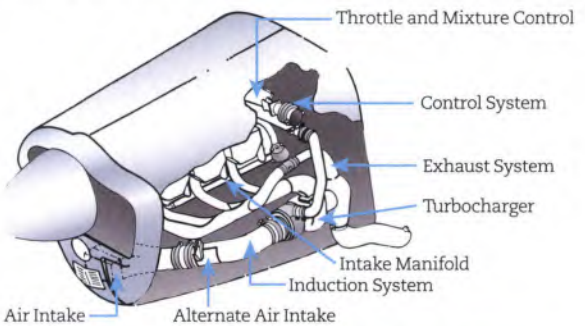


Fig.3.12 **Turbocharger Induction & Exhaust System**

The more common manual control interconnects the throttle and wastegate with the cockpit throttle control. In this system, there is a programmed movement of the throttle plate in the carburetor or fuel injector and of the wastegate. As the throttle plate moves towards full open, the wastegate begins to close so that at full throttle, the throttle plate is fully open and the wastegate is fully closed. A pressure relief valve is incorporated into the system to protect the engine in the case of unintentional overactivation of the throttle.

With a manually controlled turbocharger system, the pilot must take care to limit throttle movement to keep the manifold pressure within the limit specified for the engine. During take-off, the throttle should be smoothly advanced until manifold pressure is about two inches below the maximum for

which the engine is rated. As the turbocharger speed builds up, the manifold pressure will increase slightly to the maximum limit. As engine power deteriorates during climb, the throttle should be advanced slowly to maintain the desired manifold pressure until the full throttle position is reached at the critical altitude.

The automatic control system utilizes a pressure controller that senses differences in air pressure and adjusts the oil pressure which controls the position of the wastegate. No pilot action is required to activate its operation.

In operating a turbocharger system, it is important to be aware of throttle sensitivity and the need for slow and smooth throttle movements. The turbocharger does not react instantly but needs time to follow throttle movements and then stabilize. The operation of any specific turbocharger system in any specific aeroplane should, of course, be carried out with close attention to the instructions of the manufacturer.

The great advantage of turbocharging is the increased performance at altitude. A turbocharged engine is able to deliver full power at altitudes much above the service ceiling of a normally aspirated engine. Better climb performance, faster cruise at altitude, better take-off performance at high density altitude airports are therefore possible.

3.1.8 Supercharging

The supercharger is an internally driven compressor, powered directly from the engine. As much as 16% of the engine power can be required to drive the supercharger. It is installed downstream from the carburetor and compresses the fuel/air mixture after it leaves the carburetor. This is called forced induction.

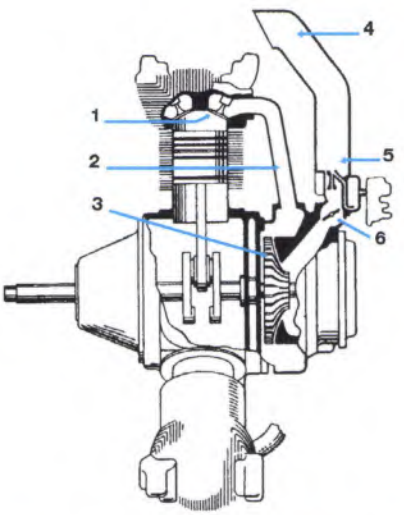


Fig.3.13 **The Supercharger**

The supercharger compresses the mixture of air and gasoline, thus maintaining the charge at a specified weight for full power output at high altitudes. 1. Intake Valve. 2. Intake Manifold. 3. Supercharger. 4. Airscoop. 5. Carburetor. 6. Throttle.

Forced induction may be used to increase the power of an engine at low altitudes. In this case the pressure over and above sea level atmospheric pressure which is forced into the manifold is called boost. This term is also used in the application of turbocharging.

When forced induction is used at high altitudes to make up the deficiency in pressure due to the lower density of the air (and hence maintain sea level power), it is called supercharging.

3.1.9 Engine Timing

In discussing the four-stroke cycle, we considered the various strokes as beginning and ending as the piston reached the top or the bottom of the cylinder. In actual practice, better performance is obtained from the engine by what is known as valve lead, lag, and overlap. Valves require time to open and close. They therefore are timed to open early and close late in order not to waste any of the induction or exhaust strokes.

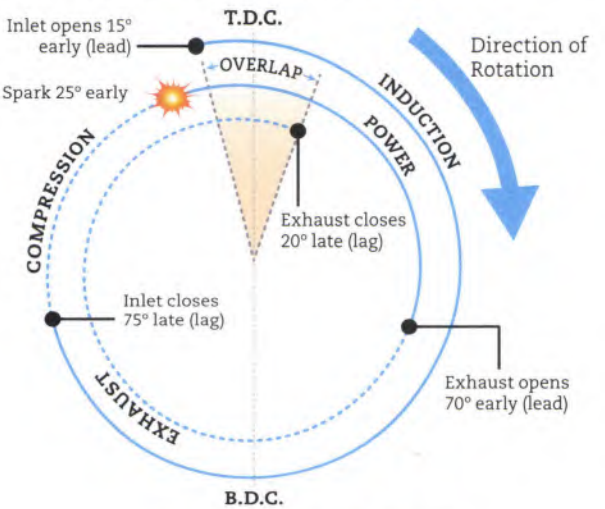


Fig.3.14 **Engine Timing Diagram**

- Valve lead is timing the valve to open **early**.
- Valve lag is timing the valve to close **late**.
- Valve overlap is allowing both valves to remain open at the **same time**.

Fig.3.14 shows a typical timing diagram for a modern high speed engine. T.D.C. refers to top dead centre, the point where the piston reaches the top of the cylinder, and B.D.C. to bottom dead centre. The circles represent the rotation of the crankshaft, 180° between T.D.C. and B.D.C.

From Fig.3.14 you will note the following:

1. The intake valve opens 15° early on the induction stroke.
2. The intake closes 75° late on the induction stroke in order to use the momentum of the incoming gases to force the maximum charge into the cylinder.
3. The spark occurs 25° early on the power stroke in order to allow complete combustion of the mixture so that the maximum pressure is reached when the piston passes T.D.C. and is travelling down on the power stroke.
4. The exhaust opens 70° early on the exhaust stroke because any pressure remaining in the cylinder after B.D.C. is passed opposes the motion of the piston coming up on the exhaust stroke.
5. The exhaust closes 20° late on the exhaust stroke. This means that both valves are open together, or overlapped, on the induction and exhaust strokes for 35°. The exhaust valve, by remaining open late, helps to scavenge the burned gases. The momentum of the outgoing exhaust gases leaves

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

a partial vacuum in the cylinder which accelerates the entry of the incoming charge.

The valve mechanism is operated by a camshaft, which is driven by a gear that mates with another gear attached to the crankshaft. The camshaft rotates at one-half the speed of the crankshaft.

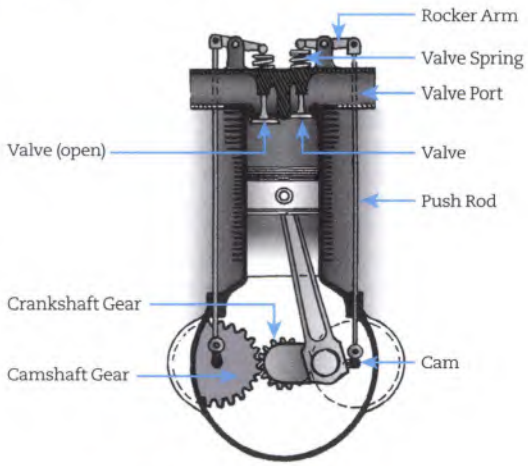


Fig.3.15 **Valve Mechanism**

Valve Clearances

A clearance is necessary between the valve stem and the rocker to prevent the valve being forced off its seat when it gets hot and expands. This is called the valve clearance, or sometimes tappet clearance, of the engine.

The clearances are set cold, allowance being made for the correct clearance to be attained when the valves reach their normal working temperature.

Clearances set too wide will cause a loss of power, vibration and excessive wear.

Clearances set too close are apt to warp the valves and cause serious trouble.

3.1.10 Engine Cooling

We have previously considered the fact that the source of all power is heat. It will therefore be obvious that the modern aero engine, which is a unit designed to develop great power, must generate tremendous heat. The heat of combustion reaches temperatures inside the cylinder that are as high as 2,500°C.

An appreciable portion of this heat is absorbed by the engine parts, the cylinder walls, piston heads, etc. This would cause excessive overheating, to the extent of actually fusing or melting the metal parts, if some means were not provided for dissipating it.

The engines of some aeroplanes use a liquid coolant, but, by far, the most common method of dissipating engine heat is by circulating cooling air around the engine cylinders. Both horizontally opposed and radial engines are air cooled. Some in-line engines are air cooled, a few models are liquid cooled.

Air Cooling

In air cooled engines, fins are added to the cylinders to provide a greater surface area of metal to absorb the heat. Ram air passing over the fins absorbs this excess heat and carries it away. This cooling air enters the engine compartment through cooling-air intake openings in the front of the engine cowl and is expelled through openings at the rear of the cowling. Cooling-air intakes are generally 30% to 50% of the size of the engine frontal area.

Shrouds are used to direct airflow into the engine compartment. Baffles are used to force the cooling air directed by the shrowds, towards the cylinders and other engine parts such as magnetos and generators.

On low performance aeroplanes, the openings to expel the cooling air are of fixed size. In high performance aeroplanes, the size of these openings is usually controlled by cowl flaps. During high power settings, such as during take-off and climb, the forward speed of the aeroplane is low and engine power is high. More cooling air is necessary to dissipate the higher heat generated by the harder working engine. During cruise, less cooling air is required. Since the cooling air flowing over the cylinders causes drag, in a high performance aeroplane it is of benefit to reduce the amount of air entering the engine compartment when it is not needed. This is effected by the addition of cowl flaps that are controlled from the cabin. They are used fully open for taxi, take-off and climb and are closed or partially closed for cruise and descent.

Cooling fans are sometimes mounted on the front of the engine and are gear-driven from the engine crankshaft. They assist the flow of cooling air at high altitudes where the weight-flow of cooling air is becoming light.

On some aeroplanes, the exhaust gases are directed through augmentor tubes, or jet pumps, which produce a suction strong enough to increase the flow of cooling air past the cylinders. The augmentor tubes also produce additional thrust sufficient to off-set the drag of the cooling air.

Liquid Cooling

A liquid cooled engine makes use of water and a coolant as its main cooling components. The coolant contains additives such as anti-freeze and anti-corrosion agents. The coolant, thus, prevents the water from freezing in very cold conditions. It also prevents damage to the engine. The anti-corrosion agent prevents rusting of engine parts such as the cylinder block and cylinder head as they come into contact with the water. The coolant also helps to increase the boiling point of the water.

The liquid cooled engine uses a pressurised and closed system. The pressurised system helps to increase the boiling point of the water to prevent the latter from evaporating. The heat from hot engine parts, such as the cylinder head and engine block, is dissipated by the circulating water. Water jackets are carved out inside the cylinder head and engine block. This enables the coolant to reach the hottest surfaces located within the engine thereby allowing the liquid to transport heat away from the engine's internal components. The more that engine surface areas come into contact with the coolant mix, the greater the coolant dissipates more heat. Also, the water-cooled engine uses a water pump to improve the rate of water flow. As the water flows more freely inside the engine, any excess heat is removed more effectively.

A liquid cooled engine uses a thermostat to control the temperature effectively. When the engine is cold, the thermostat bypasses the radiator. It then circulates the coolant liquid within the engine to quickly reach the engine's normal operating temperature. When the coolant temperature rises to a threshold operating temperature, the thermostat opens and allows the coolant to enter the radiator to cool down. Liquid

coolant flows from the radiator's upper tank to its lower tank through capillary tubes surrounded by radiator fins. Furthermore, a cooling fan blows air past the radiator fins and cools down the liquid coolant as it passes through the radiator. Thus, heat from the liquid coolant is transferred to the passing air.

Liquid cooling offers some benefits over air cooling. Cooling drag is reduced owing to there being no requirement for cooling-air intakes. Also, liquid cooling evens out the distribution of cooling across all cylinders of the engine, thereby reducing cylinder head temperature variation that is common with air-cooled engines. Liquid cooling also eliminates the risk of shock cooling.

3.1.11 Engine Oils & Lubrication

Lubricating oil has four important functions to perform:

1. Cooling — Carries away excessive heat generated by the engine.
2. Sealing — Provides a seal between the piston rings and cylinder walls, preventing "blow-by" loss of power and excessive oil consumption.
3. Lubrication — Maintains an oil film between moving parts, preventing wear through metal to metal contact.
4. Flushing — Cleans and flushes the interior of the engine of contaminants which enter or are formed during combustion.

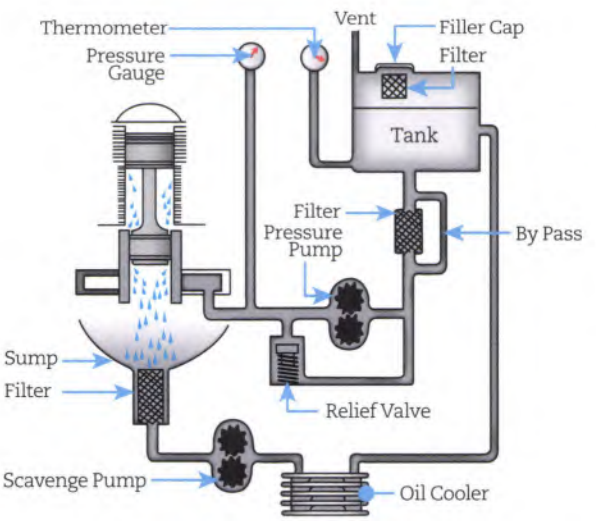


Fig.3.16 **Dry Sump Lubrication Systems**

Methods of Lubrication

In the force feed method the oil is forced under pressure from a pressure pump (oil pump) through the hollow crankshaft where it lubricates the main and big end bearings. It is then sprayed through tiny holes to lubricate the remaining parts of the engine by a fine mist, or spray.

In the splash method the oil is contained in a sump, or reservoir, at the bottom of the engine. It is churned by the revolving crankshaft into a heavy mist which splashes over the various engine parts. This type of lubrication is no longer used in engines that are manufactured today but it will be found in the engines of some of the older aeroplanes that are still flying.

FORCE FEED METHOD: DRY SUMP LUBRICATION

A dry sump engine is one in which the oil is contained in a separate tank and is forced under pressure from a pressure pump through the hollow crankshaft to lubricate the engine by the force feed method. The oil is then drained into a sump from which it is pumped by a scavenging pump, which has 20% greater capacity than the pressure pump, to ensure that the oil does not accumulate in the engine. Then it passes through an oil cooler and is returned to the tank.

Fig.3.16 shows the system of oil circulation in a dry sump engine. The by-pass around the filter is provided to prevent damage in case of failure (through neglect or carelessness) to clean the filter. In this event, dirty oil is considered definitely a lesser evil than no oil at all! The by-pass is also a safety device allowing the oil to return to the tank without damaging parts such as the filter in case the pressure should become excessive. The pressure relief valve provides a means of regulating the oil pressure.

Oil pressure is monitored by means of an oil pressure gauge on the instrument panel of the aeroplane.

SPLASH METHOD: WET SUMP LUBRICATION

An improvement of the previously mentioned splash method that incorporates a pressure delivery is now in common use in modern engines. This is known as wet sump lubrication. In a wet sump system, the engine oil supply is contained in a sump, or pan, under the crankcase. The oil passes through a filtering screen in the bottom of the sump into the suction side of a gear type pressure pump. The pump moves the oil around the outside of its gears and imparts a predetermined pressure to it. A pressure relief valve is incorporated into the pump to ensure a steady pressure during all phases of engine operation.

The pressure pump which is engine driven delivers oil through passageways in the crankshaft and pushrods to all the bearings of the engine for lubrication and cooling. Some internal parts and surfaces of the engine may be splash lubricated or they may be sprayed by oil flung off rotating parts of the crankcase and connecting rods. After circulation, the oil drains through return tubes back to the sump. An oil cooler may be located in the return line to dissipate heat.

In some engines, the delivery of oil throughout the engine may be handled entirely by the pressure pump; in others, by a pressure-splash combination.

The wet sump method has the advantage of light weight and relative simplicity, being free of the exterior tank, tubing and linkages characteristic of the dry sump system. However, the capacity of the sump is limited by the size and design of the nacelle or cowling. Wet sump lubrication cannot be used on aeroplanes designed for aerobatic or inverted flight without special modifications because the oil would flood the crankcase.

Requirements of Good Oil

The requirements of good oil are as follows:

1. Viscosity — Resistance to flow. Stickiness or body. Good viscosity gives proper distribution of oil throughout the engine and prevents rupturing of the oil film which lubricates the engine parts over the wide range of temperatures in which aero engines work. An oil with a high viscosity index is one in which the changes in viscosity, due to widely varying operating temperatures, are small.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

The use of oil of too high viscosity for existing climatic temperatures will cause high oil pressure.

The use of oil of too low viscosity for existing climatic temperatures will cause low oil pressure.

2. High Flash Point — The temperature beyond which a fluid will ignite. This should be in excess of the highest engine temperature.
3. Low Carbon Content — To leave as little carbon as possible should oil work past the scraper ring and burn. Good oil should also have a low wax content. Oils which have good resistance to deterioration and the formation of lacquer and carbon deposits are said to have good oxidation stability.
4. Low Pour Point — The temperature at which a fluid solidifies. Necessary for cold weather starting.

Additives

Some oils contain additives. These may be classified as follows:

1. Detergents: Those which improve engine cleanliness.
2. Oxidation Inhibitors: Those which improve oil stability.
3. Anticorrosion Additives: Those which deter corrosion.
4. Pour Point Depressants: Those which lower the pour point.

There are also various other "improvers" which increase film strength and viscosity and which decrease foaming characteristics.

It is important that oil which contains additives should be added ONLY to oil of the same type.

Grade of Oil

The grade of oil recommended for various seasonal aero engine requirements is designated by an S.A.E. Number, or by the Saybolt Universal Viscosity, which is expressed in "seconds". The engine oil grade is, therefore, frequently referred to as, say, S.A.E. 50, or as a "100 second oil". In the United States it is common practice to add 1000 to the Saybolt Viscosity, so that this particular grade could also be referred to as "Grade 1100". For engines of moderate horsepower, the following grades are generally used:

	Saybolt Viscosity	S.A.E. Number	U.S. Grade
Summer	120	60	1120
Fall or Spring	100	50	1100
Winter	80	40	1080
Arctic	65	30	1065

Fig. 3.17 **Oil Grades**

In order to eliminate the need to change oil seasonally, manufacturers of engine oil have developed a synthetic multi-viscosity oil. This oil remains thin in extremely cold weather but also, at high outside temperatures, maintains the same viscosity as the traditional summer grade of oil.

Oil Temperature

It is necessary to keep the oil temperature in an operating engine between certain well defined limits because the lubrication of the engine depends on the viscosity of the oil which, in turn, is governed by oil temperature.

If the oil gets too hot, its viscosity will be impaired and may not be enough to keep a good film of oil on the engine parts. If it gets too cold, the oil will become thick and will not flow through the passageways, resulting in improper lubrication.

Oil temperature is monitored by means of an oil temperature gauge which is installed on the instrument panel of the aeroplane.

Engine manufacturers always specify operating limits which must be strictly observed, otherwise the life and reliability of the engine may be seriously impaired.

Oil Dilution

Because of the difficulties experienced in starting an aeroplane in very cold weather, an oil dilution system is incorporated into the lubrication system of some engines. Its purpose is to thin the oil with raw fuel immediately before the engine is stopped in order to lower the viscosity of the oil and thereby reduce the high cranking torque (resistance to turning) of a cold engine during the next start. It also ensures an immediate and adequate supply of oil to all moving parts after start-up.

In such a system, a line connects the fuel pressure line to a special Y draincock in which a spring poppet valve is installed. This valve is operated manually from the cockpit.

In very cold weather, when the engine will be shut down for several hours or for overnight, a small amount of fuel is allowed to enter the oil line, just before the engine is stopped, by holding the dilution control open for a short time while the engine is running. Diluted oil flows through the entire engine, replacing the heavy oil, thereby facilitating the next start.

Before carrying out oil dilution, however, be sure to check the amount of oil in the oil tank and ensure that it is below capacity. Oil dilution will add an appreciable quantity of gasoline to the oil system and there must be room for the extra fluid. Otherwise the oil system will overflow. It may be necessary for the pilot to drain off some oil before starting oil dilution.

The amount of oil dilution necessary is dependent on the expected temperature against which it is necessary to protect. Oil dilution is recommended by most manufacturers at 5°C and lower. The elapsed time required to achieve the amount of oil dilution required depends on two factors: the rate of flow of gasoline into the oil and the amount of oil to be diluted. The engine manufacturer's instructions should be closely followed when carrying out oil dilution.

After starting the engine, the engine operating temperatures must be raised and maintained at a sufficiently high level to vaporize the gasoline. The vaporized gas is vented through the engine crankcase breather. This procedure is known as boil-off. Boil-off should be done prior to take-off and only in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Over dilution can be caused by excess dilution time, by insufficient boil-off and, on occasion, by a leaking poppet valve. Excessive drop or fluctuation of oil pressure will be the result.

The introduction of gasoline into the lubrication oil will loosen carbon and sludge deposits within the oil system. This carbon and sludge is carried to the engine oil screen and collects there in sufficient quantity to collapse the screen. Consequently, the screen must be removed for inspection and cleaning regularly during periods when oil dilution is being carried out. Some operators use oil dilution regularly, even in warm weather, as a means to keep the oil system clear of carbon and sludge.

One problem associated with oil dilution that a pilot must watch for is oil venting. If the engine is warmed up too rapidly at too high power settings, the gasoline in the oil will tend to vaporize so rapidly that the pressure within the engine crankcase will result in oil as well as gasoline being blown out through the engine crankcase breather. Care in following recommended procedures for completing boil-off will prevent this from happening.

3.2 The Fuel System

The aircraft fuel system stores and delivers the proper amount of fuel at the right pressure to meet the demands of the engine. It must deliver this fuel reliably throughout all phases of flight, including violent maneuvers and sudden acceleration and deceleration.

There are usually several tanks, even in a simple system, to store the quantity of fuel required to give the aeroplane reasonable range. These tanks are usually located in the wings, although extra tanks may be located in the cabin area. A line leads from each tank to a selector valve in the cockpit, by which the pilot is able to select the tank from which fuel is to be delivered.

3.2.1 Types of Fuel Systems

Fuel Pump Fuel System

With this type of fuel system, an engine driven fuel pump supplies the pressure that keeps the fuel flowing to the engine. This type of system is in use in all low wing aeroplanes and in any aeroplane with a higher performance engine. Such a system incorporates, as well as the basic pump, auxiliary electric pumps for use in emergency situations in case the engine driven pump fails. The booster pump, operated by a switch on the instrument panel, is also used to start the fuel flowing under pressure before the engine is running. A fuel pressure gauge, mounted on the cockpit panel, gives a visual indication that the fuel system is working by giving a reading of the pressure of fuel entering the carburetor.

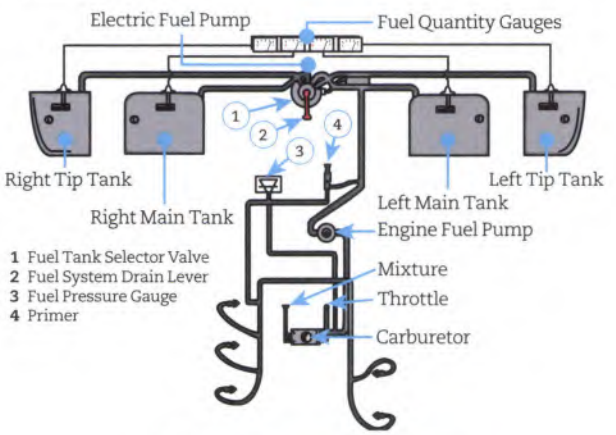


Fig. 3.18 **Fuel Pump Fuel System**

Gravity Feed Fuel System

This is the simplest type of fuel system and is still in use on many high wing, low powered aeroplanes. The fuel tanks are mounted in the wings above the carburetor, with gravity causing the fuel to flow from the tanks, past the fuel selector valve to the carburetor. A drain allows removal of water and sediment trapped at the strainer. A primer sprays raw fuel into the intake manifold system or directly into the cylinders to aid engine starting, particularly in cold weather.

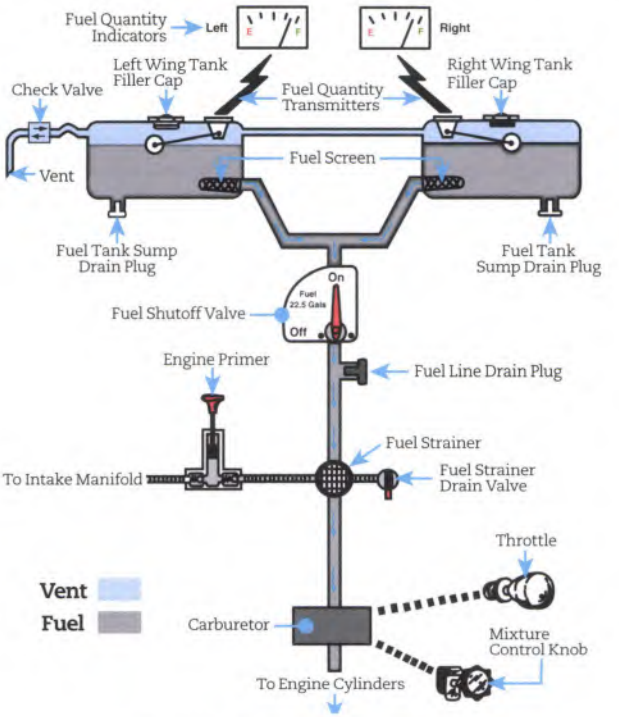


Fig. 3.19 **Gravity Feed Fuel System**

3.2.2 Fuel Tanks

The location, size and shape of fuel tanks vary with the type of aeroplane in which they are installed. They are most often located in the wings. Wing tip tanks are common.

The tanks are made of materials that will not react chemically with any aviation fuel. Aluminum alloy is most widely used. Synthetic rubber or nylon bladder type fuel cells are also in use. This latter type depends upon the structure of the cavity in which it sits to support the weight of fuel it holds.

Usually a drain is provided at the lowest point of the tank through which water and sediment, which are heavier than fuel and therefore settle to the lowest point of the fuel tank, can be drained.

Overflow drains are also incorporated to release fuel and prevent tanks from bursting when fuel expands in the tanks. Such expansion takes place when an aeroplane is parked in direct sunlight and the fuel becomes heated.

The top of each tank is vented to the outside air to maintain atmospheric pressure within the tank. Tanks are also fitted with internal baffles to resist fuel surging caused by changes in the attitude of the aeroplane. The tanks are filled through a filler neck on the upper surface of the wing. Caps for the filler neck have locking devices to prevent accidental loss during flight.

Information about the capacity of each tank is usually posted near the fuel selector valve in the cockpit of the aeroplane.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

3.2.3 Fuel Selector Valve

A fuel selector valve in the cockpit permits the pilot to select the tank from which he/she wishes to draw fuel. It also has an "Off" position which closes off the fuel flow entirely. When the aeroplane is parked, the "Off" position may be selected.

3.2.4 Fuel Lines & Filters

The various tanks and other components of the fuel system are joined together by fuel lines made of aluminum alloy metal tubing and flexible synthetic rubber or teflon hose.

Coarse mesh strainers are installed in the tank outlets and often in the tank filler necks. Other strainers, made of fine mesh, are installed in the carburetor fuel inlets and in the fuel lines.

The main strainer is located at the lowest point in the fuel system. Its purpose is to prevent any foreign matter from entering the carburetor and to trap any small amounts of water that may be present in the system.

It is good practice to drain the strainers prior to every flight to remove from the system any water that may be in the fuel. In cold weather, this water might freeze and stop the fuel flow. In warm weather, excessive water entering the carburetor could stop the engine.

3.2.5 Fuel Quantity Gauge

Fuel quantity gauges are mounted on the instrument panel and give a visual indication of the amount of fuel in each tank. A pilot should never assume that the instrument is correct but should make a visual check of each fuel tank before initiating a flight.

3.2.6 Fuel Primer

A small hand pump is located on the instrument panel. This is a primer that is used to pump fuel into the engine prior to starting. Ordinarily, it is needed only in cold weather. A pilot should be careful not to overprime since this action may flood the engine and make it hard to start and, in some cases, may even cause a fire.

3.2.7 Fuel Types

Fuels for modern high compression engines must burn slowly and expand evenly rather than explode quickly. The fuels which possess this quality are known as high octane fuels where "octane" refers to the low molecular weight hydrocarbon that is a component of fuel.

The octane rating of a fuel is an index of a fuel's ability to resist enginge knock. It is arrvied at as follows:

- Octane is a substance which possesses minimum detonating qualities.
- Heptane is a substance which possesses maximum detonating qualities.

The proportion of octane to heptane in a fuel is expressed as a percentage. Hence, 73 octane means 73% octane and 27% heptane characteristics in the fuel. The natural gas limit is 72 octane. Fuels of higher octane than this are treated with tetraethyl lead or are "cracked" by a heat process which increases their volatility. They are also treated with sulphuric acid, lye, etc., to remove the gum, acid and other impurities.

Octane numbers go only as high as 100. Beyond this number, the antiknock value of the fuel is expressed as a performance number.

Fuel grades are usually indicated by two performance numbers (or octane ratings), as in the case of Grade 100/130. The first number (100) indicates the octane rating at lean mixture conditions, and the second number (130) indicates the performance number at rich mixture conditions. (Aircraft are still flying today with engines that were designed to burn an aviation fuel that is no longer produced, Grade 80/87, where 80 indicated the octane rating at lean mixture conditions and 87 at rich mixture.) The evolution of aviation fuels is such that both 80/87 and 100/130 grades have been superseded by the aviation fuel 100LL where the "LL" designation refers to "low lead." Whereas Grade 100/130 generally contained approximately 3 grams of lead per gallon, 100LL contains approximately 2 grams of lead per gallon. (By comparison, Grade 80/87 contained a maximum of 0.5 grams of lead per gallon.) Grade 100LL meets the same lean and rich mixture octane specifications as Grade 100/130 by enhancing its refining process, and by adding a toluene concentrate.

To differentiate different grades of fuel from each other, fuels are dyed different colours.

The following are the approximate ratings and the colours for the most common fuels:

Power Type	Fuel Grade	Colour
Low power output	Grade 80 (or 80/87)	Red
Medium power output	Grade 100 LL (low lead)	Blue
Medium power output	Grade 100 (high lead)	Green
Jet fuel	Kerosene/Diesel	Clear or straw
MOGAS	P87-90	Green
MOGAS	P84-87	Undyed

Fig.3.20 **Fuel Grades & Fuel Colours**

It is the responsibility of the pilot to see that the proper grade of fuel is used in refuelling his/her aeroplane. The Pilot's Operating Handbook always specifies what grade of fuel should be used and usually this information is also marked on a placard in the cockpit and also next to the filler cap.

It is also essential to ensure that the correct type of fuel is used in refuelling the aeroplane. Occasionally, aeroplanes with reciprocating engines have been refuelled with jet fuel instead of with avgas. The engine may run briefly on jet fuel, but detonation and overheating will soon cause power failure (during take-off if you are really unlucky). Restrictor rings in the filter neck of the fuel tank will prevent the large jet fuel nozzle from fitting into the fuel tank. Pilots need to be wary of colourless fuel. Jet fuel, water and MOGAS are colourless. It is important to pay close attention when your aeroplane is being refuelled and be sure you are getting the type of fuel you require.

If the proper grade of fuel is not available and the engine must be operated, use the next higher grade. Never use a lower grade. The engine will overheat badly, detonation may occur and engine damage may result.

The cessation of the production of Grade 80/87 gasoline resulted in operators of small aeroplanes fitted with engines designed for 80/87 having to use the higher grades of gasoline, first 100/130 followed by the latter's replacement, 100LL. The higher octane fuels with their greater lead content may, however, cause issues such as spark plug fouling in aircraft engines designed for lower octane fuel. Even the 100LL

gasoline, which has less lead than the formerly available 100/130, has more lead than 80/87 fuel.

Use of a fuel of a higher octane than that recommended for your engine will probably lead to excess deposits in the combustion chamber. This is especially the case in cold weather. If you are regularly using 100 LL in an engine designed for 80/87, rotation of the plugs, good leaning techniques, oil changes every twenty-five hours of operation and use of correct spark plugs will keep fouling problems to a minimum. In addition, it is advisable to avoid closed throttle operation (i.e. long idling descents) and practice power approaches. Don't let the engine cool too quickly. Heat helps to scavange possible lead deposits. Keep the cylinder head temperature in the normal operating range.

Fuel antiknock properties have been best dealt with by adding lead to fuel. However, environmental concerns have forced fuel producers to look towards developing unleaded aviation fuel alternatives. Most research is being directed towards the development of true 100-octane unleaded fuels that combine the latest in electronic engine management systems with octane-boosting fuel additives, to overcome the loss of lead content. Unleaded aviation fuel such as 100 UL can prevent spark plugs from fouling and exhaust valves from sticking, and lengthen the intervals between oil changes and engine maintenance.

Further to the movement away from leaded fuels, alternatives such as jet fuel (kerosene/diesel) are finding increasing growth in the general aviation market. In addition to its absence of lead content, jet fuel is less expensive, more readily available, and poses a reduced fire hazard.

Although in recent years the use of automobile gasoline/MOGAS has been conditionally approved for use in some types of aircraft, as a general rule automobile gasoline is not recommended as a replacement for aviation gasoline. The chemical specifications of automobile gasoline may vary widely on any continent due to local climatic conditions as well as state and provincial regulations. A pilot may, therefore, be unable to predict the performance of his/her engine under all operating conditions. Automobile gasoline is not as stable as aviation gasoline and may more easily come out of solution, especially if stored in the aeroplane fuel tanks for long periods. Some kinds of automobile gasoline will cause vapour lock and reduced fuel flow at high ambient temperatures and higher altitudes. Vapour lock may occur at temperatures above 24°C and at altitudes above 6,000 feet. MOGAS is also more susceptible to carburetor icing. The continued use of unleaded automobile gasoline may cause accelerated valve guide wear, valve damage and valve seat recession in engines that were designed to operate on fuels with some lead content. The advantage of using aviation gasoline at all times is that it is manufactured to a common and internationally recognized standard. In addition, in order to minimize contamination, special care is taken in handling, transferring and delivering aviation gasoline. The engine and airframe manufacturers use aviation gasoline to obtain performance data on which the Operator's Manual is written. Thus the operator can be assured of consistent performance. Another point to remember is that some insurance companies will consider the policy invalid if the aircraft is operated with a gasoline that is not approved.

Water particles in suspension in the fuel may, in very cold weather, change into ice crystals and accumulate in fuel filters and fuel lines in sufficient quantity to block the fuel line and cause engine stoppage. Anti-icing fuel additives inhibit the formation of these ice crystals. They should be used only if approved by the engine manufacturer and only in strict compliance with the manufacturer's instructions. Such additives should not be used without also consulting the airframe manufacturer because their chemical content may be incompatible with the aircraft fuel system cells, seals, etc. Lead scavenging additives have proved effective in reducing lead fouling of spark plugs but should also be used only if approved by both the engine and the airframe manufacturer.

3.2.8 Fuel Related Problems

Detonation

Detonation is characterized by the inability of a fuel to burn slowly and is generally defined as an abnormally rapid combustion, replacing or occurring simultaneously with normal combustion. Detonation is also characterized by its almost instantaneous nature, as contrasted with the smooth progressive burning of normal combustion. Under conditions of detonation, cylinder pressures rise quickly and violently to peaks that are often beyond the structural limits of the combustion chamber. Detonation is dangerous and costly. It puts a high stress on engine parts and causes overheating, warped valves and piston damage. It is not always easy to detect. Cylinder head temperatures offer about the best appraisal of the unseen combustion process. A rapid increase in cylinder head temperature, unless explained by some other factor, often indicates impending detonation. Throttle reduction is the most immediate and surest remedy.

Causes of detonation can be related to the following:

1. use of incorrect fuel.
2. overheating, sometimes caused by too steep a climb that reduces the flow of air around the cylinders.
3. too lean of a mixture.

In an emergency, a temporary remedy for detonation is to apply full rich on the mixture control. This enriches the mixture, which in turn tends to cool the engine due to the evaporation of the raw gas in the cylinders. Also, reduce the power as much as possible.

Persistent detonation indicates that a fuel of too low an octane is being used. As a permanent remedy for detonation, ONLY use fuel of the octane rating specified by the engine manufacturer. If such information is not available and there is any doubt regarding what octane should be used, always use an octane rating on the high side, never one that is too low.

Pre-Ignition

Pre-ignition is another trouble-maker which is sometimes confused with detonation. Pre-ignition, however, is a premature ignition of the mixture due to glowing carbon particles, or "local hot spots". It is often experienced when attempting to start a hot engine and usually results in a backfire through the intake manifold.

Damage to an engine from pre-ignition can be disastrous, causing warped pistons, cracked cylinder heads and other serious damage.

Vapour Lock

Vapour lock in the fuel line can be caused by high atmospheric temperatures, causing the gas to vaporize and block the flow of liquid fuel in the line.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

3.3 The Carburetor & Fuel Injection

The heat energy in an internal combustion engine is developed from the burning of a mixture of gasoline and air.

The combustion process in the cylinder relies on a proper mixture of this fuel and air to achieve optimum efficiency. The function of the carburetor is to measure the correct quantity of gasoline, vaporize this fuel, mix it with the air in the proper proportion and deliver the mixture to the cylinders.

The ratio of fuel to air is regulated by the pilot with the mixture control. The throttle regulates the flow of air into the engine and creates turbulence at the butterfly valve to assist in the mixing of fuel and air. The carburetor matches the flow of fuel with the air flow to achieve the ratio regulated by the mixture control.

In the fuel/air mixture delivered to the cylinders from the carburetor, the proportion of gasoline to air is a function of the mass of the air. Mixture is a very precise measurement, as the fuel to air ratio for best power is only 2 to 4 pounds of fuel per 100 pounds of air different from the ratio which will cause a lean misfire condition.

The following fuel/air ratios (by weight) indicate the effect, on a typical engine, of varying the mixture ratio at full throttle, constant speed.

Running Mixture	About 1 to 8
Best Power Mixture	About 1 to 14
Chemically Correct Mixture	About 1 to 15
Lowest Fuel Consumption Mixture	About 1 to 18
Leanest Running Mixture	About 1 to 20

Fig.3.21 **Fuel/Air Ratios & Engine Effects**

Engine temperatures are substantially affected by the ratio of fuel to air in the mixture entering the combustion chambers. An engine will run hotter with a lean mixture than with a rich mixture because the lean mixture is slower burning and the cylinder walls are exposed to high temperatures for a longer period of time. A richer mixture, on the other hand, burns more quickly, exposing the cylinder walls to high temperatures for a shorter period. Also, the additional fuel in the fuel/air mix of a richer mixture helps to cool the engine.

Too rich a mixture (an excess of fuel), as well as lowering the combustion temperature, results in unburned wasted fuel being expelled through the exhaust system. It contributes to fouled spark plugs and combustion chamber deposits. Too rich a mixture may also cause rough engine operation, appreciable loss of power or actual engine failure.

Too lean a mixture may cause rough engine operation, sudden "cutting out", "popping back" or back-firing, detonation, overheating or appreciable loss of power. Continual operation at too lean a mixture has also been responsible for engine failure.

The complete carburetor is a highly complicated unit incorporating many devices necessary to control the mixture ratio under widely varying conditions imposed on the modern aeroplane engine. As such, it is beyond the scope of this book to delve into fine detail about the carburetor. However, an explanation of the basic working principles of a simple carburetor and some of its additional parts will be of interest to the student pilot.

3.3.1 How the Carburetor Works

The Float Carburator

Fuel flows through the fuel supply lines, past the fuel strainer and enters the carburetor at the float (or needle) valve. It flows into the float chamber where its level is controlled by a float which opens or closes the float valve as it rises or falls. When the float rises to a predetermined level, it shuts off the float valve. No additional fuel can then enter the carburetor until fuel is used by the engine.

The float chamber is vented so that the pressure in the chamber equalizes with the atmospheric pressure as the aeroplane climbs and descends. The level of the gasoline in the float chamber governs the level of gasoline in the nozzle, as can be seen in Fig.3.22. One of the problems of the carburetor is that sometimes the float may become punctured so that gasoline leaks into it increasing its weight. As a result, the level of gasoline in the chamber rises and gas overflows from the nozzle, thereby flooding the carburetor.

Outside air passes through the carburetor air filter which is located at the carburetor air intake in the front of the engine cowling. It is then drawn through the Venturi (Fig.3.22) where its speed is increased. A low pressure area is thereby created in the throat of the Venturi. The reduced pressure around the nozzle draws the fuel, which is under atmospheric pressure, from the jet in the form of a fine spray.

The mixture of air and vaporized fuel, regulated in volume by the throttle valve, enters the intake manifold and is then distributed to the individual cylinders.

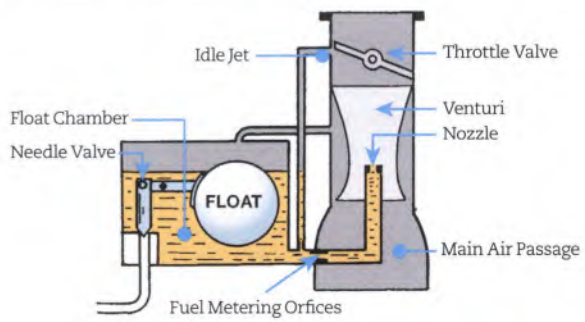


Fig.3.22 **Principle of a Simple Float Carburetor**

The throttle valve is connected directly to the throttle control on the instrument panel of the aeroplane. By means of the throttle, the pilot is able to control the amount of fuel/air mix that enters the engine thereby controlling the power output. Forward movement of the throttle opens the throttle valve, increasing the volume of fuel/air mixture and consequently the speed of the engine. Aft movement of the throttle closes the throttle valve and reduces the volume of fuel/air mixture entering the engine.

Some portion of the gasoline in the fuel/air mixture does not vaporize and is still in liquid form when it enters the engine. It is vaporized by the heat of the engine. It is, therefore, important to properly warm up the engine prior to take-off, so that there is sufficient engine heat to vaporize all the fuel and develop full power during take-off.

The Pressure Carburetor

Some aircraft, such as the Beech Bonanza, have systems known as pressure carburetors for controlling mixture. In such systems, fuel under pressure is injected into the intake

manifold where it is mixed with the incoming air prior to entering the cylinder through the intake valve. In this way, the hazard of carburetor ice is eliminated because the fuel is injected beyond the Venturi, thus canceling additive cooling effects of lower pressure and vaporization. (See **Carburetor Icing.**) A throttle control valve regulates the flow of the intake air.

Idling

When an engine is idling, the throttle valve is closed and there is insufficient movement of air through the Venturi to lower the pressure enough to draw fuel from the main nozzle. An idle jet is provided at the edge of the closed throttle valve where, owing to the narrow passage, the air accelerates and reduces the pressure enough to draw fuel from the idle jet.

Acceleration Pump

During rapid acceleration, the fuel in liquid form, which travels to the cylinders along with the vaporized fuel and air, is unable to increase its velocity as rapidly as does the air. This causes a temporary leanness at the cylinders which must be compensated for by temporarily adding more fuel at the carburetor. This is accomplished by the acceleration pump. The device consists of a piston controlled by the throttle which works up and down in a cylinder containing gasoline at the float level. The piston is drilled with two holes beneath which is a check valve. When the throttle is opened slowly, the check valve remains open and no fuel is pumped. When the throttle is opened quickly, however, the check valve closes and the fuel in the cylinder is pumped into the air stream through the economizer discharge needle.

3.3.2 Mixture Control

The need to have a mixture control system is occasioned by the fact that, as altitude increases, the density of the air decreases. Carburetors are normally calibrated for sea level operation, which means that the correct mixture of fuel and air will be obtained at sea level with the mixture control in the full rich position. As altitude increases, **a given volume of air weighs less**. It is obvious then that at higher altitudes, the proportion of air by **weight** to that of fuel will become less although the volume remains the same. (Regardless of altitude, the amount of fuel entering the carburetor remains approximately the same for any given throttle setting if the position of the mixture control is not changed.) The mixture, therefore, becomes over-rich, causing waste of fuel and loss of power.

To correct this condition, a mixture control is fitted to the carburetor. This device adjusts the amount of gas being drawn from the nozzle and thereby restores the proper fuel/air mix.

The mixture control, on some aeroplanes, is an automatic device. Most commonly, it is a manually operated control that is operated by the pilot.

The Manual Mixture Control

In a manually operated system, the amount of fuel that is drawn from the nozzle to mix with the air is governed by the mixture control that is located on the instrument panel. By adjusting this control, the fuel to air ratio can be adjusted either to enrich the mixture or to lean it.

There are many different forms of mixture control devices. The most common incorporates a needle valve which restricts the amount of fuel flowing from the float chamber to the nozzle. When the mixture control knob is moved fully forward, the needle valve retracts and allows fuel to flow freely to the nozzle. When the mixture control knob is moved aft, the needle moves into the fuel line to restrict the flow of fuel.

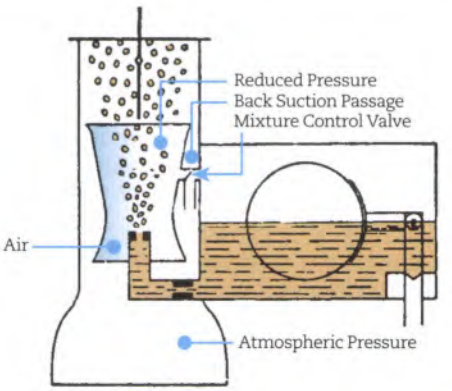


Fig.3.23 **Principle of the Back Suction Mixture Control**

Another type of control is the back suction system, which is depicted in Fig.3.23. A back suction pipe or passage interconnects the air space in the float chamber to the reduced pressure area in the Venturi. Closing the mixture control valve restricts the atmospheric pressure entering the float chamber and the back suction passage reduces the pressure in the chamber. This reduced pressure forces less fuel through the nozzle and leans the mixture.

IDLE CUT-OFF

Some engines are fitted with an idle cut-off control to stop the engine. This is simply an extreme "lean" position of the mixture control, which reduces the pressure within the float chamber to such a low value that no fuel at all flows through the jet. Idle cut-off will stop the engine immediately with no tendency towards pre-ignition or after-firing. It also makes the engine easy to start since the carburetor and fuel lines remain filled with gasoline.

USE OF MANUAL MIXTURE CONTROLS

Although specific instructions concerning mixture ratios are given for each type of aeroplane engine, a general rule to follow in using a manual mixture control is that the rich mixtures should be used at high power settings and the leaner mixtures at normal cruise power settings. Failure to observe the instructions pertaining to the use of the mixture control may easily result in engine overheating and detonation either of which will affect the reliability and useful life of the engine. In case of doubt, a mixture a little on the rich side is advisable as too lean a mixture can cause engine damage. The mixture control has the greatest effect, and all other engine controls a lesser effect, on engine operating temperatures.

Rich Mixtures — High Power Settings
Leaner Mixtures — Cruise Power Settings

A common method of adjusting a manually operated mixture control (for an engine with a fixed pitch propeller) is to observe the tachometer reading closely while moving the control from full rich towards lean. It will be observed that an increase in rpm occurs. The point at which this maximum rpm is first reached is called rich best power. Further leaning will hold the rpm at maximum value for an appreciable movement of the control, whereupon still further leaning will cause

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

a loss in rpm. The point where rpm begins to drop again from the maximum rpm value is called lean best power.

This system of using the manually operated mixture control is, at best, only approximate. The position of the mixture control should be rechecked with changes of operating condition, such as change in altitude, change in carburetor hot air setting, etc. This method is not as effective with an engine having a constant speed propeller, since variation in mixture ratio will not appreciably alter the tachometer reading.

Fig.3.24 **Fuel Management System**

More accurate methods of using the manual mixture control have made their appearance in recent years and are adaptable to most aeroplanes. These systems, which are capable of providing a continuous instrument indication of the mixture ratio, are of two main types: direct measurement and exhaust temperature measurement.

Direct measurement uses a fuel flow gauge in the cockpit of the aeroplane that tells the pilot the approximate volume per hour of fuel being metered to the engine. The gauge is used in conjunction with tables, supplied by the manufacturer and found in the Aeroplane Operating Manual, which chart the normal fuel flow settings to use with certain rpm, manifold pressure and TAS and when flying at various altitudes and at various outside or carburetor air temperatures. Fuel flow gauges of older manufacturers were somewhat unreliable as a guide to leaning an engine. They were very likely to go out of calibration and could not, therefore, be depended upon to give a correct reading of the exact amount of fuel being consumed per hour. Recent technology has improved the design of this gauge with solid state components that ensure a much more accurate and trustworthy indication of fuel flow while monitoring, at the same time, fuel remaining on board and flight time remaining at the current fuel flow. Even more advanced designs derive information from on board navigation equipment and are capable of displaying fuel flow information based on changing groundspeed.

The positive control of mixture is possible with the exhaust temperature measurement systems. The exhaust gas temperature (EGT) method uses a thermocouple in the exhaust stack near the exhaust valve of a cylinder to measure the temperature of the exhaust gases. This sensitive probe transmits its information to an indicator in the cockpit.

The EGT varies as the fuel/air mixture is adjusted by the mixture control. At full rich, a large amount of excess fuel is unburned; the exhaust gases are cooled resulting in a lower EGT reading. As the mixture is leaned, the amount of excess fuel is reduced and the temperature climbs. At the point where the ideal mixture of fuel and air (i.e. complete burning of the fuel/air mixture) is reached, the EGT peaks. Leaning past this point results in a cooling of the exhaust gases by the excess air. The mixture is then said to be on the lean side of peak EGT.

At peak EGT, the fuel economy is greatest, but there is a slight loss in airspeed. Actually, airspeed will increase along with EGT up to a point approximately 100°F rich of peak EGT. After that, it drops off. A pilot, interested in a faster cruise, should enrich the mixture by about 100°F from peak EGT to achieve best or maximum power. However, the slight loss of airspeed at peak EGT is more than compensated for by a 15% increase in fuel economy and range. The recommended mixture setting for maximum range at cruise power is peak EGT.

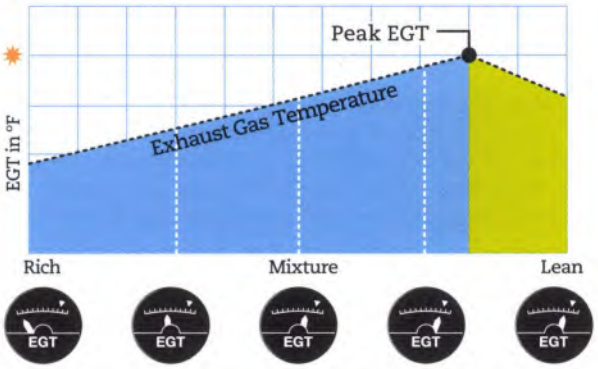


Fig.3.25 **Exhaust Temperature Management**

As in all aspects of engine operation, the recommendations of the engine manufacturer should be strictly followed in determining the temperature to which to lean when using the EGT system, if the manufacturer recommends a procedure that is different from that outlined above.

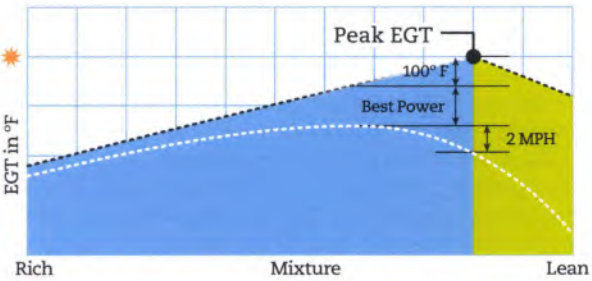


Fig.3.26 **Engine Leaning Using EGT System**

There are a number of different types of EGT gauges. A very basic system obtains an exhaust temperature reading from one cylinder only (usually that one which, according to the engine manufacturer, is the leanest cylinder). However, mixture distribution will vary from cylinder to cylinder and from engine to engine, even those of the same make and model. No aircraft engine is capable of perfect mixture distribution and the EGT will always vary from cylinder to cylinder. In fact, the leanest cylinder may even vary with variations in altitude, throttle and other conditions. To overcome this problem, the analyzer system (Fig.3.27) incorporates a probe in the exhaust stacks of each cylinder. The temperature gauge displays simultaneously the EGT of every cylinder. The pilot is, therefore, able to check the exhaust temperature in each cylinder, ensuring that no one has been leaned beyond peak EGT. In using the analyzer EGT system, the mixture should be leaned to peak EGT of the cylinder which reaches peak EGT first.

Fig.3.27 **Engine Analyzer System**

An added advantage of the analyzer system is the opportunity it affords to the pilot to frequently compare the running temperatures of each cylinder. If one is showing undue variance from the others, trouble may be indicated and a check and repair can be made before power loss or part failure occurs.

A scanning analyzer system (Fig.3.27) digitally displays engine temperature information. It is programmed to continuously monitor EGT on all cylinders, as well as cylinder head temperature and oil temperatures and to activate a warning light if any temperature conditions vary from the normal operating range.

The Automatic Mixture Control

Some engines are fitted with a mixture control which automatically compensates for changes in the pressure and temperature of the air entering the carburetor. The device consists of a sealed bellows containing gas which expands and contracts with changes in pressure and temperature. The movement of the bellows is used to operate the mixture control valve automatically. On some carburetors, a single automatic control is provided. On others, the pilot may select "Automatic Rich" or "Automatic Lean". The former is used for take-off and when higher power is required. The latter is used to give the most economical fuel consumption at normal cruise power. Provision is sometimes made for both manual and automatic mixture control. In this case, the pilot will be able to select "Full Rich" and "Idle Cut-off" in addition to "Auto-Rich" and "Auto-Lean".

Some automatic mixture control systems are calibrated to function properly only provided the pilot maintains the temperature of the fuel/air mixture in the carburetor Venturi area at a constant reading of about 3°C (38°F). This is accomplished by the manual operation of the carburetor hot air control and by monitoring the carburetor temperature gauge. (The carburetor temperature gauge is described later in this chapter.) The temperature of 3°C (38°F) is selected as being outside the range in which carburetor ice is likely to form.

3.3.3 When to Lean the Engine

At cruise power, below approximately 75 percent of the rated rpm of the engine, it is generally permissible and recommended to use, at any altitude above 5,000 feet, the mixture control as an economy device. The mixture may be leaned to "lean best power" (or peak EGT). Care must be exercised, however, when using the mixture control as a fuel economy device, because selecting too lean a mixture will increase operating temperatures in the combustion chamber.

At high manifold pressures, the mixture control should be set at full rich. For taking off or landing at airports at any elevation up to 5,000 feet density altitude and for climbing up to 5,000 feet, the mixture control should be in the full rich position.

When taking off at high altitude airports where the density of the air is reduced, the mixture should be leaned in order to get the maximum power from the engine since an over-rich mixture results in loss of power. To lean the mixture prior to take-off, position the aeroplane at the end of the runway, lock the brakes and advance the throttle to full power. Adjust the mixture control by the method listed above to "rich best power".

For a given throttle opening and a given position of the mixture control, the mixture will become enriched as high altitude is attained. With loss in altitude, conversely, the mixture becomes leaner with unchanged mixture and throttle controls. Therefore, the mixture control should be readjusted for each 1,000 feet of change in altitude both during climbs and descents. During a descent from altitude, it is not necessary to enrich the mixture at the beginning of the descent. The mixture should be adjusted gradually to avoid over-enriching the mixture. The enriched mixture has a cooling effect on the engine. So too does the reduced power to speed ratio during the descent.

Special consideration and limitations must be made in leaning turbocharged engines (see **Turbocharging**). In many turbocharged engines, a rich mixture is required to adequately cool the engine. Leaning during climb or on a hot day may result in excessive cylinder head and oil temperatures. The engine operating manual is the definitive source for leaning procedures and should always be followed.

When carburetor heat is being used, it may be necessary to lean the mixture slightly. Since the warmed air is less dense, the mixture will be richer.

Care must always be exercised in using the mixture control. Incorrect mixture ratios will cause certain variations in engine performance. At worst, improper leaning has led to shortened engine life, poor engine performance, and occasionally even engine failure. Even when it is not responsible for such serious problems, improper leaning, at least, has deprived aeroplane owners of a tremendous amount of fuel economy.

The most common misuse of the mixture control by pilots is selection of too lean a ratio. Many pilots, in an effort to conserve fuel and get the most air miles per gallon, commit this error. A "too rich" mixture will cause loss of power, but only seldom results in complete engine failure. "Too lean" a mixture, however, causes overheating of the cylinder parts and, in many cases, will lead to complete engine failure and substantial damage.

Engines that are operated at too lean a mixture for a considerable period of time will undoubtedly sustain more wear and will cost more to overhaul than will those engines operated with correct mixture selection. Pilots should realize that, in the long run, it is usually far cheaper to use a little more fuel during the running time between overhauls than to pay the extra overhaul costs.

3.3.4 Why Lean the Engine

Proper leaning of the engine is both practical and economical and will result in:

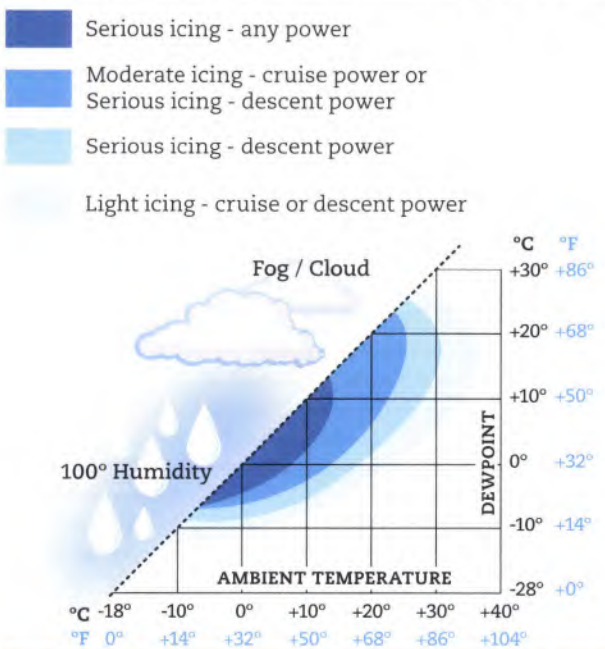
© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

1. Economy of fuel which means lower costs of operation.
2. A smoother running engine. Excessively rich mixtures make the engine run rough and cause vibrations which might cause damage to engine mounts and engine accessories.
3. A more efficient engine, giving higher indicated airspeeds and better aeroplane performance.
4. Extended range of the aeroplane at cruise.
5. Less spark plug fouling and longer life for spark plugs.
6. More desirable engine temperatures.
7. Cleaner combustion chambers and therefore less likelihood of pre-ignition from undesirable deposits.

3.3.5 Carburetor Icing

Under certain **moist** atmospheric conditions, with air temperatures ranging anywhere from approximately -5°C to 30°C, it is possible for ice to form in the induction system. This can pose serious problems for the pilot if he/she does not take action to rid the carburetor of this ice that is gradually closing off the flow of fuel to the engine. The fact that carburetor ice is responsible for a great many aviation accidents is perhaps indicative that many pilots, especially inexperienced ones, do not have sufficient respect for or appreciation of the ever present dangers of this icing problem. Such accidents can be prevented only by greater pilot awareness and vigilance.

The chart depicted in Fig.3.28 shows the range of temperature and relative humidity under which carburetor icing can occur.



CAUTION Chart not valid if operating on MOGAS

Fig.3.28 **Carburetor Icing Range**

The temperatures referred to in this chart are applicable only to aviation fuels. They are not valid if the aeroplane is being operated on MOGAS. Due to its higher volatility, MOGAS is more susceptible to the formation of carburetor ice.

Carburetor icing is usually indicated by a loss of power (a drop in manifold pressure with a constant speed propeller or a drop in rpm with a fixed pitch propeller). If severe enough, carburetor icing may cause complete engine failure, as the icing situation closes off entirely the induction flow.

Ice that forms in the carburetor is caused by two processes: the drop in temperature as heat is taken from the air in order to effect vapourization of the fuel, and from cooling due to the low pressure area in the carburetor.

Liquid gasoline must be changed into a vapour and mixed with air to become combustible. This process occurs in the carburetor. The heat that is required to change the liquid gasoline to a vapour is absorbed from the air that passes through the carburetor and into the manifold. Thus, the carburetor is, in effect, a miniature refrigerator, the temperature in this mixing chamber dropping as much as 30°C below the temperature of the incoming air.

If this air contains large amounts of moisture (and most air contains some water vapour), the cooling process will cause the water vapour to condense and possibly freeze on all surfaces of the carburetor but especially on the throttle butterfly. It is possible for this icing condition to occur, as can be seen, with outside air temperatures as high as 30°C, in bright sunshine with no sign of rain. A temperature of around 15°C should be regarded as the most suspect. The minimum relative humidity generally necessary for icing to occur is 50%, with the icing hazard increasing as the humidity increases. This type of icing is sometimes called fuel vapourization ice.

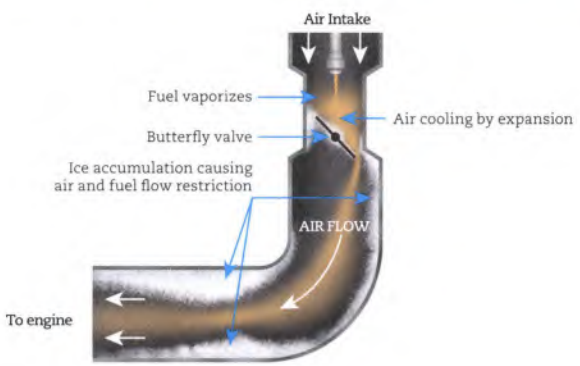


Fig.3.29 **Carburetor Ice**

When atmospheric temperature is below -5°C, the danger of carburetor icing is not serious, since the possibility of water vapour being present in air at such low temperatures is very slight. Any small amounts of moisture that might be present in the air will be frozen and will pass through the system harmlessly.

Ice also forms as a result of the low pressure area that is created in the carburetor Venturi. The rush of air across and around the throttle/butterfly valve, especially when it is in a partially closed position, causes a decrease in pressure which has a cooling effect on the fuel/air mixture. Moisture in this low pressure area will freeze and collect on the rear side of the throttle butterfly. This type of ice is sometimes called throttle ice. The presence of even a small amount of ice on the throttle valve may cause a relatively large reduction in airflow and therefore in engine power. A large collection will jam the throttle. The temperature drop resulting from this low pressure phenomenon is rarely more than 3°C.

In engine installations in which the fuel is introduced upstream from the throttle valve, as is the case with a float type carburetor, there is a fuel/air mixture at the throttle and

any ice formation would be attributable to the cumulative effects of both the refrigeration process and the throttle ice phenomenon.

In a fuel injection system (see **Fuel Injection**), only air passes the throttle and any ice formation would be attributable to throttle ice only. Icing is therefore, not a problem in fuel injection engines when the temperature is above 4°C.

A third cause of ice in the carburetor system is the result of water present in the atmosphere as snow, sleet or supercooled liquid. Under these conditions, ice builds up on the air scoop, carburetor screen and carburetor metering elements. This type of ice is commonly called impact ice.

Prevention of Carburetor Icing

Modern aeroplane installations incorporate a means of directing heated air into the carburetor air intake. The carburetor hot air handle on the panel activates this process. Many aeroplanes are fitted also with a carburetor mixture temperature gauge which tells the pilot the temperature of the mixture. Since it requires much more heat to melt ice that has already formed than to prevent its formation, the carburetor air temperature should at all times be maintained at 4°C to 7°C in flight by using carburetor heat. Some aeroplanes may be fitted with a carburetor air inlet temperature gauge which measures the temperature of the air just before it enters the carburetor. In this case, the temperature should be maintained at 32°C.

For take-off, however, the carburetor heat control should always be in the cold air position, because the full power of the engine cannot be developed when the air is heated. Heated air has less density than colder air. Bring the carburetor air temperature within safe limits during run-up, then select cold air for take-off. If icing conditions are suspected, hot air can be selected immediately after take-off. Since the full power of the engine is not required for cruising, moderate carburetor heat does not affect the performance of the engine in flight. Excessive carburetor heat, however, should be avoided when icing conditions are not present because detonation may result.

The possibility of ice formation may be detected (in aeroplanes that are without a carburetor air temperature gauge) by applying carburetor heat. If no ice is present, the application of heat will cause a loss of power indicated by a drop in manifold pressure (or in rpm, in the case of an engine fitted with a fixed pitch prop). When ice has begun to form in the carburetor, the application of full heat will remove the ice and permit the rpm in time to return to normal, but **initially** it will cause a further loss of power and a short period of engine roughness. Heated air directed into the induction system melts the ice, which goes into the engine as water, causing some roughness and the additional power loss. As soon as the ice is melted and the resulting water eliminated, the manifold pressure or rpm will return to the normal setting. This should occur in a minute or so. It is necessary for pilots to understand what is happening so that they will not be frightened out of using heat by what they might consider a situation that has been worsened. Not to use heat in such a circumstance could result in losing the engine completely.

With experience, a pilot learns to recognize atmospheric conditions under which carburetor icing might occur. In an aeroplane fitted with a carburetor air temperature gauge, ice formation can be prevented by keeping the temperature of the air in the carburetor mixing chamber above the freezing level.

A pilot, flying an aeroplane with no carburetor air temperature gauge of any sort, is well advised to check for carburetor ice by applying carburetor heat periodically. Certainly, it is preferable to anticipate the formation of carburetor ice and use heat as an anti-icer rather than to rely on it only as a de-icer. Any carburetor ice condition means loss of power; the engine exhaust therefore is not as hot, the carburetor hot air flow which is heated as it passes around the exhaust pipes is not as hot and is, in consequence, not as effective in melting a build-up of ice, especially if it is forming rapidly.

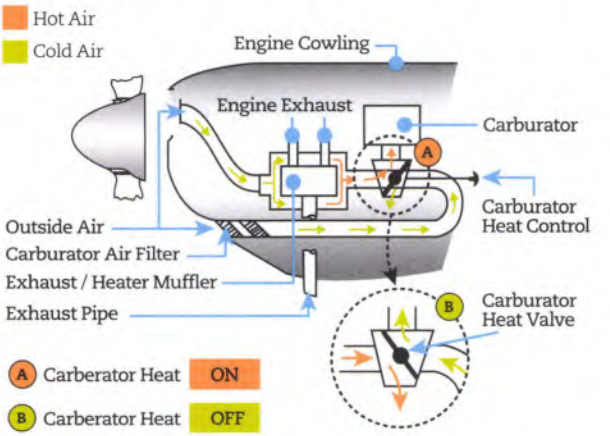


Fig.3.30 Carburetor Heat System

How long should the use of heat be continued when icing conditions are proven to exist? If icing is severe, then heat should be used as long as the flight continues. Despite the moderate power loss, no amount of heat can damage an engine running at a cruise setting of 75% power or less. The possibility of detonation in the use of heat occurs only when the engine is running at high rpm, such as during take-off and climb. During icing conditions, the pilot's concern is keeping the engine running, not the possibility of detonation.

When using heat for extended periods, the mixture should be adjusted lean. Carburetor heat creates a richer mixture which may cause the engine to run rough. To correct this and also to compensate for the power loss when using heat, it is practical to adjust the mixture to a leaner setting.

Investigation of some forced landing incidents that were the result of carburetor icing have pointed up an interesting fact about this ever present hazard. One pilot using no carburetor heat but using a lean mixture experienced no carburetor icing. Another pilot, flying in the same air conditions, using no carburetor heat but flying at a full rich mixture developed ice and lost the engine. The refrigeration effect from full rich mixture created enough difference in induction air temperature to bring on icing.

To make use of the carburetor heat system effectively, it is necessary to understand that the hot air that is directed into the carburetor by activating the carburetor heat control is cold air that is heated as it passes over the engine's exhaust pipes before it enters the carburetor air intake. The degree to which this air can be heated is dependent on the heat of the exhaust. It can be readily appreciated that it is of little value to apply carburetor hot air **after** the engine has been throttled back. An idling engine produces little heat in the exhaust, comparatively speaking, and the resultant hot air may be inadequate to thaw any ice in the carburetor. A rule to remember, therefore, is:

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Always apply carburetor heat before reducing power.

If ice is suspected while flying at a low power setting, it may be necessary to open the throttle to produce more heat so that the hot air entering the carburetor will be sufficiently hot to thaw the ice.

It should be realized also that partial carburetor heat can be worse than none at all under certain conditions. If the fuel/air mixture temperature is in the -5°C range, with no heat applied, the formation of ice is not as probable as if the temperature were brought up to -1°C by the use of partial heat. At temperatures around -10°C, any entrained moisture becomes ice crystals which pass through the system harmlessly. Application of partial heat might cause carburetor icing by melting these crystals and raising the temperature to the icing range. In an aeroplane without a carburetor air temperature gauge, partial heat should never be used.

In fact, on many light aeroplanes, there is no **effective** partial carburetor hot air position. Therefore, the carburetor heat control should be used either in the "full cold" or the "full hot" position unless there is a carburetor mixture temperature gauge installed which would give a positive indication of the result of partial heat. If the hot air control is moved only to the half way mark, a situation is created where the cold air entering the front air scoop meets "head on" the carburetor hot air which enters from the other direction. There is little or no mixing before it enters the carburetor and the turbulence created may cause rough running. When "full cold" is selected, all the hot air is prevented by a valve from entering the carburetor and is diverted elsewhere. When "full hot" is selected, the same valve repositions itself to shut off completely the cold air so that only hot air enters the carburetor. (The design features of the carburetor hot air control are such that a pilot should not assume that, by adjusting the control to a mark midway between the "full hot" and the "full cold" positions, a mixture of 50% hot air and 50% cold air will enter the carburetor.)

Awareness of the possibility of icing conditions and a keen understanding of how ice affects engine operation are the pilot's best weapons against this hazard. Practicing the following procedures may help prevent an accident due to carburetor icing:

1. Be sure the carburetor heat system and controls are in proper working condition.
2. Always start the engine with carburetor heat in the COLD AIR position to avoid damage to the carburetor heat system.
3. Always, in the preflight check, include a check of carburetor heat availability and note the ON power drop.
4. Do not use carburetor heat while taxiing or during ground running. The cold air entering the carburetor by the regular intake is filtered but the hot air is not (see Fig.3.30). When relative humidity is high, use carburetor heat before take-off to clear any possible ice from the system, but only if the aeroplane is standing on pavement or sod, not on sand. The propeller sets up a tiny vortex in the area of the air scoop that may suck abrasive particles of grit and dirt into the unfiltered air intake. (When carburetor icing conditions are suspected, many experienced pilots commence their take-off run with carburetor heat ON in order to be sure that ice will not form and choke off the engine during the take-off run and initial climb. The control is returned to the COLD position about half way down the take-off run so that full power is available for lift-off and climb.)
5. In cold winter weather, hot air may be used for warm-up and taxiing prior to take-off. Extremely low temperatures cause the engine to run lean. Carburetor heat will enrich the mixture and help to vapourize the fuel. This procedure is recommended only in very cold weather since the hot air that enters the carburetor is not filtered.
6. Use cold air selection for take-off. The less dense heated air that enters the induction system when carburetor heat is selected causes a reduction in power. Carburetor heat at high power settings can cause engine overheating and possibly detonation.
7. Remain alert for indications of icing, especially when relative humidity is 50% or more or when visible moisture is present.
8. Regard any drop in power as an indication of carburetor icing and apply carburetor heat without making an adjustment in the throttle setting.
9. When flying in icing conditions, use at least 75% of the full power available to obtain sufficient heat for the carburetor air heater. Maintain cylinder head temperatures as near maximum as possible.
10. Avoid clouds as much as possible.
11. Always apply full heat prior to closed throttle operations (e.g. descent) and leave on throughout throttled sequence. If the closed throttle operation is extended, open the throttle periodically so that enough engine heat will be produced to heat the carburetor hot air sufficiently to prevent icing.
12. Remove carburetor heat in the event of a go-around. Always apply power first and then move the carburetor heat control to the cold position.

If a pilot, while in cruise at less than full throttle, finds him/herself in an advanced stage of carburetor ice build up, the following sequence of procedures may maximize efforts to eliminate the ice and regain engine power:

1. Apply full carburetor heat.
2. Apply full throttle.
3. Lean the mixture.
4. Move the propeller pitch control to the full fine position.
5. In a worsening carburetor ice situation in which the engine is close to failing, attempt a restoration of power by priming the fuel.

As carburetor ice tends to choke-off the air supply, opening of the throttle will compensate for this loss by giving the engine more air. Leaning the mixture, in turn, produces more heat in the cylinders which helps thaw the ice. Adjustment towards fine pitch (see **The Propeller**) will reduce the load on the propeller, thus increasing the speed of the engine which will further generate increased engine temperatures to thaw ice deposits.

In the final analysis, elimination of carburetor ice can sometimes be a catch-22. If an engine fails in flight due to

carburetor icing – and full carburetor heat does not bring the engine back to life – then there is probably not enough heat being generated by the exhaust system's carburetor heater muff. The pilot's objective, therefore, must be to keep the engine running to ensure the exhaust remains hot enough to provide a hot air supply to the carburetor. With a complete engine failure, however, the exhaust pipes will cool rapidly. In such a situation, and in some aircraft installations, use of the fuel primer can often save the situation of a failed engine due to carburetor ice. Primer lines by-pass the carburetor and feed fuel directly into the cylinder or intake ports. By priming the engine, the pilot is re-introducing fuel directly back into the engine by by-passing the constricted carburetor.

Any pilot faced with a forced landing resulting from a failed engine due to carburetor ice should remember that, as the aircraft descends in a dead-stick glide, warmer air at lower altitude might thaw the ice in the carburetor. While in the descent, any attempt to prime the engine, or start the engine by standard means, may restore engine power.

3.3.6 Fuel Injection

Today's more advanced, and more powerful, aero engines have brought about the need for more efficient systems of distributing fuel to the cylinders. The uneven fuel/air distribution inherent with carburetor configurations results in uneven leaning of cylinders, an unacceptable situation for a high performance engine. Through the use of fuel injection systems in which the fuel is individually metered to each cylinder, this situation is resolved. A fuel injected engine produces slightly more power and uses less fuel than a carbureted engine of equal displacement and compression ratio. The fuel injection system deposits a continuous flow of fuel into the induction system near the intake valve of each cylinder. The fuel is vapourized and sucked into the cylinder during the intake stroke.

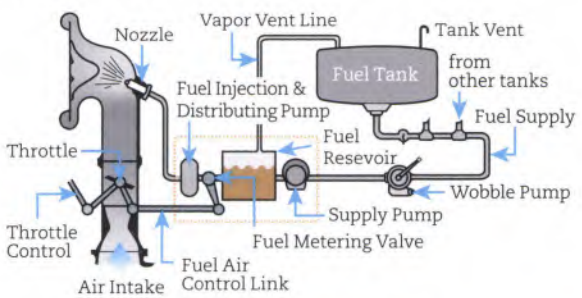


Fig.3.31 **Fuel Injection System**

Advantages of fuel injection are:

1. More uniform distribution of fuel to all cylinders. The fuel is separately metered to each cylinder.
2. Better cooling, through the elimination of lean hot mixtures to some of the more distant cylinders.
3. Saving on fuel through more uniform distribution.
4. Increased power since the need to heat carburetor air is eliminated.
5. Elimination of the hazard of carburetor icing.

Although carburetor ice (i.e. fuel vapourization ice) is not a problem in the fuel injection system, the possibility of ice build-up is not completely eliminated. Throttle ice can occur when the temperature is at 5°C or less. Impact ice can gather in bends in the system, in impact tubes and, especially, on the air filter.

Fig.3.31 is a schematic diagram of a fuel injection system that is typical of smaller aero-engines. The fuel is pumped from the fuel tank by the supply pump to the fuel reservoir at about twice the rate required by the engine. The surplus fuel is by-passed through the return line back to the fuel tank, but at a restricted rate that maintains the fuel in the reservoir under pressure. The by-pass eliminates any tendency to vapour lock while in operation.

The fuel passes from the reservoir through the metering valve to the fuel injection pump. The metering valve controls the amount of fuel delivered to the fuel injection pump.

The fuel injection pump delivers the fuel to the nozzles. These atomize it into a fine spray which is discharged into the air stream entering the intake manifold. In some fuel injection systems, individual nozzles deliver the atomized fuel directly to the inlet ports of each cylinder.

The throttle which controls the air intake is linked to the fuel metering valve. The fuel and air control units, so linked, are calibrated so that they automatically supply the correct mixture for any particular position of the throttle.

The air required to achieve the proper fuel/air ratio enters the system through the air intake and passes through the air filter. Because impact ice can restrict or completely cut off the flow of air through the air filter, it is essential to have a source of alternate air that can be activated if the normal source of air is blocked or restricted. A manual control in the cockpit selects alternate air and bypasses the normal source.

Fuel injection engines have the reputation of being difficult to start when the engine is hot. When a hot engine is shut down, the heat inside the cowling may cause the fuel in the lines to vapourize. At the next start, the vapour in the lines prevents the engine from getting enough fuel to effect a start. Continued attempts to start will draw too much fuel for the amount of air available. The engine becomes flooded and cannot be started until it is cleared. To successfully start a hot engine, it is necessary to remove all the fuel vapours and get liquid fuel into the lines. This is done by activating the booster pump for a short period of time. Always refer to the Owner's Manual for the exact procedure for operating your engine under these conditions.

3.4 The Exhaust System

The exhaust system of a reciprocating engine is basically a scavenging system that collects and disposes of the high temperature, noxious gases, including the dangerous carbon monoxide, that are discharged by the engine. Its main function is to prevent the escape of these potentially destructive gases into the airframe and cabin. Modern exhaust systems must resist high temperatures, corrosion and vibration.

There are two main types of exhaust systems in use on reciprocating aircraft engines: the short stack system and the collector system. The former is used on non-turbocharged engines and on low powered engines. It is relatively simple, consisting of a downstack from each cylinder, an exhaust collector tube on each side of the engine and an exhaust ejector on each side of the cowling. Shrouds encircle each collector tube. Outside air passing through one of these is heated by the high exhaust temperatures and carried to the cabin to provide

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

cabin heat. The other carries heated air for the carburetor hot air system.

The collector system is used on most large engines and on all turbocharged engines. On the latter type of engine, the exhaust gases must be collected to drive the turbine compressor of the turbocharger. Individual exhaust headers empty into a welded, corrosion resistant collector ring that collects the exhaust from all the cylinders. One outlet from this ring routes the hot exhaust gas to the turbocharger. An exhaust tailpipe carries the exhaust gases away. The collector system raises the back pressure of the exhaust system. However, the gain in horsepower from turbocharging more than offsets the loss in horsepower that results from the increased back pressure.

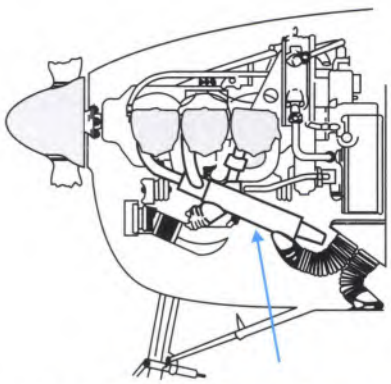


Fig.3.32 **Short Stack Exhaust System**

On some aircraft engine installations, cooling air is drawn in and around the engine by means of a specially designed exhaust system called the augmentor system. The augmentors are designed to produce a Venturi effect and work on the principle that the rush of exhaust gases being expelled from the cylinders creates a low pressure area that draws an increased airflow over the engine to augment engine cooling.

Most exhaust systems are made of stainless steel.

3.5 The Ignition System

The function of the ignition system is to supply a spark to ignite the fuel/air mixture in the cylinders. The ignition system comprises two magnetos, two spark plugs in each cylinder, ignition leads and a magneto switch. The magneto, simply defined, is an engine driven generator that produces an alternating current. Its source of energy is a permanent magnet and it operates on the principle of "the polarity of a magnet".

3.5.1 The Polarity of a Magnet

When a bar of iron is magnetized, it acquires a north and a south pole.

Unlike poles attract. Like poles repel. Hence, the magnetic lines of force in a magnet pass from S. to N. inside the magnet and from N. to S. outside (Fig.3.33).

The field in which these magnetic lines of force lie around a magnet is called its magnetic field.

If the bar is bent into a horseshoe, the lines of force will flow in the same manner from S. to N. inside and N. to S. outside the magnet (Fig.3.33).

If a soft iron bar is placed between the poles of a horseshoe magnet, the lines of force will flow through the bar (Fig.3.33) because the iron offers 280 times less resistance than does air.

Magnetism and electricity are inseparable. If an electric current is passing through a conductor, a magnetic field will be set up around that conductor. If, on the other hand, a conductor is made to cut the lines of a magnetic field, an electric current will be induced in the conductor.

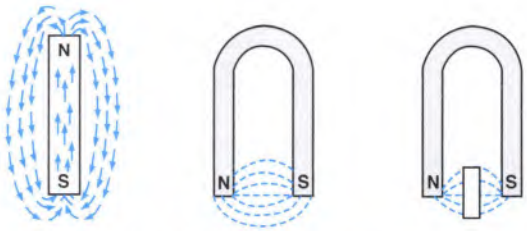


Fig.3.33 **Polarity of a Magnet**

Imagine that the soft iron bar (Fig.3.33) is rotating, so that it is continually cutting the lines of the magnetic field. Now, if a coil of wire is wound around the bar (so that the coil forms a closed circuit), a current will be induced in the coil while the bar is rotating. The current will reverse every half revolution of the bar as the latter passes opposite poles of the magnet and is therefore known as an alternating current.

Here we have the primary element in what is known as the rotating armature type magneto — a horseshoe magnet with a rotating soft iron core, wound with a coil of wire, called the armature, generating a low tension current by induction. In other types of magnetos, the magnets rotate and the core is stationary. The principle, however, is the same.

3.5.2 The Magneto

The complete magneto combines all the elements of an entire ignition system; that is, it

1. Generates a low tension current as above.
2. Transforms this to high tension.
3. Distributes the current to the individual spark plugs at the time it is desired to have them fire.

The elementary principle of the rotating armature type magneto is illustrated in Fig.3.34.

The armature revolves between the poles of the magnet, generating an induced low tension current in the primary winding.

The contact breaker is located in the primary circuit. With the breaker points of the contact breaker closed, the primary circuit is complete, and the primary low tension current flows through the breaker points to ground.

When the breaker points open, the flow of current in the primary winding is arrested. The magnetic field around the primary winding collapses, falling inward on itself and cutting the secondary winding. A high tension current is induced in the secondary winding, which consists of a coil of wire, lighter than the primary, and wound around the latter in a ratio of about 60 turns to 1.

The high tension current is then led through a collector ring to the distributor. The distributor has a rotating arm which aligns with separate segments as it rotates. Each segment is connected to an individual spark plug and distributes the current to the right plug at the exact time it is required to fire (No. 3 in Fig.3.34).

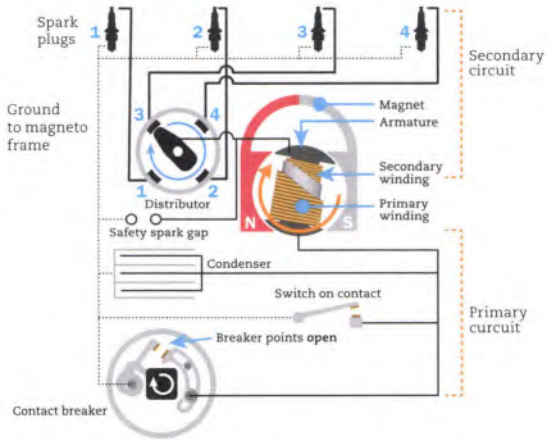


Fig.3.34 **Rotating Armature Type Magnet**

The magneto switch is located on the instrument panel and operates in the primary circuit. When an engine is switched "off", the switch is closed. This means that the **primary circuit is directly grounded** and the breaker points cannot function. As long as the switch remains open (or on "contact"), the primary current will flow through the contact breaker which "makes" and "breaks" the primary (by the opening and closing of the points) and so continuously induces a high tension current in the secondary circuit at each exact instant that this is required. At the same instant, the distributor arm must align with the segment of the plug it is desired to fire.

The condenser consists of alternate sheets of mica and tinfoil. It "soaks up" the induced current flowing in the primary when the latter is abruptly arrested by the opening of the breaker points. In this way, it prevents the current jumping across the gap and so burning the points.The safety spark gap is located in the secondary circuit. An excessive voltage in the secondary circuit (usually due to a short circuit in the high tension lead) will jump the safety spark gap and go to ground, thus preventing damage to the armature.

Most light aeroplanes today are equipped with an impulse coupling which is fitted to one or both of the magnetos to facilitate starting. This is a mechanical device which permits the magneto to turn over quickly regardless of how slowly the propeller and crankshaft are turning. The impulse coupling consists of a set of spring loaded flyweights which wind up and release, thereby providing enough rotational speed to the magneto to produce a current that is sufficient to provide a start. The faster a magneto turns (up to a point), the hotter will be the spark it produces. An engine without such an impulse coupling may be difficult to start when it is cold because the slowly turning engine and the corresponding slowly turning magneto produce too weak a spark. The impulse magneto retards the spark somewhat to prevent propeller "kick back". For this reason, on those engines fitted with only one impulse magneto, it is the practice to start the engine on the impulse magneto only. The "impulse" part of the magneto automatically disengages after the engine has reached normal idling speed.

New types of ignition devices are being designed and introduced into the industrial market. Some solid state ignition systems are now found in factory-built certified aircraft while some such systems are in use in various amateur-built aeroplanes. This type of system uses magnetic sensors to sense timing, and solid state components to produce the spark, thus eliminating the distributor and, in some cases, the magneto.

3.5.3 Dual Ignition

Modern aero engines are normally fitted with 2 spark plugs in each cylinder and 2 magnetos. One spark plug in each cylinder is fired by one magneto. The other magneto fires the other set of spark plugs. It is possible, therefore, to operate the engine on either magneto alone.

The purpose of dual ignition is two-fold.

1. Safety. If one system fails, the engine will still operate.
2. Performance. Improved combustion of the mixture increases the power output and gives better engine performance.

On some aeroplanes, the dual magnetos are driven by a single shaft. The single shaft means a reduction in weight and the need for only one drive at the accessory case but it does reduce the safety factor implicit in a system in which the two magnetos are driven by independent shafts.

The magneto switch, which is located on the instrument panel, allows the pilot to select either or both of the magneto systems. It usually has a position to select the left magneto system, a position to select the right magneto system, a position to select both systems at once, and an "off" position. The engine should always be operated on both magneto systems during take-off and normal flight operations. After landing, the magneto switch should be turned "off" since the engine of a parked aeroplane can fire if the ignition switch is on and someone moves the propeller.

The failure of one magneto in a dual system will cause a loss in power of approximately 75 rpm at normal engine cruising power.

In the event of failure or partial failure of a magneto or of part of the ignition system (i.e. spark plug, high tension leads, etc.), rough running of the engine is bound to occur. In such a case, an engine will often run more smoothly if the ignition switch is selected to the "good" magneto only. In the event that rough running or power loss occurs while in flight and if there is reason to suspect ignition malfunctioning, the pilot should try operating the engine on just one magneto at a time by switching from the "both" position to "left" and then to "right", allowing the engine to operate for a few seconds on each position to ascertain on which position optimum engine operation and smoothness result. (Smoothness is a very important consideration since a rough running engine can set up vibration which, on some aeroplanes, could eventually cause engine mount failure.) Operating an engine in flight at normal cruise power on one magneto will result in a power loss of about 3%. Provided the engine is running smoothly, no harm will be done to it if the pilot continues on to destination. However, it must be stressed that this is action to be taken if trouble develops in the magneto **during flight**. Certainly a single-engine aeroplane would not attempt a take-off on one magneto after observing a rough magneto condition during ground run-up.

3.5.4 Shielding

To prevent the ignition current interfering with the radio, the whole ignition system, magnetos, plugs, and wiring, are surrounded with a metal covering which is grounded. This is known as shielding.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

3.5.5 Ignition Timing

The spark on modern high speed engines occurs early to allow complete combustion and maximum pressure to be developed when the piston passes top dead centre and is travelling down.

Ignition timing means timing the magneto to fire at the right time. Timing is, of course, critical to good engine performance. Advanced (that is, too early) firing of the spark plug results in loss of power and in overheating that can lead to detonation and pre-ignition, piston burning, scored cylinders and broken rings. The timing of the magnetos should be checked at least every 100 hours to ensure proper operation.

3.6 The FADEC System

Full Authority Digital Engine Control (FADEC) has moved its way into the general aviation environment from its beginnings in the military and turbine-powered aircraft industry, and subsequent universal applications in the automotive industry.

FADEC Systems generally consist of electronic engine control units (ECU) that simultaneously control fuel injection and ignition firing to establish desired spark, mixture and engine temperatures based on specific operational parameters such as engine speed, fuel pressure, manifold pressure, manifold temperature, and crankshaft position. FADEC technology eliminates the manual mixture control, does away with carburetors and magnetos, and provides essentially single-lever power control for the general aviation pilot.

Fuel flow and spark advancement or retarding are maintained through individual cylinder data that is captured and processed using the system's data acquisition capabilities.

Overall, such systems enhance fuel consumption rates, increase horsepower, provide better engine smoothness, improve engine start capabilities in all ambient conditions, eliminate the dangers of carburetor ice, and simplify an aircraft's general operational requirements.

3.7 The Electrical System

It is beyond the scope of this manual to discuss in full detail the electrical system of an aeroplane. However, very few modern aeroplanes are without such a system and since the pilot is required to use it, he/she should be familiar with its basic operation and purpose.

An aeroplane's electrical system includes everything that operates electrically with the exception of the magnetos which are driven by the engine for the sole purpose of producing current to the spark plugs. This ignition system is not connected with the aeroplane's electrical system.

In many modern aeroplanes, the electrical system supplies power, not only to start the aeroplane, but also to operate a multitude of controls, such as the flaps, undercarriage, all radios, lights, heater fans, anti-icing and de-icing equipment, windshield wipers, etc.

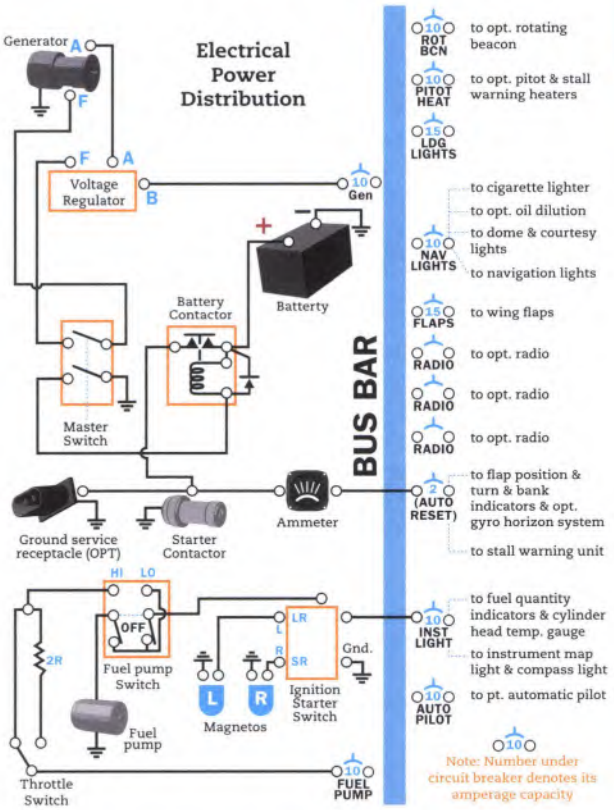


Fig.3.35 **Electrical System Typical of a Modern Light Aircraft**

The basic electrical system of an aeroplane is not unlike that used in an automobile. It consists of a storage battery, master switch and battery solenoid, starter motor and solenoid, generator (or alternator), voltage regulator, bus bar and circuit breakers (or other types of fuses). On some aeroplanes, a separate generator switch may be incorporated.

The electrical system is usually either a 12 or a 24 volt system and, of course, is direct current. Most light aeroplanes use the 12 volt system. Electrical energy is supplied by the storage battery. To complete the circuit between the battery and the electrical system, a battery solenoid is incorporated which is activated by the master switch. (A solenoid is a switch of the artificial magnet type and is used because of its ability to operate as a remote controlled device.)

The purpose of the starter motor is to turn over the engine so that it will commence to operate. The starter switch activates the starter solenoid which, in turn, permits current to enter and drive the starter motor (provided the master switch is turned "on").

The electrical system includes either a generator or an alternator driven by the engine. The purpose of the generator or alternator is (1) to supply current to the electrical system, and (2) to recharge the battery. On most modern aeroplanes, alternators have replaced generators. The advantage of an alternator over a generator is that it produces sufficient current to operate the various electrical components at low engine speeds (i.e. taxiing) whereas a generator will not begin to supply an appreciable amount of current until the engine is turning at a somewhat faster speed.

The voltage regulator (1) prevents the generator (or alternator) from over-loading the system, and (2) prevents the battery from becoming overcharged.

The bus bar receives the current produced by the generator (or alternator) and battery. It is from the bus bar that the current passes through the various circuit breakers and branches out to the various electrical circuits which are connected to the components that require electrical current to operate. These are the electrical driven gyro instruments, stall warning device, pitot heat, landing and navigation lights, oil dilution system, fuel supply gauge, carburetor air temperature, exhaust temperature indicator, instrument and compass lights, cabin or dome lights, rotating beacon, radios, etc.

All electrical circuits are protected by circuit breakers or other types of fuses. These are incorporated into the system to protect the various components against damage caused by excess voltage or current, short-circuits, etc. Most circuit breakers are the "push to reset" type and every pilot should be familiar with their location in the cockpit and their operation in the aeroplane which they fly. It is not uncommon for an instrument or radio suddenly to go "dead" due to an electrical malfunction. A push on the "reset button", in such a case, may be all that is needed to make it operational again. However, if the reset button pops again, it is advisable not to attempt any further tries to reset. There may be a malfunction or short-circuit in the component that could cause an electrical fire. The circuit breaker is a safety device designed to "fail" and prevent such a happening.

Most of an aeroplane's electrical components are automatically activated when the master switch is turned on. Those that are not (i.e., radio) should be left "off" until after the engine has been started. The needless use of electricity in the radio equipment means there is less current available for starting. Some types of radio equipment can be damaged by the voltage drop in the electrical system during starting when all power comes directly from the battery before the generator or alternator are working to regulate voltage. **Failure to follow this rule may result in damage to the component and will cause unnecessary drain on the battery.**

In order for electrical components to function satisfactorily, the battery must be fully charged. In addition, the generator (or alternator) must be producing its rated current.

To ascertain that an aeroplane's electrical power source is functioning satisfactorily, the pilot may monitor an ammeter, voltmeter or generator warning light. These devices are usually mounted on or adjacent to the instrument panel. The ammeter measures in amperes the rate of flow of the electrical current being produced. It also indicates when power is being used from the battery (it registers in the "discharging" range) as happens when the electrical components are turned on when the engine is not running. The voltmeter indicates the voltage in the system. The generator warning light indicates whether or not the generator is functioning. (An aeroplane fitted with a voltmeter or ammeter will not have a generator warning light. This warning light is usually installed in the absence of either of the other two instruments.)

For the most part, a pilot need only know that, for satisfactory electrical operation, the ammeter should always show on the plus (+) side of the "0" on the gauge regardless of the amount of current being used by the various components. An ammeter registering discharge or minus (-) indicates that electrical energy is being drawn from the battery rather than from the generator and, if this situation continues for long, it will result in a discharged battery and, possibly, insufficient current to operate the various components satisfactorily.

In modern aeroplanes and especially in those used for instrument flying, a great deal of reliance is vested in electrical systems and, although it may not be necessary for pilots to know in detail the internal working of each component, they should at least have a general knowledge of how the system works, how to operate the components properly, what can go wrong and what they can do to correct a minor malfunction in flight.

The most important action pilots can take in ensuring the proper functioning of the electrical system of their aeroplane is to ensure that the battery is always fully charged. This is especially important in an aeroplane equipped with an alternator, for, unlike a generator which will charge a low battery during a flight, an alternator will not bring a dead battery back to life. As a result, if the battery is down on an alternator equipped aeroplane, electrically operated equipment may not function properly.

It is also important to ensure that all contacts between the battery, voltage regulator and the alternator or generator are clean and secure. The water level in the battery should be checked regularly. Most important, an aged battery that is no longer functioning properly should be immediately replaced.

3.8 The Propeller

The function of the propeller is to convert the torque, or turning moment, of the crankshaft into thrust, or forward, speed.

To do this, the propeller is so designed that, as it rotates, it moves forward along a corkscrew or helical path. In so doing, it pushes air backward with the object of causing a reaction, or thrust, in the forward direction. Unlike the jet engine which moves a small mass of air backward at a relatively high speed, the propeller moves a large mass of air backward at a relatively slow speed.

The propeller blade is an airfoil section, similar to the airfoil section of a wing. As such, it meets the air at an angle of attack as it rotates and thus produces lift and drag, in the same way that the airfoil section of a wing does. In the case of the propeller, however, these forces are designated as thrust and torque (Fig.3.36).

A quick look at a typical propeller will remind the reader that it tapers towards the tip and appears to twist. In effect, the airfoil section alters from the hub of the propeller to the tip and the angle of attack decreases. The tip of a propeller rotates in a larger arc than does the hub and therefore travels at a greater speed. To produce the same amount of lift, or thrust, all along the length of the propeller, the angle of attack at the tip does not need to be so great as at the propeller hub. As a result, by means of this variation in airfoil section and angle of attack, uniform thrust is maintained throughout most of the diameter of the propeller.

Propellers which are attached forward of the engine and which pull from the front of the aeroplane are called tractors. Those which are attached aft of the engine and push from behind are called pushers.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

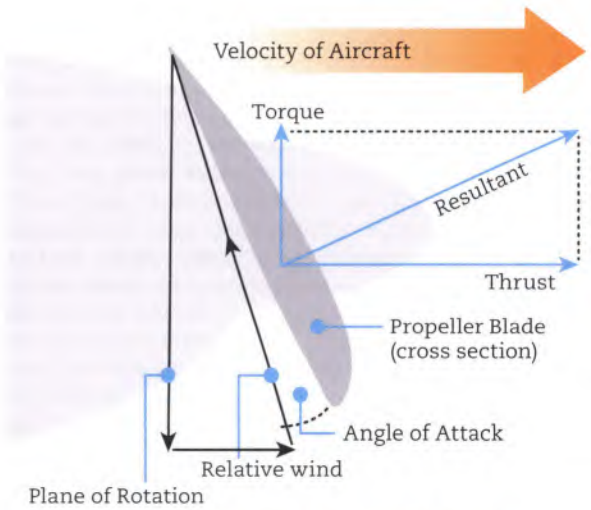


Fig.3.36 **Forces Acting on a Propeller Blade**

Propeller torque is entirely different from engine crankshaft torque. Propeller torque is drag. It is the resistance to the blades as they rotate and results in a tendency in the aeroplane to roll in a direction opposite to the rotation of the propeller. Engine crankshaft torque, on the other hand, is the turning moment produced at the crankshaft. When the propeller is revolving at a constant rpm, propeller torque and engine torque will be exactly equal and opposite.

Traditional propeller blades are made from aluminum. Propeller blades of composite construction – usually made from layers of epoxy fiberglass, Kevlar or carbon fiber over top of a wood or foam core – are also prevalent designs. Compared to their aluminum counterparts, composite blades weigh less, and provide for the flexibility of more complex shapes in their manufacturing process. Recent developments in composite blade design have led to manufacturers sweeping the blade design itself – a design known as scimitar – which has helped increase cruise speeds of aircraft that use these latest blade shapes.

Three or more blades have also become common on aircraft where two blades were the commonly accepted standard. Three (or more) blades typically result in the blades being shorter compared to two-blade designs; this gives greater ground clearance and, thus, reduces blade exposure to runway debris. Three or more blade designs, be they aluminum or composite, are also known to improve an aircraft's rate of climb. Multiple blade designs also typically reduce vibrations. Engine pulses are spread over the greater number of blades, thereby reducing momentary loads on the airframe from engine pulses.

3.8.1 Pitch

The distance in feet a propeller travels forward in one revolution is called pitch.

If the propeller was working in a perfect fluid, the distance it would travel forward in one revolution would be a theoretical distance dependent on the blade angle and diameter of the propeller. This is called the theoretical pitch or geometric pitch.

In a medium such as air, however, the propeller encounters lost motion and the distance it travels forward is somewhat less than its theoretical pitch. This lesser distance is called the practical pitch or effective pitch.

The difference between the theoretical pitch and practical pitch is called propeller slip.

The angle at which the blade is set (like the angle of incidence of a wing) governs the pitch. Hence, there is coarse pitch, meaning that the blade is set at a large angle, and fine pitch, meaning that the blade is set at a small angle.

Coarse Pitch

A propeller set in coarse pitch will travel forward a greater distance with each revolution and, hence, the aeroplane will move forward at greater speed for a given rpm. In this way, it is much like the high gear in a car.

A coarse pitch propeller is best suited for high-speed cruise and for high-altitude flight.

Coarse pitch is also sometimes known as high pitch, or as decrease rpm, or as low rpm.

Fine Pitch

A propeller set in fine pitch, on the other hand, will have less torque, or drag, and will consequently revolve at higher speed around its own axis, thereby enabling the engine to develop greater power, much as does the low gear in a car.

A fine pitch propeller gives the best performance during take-off and climb.

Fine pitch is also sometimes known as low pitch, or as increase rpm, or as high rpm.

3.8.2 Types of Propellers

Fixed Pitch Propellers

Most training aeroplanes have fixed pitch propellers. The blade angles cannot be adjusted by the pilot. The angle of the blade is chosen by the manufacturer to give the best performance possible for all flight conditions, but at best it is a trade-off between take-off performance and cruise performance.

If a coarse pitch propeller is chosen, it will develop high cruising speed at comparatively low engine rpm with consequent good fuel economy. On the other hand, it will give poor take-off and climb performance.

If a fine pitch propeller is chosen, it will give good take-off and climb performance. However, a fine pitch propeller does not keep a good grip on the faster moving air in level flight, with the result that there is comparative inefficiency for cruising, both in the matter of speed and fuel economy.

Variable Pitch Propellers

To overcome the disadvantages of fixed pitch propellers, propellers whose blade angle, and consequent pitch, may be altered to meet varying conditions of flight have been developed.

Adjustable pitch propellers are those whose blade angle may be adjusted on the ground. They offer some advantage over the fixed pitch propeller in that the propeller pitch can be adjusted for varying flight situations. When operating at high altitude airports or when operating on floats when take-off and climb performance is critical, a fine pitch can be selected to give better performance for that particular type of operation. Like the fixed pitch propeller, however, the pitch cannot be altered during flight to select a better pitch angle for a changing flight condition.

Controllable pitch propellers are those whose blades can be adjusted by the pilot to various angles during flight.

Constant speed propellers are those whose blades automatically adjust themselves to maintain a constant rpm as set by the pilot.

The mechanism for varying the pitch of the propeller may be (1) mechanical, (2) hydraulic, or (3) electrical.

MECHANICAL VARIABLE PITCH PROPELLERS

The mechanism by which the pilot can adjust this type of propeller is operated by a control on the instrument panel that is directly linked to the propeller. Stops set on the propeller govern the blade angle and travel.

HYDRAULIC VARIABLE PITCH PROPELLERS

In hydraulic variable pitch propellers, the basic method used to change the propeller pitch is a hydraulically operated cylinder that pushes or pulls on a cam connected to gears on the propeller blades. This cam action is somewhat similar to an automatic screwdriver — push the handle in and the screwdriver rotates the screw.

There are two types of hydraulic mechanism: counterweight and hydromatic.

A controllable pitch propeller operated by the counterweight principle relies on oil pressure to move the cylinder that twists the blades toward fine pitch. This oil is drawn from the engine oil pressure system. (Occasionally a gear pump is used to boost the engine oil pressure to ensure quick and positive action on the larger type propellers.) The oil which changes the pitch is controlled by a pilot valve, operated by a lever and linkage from the cockpit. The force which moves the blades the opposite way, towards coarse pitch, is centrifugal force, generated by the counterweights. With the controllable pitch propeller, the pilot selects either coarse or fine pitch, depending on the flight attitude (cruise or climb), by means of the control in the cockpit that links to the pilot valve. The pitch of the propeller is then set in the selected pitch until the pilot elects to change it.

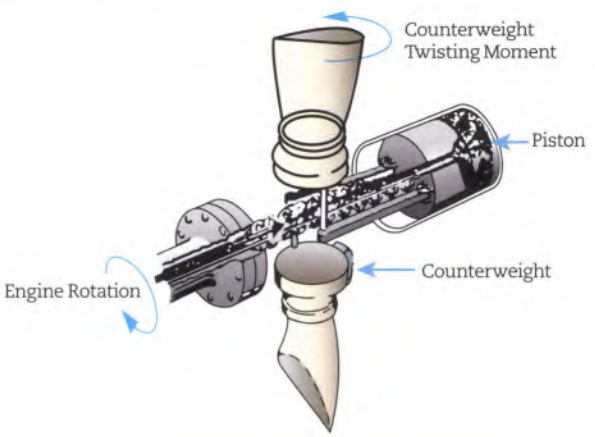


Fig.3.37 **Constant Speed Propeller Mechanism**

A constant speed propeller that operates by the counterweight mechanism uses the same oil pressure and counterweight principle to twist the blades towards the proper pitch angle to maintain a constant rpm. On the instrument panel, there are two power controls, a throttle and a propeller control. The throttle controls the power output of the engine which is registered on the manifold pressure gauge. The propeller control regulates the rpm of both the propeller and the engine. The desired rpm is set by the pilot. A propeller governor connected to the propeller control in the cockpit automatically changes the blade angle to counteract any tendency of the engine to vary from the setting. The governor is a device that consists of flyweights that are directly coupled to the engine and spin at engine speed. The governor operates the pilot valve which controls the flow of oil to the propeller. When the engine speed increases, centrifugal force causes the flyweights of the governor to fly outward, lifting the pilot valve and cutting off the supply of oil pressure to the propeller cylinder. This permits the counterweights to move the blades towards a coarser angle, thereby decreasing the engine rpm and automatically restoring the engine speed to the desired constant rpm. The reverse happens when an engine underspeed condition develops. Therefore, for any particular engine speed for any climb or cruise condition, the pilot merely selects the desired rpm. The constant speed propeller automatically maintains the proper blade angle required to keep the engine speed constant, regardless of the airspeed or altitude of the aeroplane.

If oil pressure is lost during flight, the propeller will automatically go into an extreme coarse pitch position where the blades are streamlined and cease to turn. This feature of the counterweight propeller is used when the propeller is installed on twin engine aircraft. The stopped propeller eliminates the asymmetric drag forces that would occur if the propeller was windmilling during single engine operation.

Propellers, whether controllable pitch or constant speed, that operate on the counterweight principle, should be shifted to fine pitch before the engine is stopped. The control should be left in this position in order to reduce the load on the engine during the start and warm-up period.

There is one counterweight propeller, the Hamilton Standard, which operates differently and should be shut down in coarse pitch. This propeller was widely used on aeroplanes such as the deHavilland Beaver and the North American Harvard. Pilots who take an interest in classic aeroplanes should be aware of differing operating procedures for some equipment they may encounter. In all cases, the operating instructions of the manufacturer should be closely followed.

The hydromatic constant speed propeller makes use of a powerful force called centrifugal twisting moment which tends to turn the blades towards the fine pitch position. The use of this natural force eliminates the need for the counterweights. (Note: the centrifugal twisting moment moves the blades towards fine pitch, whereas the centrifugal force generated by the counterweights, as described above, is used to move the blades towards coarse pitch.)

The hydromatic constant speed propeller uses a piston to twist the blades. Oil entering the piston chamber, or dome, under high pressure moves the piston aft and the propeller blades are moved into coarse pitch. Oil entering the piston at engine pressure assists the centrifugal turning moment to move the blades towards fine pitch. The pilot valve, which is controlled by the governor, is a three way affair arranged (1) to admit the high pressure oil to the piston that results in moving the blade towards coarse pitch, (2) to close off the supply of oil thus holding the blade angle constant, and (3) to admit the engine pressure oil to the piston that results in moving the blades back towards fine pitch.

If oil pressure is lost during flight, the propeller will automatically go into fine pitch, enabling the engine (as long as it continues to run) to develop the most power that it can and to

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

achieve the best performance under the circumstances. This type of propeller is used in single-engine installations.

With the hydromatic constant speed propeller, the engine should be started with the propeller in fine pitch. This reduces the load, or drag, on the propeller during starting and warm up.

ELECTRICAL VARIABLE PITCH PROPELLERS

An electrical controllable pitch propeller is operated by an electrical motor which turns the blades through a gear speed reducer and bevel gears. The governor is similar in principle to that used with the hydraulic propeller, except that the movement of the flyweights in this case opens and closes electric circuits. One circuit contains a field which causes right-hand rotation of the motor. The other contains a field which causes left-hand rotation. The direction of rotation of the motor moves the blades towards fine pitch or coarse pitch, whichever is required.

A two-way switch enables the pilot to select either "manual" or "automatic" operation. In the "manual" position, the propeller operates as a controllable pitch propeller. The pilot selects either coarse or fine pitch. The blades remain fixed in that position until the pilot chooses to adjust them. Using the control on "manual" reduces the current drain on the battery and reduces the wear on the control mechanism. In the "automatic" position, the propeller operates as a constant speed propeller, the governor automatically holding the engine at the rpm selected by the propeller control in the cockpit.

3.8.3 Feathering

In multi-engine aeroplanes, when one engine is stopped, it is desirable to feather the propeller on the dead engine. Feathering means turning the blades to the extreme coarse pitch position, where they are streamlined and cease to turn. Feathering reduces the drag on the blades. It stops the propeller from windmilling and possibly causing damage to the defective engine. It also stops excessive vibration.

For feathering or unfeathering, an auxiliary oil pressure supply is required, since the engine is no longer running. This pressure is supplied by an auxiliary, or feathering, pump operated by an electric motor. The auxiliary oil pressure is supplied to either face of the piston to move the blades towards "feather" or "unfeather", as the case may be, through the pilot valve system. A push-button feathering switch, or in some installations a feathering lever, is operated manually by the pilot to feather or unfeather the propeller.

3.8.4 Prop Reversing

It didn't take long for aviators to want to use the power of their engines to stop their aeroplanes once on the ground. This is accomplished by changing the blade angles of a controllable pitch propeller to a negative value during operation. The reverse pitch feature uses engine power to produce a high negative thrust at low speed. Reversing the pitch of a propeller is accomplished with the help of the auxiliary oil pump of the feathering system which assists the governor oil pump to twist the blades into reverse pitch.

To make propeller braking by reverse thrust as natural as possible to handle, an "instinctive" throttle quadrant arrangement is provided by the majority of airframe manufacturers. All throttle positions forward of the centre of the quadrant are for forward thrust operation (flight idle position to take-off power) and are referred to as the alpha range. The rear section of the quadrant is the reverse range and is referred to as the beta range. The farther back the throttle is retarded, the more engine power is developed for reverse thrust. The beta range control for ground handling is hydromechanical, using a cam and lever system to operate the pilot valve. Hydromechancial pitch locking devices or stops prevent inadvertent movement of the throttle levers into the beta range during flight or in the event of propeller malfunction.

In general, the instinctive action taken by a pilot to turn a multi-engine aeroplane to the right is to retard the right throttle and advance the left. Similarly, when the props are in reverse, appropriate reverse thrust braking power is achieved by retarding the right throttle and advancing the left.

3.8.5 Care of the Propeller

Propellers should be checked regularly for damage. Failures of propellers almost always occur as the result of fatigue cracks which started at mechanically formed dents. Even a small defect such as a nick or dent if left unrepaired may develop into a crack. The crack, in turn, under great stress, will grow and blade failure is inevitable. Whenever defects are found, they should be repaired or the propeller replaced before further flight.

When performing an inspection on the propeller, inspect blades completely, not just the leading edge, for erosion, scratches, nicks and cracks. Regardless of how small the surface irregularity, it should be considered a source of fatigue failure. A visual inspection will sometimes miss small nicks and cuts that will be perceptible to the fingers. It is wise, therefore, to feel, with clean, dry hands, the entire surface of the blades.

Keep blades clean. A crack cannot be seen if it is covered with dirt or other foreign matter. As regularly as possible, wipe the blades with a clean cloth dampened with light oil. The oily cloth will remove substances that cause corrosion. Never hose down the propeller with water. Regular maintenance should include cleaning the propeller blades with a solvent and then waxing them with a paste wax. A propeller constructed of composite material will require different cleaning methods than those used on metal propellers. Always refer to the Owner's Manual when performing any kind of maintenance on a composite component.

Avoid run-ups in areas containing loose rocks or gravel, and never move the aeroplane by pushing or pulling on the propeller blades.

3.9 Engine Instruments

3.9.1 The Oil Pressure Gauge

The oil pressure gauge (Fig.3.38) is one of the principle engine instruments and is usually located on the instrument panel with the oil temperature and the fuel gauges. It indicates the oil pressure supplied by the oil pump to lubricate the engine. The instrument is calibrated in pounds per square inch, lb. per sq. in.(psi).

The oil pressure which you read on the gauge is generally obtained at a point between the oil pump and a pressure regulating valve whose function is to maintain any desired working pressure, for example 60 psi.

The oil pressure gauge should be checked immediately after the engine has been started. If the oil pressure does not register within 10 seconds, the engine should be shut down and checked.

In starting an engine with cold oil in the system, the oil pressure gauge will invariably read high, owing to the difficulty of forcing the sluggish oil through the small aperture in the pressure regulating valve. As the oil warms up and the flow through the pressure regulator improves, the pressure gauge will record the pressure accurately. High oil pressure should cause no concern until the oil is allowed to warm up and reach its normal viscosity, which might require 15 minutes. For this reason, in winter, a longer period of time is necessary to warm up the engine prior to flight.

Fig.3.38 **Oil Pressure Gauge (Left), Oil Temperature Gauge (Right)**

If, on the other hand, it remains high, the engine is not getting proper lubrication. High oil pressure will force oil into the combustion chamber. Here it will burn, causing a smoky exhaust and badly carbonned piston heads, rings, valve seats, cylinder heads, etc. Low pressure can cause more serious trouble still. If it is permitted to drop low enough, there will be no film of oil at all between the working surfaces of the engine and metal will be rubbing on metal, with such ruinous results as burned out main bearings, etc. Never let the oil pressure fall below the recommended minimum (which is roughly 40% of the maximum pressure at cruising power).

3.9.2 The Oil Temperature Gauge

The oil temperature gauge (Fig.3.38) is normally located beside the oil pressure gauge. It gives a reading of the temperature of the oil in degrees Fahrenheit or Celsius.

There is an intimate relationship between the oil temperature and oil pressure, due to changes in the viscosity of oil which temperature changes affect.

In starting the engine with cold oil, when the pressure gauge reads high, the oil temperature gauge will read correspondingly low. As the oil warms up, both instruments will approach their normal readings at about the same rate.

An abnormal drop in oil pressure and coincident rise in oil temperature is a sure sign of trouble. However, even when the pressure shows no marked rise or fall, increasing oil temperature is a warning of excessive friction or overload in the engine.

Extremely low oil temperature is undesirable. Cold oil does not circulate freely and may cause scoring of the engine parts. Low temperature would be accompanied by a corresponding rise in pressure.

It should always be remembered that oil, in addition to lubrication, acts as a coolant.

Fig.3.39 **Cylinder Head Temperature Gauge (Left), Carburetor Air Temperature Gauge (Right)**

3.9.3 The Cylinder Head Temperature Gauge

The cylinder head temperature gauge (Fig.3.39) records the temperature of one (or more) of the engine cylinder heads. The instrument gives a reasonably good indication of the effectiveness of the engine cooling system. It should be monitored frequently during steep climbs to ensure sufficient cooling air is reaching the engine.

Extremely high cylinder head temperatures are an immediate sign of engine overloading. High head temperatures decrease the strength of metals and result in detonation, pre-ignition and eventual engine failure.

When operating the engine on lean mixture, the maximum cylinder head temperature permissible is lower than that permitted when operating on rich mixture. The engine manufacturer's recommended limits should be strictly observed.

3.9.4 The Carburetor Air Temperature Gauge

The carburetor air temperature gauge (Fig.3.39) may be installed to indicate the temperature of the mixture entering the manifold, or it may record the temperature of the intake air entering the carburetor. Its purpose is to enable the pilot to maintain a temperature that will assure maximum operating efficiency and warn of icing conditions in the carburetor that may lead to engine failure.

The carburetor air temperature gauge is, of course, the pilot's guide to the operation of the carburetor air heat control unit. Hot air is selected ON or OFF to keep the mixture temperature, or intake air temperature, within the recommended limits.

If the instrument is installed to record the mixture temperature, this should be maintained at around 4°C to 7°C (40°F to 45°F). If it is installed to record the intake air temperature, this should be maintained at about 29°C to 32°C (85°F to 90°F) when icing conditions exist.

3.9.5 The Outside Air Temperature Gauge

The outside air temperature (OAT) gauge records the ambient air temperature, that is, the temperature of the free air surrounding the aeroplane. To ensure that the temperature recorded is true, the element is shielded from the sun's radiation and located in a portion of the airflow that is relatively undisturbed. The temperature recorded by the gauge is not, however, entirely accurate. The dynamic pressure of the ram air causes a slight increase in temperature above that of the ambient air. The indicated temperature, therefore, must be corrected to get true air temperature (TAT). Knowledge of the true air temperature enables the pilot to select the proper

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

manifold pressure, to calculate the true airspeed and altitude and warns of conditions that may cause ice formation.

At very high airspeeds, there is a very significant temperature rise on the body of the aeroplane. When an aeroplane moves through the air, it gets hot. Some of this heat is attributable to friction and some to the increase in pressure. At slow speeds, the increase in heat is insignificant, about 1°C at 90 knots. With increasing speed, the temperature rise reaches 4°C at 175 knots and 30°C at 500 knots. The reading on the OAT gauge will reflect this temperature rise of the body of the aircraft, rather than the true ambient air temperature.

If not solely shown on a dedicated OAT guage, the OAT is always typically shown on primary flight displays.

3.9.6 The Tachometer

The tachometer, or rpm indicator (Fig.3.40) is an instrument which shows the speed at which the engine crankshaft is turning in hundreds of revolutions per minute. The instrument usually incorporates a recording mechanism that keeps an accurate record of the engine hours. Tachometers are of many types, the more common being (1) mechanical, either centrifugal or magnetic, and (2) electrical, either direct or alternating current.

On an aeroplane fitted with a fixed pitch propeller, the tachometer is the only instrument that displays information about the engine power that is being produced. It indicates the rpm at which the engine crankshaft and the propeller are turning. The power output absorbed by a fixed pitch propeller is proportional to the cube of its rpm. The throttle controls the rpm.

On an aeroplane fitted with a controllable pitch or a constant speed propeller, there are two instruments, the tachometer and the manifold pressure gauge, which display engine power information. In this case, the rpm settings, recorded on the tachometer, are controlled by the propeller control. Manifold pressure settings are controlled by the throttle.

Fig.3.40 **The Tachometer**

Tachometer Markings

The tachometer is colour coded to give a ready indication of the proper range of engine operation. The green arc indicates the normal range of operation. The rpm settings within this range should be used for continuous operations. The yellow arc indicates the caution range in which there is a possibility of engine damage under certain conditions. The red line is the maximum limit.

Operation of the engine at greater speeds than those recommended may result in excessive mechanical stresses and may cause failure of major engine parts.

Fig.3.41 **Tachometer Markings**

3.9.7 The Manifold Pressure Gauge

On an aeroplane fitted with a controllable pitch or a constant speed propeller, there are two instruments which indicate information about engine power output, the tachometer and the manifold pressure gauge. Settings on the manifold pressure gauge are controlled by the throttle. Colour range markings, similar to those on the tachometer, are incorporated on the dial of the manifold pressure gauge to indicate the normal operating range and operation limits.

The instrument is usually located on the instrument panel adjacent to the tachometer so that the pilot can refer to both instruments when making power settings.

The manifold pressure gauge indicates in inches of mercury the pressure of the fuel/air mixture in the engine intake manifold at a point between the carburetor and the cylinders. A manifold reading of 26" Hg indicates a pressure of about 13 pounds per square inch (psi) in the engine intake manifold (14.7 psi is equivalent to 29.92" Hg).

Fig.3.42 **Manifold Pressure Gauge**

On an aeroplane fitted with a constant speed propeller, the rpm setting will remain constant since the propeller automatically changes its pitch to maintain the desired engine speed. The manifold pressure gauge therefore is the only instrument that records fluctuations in the engine power output. It is important for determining proper throttle settings and it is the instrument which will indicate power loss from occurrences such as the accretion of carburetor ice.

When the engine is not running, the reading on the manifold pressure gauge will be that of the existing atmospheric pressure. When the engine is running, the pressure inside the intake manifold is lower than that of the outside atmospheric pressure because the pistons create a partial vacuum.

The manifold pressure gauge is also an important instrument in an aeroplane with a turbocharged or supercharged engine. Turbocharging is accomplished by increasing the pressure of the air entering the carburetor; supercharging, by increasing

the pressure of the fuel/air mixture after it leaves the carburetor. The pilot, in order to control turbocharging or supercharging, must know the pressure of the fuel/air mixture in the intake manifold. The manifold pressure gauge gives this information. On a turbocharged or supercharged engine, the pressure inside the intake manifold is higher than the outside atmospheric pressure and readings will normally be higher than those on normally aspirated engines.

A drop in the reading of the manifold pressure gauge should be viewed as an indication of carburetor ice. If ice is forming in the carburetor, the airflow is restricted, causing a decrease in pressure in the intake manifold which will be indicated on the manifold pressure gauge.

Since the power of engines which are fitted with controllable or constant speed propellers and turbochargers or superchargers may be increased by either (a) increasing the rpm or (b) increasing the pressure, both of which are variables, it follows that there is an intimate relationship between the tachometer and the manifold pressure gauge.

If the rpm and manifold pressure of an engine at any given altitude are known, and the temperature correction for altitude applied, the brake horsepower of the engine can be determined from a chart. Reversing the process, an engine may be operated up to its critical altitude at any power desired by maintaining a specified boost and rpm. Some engine manufacturers recommend higher rpm and lower boost while others recommend lower rpm and higher boost to obtain a given power. These factors are governed by the design of each particular engine. It is therefore most important that the recommended power settings for any particular engine, for each specified condition, be strictly adhered to. Tables of these recommended settings are published in the Pilot's Operating Handbook (see Fig.3.43) and are also sometimes stated on a placard placed somewhere within the cockpit. The chart shown in Fig.3.43 is to be used for flights at altitudes near 2,500 feet. Similar charts will be prepared for other altitudes (e.g. 5,000 ft, 7,500 ft, 10,000 ft).

Standard Conditions • Zero Wind • Lean Mixture • 41.5 Gal. of Fuel (No Reserve) • Gross Weight – 2500 lbs.						2500 Feet
PROP. RPM	MP	% BHP	TAS MPH	GAL/ HOUR	ENDR. HOURS	RANGE MILES
2250	23	72	132	10.3	4.0	530
	22	68	128	9.8	4.3	545
	21	63	124	9.2	4.5	565
	20	59	124	8.6	4.8	580
2200	23	70	131	10.1	4.1	535
	22	66	127	9.5	4.4	555
	21	62	123	9.0	4.6	570
	20	57	118	8.4	5.0	585
2100	23	66	127	9.6	4.3	550
	22	62	123	9.0	4.6	565
	21	58	119	8.5	4.9	580
	20	53	114	8.0	5.2	595
2000	19	45	101	6.9	6.0	605
	18	41	82	6.4	6.5	595
	17	36	80	5.8	7.2	575
	16	32	66	5.2	8.0	530

Fig.3.43 **Aeroplane Performance Chart (Power Chart)**

Excessive manifold pressure raises the compression pressure, resulting in high stresses on the pistons and cylinder assemblies. If the pressure exceeds the limits of the octane rating of the fuel that is in use, detonation will result. Excessive pressure also produces excessive temperature, which may cause scoring of pistons, sticking rings, and burned out valves.

When the propeller pitch control is moved, during flight, from the fine pitch (high rpm) to the coarse pitch (low rpm) position, without an accompanying adjustment of the throttle, the manifold pressure gauge will register an increase, and, in the reverse situation (from coarse to fine pitch), it will register a decrease. The manifold pressure gauge registers a reading that is taken inside the intake manifold. When the rpm is decreased, the engine turns more slowly. The speed of flow of the fuel/air mixture through the manifold system is decreased. When the speed is decreased, the pressure increases (Bernoulli's Principle), hence, the increased reading on the manifold pressure gauge. The same situation in reverse occurs when the rpm is increased (from coarse to fine pitch). The engine speeds up, the fuel/air mixture speeds up passing through the manifold system, the pressure decreases and there is a decreased reading on the gauge.

When increasing power, increase the rpm first and then the manifold pressure. When decreasing power, decrease the manifold first and then the rpm.

Manifold Pressure & Power

In the era when there was nothing but the fixed pitch propeller, a pilot was able to understand the operation of his/her piston aeroplane engine much more readily than is the case today with the more complicated variable-pitch constant-speed propellers. With a fixed pitch propeller, opening the throttle increases the manifold pressure and, of necessity, also the rpm. The power that an engine with a fixed pitch prop is producing is determined by reference to a tachometer. The manifold pressure cannot be developed independently of the rpm. For each throttle setting, or manifold pressure setting, there is a corresponding rpm or BHP of the engine.

However, with the variable-pitch constant-speed propeller, opening the throttle will not change the rpm, but it will increase the manifold pressure, propeller load and horsepower. It follows, therefore, that the power absorbed by this type of propeller is independent of the rpm, for by varying the pitch of the blades, the air resistance and the propeller load can be changed while the propeller speed remains constant.

The process by which the propeller load or torque, as it is more properly called, is absorbed by the propeller is by varying the pressure acting on the piston. Any factor which affects the pressure acting on the pistons changes the torque. All other factors being equal (i.e., mixture ratio, temperature, type of fuel used), the pressure developed in the cylinders will depend on the mass of the charge that can be forced into it. This, in turn, will depend on the pressure existing at the intake valve ports and is measured by manifold pressure (MP). Thus, torque (propeller load) turns out to be a function of manifold pressure.

Consequently, with variable pitch propellers, a given propeller load may be absorbed at an infinite number of rpm and, since power is a function of both MP and rpm, a particular horsepower (BHP) may be developed at an unlimited number of combinations of MP and rpm.

There are other variable factors affecting engine power of which the pilot must be aware if he/she is to operate the aeroplane engine efficiently.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

1. The most important factor affecting power output is the fuel/air ratio. Variations in fuel flow from standard carburetor settings may reasonably affect power by a factor as high as 8 percent.
2. Inlet air temperatures affect the air density of the charge in the intake manifolds. As all conventional power charts are based on the assumption that "standard temperature conditions" prevail at the carburetor inlet, a correction must be applied to the aeroplane performance charts and tables. A conventional "rule of thumb" for making this correction is to add 1 percent for each 6°C below standard to the chart BHP; or to subtract 1 percent for each 6°C above standard.

In summing up, we see that in order to determine what percentage of BHP is being developed from an engine having a variable pitch propeller, we need to know the rpm, MP, mixture setting (rich or lean) and temperature of the air entering the carburetor. Knowing these variables and by reference to the aeroplane manufacturer's tables or graphs, the pilot is able to calculate BHP and fuel consumption and is able to anticipate aeroplane performance.

Humidity & Power

Factors such as outside temperature and altitude have an important effect on the power output of an aeroplane engine. Does humidity have any effect? Yes, it does, but only to the extent of about a 2% change.

Water vapour in the air will reduce the performance of an engine to a slight degree. The water vapour in the fuel/air mixture that is metered into the engine cylinders is incombustible. Therefore, it follows that the fuel to air ratio is increased and the engine operates as on a somewhat richer mixture. The result is some power loss and incomplete combustion.

For the most part, this power loss is so negligible that it need not be considered. Testing has indicated a loss of less than 2% for 100% relative humidity at temperatures of 32°C. The only occasion when the effect of humidity might be considered is during take-off and landing in marginal conditions, as on a very hot day when the humidity is high and the aeroplane is heavily loaded. On such occasions, that 2% change might be worth remembering in calculating the take-off run the aeroplane will require and the climb performance it can achieve.

3.9.8 Engine Monitoring Systems (EMS)

Electronic flight information systems (EFIS) have advanced the means by which engine data can be viewed in the cockpit. Pointers and dials have given way to electronic engine monitoring systems (EMS), viewable on PFD, MFD or stand-alone systems, that show multiple engine parameters.

The EMS module collects and processes data signals from a wide variety of engine sensors and provides this information via sensor wire harnesses to the EFIS cockpit display. On PFD/MFD systems, displaying of engine information can sometimes be shown in multiple user-selectable ways such as half-screen, full-screen and screen sharing modes with other forms of display.

EMS can provide a full spectrum of monitoring functions that consolidate into one LCD all the information that multiple gauges individually show. This information can include the following: tachometer, oil pressure, oil temperature, manifold pressure, fuel flow, fuel pressure, cylinder head temperature, exhaust gas temperature, and outside air temperature.

In addition to the engine monitoring functions listed above, the power of EMS is such that additional features can be incorporated into their functionality. These additional features can include fuel computers that provide fuel used/remaining information, as well as engine run timers and flight timers.

Fig.3.44 **Multifunction Display (MFD) Engine Data**

3.10 Operation of the Engine

3.10.1 Engine Operation Considerations

The service life of the modern aircraft engine is dependent on good maintenance and operating procedures. This is especially true with the tightly cowled, high performance engines in today's sophisticated aeroplanes. It is all too easy to ruin a fine piece of equipment through improper use.

Never make abrupt movements of the throttle. Such action can lead to damage and eventual engine failure.

On take-off, open the throttle **slowly and steadily** to take-off power. In this way, the engine is able to accelerate in rpm at the same pace as the advancing throttle; the increase in rpm and manifold pressure keep pace and there is little possibility of overboost of the engine cylinders; the propeller governor/propeller pitch control mechanism has adequate time to respond to the increasing rpm without risking an overspeed condition; and, finally, temperature changes within the cylinder and piston assemblies take place more slowly reducing the possibility of overstress, cracking and breaking that are caused by very rapid temperature changes.

Once climbing speed is reached, reduce power **slowly** and always climb at the highest indicated airspeed that is consistent with safety and other considerations of the flight. At the higher climbing speed, the engine will receive better cooling which is essential at a time when higher power is being produced (climbing power). Also during climb, use a rich mixture to benefit from the cooling effect on the combustion chamber of the evaporating extra fuel. Where installed, cowl flaps should be in the full open position for the take-off and climb.

Avoid high speed dives with engine idling. This kind of action will cause sudden cooling and could cause engine damage,

specifically, cracks in the cylinder heads around the spark plugs or valve ports. In the operation of any engine, cracked cylinders indicate that the pilot has been operating the engine at a fairly high temperature, has been abruptly reducing power which thereby suddenly cools the cylinder head. Gradual let-down without appreciably reducing engine power is best for the engine and is most efficient from the standpoint of obtaining maximum air miles per gallon performance.

Avoid long run-ups that overheat the engine. The streamlined and close fitting cowlings of today's general aviation aeroplanes restrict the flow of cooling air over the engine during ground maneuvering. Overly lengthy ground operation may overheat the cylinders which will then be suddenly cooled by the rush of cool air after take-off. The time to taxi from the ramp to the runway is usually sufficient to bring the engine up to its normal operating temperature. In the event that overheating does occur, turn the aeroplane into wind, ensure that all cowl flaps are open to their full extent and run the engine at about 1,000 rpm to allow the propeller to direct cooling air back over the engine.

Avoid high power run-ups, except when necessary for maintenance checks. They also cause overheating and, if carried out frequently, will produce a cumulative type of damage that shows up in the form of broken piston rings, scored pistons and cylinders. Turbocharged engines are very susceptible to overheating in high power run-ups.

Be sure all cowl flaps and cooling devices are open during run-ups and do not use carburetor heat.

Always use the power settings recommended by the manufacturer for cruise. Never over lean the mixture. Always double check that the method being used to lean the mixture is reliable.

The "normal rpm" stated by the engine manufacturer should never be exceeded for more than 5 minutes and then only when absolutely essential.

The "maximum permissible rpm" should never be exceeded more than momentarily in emergencies. Every engine is rated at a specified speed, or rpm, above which it may not be operated safely. To overspeed the engine, even momentarily, can cause excessive wear and, if the overspeed is high enough, serious damage and even engine failure.

The best cruise power setting is one at which the engine runs the most smoothly at approximately the rpm or MP recommended by the manufacturer (or at which the propeller load curve intersects the engine power curve, if these are available for the engine being operated). When selecting certain rpm/MP power combinations, a pilot should always "go by the book". Some engines are designed to cruise at 1,600 rpm and 26" MP, while other engines are designed to be operated at 2,600 rpm and 23" MP. Concerning rpm/MP combinations, there is no "rule of thumb" that applies to all engines. The manufacturer's performance charts or tables must always be referred to for every model of aeroplane. When given a choice of different power settings (various combinations of rpm and MP), always use the one that produces the least noise and least vibration. This action will prolong engine life, decrease the likelihood of damage or failure of parts or components and be less fatiguing to crew and passengers.

A further factor to consider when choosing between several rpm/MP combinations that produce the same percentage of power is fuel economy. Usually the best fuel economy is realized with a low rpm and high MP combination because internal friction is reduced and less fuel is, therefore, required to overcome the internal friction that is produced. This point is of particular importance to pilots undertaking long range flights.

In an aeroplane fitted with a fixed pitch, all metal propeller, it is important to avoid selecting an rpm that is not within the operating range recommended by the manufacturer. Both the engine and the propeller have a natural "resonance" and, at certain rpm, engine and propeller harmonics will coincide and cause sufficient propeller blade vibration to induce blade failure.

With turbocharged and supercharged engines, the "maximum permissible boost" must **never** be exceeded.

Boost pressures greater than "rated boost" are only permissible for 5 minutes at a time.

During a long descent in cold weather, apply sufficient power to keep the engine at normal operating temperature.

Above all, never switch off an overheated engine. After taxiing in, allow it to idle a sufficient time to cool off. A lot of residual heat has to dissipate.

If the engine is fitted with idle cut-off, this should always be used to stop the engine.

The life and dependability of an aero engine depend to an appreciable extent on the use or abuse the engine suffers at the hands of the pilot. The reason that some engines go their full time between overhauls while others do not can usually be credited to the care or lack of care by the pilot in handling the engine controls.

3.10.2 Engine Maintenance & Care

Aeroplanes should be flown frequently in order to prevent rust and corrosion from occurring inside the cylinders. Without frequent flights, water and acids collect in an engine. These are normally cooked out during flight. It is not sufficient, however, just to run up the engine on the ground in order to prevent this rusting process. If the oil temperature is not brought up to 75°C, water from combustion will be added to the engine oil. At 75°C water is still a part of the combustion process, but the oil is hot enough to vapourize the water. If the oil temperature is not raised to 75°C, this water will build up and slowly turn to acid. If it is impossible to fly the aeroplane even around the circuit, the best thing would be to pull the propeller through a full turn to recoat the cylinders with a film of oil. However, **never touch the propeller unless you have assured yourself that the magneto switches are OFF.**

Change oil at intervals recommended by the manufacturer to avoid excessive engine wear. As the oil flows throughout the engine, it becomes contaminated with carbon particles, water, acid and dirt. The old oil should be drained when the engine is hot as the oil then flows more freely and there is better assurance that all the contaminated oil will be cleared out of the engine.

Engine manufacturers now recommend that oil be changed every 25 hours or every 3 months, whichever comes first. Even if the aircraft has not been flown too often during the 3 months, the engine oil will become contaminated by acids as the aeroplane sits unused. Frequent oil changes will help prolong the life of the engine. If an aeroplane is to be put into storage for the winter (or for any prolonged period of time), it is wise to change the oil before putting it away and again when bringing it out of storage before flying it again.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

An even better procedure for long term storage is to replace the regular oil with special inhibiting oil. After filling the oil tank with the inhibiting oil, run the engine for two or three minutes as per the instructions. Inhibiting oil is a special type of oil that is sticky and, therefore, clings to all metal parts inside the engine and prevents corrosion. When the engine is to be returned to service, it should be operated for a few minutes to bring the oil temperature up to a point that will permit the oil to flow. The inhibiting oil should then be drained and replaced with regular engine oil.

Installation of auxiliary oil filters are recommended to assist in preventing foreign matters from circulating through the engine and causing excessive wear. All oil filters should be regularly inspected and cleaned.

Service spark plugs regularly and replace them when they are worn to their limits. Be sure to use only the spark plugs recommended by the engine manufacturer. Swap top and bottom spark plugs every 25 to 50 hours. Top plugs scavenge better than bottom plugs. During operation, avoid over rich mixtures which contribute to spark plug fouling. Low operating temperatures coupled with rich fuel mixtures result in incomplete vapourization of the lead in the combustion chambers causing lead deposits on the plugs. Always, therefore, maintain engine operating temperatures in the normal range.

Inspect the ignition harness regularly to assure against worn insulation and seals that would cause misfiring.

Have the magneto points and timing checked as recommended by the manufacturer and have a compression check run regularly.

Check the intake manifold periodically to be sure there are no loose connections.

Air inlet filter screens should be cleaned regularly so they can perform their function of keeping sand and dust from entering the induction system. Ensure that the alternate air intake and carburetor heat valves operate correctly and seal properly. Any accumulation of dust or dirt near the entrance to the alternate air device should be removed to prevent it being drawn into the engine.

3.10.3 Shock Cooling & Thermal Stress

Abnormal mechanical and thermal stress are two large threats to engine reliability. Thermal stress occurs in cylinders through shock cooling, the rapid changing of engine operating temperatures. Shock cooling may occur when a pilot closes the throttle to idle thereafter immediately entering a high speed descent. Such stress on the engine reduces cylinder head durability due to the low cycle thermal stress being superimposed upon the high cycle mechanical stress of combustion pressure.

When in cruise, an engine is cooled by the large volume of air flowing over the cylinders. In a rapid idle descent, however, power is reduced dramatically which thereby reduces heat within the cylinders. At the same time, airflow through the cowling is vastly increased due to the speed of the aircraft – the perfect set-up for thermal stress to occur. The resultant shock cooling may damage the hottest components in an engine, including the cylinder heads, valve seats and valves. Aluminum cylinder heads shrink twice as much per unit of temperature loss as compared to steel cylinder barrels. Valve seats can be distorted or even pop-out, valves can warp or become stuck, and cylinder heads may crack – often next to the spark plug hole.

The correct procedure to prevent shock cooling and thermal stress is for the pilot to plan descents and approaches as far back from the intended landing area as possible, and to keep adjusting the mixture control to maintain the exhaust gas temperatures from cruise. In this way, power is gradually reduced and no abrupt changes in engine temperature will occur. Generally, monitoring of cylinder head temperatures is not a reliable way to ascertain that temperatures are being adequately maintained during descents – but careful planning of descents is. "Chopping" of power from cruise to idle, then entering a rapid descent, should be avoided.

3.10.4 Fuel Management Considerations

The safe conduct of any flight owes much to the careful management of the aircraft's fuel system.

DO be thoroughly familiar with your aeroplane's fuel system and its operation.

DO know the engine's hourly fuel consumption rate.

DO check your fuel supply visually if possible. Be sure you have the correct type of fuel. Observe the colour and odour of the fuel as you check the tank. Be sure all fuel caps (and oil tank caps) and covers are installed and secured properly.

DO check that each fuel tank vent is clear of obstructions (dirt, ice, snow, bent or pinched tubes, etc.). Fuel tanks must be vented to allow air to enter the tank as the fuel is used.

DO visually check the fuel selector valve when changing tanks.

DO make sure, in aircraft with a fuel gauge indicator selector, to change both the indicator selector and the fuel valve selector in switching tanks.

DO check the fuel selector valve carefully to be sure that it is operating properly. This is especially important in cold weather. It is possible for a fuel selector valve to freeze into position, making it impossible to select a fuel tank when needed. It is preferable to make this check before starting to taxi so that, when ready for take-off, the fuel flow from the take-off tank to the engine has been stabilized.

DO learn how to use the mixture control properly.

DO make a check during the preflight inspection of the fuselage and external wing surfaces for stains which may indicate fuel system leakage.

DO keep the tanks full when the aircraft is not in use. Water condenses on the walls of partially filled tanks and enters the fuel system.

DO periodically inspect and clean all fuel strainers.

DO practice good housekeeping in your routine maintenance.

DO calculate your usable fuel as 75% of your total capacity. To determine your safe flight time limit, divide your usable fuel by your fuel consumption rate. Include time from start-up to shut-down in total flight time. Fuel exhaustion is an all too common cause of accidents. Know your safe flight time limit and don't exceed it.

DO exercise care in flight planning, taking into account any situation which would cause an increase in fuel consumption. Do compute a reasonable time limit

for your flight taking into consideration trip length, cruising altitude, wind (do not count on forecast tailwinds) and gross weight.

DO use only the fuel recommended by the engine manufacturer.

DO filter all fuel entering the tanks.

DO drain fuel sumps regularly on preflight checks. Draw a generous sample of fuel from each sump and screen drain it into a transparent container. Check that there is no water, rust or other contaminants in the sample.

DO assure that sump drains are fully closed after draining.

DO land somewhere short of your planned destination if the flight has been slower than anticipated and there is any doubt that you have enough fuel to complete the entire trip.

DON'T fly beyond a refuelling stop unless the amount of fuel remaining is more than enough to get you to your destination.

DON'T overlean the mixture to practice false economy.

DON'T use additives that have not been approved by the manufacturer.

DON'T change the fuel selector just prior to take-off. In fact, perform the engine run-up on the tank that will be used for take-off.

DON'T change the fuel selector during the approach to landing. Change tanks sufficiently in advance to ensure that the fuel flow is stabilized.

3.10.5 Starting the Engine

When starting your engine, consider the following:

1. Position the aeroplane so that dust will not be blown into hangars or towards other aeroplanes. In a strong wind, a light aeroplane should be faced into wind for run-up, but not where it will blow dust onto other aeroplanes.
2. Parking brakes full ON. Use chocks if parking brakes are inadequate to prevent the aeroplane from creeping forward during the warm-up.
3. Before starting, the propeller should be pulled through (i.e. rotated by hand) through several complete turns. This action releases any accumulation of oil in the combustion chambers and also assists in partially priming the engine. (Be sure the switches are OFF before pulling through.) The propeller must not be motored over on "Contact" until the pilot is sure that there is no person or property that could be injured or damaged when the propeller starts.

   When starting a seaplane at a buoy, a line should be placed loosely around one of the float undercarriage struts and not slipped until the pilot is sure that the engine will continue to run.
4. Carry out pre-starting procedures as per the instruction manual or as previous experience dictates (i.e. certain amount of prime depending on whether the engine is hot or cold, mixture FULL RICH, fuel selector ON, carburetor heat on COLD, etc.). In most aeroplanes, the throttle should be set 1/4" to 1/2" open from the fully closed position prior to engaging the starter switch. Immediately after the engine starts, the throttle should be moved towards the closed position until the tachometer registers about 600 to 700 rpm and the engine should be allowed to run at this rpm until oil pressure is obtained.

The oil pressure gauge should be checked immediately after engine start up. If it does not register within 10 seconds, shut off the engine and investigate. However, in cold weather, when the oil is cold and sluggish, it may take as much as 30 seconds or more before any pressure registers on the gauge.

The action of throttling back immediately after starting the engine is very important to good engine handling. By doing so, engine wear is eliminated and friction reduced while the oil pressure is being built up within the engine. Secondly, in the event that chocks are not used and the brakes fail to hold, reducing the power immediately after the engine starts will prevent the aeroplane from rolling forward. On those aeroplanes that need to be started by swinging the propeller, reduction of throttle immediately after the engine starts is a safety precaution that prevents the aeroplane from rolling forward and seriously injuring the person who swung the propeller.

Most internal wear on an engine occurs during start-up due to the lack of lubrication between moving metal parts. In addition to proper throttle technique, leaning of the mixture under idling conditions prevents spark plug fouling.

Selecting the exact throttle position, prior to starting, that will give 600 to 700 rpm is, in practice, difficult. Sometimes the setting will be accurate; sometimes it will produce an rpm of 1,200 or more. Develop the habit of always closing the throttle slightly after the engine starts and then opening it until the rpm reaches the desired setting of about 700 rpm. Sometimes the engine may tend to "die" if the throttle has been closed too abruptly. Should this happen, the throttle should immediately be advanced sufficiently to keep the engine running.

After 1 minute of running in the 600 to 700 rpm range, the throttle should be adjusted as per the instruction manual to the recommended warm-up rpm which in most aeroplanes will be about 1,000 rpm. At this rpm the engine is being warmed up gradually; there is some flow of cooling air being forced through the cowling by the propeller, and the engine oil pump is supplying adequate pressure to assure lubrication to all moving parts.

The aeroplane may be taxied to the take-off position during warm-up and, in fact, this procedure is recommended on all tightly cowled engines to eliminate excessive ground running of the engine. There is insufficient air flow through the engine while the aeroplane is on the ground to effect proper cooling. Ideally the engine warm-up should just be completed when the aeroplane reaches the take-off point and is in position for the pre-take-off check and engine run-up.

3.10.6 Procedure for Backfire During Starting

Due to overpriming, raw gasoline often collects in the lowest point of the carburetor induction system and poses a fire threat in the event that a "backfire" should occur. A backfire, as the name implies, is the burning of the combustible mixture back through the intake manifold. It commences in the cylinder when, due to abnormal conditions (that exist in starting), there is still burning within the cylinder at the moment

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

the intake valve opens to permit a fresh charge of fuel to enter. The fresh charge ignites and burns back through the intake pipes to the carburetor area where a pool of raw gasoline, if present, could ignite and explode.

In most cases, any fire resulting from a backfire can be quickly quenched by continuing to crank the engine since this action will suck the flames and explosive vapours into the cylinder where they will do no harm. (The advantage of a well charged battery can be readily appreciated. It could be disastrous if the battery went "dead" just when it was needed to turn over the engine to eliminate an engine fire.)

Another form of "backfire" is the exhaust manifold fire. In actual fact, it is not technically a "backfire" and is therefore incorrectly named. This also is caused by overpriming and occurs when raw gasoline that was introduced into the intake manifold system by the primer passes through the cylinder and into the exhaust manifold without being burned. In this case, a pool of raw gasoline could collect in the exhaust system and could be set afire by the hot exhaust gases which may follow starting. In most cases, starting the engine quickly will smother the flames before they can spread and do any damage.

The fact may now be appreciated that most engine fires which occur at the time of starting result from improper technique in use of the primer, throttle accelerator pump (which is the proper way to prime many engines) or other priming devices. Do not use the primer too far in advance of starting the engine. The fuel injected into the system gets more time to condense and run down the manifold to form a combustible pool somewhere in the system.

If an engine fire has started and it cannot be put out by getting the engine running, the fuel should be shut off and the primer locked and an external fire extinguisher or an extinguisher that is part of the engine installation should be used to put out the fire.

3.10.7 Running Up the Engine

Always position the aeroplane into wind when doing an engine run up. The wind increases the flow of air through and around the engine, helping to keep the cylinders cool and preventing over-heating.

The throttle should always be opened and closed slowly.

1. Check oil pressure and temperature. Switch off the engine immediately if the pressure or temperature appear abnormal.
2. Check the rpm at full throttle. Throttle back to the engine speed recommended for a magneto check. Cut the switches one at a time to test each individual magneto, by moving the switch from BOTH to RIGHT, to BOTH, to LEFT, and back to BOTH. (You return to BOTH each time to allow the engine to regain its normal rpm and to clear the inoperative set of plugs in case they may have fouled with oil while their magneto switch was off.) The drop in rpm when the magnetos are operated singly as compared to the rpm when they are operated together should not be more than 75 rpm (unless the manufacturer specifies that a greater drop is allowable for that particular engine). An rpm loss in excess of the allowable rate should be considered an indication of an ignition problem.

   A check should also be made to ensure that both magnetos are properly grounded and that there is a complete loss of power when the ignition switch is turned to OFF. The grounding mechanism prevents the flow of electricity being generated in the magneto from reaching the spark plugs. A hot or live magneto is one which is not grounded. A hot magneto means that, even though the ignition switch is OFF, the engine could start if the propeller is moved even fractionally. Move the ignition switch from BOTH to OFF. If the engine continues to fire when the switch is OFF, there is a live or hot magneto. Shut off the fuel and check the magneto ground lead after the engine has stopped. The live magneto check should be conducted at low power to prevent damage to the engine. To do this check at higher power means that the engine jumps from cruise rpm to zero rpm instantaneously (when the magnetos are properly grounded and do shut off when the ignition switch is moved to OFF), a procedure that can be very damaging to the crankshaft and other internal parts.

   Check all instruments for proper indication while running up the engine, i.e. voltmeter or ammeter, manifold pressure gauge, fuel pressure, rpm indicator, vacuum, etc.
3. If the engine is fitted with a controllable or constant speed propeller, test its operation by moving the lever to coarse pitch. See that the required drop in rpm occurs. Return the lever to fine pitch after the test. Check the propeller feathering operation, if applicable.
4. Test the operation of the carburetor heat control by selecting "warm air". If the control is working satisfactorily, a drop in power will be noted. Check the operation of the carburetor air temperature gauge, if fitted.
5. See that the primer pump is switched off or that the manual primer is off and locked. Check for correct operation of the mixture control by moving it from full rich to full lean and back again. The engine should die when the mixture control is placed in the full lean position.
6. Idle the engine for a few moments to check the idling speed at proper working temperature.

During the running up, the pilot should check and listen intently for any sign of engine trouble. A minor adjustment on the ground may forestall a serious situation due to engine failure on take-off or in flight.

Never attempt to take off with a cold engine.

A maintenance check of the engine is sometimes necessary to test an engine for maintenance purposes and to run it at full power. The brakes of the aeroplane will probably not be able to hold the aeroplane stationary during this procedure. It is essential, therefore, to chock the wheels and even to tie down the aeroplane. There are many recorded incidents of an aeroplane jumping the chocks when the brakes have not held, running into another aircraft or stationary installation and causing substantial property damage and personal injury. When carrying out "full power" testing of this sort, it is wise to position the aeroplane so that it is not in line with anything to which it could cause damage if the brakes should fail or if the aircraft does jump the chocks and move forward.

3.10.8 Engine Operation in Cold Weather

Operation in winter requires more care on the part of the pilot and an understanding of the effect of cold on the component parts of the power plant.

In cold weather, taking off with a cold engine and cold oil can put you in the embarrassing position of coping with a loss of power during a critical part of the take-off procedure. Aviation lubricants are heavier than the commonly used automotive engine oils and therefore require more time in warm-up to obtain normal flow to function properly throughout an air-cooled aeroplane engine.

At temperatures above freezing, a warm up of 2 or 3 minutes at 1,000 rpm may be sufficient to bring engine temperatures within operating range. At temperatures below freezing, the warm-up should be longer. With turbocharged powerplants, even more time is required to assure proper controller operation and to prevent manifold pressure overboost.

In cold weather, it is a good practice to rotate the propeller by hand several times before attempting to start the engine. This procedure helps to break the seal of cold congealed oil in the various parts of the engine. Be sure, however, that the magneto switches are OFF before touching the propeller. As an additional safety measure, turn the propeller backwards, rather than forwards.

Engines turn over rather sluggishly in cold weather and consequently there is a tendency to overprime to hasten the start. This practice may result in an excess of raw gasoline washing the oil from the cylinder walls, leaving them vulnerable to scoring by the piston. Excess fuel also increases the hazard of fire.

Factors to Consider

There is no shortage of factors to consider when operating an aircraft in cold conditions. Below, in more detail, are matters to consider when preparing for flights in colder weather.

OIL

As soon as the temperature starts to dip in the fall, change to the weight of oil recommended by the manufacturer for cold weather operation. The heavier weight viscosity oil recommended for summer use simply will not flow in cold weather until it is warmed. It becomes thick and heavy and sluggish and will not flow through the very small clearances in the engine. As a result, not only will it fail to lubricate the moving engine parts during a cold start, but, in some cases, it will prevent the engine from turning at sufficient speed to achieve a start at all. The lighter viscosity oil recommended for cold weather operation will flow through the small clearances and will provide the essential lubrication to prevent damage during the cold start. Adequate warm-up, of course, is still necessary before take-off to ensure that the oil is flowing normally throughout the engine.

Several oil companies have developed a multi-viscosity oil which eliminates the need to change oil seasonally. This oil remains thin in extremely cold weather, but also maintains, at high outside temperatures, the same viscosity as the traditional summer grade of oil.

The crankcase oil breather should be checked regularly to assure that it is open. Moisture is a natural by-product of the heating and cooling and operation of a gasoline engine. This moisture is vented to the atmosphere through the oil breather line. In the winter when temperatures are below freezing, it is possible for the breather line, in that portion which protrudes from the lower cowling of the aircraft, to freeze shut. Should this happen, pressure will build up in the oil system causing the oil filler cap to blow off or a seal to rupture with resultant loss of the oil supply.

To prevent such an occurrence, most aircraft require an oil breather line modification: a V-shaped notch that is cut into the tubing several inches upward from the end, in that portion of the breather line that is inside the cowling where the heat of the engine prevents the line from freezing. If the end of the breather line freezes, the notch permits venting of the accumulating moisture. The notch is cut in such a way that, as long as the breather line is open, the moisture laden oil vapours are vented through the line protruding below the cowling. The moisture is vented through the notch only when the end of the breather line is blocked.

WINTER KIT

As well as changing to winter grade oil, the manufacturer will have other recommendations for winterizing that should be followed. This usually involves installation of a winter kit. Among other things, a winter kit will probably include baffle plates for installation in the air inlets in order to cut down the amount of abnormally cold air directed around the engine. With baffle plates installed, the engine will be able to reach and maintain its normal operating temperatures. Intake pipes are lagged, that is, they are wrapped with insulating material such as felt or asbestos. This is done to ensure that the vapourized fuel in the fuel/air mixture does not condense back into its liquid form in abnormally cold intake pipes. The oil tank may also be lagged in order to keep the oil warm.

All hoses, flexible tubing and seals should be checked for signs of deterioration, cracks or hardening. They get brittle with age and vibration. Primer lines, especially, should be inspected for leaks around fittings to reduce fire hazard.

Ignition leads should be inspected, and spark plugs cleaned and reset, or replaced if necessary. Magneto timing will change with wear. Cold weather starts require an ignition system that is in optimum condition.

FUEL

Fuel tank sumps sometimes freeze during cold weather. If nothing will drain from the sump, it is highly probable that water in the fuel has turned to ice and blocked the sump. The only solution is to put the aeroplane into a warm hangar until the ice thaws and the water can be drained out of the sumps. The best way to prevent water condensing and turning to ice in the fuel tanks is to fill the tanks immediately after flight.

At temperatures above freezing, any water in the fuel sinks to the bottom of the tank where it can be removed with normal sump draining. However, at temperatures below freezing, minute water droplets in the fuel sometimes freeze into tiny ice crystals and remain suspended in the fuel. Normal draining of the sumps will not remove them. These ice particles then may congregate in narrow passages, such as the fuel filters, fuel selector valve, etc., and restrict fuel flow. An anti-icing additive cures the problem, but it must be used with caution and exactly according to the manufacturer's instructions. Incorrectly used, ant-icing additives may damage fuel tanks and certain carburetor parts.

Always check the fuel selector valve for proper movement since it can easily become frozen into position and impossible to move. For this same reason, do not run a tank dry before switching tanks during flight. In case the fuel selector valve has become frozen and you are unable to switch tanks, there

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

will still be enough fuel in the tank in use to divert to a nearby airport or to have engine power for a precautionary landing.

TURBOCHARGED ENGINES

Avoid over-boosting turbocharged engines in cold weather take-offs. Cold air is heavier than air at a more moderate temperature and therefore power output of the engines is increased. For every 5°C below standard air temperature, engine power increases by 1%.

SPARK PLUGS

The engine may not start at sub-zero temperatures. A common cause of this problem is moisture that has frozen on the spark plug electrodes. Remove at least one plug from each cylinder and warm them.

BATTERY

A battery that is not fully charged is apt to freeze at below freezing temperatures. Any battery that is allowed to sit unused will tend to discharge. In cold weather, the electrolyte (the sulphuric acid/water mix) in the battery will break down and change to water. The water may then freeze and possibly burst its case. If the aeroplane will not be used until the next day or for an even longer period, remove the battery and keep it in a warm place. An unused battery (in storage) should be given a slow charge (about 3 amps per hour) every 5 or 6 weeks.

PREHEAT

In very cold weather, preheating the engine from an auxiliary heating source is essential. In fact, engine manufacturers usually recommend preheating at any temperature below -8°C and require it at any temperature below -12°C. The heavy oils used in air cooled aviation engines (even those recommended for cold weather operation) do not flow at such low temperatures. Inadequate lubrication would result from a cold start and permanent damage, such as broken piston rings, scored cylinders and pistons, could result. Preheating the engine, as well as warming the metal parts, warms the oil and ensures that it will flow readily and lubricate all engine parts as soon as the engine starts.

When heating an engine by means of an external source, it is most important that a well-insulated cowling cover be used to keep the heat within the engine thus assuring that it will warm all engine parts evenly.

CARBURETOR HEAT

Use carburetor heat as required. In some cases, it may be necessary to use heat to vapourize the fuel, as gasoline does not vapourize readily in cold weather.

However, do not use carburetor heat in such a way that the mixture temperature is raised just to freezing level. Such action may induce carburetor ice. (See Section **Carburetor Icing**.) A carburetor air temperature gauge is a very valuable instrument during cold weather operations.

PROPELLER

If the aeroplane is equipped with a constant speed propeller, change rpm settings with the prop pitch control about every half hour to help prevent the oil from congealing in the prop dome. Congealed oil may make changing pitch impossible.

DESCENTS

Try to avoid power off descents by starting to lose altitude far enough back from your destination that the entire descent can be conducted with power. If a rapid descent is unavoidable, use gear and flaps to induce drag so that some engine power (heat) may be maintained.

Engine Fault Finding List

1. Engine will not start.
   - No Spark at Plugs (plugs fouled or incorrectly set — H.T. leads crossed — switch "off" or defective switch — mag wires grounded — defective mag — wet plugs, leads or mag).
   - Weak Spark (breaker points dirty or incorrectly set — faulty condenser).
   - Insufficient Fuel (tanks empty — fuel cocks "off" — insufficient priming — air vents in tanks clogged — leaks or stoppages in fuel system — defective fuel pump — float needle valve sticking — altitude control open — carburetor tuned too weak — vapourization of fuel in lines of fuel injection engine caused by hot engine).
   - Flooding (excessive priming — fuel pressure too high).
   - Cold Engine (engine stiff to turn).
   - Water or Dirt in Fuel.
   - Mechanical Defects (plugs loose — cylinders scored — piston rings stuck, broken or scored — loose intake connections — poor compression and leaky valves).
   - Insufficient Cranking Speed.
   - Incorrect Throttle Setting.
2. Engine Misses.
   - Defective Plugs (oiled up, incorrectly set, or cracked).
   - Defective Magneto (timing incorrect).
   - Water or Dirt in Fuel Line.
   - Mechanical Defects (sticking valve — crack in cylinder).
   - Low Compression in One or More Cylinders.
   - Cold Engine or Overheated Engine.
   - Lack of Fuel (fuel tank vents clogged — fuel cock not fully open — lean mixture).
3. Backfire.
   - Incorrect Timing (H.T. leads crossed — spark too far advanced).
   - Defective Carburetor (Sticking float, needle or toggles).
   - Lean Mixture (dirty filters — altitude control open — fuel pressure low — leaks in fuel system).
   - Water, Dirt or Air Lock (in carburetor or fuel line).
   - Sticking Valve.
   - Hot Engine (carbon in cylinders — overheated valves, plugs, etc.).
4. Loss of Power.
   - Defective Plugs (oiled up — incorrectly set).
   - Incorrect Timing (magnetos defective — not properly synchronized — faulty wiring — breaker points burned or pitted).
   - Insufficient Fuel (leaks or stoppages in the fuel system — defective fuel pump — float needle valve sticking — weak mixture — throttle or carburetor throttle valve not fully open — altitude control open — carburetor iced up).
   - Excessive Fuel (rich mixture — fuel pressure too high — air intake restricted).

- Improper Lubrication (wrong grade of oil — incorrect oil temperature — leaks — low oil pressure — dirty filters).
- Carburetor Heat Used Unnecessarily.
- Carburetor Icing.
- Excessive Cylinder Temperatures (engine tends to seize).
- Loss of Compression (plugs loose — piston rings worn —valve seats worn — clearances out — springs weak — valves warped, stuck, or seating improperly — incorrect timing).
- Poor Fuel (or water or dirt in fuel).
- Pre-ignition.
- Engine Too Cold, or Overheating.
- Internal Friction.
- Engine Needs Overhaul.
- Detonation.

5. Rough Running.
   - Propeller or Engine Bearings Loose or Unbalanced.
   - Bent Crankshaft.
   - Defective Plugs.
   - Defective Magnetos (timing, wiring, etc.)
   - Incorrect Mixture (too rich or too lean).
   - Wrong Valve Clearance (or sticking valve).
   - Detonation, or Pre-ignition.
   - Cold Engine.
6. Engine Stops.
   - Lack of Fuel (tanks exhausted — gas cocks accidentally knocked closed — failure to switch over to full tank when the one in use runs dry — water or dirt in fuel — fuel tank air vents clogged — filters clogged — air lock in fuel system — mixture control accidentally moved to idle cut-off).
7. Engine continues to run with switches off.
   - Defective Switch or Wiring.
   - Overheating.
   - Pre-ignition.
8. Engine will not take throttle.
   - Lean Mixture.
   - Cold Engine.
9. Blue smoke from exhaust.
   - Worn or Stuck Piston Rings.
10. Black smoke or long red flame from exhaust.
    - Excessive Rich Mixture.
11. Engine overheating.
    - Detonation.
    - Stuck Rings.
    - Insufficient Oil Supply.
    - Lean Mixture.
12. Excessive oil consumption.
    - Blocked or Frozen Breather (causing excessive pressure).
    - Sticking Valves.
    - Worn Piston Rings.
13. Long yellow flame from exhaust.
    - Lean Mixture.

3.11 Jet Propulsion

It is **not** the blast of hot gases out the exhaust of a jet engine that provides the driving force, but rather the reaction to the exhaust jet. Jet propulsion is based on Sir Isaac Newton's Third Law of Motion, namely that every action will have an equal and opposite reaction. (Like the "kick" you get from a shotgun.)

Imagine a sphere (Fig.3.45) suspended by a cord and filled with air under pressure. The sphere will remain motionless, because the pressure is exerted evenly against all sides. The pressure at A is balanced by the equal and opposite pressure at B. The pressure at C is balanced by the equal and opposite pressure at D.

Now punch a hole in the sphere allowing air to escape at A. The pressures at C and D are still equal and opposite. The pressure at B pushes the sphere forward. The force exerted at B is equal and opposite to the momentum of the air escaping at A. A is the Jet. B is the reaction to the jet, which is known as thrust.

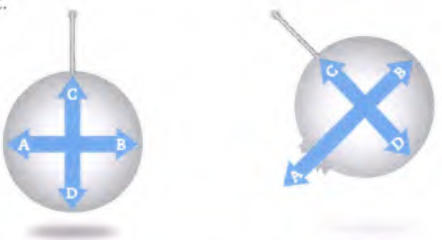


Fig.3.45 **Principle of Jet Propulsion**

3.11.1 The Ram Jet

The simplest form of jet engine is the ram jet. This is little more than a streamlined "stove" in which fuel mixed with air is burned and exhausted out the "stovepipe" to produce a thrust reaction. The air which enters the intake is "rammed" into the combustion chamber by the forward speed of the aeroplane (Fig.3.46). As this high speed ram air passes through the diffuser section, as indicated in Fig.3.46, the speed of the air decreases while the pressure increases. This is brought about by the increase in cross section of the diffuser (Bernoulli's Principle for Incompressible Flow). The difference in pressure is known, in a ram jet engine, as the pressure ratio. (When we get to **The Turbojet Engine**, pressure ratio has a slightly different meaning.)

The slowed down ram air is mixed with fuel introduced by the fuel injectors at C. This volatile mixture of fuel and air, once ignited, burns, expands and roars out of the exhaust nozzle at tremendous velocity at E. This creates a thrust reaction similar to that which we observed in the case of the punctured balloon. The difference between the high pressure in the forward part of the engine and the low pressure towards the rear, imparts momentum to the jet stream rushing out of the nozzle. This momentum has its equal and opposite reaction in the form of thrust, the force which drives the engine ahead and propels the aeroplane forward.

Initially, the engine is started by a spark, or igniter plug, the same as a piston engine, but as soon as the fuel is ignited, the ignition is switched off and the fire burns continuously.

The ram jet is extremely simple and particularly suited to high altitude and high speed. First, however, it must be carried aloft by some other means of power and impelled at sufficient

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

forward speed to enable it to get started. Its practical use appears limited to missiles, supersonic aeroplanes, etc.

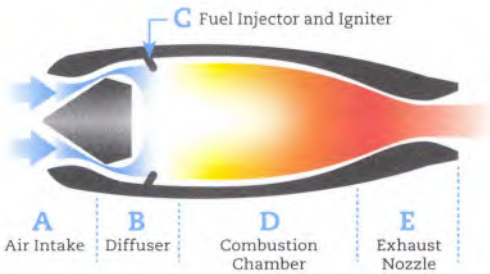


Fig.3.46 **The Ram Jet Engine**

3.11.2 The Turbojet Engine

In the turbojet engine, the intake air is compressed and rammed into the combustion chamber by a compressor, which is driven by a turbine wheel. The turbine in turn is driven by the momentum of the hot exhaust gases.

The basic layout of the turbojet engine, together with some of its construction features, is illustrated in Fig.3.47, the cutaway drawing of the General Electric J-85 engine.

The engine is started by a starter motor. Air enters the air inlet duct past the inlet guide vanes which guide the flow of air at the right angle to the first stage compressor rotor. The air is compressed by the compressor. The compressor illustrated has 8 rows of rotor blades one behind the other, axially, which rotate around a shaft, and is therefore referred to as an eight-stage axial flow compressor. Between the rows of rotor blades are rows of stationary stator vanes. They are fastened to the engine case and form a complete ring around the inside of the engine casing. Their purpose is to convert the velocity imparted by the rotor blades into pressure and to direct the air at the proper angle to the next set of blades where the process is repeated.

Fig.3.47 **General Electric J-85 Turbojet Engine**

The mainframe section serves as the main structural component. In many turbojet type engines, the section behind the compressor functions as a diffuser.

The air from the compressor enters the burner section through holes in the burner skin. (These also help to reduce the intense heat of the burning gases.) The igniter plug(s) and fuel nozzles, located within the burner section, ignite the gases initially and admit the fuel which burns with the compressed air to produce terrific heat. The heated gases are allowed to drop in pressure and accelerate through rows of nozzle guide vanes, the whole assembly of vanes being generally called the turbine nozzle(s). Whereas in the compressor the vanes convert velocity to pressure, in the turbine they convert pressure to velocity. The rotational velocity is arrested by the blades or buckets of the turbine wheel, thereby producing shaft horsepower to drive the compressor. Because of the very high temperature of the gases entering the turbine, only a part of the pressure built up in the compressor is needed to make the turbine drive the compressor. That is, there is pressure left over after the turbines to make the gas do more work downstream.

The exhaust cone collects and straightens the gas flow. The length of the exhaust duct, or tail pipe determines the position of the exhaust nozzle, an orifice at the rear of the duct, whose size determines the speed of the gases as they emerge from the engine. Increasing the speed of the gases increases their momentum and hence the amount of thrust produced by the engine.

The gas generator consists of the parts of the engine which produce gas at a higher pressure and temperature than at the engine inlet. This includes the compressor, the diffuser, the burner and the turbine. The term "gas" has nothing to do with gasoline. A gas turbine engine is one which is operated by a gas, as distinct from one operated by steam vapour or water.

The engine is controlled by the amount of fuel fed to it. Cutting off the fuel stops the engine.

The fuel used is kerosene. Any hydrocarbon can be used in a jet engine as long as it can be blown through a nozzle and burned.

Why do some jet engines leave black smoke trails? Usually, the reason is poor combustion. The fuels used in gas turbine engines consist almost entirely of hydrocarbons, that is, compounds of hydrogen and carbon. When the fuel is burned, the hydrogen and carbon combine to form, ideally, water and carbon dioxide. If, however, the combustion is not complete, particles of carbon are formed which are visible as black smoke.

The engine is lubricated by a pressure spray or flow of oil which is fed to the three bearing assemblies. Synthetic oil is the type most widely used on turbojet engines.

Temperatures in the combustion chambers and around the turbine in a jet engine run as high as 700°C. Because of the heat of the jet stream, a person should not stand nearer than 150 to 200 feet directly back of the tailpipe.

The jet engine weighs roughly one quarter the weight of a piston engine and propeller of similar power output. The frontal area of the axial flow jet engine is approximately one tenth that of the frontal area of a radial piston engine.

The jet engine's power is rated in pounds of static thrust instead of horsepower. At a speed of 325 knots, one lb. of thrust equals roughly one horsepower. At 525 knots at sea level, the jet engine's 5,000 lb. of static thrust is equivalent to 8,000 true thrust horsepower. Assuming 66% propeller efficiency for the piston engine, this would be equivalent to 12,000 hp.

Thrust is simply force measured in pounds (or kilograms).

Like the piston engine, the jet engine's power depends upon the weight of air it can consume. As altitude increases, the density of the air (i.e. its weight) decreases. It is for this reason that turbochargers are used to maintain the power of piston engines at altitude. The turbine engine also suffers from loss of power at altitude, but this is compensated for by the lower drag (resistance to forward speed) and the "ram" effect of the

jet's higher speed, which rams more air into the engine to produce a "turbocharging" effect.

The pressure ratio of a gas generator usually means the ratio of pressure at the compressor exit to that at the compressor inlet. Where the expression "engine pressure ratio (EPR)" is used, it means the pumping pressure ratio of the whole gas generator, i.e. ratio of pressure at exit of the compressor drive turbine to the compressor inlet.

Pressure ratios (of the compressor) at maximum rpm are mostly in the range 6:1 to 15 :1. The EPR is usually 1.5:1 or 2 :1.

3.11.3 Turboshaft & Turboprop Engines

In addition to jet propulsion, the gas turbine engine can also be used (in lieu of the reciprocating piston engine) to drive a propeller, in which case it is known as a turboprop engine, or to drive a helicopter rotor, in which case it is known as a turboshaft engine. One of the simplest of several different methods presently in use is the fixed shaft method. In this arrangement, the turbine drives both the compressor and the shaft directly.

In some gas turbine engines two turbines are used, one to drive the compressor and the other to drive the shaft. When these turbines are mechanically free of one another, the engine is called a free turbine engine. The Pratt & Whitney Canada PT6 engine illustrated in Fig.3.48 is an example of a free turbine turboprop engine.

Fig.3.48 **PT6 Free Turbine Turboprop Engine**

Air enters the air intake and is compressed by a three axial stage and single centrifugal stage compressor before it enters the combustion chamber. The hot gases from the combustion chamber drive the compressor turbine. They then drive the separate power turbine, which in turn drives the propeller shaft. The gearbox reduces the propeller speed to a fraction of the speed at which the turbine drives the driveshaft.

3.11.4 The By-Pass Engine

The propeller generates thrust by imparting a relatively small acceleration to a relatively large mass of air. The jet generates thrust by imparting a relatively large acceleration to a relatively small mass of air. For low airspeeds, the propeller is most efficient. For high airspeed, the jet excels because the jet engine produces its greatest propulsive efficiency at high airspeeds. At low airspeeds, its thrust efficiency falls off and its fuel consumption becomes excessive. The by-pass engine was designed to improve the efficiency of the jet engine at low airspeeds. Part of the air from the low-pressure compressor by-passes the high-pressure compressor, the combustion chambers and the turbine. This relatively low speed air is mixed with the high speed hot gases from the combustion chambers in the tail pipe, thus reducing the overall velocity of the jet stream. Pure by-pass engines are no longer in production, but the principle is used in the turbofan engine.

3.11.5 The Turbofan Engine

The turbofan engine (Fig.3.49) is the practical application of the principle of the by-pass engine. It was developed to incorporate the best features of the turbojet, which has excellent cruise speed capability, and the turboprop, which has short field take-off capability.

The turbofan is a turbojet with a fan attached at the forward end ahead of the compressors. The fan diameter is much less than that of the propeller of a turboprop engine but it contains many more blades and moves the air at a greater velocity. The diameter of the fan is, however, greater than that of the engine proper, so that some of the air passing through the blades is accelerated backward on the outside of the engine, providing extra thrust. This extra thrust is available for increased take-off, climb and cruise performance, reduced fuel consumption and hence better payload/range.

Axial flow, multiple compressor turbofan engines are widely used to power large aircraft, providing efficient, quiet and economical operation. They are also used as the powerplant on some of the small general aviation jet aeroplanes.

In recent years, turbofan engines have been improved by changes in the design of turbine and compressor blades and vanes, by use of improved alloys, by improving internal engine cooling systems and by modification of fan blade design. The engines are, as a result, more fuel efficient and develop more thrust for their weight.

The fan of the turbofan engine includes fixed inlet guide vanes and fixed outlet guide vanes. Air from the fan is divided into two airflows by the two stage fan: the primary air is directed to the main engine core, the secondary air provides by-pass thrust. The fan turns at the same rate and is driven by the same turbine section as the low pressure compressor.

Fig.3.49 **Pratt & Whitney 308 Turbofan Engine**

The low pressure compressor usually consists of eight stages, including the two fan stages, and is driven by the last three stages of the turbine. The high pressure compressor consists of seven stages and is driven by the first stage of the turbine. The casings that house the compressors include automatic bleed valves which open to prevent compressor surge and stall. A diffuser changes the direction of the high velocity, high pressure air and directs it to the combustion chamber. Fuel is supplied through a fuel manifold inside the forward end of the main combustion chamber. The air for the turbofan core engine is compressed, ignited and discharged in the

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

same manner as in a turbojet engine. There are three combustion chambers. The hot gases from the individual combustion chambers are directed to the turbine rotor which drives the compressors.

The turbofan engine is equipped with thrust reversers. The effect of the reverser is to reverse the direction of the exhaust and fan discharges and thus cause the engine to deliver reverse thrust.

There are three classifications of turbofan engines: low by-pass, medium by-pass and high by-pass. In the low by-pass engine, the fan and compressor sections are utilizing approximately the same mass airflow and have a by-pass ratio of 1:1. In the medium by-pass turbofan engine, the fan is slightly larger in diameter and provides a by-pass ratio of 2:1 or 3:1. The high by-pass turbofan engine with fan ratios of 4:1 and up has an even larger diameter fan with approximately 80% of the thrust produced by the fan and 20% by the core engine.

Today's advanced jet engine technology is slowly making these engine types more attainable to the average general aviation consumer. New light-weight, low-cost, single power lever fanjets, under development by companies such as Williams International and Pratt & Whitney, are offering vastly improved overall performance over single-engine counterparts but at the same fuel-burn and cost-per-mile figures achieved by these same single-engine piston aircraft. Where jet fuel offers significant cost savings over avgas, the cost-per-mile benefits of such technology cannot be underestimated.

3.11.6 Thrust Reverser

Propeller driven aeroplanes, as we already have learned, are capable of reverse thrust by changing the pitch of the propeller blades in order to reverse the airflow and use the power of the engine to stop the aeroplane on the ground. Turbine aeroplanes are also capable of reverse thrust, using engine power as a deceleration force.

There are several methods of obtaining reverse thrust in jet engines.

1. Clamshell type doors, operated pneumatically, reverse the exhaust gas stream. The ducts through which the exhaust gases are deflected remain closed during normal operation. When the pilot selects reverse thrust, the doors rotate to uncover the ducts and close the normal gas stream exit. Baffles, called cascades, direct the exhaust gas stream forward to achieve reverse thrust. When the reverse is not in use, the clamshell doors retract and nest neatly around the engine nacelle.
2. The bucket target system uses bucket type doors to reverse the hot gas stream. Thrust reverser doors are actuated by a conventional pushrod system, hydraulically powered.
3. The cold stream reverser system is activated by an air motor or by hydraulic rams. When the engine is operating in forward thrust, the cold stream nozzle is covered by blocker doors (flaps) and by the movable cowling. On selection of reverse thrust, the movable cowling moves rearward, the blocker doors fold and blank off the cold stream nozzle, diverting the airflow through the cascade vanes.

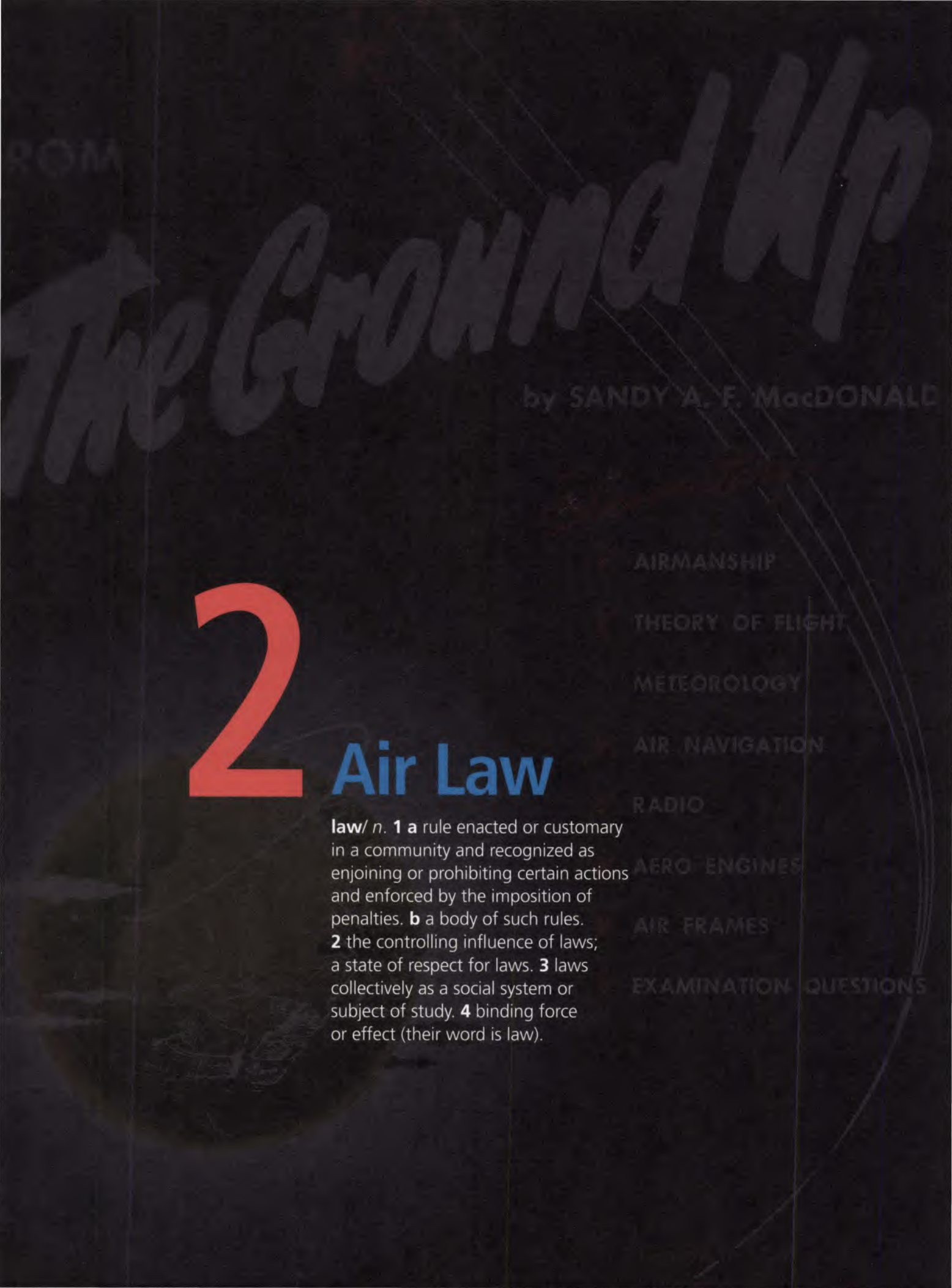
For aerodynamic reasons, the gas cannot be directed in a completely forward direction. A discharge angle of approximately 45 degrees means that the effective power in reverse thrust is proportionately less than the power in forward thrust for the same throttle setting.

The safety features incorporated into these systems ensure that the reverse thrust lever used to select reverse thrust cannot be moved to the reverse thrust position unless the engine is running at a low power setting. Once reverse thrust is selected at low power, the pilot will then open up the engine to high power to use the full power of the engine to decelerate. However, if the reverser is not in the full and correct reverse thrust position, high engine power cannot be selected. Operation of the thrust reverse system is indicated to the crew by a series of lights. Baffles, called cascades, deflect the jet blast forward to achieve the reverse thrust.

A thrust reverser must not affect engine operation either when the reverser is operating or when it is not. It must withstand high temperatures and be mechanically strong but light in weight. When not in use, it should retract into the engine nacelle in a streamlined design. A thrust reverser should be able to produce in reverse at least 50% of the full forward thrust of which the engine is capable.

For N speeds and other terminology applicable to turbine engines, see the Glossary.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com



2 Air Law

law/ *n.* **1 a** rule enacted or customary in a community and recognized as enjoining or prohibiting certain actions and enforced by the imposition of penalties. **b** a body of such rules. **2** the controlling influence of laws; a state of respect for laws. **3** laws collectively as a social system or subject of study. **4** binding force or effect (their word is law).

Overview of Part 2

4 Aerodromes & Airspace

4.1 Aerodromes 97
4.1.1 Runway Numbering 97
4.1.2 Runway Markings 98
4.1.3 Taxiways 98
4.1.4 Airside Guidance Signs 98
4.1.5 Aerodrome Markings 99
4.1.6 Wind Indicators 99
4.1.7 Aerodrome Lighting 99
4.1.8 Aerodrome Traffic Procedures 102
4.2 The Canadian Airspace System 107
4.2.1 Domestic Airspace 107
4.2.2 Altimeter Regions 108
4.2.3 Identification Zones 108
4.2.4 Uncontrolled Airspace 108
4.2.5 Controlled Airspace 108
4.2.6 Classification of Canadian Airspace 110
4.2.7 Flight Information Region (FIR) 114
4.2.8 Mountainous Regions 114
4.3 The U.S. Airspace System 114
4.3.1 U.S. Domestic Airspace 114
4.3.2 U.S. Identification Zones 114
4.3.3 Classification of U.S. Airspace 115

5 Air Rules & Procedures

5.1 Rules of the Air 117
5.1.1 Certificate of Airworthiness (C of A) 117
5.1.2 Aeroplane Logs & Licences 117
5.1.3 Pilot's Licence 117
5.1.4 Flight Experience 119
5.1.5 Rules & Right-of-Way 119
5.1.6 Fuel Requirements 120
5.1.7 Night Requirements 120
5.1.8 Over Water Flights 121
5.1.9 Aerobatics 121
5.1.10 Aircraft Occurrences 121
5.1.11 Explosives & Dangerous Goods 121
5.2 Air Traffic Rules & Procedures 122
5.2.1 Air Traffic Services (ATS) 122
5.2.2 Clearances & Instructions 122
5.2.3 Position Reports 122
5.2.4 Flight Rules 122
5.2.5 Flight Plans & Itineraries 124
5.2.6 Transborder Flights 126
5.2.7 Cruising Altitudes 127
5.2.8 Cruising Speeds 128
5.2.9 Weather Minima for VFR Flight 129
5.2.10 Special VFR (SVFR) 129
5.2.11 VFR Over-the-Top (VFR OTT) 130
5.2.12 Minimum VFR Flight Altitudes 130
5.2.13 VFR Flight in Class B Airspace (CVFR) 130
5.2.14 Holding Pattern 131
5.2.15 Identification Zones 131
5.2.16 Sparsely Settled Areas 132

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

4 Aerodromes & Airspace

Across the continent, there is an intricate system of aeronautical facilities designed to facilitate the efficient movement of air traffic. It won't be long before new pilots with their new licence will be anxious to take off from their home and very familiar airport to visit some of the hundreds of other airports throughout the country. In order not to be intimidated by new, different and bigger airports, an understanding of the basics of airport design is an essential part of a pilot's training. To reach those other airports, pilots will have to cope with the intricacies of controlled and uncontrolled airspace, airways, control zones, cruising altitudes, etc., etc. This chapter is designed to introduce the pilot to aerodromes, to the airspace system and to the regulations and procedures of flight within the airspace system.

4.1 Aerodromes

The many aerodromes across the continent vary widely in the facilities they offer to the itinerant pilot. The large metropolitan airports with several runways, complicated patterns of taxiways and sophisticated lighting systems seem very complex in comparison to the single strip sod runway that constitutes the aerodrome of many small communities throughout the country. There are, however, certain standard features that apply to every aerodrome, no matter how large or how small.

The term, aerodrome, is defined as any area of land or water designed for the arrival, departure, movement and servicing of aircraft and includes buildings, installations and equipment there situated.

The term, airport, is defined as any aerodrome in respect of which a certificate is in force. Some airports are designated "international airports" to support international commercial air transport. An airport certificate testifies that the airport meets airport certification safety standards.

Aerodromes are classified as (1) certified for public use, (2) certified for private use, (3) registered or (4) military. The majority of aerodromes in Canada are listed in the **Canada Flight Supplement** or the Water Aerodrome Supplement. (In the U.S., they are listed in the Airport/Facility Directory.) The classification of the aerodrome is listed with the information on the aerodrome operator in these publications.

An airport that has been issued a Public Use Certificate (Pub) is open to all aircraft. An airport that has a Private Use Certificate (Pvt) is private property and is not open, except in emergency, to itinerant aircraft. The permission of the owner is required prior to use. Aerodromes that are not certified may be registered (Reg) for the purpose of publishing aeronautical information in the **Canada Flight Supplement**. Access to a registered aerodrome may be public or limited to private use. Since the information on the aerodrome is provided by the owner/operator, it is advisable to verify the status and condition of the aerodrome prior to use. A military (Mil) aerodrome may be used by civil aircraft only if prior permission is obtained or in an emergency. In the event of an in-flight emergency, any aerodrome may be used at the discretion of the pilot.

The landing of any aircraft should be reported to the airport operator by the pilot of the aircraft.

Those parts of an airport or aerodrome used for the surface movement of aircraft (movement area) include the maneuvering areas and aprons. The maneuvering area is comprised of those parts of the airport intended for the taking off and landing of aircraft and the movement of aircraft, in other words, the runways and taxiways. The apron is the area intended for the loading and unloading of passengers and cargo, the refuelling, servicing, maintenance and parking of aircraft and the movement of aircraft, vehicles and pedestrians necessary for such purposes.

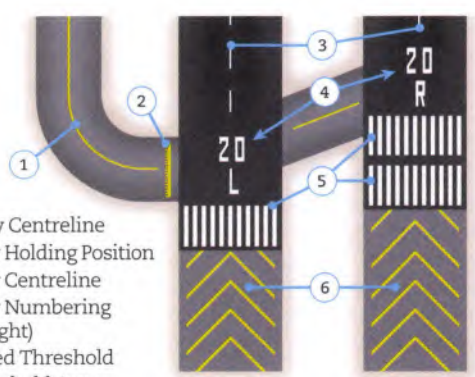
4.1.1 Runway Numbering

Airport runways are numbered for the purpose and convenience of identification. The number a runway is assigned corresponds to its magnetic bearing, rounded off to the nearest 10°. For convenience, the last zero is omitted. Thus Runway 09 would be the runway which runs from west to east (090° magnetic). Since runway numbers are taken to the nearest 10° magnetic, a runway which lies 018° magnetic would be considered as being 020° magnetic and would be numbered 02 at its opposite end.

The runway number is displayed at the approach end of each runway. A single runway would, therefore, have different numbers at each of its two ends. These numbers would be 180° apart, or reciprocals of each other. For example, runway 09 would be numbered 27 at the other end; runway 02 would be 20 at its opposite end.

While airport runways are assigned numbers based on their magnetic bearings, those in the Northern Domestic Airspace are assigned numbers based on true bearings. (The Northern Domestic Airspace, defined in Section **The Canadian Airspace System**, comprises the northern and arctic areas of Canada.) In this northern area, compass indications are unreliable because of the nearness of the north magnetic pole and therefore true bearings are considered more reliable for runway numbering purposes.

At larger aerodromes, there are sometimes two or more runways parallel to each other. The letter R added to the number of a runway indicates that it is the right of a pair of parallel runways. An L indicates the left runway. The letters are always assigned as viewed from the direction of approach. Triple runways are designated L, C or R and would be called, for example, "three six left", "three six centre" and "three six right".



1 Taxiway Centreline
2 Runway Holding Position
3 Runway Centreline
4 Runway Numbering (left & right)
5 Displaced Threshold
6 Pre-threshold Area

Fig.4.1 **Example of Runway Numbering & Runway Markings**

4.1.2 Runway Markings

The perimeters of unpaved runways are required to be delineated with frangible, weatherproof markers that are clearly visible both on the ground and from the air. These markers, that may be either pyramid shaped or cone shaped, are evenly spaced at intervals of not more than 300 feet along the sides of the runway. Additional markers are placed at the four corners of the runway at right angles to the centreline.

At certified aerodromes, these markers are painted in alternate stripes of international orange and white; at other aerodromes, they are solid international orange.

Evergreen trees about 4 or 5 feet high are sometimes used to mark the perimeters of snow covered landing strips.

Paved Runways

In addition to the number that is painted in large white figures at the approach end of the runway, lines are usually painted down the centre of the runway to help the pilot align the aeroplane during landings and take-offs.

Sometimes the entire paved portion of the runway is not usable as the landing area. In this case, the threshold of the usable portion is displaced and its position is marked by a line across the runway with arrowheads pointing to it. Centreline arrows also point to the threshold line. A displaced threshold usually is made necessary because of obstacles at the end of the runway that require additional clearance during the approach. The paved area behind the displaced threshold can be used for taxiing, the landing roll-out and the initial take-off roll. The displaced threshold portion of the runway may be used for landing but it is the responsibility of the pilot to ensure that the descent path safely clears all obstacles. A relocated threshold is made necessary if a section of the runway is closed either temporarily or permanently. The closed portion is marked with closed markings and is not to be used for taxiing, for the initial take-off roll or for the landing roll-out. A turnaround bay may be provided at the threshold end of a runway that is not directly served by a taxiway. It is a widened area which can be used for turnaround but it does not give sufficient clearance from the runway edge for holding while other aeroplanes use the runway.

Sometimes runways are constructed with lengthy overrun and undershoot areas. Such pre-threshold areas are paved but are non-load bearing and are marked for their entire length with yellow chevrons. Stopways at the end of runways in the direction of take-off are prepared as suitable areas in which an aeroplane can be stopped in the case of an abandoned take-off. A stopway is marked over the entire length with yellow chevrons.

Sometimes, special threshold markings are included as part of the runway marking scheme. These consist of 2 sets of four or more bars parallel to the sides of the runway. They serve to indicate that a non-precision approach facility such as a VOR serves the runway and that the runway can be used for landing under instrument conditions as well as VFR.

Runways for which there are precision approach facilities, such as an ILS, have additional landing zone markings at 500 foot intervals down the length of the runway. Touchdown zone stripes, consisting of 2 sets of 3 parallel white stripes are painted at a distance of 500 feet from the threshold of the runway; fixed distance markers, either 2 thick parallel bars or 2 sets of 5 parallel stripes, indicate 1,000 feet; further sets of stripes indicate 1,500, 2,000, 2,500 and 3,000 feet.

Runway marking varies depending on runway length and width. A description of the full range of runway markings is published in the Transport Canada publication Aerodrome Standards and Recommended Practices.

4.1.3 Taxiways

Taxiways are an important part of the aerodrome facilities. They enable aeroplanes to move to and from runways without interfering with traffic taking off and landing.

Yellow lines are usually painted down the centre of taxiways. A broad yellow line across it indicates the end of the taxiway where an aeroplane must "hold short" until ready for take-off. At a controlled airport, the aeroplane must hold at this position until receiving clearance from the tower to enter the runway itself for take-off. If no taxi holding position is established, an aeroplane should hold at sufficient distance from the edge of the active runway so as not to create a hazard to arriving and departing traffic (200 feet is the recommended distance.)

An aeroplane may not cross an active runway at a controlled airport without first obtaining clearance to do so. The broad yellow line indicates the position at which it must hold until clearance is received.

At the large airports where there are quite a number of taxiways, they are assigned letters for identification (e.g. A) and would be referred to as taxiway alfa.

4.1.4 Airside Guidance Signs

Airside guidance signs are intended to provide direction and information to taxiing aircraft and to assist in the safe and expeditious movement of aircraft. Airside guidance signs are illuminated at airports that are used at night.

Operational guidance signs provide direction or facilities information and have black inscriptions on a yellow background. The inscriptions incorporate arrows, numbers, letters or pictographs. A location sign is used to identify a taxiway and never contains arrows. A direction sign is used to identify intersecting runways and will contain arrows to identify the angle of intercept. Direction signs are normally used in conjunction with location signs. A runway exit sign identifies a taxiway exiting a runway. Some airports provide rapid exit taxiways which are angled at 30° to the runway to facilitate the rapid clearance of aeroplanes from the active runway. Destination signs provide directions to certain facilities on the airport. Other signs may include information on VOR and DME checkpoints, parking areas, etc.

Example	Type of Sign
	Mandatory hold position for taxiway/runway intersection
	Taxiway location identifier
	Taxiway intersection identifier
	Runway location identifier
	Runway exit direction identifier
	No entry identifier

Fig.4.2 **Airside Guidance Signs**

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Mandatory instruction signs are used to identity holding positions beyond which pilots must have ATC clearance to proceed. A holding position sign is installed at all taxiway to runway intersections and shows the designation (i.e. number) of the departing runway. At uncontrolled airports, pilots are required to hold at points marked by these signs until they have ascertained that there is no air traffic conflict. Mandatory instruction signs are red with reflective white lettering and symbols.

4.1.5 Aerodrome Markings

Certain ground markings indicate the status of some aerodromes and pilots are required to comply with these markings.

Example	Type of Marketing
	Closed runway and taxiway marking
	Runway holding position markings
	Non-movement area boundary markings
	ILS holding position markings
	Taxiway holding position markings

Fig.4.3 **Aerodrome Markings**

A large cross, either white or yellow and at least 20 feet in length, displayed at each end of a runway or taxiway indicates that the runway or taxiway is unserviceable (Fig.4.3). For night operations any unserviceable portion of a runway is closed off by placing red lights at right angles to the centreline across both ends of the unserviceable area. In addition, the runway lights for the unserviceable area should be turned off.

If an unserviceable portion of any maneuvering area or taxiway is small enough that it can be bypassed by an aeroplane with safety, red flags are used to outline the area of unserviceability. At night, the area is marked by steady red lights. Sometimes, in the interest of safety, one or more flashing red lights may be used as well.

4.1.6 Wind Indicators

The runway in use is determined by the wind direction since aeroplanes, during landing and take-off, operate most efficiently and safely by flying as directly into the wind as possible. All airports are therefore required to display a device that indicates which way the wind is blowing. There are several types of wind indicators, as depicted in Fig.4.4.

The windsock or wind cone, (on the left in Fig.4.4), the old reliable good samaritan to homecoming airmen since World War I, is the traditional symbol of flying fields the world over. The wind always blows in the big end and out the small end. The velocity of the wind is indicated by the amount of extension of the windsock. A standard windsock will fly perfectly horizontal in a wind of 15 knots or more but will hang at about 30 degrees below the horizontal in a wind of only 6 knots. A fluttering windsock indicates gusty conditions. At night, the windsock is illuminated.

The tetrahedron, or wind T, is designed like an arrow whose small end points into the wind.

Fig.4.4 **Wind Direction Indicators**

Aerodromes with runways greater than 4,000 feet in length will have a wind direction indicator located at each end of the runway. Where the runways are less than 4,000 feet in length, a single wind indicator will be centrally located about midway along the runway.

4.1.7 Aerodrome Lighting

For night operations, landing and take-off areas (i.e. runways) are indicated by two parallel lines of white lights that are visible at least 2 miles in all directions. Low intensity white lights are sometimes installed down the centreline of runways. Some registered aerodromes may use retroreflective markers in place of lights to mark the edges of runways. They may also substitute for lights on taxiways or aprons at certified airports. A fixed white light or strobe light must be installed at each end of the runway to assist pilots in locating the aerodrome and aligning the aircraft with the runway. Retroreflective markers must be capable of reflecting aircraft landing lights from a distance of 2 n.m. although pilots should remain aware that the proper operational capability of their aircraft landing lights is crucial to the reflective capability of the markers themselves.

The runway threshold is indicated by green lights. These lights when viewed from the back are red and indicate the end of the runway for traffic landing and taking off when the other end of the runway is active.

The edges of taxiways are marked by blue lights. Sometimes green lights are installed down the centreline of taxiways. Clearance bars, which consist of at least 3 flush mounted, unidirectional yellow lights showing in the direction of approach, are sometimes installed in taxiways to indicate a specific holding position.

At public use aerodromes, runway, taxiway and approach lights (see below) are normally operated on an "as required" basis and are turned on about 5 minutes before the ETA of the approaching aeroplane. At private use aerodromes, lights may be available only during limited hours or by prior request. In some cases, the aerodrome lights can be activated by radio control from the aircraft. Aircraft radio control of aerodrome lighting (ARCAL) is effected via the VHF transmitter in the aircraft by keying the microphone a given number of times

within a specified number of seconds. Each activation will illuminate the lights for a given period (usually 15 minutes). Pilots are advised to key the activating sequence even if the lights are on, in order to have the full 15 minutes available for their approach. Specific information about the ARCAL installation at a particular aerodrome is listed in the **Canada Flight Supplement**.

Fig.4.5 **Example of Aerodrome Lighting**

An airport beacon helps a pilot to locate an airport amidst all the other confusing ground lights of a community. The beacon is a white light, visible for about 10 n.m. on a clear night, that rotates at a constant speed producing highly visible light flashes at regular intervals of about 2 or 3 seconds. The airport beacon usually operates continuously during nighttime hours. However, if the airport is located near the centre of an urban area where other rotating types of lights would detract from the effectiveness of the beacon on the airport or if the airport is easily recognizable because of other visual aids, the operation of the beacon may be waived. The airport beacon is not operated during the day. Some rotating beacons have been replaced with strobe type beacons which flash about 30 times per minute.

Obstruction lights are used to mark tall buildings and towers that might be flight hazards. These may be red lights that are either steady or flashing or they may be flashing white strobe lights.

Approach Lights

Many airports have an installation of approach lights that extends from the centreline of the runway back along the approach path. They help pilots align the aeroplane with the runway while also helping pilots establish the correct slope gradient on their descent to the runway. There are various types of approach light systems. Most are medium or high intensity lights. Some are characterized by steady lights; some flash in sequence towards the threshold.

NON-PRECISION APPROACH RUNWAYS

Low Intensity Approach Lighting Systems (LIAL) are provided on non-precision approach runways (i.e., runways for which only horizontal, and not vertical, guidance is provided on instrument approaches). LIAL systems consist of yellow fixed-intensity twin light units spaced at 60-metre intervals commencing 60 metres from the threshold from which they extend back along the approach path for a total distance of 900 metres.

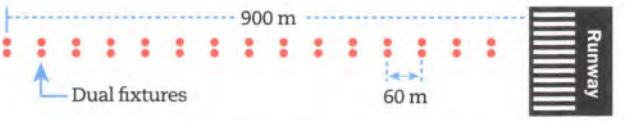


Fig.4.6 **Low Intensity Approach Lighting System (LIAL)**

Omnidirectional Approach Lighting Systems (ODALS) consist of seven omnidirectional (i.e., transmitting in all directions) variable-intensity, sequenced flashing lights. ODALS provide circling, offset and straight-in visual guidance for non-precision approach runways. There are five lights on the extended centreline commencing 90 metres from the threshold and spaced 90 metres apart over a total distance of 450 metres. Two lights are positioned 12 metres to the left and right of the threshold. The system flashes towards the threshold, then the two threshold lights flash in unison. The cycle repeats every second.

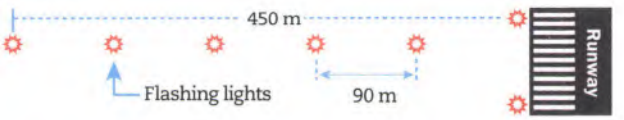


Fig.4.7 **Omnidirectional Approach Lighting System (ODALS)**

Medium Intensity Approach Lighting Systems (MALS) or Medium Intensity Approach Lighting Systems with Sequenced Flashing Lights (MALSF) consist of seven barrettes (i.e., ground lights closely spaced in a transverse line so that from a distance they appear as a short bar of light) of variable-intensity lights spaced 60 metres apart, commencing 60 metres from the threshold, over a distance of 420 metres. In a MALSF, the three barrettes farthest away from the threshold contain a sequenced flashing light unit. These lights flash sequentially towards the threshold, repeating at two cycles per second.

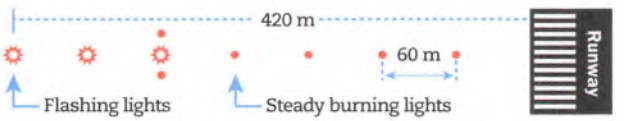


Fig.4.8 **Medium Intensity Approach Lighting System with Sequenced Flashing Lights (MALSF)**

Medium Intensity Approach Lighting Systems with Runway Alignment Indicator Lights (MALSR) consist of the following: seven barrettes of light over a distance of 420 metres, one side barrette of light on each side of the centreline barrette at 300 metres from the runway threshold, and five sequenced flashing lights (flashing in sequence towards the threshold at a rate of two cycles per second) over the remaining distance of 300 metres. The system's variable-intensity approach lights are spaced 60 metres apart, commencing at 60 metres from the threshold from which they extend back along the approach path for a total distance of 720 metres.

Fig.4.9 **Medium Intensity Approach Lighting System with Runway Alignment Indicator Lights (MALSR)**

Simplified Short Approach Lighting Systems (SSALS) are the same as MALS. However, they use high intensity lights instead of sequenced flashing lights.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

PRECISION APPROACH RUNWAYS

Simplified Short Approach Lighting Systems with Runway Alignment Indicator Lights (SSALR) are provided on precision approach runways (i.e., runways at which pilots receive vertical and lateral guidance on instrument approaches). SSALR are the same as the MALSR. However, they use high intensity lights instead of sequenced flashing lights.

Approach Lighting Systems with Sequenced Flashers — CAT II (ALSF-2) consist of rows of five white variable-intensity light units placed at longitudinal intervals of 30 metres commencing 30 metres from the threshold and extending for a total distance of 720 metres along the approach path. In view of the very low decision height associated with CAT II operations (see **Instrument Landing System (ILS)** in Chapter 9), green runway threshold lights are provided, as well as 150-metre distance bars (white with red barrettes) and red side barrettes.

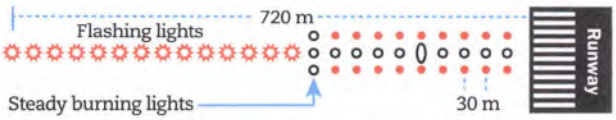


Fig.4.10 **Approach Lighting System with Sequenced Flashers – CAT II (ALSF-2)**

VISUAL APPROACH SLOPE INDICATOR SYSTEMS (VASIS)

The Visual Approach Slope Indicator System (VASIS) is a lighting system designed to help pilots maintain a correct glide path on the approach to a runway. There are four types of VASIS: the visual approach slope indicator (VASI), the abbreviated VASI (AVASI), the precision approach path indicator (PAPI) and the abbreviated PAPI (APAPI). VASIS is, therefore, the generic term referring to these different approach slope indicators.

A VASIS consists of a series of lights visible from approximately 4 n.m. and is designed to provide visual indications of the desired approach slope (usually of 3 degrees) to a runway. Aircraft following the on-slope signal will have safe obstruction clearance to a minimum of 6 degrees on either side of the extended runway centreline, out to 4.1 n.m. (7.5 km) from the runway threshold. Descent using VASIS should not be initiated until the aircraft is visually aligned with the runway centreline.

The vertical distance from a pilot's eyes to the lowest portion of the aircraft in the landing configuration is referred to as the eye-to-wheel height (EWH). This distance varies from less than 10 ft up to 45 ft depending on the type of aircraft being piloted. Consequently, approach slope indicator systems are related to this EWH, and they provide safe wheel clearance over the threshold when the pilot is descending to the runway on the on-slope indication.

The VASIS known as a VASI consists of four light units situated on the left side of the runway in the form of a pair of wing bars (two light units per wing bar), referred to as the upwind and downwind wing bars. Each light unit of a wing bar projects a beam of light. The upper part of the beam shows white light while the lower part shows red light. The light units are so arranged that when an aeroplane is approaching the runway on the proper approach slope, the upwind bar shows red and the downwind bar shows white. If the aeroplane is above the approach slope, both upwind and downwind bars show white. If the aeroplane is below the approach slope, both upwind and downwind bars show red. If the aeroplane is well below the approach slope, the lights of the two wing bars merge into one red signal.

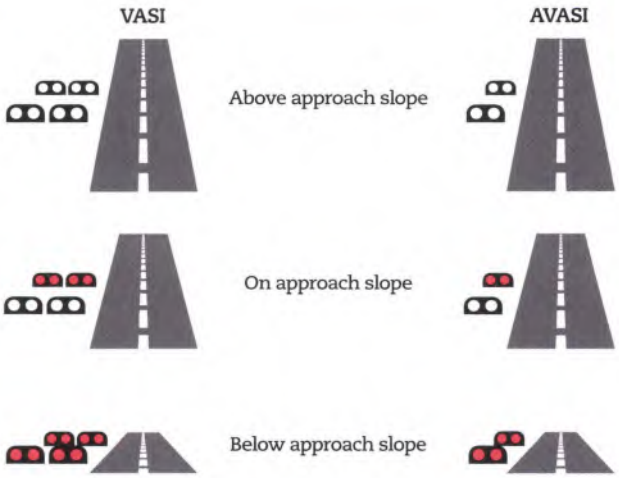


Fig.4.11 **VASI & AVASI Approach Lights**

The AVASI consists of two light units situated on the left side of the runway in the form of a pair of wing bars (one light unit per wing bar). The display is similar to a VASI and is dependent on the position of the pilot's eyes.

The VASIS known as a PAPI consists of four light units typically situated on the left side of the runway in the form of a wing bar. If the aeroplane is flying the proper approach slope, the two units nearest the runway show red and the two units farthest from the runway show white. If the aeroplane is above the approach slope, three or all four units will show white (depending on the degree of displacement from the approach slope). If the aeroplane is below the approach slope, three or all four units will show red with four reds indicating that the aeroplane is well below the approach slope.

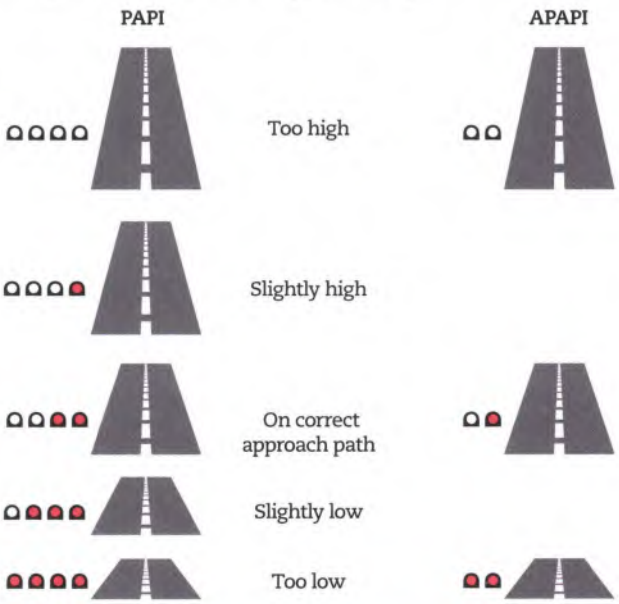


Fig.4.12 **PAPI & APAPI Approach Lights**

The APAPI consists of two light units situated on the left side of the runway in the form of a wing bar. When the aeroplane is above the approach slope, both units show white. When the aeroplane is on (or close to) the approach slope, the unit nearer to the runway edge shows red and the unit farther from the runway edge shows white. When the aeroplane is below the approach slope, all units are red.

To accommodate the greater EWH of large jet aeroplanes and to ensure safe wheel clearance over the runway threshold, the position of the PAPI light bar in relation to the threshold can be varied.

It should be noted that, in certain atmospheric conditions, VASIS white lights sometimes appear yellowish, orange or brown. The red lights, however, are not affected; therefore, the VASIS principles of colour differentiation for slope recognition are still applicable.

4.1.8 Aerodrome Traffic Procedures

A pattern for traffic movement has been established for use at all aerodromes. It is called a traffic circuit (in the U.S., it is called a traffic pattern) and it expedites and separates aeroplanes using the same aerodrome.

It is the responsibility of every pilot, for safety and efficiency, to learn and follow the proper traffic procedures when coming in to land at an aerodrome.

The following definitions apply to portions of the traffic circuit:

The upwind side is the area on the opposite side of the landing runway from the downwind leg. Approach should be made into this area at or above circuit height.

The circuit joining crosswind is a corridor, lying within the airspace between the centre of the landing runway and its upwind end, linking the upwind side and the downwind leg.

The downwind leg is a flight path, opposite to the direction of landing, which is parallel to and at a sufficient distance from the landing runway to permit a standard rate-one turn to the base leg.

The base leg is a flight path at right angles to the direction of landing and sufficiently downwind of the approach end of the landing runway to permit at least a 1/4 mile final approach leg after completion of a standard rate-one turn to final approach.

The final approach leg is a flight path in the direction of landing, commencing at least 1/4 mile from the runway threshold, wherein an aeroplane is in line with the landing runway and descending towards the runway threshold.

The Traffic Circuit at Uncontrolled Airports

An uncontrolled airport is one at which no tower is in operation. (In the United States, it is called a non-tower airport.) Some airports have towers which operate only during specified hours and these airports are considered to be uncontrolled during those times when the tower is shut down.

Where no mandatory frequency procedures are in effect (see **Mandatory Frequency** within this chapter), you should approach the traffic circuit (Fig.4.13) from the upwind side of the runway and enter crosswind at circuit height. Taking due account of other traffic, join the circuit on the downwind leg. You may join the circuit directly on the downwind leg provided you have ascertained without doubt that there is no conflict with other traffic. Where mandatory frequency procedures are in effect and traffic advisories available, you may approach straight in or at 45° to the downwind leg and join the circuit at circuit altitude or you may approach straight in to the base or final approach legs. However, you must be alert for other VFR traffic entering the circuit at these positions and for IFR traffic doing straight in or circling approaches. (In the United States, there is only one recommended entry to the traffic pattern at a non-tower airport, a 45° entry to the downwind leg at the midpoint of the runway at pattern altitude.)

When in the vicinity of an uncontrolled airport, it is imperative that you be especially alert for other traffic and exchange information by communicating on the MF or ATF (see below). All radio equipped aircraft should monitor the designated frequency and follow reporting procedures.

When approaching a strange airport, you should enter the airport zone throttled back to slow speed and letting down in a gradual descent. Never dive into the area from a height or out of clouds.

Circuit height should be reached before entering the traffic circuit.

In joining the circuit, always take care to avoid cutting off other aeroplanes and overtaking the aeroplane ahead of you when approaching to land.

If it is necessary to cross the airport prior to joining the circuit (to study an unfamiliar airport, to determine the runway in use, or for any other reason), the cross-over should be done at least 500 feet above circuit height and descent to circuit altitude should be made on the upwind side or well clear of the traffic circuit.

Circuit altitude is established as 1,000 feet above the elevation of the aerodrome unless otherwise specified because of particular circumstances at a certain location. Except when the cloud and ceiling situation prevents it, all aircraft in the traffic circuit must maintain the 1,000 foot circuit altitude on the crosswind and downwind legs.

Landing should be made on or parallel to the runway most nearly aligned into wind. However, you as pilot have the final authority and responsibility for the safe operation of your aeroplane and you may select another runway in the interest of safety if you choose.

After landing, clear the runway as quickly as possible by turning off at the nearest taxiway. If it is necessary to taxi back along the runway in use, turn left 90° and watch for aeroplanes landing before proceeding to taxi. All turns made to clear the runway should be made to the left. It is standard practice for a pilot landing behind an aeroplane that has just touched down to pass to the right as he/she overtakes the other aeroplane.

Left-hand circuits are normally in use at most airports in North America. At a few, right-hand circuits have been designated and in that case, the reverse of the traffic flow pictured in Fig.4.13. would apply. If you are flying circuits, you should, after each take-off, reach circuit altitude before joining the downwind leg.

If you are taking off from an uncontrolled airport, always check the final approach for traffic coming in to land before moving out onto the runway. It is also wise to check the final approach paths to other intersecting runways in case an aeroplane is landing from another direction.

In taking-off and departing the circuit, you should climb straight ahead on the runway heading until clear of the traffic circuit. Any turn while operating in the traffic circuit should be made to the left (except of course when a right-hand circuit is in effect). However, you may make a right-hand turn to depart from the vicinity of the aerodrome when the aircraft is well beyond the circuit area.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

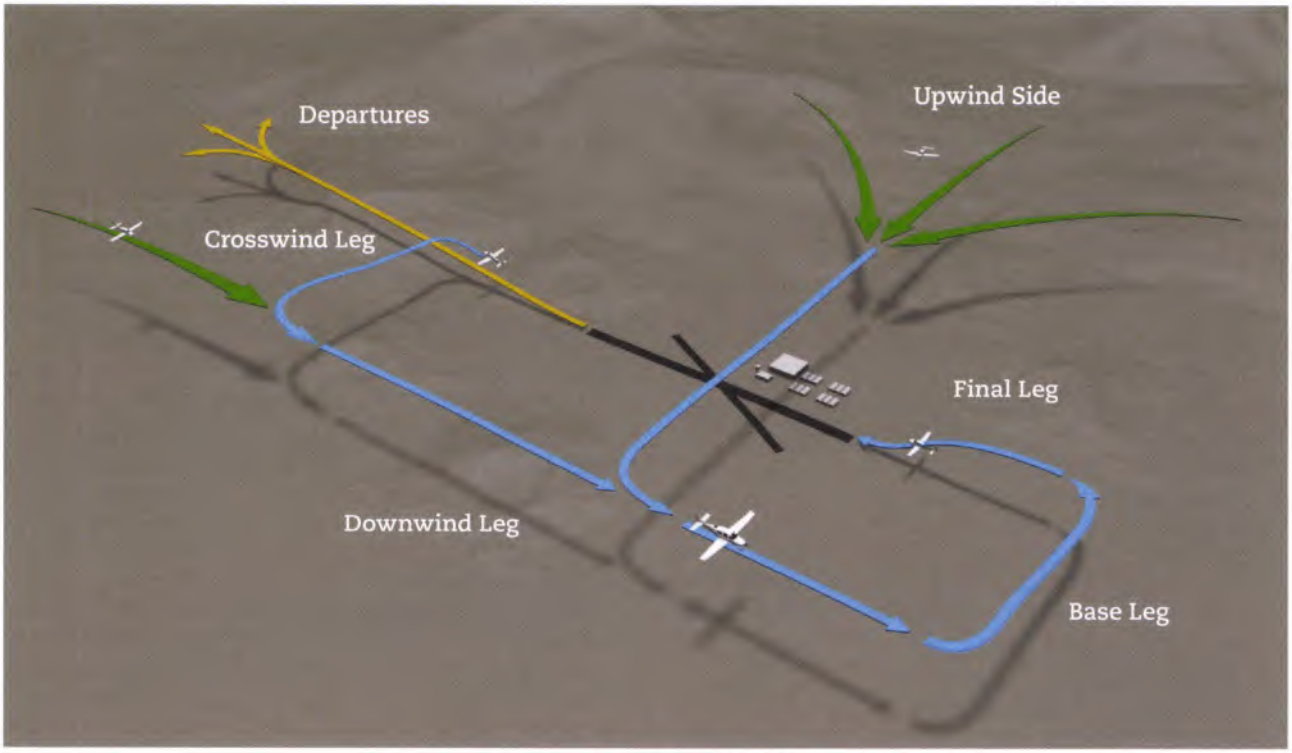


Fig.4.13 **The Traffic Circuit at Uncontrolled Airports**

Standard left-hand circuit. If a right-hand circuit is designated, the opposite of this diagram is applicable. Circuits are normally flown at 1,000 feet above aerodrome elevation (AAE).

MANDATORY FREQUENCY (MF)

At certain selected uncontrolled airports, mandatory frequencies have been designated. Ordinarily these are airports at which there is an instrument approach and at which there is a flight service station (FSS) or a community aerodrome radio station (CARS), both of which provide airport and vehicle advisory service. An MF may also be designated at an airport with an RCO (remote communication outlet) if it provides remote airport and remote vehicle advisory service or at any other airport where an MF is considered necessary because of special traffic conditions. An MF may also be designated at a controlled airport for use during the period of the day when the control tower is not in operation. Flight service stations, community aerodrome radio stations and remote communication outlets are discussed in the Chapter **Radio**.

Mandatory frequencies have been established in the interest of safety, on the premise that a full exchange of information concerning the movement of traffic will prevent unsafe conditions from developing. Aircraft operating within the specified area of an MF are required to be radio equipped. Pilots must report their positions and indicate their intentions and must monitor the mandatory frequency while operating within the specified area surrounding the airport at which the MF is designated.

If you are intending to land at or take off from one of these airports, you shall establish communication with the ground station on the published MF frequency. En route VFR traffic operating within the specified area shall also use the MF to advise of their position and intentions and to obtain traffic information.

In most cases, the specified area associated with the MF is 5 nautical miles in radius from the airport on which it is centred and extends up to 3,000 feet AAE.

The mandatory frequency, call sign, and distance are listed with other communication information about the airport in the **Canada Flight Supplement**. For example, the listing might read: MF — radio 118.7 04-12Z 5NM 3050 ASL. In this instance, the mandatory frequency is 118.7 MHz and is monitored by a flight service station. The call sign is the name of the FSS/airport and the word RADIO (i.e. Dawson Radio). The MF is in force from 0400 to 1200 UTC. (This example refers to an airport at which the MF is in effect during the hours when the control tower is closed. If the MF is in force 24 hours a day, no hours of operation are mentioned in the **Canada Flight Supplement** listing.) The specified area within which communication with the station must be established lies in a 5 nautical mile radius from the airport and extends up to 3,050 feet ASL which is 3,000 feet above the elevation of the airport.

You should make your first transmission on the MF at least 5 minutes before entering the specified area and you should report your position, altitude, arrival procedure intentions and estimated time of landing. You must maintain a listening watch on the mandatory frequency while in the specified area. Upon joining the traffic circuit, you should report your position in the pattern. You should report again when you are established on the final approach. A final report should be transmitted when you are clear of the runway after landing.

If the ground station fails to respond to your initial transmission, all further reports that you would normally make shall be broadcast. To broadcast means to make a radio transmission that is not directed to any particular receiving station. In this

case, the transmission is broadcast for the purpose of advising any other traffic in the specified area of your intentions.

If you are intending to take off from an airport for which an MF has been designated, you should request airport advisory service on the MF prior to taxiing in order to have a good idea of what traffic is operating in the area of the airport. You should report your intentions and maintain a listening watch on the MF frequency. When you are ready to take off, you should report your departure procedure intentions and ascertain both by radio and by visual observation that there is no traffic before moving onto the runway. You should report when you are clear of the circuit and monitor the MF until you are well clear of the specified area.

En route VFR traffic intending to fly through the specified area must report position, altitude and intentions prior to entering the area, maintain a listening watch on the MF while in the area and report clear of the specified area when leaving it. If at all possible, it is advisable to avoid passing through the specified area of an MF in order to minimize conflict with local traffic and to reduce radio congestion on the MF. Monitoring the MF frequency while in proximity to the area is nevertheless a wise practice.

Where an MF is operated by an RCO, it is important to remember that the RCO is operated remotely by an FSS at another location. The operator is some distance away and cannot see what is going on at the airport. He/she is able to pass on only information that he/she has been given on the radio.

Only aircraft equipped with two-way radio capable of communication with a ground station are permitted to operate on the maneuvering area of an airport for which a mandatory frequency has been designated or under VFR within the specified area. However, special provision has been made to permit NORDO aircraft (i.e. aircraft without radios) to operate if prior notice of the intentions of the pilot has been given to the FSS or CARS. NORDO aircraft must, of course, be especially observant while operating within the specified area and must enter the traffic circuit in a position which will require the aircraft to complete at least the downwind leg and the base leg of the circuit before turning onto the final approach path. Information on the presence of NORDO aircraft operating either in the air or on the ground is provided to other traffic operating within the MF area. Advice on the arrival of a NORDO aircraft is included in the traffic advisory for 5 minutes before and for 10 minutes after its ETA; on the departure, just prior to take-off and for 10 minutes after departure.

(The FAA in the U.S. has established common traffic advisory frequencies, CTAF, to be used when operating in the vicinity of non-tower airports.)

AERODROME TRAFFIC FREQUENCY (ATF)

At uncontrolled airports that are considered to be relatively active, aerodrome traffic frequencies are designated instead of mandatory frequencies. The designated ATF will normally be the ground station where one exists. Usually this would be the UNICOM frequency 122.8 MHz. Where no ground station exists, the designated ATF would be 123.2 MHz used in the broadcast mode. Vehicle operators, who are trained and authorized to do so, can communicate with pilots on the ATF and provide information about vehicles and aircraft on the maneuvering area and about runway conditions.

The specified area associated with an ATF is normally 5 nautical miles in radius from the airport on which it is centred and extends up to 3,000 feet AAE.

The ATF, call sign, hours of operation if applicable and distance are listed with other communication information about the airport in the **Canada Flight Supplement.** For example, the listing might read: ATF — unicom ltd hrs O/T tfc 122.8 5NM 4300 ASL. In this instance, the ATF is monitored by the ground based UNICOM station during limited hours and during this time, you should use the call sign UNICOM (i.e. Otter Lake UNICOM). At other times, you should use the call sign "traffic" (i.e. Otter Lake Traffic) to relay your intentions in the broadcast mode. The specified area lies in a 5 nautical mile radius from the airport and is capped at 4,300 feet ASL which is 3,000 feet above the airport elevation.

If you are intending to land at, or take off from, an airport for which an ATF has been designated, you would follow the same procedures as those outlined for an airport at which an MF has been designated. In other words, if you are intending to land at the airport, you would make your first transmission before entering the specified area advising of your position, altitude, intentions and expected time of landing, and would make further reports as required. If you are intending to take off from the airport, you would follow the same procedures in making reports of your intentions as you would do if operating where an MF is in operation.

NORDO aircraft may operate without restriction at an airport where there is an ATF. However, if you are the pilot of a NORDO aircraft, you must be especially observant since neither the other aircraft nor the airport service vehicles can be alerted to your presence. You should fly a full circuit so that runway availability and traffic can be visually ascertained.

If you are intending to land at an uncontrolled airport for which neither an MF or an ATF has been designated, in the interest of safety, you should transmit your intentions in the broadcast mode on the frequency of the ground station, if one exists, or on the general frequency 123.2 MHz, if there is no ground station. You should switch from 126.7 MHz (the frequency you should be monitoring during flight in uncontrolled airspace) to 123.2 MHz (or the frequency of the ground station) when you are about 5 minutes away from the airport and broadcast a position report and your landing intentions. You should monitor the frequency throughout the period you are in the vicinity of the airport and report again when you are established in the traffic pattern (as you would do if there was an MF or ATF designated for that airport).

The Traffic Circuit at Controlled Airports

The traffic circuit at a controlled airport is not dissimilar from that at an uncontrolled airport. It consists also of a crosswind leg, a downwind leg, a base leg and a final approach leg (Fig.4.14). The principal difference is that you must establish communication with the control tower.

You must establish and maintain radio communications with the control tower prior to operating within the control zone served by an operational control tower. You must, therefore, call the control tower on the appropriate frequency prior to entering the control zone, give your identification and position and request landing instructions. It is advisable to make this initial call about 5 minutes prior to entering the zone. If the control zone is Class B or Class C airspace, the appropriate clearance must be received from the controlling agency prior to entry into the classified airspace. (See **Classification of Canadian Airspace.**)

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

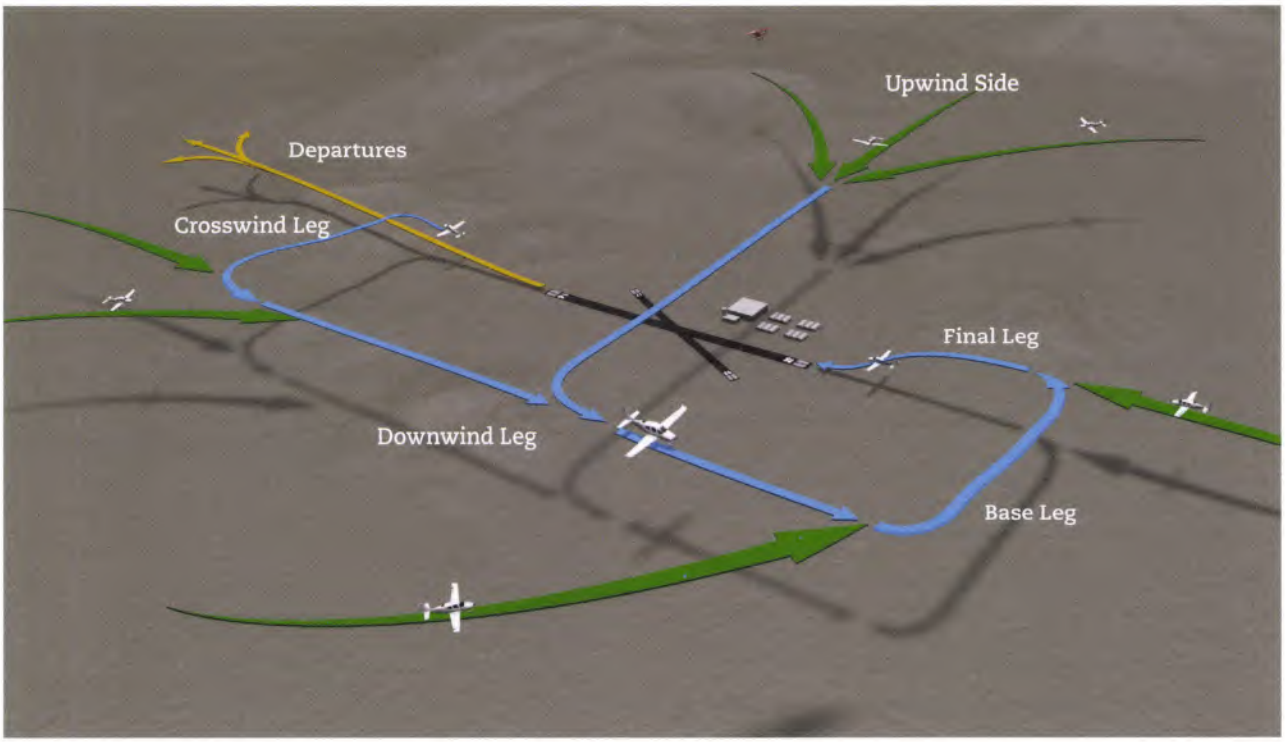


Fig.4.14 **The Traffic Circuit at Controlled Airports**

Standard left-hand circuit. If a right-hand circuit is designated, the opposite of this diagram is applicable. Circuits are normally flown at 1,000 feet AAE

The tower controller will advise the runway in use, wind direction and speed, altimeter setting and any other pertinent information and then will clear you to enter the circuit. "Cleared to the Circuit" authorizes you to join the circuit on the downwind leg at circuit height. If, because of your position in relation to the runway in use, it is necessary to proceed crosswind prior to joining the circuit on the downwind leg, do so as indicated in Fig.4.14, approaching the active runway from the upwind side at a point midway between each end of the runway staying clear of the approach and departure paths of the active runway. When joining the circuit, you must conform as closely as possible to the altitude, speed and size of the circuit being flown by other traffic.

The airport controller may clear you to a straight in approach and, in this instance, you may join the traffic circuit on the final approach leg without having executed any other portion of the circuit. Once established in the traffic circuit, you should advise the tower of your position (e.g. "**Foxtrot Romeo Lima Tango is downwind**"). The tower will then give you your landing instructions.

For Example:

Tower: Piper Foxtrot Romeo Lima Tango
you are number one.

or,

Tower: Piper Foxtrot Romeo Lima Tango
you are number two. Follow
Cessna 185 now on base leg.

You must have landing clearance prior to landing. Normally, the controller will clear you to land as you turn onto final. If this does not happen, it is your responsibility as pilot to request landing clearance in sufficient time to accommodate the operating characteristics of your aeroplane. If you do not receive landing clearance, you must pull up and make another circuit. Even after landing clearance is given, the tower may advise you to pull up and go around again if the situation on the runway becomes unsafe for landing.

If, after landing clearance is accepted, the situation is such that you, as pilot, feel that there is a hazard to the safe operation of your flight, you should advise ATC of your intentions and go around again. If, for example, the crosswind component is too much for the capabilities of your aeroplane, you may request another runway that is more into wind if one exists. Always advise ATC of your intentions.

After landing you should clear the runway without delay by continuing forward to the nearest available taxi strip or turn-off point. Continue to taxi until you have crossed the taxi position hold line, or until you are at least 200 feet from the runway. You must not exit a runway onto another runway unless authorized by ATC to do so. If you have landed beyond the last turn-off point, proceed to the end of the runway, turn off and wait for permission to taxi back to an intersection. Do not turn and taxi back against the direction of landing traffic unless instructed to do so by the tower. When clear of the active runway, the tower will advise you to switch to ground control who will give you instructions and authorization to taxi to the parking areas.

At some of the larger controlled airports, more facilities than just the tower are available. Runway and weather information is broadcast on the automatic terminal information service (ATIS) (see Chapter **Radio**). Always listen to the ATIS before contacting the tower and then advise the tower that you have the ATIS information. Extended areas of Class C airspace surround some control zones and it is necessary to contact the area controller before contacting the tower (see **The Canadian Airspace System**, following). Always check the **Canada Flight Supplement** and/or a VTA chart if applicable for

special procedures that are in force at any airport at which you intend to land.

If you are intending to take off from a controlled airport, you must contact ground control for taxi instructions before starting off towards the active runway. At some of the larger airports, you must contact clearance delivery even before contacting ground control to advise of your intentions. Ground control will give you instructions on how to proceed to the active runway and will then advise you to switch to the tower frequency for take-off instructions. When cleared for take-off, you shall acknowledge and take off without delay. Once airborne, remain tuned to the tower frequency during the time you are operating within the control zone and preferably until you are at least 10 miles outside it. You do not require permission to change from the tower frequency once you are clear of the control zone and should not request release or report clear when there is considerable frequency congestion. See also **Radio Communication Facilities** in Chapter **Radio** and **Take-Off/Landing Procedures** in Chapter **Airmanship**.

SEQUENTIAL & SIMULTANEOUS OPERATIONS

ATC procedures allow for sequential and/or simultaneous operations on intersecting runways at some controlled airports in the interest of increasing and expediting airport traffic.

During sequential operations, controllers may not allow an arriving aeroplane to cross the arrival threshold or a departing aeroplane to commence its take-off roll until (1) the preceding aeroplane has passed the intersection, or (2) in the case of an arriving aeroplane, it has completed its landing roll and has turned off the runway, or (3) in the case of a departing aeroplane, it is airborne.

Simultaneous intersecting runway operations (SIRO) are permitted on intersecting runways only if the two aeroplanes involved are both arriving or one is arriving and the other is departing. Certain conditions are required, the main one being that there is sufficient runway length before the intersection for the arriving aeroplane to come to a stop and hold short of the intersection.

A land and hold short operation (LAHSO) clearance should be accepted by pilots only if they are confident that they can bring the aircraft to a full stop before the intersection or can exit the runway at the convenient taxiway before reaching the hold short point. A LAHSO clearance once accepted must be adhered to. Controllers require a full read back of a LAHSO clearance.

In addition, SIRO/LAHSO may be carried out only if (1) the weather minima of a 1,000 foot ceiling and 3 n.m. visibility are met, (2) the braking action is good and the runways are bare, (3) there is a tailwind of not more than 5 kts or a crosswind on a wet runway of not more than 15 kts, and (4) the pilot of the landing aircraft can accept a clearance to "hold short" of the intersecting runway. SIRO is not authorized if thunderstorms, turbulence, wind shear or other conditions exist that may adversely affect the aircraft's ability to "hold short"

NORDO (WITHOUT RADIO) AT A CONTROLLED AIRPORT

Aircraft without radio (NORDO) are not permitted to operate at most large controlled airports served by the scheduled air carriers. Where they are permitted to operate (less busy controlled airports), they are directed by visual signals. You, as pilot, must be alert for the light signals from the tower letting you know what to do.

Before initiating a NORDO flight, you should contact the control tower to inform the controllers of your intentions and to secure a clearance for operation within the airspace. The tower will then be expecting you and will be prepared to give you light signals. To operate in Class C airspace, you **must** secure such a prior clearance.

For NORDO departures, you should taxi with caution to the runway in use but must stay at least 200 feet from the edge of the runway until clearance is received to take off. If stopped at any time by a red light, you must wait for further clearance before proceeding. When ready for take-off, turn the aircraft towards the tower to attract the attention of the controller. Acknowledge signals by full movement of rudder or ailerons or by taxiing the aircraft to the authorized position.

The following are authorized light signals to aircraft on the ground:

Light Signal	Light Meaning
Flashing Green Light	Cleared to taxi.
Steady Green Light	Cleared for take-off.
Flashing Red Light	Taxi clear of runway in use.
Steady Red Light	Stop.
Flashing White Light	Return to starting point on airport.
Blinking Runway Lights	Vehicles and pedestrians are to vacate the runway immediately.

Fig.4.15 **Light Signals to Aircraft on the Ground**

For NORDO arrivals, to join the traffic circuit, you must do so from the upwind side of the runway, join crosswind at circuit height as in Fig.4.14 and turn onto the downwind leg. You must conform to the size and speed of the circuit and maintain adequate separation from aeroplanes ahead of you.

If it is necessary to cross the airport, before joining the circuit, for the purpose of determining the runway in use or to obtain other landing information, you must do this at least 500 feet above circuit height. Descent to circuit height then should be made in the upwind area of the active runway, prior to joining the crosswind leg of the circuit.

Before turning on final, you must check for any aeroplanes on a straight in approach.

The tower will give you landing clearance on final approach by means of a light signal. If landing clearance is not given, you must pull up and go around again.

The following are authorized light signals to aircraft in the air:

Light Signal	Light Meaning
Steady Green Light	Clear to land.
Steady Red Light or Red Flare	Do not land. Continue in circuit. Avoid making sharp turns, climbing or diving after you receive this signal.
Flashing Green Light	Recall signal. Return for landing (usually to recall an aeroplane which has taken off or has been previously waved off with a red light). This will be followed by a steady green light when the approach path and landing area is clear.
Alternating Red and Green Light (U.S.)	Danger. Be on alert. This signal may be used to warn you of such hazards as danger of collision, obstructions, soft field, ice on runways, mechanical failure of your undercarriage, etc. The danger signal is not a prohibitive signal and will be followed by a red or green light as circumstances warrant.
Flashing Red Light	Airport unsafe. Do not land.
Red Pyrotechnical Light	The firing of a red pyrotechnical light, whether by day or night and notwithstanding any previous instruction, means "Do not land for the time being".

Fig.4.16 **Light Signals to Aircraft in the Air**

By day, acknowledge all light signals from the tower by rocking the wings of the aeroplane; at night, by a single flash of the landing light. When cleared to land by a green light signal, come in on a straight glide or power approach for a distance of

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

not less than 3,000 feet. Do not S-turn. Continue to watch the tower on final approach for further signals.

No taxi clearance is required after landing, except to cross any runway or to taxi back to a turn-off point.

If your aeroplane is equipped with receiver only (RONLY), it is your responsibility to advise the airport controller of this fact, preferably by filing a flight plan. Otherwise, he/she will instruct you by means of visual signals.

The arrival and departure procedures for RONLY aircraft are the same as those for NORDO aircraft, except that the controller may request acknowledgement of his/her transmissions in a specific manner (i.e. rocking the wings of the aeroplane in flight).

GROUND CONTROL SIGNALS TO AIRCRAFT

Visual hand signals are used by ground personnel to inform pilots how to maneuver their aircraft. These signals, referred to as marshaling of aircraft, are shown in Fig.4.17. Marshalling of aircraft may be employed as an alternative to, or in addition to, radio communications between the aircraft and air traffic control.

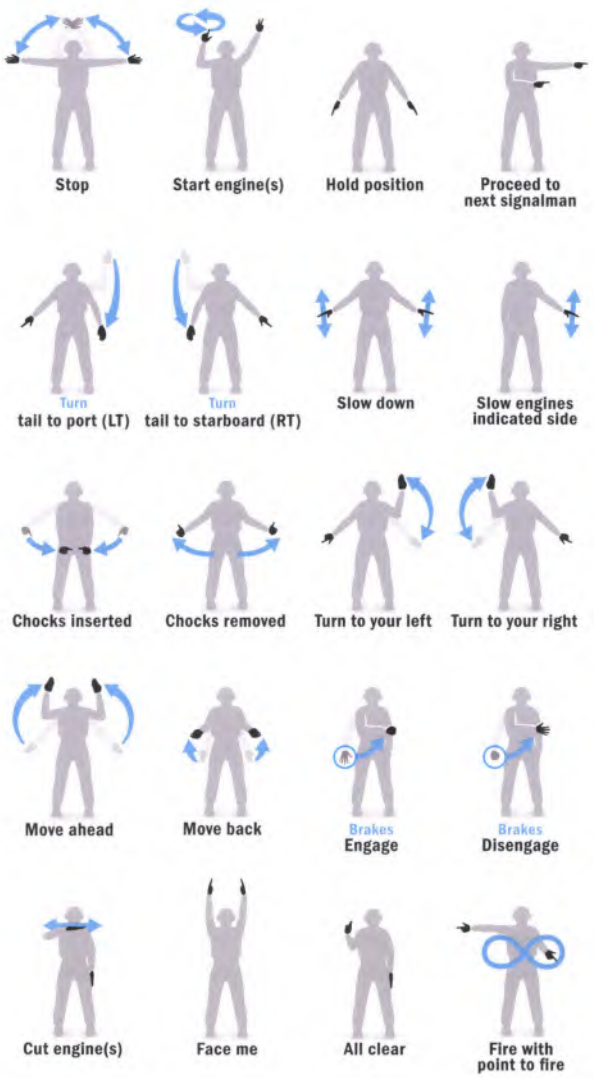


Fig.4.17 Ground Control Signals to Aircraft

4.2 The Canadian Airspace System

For the purposes of air traffic control, separation and control of aeroplanes flying by reference to instruments and by visual reference, national defence, search and rescue, etc., the Canadian airspace has been divided in a number of different ways. It is necessary for a pilot to have an understanding of these divisions.

4.2.1 Domestic Airspace

The Canadian Domestic Airspace (CDA) includes all airspace over the Canadian land mass, the Canadian Arctic and Archipelago and certain areas over the high seas. It is divided into two areas, the Northern Domestic Airspace and the Southern Domestic Airspace. The boundaries of these two divisions are illustrated in Fig.4.18.

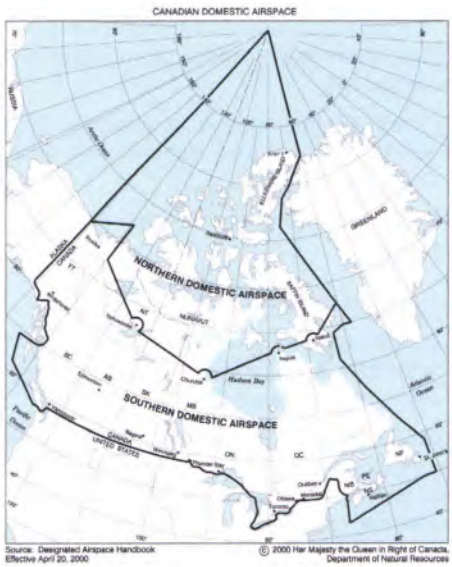

CANADIAN DOMESTIC AIRSPACE
NORTHERN DOMESTIC AIRSPACE
SOUTHERN DOMESTIC AIRSPACE
Source: Designated Airspace Handbook
Effective April 20, 2000
© 2000 Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, Department of Natural Resources

Fig.4.18 Canadian Domestic Airspace

Northern Domestic Airspace (NDA)

In close proximity to the north magnetic pole, the earth's lines of force dip vertically towards the pole, and the compass, which lies in a horizontal plane, loses its ability to point the way. There is, therefore, a large area of Canada in which magnetic compass readings are unreliable. Certain navigation procedures are recommended for operation in the area.

All aircraft operating in the Northern Domestic Airspace must fly at an altitude or flight level that is appropriate to their direction of flight as determined by **true** track calculations. Runway numbering is oriented to, and surface winds are reported in, degrees true. Aircraft operating at night or under IFR must be equipped with a gyroscopic direction indicator.

Southern Domestic Airspace (SDA)

All aircraft in level cruising flight within the Southern Domestic Airspace must maintain an altitude or flight level that is appropriate to their direction of flight as determined by the **magnetic** track.

Airways and air routes are based on magnetic tracks. Airport runways are assigned numbers based on their magnetic bearing. Surface winds are reported in magnetic degrees.

4.2.2 Altimeter Regions

Canadian airspace is divided, for purposes of altimetry, into an Altimeter Setting Region and a Standard Pressure Region. The geographic limits of these two regions are illustrated in Fig.4.19.

The Altimeter Setting Region

Prior to take-off from an airport located in the Altimeter Setting Region, a pilot must set the aircraft altimeter to the current altimeter setting of that airport or, if that altimeter setting is not available, to the elevation of the airport.

While cruising within the Altimeter Setting Region, pilots must adjust their altimeters to the reported current altimeter setting of the nearest station along their route of flight, or where such stations are separated by more than 150 nautical miles, to the nearest station to the route of flight. Altimeter setting (QNH) is the setting made to an altimeter so it will indicate altitude ASL.

When approaching the airport of intended landing, the altimeter must be set to the current altimeter setting of that airport.

The Altimeter Setting Region includes the airspace up to 18,000 feet only.

The Standard Pressure Region

The Standard Pressure Region includes that area of Northern Canada depicted and so designated in Fig.4.19 and also all airspace above 18,000 feet anywhere in Canada.

In the Standard Pressure Region, the altimeter is set to standard pressure (29.92" Hg). For take off and climb, from an airport in this region, the altimeter should be set to the current altimeter setting (or the airport elevation) and reset to the standard pressure setting upon reaching the cruising altitude. For descent and landing, the current altimeter setting of the airport of intended landing should be set on the altimeter.

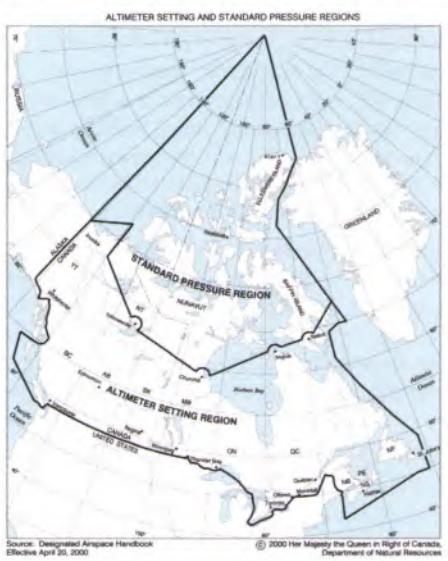

ALTIMETER SETTING AND STANDARD PRESSURE REGIONS
STANDARD PRESSURE REGION
ALTIMETER SETTING REGION
GREENLAND
ALBERTA
Source: Designated Airspace Handbook
Effective April 20, 2000
© 2000 Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada,
Department of Natural Resources

Fig.4.19 **Altimeter Regions**

Altimeters must be reset after entering and before leaving the Standard Pressure Region, unless otherwise authorized by ATC. A transition level exists between the Altimeter Setting Region and the Standard Pressure Region. This is FL 180. When climbing (immediately after ascending through FL 180), change your altimeter from the current altimeter setting (QNH) to standard pressure. When descending (immediately before passing through FL 180), change from standard pressure to the QNH altimeter setting.

FL 180 is not used for cruising in Canada.

4.2.3 Identification Zones

The defence authorities of both Canada and the United States have established a number of Air Defence Identification Zones (ADIZ) for the security control of air traffic. It is imperative that pilots acquaint themselves with the locations and boundaries of these zones. They are denoted on aeronautical charts, radio facility charts and the Canada Air Pilot.

The Canadian ADIZ lies off each coast of Canada and extends across the roof of the North American continent from Baffin Island on the east to Alaska on the west.

The procedures and regulations for flight within an ADIZ are more fully discussed in the Section Air Traffic Rules and Procedures, following.

4.2.4 Uncontrolled Airspace

Within the uncontrolled airspace in Canada, aircraft may operate free of the control of an ATC unit. However, all aircraft are required at all times to conduct their activities with regard to the Canadian Aviation Regulations.

When cruising in uncontrolled airspace, the lack of information of other aircraft in close proximity may constitute a potential hazard. Pilots, therefore, are advised to monitor continuously the frequency 126.7 MHz whenever practicable and to make periodic en route position reports and, especially, to report an intended change in flight altitude to the nearest FSS on 126.7 MHz. Such a report should include the last known position, the estimated next position, the present altitude and intention (climb/descent) and the planned altitude.

At certain uncontrolled airports, mandatory frequencies or aerodrome traffic frequencies have been established. Where an MF or ATF is designated, all pilots are required to call on the published frequency and provide details of their intentions to land at the airport. See **Mandatory Frequency** and **Aerodrome Traffic Frequency** in Section **Aerodromes**.

4.2.5 Controlled Airspace

Controlled airspace is the airspace within which air traffic control service is provided and within which some or all aircraft may be subjected to air traffic control. Types of controlled airspace are High Level Airspace and Low Level Airspace, both of which are described below.

High Level Airspace

Canadian Domestic Airspace is also divided vertically. All airspace 18,000 feet ASL and above is considered high level airspace. All airspace below 18,000 feet ASL is considered low level airspace.

The high level airspace is divided into three regions as depicted in Fig.4.20.

The Southern Control Area (SCA). The boundaries of the Southern Control Area are the same as those of the Southern

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Domestic Airspace. Within the Southern Control Area (i.e. all airspace above 18,000 feet ASL), all air traffic is controlled.

The Northern Control Area (NCA) extends from the northern limits of the Southern Control Area to a line approximately following the 72°N parallel of latitude. It comprises all airspace at and above FL 230. Within the Northern Control Area, all air traffic is controlled.

The Arctic Control Area (ACA) extends north from the northern boundary of the Northern Control Area to the north pole. It comprises all the airspace at and above FL 270. Within the Arctic Control Area, all traffic is controlled.

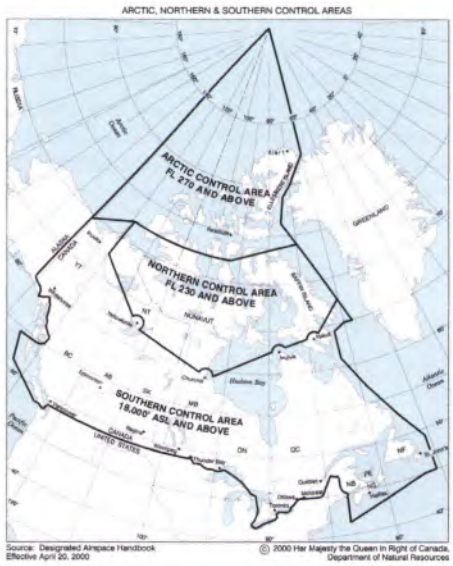

ARCTIC, NORTHERN & SOUTHERN CONTROL AREAS
ARCTIC CONTROL AREA
FL 270 AND ABOVE
NORTHERN CONTROL AREA
FL 230 AND ABOVE
SOUTHERN CONTROL AREA
18,000' ASL AND ABOVE
Source: Designated Airspace Handbook
Effective April 20, 2000
© 2000 Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada,
Department of Natural Resources

Fig.4.20 **Southern, Northern & Arctic Control Areas**

In the Northern Domestic Airspace, there is airspace between 18,000 feet ASL and the floors of the Northern Control Area (FL 230) and the Arctic Control Area (FL 270) which is high level airspace but which is uncontrolled (and therefore Class G airspace in the airspace classification system — see below). All high level airspace in the Southern Domestic Airspace (i.e. 18,000 feet ASL and above — Southern Control Area), however, is controlled airspace.

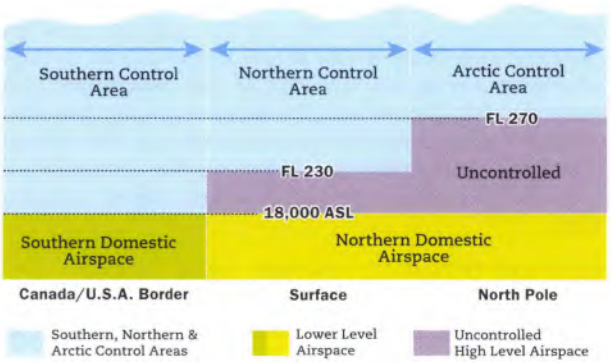


Fig.4.21 **Cross-Section of Vertical Dimensions of Southern, Northern & Arctic Control Areas**

Encompassed within the high level airspace are the following types of controlled high level airspace: high level airways and that portion of any terminal control area, control area extension, transition area, Class F restricted airspace, Class F advisory airspace, military operations area or Class F danger area that may extend above 18,000 feet. Also in the high level airspace are high level air routes which are uncontrolled airspace.

High level airways are prescribed tracks between specified radio aids to navigation in the high level airspace. Air traffic control is provided.

High level air routes are prescribed tracks between specified radio aids to navigation but along which air traffic control is not provided. High level air routes exist only in the Northern Domestic Airspace between 18,000 feet ASL and the bases of the Northern and Arctic Control Areas.

Low Level Airspace

The low level airspace comprises all airspace within the Canadian Domestic Airspace below 18,000 feet ASL. Not all of the low level airspace is controlled. Boundaries of low level controlled airspace are indicated on pilotage charts by shaded lines, the solid edge of which defines the outer limits of the controlled area. Types of controlled low level airspace include low level airways, control area extensions, control zones, transition areas, terminal control areas, military terminal control areas, Class F restricted airspace, Class F advisory airspace and Class F danger areas.

LOW LEVEL AIRWAYS

Airways are routes between points along which aircraft can navigate by following non-directional beacon, NDB, or VHF Omnidirectional Range, VOR, signals (see **NDB** and **VOR** in Chapter **Radio Navigation**). VHF/UHF airways (also known as VOR or Victor airways) are navigated by reference to the radials projected by chains of VHF omnirange stations located approximately 100 miles apart along the airways. They are designated by the letter V and numbers (e.g. V52).

Low frequency and medium frequency airways, LF/MF airways, (see **LF/MF** in Chapter **Radio**) are navigated by reference to signals from low frequency transmitters such as non-directional beacons.

The basic width of a VHF/UHF airway is 4 nautical miles on each side of the centreline; of an LF/MF airway, 4.34 nautical miles on each side of the centreline. Unless it is otherwise published on VFR Navigation Charts, an airway has its base at 2,200 feet above ground (AGL). It extends up to the base of the overlying high level airspace.

That portion of a low level airway that extends upwards between 12,500 feet and 18,000 feet ASL is designated Class B airspace and the rules and procedures that apply to flight in Class B airspace must be followed. Below 12,500 feet ASL, a low level airway is Class E airspace. VFR aircraft following a low level airway in Class E airspace are not subject to ATC control. ATC control is, however, provided for IFR flight.

When flying VFR along airways, fly down the centreline of the airway.

Exercise caution when crossing an airway. IFR traffic is using the airway at the 1,000 foot levels and VFR traffic is using the airway at the 500 foot levels.

CONTROL AREA EXTENSIONS (CAE)

Control area extensions are established at some airports to provide additional controlled airspace to handle IFR traffic. At some busy airports, the controlled airspace contained within the associated control zone and converging airways is not sufficient for the maneuvering required to separate arriving and departing IFR traffic. A control area extension provides the required additional controlled airspace. The CAE surrounds

and overlies the core control zone and IFR traffic is controlled by the area control centre (ACC). Such control area extensions are usually circular with a defined nautical mile radius. They extend upwards from 2,200 feet AGL to 18,000 feet ASL. A control area extension is usually classified as Class E airspace. That portion of a control area extension that lies between 12,500 feet and 18,000 feet ASL is designated as Class B airspace. Below the base of a control area extension, a transition area is established between 2,200 feet AGL and 700 feet AGL to accommodate IFR traffic doing instrument approaches. In vertical cross-section, therefore, a control area extension may have the shape of an inverted wedding cake.

Control area extensions have also been established to connect areas of controlled airspace, such as those that connect the domestic airways structure with the oceanic control areas. A CAE, such as this, may be based at other altitudes, such as 2,000 feet, 5,500 feet or 6,000 feet ASL, etc.

CONTROL ZONES

Control zones are designated around certain aerodromes to keep IFR aircraft within controlled airspace and to facilitate the control of VFR and IFR traffic.

These control zones are established around airports where there are operating control towers. The area of control begins at the surface of the earth. The upper limit is usually 3,000 feet AGL but may vary at specific airports. Control zones associated with a terminal control area normally have a 7 nautical mile radius. Others have a 5 nautical mile radius, although there are a few that are only 3 nautical miles in radius. Military control zones usually have a 10 nautical mile radius and are capped at 6,000 feet AAE.

Control zones will be classified as B, C, D or E depending on the classification of the surrounding airspace.

Certain airports which are very busy with a great deal of traffic are restricted to aircraft with prior reservations. Aircraft wishing to land at or take off from these airports are required to arrange for a slot time for their intended operation. Such control zones may be classified as Class F.

VFR traffic may operate within a control zone only if the weather minima are met. (See **Weather Minima for VFR Flight** below.) When weather conditions are below VFR minima, a pilot operating VFR may request special VFR (SVFR) authorization to enter the control zone. (See **Special VFR** below.)

TRANSITION AREA

Transition areas are established between the outer perimeter of control zones (which are based at ground level) and control area extensions and terminal control areas (which are based at 2,200 feet AGL). The transition area extends upward from 700 feet AGL to the base of the overlying controlled airspace. The area provided will normally be circular with a 15 nautical mile radius measured from the centre of the airport. The transition area is established to accommodate IFR traffic doing instrument approaches.

TERMINAL CONTROL AREA (TCA)

Terminal control areas are established at airports with a high volume of traffic to provide IFR control service to arriving, departing and en route aircraft.

Terminal control areas may be Class A, B, C, D or E airspace. TCA's usually extend into the high level airspace. That portion of the TCA that extends above 12,500 feet is Class B airspace regardless of the classification of the rest of the TCA. Any portion that may extend above 18,000 feet would be Class A airspace. The TCA operating rules are established according to the classification of the airspace within the TCA. IFR traffic is normally controlled by a terminal control unit (TCU). During periods when the TCU is not in operation, the area control centre (ACC) will provide service.

A TCA will normally have a circular configuration centred on the geographic co-ordinates of the primary aerodrome. The control zone is 7 nautical miles in radius and extends from the ground to 3,000 feet AGL. The first level of the TCA is 12 nautical miles in radius and is based at 1,200 feet above the airport elevation. The second level of the TCA is 35 nautical miles in radius and is based at 2,200 feet AAE. The third level of the TCA is 45 nautical miles in radius and is based at 9,500 feet AAE. For convenience, on maps and charts, the base is converted to the equivalent height above sea level. For example, if the airport elevation is 900 feet ASL, the base of the first level of the TCA would be 2,100 feet ASL, the second level would be 3,100 feet ASL and the third level would be 10,400 feet ASL. As is the case with control area extensions, a TCA takes the shape of an inverted wedding cake.

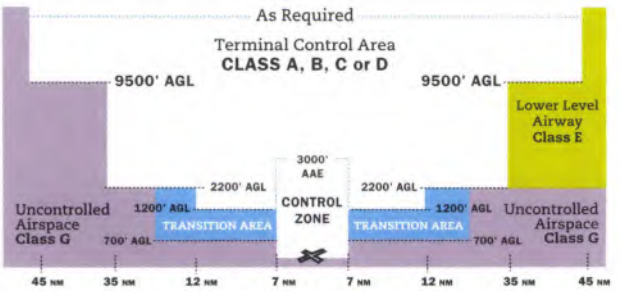


Fig.4.22 Terminal Control Area

The airspace between the floor of the terminal control area (and the floor of a control area extension) and the ground is uncontrolled airspace. VFR traffic may operate there without contacting the ATC unit controlling the overlying controlled airspace. However, the pilot of a VFR aircraft must contact the appropriate ATC unit before entering the controlled airspace.

Pilots operating in this uncontrolled airspace must exercise extra caution. Large jet transport aeroplanes may be operating as low as the floor of the controlled airspace on their approach and departure paths and the wake turbulence resulting from their passage will settle down into the airspace below the controlled area where it may pose a serious hazard to small aeroplanes. Aeroplanes operating in the uncontrolled area below the floor of any controlled airspace should, therefore, maintain sufficient vertical separation from the floor altitude so as not to create a hazardous situation either for themselves or for the jet transport aeroplanes which may be operating there.

MILITARY TERMINAL CONTROL AREA (MTCA)

A military terminal control area is a terminal control area in which air traffic control is provided by a military terminal control unit. Special provisions for military aircraft prevail, such as VFR above FL 180.

4.2.6 Classification of Canadian Airspace

The Canadian Domestic Airspace is divided into seven classifications, each identified by a single letter: A, B, C, D, E, F or G. Most States worldwide have the same basic classifications, albeit with differing limitations and operational criteria.

Flight within each class of airspace is governed by specific rules which are defined in the Canadian Aviation Regulations. These rules depend on the classification of the particular airspace and not on the name by which the airspace is commonly known. For example, control zones and terminal control areas may be classified as B, C, D or E. Weather minima, however, are still related to the common name of the controlled or uncontrolled airspace.

Because of variations in dimension and classification of terminal airspace, the actual organization of the airspace is charted for VFR pilots on the VFR charts. The information on individual airports in the **Canada Flight Supplement** indicates the classification of the airspace surrounding each airport.

Class A Airspace

Class A airspace is that airspace within which only IFR flight is permitted.

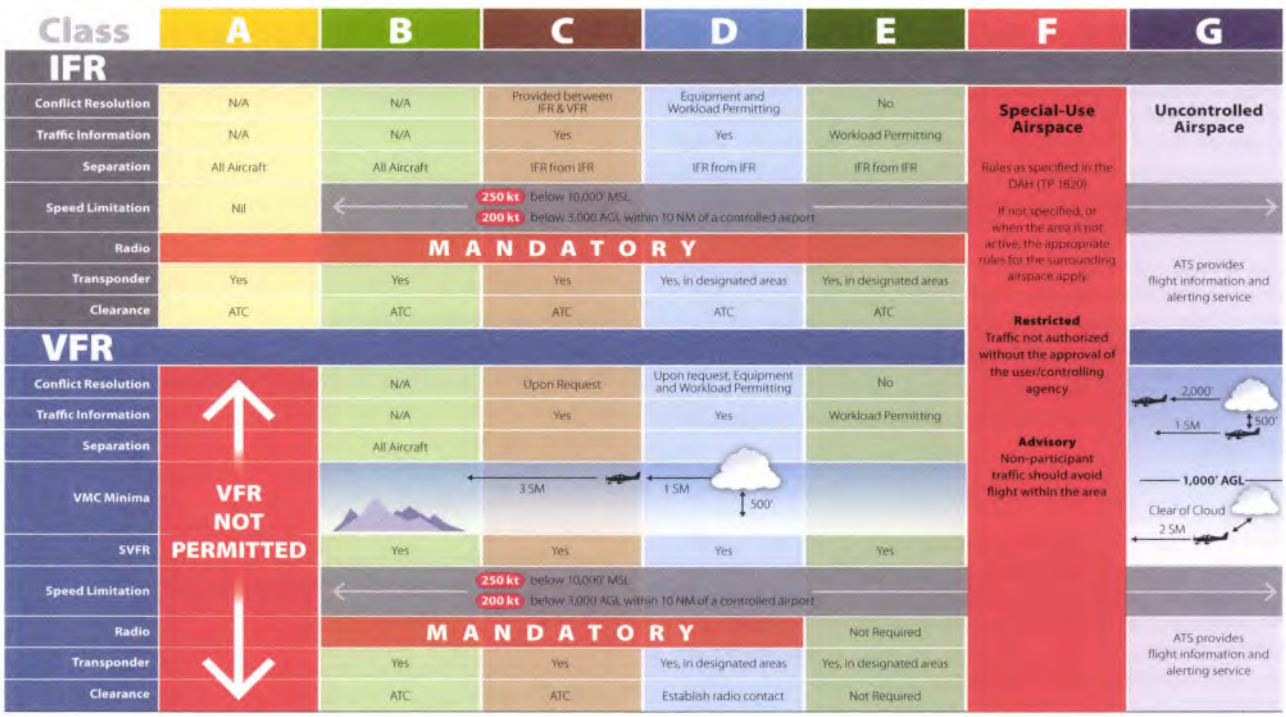
It includes all controlled high level airspace between 18,000 feet ASL and FL 600 inclusive. It includes, therefore, the Southern Control Area, the Northern Control Area and the Arctic Control Area (see above). It may also include any other airspace so designated by the Minister on either a permanent or temporary basis.

All flights require an ATC clearance to enter Class A airspace, must operate in accordance with instrument flight rules and are subject to ATC clearances and instructions. ATC separation is provided to all aircraft. The pilot must have an instrument rating and the aeroplane must be IFR equipped and have an approved and functioning transponder and approved and functioning automatic pressure altitude reporting equipment (i.e. Mode C).

All flights operating in Class A airspace above 18,000 feet ASL must use Standard Pressure Region procedures in setting their altimeters.

Class B Airspace

Class B airspace is that airspace where an operational need exists to provide air traffic control to IFR aircraft and to control VFR aircraft. Operations may be conducted under either



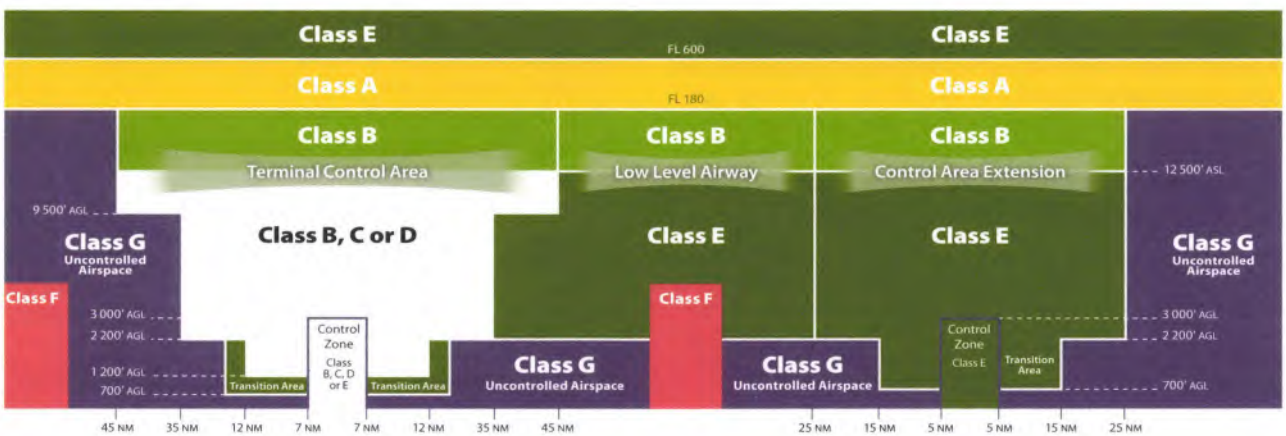


Fig.4.23 Canadian Airspace Classification

IFR or VFR but all aircraft are subject to ATC clearances and instructions and ATC separation is provided to all aircraft. VFR flights are conducted as controlled VFR flights.

It includes all controlled low level airspace between 12,500 feet and up to but not including 18,000 feet ASL. Such controlled airspace comprises the designated airways and any other control area that may extend upwards to this level. Control zones and associated terminal control areas may also be classified as Class B airspace. It may also include any other airspace so designated by the Minister.

A VFR flight must file a flight plan indicating altitude and route requested and receive an ATC clearance prior to entering Class B airspace. No special licence, rating or endorsement is required by the VFR pilot to operate in Class B airspace. The aeroplane must be capable of two-way radio communication with the appropriate ATC facility and a listening watch must be maintained at all times. The aircraft must also be equipped with radio navigation equipment capable of utilizing navigation facilities to maintain the flight planned route. When the aircraft is over a reporting point, a position report must be transmitted to the appropriate unit or FSS, unless otherwise instructed by ATC. The aeroplane must be operated in VFR weather conditions at all times. When it becomes evident that it is not possible to operate the aircraft in VMC (visual meteorological conditions) at the altitude or along the route specified in the ATC clearance, the pilot shall request an amended clearance that will enable the aircraft to be operated in VMC to the destination or to an alternate aerodrome. If the airspace is a control zone, the pilot shall request authorization to operate in special VFR flight.

The aircraft must be equipped with a functioning sensitive pressure altimeter that has been tested, inspected and certified within the past 24 months and with an approved and functioning transponder with Mode C capability.

The procedures for flight within Class B airspace are more fully discussed in the Section **Air Traffic Rules and Procedures**, following.

Class C Airspace

Class C airspace is a controlled airspace within which both IFR and VFR flights are permitted. However, VFR pilots must be cleared by ATC to enter. ATC separation is provided between IFR traffic and, as necessary, to resolve conflicts between VFR and IFR aircraft and, upon request, between VFR aircraft that are radar identified and in communication with ATC. Traffic information is issued to aircraft to warn of other air traffic that may be in close proximity. Runway separation is provided to all aircraft.

Terminal control areas and associated control zones may be classified as Class C airspace. Class C airspace becomes Class E airspace when the appropriate ATC unit is not in operation.

To enter and fly in Class C airspace, under VFR conditions, a pilot must hold a valid pilot's licence or a student pilot permit. No special licence, rating or endorsement is required.

The aeroplane must be equipped with a functioning two-way radio capable of communication with the appropriate ATC unit and, at all times while within Class C airspace, a listening watch must be maintained on the frequency assigned by the ATC unit. Aeroplanes must be equipped with a serviceable and functioning transponder with Mode C capability.

In the event of a communications failure while operating VFR in Class C (or Class B) airspace, the aircraft must maintain VFR at all times, divert to and land at, complying with the established NORDO arrival procedures, any suitable aerodrome and inform the appropriate ATC unit of the circumstances of the failure. If the aeroplane is transponder equipped, the pilot should select code 7600. If the communication failure is only in the transmitting capability, pilots should maintain a listening watch on appropriate frequencies for control messages or further clearances.

If the communication failure occurs while operating outside of Class C (or Class B) airspace precluding the pilot from obtaining the appropriate clearance to enter the airspace and if no suitable nearby aerodrome is available, the pilot is permitted to enter the classified airspace, continue VFR and comply with NORDO arrival procedures.

NORDO aircraft are permitted in Class C airspace during daylight hours and in VFR weather conditions if a clearance to enter has been obtained from the appropriate ATC unit prior to operation within the controlled area. This type of clearance is usually obtained by telephone prior to initiating the flight.

Authorization from the appropriate ATC unit must be obtained prior to entering Class C airspace or before taking off from an airport within Class C airspace. While airborne, authorization to enter this airspace is required whether the aircraft is intending to land at the airport or merely proceeding through the airspace.

Before entering Class C airspace, a pilot must contact the appropriate ATC unit and relay the following information: type and registration (in phonetic letters) of the aircraft; position (either by an accurate fix using a map or by a VOR radial and distance) to enable the controller to make an identification on the radar screen; altitude and if climbing or descending; destination; and transponder status. A VFR flight should select code 1200 on the transponder. If ATIS is available, the pilot should obtain this information prior to contacting the ATC controller and so inform him/her on the initial contact.

Authorization for flight in Class C airspace does not relieve the pilot of the responsibility of avoiding other aircraft, of maintaining terrain and obstruction clearance and of remaining in VFR weather conditions.

Class D Airspace

Class D airspace is a controlled airspace within which both IFR and VFR flights are permitted. VFR flights must establish two-way communication with the appropriate ATC facility prior to entering Class D airspace. ATC separation is provided only to IFR traffic. Other traffic will be provided with traffic information. Upon request and equipment and workload permitting, conflict resolution instructions will be issued. ATC may instruct VFR traffic to remain clear of the Class D airspace. Runway separation is provided to all aircraft.

Terminal control areas and associated control zones may be classified as Class D airspace. Class D airspace becomes Class E when the appropriate ATC unit is not in operation.

An aeroplane operating VFR in Class D airspace must be equipped with radio equipment capable of two-way communication with the appropriate ATC unit and, at all times while in Class D airspace, the flight crew must maintain a listening watch on the radio frequency assigned by ATC. Certain Class D airspace may be specified as a transponder area in which case the aeroplane must be equipped with a transponder with Mode C capability.

NORDO aircraft are permitted in Class D airspace during daylight hours and in VFR weather conditions, provided permission to enter is obtained from the appropriate ATC unit prior to operating within the airspace.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Class E Airspace

Class E airspace is designated where an operational need exists for controlled airspace but such need does not meet the requirements for Class A, B, C, or D airspace.

Operations may be conducted under IFR or VFR. ATC separation is provided only between aircraft operating under IFR. VFR aircraft do not require permission to enter Class E airspace and, except for mandatory frequency areas, are not required to establish communication with an air traffic service (ATS) unit prior to entering.

Workload and equipment permitting, traffic information may be provided, upon request, to VFR aircraft. When requesting traffic information from ATC, pilots should be aware that air traffic controllers providing services in Class E airspace are responsible for larger volumes of airspace than those controllers providing services in Class C or D airspace. As a result, there is a higher potential that workload and equipment limitations could affect the provision of traffic information. This could include the potential discontinuation of service without notification. A pilot flying VFR in Class E airspace remains responsible for maintaining a vigilant watch for, and avoiding, other traffic.

Low level airways, control area extensions, transition zones and control zones at airports without an operating control tower may be classified as Class E airspace. Certain Class E airspace may be specified as a transponder zone in which case the aircraft must be equipped with a transponder with Mode C capability.

Class F Airspace

Class F airspace is airspace of defined dimensions within which activities must be confined because of their nature and within which limitations may be imposed on aircraft which are not part of those activities. The restrictions may be on either a permanent or a temporary basis.

Class F airspace may be classified as either advisory airspace, restricted airspace, a military operations area or a danger area. It can be controlled or uncontrolled airspace or a combination of both. Note that, for example, an advisory area may have its floor in uncontrolled airspace and its ceiling in controlled airspace. This means that the weather minima would be different in the controlled and uncontrolled portions of the advisory area.

When areas of Class F airspace are inactive, they assume the rules of the appropriate surrounding airspace.

All designated Class F airspace is published in HI and LO Charts and on VFR aeronautical charts. Each restricted and advisory area within Canada has been assigned an identification code group which consists of the following:

1. The nationality letters CY
2. The letter A for advisory or the letter R for restricted, (or the letter D for danger area if the restricted area is over international waters)
3. A three-digit number which identifies the area, the first digit of the number identifying the geographic area of Canada in which the restricted or advisory area is situated, (see Figure below)
4. In the case of advisory areas, a letter in brackets which indicates the type of activity within the area, (see Figure below)

Three-digit Numbers	Canadian Region
101 to 199	British Columbia
201 to 299	Alberta
301 to 399	Saskatchewan
401 to 499	Manitoba
501 to 599	Ontario
601 to 699	Quebec
701 to 799	Maritimes
801 to 899	Yukon
901 to 999	N.W. Territories & Nunavut
Types of Class F Activities	
(A) – Aerobatics, (F) – Aircraft Test Area, (H) – Hang Gliding, (M) – Military Operations Area, (P) – Parachuting, (S) – Soaring, (T) - Training	

Fig.4.24 **Class F Three-digit Identifier Regions & Class Designation Activities**

Thus, by way of example, a Class F area coded CYA511(T) denotes training activity in advisory area 511 which is a designated area in the province of Ontario.

ADVISORY AIRSPACE

Airspace may be classified as Class F advisory airspace if there is activity there which, for flight safety purposes, non-participating pilots should be aware of. There are no specific restrictions which apply to the use of advisory airspace but VFR traffic is encouraged to avoid flight in advisory airspace unless participating in the activity taking place. Non-participating flights may enter advisory areas at their own discretion but extra vigilance is essential and pilots of both participating and non-participating aircraft are responsible for collision avoidance.

Pilots intending to fly in a Class F advisory area should monitor an appropriate frequency, broadcast their intentions when entering and leaving the area and communicate, when necessary, with other users to ensure flight safety in the area. In Class F advisory uncontrolled airspace, 126.7 MHz would be an appropriate frequency. In Class F advisory controlled airspace, ATC will assign a frequency.

ATC will maintain separation between IFR aircraft and active Class F airspace unless the pilot states that permission has been obtained from the user agency to enter the airspace, or the aircraft is operating on an altitude reservation approval (see below), or the aircraft has been cleared for a contact or visual approach.

IFR aircraft shall be provided 500 feet vertical separation from an active Class F advisory airspace, unless wake turbulence minima is applicable, in which case 1,000 feet vertical separation shall be applied.

RESTRICTED AIRSPACE

A restricted airspace is one of defined dimensions above the land areas or territorial waters of Canada within which flight is restricted in accordance with certain specified conditions. A restricted airspace may be designated because of aerial activity, surface activity or to protect a ground installation.

No one may conduct aerial activities within active Class F restricted airspace unless permission has been obtained from the user agency. In some instances, the user agency may delegate to a controlling agency, the authority to approve access. In most cases, the controlling agency will be on ATC unit or an air navigation service provider (ANSP).

Any restricted airspace which may be established over international waters will be designated as a danger area.

Temporary restricted areas may be designated to restrict flight around and over forest fires areas, well fires, disaster areas, etc. for the purpose of ensuring the safety of flight operations in support of the occurrence. Because the restriction is temporary in nature, the restricted airspace is not considered to be classified Class F airspace in accordance with Airspace Regulations. Such temporary restricted areas are authorized in the Canadian Aviation Regulations and by NOTAM. (See NOTAM in chapter **Radio Communications**.) The NOTAM sets out the location and dimensions of the fire area, the airspace involved in the restriction. Notwithstanding whatever restrictions are imposed on flight near a forest fire by a NOTAM, no one may operate an aircraft below 3,000 feet AGL within 5 nautical miles of the limits of the forest fire area.

JOINT USE AIRSPACE

Joint use airspace is Class F airspace within which operations may be authorized by the controlling agency when it is not being used by the user agency itself. To ensure maximum use of restricted airspace, user agencies are expected to make available restricted airspace for use by other agencies on a joint use basis. An ATC agency may be designated to provide control or information within Class F airspace involved in joint use.

ALTITUDE RESERVATION

An altitude reservation is airspace of defined dimensions within controlled airspace reserved for the use of a civil or military agency during a specified period. An altitude reservation may be confined to a fixed area (stationary) or moving in relation to the aircraft that operates within it (moving). Information on the description of each altitude reservation is normally published by NOTAM. Civil altitude reservations are normally for a single aircraft, while those for military use are normally for more than one aircraft.

Pilots should plan to avoid known altitude reservations. ATC will not clear an unauthorized flight into an active reservation. IFR and CVFR flights are provided with standard separation from altitude reservations.

Class G Airspace

Class G airspace is airspace that has not been designated Class A, B, C, D, E or F and within which ATC has neither the authority nor the responsibility for exercising control over air traffic.

It is, therefore, uncontrolled airspace. Included in this category are low level and high level air routes and aerodrome traffic zones as well as all other airspace that is not classified as controlled. Although ATC units do not exercise control over air traffic, ATC units and flight service stations do provide flight information and alerting services.

Flight in instrument conditions is permitted in Class G airspace only if the pilot-in-command is the holder of a valid pilot licence and a valid instrument rating.

LOW LEVEL & HIGH LEVEL AIR ROUTES

Air routes are similar to airways in most respects except that along air routes air traffic control services are not available. Air routes are not, therefore, within controlled airspace.

Air routes extend between L/MF or VOR navigation aids. They extend from the surface of the earth up to Class A airspace. They are 9 nautical miles wide and are designated by colours and numbers (e.g. Amber Route 5, Blue Route 7).

Air routes exist mainly in the northern areas of Canada.

4.2.7 Flight Information Region (FIR)

The Canadian Domestic Airspace is also divided into seven flight information regions within which flight information service and alerting service are provided. These regions are centred on Vancouver, Edmonton, Winnipeg, Toronto, Montreal, Moncton and Gander.

4.2.8 Mountainous Regions

Mountainous regions are areas of defined lateral dimensions above which rules concerning minimum IFR altitudes apply to ensure that aircraft can fly safely clear of terrain obstacles. Under IFR in the mountainous regions of British Columbia, Alberta, the Yukon, Baffin Island, Devon Island, and Ellesmere Island, an aircraft must be flown at an altitude of at least 2,000 feet above the highest obstacle that is within 5 n.m. of the aircraft. When within the mountainous regions of Quebec, Newfoundland, and New Brunswick, at least 1,500 feet above the highest obstacle within 5 n.m. of the aircraft must be maintained.

IFR flights within designated airways and air routes that fall within mountainous regions require that the aircraft operate at an altitude that is at least 1,000 feet higher than the minimum established en route IFR altitude.

4.3 The U.S. Airspace System

With the significant amount of cross-border flying that takes place between Canada and the United States, it is a good idea for pilots from both countries to be familiar with the operational limitations of each country's respective airspace system. For the most part, Canada and the United States have identical classification criteria – most of what has already been described in the previous section applies across North America; however, some variations exist. Airspace definitions and restrictions in the United States are highlighted here. As the reader will see, many of the criteria and operational considerations are the same in both countries.

4.3.1 U.S. Domestic Airspace

Domestic airspace in the United States is defined as that airspace which overlies the continental land mass of all the U.S. states, including Hawaii and all U.S. possessions. It extends 12 miles offshore of all U.S. land.

4.3.2 U.S. Identification Zones

As already noted, both Canadian and U.S. defence authorities have established a number of their own respective Air Defence Identification Zones (ADIZs). In the case of entry into domestic U.S. airspace, all aircraft from outside the country must provide identification prior to entry. Generally, pilots must file an IFR or defense VFR (DVFR) flight plan for all operations that enter or exit a U.S. ADIZ. In addition, pilots are required to have Mode C transponders and two-way radio capability. See the Section **Air Traffic Rules and Procedures** for more detailed information on flight into ADIZs.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

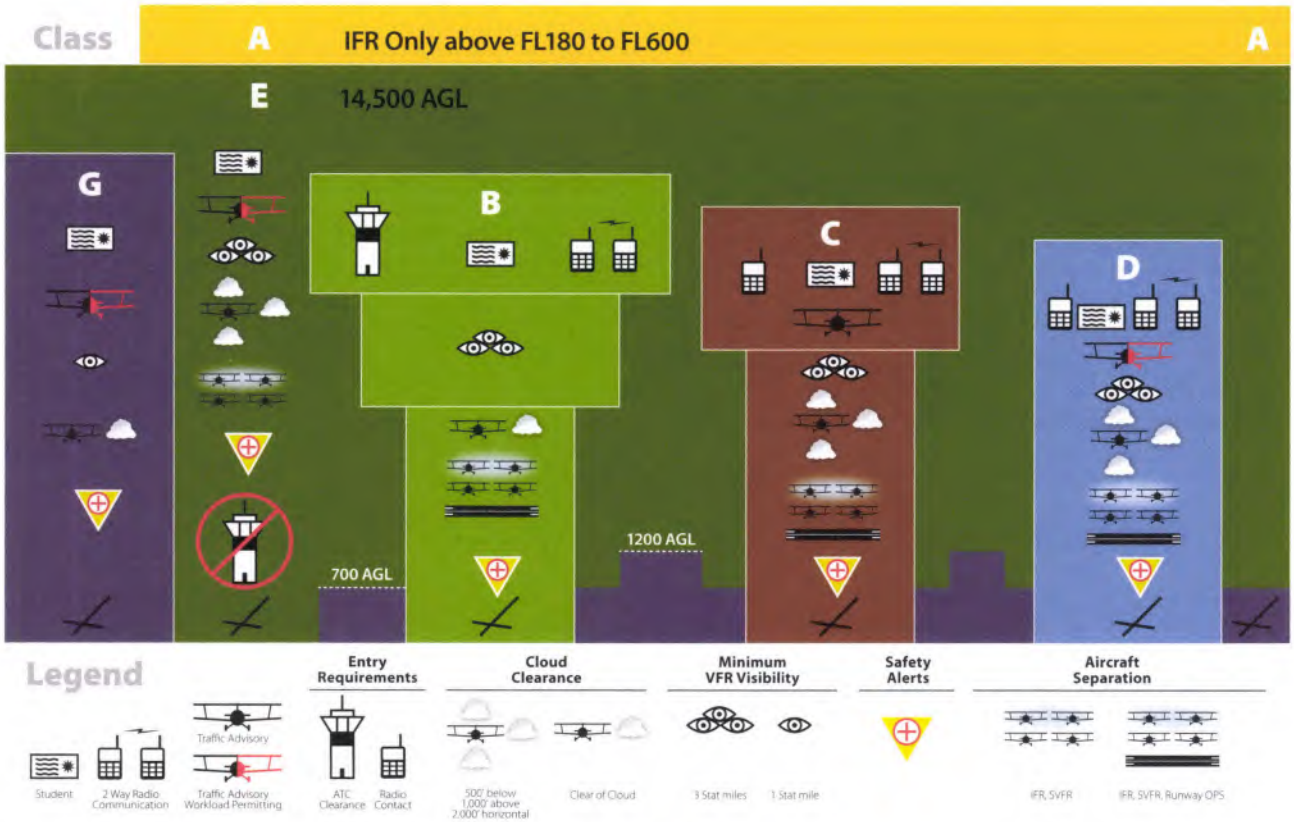


Fig.4.25 **U.S Airspace Classification**

4.3.3 Classification of U.S. Airspace

Class A Airspace

In the U.S., Class A airspace extends from 18,000 feet MSL to FL600 and includes airspace overlying the waters within 12 n.m. of the coast of the majority of contiguous U.S. states and Alaska. Pilots must be instrument rated to fly in Class A airspace, their aircraft must have a transponder and their flight must be under an IFR flight plan with ATC control. In Class A airspace, pilots must set their altimeters to 29.92" Hg.

Class B Airspace

Class B airspace in the U.S. generally covers that airspace from the surface to 10,000 feet MSL surrounding the nation's busiest airports. Class B areas appear as stacked three-dimensional disks and are, thus, regularly described as having the appearances of upside-down wedding cakes. Operations within Class B require two-way radio capability, and Mode C transponder equipment. Students may fly into some Class B areas although they are prohibited from entering the busiest of such areas. Entry into, or passing through, Class B requires an ATC clearance on the appropriate frequency. Class B departures must include the provision to ATC of altitude and flight route intentions.

Class C Airspace

Class C airspace surrounds many busy airports wherein ATC provides mandatory-usage radar service. Pilots must not enter Class C airspace without first having been cleared to do so. Continuous two-way communication with ATC is required at all times when within Class C areas. Aircraft must be equipped with Mode C transponders in Class C airspace except if flying in the airspace beneath a Class C area where they are not required. Generally, Class C extends from the surface to 4,000 feet above airport elevation with a 5 n.m. radius disk at the surface overlaid by a 10 n.m. radius disk from 1,200 feet to the 4,000 foot top above the airport elevation.

Class D Airspace

Class D normally extends from the surface to 2,500 feet above the airport elevation surrounding those airports with operational control towers but without radar services. Pilots must not enter Class D airspace without first establishing two-way communication with ATC. If a control tower is in operation at a satellite airport within a Class D area where the primary airport control tower is closed, pilots should contact the tower at the satellite airport for arrival and departure. When departing a non-tower satellite airport in a Class D area, contact should be made with the control tower of the primary airport within the Class D area soon after the take-off.

Class E Airspace

As it is described in the previous section for Canada, criteria for Class E airspace in the U.S. is the same: whatever is controlled airspace and is neither Class A, B, C, nor D, then it is Class E. All the same limitations apply.

Special Use Airspace

As seen in the previous section, Class F airspace in Canada includes advisory airspace and restricted airspace designations and descriptions. In the U.S., these areas are referred to as special use airspace; there is no Class F designation in

the United States. Special use airspace is divided into warning areas (for coastal aerial gunnery or guided missile testing), military operation areas (in which military training and maneuvers are conducted), alert areas (for activities such as parachuting, gliding, and student pilot training), national security areas (restricted fly-over areas for security reasons), controlled firing areas (a non-restricted firing area), restricted areas (for artillery firing, aerial gunnery and missile testing, that is not specific to coastal areas), and prohibited areas (areas that require prior entry permission).

Class G Airspace

In Canada and the United States, Class G airspace designations are the same: whatever is not Class A, B, C, D, or E airspace, and is uncontrolled airspace, is Class G airspace.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

5 Air Rules & Procedures

5.1 Rules of the Air

Air Regulations are undergoing constant change and revision. A limited amount of information regarding regulations is included in this textbook. Unfortunately, during the lifetime of this edition, some of this information may become outdated because of the ongoing revision process in the regulatory system. You are, therefore, urged to refer to the most recent amendments to the aviation regulations to ensure that your knowledge in this area is absolutely current.

In addition, regulations may differ from country to country. Although there is, for the most part, a uniformity in the regulations pertaining to flight procedures, there may be subtle differences that would impact on your flight patterns. If you are flying in a country other than Canada, you must acquaint yourself with the regulations pertaining to flight in that country.

Indeed, it is your responsibility as a pilot to make yourself familiar with and to conform to all the regulations and requirements which pertain to the aeroplane which you fly and the conditions under which it is being flown.

The government published Canadian Aviation Regulations (CARs) and the revisions to this legislation cover all the rules pertaining to operation of aircraft in Canada. They should be carefully studied. Each part of the CARs deal with a particular topic, such as registration, certification and marking, or licencing, or visual flight rules, etc. They are presided over by Transport Canada. Regulations in the United States are published in a document called the Federal Aviation Regulations (FAR) and are presided over by the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA).

The A.I.M. Canada (Aeronautical Information Manual) is especially useful for it is updated on a regular schedule and incorporates Canadian Aviation Regulations and other aeronautical information that is pertinent to the basic requirements to fly within Canadian airspace. A.I.M. amendments are published twice per year and are available to all licenced pilots.

Information Circulars are available to all pilots and should be carefully scrutinized. NOTAM are distributed to all flight service stations and are available to pilots on a continuing basis in those locations. Information Circulars cover practically every subject to do with aviation in Canada. They are informative in nature, although some may be mandatory. NOTAM deal mostly with matters of an urgent nature, such as danger and restricted areas, obstructions, airport construction, changes in navigation and control procedures.

5.1.1 Certificate of Airworthiness (C of A)

The C of A is issued for aircraft that fully comply with all standards of airworthiness for:

1. Aeroplanes in the normal, utility, aerobatic, commuter and transport categories.
2. Rotorcraft in the normal and transport categories.
3. Gliders, powered gliders, airships and manned free balloons.

No aeroplane may be flown unless it is registered and has a flight permit or C of A issued by the aviation authority in the country of registration. The aeroplane must conform with respect to equipment, maintenance and operation to the conditions specified in the certificate. The keeping in force of the certificate is dependent upon the aircraft being maintained in accordance with the standards set out in the Airworthiness Manual. The C of A is continuous but may be out of force if the owner or operator fails to take action on airworthiness directives (ADs) and manufacturer's service bulletins, scheduled inspections or maintenance and the rectification of defects which adversely affect flight safety.

An Annual Airworthiness Information Report (AAIR) must be submitted on the anniversary date of the issue of the certificate. The report requires the owner/operator of the aircraft to submit information on the most recent inspection, recent significant aircraft damage, flying hours in the reporting period, recent modifications, and aircraft, engine and propeller data. If this report is not filed, the C of A will automatically expire. It is the responsibility of the owner or operator to ensure that there is proper documentary evidence in the aircraft journey log to prove that all required standards have been met.

5.1.2 Aeroplane Logs & Licences

An aeroplane may not be flown unless there is carried on board the licences of all members of the flight crew. The licences must be valid for the aeroplane being flown (i.e. single-engine, multi-engine, etc.) and for the type of operation (land, sea, night, etc.). Also on board must be the certificate of registration and the certificate of airworthiness of the aeroplane, proof of insurance coverage, the licence for the radio equipment installed in the aeroplane and the radio operator's licence of the pilot or other crew members, and the journey log of the aeroplane. An ultralight aeroplane is exempted from the requirement to carry on board the journey log and a certificate of airworthiness.

A journey log and a technical log must be maintained for every aeroplane, other than an ultralight. It is the responsibility of the pilot to keep the logbooks up to date by recording the facts of every flight.

5.1.3 Pilot's Licence

The Aeronautics Act and Canadian Aviation Regulations (CARs) contain Canadian aeronautics legislation, regulations and standards for flight crew licencing. An aviation document booklet (ADB), designed to hold aviation-related documents, is evidence that a pilot is qualified for certain permits, licences, certificates and ratings. The ADB includes the holder's photograph and other security features for positive identification. It should be noted that Canadian-issued permits do not conform to international licencing standards and, thus, are valid only in Canadian airspace, unless the permit is specifically authorized by the country in which the flight is conducted.

Permit and licence holders must hold a Restricted Operator Certificate – Aeronautical (ROC-A) in accordance with the requirements of Industry Canada, if they are going to operate radiotelephone equipment on board an aircraft. (See also **Radio Communications Procedures**.)

The following permits are issued by Transport Canada Civil Aviation (TCCA): Student Pilot Permit, Gyroplane Pilot Permit, Ultralight Aeroplane Pilot Permit, Recreational – Aeroplane Pilot Permit.

The following licences are issued by Transport Canada Civil Aviation: Glider Pilot Licence, Balloon Licence, Private Pilot Licence – Aeroplane, Private Pilot Licence – Helicopter, Commercial Pilot Licence – Aeroplane, Commercial Pilot Licence – Helicopter, Airline Transport Pilot Licence – Aeroplane, Airline Transport Pilot Licence – Helicopter, Flight Engineer Licence.

No person may act as pilot-in-command or co-pilot of an aeroplane unless they are the holder of a valid pilot's licence, valid for the particular class and type of aircraft being flown (i.e., aeroplane, balloon, glider, ultralight, helicopter, gyroplane).

The holder of a student permit may fly an aeroplane only under the supervision of an authorized instructor and may not carry passengers. The flight must be conducted within Canada, by day and under VFR.

The holder of a pilot licence may not exercise the privileges of the licence unless he/she has acted as pilot-in-command or co-pilot of an aircraft within the five years preceding the flight or has met the written examination requirements for the licence within the 12 months preceding the flight. If passengers are carried, pilots must have, within the 6 months preceding the flight, completed at least 5 take-offs and landings in an aircraft of the same category and class. These may be conducted either by day or night, if the flight is to be conducted by day, but must be conducted by night, if the flight is to be conducted in whole or in part by night.

Every holder of a pilot licence shall maintain a personal logbook and record the particulars of every flight: the date of the flight, the type and registration of the aircraft, the capacity in which they acted and the names of other flight crew members, the place of departure, the place of arrival, any intermediate stops and any instrument approaches, the amount of flight time, the conditions under which the flight was conducted, and, in the case of a flight in a glider, the method of launch used for the flight. Logbook information may be kept in electronic form as an alternative to entries on paper.

The holder of a pilot licence shall not exercise its privileges under instrument flight rules (IFR) unless the licence includes an instrument rating.

A private pilot may carry passengers by day in any aeroplane which has been endorsed on his/her licence, but not for remuneration. A commercial pilot may carry passengers for hire or reward in any aeroplane endorsed on his/her licence, provided the aeroplane's flight crew document specifies a minimum flight crew of one pilot. Pilots carrying passengers by night must have their licences endorsed for night flying.

All holders of Canadian pilot licences or permits (as well as for air traffic controller licences) must undergo a periodic medical examination to determine their medical fitness to exercise the privileges of their permit or licence. No person shall exercise, nor attempt to exercise, the privileges of a permit, licence or rating unless they hold a valid medical certificate of a category that is appropriate for that permit, licence or rating.

The medical examination will normally be carried out by a designated Civil Aviation Medical Examiner (CAME). The frequency of the medical examinations depends on the age of the applicant and the type of permit or licence for which the applicant is applying.

The validity period of a medical certificate is calculated from the first day of the month following the date of the medical examination or declaration. By way of example, if a 39 year-old pilot and a 40 year-old pilot, both holders of a private pilot licence – Aeroplane, were to each renew their medicals on April 25, 2023, the 39 year-old's medical certificate would be valid until May 1, 2028 (i.e., 60 months) while the 40 year-old's medical certificate would be valid until May 1, 2025 (i.e., 24 months).

A summary of medical validity periods appears in the table below.

Flight Crew Medical Validity Periods		
Permit/Licence/Rating	**Under Age 40**	**Age 40 or Above**
Student Pilot Permit	60 mths	60 mths
Gyroplane Pilot Permit	60 mths	24 mths
Ultralight Pilot Permit – Aeroplane	60 mths	60 mths
Passenger Carrying Ultralight – Aeroplane	60 mths	24 mths
Recreational Pilot Permit	60 mths	24 mths
Glider Pilot Licence	60 mths	60 mths
Balloon Pilot Licence	60 mths	24 mths
Private Pilot Licence – Aeroplane & Helicopter	60 mths	24 mths
Commercial Pilot Licence – Aeroplane & Helicopter	12 mths	12 mths *
Airline Transport Pilot Licence – Aeroplane & Helicopter	12 mths	12 mths *
Flight Engineer Licence	12 mths	12 mths
Flight Instructor Rating-Glider	60 mths	60 mths
Flight Instructor Rating – Ultralight Aeroplane	60 mths	60 mths

** For the holder of a commercial pilot licence or an airline transport pilot licence, the validity period of a medical certificate is reduced to 6 months if the holder is: 40 years of age or older and is engaged in a single-pilot operation with passengers on board; or is 60 years of age or older.*

Fig.5.1 **Summary of Medical Validity Periods**

In addition to a valid medical certificate, pilots must meet requirements, as set out in the CARs, for recency in order to exercise the privileges of their permit, licence or rating.

The recency requirements address three time periods consistent with flight crew medical validity periods: five years, two years, and six months. If a pilot wishes to act as pilot-in-command (PIC) or co-pilot of an aircraft, they must meet both the five-year and the two-year recency requirements. If they wish to carry passengers, they must also meet the six-month requirement.

For five-year recency, the pilot must have either:

1. Flown as pilot-in-command or co-pilot within the previous five years; or
2. Completed a flight review with an instructor and written and passed the Student Pilot Permit or Private Pilot Licence for Foreign and Military Applicants, Aviation Regulation Examination, (known as the PSTAR), within the previous 12 months.

For the 24-month recurrent training program, the pilot must have successfully completed a recurrent training program within the previous 24 months, and therefore meet one of the following seven conditions:

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

1. Complete a flight review with an instructor;
2. Attend a safety seminar conducted by TCCA;
3. Participate in a TCCA-approved recurrent training program;
4. Complete a self-paced study program;
5. Complete a training program or pilot proficiency check (PPC) as required by CARs Part IV, VI or VII;
6. Complete the requirements for the issue or renewal of a licence, permit or rating; or
7. Complete the written exam for a licence, permit or rating.

Pilots must also meet specific recency requirements for other aircraft categories, instrument ratings and passenger carrying operations, as per Section IV of the CARs.

5.1.4 Flight Experience

To meet Canadian aviation regulation requirements regarding flight training and flight proficiency, the following definitions apply.

DUAL INSTRUCTION FLIGHT TIME

This is the flight time during which a person is receiving flight instruction from a person qualified to provide it. Pilot flying time is flight time during which a licenced pilot, for proficiency purposes, shows to an instructor the required pilot-in-command (PIC) skills while carrying out duties as if they were the PIC of the aircraft. Pilot monitoring/pilot-not-flying time is flight time during which a licenced pilot, for proficiency purposes, shows to an instructor the required co-pilot (or second-in-command) skills while carrying out duties as if they were the co-pilot of the aircraft.

No person is authorized to give instruction unless they hold a flight instructor rating. Commercial or airline transport pilots (ATPs) may, however, give a check-out to a licenced pilot on a new type of aeroplane. Flying time in the logbook is entered as dual, pilot-in-command, or co-pilot in accordance with the duties the pilot performed.

SOLO FLIGHT TIME

This is the flight time necessary to acquire a flight permit, licence or rating. For a pilot, it is the time during which the pilot is the sole flight crew member. For a student pilot permit holder, it is the flight time during which the permit holder is the sole occupant of an aircraft while under the direction and supervision of a qualified flight instructor for the appropriate category of aircraft.

INSTRUMENT FLIGHT TIME

This is any flight time in an aircraft when flying by sole reference to the aircraft's flight instruments. This flight time is accumulated while operating under instrument flight rules (IFR) in instrument meteorological conditions (IMC). It also includes flying in visual meteorological conditions (VMC) during flight training when IFR conditions are being simulated by means of having the student wear a vision-limiting device.

INSTRUMENT GROUND TIME

This is instrument time in a TCCA-approved flight simulation training device (FSTD) for the purposes of flight training. For such instrument ground time to be recognized, the FSTD must be controlled by sole reference to its flight instruments.

PILOT-IN-COMMAND (PIC) FLIGHT TIME

This is flight time in an aircraft for which the pilot has full responsibility and authority for the operation and safety of that aircraft.

PIC UNDER SUPERVISION FLIGHT TIME

This is flight time, other than for receiving flight instruction, acquired by a co-pilot under a TCCA-approved pilot training program while acting as PIC under supervision of a PIC. It allows air operators to institute programs of supervision for co-pilots to credit flight time as PIC time.

CO-PILOT FLIGHT TIME

This is flight time as a co-pilot in an aircraft certified as requiring a co-pilot, as specified in the Pilot's Operating Handbook or by the air operator certificate (AOC). It may also be flight time in an aircraft that must be operated, in accordance with TCCA requirements, with a minimum of two crew.

5.1.5 Rules & Right-of-Way

The few basic rules outlined below do not by any means attempt to cover the entire subject of Air Traffic Regulations. It is vitally important that pilots keep themselves fully informed on current air traffic matters by reference to the advisory circulars issued regularly by Transport Canada and to amendments to the Canadian Aviation Regulations and the A.I.M. Canada.

It is the responsibility of the pilot not to fly his/her aircraft in such close proximity to another aircraft as to create a collision hazard.

When two aircraft are approaching head-on or approximately so, each should alter course to the right in order to avoid any danger of collision.

An aircraft overtaking another, whether climbing, descending or in horizontal flight, shall alter its heading to the right to pass on the right. **This is the only air traffic rule which differs from motor traffic regulations**. It shall not resume its original heading until it has entirely passed and is clear of the other aircraft.

When two aeroplanes are on converging courses at approximately the same altitude, the aeroplane that has the other on its right must give way. The aeroplane that has the right-of-way should maintain its course and speed but has, at the same time, a responsibility to take any such action that is necessary to avoid collision.

The aircraft that is required to give way shall not pass over or under or cross ahead of the other aircraft unless it does so at a distance sufficient not to create any risk of collision.

Based on their ability to maneuver, aircraft have priority for the right-of-way in the following order:

1. Fixed or free balloons.
2. Gliders.
3. Airships.
4. Power driven fixed wing or rotary wing aeroplanes.

An aeroplane towing another has priority over other aircraft having mechanical power.

If two aeroplanes are approaching to land at the same time, the aeroplane flying at the greater altitude must give way to the aeroplane at the lower altitude. However, the pilot of the

latter must not take advantage of this requirement to maneuver in front of another aircraft that is about to land. The pilot of a power driven aeroplane must give way to a motorless aeroplane, if both are approaching to land at the same time at the same airport.

No person shall take off or attempt to take off until there is no apparent risk of collision with any other aircraft.

An aircraft that is in flight or maneuvering on the ground or water must give way to another aircraft that is about to land.

Over the built-up area of any city, town or other settlement or over any open air assembly, the minimum altitude at which an aircraft may be flown is an altitude that will permit, in the event of an emergency, the landing of the aircraft without creating a hazard to persons or property on the ground. In any case, this minimum altitude may not be less than 1,000 feet above the highest obstacle within a radius of 2,000 feet from the aircraft.

Elsewhere than over the areas mentioned above, the minimum altitude is 500 feet above the highest obstacle within a radius of 500 feet from the aircraft.

Except when taking off or landing, an aeroplane may not be flown at a height of less than 2,000 feet over an aerodrome.

Single-engine aeroplanes in Canada may be flown over open water beyond gliding distance from the shore only if they are not engaged in a commercial air service.

5.1.6 Fuel Requirements

Any aircraft operated under VFR flight (see **Flight Rules**) must carry enough fuel to allow it to fly to its destination plus an additional 30 minutes at normal cruising speed when operated during the day. When operated at night, the aircraft must be able to fly an additional 45 minutes beyond its intended destination, at normal cruising speed.

In IFR conditions, fuel requirements are such that a propeller driven aircraft must be able to execute both an approach and a missed approach at its destination aerodrome, and still have enough reserve fuel to fly an extra 45 minutes. If an alternate aerodrome is specified in its flight plan or itinerary (see **Flight Plans and Itineraries**) then the aircraft must be able to fly to, and land at, its alternate aerodrome with 45 minutes of reserve fuel still on board the aircraft.

When determining fuel requirements, pilots must take into consideration taxiing time and possible take-off delays, weather conditions, possible air traffic delays, enging failure if flying a multi-engine aircraft, and any other foreseeable conditions that could delay the arrival of the aircraft to its destination aerodrome.

5.1.7 Night Requirements

Night is any period of time during which the centre of the sun is more than 6° below the horizon. That is, for any place where the sun rises and sets daily, it is the period between the end of evening civil twilight and the beginning of morning civil twilight. It may be taken as commencing not less than one half hour after sunset and ending one half hour before sunrise.

Sunrise occurs when the upper limb (edge) of the sun appears to be on the horizon. Sunset occurs when it is about to disappear. Times of sunrise, sunset and twilight at any place on any date may be found in the Air Almanac.

Night Equipment – Aeroplanes

Aircraft operating at night must be equipped with the following approved, serviceable and functioning flight instruments: an airspeed indicator, a sensitive pressure altimeter, a direct reading magnetic compass, a turn and bank indicator, a gyro magnetic compass or heading indicator (if the flight is to be conducted beyond the immediate vicinity of the airport), and a means to illuminate the flight instruments. An aircraft that is to be flown within the Northern Domestic Airspace must have on board a means of establishing direction that is not dependent on a magnetic source. Each crew member must have access to a reliable time piece and a functioning flashlight. Any aircraft operating in controlled airspace must be equipped with a functioning two-way radio communication system.

Night Lighting – Aeroplanes

Aeroplanes operating at night, in the air and while maneuvering on the ground, must also be equipped with a functioning navigation light system.

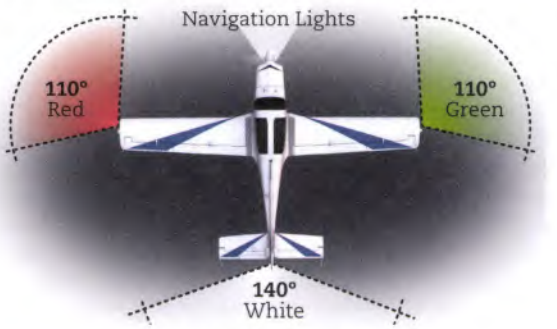


Fig.5.2 **Navigation Lights**

On the left wing tip, a steady **red** light and, on the right wing tip, a steady **green** light, each visible for 2 miles from dead ahead through an unobstructed angle of 110°. On the tail, in a position as far aft as possible, a single steady **white** light, visible for a distance of 2 miles through an angle of 140°. (If installation of a single light is impractical, two rear facing steady white lights may be displayed.)

An anti-collision light must also be installed on any aeroplane that will be operated at night. This high intensity flashing light may be either white or red or red/white segmented. It must be visible through 360° and project 30° above and below the horizontal plane of the aircraft.

Navigation lights must be displayed by all aircraft operating at night in Canada, and between sunset and sunrise in the U.S.

Between sunset and sunrise, an aircraft moored on the water and anchored to a fixed object either on land or in the water must display a white light visible in all directions for a distance of 2 miles unless it is moored at a place where aircraft are customarily moored (i.e. a seaplane base).

Anti-collision beacons should not be on while flying in dense cloud because of the possible flicker vertigo effect on the pilots. In any event, they should be switched off at the first indication of dizziness.

Fuselage lights, when installed, are white lights mounted on the top and bottom of the fuselage in line, spanwise, with the running lights on the wing tips.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

5.1.8 Over Water Flights

Seaplanes must be equipped with an approved life jacket for every person on board the aeroplane. An approved life jacket for an adult is one that is capable of providing a total buoyancy of at least 15.9 kg. It must also be equipped with a means of illumination for the purpose of facilitating the location of persons in the water.

All persons must be informed of the location and method of use of the life saving equipment carried for their use.

A single-engine land aeroplane may make an overwater flight if it remains within gliding distance of land. Beyond gliding distance (or 50 nautical miles) from land, it must be equipped with approved life jackets for all persons on board. If it is operating more than 100 nautical miles from shore, it must be equipped with a life raft(s) with sufficient capacity to accommodate all persons on board the aeroplane. The life raft must be equipped with emergency stores such as water purification tablets, food, flares, signal mirror, first aid kit, etc.

5.1.9 Aerobatics

Any maneuver intentionally performed by an aircraft, involving an abrupt change in its attitude, an abnormal attitude, or an abrupt variation in speed is considered to be aerobatic flight.

Aerobatics are not permitted over any urban or populous area. They are not permitted in controlled airspace or in any air route or over any assembly of people except with written authorization from Transport Canada. Aerobatics are permitted in uncontrolled airspace. Certain advisory areas, classified as Class F airspace, have been especially designated as areas in which aerobatics may be carried out.

The performance of aerobatics must not in any way constitute a hazard to air traffic.

Passengers may not be carried in an aircraft performing aerobatics unless the pilot-in-command of the aircraft has at least 10 hours dual flight instruction in the conducting of aerobatic maneuvers, or 20 hours conducting aerobatic maneuvers and at least one hour of conducting aerobatic maneuvers in the preceding six months.

Aerobatics should always be conducted at a safe altitude. The recovery from a practice spin should be made at an altitude not lower than 2,000 feet above the ground. Although there is no requirement that a pilot conducting aerobatic flight must wear a parachute, it is a recommended safety precaution.

5.1.10 Aircraft Occurrences

It is the responsibility of the pilot, operator, owner or any crew member involved to report an aircraft occurrence (accident or incident) as soon as possible to the Transportation Safety Board (TSB). Such a report may be made to the Regional TSB office or to the nearest flight service station or air traffic control unit who will pass on the information to the TSB.

A reportable aviation accident is defined as an occurrence associated with the operation of an aircraft that takes place between the time the first person boards the aircraft for the purpose of flight and the time the last person disembarks in which (1) any person suffers death or serious injury, or (2) the aircraft sustains substantial damage or is destroyed.

A reportable aviation incident is defined as an occurrence involving an aircraft with a gross weight of over 5,700 kg where an engine fails; smoke or fire occurs; a malfunction of an aircraft system causes difficulties in controlling the aircraft; fuel shortage or depressurization occurs; the aircraft is refuelled with incorrect fuel; there is loss of separation or risk of collision during the flight; or, during landing or take-off, there is failure of the aircraft to execute a safe and effective procedure.

In the case of an accident, the information to be reported includes the type, model, nationality and registration marks of the aircraft, the name of the owner or operator of the aircraft, the name of the pilot-in-command, the date and time of the accident, the last point of departure and the point of intended landing of the aircraft, the position of the aircraft with reference to some easily identified geographical point, the number of crew members and passengers and whether they were killed or seriously injured, the nature of the accident and the extent of damage to the aircraft, a description of any dangerous goods aboard the aircraft, the name and address of the person making the report.

If an aircraft is missing, a report with similar information should be filed with an FSS or ATC unit.

The police should be notified as soon as possible to secure and guard the accident site until the arrival of the investigating team. Except to rescue or remove survivors, extinguish a fire or to prevent danger to any person or property, nothing at the site should be touched or removed. The preservation of any marks on the ground or objects along the accident trail is also of critical importance.

The purpose of accident or incident investigation is to further aviation safety and to attempt to prevent recurrence of that type of occurrence through the dissemination of safety information. Therefore, assist accident investigators as much as possible as they try to determine the cause of the occurrence.

SECURITAS Program

A confidential aviation safety reporting system has been established by the TSB whose purpose is to enable aviation occurrences, deficiencies and discrepancies in the aviation system to be reported to the Board on a confidential basis. The TSB encourages pilots who are aware of such occurrences and deficiencies to report them to the TSB's SECURITAS office. Analysts use the reports to identify and make recommendations to correct safety deficiencies.

The legislation establishing the system prohibits the identification of the person submitting the report. In any legal or disciplinary proceedings arising from the report, the source is guaranteed anonymity.

5.1.11 Explosives & Dangerous Goods

Explosives or other dangerous articles or substances, including magnetized materials, may not be transported in an aeroplane except with permission from the Minister of Transport.

If such permission is granted, all applicable prescribed safety requirements must be met, the dangerous goods must be accompanied by all applicable prescribed documents, and the means of containment and transport must comply with all applicable prescribed safety standards and display all required safety markers.

5.2 Air Traffic Rules & Procedures

For flight within Canadian airspace, there are many procedures and regulations which pilots must know and which they must follow to ensure separation from other traffic and the safe and efficient operation of their own flight. Procedures and regulations are constantly under-going change and it is a pilot's responsibility to keep himself/herself informed of such changes by consulting the Canadian Aviation Regulations and the AIM.

For definitions of terms and services in Air Traffic Control, see the **Glossary**.

5.2.1 Air Traffic Services (ATS)

The air traffic control (ATC) and information services described below are provided by ATC through area control centres (ACCs), terminal control units (TCUs) and control towers (TWRs).

Airport control service is provided by airport TWRs to aircraft and vehicles on the maneuvering area of an airport and to aircraft operating in the vicinity of an airport.

Area control service is provided by ACCs to IFR and CVFR flights operating within specified control areas.

Terminal control service is provided by ACCs to IFR and CVFR flights operating within specified control areas. It is also provided by IFR units to VFR aircraft operating within Class C airspace.

Terminal Radar Service is provided by ATC units to IFR aircraft operating within the radar service area.

Alerting service notifies appropriate organizations regarding aircraft in need of search and rescue services, or alerts for crash equipment, ambulances, medical responders, and any other safety services.

Altitude reservation service provides mission planning support for altitude reservations (ALTRVs) and other military activities, airspace coordination for military or specialized operations in controlled airspace, coordination with user agencies and affected ATS units, and issuing approvals and clearances for aircraft to operate within approved ALTRVs.

Aircraft movement information service (AMIS) is provided by ACCs for the collection, processing and dissemination of aircraft movement information for use by air defence units relative to flights operating into or within Canadian Air Defence Identification Zones (ADIZ).

Flight Information Service is provided by ATC units to assist pilots by supplying information about known hazardous flight conditions. (See **Flight Information Service** in Chapter 8.)

5.2.2 Clearances & Instructions

An air traffic control clearance is an authorization from an ATC unit for an aircraft to proceed within controlled airspace under specific conditions. If you, as pilot, are unsure of the exact meaning of any part of an ATC clearance, you must ask for clarification before accepting it. Once you accept it, you are required to comply with an ATC clearance. You also must read back the text of the clearance if you are on an IFR flight. If VFR, you must read back the text of the clearance only if requested by ATC to do so.

A clearance is identified by use of some form of the word "clear" in its text.

Acceptance of an air traffic control clearance or instruction (below) does not relieve you, the pilot, of the responsibility of avoiding other traffic. If all or part of an air traffic control clearance is unacceptable to you, because, for example, of the operational capabilities of yourself or your aeroplane, you must so inform ATC and ask for other instructions. Even after accepting a clearance, if you subsequently find that you cannot comply, you should so inform ATC and ask for new directions. If you find it necessary to change speed, altitude or course while proceeding on an ATC clearance, you must inform ATC. Separation from other flights is predicated by ATC on the assumption that the clearance is being exactly followed.

An air traffic control instruction is a directive issued by an ATC unit for air traffic control purposes. You are required to comply with and acknowledge receipt of an ATC instruction which is directed to you provided the safety of the aircraft is not jeopardized. An instruction is always worded in such a way as to be readily identified, although the word "instruct" may not be used.

Provision is made for pilots to deviate from an ATC clearance or instruction to follow ACAS/TCAS (i.e. collision avoidance, see **Secondary Surveillance Radar**) resolution advisories. ATC must be informed as soon as possible of the deviation and the pilot should return quickly to the last ATC clearance or instruction received and accepted. ATC is not responsible for separation for an aircraft responding to an ACAS resolution advisory until the aircraft has returned to the last ATC clearance received and accepted or an alternate ATC clearance or instruction has been issued.

5.2.3 Position Reports

A position report is a report to ATC from an aeroplane en route made upon passing a reporting point. A position report must include identification of the aircraft, position, time of passing the reporting point, altitude, type of flight plan and destination. The estimated time of arrival at the destination or at the next reporting point may be included. That reporting point should be named (to identify the route).

Pilots on VFR flights are not required to make position reports but are encouraged to do so. These reports should be made to the nearest flight service station (FSS) or flight information centre (FIC).

A reporting point is a geographical location in relation to which the position of an aeroplane is reported. Compulsory reporting points are shown on radio facility charts as solid triangles (▲), non-compulsory reporting points as outline triangles (△). Reporting points are usually navigational aids such as a VOR. However, they may be non-directional radio beacons or the intersection of an omni radial with the radial which lies along the airway being flown. (In the latter case, an arrow indicates the direction of the intersection position line.)

5.2.4 Flight Rules

Visual flight rules (VFR) are the rules which apply when flying by means of visual reference to the ground.

Instrument flight rules (IFR) are the rules which apply when flying by means of reference to the instruments in the cockpit.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

NAV CANADA **CANADIAN FLIGHT PLAN AND FLIGHT ITINERARY** / **PLAN DE VOL ET ITINÉRAIRE DE VOL CANADIEN** — **ICAO FLIGHT PLAN** / **PLAN DE VOL OACI**

PRIORITY / PRIORITÉ: << ≡ FF →
ADDRESSEE(S) / DESTINATAIRE(S):
FILING TIME / HEURE DE DÉPÔT:
ORIGINATOR / EXPÉDITEUR:
SPECIFIC IDENTIFICATION OF ADDRESSEE(S) AND/OR ORIGINATOR / IDENTIFICATION PRÉCISE DU(DES) DESTINATAIRE(S) ET/OU DE L'EXPÉDITEUR:

3 MESSAGE TYPE / TYPE DE MESSAGE: << ≡ (FPL
7 AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION / IDENTIFICATION DE L'AÉRONEF: – C F - X Y Z
8 FLIGHT RULES / RÈGLES DE VOL: – I
TYPE OF FLIGHT / TYPE DE VOL: G <<
9 NUMBER / NOMBRE: –
TYPE OF AIRCRAFT / TYPE D'AÉRONEF: C 1 7 2
WAKE TURBULENCE CAT. / CAT. DE TURBULENCE DE SILLAGE: / L
10 EQUIPMENT / ÉQUIPEMENT: – /SD/C <<≡
13 DEPARTURE AERODROME / AÉRODROME DE DÉPART: – C Y X D
TIME / HEURE: 2 0 3 0 <<≡
15 CRUISING SPEED / VITESSE DE CROISIÈRE: N 0 1 4 0
ALTITUDE / LEVEL / NIVEAU: A → 080
ROUTE / ROUTE: V301 YYC V304 YEA A05ON140 RIB YYN
V300 YXB V304 YWG
<<≡
16 DESTINATION AERODROME / AÉRODROME DE DESTINATION: – C Y W G
TOTAL EET / DURÉE TOTALE ESTIMÉE DAYS/JOURS HRS MINS: 0 5 3 0
SAR HRS MINS:
ALTN AERODROME / AÉRODROME DE DÉGAGEMENT: → C Y Q K
2ND ALTN AERODROME / 2e AÉRODROME DE DÉGAGEMENT: → C Y Y I <<≡
18 OTHER INFORMATION / RENSEIGNEMENTS DIVERS: –
)<<≡

19
ENDURANCE / AUTONOMIE HRS MINS: – E/ 0 5 2 0
PERSONS ON BOARD / PERSONNES À BORD: →P/ 0 0 4
EMERGENCY RADIO / RADIO DE SECOURS: →R/ UHF [X] VHF [DE] ELT [DE] ELT TYPE / TYPE D'ELT: A F
SURVIVAL EQUIPMENT / ÉQUIPEMENT DE SURVIE: POLAR POLAIRE [S] / DESERT DÉSERT [X] MARITIME MARITIME [X] JUNGLE JUNGLE [X]
JACKETS / GILETS DE SAUVETAGE: → J / LIGHT LAMPES [L] FLUORES FLUORES [X] UHF [X] VHF [V]
DINGHIES / CANOTS: → [X] / NUMBER NOMBRE: CAPACITY CAPACITÉ: COVER COUVERTURE [X] → COLOUR COULEUR: <<≡
AIRCRAFT COLOUR AND MARKINGS / COULEUR ET MARQUES DE L'AÉRONEF: A / BLUE WITH WHITE TRIM
WHEELS ROUES: X SEAPLANE HYDRAVION: – SKIS: – AMPHIBIAN AMPHIBIE: –
REMARKS / REMARQUES: → [X] /
<<≡
AN ARRIVAL REPORT WILL BE FILED WITH / UN COMPTE RENDU D'ARRIVÉE SERA NOTIFIÉ À: WINNIPEG TOWER BY RADIO
NAME AND PHONE NUMBER OR ADDRESS OF PERSONS(S) OR COMPANY TO BE NOTIFIED IF SEARCH AND RESCUE ACTION INITIATED / NOM ET NUMÉRO DE TÉLÉPHONE OU ADRESSE DE LA (DES) PERSONNE(S) OU COMPAGNIE À AVISER SI DES RECHERCHES SONT ENTREPRISES: SUNRISE AVIATORS LTD. WINNIPEG, MB., (204) 555-1234
PILOT-IN-COMMAND / PILOTE COMMANDANT DE BORD: C / AYR C. KNOT
PILOT'S LICENCE NO. / N° DE LICENCE DU PILOTE: AT0001)<<≡

FILED BY / DÉPOSÉ PAR
SPACE RESERVED FOR ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS / ESPACE RÉSERVÉ À DES FINS SUPPLÉMENTAIRES

NAVCAN26-0516 (2004-01)

Fig.5.3 **Sample ICAO Flight Plan for Canada**

An IFR flight plan has been chosen as an example because it meets all the complete requirements for flight planning. The VFR flight plans are somewhat less detailed. In the example here, the aircraft is an C172 with standard NAV/COM equipment (VHF, VOR, ILS) and a DME and a transponder with Mode A and Mode C. Its departure is CYXD (Edmonton, AB) at a proposed time of 2030 UTC. Its cruising speed will be 140 knots at an initial cruidsing altitude of 80 (8,000 feet) via V301 (Victor airway 301) to YYC (Calgary, AB), then via V304 (Victor airway 304) to YEA (Empress, AB). From this point, the cruising altitude will be 50 (5,000 feet) via R18 (Romeo airway 18) to YYN (Swift Current, SK), then via V300 (Victor airway 300) to YXB (Broadview, SK), and then via V304 (Victor airway 304 (Victor airway 304) to the point of first intended landing, CYWG (Winnipeg, MB). Alternate airports are CYQK (Kenora, ON) and CYYI (Rivers, MB). Emergency and survival equipment that are crossed out indicate that these items are not carried on board the aircraft. Other portions of the sample flight plan should be self-explanatory.

It is the responsibility of the pilot-in-command to determine whether a flight will be conducted in accordance with visual or instrument flight rules.

IFR flight is only permissible when the pilot has a valid instrument rating and the aeroplane is suitably instrument and radio equipped for IFR flight.

While many references are made to IFR flight in this textbook, a description of the rules for visual flight is the primary focus throughout this publication.

5.2.5 Flight Plans & Itineraries

For any VFR flight that will be conducted beyond a radius of 25 nautical miles from the airport of departure, the pilot-in-command is required to file an ICAO-standard (International Civil Aviation Organization) VFR flight plan or a VFR flight itinerary with an ATS unit such as an air traffic control (ATC) unit, a flight service station (FSS), a flight information centre (FIC), or a community aerodrome radio station (CARS). The pilot also has the option of leaving a flight itinerary with a responsible person who will notify Search and Rescue in the event that the flight is overdue.

Notwithstanding the above, a VFR flight plan must be filed for any flight to or from a military aerodrome. (Prior permission from the military authorities is also required before landing at a military field.) As described further into this section, a VFR flight plan must also be filed for any transborder flight between Canada and a foreign state, the United States included, as well as for any flight that will penetrate an Air Defence Identification Zone.

After filing of the flight plan, a VFR flight plan or flight itinerary should normally be opened (i.e. activated) with a TWR, an FSS, an FIC or a CARS upon departure. Opening of the filed flight plan activates the alerting service. If an extension or a cancellation to the flight plan or flight itinerary is not received by the proposed departure time identified in the flight plan or flight itinerary, ATS will activate the flight plan or flight itinerary using the estimated departure time as the actual departure time.

VFR Flight Plan

To complete a flight plan, required information must be inserted into the appropriate boxes on the flight plan form. Flight plans may be filed through NavCanada's Internet flight planning system (known as the Collaborative Flight Planning System, CFPS) where it is possible to file, amend, delay or cancel flight plans online. Flight plan filing may also be accomplished through web-based services or flight support Apps that have licence agreements with NavCanada for the filing of flight plans.

A flight plan should contain the following information:

1. Type of flight plan (e.g. VFR).
2. Aircraft identification (i.e. registration), colour and markings. If the flight is a MEDEVAC, the suffix /M should be entered after the call sign.
3. The type of aircraft and the type of navigation (NAV), communication (COMM), and secondary surveillane radar (SSR) equipment expressed by means of the equipment codes that follow in the list below. Note: the first suffixes must indicate the NAV/COM equipment followed by an oblique stroke and another suffix to denote SSR (surveillance) equipment.

Code	Equipment
N	No NAV/COMM/Approach equipment
S	Standard (VHF, VOR and ILS)
D	DME
F	ADF
G	GNSS
H	HF RTF
I	INS
J	Data Link
K	MLS
L	ILS
O	VOR
R	PBN
T	TACAN
U	UHF
V	VHF
W	RVSM Certification
X	MNPS Certification
Y	VHF with 8.33 kHz channel spacing.
Z	Other Equipment

Fig.5.4 **Nav/Comm Equipment**

If the letter Z is used, specify in "Other Information" what other equipment is carried.

Code	Equipment
N	Nil or equipment unserviceable.
A	Transponder, Mode A.
C	Transponder, Mode A and Mode C.
E	Transponder, Mode S with aircraft identification, pressure-altitude and extended squitter (ADS-B) capability.
H	Transponder, Mode S with aircraft identification, pressure-altitude and enhanced surveillance capability.
I	Transponder, Mode S with aircraft identification but no pressure-altitude capability.
L	Transponder, Mode S with aircraft identification, pressure-altitude, extended squitter (ADS-B) and enhanced surveillance capability.
P	Transponder, Mode S with pressure altitude transmission but no aircraft identification capability.
S	Transponder, Mode S with both pressure altitude and aircraft identification capability.
X	Transponder, Mode S without both aircraft identification or pressure altitude transmission.
B1	ADS-B with dedicated 1090 MHz ADS-B Out capability.
B2	ADS-B with dedicated 1090 MHz ADS-B Out and In capability.
U1	ADS-B Out capability using UAT.
U2	ADS-B Out and In capability using UAT.
V1	ADS-B Out capability using VDL Mode 4.
V2	ADS-B Out and In capability using VDL Mode 4.
D1	ADS-C with FANS 1/A capabilities.
G1	ADS-C with ATN capabilities.

Fig.5.5 **SSR Equipment Codes**

For Example:

C172/OV/N — a Cessna 172 with VOR and VHF only and no transponder

PA46/SDH/C — a Piper Malibu with VHF, ADF, VOR, ILS, DME, HF and transponder with Mode A and C

4. Cruising speed in knots.
5. Point of departure, using the 3 or 4 letter identifier of the aerodrome.
6. Flight altitude/level and route (on the VFR flight plan, it is necessary only to indicate VFR).
7. Destination airport.
8. Time of departure (UTC) — proposed/actual.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

9. Estimated elapsed time (EET) en route expressed in hours and minutes.
10. Alternate airports.
11. Fuel on board expressed in hours and minutes.
12. Type of emergency locator transmitter.

ELT Type	ELT Meaning
Type A or AD	automatic ejectable or automatic deployable.
Type F or AF	fixed or automatic fixed.
Type AP	automatic portable.
Type P	personnel.
Type W or S	water activated or survival.

Fig.5.6 **ELT Equipment Codes**

13. The type of communication equipment to be used en route. If standard frequencies are used, specify VHF, UHF or HF as appropriate. Frequencies other than standard should be listed. The word RONLY means receiver only or the word NORDO means no radio.
14. The total number of persons on board at the point of first departure.
15. Pilot's name, and pilot's licence number.
16. Name and address of aircraft owner.
17. Other information such as whether the aircraft is on wheels or skis, is a seaplane or amphibian, duration of stops, the nature of any hazardous or dangerous cargo on board. When the point of departure is from a location without air/ground communication with ATS, it is required to include in the "Other Information" section a telephone number that may be used by ATS to conduct communication searches if the flight is overdue.
18. SAR time. This block is used when the pilot requires a SAR time which is different than the SAR time that is automatically provided (1 hour for a VFR flight plan and 24 hours for a flight itinerary).
19. Where the arrival report is to be filed. If the flight is to a remote location, it is necessary to include specific information on how the arrival report will be filed. For example: XY tower — telephone — MacKay farm — Anytown. When the pilot has filed a flight plan, search and rescue services will be alerted if the aircraft is overdue by 1 hour. The pilot may specify a preferred SAR initiation time if he/she wishes it to be other than the automatic 1 hour.
20. Customs notification if the flight is a transborder flight, number of U.S. and non U.S. citizens on board.
21. Survival equipment (type, jackets, dinghies).

A flight plan may be telephoned to an FSS/FIC (call 1-866-WX-BRIEF). If telephoning is impossible, a VFR flight plan may be filed by radio with the nearest FSS/FIC as soon as practical after take-off. However, it is not advisable, because of possible overloading, to use the air/ground communication frequencies for filing flight plans when any alternate method is available.

A single flight plan may be filed for a flight that will include one or more stop-overs as long as the stop-overs are of short duration (e.g. boarding passengers, refuelling, etc.). The stops must be indicated by name on the route section of the flight plan form; the duration of each stop must be indicated in the other information section. When intermediate stop-overs are planned, the estimated elapsed time must be calculated as the total time to the destination, including the duration of each stop-over.

A composite flight plan may be filed for a flight within Canadian airspace. Such flight plans describe parts of the route as operating under VFR and other parts of the route as operating under IFR. The rules that govern VFR shall apply to the VFR portions of the flight and the rules that govern IFR shall apply to the IFR portions of the flight.

A pilot who files IFR for the first part of a flight and VFR for the next part will be cleared by ATC to the point within controlled airspace at which the IFR part of the flight ends. A pilot who files VFR for the first part of a flight and IFR for the next part is expected to contact the appropriate ATC unit for clearance prior to approaching the point where the IFR portion of the flight commences. If direct contact with an ATC unit is not possible, the pilot may request ATC clearance through an FIC. Until ATC clearance for IFR is received and acknowledged by the pilot, the flight must continue to be flown under conditions for VFR flight.

An Arrival Report and closing of a flight plan, (i.e. reporting your arrival) must be submitted to an ATC unit or to an FSS/FIC or CARS within one hour after landing or at the SAR initiation time specified in your flight plan. If this is not done, the alerting service of the FSS/FIC or the ATC unit will contact stations along your intended route and if they are unable to obtain information as to your whereabouts, they will contact the search and rescue service. In the event that you have had to terminate your VFR flight at an aerodrome other than the one to which the flight was planned or if you have had to make any changes in the flight route, ETA, etc., you must notify ATC as soon as possible of the change in the flight plan. Alerting service and subsequent search and rescue action is based on the estimated elapsed time indicated in the flight plan.

The pilot is at all times responsible for the closing of his/her flight plan and should never assume that the tower personnel will automatically file an arrival report. An arrival report should include (1) the aircraft registration, (2) the type of flight plan, (3) the aerodrome of departure, the date and time of arrival and (4) the aerodrome of arrival.

Pilots who plan to file an arrival report from a remote location, such as a farm, ranch, lake, etc., must be sure that adequate communication facilities are available at destination to permit the filing of the report.

Once you have filed a flight plan or a flight itinerary, follow it. If a deviation from your intended route or altitude becomes necessary, advise ATC or an FSS/FIC as soon as practicable of the intended change. If the flight is being conducted in controlled airspace, you must receive an air traffic control clearance before making the intended change. Search and rescue operations are conducted based on the information in the flight plan. If you have deviated from your flight plan and are involved in a crash or forced landing, rescue planes may lose valuable time searching for you in the wrong place.

Flight Itinerary

With the exception of VFR flight to and from a military aerodrome or flight within an identification zone, pilots have the option of filing a VFR flight itinerary in lieu of a VFR flight plan. A flight itinerary must be filed with a responsible person, an ATC unit, an FSS/FIC or a CARS. A responsible person is an individual who has agreed to notify the proper authorities in the event that the flight is overdue. (The proper authorities are an ATC unit, an FSS/FIC, a CARS or a Rescue Co-ordination Centre.) The pilot filing a flight itinerary has the option of specifying an SAR initiation time. If no such specific time is specified, SAR services will

be alerted automatically if no arrival report has been filed by 24 hours after its expected time of arrival.

A flight itinerary should contain the same information as a flight plan not least with an emphasis on the following:

1. Aircraft registration and type.
2. Estimated duration of flight and ETA at destination.
3. Route of flight or the specific boundaries of the area of flight operations.
4. Location of overnight stops, if applicable.

Upon the termination of a flight for which a flight itinerary was filed, the pilot must file an arrival report with ATS, if the itinerary was filed with ATS, or with the responsible person with whom the itinerary was filed. The arrival report must be filed within 24 hours of the ETA specified on the flight itinerary or by the SAR initiation time, if that option was exercised by the pilot. The pilot on a flight itinerary who realizes that his/her ETA will be later than that specified on the flight itinerary should make every possible attempt to contact ATS about the delay so that an unnecessary SAR is not undertaken.

5.2.6 Transborder Flights

A flight plan must be filed for any flight that crosses the border into, or that returns from, the United States as well as any flight to or from any foreign state other than the United States. ATS does not accept flight itineraries, composite flight plans or CVFR flight plans for flights between Canada and the U.S.

All pilots crossing the U.S. border in either direction are required to transmit electronically (via the Internet) to the U.S. Custom and Border Protection (CBP), via the CBP's Electronic Advance Passenger Information System (eAPIS), passenger manifest information for each individual travelling onboard the aircraft, as well as aircraft and trip information. The data in the manifests must be received by eAPIS no later than 60 minutes before departing from, or arriving into, the U.S. Pilots can file with eAPIS as far in advance as they wish. An approval from eAPIS must be received by the pilot before take-off. Pilots overflying the U.S. on a Canada-to-Canada flight, or who are overflying Canada on a U.S.-to-U.S. flight do not require eAPIS.

To be an eAPIS user, pilots must be enrolled with the service, and thus have an account, before it can be used to file reports. It is, therefore, advisable that any pilot planning a cross-border flight, enroll well in advance of their planned departure to ensure that they are signed up to use the service.

For flights to the U.S. from Canada, direct contact must be made with agents from the U.S. CBP at least two hours before arriving into the U.S. For flight from the U.S. into Canada, direct contact must be made with the Canadian Border Services Agency (CBSA), via CANPASS (1-888-CANPASS), also at least two hours (but not more than 40 hours) before arriving into Canada. In either case, this contact must be made to arrange for customs inspection. An eAPIS report itself is not sufficient for ensuring that a customs agent will be present for inspection upon arrival.

A Mode A and C transponder and a communication radio are required by the U.S. government to cross the U.S. border in either direction. Pilots must be in communication with the governing ATC agency (i.e. the FAA in the U.S. or NavCanada in Canada) before crossing, and as they cross, the border. The ATC agency will issue a unique transponder code that aircraft must squawk on the transponder as they cross the border.

The first cross-border landing in either direction after taking off must be made at a customs User Fee Airport (in the U.S.) or an Airport of Entry (AOE) in Canada. Upon landing, you must not leave your aeroplane until customs and immigration officers arrive at the airport to clear you. On transborder flights, you must have your pilot's licence in your possession and the aeroplane registration and airworthiness certificates must be on board.

The CANPASS – Private Aircraft program simplifies customs clearance at airports in Canada for low-risk travelers arriving in the country from the U.S. Private aircraft that meet the requirements of the CANPASS – Private Aircraft program can land at any AOE at any time that the airport is open, regardless of the hours of operation of the local CBSA office. The aircraft can also land at a designated CANPASS-only airport. The pilot of the aircraft must report all passengers and their goods on behalf of the aircraft and can do so via a telephone reporting centre (TRC) by calling the 1-888-CANPASS number at least 2 hours before but no more than 48 hours prior to the aircraft's estimated time of arrival in Canada. The TRC allows individuals who enter Canada by private or corporate aircraft to report their arrival and make their declarations to the CBSA by telephone.

To have CANPASS – Private Aircraft privileges, the aircraft may not carry more than 15 people (including the crew), and the pilot cannot charge passengers a fee for passage when using CANPASS privileges. The pilot must ensure that all passengers have the appropriate travel documents for entering Canada.

During that first telephone call to the TRC, the pilot must provide the following information to the CBSA:

1. the estimated time of arrival (ETA);
2. the aircraft tail number/registration number;
3. the full name, date of birth and citizenship of all persons on board;
4. passport and visa information of passengers (including the crew), if applicable;
5. the destination, purpose of the trip and length of stay in Canada for non-residents;
6. the landing point (must be an AOE or CANPASS-only airport);
7. the length of absence for each passenger who is a returning resident of Canada;
8. a declaration of all goods being imported, including firearms and weapons;
9. a declaration of all currency and/or monetary instruments totaling CAN$10,000 or more;
10. for returning residents of Canada, a report of all repairs or modifications made to goods (including the aircraft) while outside Canada.

If the ETA changes by more than 30 minutes or if there are any changes to the point of arrival, to the list of passengers or to their declarations, the pilot must advise the TRC prior to arrival in Canada.

The pilot must remain at the point of arrival until the ETA reported to the TRC has elapsed. No second call to the TRC is required. If there is no customs officer waiting to meet the aircraft upon its arrival at the reported ETA or actual time of arrival, whichever is later, the aircraft may proceed to the final destination and passengers may disembark.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

In addition to the above, the pilot is responsible for ensuring that all persons being transported into Canada on board the aircraft are in possession of all travel documents required by law.

Non-CANPASS permit holders must arrive during customs office hours at a designated AOE and must contact CANPASS in the same way as permit holders. In addition, non-permit holders must contact CANPASS a second time upon arrival to inform an officer of their arrival. The officer will then indicate to the non-permit holder whether they are free to enter Canada or whether they must wait for a customs officer for completion of documentation and aircraft inspection. No one is permitted to leave the aircraft until authorization is given by customs to do so.

5.2.7 Cruising Altitudes

Cruising altitudes appropriate to the direction of flight must be maintained at all times regardless of whether a flight plan has, or has not, been filed.

In the Southern Domestic Airspace, cruising altitudes are based on magnetic tracks. In the Northern Domestic Airspace, cruising altitudes are based on true tracks. Altitudes below 18,000 feet ASL are stated in thousands of feet. Altitudes at or above this altitude are referred to as flight levels examples of which are: FL 180 (i.e. 18,000 feet), FL 210 (i.e. 21,000 feet), FL330 (i.e. 33,000 feet), etc.

On airways, IFR cruising altitudes are assigned by ATC. In uncontrolled airspace, a cruising altitude appropriate to the track of the flight must be chosen by the pilot-in-command and it must be maintained. The pilot-in-command of an aircraft operating within controlled airspace between 18,000 feet ASL and FL 600 (i.e. 60,000 feet) inclusive, must ensure that the aircraft is operated in accordance with IFR unless otherwise authorized.

VFR and IFR cruising altitudes and cruising flight levels are summarized in the table below.

Cruising Altitudes for 18,000 Feet and Below			
Aircraft Track of 000° to 179° (East)		**Aircraft Track of 180° to 359° (West)**	
IFR & CVFR	VFR	IFR & CVFR	VFR
1,000	--	2,000	--
3,000	3,500	4,000	4,500
5,000	5,500	6,000	6,500
7,000	7,500	8,000	8,500
9,000	9,500	10,000	10,500
11,000	11,500	12,000	12,500
13,000	13,500	14,000	14,500
15,000	15,500	16,000	16,500
17,000	17,500		
Cruising Flight Levels for FL 180 and Above			
FL 190	FL 190	FL 180	FL 180
FL 210	FL 210	FL 200	FL 200
FL 230	FL 230	FL 220	FL 220
FL 250	FL 250	FL 240	FL 240
FL 270	FL 270	FL 260	FL 260
FL 290	--	FL 280	FL 280
FL 330	--	FL 310	--
FL 370	--	FL 350	--
FL 410	--	FL 390	--
etc.	--	etc.	--

Fig.5.7 **Summary of Cruising Altitudes & Cruising Flight Levels**

Cruising Altitudes – Canada

VFR CRUISING ALTITUDES

VFR Cruising Altitudes Below 12,000 Feet ASL On or Off Airways	
Aircraft Track	**Altitude to be Flown**
000° to 179°	ODD thousands plus 500 feet For example: 3,500', 5,500', 7,500' ASL, etc.
180° to 359°	EVEN thousands plus 500 feet For example: 4,500', 6,500', 8,500' ASL, etc.

Fig.5.8 **VFR Cruising Altitudes & Cruising Flight Levels Below 12,000 Feet ASL**

At altitudes below 12,000 feet ASL (on or off airways), the altitudes shown in the table below must be flown. Note that, in level cruising flight at or below 3,000 feet AGL, the specified cruising altitudes are not compulsory but should be flown if practicable.

At altitudes above 12,000 feet but below 18,000 feet ASL (in uncontrolled airspace), the altitude shown in the table below must be flown.

VFR Cruising Altitudes Above 12,000 Feet and Below 18,000 Feet ASL In Uncontrolled Airspace	
Aircraft Track	**Altitude to be Flown**
000° to 179°	ODD thousands plus 500 feet For example: 13,500', 15,500', 17,500' ASL
180° to 359°	EVEN thousands plus 500 feet For example: 12,500', 14,500', 16,500', ASL

Fig.5.9 **VFR Cruising Altitudes Above 12,000 Feet & Below 18,000 Feet ASL**

At altitudes above 18,000 feet ASL but below FL 290 (in uncontrolled airspace), the altitudes shown in the table below must be flown. (Note that this is uncontrolled airspace only in Northern Domestic Airspace. In Southern Domestic Airspace, this is Class A airspace and, therefore, it is controlled IFR airspace.)

VFR Cruising Altitudes Above 18,000 Feet ASL and Below FL 290 In Uncontrolled Airspace	
Aircraft Track	**Altitude to be Flown**
000° to 179°	ODD flight levels For example: FL 190, FL 210, FL 230, etc.
180° to 359°	EVEN Flight levels For example: FL 180, FL 200, FL 220, etc

Fig.5.10 **VFR Cruising Altitudes Above 18,000 Feet ASL & Below FL 290**

CVFR IN CLASS B AIRSPACE

In Class B airspace between 12,500 feet and 18,000 feet ASL, VFR flights are controlled, (thus, they are CVFR), they are assigned cruising altitudes and their altitudes must be flown as shown in the table below.

CVFR Cruising Altitudes Between 12,500 Feet and 18,000 Feet ASL On Airways	
Aircraft Track	**Altitude to be Flown**
000° to 179°	ODD thousands For example: 13,000', 15,000', 17,000' ASL
180° to 359°	EVEN thousands For example: 14,000', 16,000', ASL

Fig.5.11 **CVFR Cruising Altitudes Between 12,500 Feet & 18,000 Feet ASL**

IFR CRUISING ALTITUDES

In controlled airspace, the altitude or flight level to be flown is the one assigned by air traffic control. In uncontrolled airspace, when operating IFR in level cruising flight, the altitude or flight level must be appropriate to the direction of flight as shown in the tables below.

IFR Cruising Altitudes Below FL 290 In Controlled and Uncontrolled Airspace	
Aircraft Track	**Altitude to be Flown**
000° to 179°	ODD thousands or flight levels For example: 3,000', 5,000' ASL, or FL 190, FL 210, etc.
180° to 359°	EVEN thousands or flight levels For example: 2,000', 4,000' ASL, etc., or FL 200, FL 220, etc.

Fig.5.12 **IFR Cruising Altitudes Below FL 290**

IFR Cruising Altitudes Above FL 290	
Aircraft Track	**Altitude to be Flown**
000° to 179°	At 4,000' intervals beginning at 29,000' pressure altitude For example: FL 290, FL 330, FL 370, etc.
180° to 359°	At 4,000' intervals beginning at 31,000' pressure altitude For example: FL 310, FL 350, FL 390, etc.

Fig.5.13 **IFR Cruising Altitudes Above FL 290**

RVSM Cruising Altitudes Above FL 290	
Aircraft Track	**Altitude to be Flown**
000° to 179°	At 2,000' intervals beginning at FL 290 For example: FL 290, FL 310, FL 330, FL 350, FL 370, FL 390, FL 410
180° to 359°	At 2,000' intervals beginning at FL 310 For example: FL 310, FL 330, FL 350, FL 370, FL 390, FL 430, FL 470

Fig.5.14 **RVSM Cruising Altitudes Above FL 290**

Cruising Altitudes – United States

Cruising altitudes in the U.S. are slightly different from those in Canada and are listed in the FAA FAR/AIM. Note that whereas Canada refers to altitudes ASL (above sea level), the U.S. refers to altitudes MSL (mean sea level).

VFR CRUISING ALTITUDES

At altitudes below FL 290 and above 3,000 feet AGL, the altitudes to be flown are shown in the table below.

VFR Cruising Altitudes Below FL 290 and Above 3,000 Feet AGL On or Off Airways	
Aircraft Track	**Altitude to be Flown**
000° to 179°	ODD thousands MSL plus 500 feet For example: 3,500', 5,500', 7,500' MSL... FL 235, FL 255, FL 275
180° to 359°	EVEN thousands MSL plus 500 fee- For example: 4,500', 6,500', 8,500' MSL... FL 245, FL 265, FL 285

Fig.5.15 **VFR Cruising Altitudes Below FL 290 & Above 3,000 Feet AGL**

At altitudes above FL 290, pilots must maintain the altitude or flight level assigned by ATC, such as in the table below.

VFR Cruising Altitudes Above FL 290 On or Off Airways	
Aircraft Track	**Altitude to be Flown**
000° to 179°	At 4,000' intervals beginning at 30,000' pressure altitude For example: FL 300, FL 340, FL 380
180° to 359°	At 4,000' intervals beginning at 32,000' pressure altitude For example: FL 320, FL 360, FL 400

Fig.5.16 **VFR Cruising Altitudes Above FL 290**

IFR CRUISING ALTITUDES

In controlled airspace, pilots operating an aircraft in level cruise flight must maintain the altitude or flight level assigned to their aircraft by ATC, such as in the table below.

IFR Cruising Altitudes Below FL 290 On or Off Airways	
Aircraft Track	**Altitude to be Flown**
000° to 179°	ODD thousands For example: 1,000', 3,000' MSL... FL 190, FL 210, etc.
180° to 359°	EVEN thousands For example: 2,000', 4,000' MSL... FL 180, FL 200, etc.

Fig.5.17 **IFR Cruising Altitudes Below FL 290**

At altitudes above FL 290, the altitudes to be flown are shown in the table below.

IFR Cruising Altitudes Above FL 290 On or Off Airways	
Aircraft Track	**Altitude to be Flown**
000° to 179°	At 4,000' intervals beginning at 29,000' pressure altitude For example: FL 290, FL 330, FL 370, etc.
180° to 359°	At 4,000' intervals beginning at 31,000' pressure altitude For example: FL 310, FL 350, FL 390, etc.

Fig.5.18 **IFR Cruising Altitudes Above FL 290**

Minimum Cruising Altitudes

Minimum Obstruction Clearance Altitude (MOCA) — the minimum MSL altitude along an airway segment which will permit the aeroplane to clear obstructions by 1,000 ft.

Minimum Enroute Altitude (MEA) — the minimum MSL altitude which will clear obstructions and also permit satisfactory radio reception. It is the minimum altitude to be considered for IFR flight plans. (See Table of **VHF Reception Distance**.)

Both MOCA and MEA are indicated on IFR En Route Charts.

5.2.8 Cruising Speeds

All Canadian controlled airspace below 10,000 feet ASL is considered as a "speed limit area", and all aircraft must conform to the regulations pertaining to operation within this area.

Within 10 nautical miles of a controlled airport and at an altitude of less than 3,000 feet AGL, aeroplanes may be flown at an indicated airspeed no greater than 200 knots.

In controlled airspace but beyond the 10 nautical mile limit around controlled airports and below 10,000 feet ASL, aeroplanes may be flown in a climb, descent or in level flight at an indicated airspeed no greater than 250 knots, unless otherwise authorized by an ATC clearance or instruction.

Only if the minimum safe speed for a particular aircraft is greater than the above mentioned speeds, may the aircraft be operated at a higher speed.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

5.2.9 Weather Minima for VFR Flight

Weather minima references, as shown in Fig.5.19, are the established boundaries about which minimum criteria exists for aircraft to remain in VFR flight. The criteria relate to the following:

1. Vertical distance above cloud
2. Vertical distance below cloud
3. Horizontal distance from cloud
4. Height above the surface/ground
5. Ceiling (i.e. distance from the surface to the cloud base)
6. Visibility

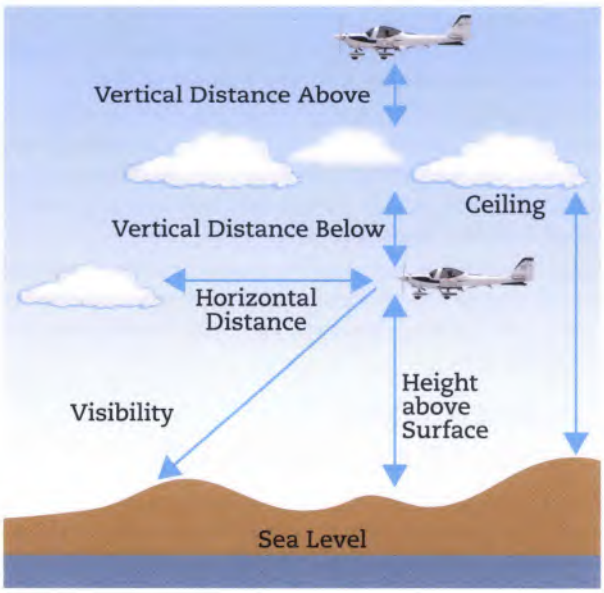


Fig.5.19 **Weather Minima References**

Within Control Zones

Weather minima for flight in control zones are described in the table below. Aircraft must always be operated with visual reference to the surface. They shall be operated at a height above the surface and at a distance from any cloud that is not less than as shown in the following table.

Weather Minima within Control Zones	
Reference	**Minima**
Flight Visibility & Ground Visibility (when reported)	Not less than 3 miles
Distance from Cloud	Vertically: 500' Horizontally: 1 mile
Height above Surface	500' AGL

Fig.5.20 **Weather Minima within Control Zones**

Within Controlled Airspace

Weather minima for flight in controlled airspace are shown in the table below.

Weather Minima within Controlled Airspace	
Reference	**Minima**
Flight Visibility & Ground Visibility (when reported)	Not less than 3 miles
Distance from Cloud	Vertically: 500' Horizontally: 1 mile

Fig.5.21 **Weather Minima within Controlled Airspace**

Within Uncontrolled Airspace

Weather minima for flight in uncontrolled airspace are shown in the tables below.

Weather Minima within Uncontrolled Airspace At or Above 1,000 Feet AGL	
Reference	**Minima**
Flight Visibility by Day	Not less than 1 mile
Flight Visibility at Night	Not less than 3 miles
Distance from Cloud	Vertically: 500' Horizontally: 2,000'

Fig.5.22 **Weather Minima within Uncontrolled Airspace from 1,000 Feet & Above**

Weather Minima within Uncontrolled Airspace (Except Helicopters) Below 1,000 Feet AGL	
Reference	**Minima**
Flight Visibility by Day	Not less than 2 miles
Flight Visibility at Night	Not less than 3 miles
Distance from Cloud	Clear of Cloud

Fig.5.23 **Weather Minima within Uncontrolled Airspace below 1,000 Feet AGL – Non-helicopters**

Weather Minima within Uncontrolled Airspace (Helicopters Only) Below 1,000 Feet AGL	
Reference	**Minima**
Flight Visibility by Day	Not less than 1 mile
Flight Visibility at Night	Not less than 3 miles
Distance from Cloud	Clear of Cloud

Fig.5.24 **Weather Minima within Uncontrolled Airspace below 1,000 Feet AGL – Helicopters**

The elevation AGL that determines the criteria for distance from clouds in uncontrolled airspace is 1,000 feet.

5.2.10 Special VFR (SVFR)

Within control zones, air traffic control may authorize a pilot to fly special VFR under weather conditions that are below VFR minima. The rules for special VFR are designed to allow VFR rated pilots to arrive at and depart from controlled airports when the weather is below VFR limits. The pilot must request special VFR. It is not offered automatically by the ATC unit working the control zone. The controller cannot authorize SVFR on his/her own. It must be approved by the ACC or TCU who will authorize it only if the IFR traffic flow permits. If there is actual or anticipated IFR traffic, special VFR may be denied or delayed.

A pilot who has received a clearance from an ATC unit to proceed in the control zone under special VFR may ask for a radar vector (at an airport where surveillance radar is available) in order to have assistance, under restricted visibility, to locate the airport. This service must be specifically requested. It is not offered automatically. It is the pilot's responsibility, even when being directed by radar vectors, to remain clear of cloud and to refuse a vector that would prevent him/her from maintaining contact with the surface.

Special VFR may be authorized only if the flight visibility and the ground visibility (when reported) are each not less than 1 mile. In the case of a helicopter, the flight and ground visibility must be not less than 1/2 mile. Because of the limited visibility, it is advisable that the helicopter be operated at a reduced airspeed that will give the pilot-in-command adequate opportunity to see other air traffic or obstructions in time to avoid them.

The aircraft requesting SVFR must be equipped with a functioning two-way radio capable of maintaining communications with the ATC unit. The pilot-in-command shall keep a listening watch on a frequency that permits the receipt of ATC clearances and instructions.

The aircraft must be operated clear of cloud and within sight of the surface of the earth at all times. It must be operated at not less than 500 feet from any person, vessel, vehicle or structure.

Special VFR at night is authorized only for the purpose of allowing the aircraft to enter the control zone in order to land.

5.2.11 VFR Over-the-Top (VFR OTT)

With a VFR Over-the-top rating, a pilot who does not hold an IFR rating has an option for dealing with poor weather conditions along part or all of the intended route. The VFR OTT rating allows a pilot to conduct a flight in VFR conditions above the en route cloud layer providing the following conditions exist:

1. The flight is conducted during the day (VFR OTT is not permitted at night).
2. Departure and climb above the en route cloud layer can be done under VFR.
3. Descent and arrival at the destination can be accomplished under VFR.
4. During the cruise portion of the flight conducted above the cloud layer, the aircraft is operated at a vertical distance from cloud of at least 1,000 feet, and visibility is always at least 5 miles.
5. Where the aircraft is operated between two cloud layers, the vertical distance between the layers is at least 5,000 feet.
6. The weather at the destination aerodrome is forecast to have a sky condition of scattered cloud or to be clear; ground visibility of 5 miles or more with no forecast of precipitation, fog, thunderstorms or blowing snow. The forecast conditions shall be valid, in the case of an aerodrome forecast, for one hour before and for two hours after the estimated time of arrival. If no aerodrome forecast is available and the forecast used is an area forecast , the forecast conditions shall be valid for one hour before and for three hours after the estimated time of arrival.

Acquisition of the rating requires a minimum of 15 hours dual instrument time of which a maximum of 5 hours may be instrument ground time.

Pilots should be wary of confusing the expression VFR Over-the-top with VFR-on-top, both expressions of which exist in U.S. air regulations. They are, however, not the same thing. While VFR Over-the-top exists in the U.S. for the same purposes for which it exists in Canada, VFR-on-top exists in the U.S. only. To fly VFR-on-top in the U.S., a pilot must be instrument rated, flying on an IFR flight plan, and must request a VFR-on-top clearance. (VFR-on-top is also sometimes referred to as IFR Over-the-top.)

5.2.12 Minimum VFR Flight Altitudes

The regulations impose minimum flight altitudes for VFR flight based on the type of area over which the flight is being conducted.

For Built-up Areas, except when landing or taking off, the minimum altitude at which an aircraft in VFR flight may be flown over the built-up area of any community or over any open air assembly of people is an altitude that, in an emergency, would permit the landing of that aircraft without creating a hazard to persons or property on the ground. In no case can the altitude be less than 1,000 feet above the highest obstacle within a radius of 2,000 feet from the aircraft.

For Non-built-up Areas, except when landing or taking off, the minimum altitude at which an aircraft may be flown over areas that are not built up is 500 feet above the highest obstacle within a radius of 500 feet from the aircraft.

For Unpopulated/Open Water Areas, provided no hazard is created for people or property on the ground, an aircraft may be flown over non-populous areas or over open water at lower altitudes so long as it is at least 500 feet from any person, vessel, vehicle or structure.

Special exemptions are made to these minimums only for aircraft engaged in recognized special purpose operations, such as fire fighting, crop spraying, pipeline and power line surveying, etc.

5.2.13 VFR Flight in Class B Airspace (CVFR)

Class B airspace is part of the controlled airspace system. VFR flight is permitted, but it is subject to the control services provided by ATC. It is, thus, called controlled VFR (CVFR). All aircraft are subject to ATC clearances and instructions and ATC separation is provided. No special licence, rating or endorsement is required to act as pilot-in-command of an aircraft in CVFR flight in Class B airspace.

CVFR flights must be conducted in accordance with procedures designed for use by IFR flights. However, the flight must be conducted in VFR weather conditions (i.e. weather minima for control areas) with visual reference to the ground.

Before entering the Class B airspace, the pilot-in-command of the aeroplane must file a VFR flight plan stating the altitude at which the flight is to be conducted and the route that is to be followed, (e.g. Flight Altitude 14,000 feet/VFR, Route V71).

Clearance for VFR flight to enter Class B airspace is given only if the altitude requested is available and if traffic conditions are such that the flight can be accommodated. Clearance is not usually given prior to take-off but rather upon receipt of a position report that the flight has reached the last 1,000 foot altitude below the base of the Class B airspace.

A functioning two-way radio is, of course, essential and, throughout the flight, the pilot must maintain a listening watch on the appropriate radio frequency and must make position reports as required by the ATC unit. Installed equipment in the aircraft must also include radio navigation equipment that is capable of utilizing navigation facilities to enable the aircraft to be operated in accordance with the flight plan. A transponder capable of Mode C altitude reporting is also required.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Pilots are responsible at all times for maintaining VFR flight. If the weather observed ahead falls below VFR minima, they may request an amended ATC clearance which will allow them to maintain VFR. If this is not possible, they must leave Class B airspace by the shortest route exiting either horizontally or by descending. When clear of the Class B airspace, they must take whatever action is necessary to continue the flight under VFR conditions and, as soon as possible, inform ATC of the action taken.

If the aircraft is operating CVFR in a control zone that is designated Class B airspace and if the weather falls below VFR minima, the pilot must land at the aerodrome on which the control zone is based.

It is essential that the assigned altitude be maintained with precision and that no deviation be made from the clearance without advising ATC.

It may seem that the Class B airspace is just another unnecessary complication for the VFR pilot. However, it is common practice for airlines to fly instrument flight rules most of the time regardless of the weather; they probably are not looking out of the window watching for unexpected traffic. With modern high speed aeroplanes, the rate of closing between two approaching aeroplanes can be in excess of 500 knots, or 8 miles a minute. This means that with 3 miles visibility, a 200 knot aeroplane approaching a 300 knot aeroplane would have 22 seconds to alter course. In practice, the time is not so long. There is a lag between the time the pilot sights another aeroplane and the time it takes for corrective action. There is a further lag in the response of the aeroplane. These lags take up an average of 15 seconds, leaving 7 seconds to avoid a collision. The purpose in providing control services to, and separation of, all traffic within control areas is to prevent collision potential.

To prepare for a VFR flight in Class B airspace, check the appropriate Enroute Low Altitude Charts for distances between reporting points along the route. Take along a computer.

You are required to make position reports en route when passing all compulsory reporting points or when requested by ATC. On filing a position report, it is necessary to state your estimated time of arrival at the next reporting point. This means that you have to compute groundspeeds and ETA's as you go.

ATC will clear you to a specific point. This may be your destination airport, an omni or other radio station, or a reporting point en route. The location to which you are cleared is known as the clearance limit.

Should you arrive at the clearance limit without clearance beyond, or holding instructions, you must immediately request further clearance and, meanwhile, hold at the assigned altitude. The reason for this is that another aeroplane may be flying at your altitude beyond this point. (If you do not wish to hold, however, you may request a clearance to exit the Class B airspace.)

A flight plan may not be changed en route without authority from an ATC centre. If you should desire to make a change in altitude, route or destination, obtain an amended clearance from ATC.

Emergency While VFR in Class B Airspace

If instrument weather conditions are encountered, leave the Class B airspace immediately either horizontally or by descending. Advise ATC as soon as possible of your action.

In the event of radio failure, leave the Class B airspace immediately and, when clear, proceed with the flight maintaining VFR. Report your action as soon as possible after landing.

In the event of engine failure or any other cause necessitating an immediate descent, advise ATC immediately (using the emergency frequency 121.5 MHz if necessary).

5.2.14 Holding Pattern

There are several situations in flying in which a pilot may be asked to hold over a particular fix. This can happen if clearance to proceed past a clearance limit cannot be given. Sometimes on arrival at an airport, a pilot is asked to hold over a beacon until landing clearance can be given (IFR flights).

For the pilot who is maintaining visual reference to the surface, adhering to a precise holding pattern is not absolutely necessary. It is, however, good practice to learn to fly a holding pattern precisely. The standard form of holding pattern is the elliptical, or race track pattern. It is illustrated and explained in Fig.5.25. The holding fix may be a marker beacon, VOR, non-directional radio beacon or any facility which can be definitely identified by a radio signal when you are directly overhead.

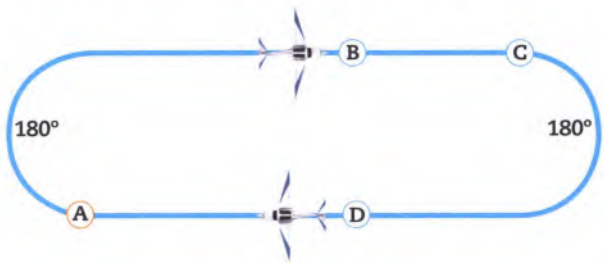


Fig.5.25 **Standard Holding Pattern**

Over the radio fix at A, start a standard rate turn to the right (180° for 1 minute). Fly 1 minute outbound, if at or below 14,000 ft ASL, or 1½ minutes, if above 14,000 ft ASL. Execute a standard rate turn to the right at C. Fly the inbound course to the radio fix, parallel to B. (Note: Compensate for wind if required.) The holding pattern is flown in a specified direction in relation to the holding fix. Assuming the top of the page to be north, the holding pattern illustrated would be east and the aircraft would be said to be "Holding East of (name of Radio Fix)". The track outbound, B, would be 090° and the track inbound, D, is 270°. (Note: The outbound time should be increased or decreased, according to the wind conditions, to effect 1 minute (or 1½ minutes) inbound to the fix.)

Do not leave the holding pattern until cleared by ATC to do so.

VFR Visual Holding Pattern

Because of traffic congestion, VFR flights may be asked to orbit visually over a geographic location, VFR checkpoint or call up point until they can be cleared to the airport. The pilot is expected to proceed to the specified geographic location, orbit within visual contact of the checkpoint and be prepared to proceed to the airport immediately upon receipt of a clearance to do so. If the ATC request to oribt is not acceptable to the pilot, the pilot should inform ATC and state their intentions. While orbiting the checkpoint, the pilot should make left hand turns. Terrain and collision avoidance are his/her responsibility.

5.2.15 Identification Zones

Special procedures are in effect for aeroplanes operating in the Air Defence Identification Zones (ADIZ). These rules are applicable to all aircraft. Unidentified aircraft which enter an ADIZ will be directed by NORAD aircraft to land at a published aerodrome port of entry where they will be cleared by Canada Customs and the RCMP.

To enter or fly within an ADIZ, it is required that the pilot-in-command file an IFR flight plan, a Defence VFR (DVFR) flight plan or a flight itinerary with an air traffic control unit, a flight service station or a community aerodrome radio station. No deviation from the flight plan is permitted without prior notification to the ATC unit. When prior notification is impossible, ATC must be advised of the deviation as soon as possible.

The flight plan or flight itinerary should be filed prior to take-off. However, in the event there is no facility for the transmission of flight plan information, the flight plan or flight itinerary may be filed in the air as soon as possible after take-off. An aircraft, making an air file, may be asked to fly at a speed of less than 150 knots for 5 minutes or more to enable the ATC unit to make a positive identification.

For aircraft either with an airport departure point outside the ADIZ intending to penetrate the ADIZ, or for aircraft intending to take off from an airport within the ADIZ, the flight plan or flight itinerary shall include the estimated time and place of ADIZ penetration. As soon as possible after take-off, the pilot shall establish radio communication with the ATC unit, a flight service station or community aerodrome radio station and make a position report, advising ATC of any variance in the time or place of ADIZ penetration from that indicated in the flight plan or flight itinerary. Revised estimates shall be reported if the aeroplane will not be within 5 minutes of its forecast time of arrival at a reporting point, the point of penetration of the ADIZ or the destination within the ADIZ. Deviations of more than 20 nautical miles from the centreline of the intended route or from the estimated point of penetration of the ADIZ must be reported.

In the case of an aircraft taking off from a location within the ADIZ, it will be required to establish radio contact as soon as possible and make a position report.

A functioning two-way radio is required equipment and the pilot must maintain a listening watch on the appropriate frequency throughout the time that the aircraft is within the boundaries of the ADIZ. In the event of communication failure, a VFR flight is required to proceed in accordance with the flight plan or to land at the nearest available airport and advise ATS.

An arrival report must be filed when closing a flight plan or flight itinerary.

The rules of the Emergency Security Control of Air Traffic Plan (ESCAT) will be implemented only in times of war and national security. The ESCAT rules are, however, periodically tested. Pilots must, therefore, while operating within Canadian Domestic Airspace or the ADIZ, maintain a listening watch on an ATC frequency at all times. When notified that ESCAT rules are in effect, pilots must comply with all instructions from ATC. VFR and IFR flights may be ordered to change course, or altitude, or even to land at the nearest facility. On such occasions, a pilot planning a flight within an ADIZ shall obtain approval for the flight prior to take-off and shall provide position reports, if operating in uncontrolled airspace, at least every 30 minutes during the flight or, if operating in controlled airspace, as requested by the ATC unit.

Radar Assistance

The Canadian Armed Forces can provide assistance in an emergency to civil aircraft operating within the ADIZ. Assistance consists of track and groundspeed checks and the position of the aircraft in geographic reference or by bearing and distance from the station. Position of heavy cloud in relation to the aircraft can also be indicated.

To obtain assistance in the North Warning system (NWS) area, call "Radar Assistance" on 126.7 MHz. In ADIZ areas, contact should be made on 121.5 MHz or on the UHF frequencies 243.0 MHz or 364.2 MHz.

Interception of Civil Aircraft

Interceptions are made only where the possibility is considered to exist that an unidentified aircraft may be truly hostile in intent. Intercepted aircraft should maintain a steady course, avoid attempting evasive action and follow these procedures:

1. Follow the radio and visual instructions given by the intercepting aircraft, interpreting and responding to the prescribed visual signals and procedures that have been established for use by both the intercepting aircraft and by the intercepted aircraft. A copy of these procedures and signals is required to be carried on board any aircraft operating in Canadian airspace. They are outlined in the **Canadian Aviation Regulations** and are also included in the **Canada Flight Supplement** and the **A.I.M. Canada**.
2. If possible, advise the appropriate ATC unit of the interception.
3. Attempt to establish radio communication with the intercepting aircraft on the emergency frequencies 121.5 MHz or 243.0 MHz giving the identity and position and the nature of the flight.
4. Unless instructed to do otherwise by the appropriate ATC unit, select Mode A Code 7700 if you have a transponder.

Should you receive instructions by radio from any source which conflict with those received from the intercepting aircraft, you should request immediate clarification while continuing to comply with the instructions received from the intercepting aircraft.

5.2.16 Sparsely Settled Areas

Much of the geographical area of Canada is virgin land with very few settlements. Flight in such sparsely settled areas requires special precautions and procedures because of limited navigation facilities, severe weather conditions, limited weather information, limited fuel supplies and servicing facilities. To fly in such areas, an aeroplane should be capable of two-way radio communication with a ground station in the area. An emergency locator transmitter (ELT) of an approved type should always be carried on board.

When operating within sparsely populated areas or when operating over water at a distance of more than 50 miles from shore, pilots are expected to continuously monitor the emergency frequency 121.5 MHz, unless they are carrying out communications on other VHF frequencies or if cockpit duties or aircraft electronic equipment limitations do not permit simultaneous monitoring of two VHF frequencies.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Survival Equipment

Regulations require certain survival equipment to be carried on board any aircraft operated over land, especially in the sparsely settled areas and anywhere where rescue is more difficult because of inaccessibility. This equipment must be sufficient for the survival on the ground, for a minimum of 72 hours, of each person carried on board. In selecting the equipment to be carried, special consideration needs to be given to the geographic area, the season of the year and the anticipated seasonal climatic variations of the area over which the aircraft will be operating.

Locating and saving people in aeronautical emergencies has been greatly improved by the introduction and widespread use of ELTs and the detection capability of the SARSAT/COSPAS system. Detection and location of crash sites and the rescue of survivors is commonly effected very quickly and rarely takes more than 72 hours.

In a survival situation, the first rule is to provide shelter that will keep you dry and protected from the wind in order to prevent hypothermia. The following items are therefore suggested: a tent; an 8 foot by 8 foot tarpaulin, ideally bright orange in colour (it can be used to make a shelter and can also be laid out to attract the attention of searching aircraft); a saw to cut branches to make a shelter; personal rain protection; space blankets; an air inflated mattress or unicell foam pad to provide insulation from wet and cold ground; one sleeping bag for each two persons; a sewing kit to repair clothing; mosquito head nets and insect repellent (in spring and summer) and tape to tape jacket sleeves and trouser pant bottoms for protection from insects. A good survival manual is useful.

Since rescue can be expected reasonably quickly, food is no longer considered a critical item in survival kits. If you choose to carry food, food with a calorific value of about 1,500 calories for each person on board is sufficient for 72 hours. Water is more important than food. Water purification tablets will ensure you have safe drinkable water. If you prefer to boil your water, you will need a billy kettle or other suitable container. You might also include, in your survival kit, 500 ml of drinking water for each 4 persons.

In order to make a fire, you will need waterproof matches carried in a waterproof container, a candle to help in lighting a fire, fuel tablets and an axe.

In order to attract the attention of searching aircraft, a holographic mirror is the best item you can carry. It is effective over 20 miles. A 2-sided signalling mirror with a hole in the centre is second best, but it requires some training and skill to use it effectively. For night signalling, a good strobe light can be seen on a clear night up to 8 miles away. A flashlight is effective for about one-half mile.

Every aircraft is required to have a first aid kit on board. A basic kit should contain antiseptic wound cleaner and disposable applicators, a variety of bandages, burn dressings, wound dressings, gauze dressings, adhesive dressings and adhesive tape, hand cleaner and cleansing towelettes, tweezers, scissors, splint set with padding, eye pad/shield and a first aid manual.

Survival gear should be stowed securely in a rear baggage compartment where it is less likely to be damaged or become inaccessible in the event of a crash. Survival gear stowed in a forward baggage compartment (such as one in the nose) is likely to be damaged in a crash.

Dress for Survival

All crew members and passengers should be dressed in, or have on board the aircraft, clothing that will be adequate for survival in the coldest conditions for the season of the year in which the flight is conducted. Even in summer, loose fitting cotton pants and a long sleeve cotton shirt should be the minimum that you wear. The long pants and long sleeve shirt will help to protect you from sun burn and from insect bites as well as chilly temperatures at night. Sturdy shoes and cotton socks are essential. Layering materials and wearing outer garments that are loose fitting will minimize heat loss.

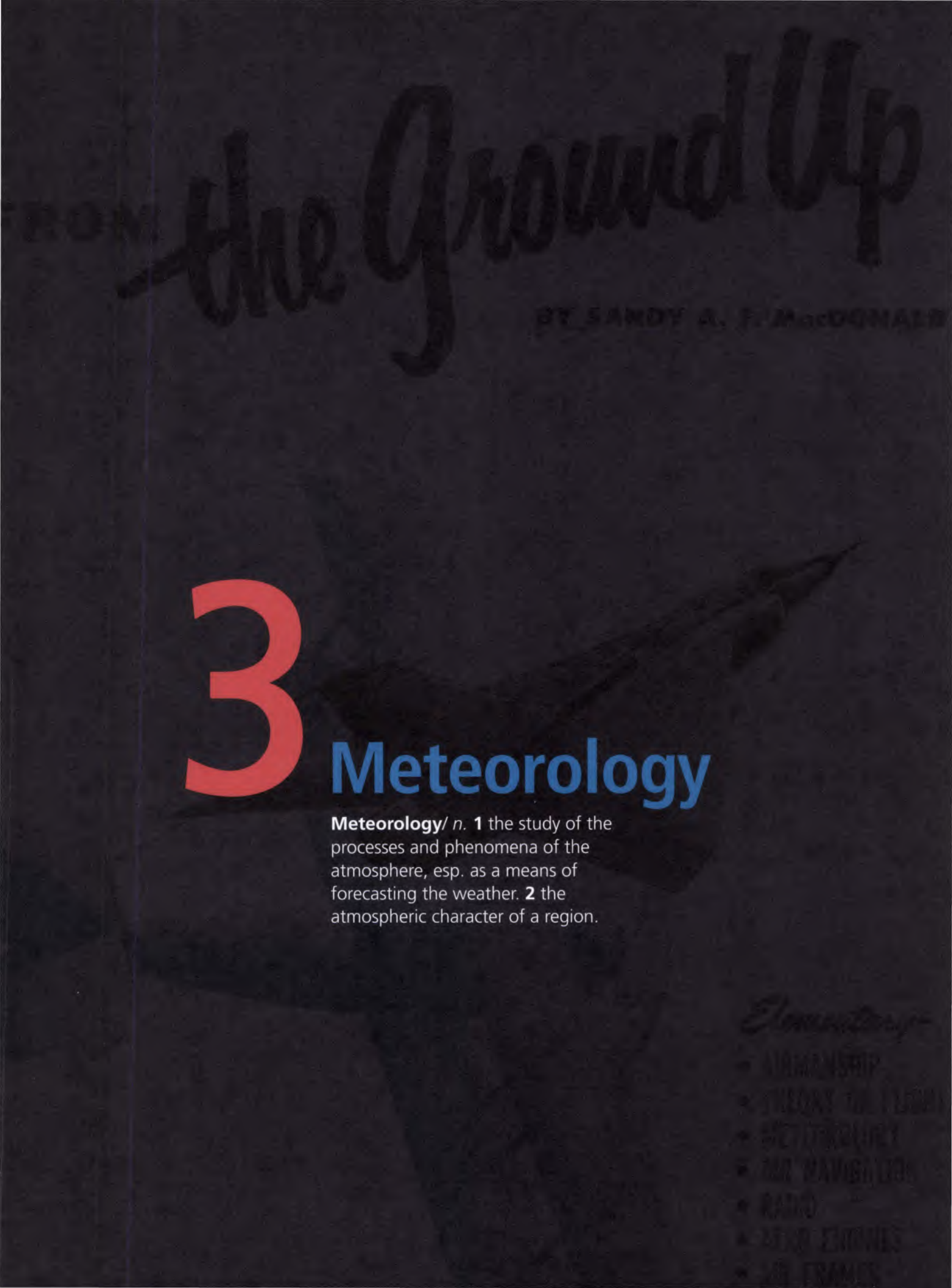
One of the greatest problems in any emergency or crash landing is the possibility of fire. Getting out of the aircraft as quickly as possible and avoiding inhaling the hot gases should be your first concern. Inhaling the hot air can burn the lung tissues and result, in the worst case scenario, in pneumonia. So hold your breath as you escape from a burning aircraft.

Your chances of surviving a fire with minimum burns and injury are greatly enhanced by wearing clothing made of proper materials. Wool, cotton and a fire retardant fabric called Nomex are the best choice. Most synthetics, such as polyester, nylon and rayon, will melt and shrink. The fabric in contact with the skin will melt into the skin and solidify making the burn injury worse. Cotton, wool and especially Nomex will decompose and char instead of melting.

Exposed skin has no protection against burn injury from fire. So choose your flying apparel carefully and wear it.

Be sure also that what you choose to wear is clean. The bacteria on dirty clothing (or skin) will invade your skin through a burn and cause severe infection.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com



3 Meteorology

Meteorology/ *n.* **1** the study of the processes and phenomena of the atmosphere, esp. as a means of forecasting the weather. **2** the atmospheric character of a region.

Overview of Part 3

6 Aviation Weather

6.1 The Atmosphere 137
6.1.1 Properties of the Atmosphere 137
6.1.2 Divisions of the Atmosphere 137
6.1.3 Standard Atmosphere 138

6.2 Clouds 138
6.2.1 Classification of Clouds 138
6.2.2 Sky Condition 140
6.2.3 Cloud Formation 140

6.3 Pressure 141
6.3.1 Atmospheric Pressure 141
6.3.2 Sea Level & Station Pressure 142
6.3.3 Pressure Systems 142
6.3.4 Pressure Changes 143
6.3.5 Pressure Gradient 143
6.3.6 Coriolis Force 143
6.3.7 Surface Friction 144
6.3.8 Centrifugal Force 144
6.3.9 Convergence & Divergence 144

6.4 Winds 144
6.4.1 Hemispheric Prevailing Winds 144
6.4.2 Upper Level Winds 145
6.4.3 Surface Winds 145
6.4.4 Wind Speed & Direction 147
6.4.5 Wind Shear 147
6.4.6 The Jet Stream 148

6.5 Humidity, Temperature & Stability 150
6.5.1 Humidity 150
6.5.2 Temperature 151
6.5.3 Stability 153
6.5.4 Vapour Trails (Contrails) 154

6.6 Air Masses 154
6.6.1 Weather in an Air Mass 155
6.6.2 Modification of Air Masses 155

6.7 Fronts 156
6.7.1 Polar Front Theory 156
6.7.2 Types of Front 157
6.7.3 Frontal Weather 159

6.8 Precipitation & Fog 161
6.8.1 Precipitation 161
6.8.2 Fog 162
6.8.3 Haze 163
6.8.4 Visibility 163
6.8.5 VMC & IMC 163
6.8.6 Lake Effect Snowfalls 163

6.9 Thunderstorms 164
6.9.1 Thunderstorm Weather 165
6.9.2 Thunderstorm Avoidance 166

6.10 Icing 168
6.10.1 How Icing Affects the Aeroplane 169
6.10.2 Types of Icing 169
6.10.3 Intensity of Icing 170
6.10.4 Icing in Clouds & in Precipitation 170
6.10.5 Protection From Icing 170
6.10.6 Icing Avoidance 171

6.11 Turbulence 171
6.11.1 Mechanical Turbulence 172
6.11.2 Thermal Turbulence 172
6.11.3 Frontal Turbulence 172
6.11.4 Wind Shear 172
6.11.5 Clear Air Turbulence 173

6.12 High Level Weather 173
6.12.1 Winds at High Levels 173
6.12.2 Turbulence at High Levels 173
6.12.3 Visibility at High Levels 173
6.12.4 Icing at High Levels 174
6.12.5 Canopy Static 174

6.13 Weather Awareness 174

6.14 Weather Information 174
6.14.1 Weather Charts 174
6.14.2 Weather Observation Systems 176
6.14.3 Weather Reporting Systems 176
6.14.4 Aviation Weather Forecasts 185
6.14.5 Weather Information Sources 189
6.14.6 "Weather Sense" 190

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

6 Aviation Weather

"Man lives at the base of an invisible ocean of air termed the atmosphere." – Pick.

This atmosphere is forever in a state of commotion and physical change, giving rise to weather conditions which vary throughout the range of an extremely vast scale. The pilot not only lives at the base of this sea of air but navigates through it. The weather, therefore, is a matter of vital concern to him/her, particularly conditions such as fog, ice formation, thunderstorms and line squalls, which present unusual hazards to flying.

To minimize the hazards to air navigation that are constantly being manufactured in the "weather factory", a vast worldwide meteorological organization has been built up, to collect, analyze and broadcast information relative to the ever changing phenomena of the upper air.

Pilots can today avail themselves of last minute weather reports and forecasts along all the regularly established air routes. In addition, they can secure much valuable weather data with reference to areas located off the organized airways. They must, however, possess sufficient "weather sense" to be able to size up and deal with sudden changing conditions which may be encountered at any stage along their route. The information in this chapter is intended to cover the highlights of the subject only. The student of aviation will be well advised to include meteorology among the subjects marked for further detailed study and read some of the excellent manuals which are available on the subject.

Beyond the atmosphere lies space and the most challenging adventure man has ever set his mind to embark upon. Some of you who read these lines will be destined to play an active role in the conquest of space. But the approach to that mysterious realm of the stars lies through the atmosphere. Navigation through this atmosphere will be the primary concern of this chapter on meteorology.

6.1 The Atmosphere

Air, which is the material of which the atmosphere is composed, is a mixture of invisible gases. At altitudes up to 250,000 feet, the atmosphere consists of approximately 78% nitrogen and 21% oxygen. The remainder is made up of argon, carbon dioxide, several other gases and water vapour. Water vapour acts as an independent gas mixed with air.

Water vapour is found only in the lower levels of the atmosphere. From the standpoint of weather, however, it is the most important component of the air. Because it can change into water droplets or ice crystals under atmospheric conditions of temperature and pressure, water vapour is responsible for the formation of clouds and fog. However, just when and under what conditions water vapour will change to a visible form is difficult to predict and is made more difficult by the fact that the amount of water vapour in the air is never constant but varies from day to day and even from hour to hour.

The lower layer of the atmosphere contains an enormous number of microscopic impurities such as salt, dust and smoke particles. They are important to aviation for they are often present in sufficient quantities to reduce visibility. They also have a function in the condensation process.

The upper layers of the atmosphere do not contain dust particles or impurities off which the sun's light can reflect and, for this reason, appear deep cobalt blue to black in colour.

The atmosphere has weight. Although the weight of the atmosphere is only about one millionth the weight of the earth, it does exert a force or pressure on the surface of the earth. A square inch column of air weighs approximately 14.7 lbs. at sea level. This weight diminishes with altitude. At 20,000 feet, a square inch column weighs 6.75 lbs.

The characteristics of the atmosphere vary with time of day, season of the year and latitude. Consequently only average values are referred to in this manual.

6.1.1 Properties of the Atmosphere

Mobility, capacity for expansion and capacity for compression are the principal properties of the atmosphere. These characteristics are of the utmost importance in a study of weather for they in combination are the cause of almost all atmospheric weather phenomena. The capacity for expansion is especially important. Air is forced to rise by various lifting agents (thermal, frontal or mechanical means). Rising in areas of decreasing pressure, the parcel of air expands. In expanding, it cools. The cooling process may bring the temperature of the parcel of air to the degree where condensation occurs. Thus, clouds form and precipitation may take place. Conversely, sinking air, as the external pressure increases, decreases in volume with an attendant rise in temperature.

6.1.2 Divisions of the Atmosphere

The atmosphere consists of four distinct layers surrounding the earth for a depth of many hundreds of miles. They are, in ascending order, the troposphere, the stratosphere, the mesosphere and the thermosphere.

The Troposphere

This is the lowest layer of the atmosphere and varies in height in different parts of the world from roughly 28,000 feet above sea level at the poles to 54,000 feet at the equator. Within the troposphere, the pressure, density and temperature all decrease rapidly with height. Most of the "weather" occurs in the troposphere because of the presence of water vapour and strong vertical currents produced by the radiation of the sun's rays from the earth's surface. In the upper regions of the troposphere, very strong, fast moving and complex winds occur called jet streams.

The top layer of the troposphere is known as the tropopause. Within the troposphere the temperature drops to a low of -56°C which marks the beginning of the tropopause. Through the tropopause, the temperature reverses and begins to increase. The height of the tropopause varies, as already stated, from the poles to the equator, but also from summer to winter.

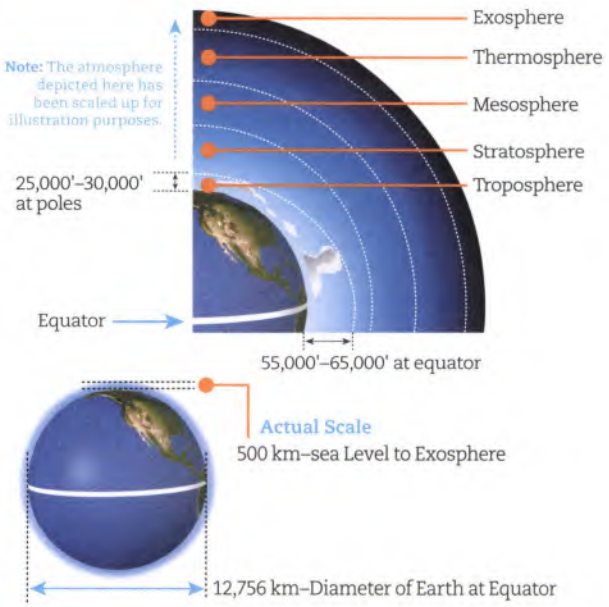


Fig.6.1 **Divisions of the Atmosphere**

The Stratosphere

For a distance of about 50,000 feet above the tropopause, there is a layer known as the stratosphere in which the pressure continues to decrease but in which the temperature continues to increase gradually to 0°C. This layer also varies in thickness, being quite deep over the poles and thinner over the equator. Water vapour is almost non-existent and air currents are minimal. A layer of ozone is present in the stratosphere which absorbs the sun's ultraviolet rays and, hence, creates the rise in temperature. The top layer of the stratosphere is called the stratopause wherein the temperature, once again, begins to fall.

The Mesosphere

The mesosphere is characterized by a marked decrease in temperature that is carried through from the stratopause. It is in the mesosphere that meteorites typically burn up as they enter the atmosphere. In the top layer of the mesosphere, called the mesopause, the temperature bottoms out at a low of about -100°C at 275,000 feet above the earth, then begins to rise again with greater altitude.

The Thermosphere

Temperature continues to rise in the thermosphere and beyond, increasing for an indefinite distance into space. Air molecules are few in this layer which extends upwards from a point 100 kilometers (called the Kármán line), above the earth's surface.

The Exosphere

Beyond the thermosphere lies a layer wherein pressure drops to little more than a vacuum. Under these conditions, the concept of temperature has little meaning and is usually replaced by definitions of the energy states of individual molecules. The spectacular auroras form in the regions of the exosphere, the bottom of which is found at 500 kilometers above the earth's surface.

Space

Since air becomes gradually thinner with increasing altitude, the upper limit of the atmosphere is, for all practical purposes, difficult to define. The temperature in space can rise as high as 3,000°C at 600 kilometers. This does not mean that a spaceship, if it was cruising at this altitude, would experience a temperature of 3,000°C within this realm. The only heat the spaceship would experience would be what it would receive from the radiation of the sun.

Now that man has invaded the cosmic realm of outer space, the question arises as to just where space actually begins. At an altitude of 140 to 160 kilometers, one is entering the realm of satellites and aerodynamic lift is no longer a prerequisite for maintaining height above the earth. This region has been accepted by some authorities as the boundary of outer space. Ninety miles is recognized as the limit of national sovereignty.

6.1.3 Standard Atmosphere

The decrease with height of pressure, density and temperature which occurs in the lower layers of the atmosphere is not constant but varies with local conditions. However, for aeronautical purposes, it is necessary to have a standard atmosphere. There are several different standard atmospheres in use but they vary only slightly.

Alttitude	Pressure in inches of Mercury	Temperature in degrees Cesius	Relative Density
Sea Level	29.92	+15	1.00
5,000ft.	24.89	+5.1	0.86
10,000ft.	20.58	+4.8	0.74
15,000ft.	15.88	-14.7	0.63
20,000ft.	13.75	-24.6	0.53
30,000ft.	8.88	-44.4	0.37
40,000ft.	5.54	-56.5	0.24
50,000ft.	3.44	-56.5	0.15

Fig.6.2 **Standard Atmosphere**

The ICAO standard atmosphere for the continent of North America, based on summer and winter averages at latitude 40° assumes the following conditions:

1. The air is a perfectly dry gas.
2. A mean sea level pressure of 29.92 inches of mercury (1013.25 hPa).
3. A mean sea level temperature of 15°C.
4. The rate of decrease of temperature with altitude is 1.98°C per 1,000 feet.

The chart in Fig.6.2 plots standard atmosphere through various altitude levels.

6.2 Clouds

To a pilot knowledgeable in the science of meteorology, clouds are an indication of what is happening in the atmosphere. The location and type of cloud are evidence of such weather phenomena as fronts, turbulence, thunderstorms and tell the pilot what type of conditions may be expected during flight.

6.2.1 Classification of Clouds

Clouds are classified into four families: high clouds, middle clouds, low clouds and clouds of vertical development.

As well, clouds are identified by the way in which they form. There are two basic types: cumulus and stratus.

Cumulus clouds form in rising air currents and are evidence of unstable air conditions.

Stratus clouds form in horizontal layers and usually form as a layer of moist air is cooled below its saturation point.

Clouds from which precipitation falls are designated nimbus clouds.

The cloud heights referred to below are for the temperate regions. In the polar regions, clouds tend to occur at lower heights and in the tropics at greater heights.

Base Height	Temperate Regions	Polar Regions	Tropical Regions
High Cloud	16,500 to 45,000 ft.	10,000 to 25,000 ft.	20,000 to 60,000 ft.
Middle Cloud	6,500 to 23,000 ft.	6,500 to 13,000 ft.	6,500 to 25,000 ft.
Low Cloud	Up to 6,500 ft.	Up to 6,500 ft.	Up to 6,500 ft.

Fig.6.3 **Cloud Types & their Corresponding Heights & Regions**

High Clouds

The bases of high clouds range from 16,500 feet to 45,000 feet and average about 25,000 feet in the temperate regions. They are composed of ice crystals.

Fig.6.4 **Cirrus**

Cirrus (Ci) are very high, thin wavy sprays of white cloud made up of slender, delicate curling wisps or fibres. Sometimes they take the form of feathers or ribbons or delicate fibrous bands. They are often called cats' whiskers or mares' tails.

Cirrocumulus (Cc) are thin clouds, cotton or flake-like. Often they are called mackerel sky. They provide little indication of future weather conditions.

Cirrostratus (Cs) are very thin high sheet cloud through which the sun or moon is visible, producing a halo effect. Cirrostratus is frequently an indication of an approaching warm front or occlusion and therefore of deteriorating weather.

High clouds have little effect on flying. Some moderate turbulence may be encountered.

Middle Clouds

The bases of middle clouds range from 6,500 feet to 23,000 feet. They are composed of ice crystals or water droplets, which may be at temperatures above freezing or may be supercooled.

Fig.6.5 **Altocumulus**

Altocumulus (Ac) are a layer or series of patches of rounded masses of cloud that may lie in groups or lines. Sometimes they indicate the approach of a front but usually they have little value as an indication of future weather developments.

Altocumulus Castellanus (Acc) are altocumulus with a turreted appearance. Instability, turbulence and shower activity are characteristic. Altocumulus castellanus may develop into cumulonimbus.

Altostratus (As) are a thick veil of grey cloud that generally covers the whole sky. At first, the sun or moon may be seen through the cloud, but they disappear as the cloud gets thicker. The presence of altostratus indicates the near approach of a warm front. Some light rain or snow may fall from thick altostratus. Icing may occur in this cloud.

There is usually little turbulence associated with middle clouds unless cumulus clouds are embedded in them or unless altocumulus is developing.

Low Clouds

The bases of low clouds range from surface height to about 6,500 feet. They are composed of water droplets which may be supercooled and sometimes of ice crystals.

Stratus (St) are a uniform layer of cloud resembling fog but not resting on the ground. Drizzle often falls from stratus. Stratus cloud broken up by wind is called stratus fractus (Sf).

Fig.6.6 **Stratus**

Stratocumulus (Sc) is a layer or series of patches of rounded masses or rolls of cloud. It is very often thin with blue sky showing through the breaks. It is common in high pressure areas in winter and sometimes gives a little precipitation.

Nimbostratus (Ns) is a low layer of uniform, dark grey cloud. When it gives precipitation, it is in the form of continuous rain or snow. The cloud may be more than 15,000 feet thick. It is generally associated with warm fronts.

Little turbulence occurs in stratus. The low cloud bases and poor visibility make VFR operations difficult to impossible.

Clouds of Vertical Development

The bases of this type of cloud may form as low as 1,500 feet. They are composed of water droplets when the temperature is above freezing and of ice crystals and supercooled water droplets when the temperature is below freezing. They may appear as isolated clouds or may be embedded in layer clouds.

Cumulus (Cu) are dense clouds of vertical development. They are thick, rounded and lumpy and resemble cotton balls. They usually have flat bases and the tops are rounded. They cast dense shadows and appear in great abundance during the warm part of the day and dissipate at night. When these clouds are composed of ragged fragments, they are called cumulus fractus (Cf). Flight under the bases of cumulus clouds is usually bumpy.

Fig.6.7 **Cumulus**

Towering Cumulus (TCu) are cumulus clouds that build up into high towering masses. They are likely to develop into cumulonimbus. Rough air will be encountered underneath this cloud. Heavy icing may occur in this cloud type.

Cumulonimbus (Cb) are heavy masses of cumulus clouds that extend well above the freezing level. The summits often spread out to form an anvil shaped top that is characteristic of thunderstorm and showery conditions. Violent vertical currents exist within the cloud.

Fig.6.8 **Cumulonimbus**

Hail is frequently present within the cloud and may occasionally fall from it. A line of cumulonimbus is often an indication of a cold front. The cloud should be avoided because of its turbulence, the danger of heavy icing and violent electrical activity. Cumulonimbus clouds may be embedded in stratiform clouds.

6.2.2 Sky Condition

There are five types of sky condition relating to cloud cover. In the METAR weather reporting code, the sky is divided into 8 segments called oktas. The sky conditions are:

1. **Clear**: No clouds.
2. **Few**: 2 oktas (8ths) or less of the celestial dome is covered by clouds.
3. **Scattered**: 3 to 4 oktas of the celestial dome is covered by clouds.
4. **Broken**: 5 to 7 oktas of the celestial dome is covered by a layer of clouds based aloft.
5. **Overcast**: 8 oktas of the celestial dome is covered.

6.2.3 Cloud Formation

Clouds form when the invisible water vapour that is present in the air changes into its visible form as water droplets or ice crystals.

The process by which water vapour changes into water droplets is called condensation and occurs when the relative humidity is high, when condensation nuclei are present in the air and when there is cooling of the air.

The level at which water vapour condenses and becomes visible is known as the condensation level. This level is, in practice, the base of the clouds. If the cloud forms at ground level, it is called fog rather than cloud.

Except at temperatures well below freezing, clouds are composed of very small droplets of water which collect on microscopic water absorbent particles of solid matter in the air (such as salt from evaporating sea spray, dust, and smoke particles). The abundance of these particles, called condensation nuclei, on which the droplets form, permits condensation to occur generally as soon as the air becomes saturated. If the condensation nuclei are particularly abundant, condensation may occur at less than 100% relative humidity.

Clouds which form at temperatures well below freezing are usually composed of small particles of ice known as ice crystals which form directly from water vapour through the process of deposition. When the temperature is between freezing and about -15°C, clouds are composed largely of supercooled water droplets with some ice crystals as well. See **Supercooled Water Droplets** in section **Humidity.**

Saturated warm air holds much more water vapour than does saturated cold air. Cooling saturated warm air will result in more water vapour condensing into visible water droplets than is the case when cooling saturated cold air. Denser, thicker cloud formations occur when condensation occurs in a warm air mass.

Clouds are formed in two ways. (1) Air, in which water vapour is present, is cooled to its saturation point and condensation occurs. The cooling process will occur as warm air comes in contact with a cold surface or with a surface that is cooling by radiation or as air is affected by adiabatic expansion. (2) Air, without a change in temperature taking place, may absorb additional water vapour until its saturation point is reached with the result that clouds are formed.

Of these, the most common cause of cloud formation is adiabatic expansion, that is, cooling due to expansion brought about by lifting.

Stability of the air, of course, is one of the major factors which determines the strength and extent of vertical motion and therefore cloud formation. In stable air, the cloud forms in horizontal sheets of stratus cloud. In unstable air, cumulus clouds develop.

The lifting process is initiated by a number of different phenomena.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Orographic Lift

Air blowing against a range of hills or mountains is forced upward, reaches a region of lower pressure, expands and cools. Condensation will occur when the dewpoint is reached. The type of cloud formed will depend on the moisture content and on the stability of the air. The slope and height of the terrain and the strength of the wind component that produces the upslope flow also have an effect.

If the air is dry, very little cloud will form. Stratus cloud will form if the air is moist and stable, cumulus and cumulonimbus if the air is moist and unstable.

A long bank of cloud from which rain may fall forms on the windward side and on the upper parts of the hills or mountains. Due to the fact that the rising ground is always in the same place, orographic clouds and rain are typically persistent and usually widespread. The descending air on the leeward side of the mountains will be compressed and heated, causing dissipation of the clouds.

Convection

Warm air rises. Owing to the heating of the ground by the sun, rising currents of air occur. The upward movement of air is known as convection. (The downward movement of air is known as subsidence.) As currents of air rise due to convection, they expand. The expansion is accompanied by cooling. The cooling produces condensation; a cumuliform cloud forms at the top of each rising column of air. The cloud will grow in height as long as the rising air within it remains warmer than the air surrounding it. The height of the cloud, however, is also dependent on the stability of the air in the mid-levels of the troposphere. If the air is stable, fair weather cumulus, only a few thousand feet thick, will form. If the air is unstable through the troposphere right up to the tropopause, towering cumulus and cumulonimbus will develop. Heavy rainshowers and thunderstorms are typically associated with convection clouds.

Convection also occurs when air moves over a surface that is warmer than itself. The air is heated by advection and convective currents develop. Warming of air by advection does not depend on daytime heating. Convection will, therefore, continue day or night so long as the airflow remains the same.

Frontal Lift

When a mass of warm air is advancing on a colder mass, the warm air rises over the cold air on a long gradual slope. This slope is called a warm frontal surface. The ascent of the warm air causes it to cool and clouds are formed, ranging from high cirrus through altostratus down to thick nimbostratus from which continuous steady rain may fall over a wide area.

When a mass of cold air is advancing on a mass of warm air, the cold air undercuts the warm air and forces the latter to rise. The slope of the advancing wedge of cold air is called a cold frontal surface. The clouds which form are heavy cumulus or cumulonimbus. Heavy rain, thunderstorms, turbulence and icing are associated with the latter.

Turbulence

When a strong wind blows over a rough surface, the friction between the ground and the air produces mechanical turbulence, or eddy motion. The intensity of the turbulence is dependent on the roughness of the underlying surface, the strength of the wind and the instability of the air.

The eddy motion consists of irregular up and down currents. The air in the upward current cools and, if sufficient moisture is present and if the turbulence is vigorous, condensation may take place in the upper part of the turbulent layer. The cloud layer has an undulating base which is lower in the rising eddies than in the sinking eddies. The top of the cloud marks the top of the turbulent layer and tends to be very flat. Very often an inversion exists above the turbulent layer and it is this which blocks further vertical motion. The cloud layers tend to be stratocumulus in form.

Sometimes convection occurs in combination with the mechanical turbulence and then cumulus clouds will develop and will be embedded in the stratocumulus layer.

If the air is very stable, the mechanical turbulence is dampened and confined to very low levels. Only if the air is very moist will clouds form in this slight lifting action and then they will be stratus in form. If the wind is strong, stratus factus may be associated with the stratus layer.

Convergence

When air piles up over a region as at the centre of a low pressure area, convergence is said to be occurring. The excess air is forced to rise; it expands and cools and, when the condensation level is reached, clouds form. Since all fronts lie in regions of low pressure, convergence is often a contributing factor to frontal weather.

6.3 Pressure

Atmospheric pressure is important to the pilot for two reasons. Firstly, aeroplane altimeters are operated by atmospheric pressure and must be properly set to give correct readings of altitude. Secondly, pressure distribution in the atmosphere controls the winds which are of great importance to the pilot in planning cross-country flights.

6.3.1 Atmospheric Pressure

The pressure of the atmosphere at any point is due to the weight of overlying air. Pressure at the surface of the earth is usually measured by the mercury barometer and is expressed in inches of mercury (written "Hg). The mercury barometer consists of an open dish of mercury into which the open end of an evacuated glass tube is placed. Atmospheric pressure forces mercury to rise in the tube. The greater the pressure, the higher the column rises. A measurement expressed in inches is, in effect, the length of the column of mercury, the weight of which will balance a column of air extending from the ground to the top of the atmosphere (Fig.6.9).

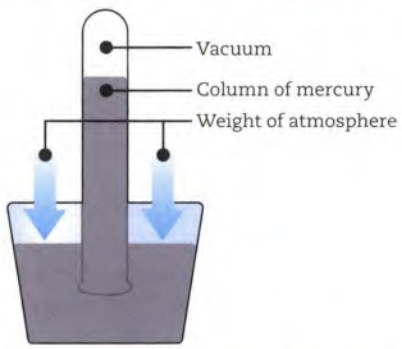


Fig.6.9 **Principle of the Mercury Barometer**

Pressure, however, is a force and in meteorological work it is common to employ a unit, the hectopascal (hPa), to measure it. A hectopascal is a pressure exerted on an area of 1 square centimeter by a force of 1,000 dynes.

One hectopascal is equal to one millibar, the term in common usage prior to the adoption of metric terminology.

A pressure expressed as 29.92 inches of mercury is equivalent to 1013.2 hectopascals.

In the weather information given on public radio and television broadcasts, atmospheric pressure is commonly expressed in kilopascals (kPa). One kilopascal equals 10 hectopascals. A pressure expressed as 103.32 kPa is equivalent to 1033.2 hectopascals.

6.3.2 Sea Level & Station Pressure

Station pressure is the actual atmospheric pressure at the elevation of the observing station. It is, in other words, the actual weight of a column of air extending up from the station level to the outer limit of the atmosphere. The value is determined directly from the mercury barometer at the observing station. Since the weight of the atmosphere decreases with altitude, it follows that the atmospheric pressure reading at a station at 5,000 feet elevation will be less than that at a station at 1,000 feet and still less than that at a station at sea level.

To have a consistent record of the distribution of atmospheric pressure, it is necessary to reduce the station pressures to a common level. This standard is called mean sea level (MSL) pressure. The reduction to MSL pressure involves adding to the station pressure the weight of an imaginary column of air extending from the station level down to mean sea level. In determining MSL pressure, local temperature must be taken into account. The temperature value is based on the average of the surface temperatures at the time of observation and for 12 hours before the time of observation. Mean sea level pressure is expressed in hectopascals.

To make an altimeter in an aeroplane correctly read the true height above mean sea level, it must be set to a standard atmospheric pressure. This pressure reading is called the altimeter setting. It differs slightly from the mean sea level pressure. In reducing station pressure to sea level pressure for altimeter setting purposes, the standard sea level temperature of 15°C and the standard lapse rate of 1.98°C per 1,000 feet is used in computing the equivalents. When correctly set, the altimeter will then read the true elevation of the airport at which the aeroplane is parked. (Conversely, if a pilot does not know the altimeter setting but does know the elevation of the airport at which the aeroplane is parked, he/she can dial in the correct elevation and get also the correct altimeter setting.) Altimeter setting is reported in inches of mercury.

6.3.3 Pressure Systems

The pressure readings that are taken at various weather reporting stations all over North America are transmitted to forecast offices and are plotted on specially prepared maps. Areas of like pressure are joined by lines, wind direction arrows are entered and the result is a weather map that gives the weather man a symbolic picture of the weather over the whole continent.

The lines that join, on a weather map, areas of equal barometric pressure are called isobars. These lines are drawn on the map at intervals of four hectopascals, above and below the value of 1,000 hectopascals. When the isobars are drawn in, they form definite patterns. They never cross, but form roughly concentric circles and form themselves into distinct areas of high and low pressure.

The various types of pressure systems are: lows, secondary lows, troughs, highs, ridges and cols. They are illustrated in Fig.6.10 as they would appear on a typical weather map.

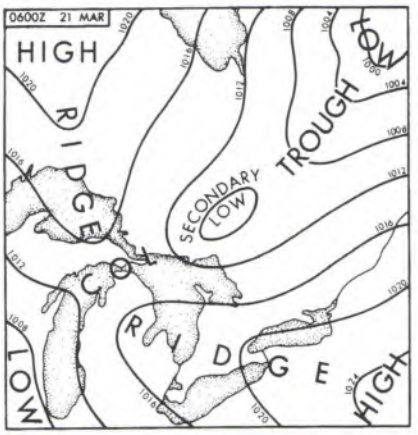


Fig.6.10 **Pressure Systems**

The pressure patterns on the weather map are like contour lines on a topographic map; the high pressure areas correspond to hills and the low pressure areas to valleys. It is important to recognize that the pressure systems are relative to the pressure around them. A high pressure area, in the centre of which the pressure reading is, for example, 1,000 hectopascals, is classed a high because the surrounding pressure is less than 1,000 hectopascals. A pressure area with the same pressure reading of 1,000 hectopascals at the centre would be classed as a low if the surrounding pressure is higher than 1,000 hectopascals.

These pressure systems are constantly moving or changing in appearance. Lows may deepen or fill and highs may build or weaken. Most systems move in a general west to east direction.

If we put down on a map beside the barometer readings and wind arrows the state of the weather, we shall see that, in the high pressure areas, it is usually fine and clear, probably cooler, while in the low pressure areas, it is generally rainy and cloudy on the east side and probably fine on the west side. The weather, in fact, is intimately connected with the shape of the isobars.

Low Pressure Areas

Areas of low pressure are called cyclones, depressions or simply lows. A low is a region of relatively low pressure with the lowest pressure at the centre.

A low may cover a small region such as a county, or it may extend across half a continent. Some are much deeper than others. A tornado, for example, is a very deep, small but concentrated low. A deep low is one where the pressure is very low in the centre and the isobars are rather close together. A shallow depression is low in the centre, but not much lower than the surrounding areas.

Depressions seldom stay long in one place but generally move in an easterly direction. Their average rate of movement is 500 miles (about 800 kilometers) a day in summer, and 700 miles (about 1,100 kilometers) a day in winter. Their drift is generally to the north-east or south-east. Only rarely is there an exception to this pattern of easterly drift of low pressure areas.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Secondary Low

A secondary low is a smaller disturbance of a cyclonic nature which forms within the area dominated by the main depression. The secondary centre revolves around the main centre in a counterclockwise direction. Secondaries are frequently associated with thunderstorms in summer and gales or heavy precipitation in winter.

Trough of Low Pressure

A trough is an elongated U-shaped area of low pressure with higher pressure on either side, which may bring about a gradual windshift.

The term "trough" is also applied to the V-shape formed by the sharp bending or kinking of the isobars along a frontal surface, sometimes referred to as a V-shaped depression (see **Fronts**). Sudden windshifts may be expected, accompanied by the type of weather generally associated with fronts.

Col

A col is a neutral region between two highs and two lows. Weather conditions are apt to be unsettled. In winter, the mixing of air of dissimilar air masses frequently produces fog. In summer, showers or thunderstorms may occur. While it is quite possible for weather conditions to be fair, generally speaking, cols may be regarded as regions of undependable weather.

High Pressure Areas

A high, or anticyclone, is an area of relatively high pressure, the pressure being higher than that of the surrounding regions. The pressure is highest at the centre and decreases towards the outside. The accompanying weather is usually fine to fair, clear and bright, with light, moderately cool breezes. The temperature becomes cooler at night with possibly a little frost. In winter, a high very often brings clear, cold weather. Occasionally, however, an anti-cyclone occurs in which a persistent cloud sheet develops, causing dull, gloomy weather.

The winds associated with high pressure are usually light and rather variable. They circulate in a clockwise direction around the centre, blowing outwards into the lows.

Highs move much more slowly across the country than depressions and occasionally remain almost stationary for days at a time.

Ridge of High Pressure

An anticyclone ridge is a neck or ridge of high pressure with lower pressure lying on either side. The weather in a ridge is generally fine to fair.

6.3.4 Pressure Changes

Pressure readings are taken at regular intervals (usually hourly) at weather stations. Weather maps are prepared four times a day at six hour intervals. From these readings and maps, the changes in pressure can be observed and approaching weather forecast. If a low, for example, is approaching a station, the pressure will steadily fall. Once the centre of the low has passed by, the pressure will begin to rise. This pattern of changing pressure is called pressure tendency.

6.3.5 Pressure Gradient

If some of the air were removed from a room, the pressure would be reduced and the pressure outside would force air in through the doors and windows until the room was again filled with the normal amount of air. Similarly, in the case of low and high pressure areas, there is a tendency for the higher pressure air in a high to flow towards the area of lower pressure.

The speed at which this movement of air occurs depends on the pressure gradient. The pressure gradient is defined as the rate of change of pressure over a given distance measured at right angles to the isobars.

The steepness of the pressure gradient is measured by the nearness of the isobars. Where the isobars are spaced widely apart, the pressure gradient is shallow and the movement of air (wind) is slow or light. Where the isobars are very close together, the gradient is steep and the wind is strong.

6.3.6 Coriolis Force

The air moving from a high pressure area to a low pressure area does not flow directly from the one to the other. It is deflected to the right in the Northern Hemisphere by a force called the Coriolis force and as a result flows parallel to the isobars.

Anything moving above the surface of the earth will continue to move in a straight line if no force acts on it, but the earth in its rotation moves under the moving body. The moving body is, therefore, apparently deflected to the right in the Northern Hemisphere. In the Southern Hemisphere, the apparent deflection is to the left. This is known as Ferrel's Law. The apparent deflecting force is called Coriolis force (Fig.6.11).

Hence, the wind does not blow straight into an area of low pressure from all sides but is deflected to the right and blows around the area of low pressure counterclockwise in the Northern Hemisphere. As the air tries to turn to the right, the low pressure system will try to draw the air into itself, and the result is that air is held into a circle that actually turns to the left.

In the case of a high pressure area, the air flows out from the area of high pressure, but is deflected to the right because of the Coriolis force. As a result, the wind blows clockwise round an area of high pressure in the Northern Hemisphere.

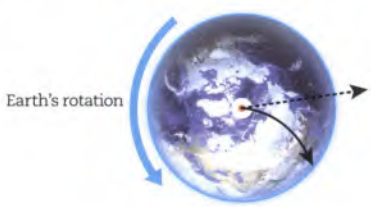


Fig.6.11 **Coriolis Force**

Cut out a paper disk to represent the earth. Place a pin through the centre to represent the north pole. Rotating the disk around the pin (counterclockwise) to represent the earth's rotation, attempt to draw a straight line (the dotted line in the figure) to represent a wind blowing from north to south. The line will curve as shown, or in other words, be deflected to the right.

Buys Ballot's Law: *if you stand with your back to the wind, the low pressure area will be on your left side. In the Southern Hemisphere, the reverse is the case.*

6.3.7 Surface Friction

In the lower levels of the atmosphere, a third force acts on the direction and speed of the air moving from areas of high pressure to areas of low pressure. This force is surface friction. Friction between the air masses and the surface of the earth tends to slow down the movement of the air, thereby reducing the wind speed. This in turn retards the Coriolis force. As a result, air tends to move across the isobars at a slight angle inwards towards the centre of the lows and outwards from the centres of the highs.

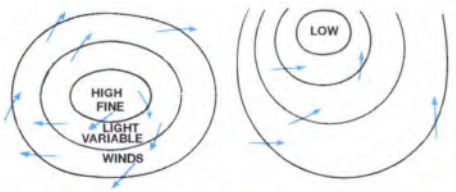


Fig.6.12 Surface Friction Effect on Air Movement Across Isobars

The more surface friction, the greater the angle at which the flow of air is deflected from a flow parallel to the isobars. Over water, it is less than over land where the roughness of the terrain may cause a deflection of as much as 40°. Over water, the deflection is rarely more than 10°. The friction effect is greatest near the surface of the earth but may be carried aloft by turbulence to heights as great as 2,000 feet. Above this altitude, it is practically negligible and the winds tend to flow parallel to the isobars as a result of the Coriolis force.

6.3.8 Centrifugal Force

Centrifugal force, acting on the circulating flow of air around the high and low pressure areas, tends to increase wind speed in the high pressure areas and decrease it in the low pressure areas.

6.3.9 Convergence & Divergence

The flow of air **into** an area is called convergence. It is usually accompanied by an upward movement of air to permit the excess accumulation of air to escape. Areas of convergent winds are favourable to the occurrence of precipitation in the form of thunderstorms, rain, hail or snow.

When there is a flow of air **outwards** from a region, the condition is known as divergence. The outflow is compensated by a downward movement of air from aloft. Areas of divergent winds are not favourable to the occurrence of precipitation.

6.4 Winds

The horizontal movement of air, called wind, is a factor of great importance to a pilot as he/she plans a flight. Upper winds encountered en route will affect groundspeed either favourably or detrimentally and thus have a bearing on time en route and fuel consumption. Surface winds are important in landing and take-off.

6.4.1 Hemispheric Prevailing Winds

Since the atmosphere is fixed to the earth by gravity and rotates with the earth, there would be no circulation if some force did not upset the atmosphere's equilibrium. The heating of the earth's surface by the sun is the force responsible for creating the circulation that does exist.

Because of the curvature of the earth, the most direct rays of the sun strike the earth in the vicinity of the equator resulting in the greatest concentration of heat, the largest possible amount of reradiation and the maximum heating of the atmosphere in this area of the earth. At the same time, the sun's rays strike the earth at the poles at a very oblique angle, resulting in a much lower concentration of heat and much less reradiation so that there is, in fact, very little heating of the atmosphere over the poles and consequently very cold temperatures.

Cold air, being more dense, sinks and hot air, being less dense, rises. Consequently, the rising warm air at the equator becomes even less dense as it rises and its pressure decreases. An area of low pressure, therefore, exists over the equator.

Warm air rises until it reaches a certain height at which it starts to spill over into surrounding areas. At the poles, the cold dense air is sinking. Air from the upper levels of the atmosphere flows in on top of it increasing the weight and creating an area of high pressure at the poles.

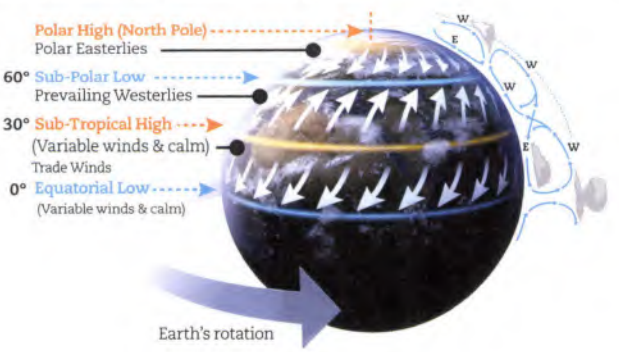


Fig.6.13 Wind Circulation

The air that rises at the equator does not flow directly to the poles. Due to the rotation of the earth, there is a build-up of air at about 30° north latitude. (The same phenomenon occurs in the Southern Hemisphere.) Some of the air sinks, causing a belt of high pressure at this latitude.

The sinking air reaches the surface and flows north and south. The air that flows south completes one cell of the earth's circulation pattern, as shown in Fig.6.13. The air that flows north becomes part of another cell of circulation between 30° and 60° north latitude. At the same time, the sinking air at the north pole flows south and collides with the air moving north from the 30° high pressure area. The colliding air is forced upward and an area of low pressure is created near 60° north. The third cell circulation pattern is created between the north pole and 60° north.

Because of the rotation of the earth and the Coriolis force, air is deflected to the right in the Northern Hemisphere. As a result, the movement of air in the polar cell circulation produces the polar easterlies. In the circulation cell that exists between 60° and 30° north, the movement of air produces the prevailing westerlies. In the tropic circulation cell, the northeast trade winds are produced. These are the so-called permanent wind systems of the earth. They are illustrated in Fig.6.13.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

6.4.2 Upper Level Winds

There are two main forces which affect the movement of air in the upper levels. The pressure gradient causes the air to move horizontally, forcing the air directly from a region of high pressure to a region of low pressure. The Coriolis force, however, deflects the direction of the flow of the air (to the right in the Northern Hemisphere) and causes the air to flow parallel to the isobars (or contours as the lines joining areas of equal pressure are called on Upper Level Weather Charts).

Winds in the upper levels will blow clockwise around areas of high pressure and counterclockwise around areas of low pressure.

The speed of the wind is determined by the pressure gradient. The winds are strongest in regions where the isobars are close together and where the pressure gradient is highest.

6.4.3 Surface Winds

Surface friction plays an important role in the speed and direction of surface winds. As a result of the slowing down of the air as it moves over the ground, wind speeds are less than would be expected from the pressure gradient on the weather map and the direction is changed so that the wind blows across the isobars into a centre of low pressure and out of a centre of high pressure.

The effect of friction usually does not extend more than a couple of thousand feet into the air. At 3,000 feet above the ground, the wind blows parallel to the isobars with a speed proportional to the pressure gradient.

Even allowing for the effects of surface friction, the winds, locally, do not always show the speed and direction that would be expected from the isobars on the surface weather map. These variations are usually due to geographical features such as hills, mountains and large bodies of water. Except in mountainous regions, the effect of terrain features that cause local variations in wind extends usually no higher than about 2,000 feet above the ground.

Land & Sea Breezes

Land and sea breezes are caused by the differences in temperature over land and water. The sea breeze occurs during the day when the land area heats more rapidly than the water surface. This results in the pressure over the land being lower than that over the water. The pressure gradient is often strong enough for a wind to blow from the water to the land.

The land breeze blows at night when the land becomes cooler. Then the wind blows towards the warm, low pressure area over the water.

Land and sea breezes are very local and affect only a narrow area along the coast.

Mountain Winds

Hills and valleys substantially distort the airflow associated with the prevailing pressure system and the pressure gradient. Strong up and downdrafts and eddies develop as the air flows up over hills and down into valleys. Wind direction changes as the air flows around hills. Sometimes lines of hills and mountain ranges will act as a barrier, holding back the wind and deflecting it so that it flows parallel to the range. If there is a pass in the mountain range, the wind will rush through this pass as through a funnel with considerable speed. The airflow can be expected to remain turbulent and erratic for some distance as it flows out of the hilly area and into the flatter countryside.

Daytime heating and nighttime cooling of the hilly slopes cause day to night variations in the airflow. At night, the sides of the hills cool by radiation. The air in contact with them becomes cooler and therefore denser and it blows down the slope into the valley. This is a katabatic wind (sometimes also called a mountain breeze). If the slopes are covered with ice and snow, the katabatic wind will blow, not only at night but also during the day, carrying the cold dense air into the warmer valleys. The slopes of hills not covered by snow will be warmed during the day. The air in contact with them becomes warmer and less dense and, therefore, flows up the slope. This is an anabatic wind (or valley breeze).

In mountainous areas, local distortion of the airflow is even more severe. Rocky surfaces, high ridges, sheer cliffs, steep valleys, all combine to produce unpredictable flow patterns and turbulence. The most treacherous of the local wind systems associated with mountains, however, is the mountain wave.

THE MOUNTAIN WAVE

Air flowing across a mountain range usually rises relatively smoothly up the slope of the range but, once over the top, it pours down the other side with considerable force, bouncing up and down, creating eddies and turbulence and also creating powerful vertical waves that may extend for great distances downwind of the mountain range. This phenomenon is known as a mountain wave. Fig.6.14 illustrates the type of wave pattern which may be activated by a very strong wind. Note the up and downdrafts and the rotating eddies formed downstream.

If the air mass has a high moisture content, clouds of very distinctive appearance will develop.

Cap Clouds are caused by orographic lift and form along the top of the ridge. The wind carries this cloud down along the leeward slope where it dissipates through adiabatic heating. The base of this cloud lies near or below the peaks of the ridge; the top may reach a few thousand feet above the peaks.

Lenticular Clouds (Lens-Shaped) form in the wave crests aloft and lie in bands that may extend to well above 40,000 feet.

Rotor Clouds form in the rolling eddies downstream. They resemble a long line of stratocumulus clouds, the bases of which lie below the mountain peaks and the tops of which may reach to a considerable height above the peaks. Occasionally these clouds develop into thunderstorms.

The clouds, being very distinctive, can be seen from a great distance and provide a visible warning of the mountain wave condition. Unfortunately, sometimes they are embedded in other cloud systems and are hidden from sight. Sometimes the air mass is very dry and the clouds do not develop.

The severity of the mountain wave and the height to which the disturbance of the air is affected is dependent on the strength of the wind, its angle to the range and the stability or instability of the air. The most severe mountain wave conditions are created in strong airflows that are blowing at right angles to the range and in very unstable air. A jet stream blowing nearly perpendicular to the mountain range increases the severity of the wave condition.

The mountain wave phenomenon is not limited only to high mountain ranges, such as the Rockies, but is also present to a lesser degree in smaller mountain systems and even in lines of small hills.

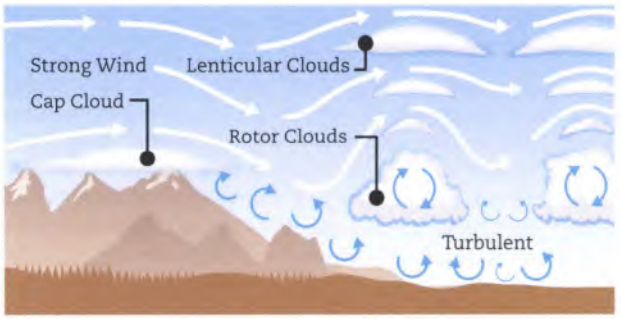


Fig.6.14 **The Mountain Wave**

Mountain waves present problems to pilots for several reasons:

1. Vertical Currents. Downdrafts of 2,000 feet per minute are common and downdrafts as great as 5,000 feet per minute have been reported. They occur along the downward slope and are most severe at a height equal to that of the summit. An aeroplane, caught in a downdraft, could be forced to the ground.
2. Turbulence. This is usually extremely severe in the air layer between the ground and the tops of the rotor clouds.
3. Wind Shear. The wind speed varies dramatically between the crests and troughs of the waves. The wind speed variation is usually most dramatic near the mountain range and is responsible for severe wind shear.
4. Altimeter Error. The increase in wind speed results in an accompanying decrease in pressure which in turn affects the accuracy of the pressure altimeter. (See also **Mountain Effect** in the Section **The Altimeter** in Chapter **Theory of Flight**.)
5. Icing. The freezing level varies considerably from crest to trough. Severe icing can occur because of the large supercooled droplets sustained in the strong vertical currents.

When flying over a mountain ridge where wave conditions exist: (1) Avoid ragged and irregular shaped clouds — the irregular shape indicates turbulence. (2) Approach the mountain at a 45 degree angle. If you should suddenly decide to turn back, a quick turn can be made away from the high ground. (3) Avoid flying in cloud on the mountain crest (cap cloud) because of strong downdrafts and turbulence. (4) Allow sufficient height to clear the highest ridges with altitude to spare to avoid the downdrafts and eddies on the downwind slopes. (5) **Always remember that your altimeter can read over 3,000 ft. in error on the high side in mountain wave conditions**.

Gust

A gust is a rapid and irregular fluctuation of varying intensity in the upward and downward movement of air currents. It may be associated with a rapid change in wind direction. Gusts are caused by mechanical turbulence that results from friction between the air and the ground and by the unequal heating of the earth's surface, particularly on hot summer afternoons.

Squall

A squall is a sudden increase in the strength of the wind of longer duration than a gust and may be caused by the passage of a fast moving cold front or thunderstorm. Like a gust, it may be accompanied by a rapid change of wind direction.

Diurnal Variations

Given an isobaric pattern and a pressure gradient that are fundamentally identical, surface winds can usually be expected to be stronger and gustier during the day than during the night. In unstable air, there are ascending and descending currents that provide a vertical link between winds at different levels in the convective layer. In stable air, especially in an inversion that typically occurs at night, this link does not exist and winds can be very different above and below the inversion.

When the sun sets and night falls, the nocturnal inversion develops (the surface air cools by radiation and there is warm air above the cooler surface layer). With no surface heating, turbulence diminishes and the convective current link between the low level air affected by the earth's surface and the free flowing air above disappears. The surface layer of air becomes more strongly influenced by the frictional effects of the earth's surface. The surface winds decrease in speed and back in direction (see **Veering and Backing** below).

When the sun rises, warming breaks down the nocturnal inversion and vertical currents develop. The resulting turbulence causes the faster air aloft to be brought down to the surface and the slower surface air to be carried aloft. Since the wind direction at the higher level is parallel to the isobars and its speed is greater than the surface wind which is slowed by friction, the mixing causes the surface wind to increase in speed, veer in direction and become gusty. It reaches its greatest speed during the afternoon when the temperature rises to a maximum value.

Diurnal variations do not occur over large lakes and oceans since nocturnal inversions do not develop over water.

Eddies

Friction between the moving air mass and surface features of the earth (hills, mountains, valleys, trees, buildings, etc.) is responsible for the swirling vortices of air commonly called eddies. They vary considerably in size and intensity depending on the size and roughness of the surface obstruction, the speed of the wind and the degree of stability of the air. They can spin in either a horizontal or vertical plane. Unstable air and strong winds produce more vigorous eddies. In stable air, eddies tend to quickly dissipate. Eddies produced in mountainous areas are especially powerful.

The bumpy or choppy up and down motion that signifies the presence of eddies makes it difficult to keep an aeroplane in level flight. Because they are present predominantly in the lower levels, pilots encounter these eddies during landing and take-off when the bumpiness and sudden drops and increases in wind speed and direction may be critical.

Dust Devils

Dust devils are phenomena that occur quite frequently on the hot dry plains of mid-western North America. They can be of sufficient force to present a hazard to pilots of light aeroplanes flying at low speeds. They are small heat lows that form on clear hot days. Given a steep lapse rate caused by cool air aloft over a hot surface, little horizontal air movement, few or no clouds, and the noonday sun heating flat arid soil surfaces to high temperatures, the air in contact with the ground becomes super-heated and highly unstable. This surface layer of air builds until something triggers an upward movement. Once started, the hot air rises in a column and draws more hot air into the base of the column. Circulation begins around this

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

heat low and increases in velocity until a small vigorous whirlwind is created. Dust devils are usually of short duration and are so named because they are made visible by the dust, sand and debris that they pick up from the ground.

Dust devils pose the greatest hazard near the ground where they are most violent. Pilots proposing to land on superheated runways in areas of the mid-west where this phenomenon is common should scan the airport for dust swirls or grass spirals that would indicate the existence of this hazard.

Tornadoes

Tornadoes are violent, circular whirlpools of air associated with severe thunderstorms and are, in fact, very deep, concentrated low pressure areas. They are shaped like a funnel hanging out of the cumulonimbus cloud and are dark in appearance due to the dust and debris sucked into their whirlpools. They range in diameter from about 100 feet to one half mile and move over the ground at speeds of 25 to 50 knots. Their path over the ground is usually only a few miles long although tornadoes have been reported to cut destructive swaths as long as 100 miles. The great destructiveness of tornadoes is caused by the very low pressure in their centres and the high wind speeds which are reputed to be as great as 300 knots.

6.4.4 Wind Speed & Direction

Wind speeds for aviation purposes are expressed in knots (nautical miles per hour). In the weather reports on Canadian public radio and television, wind speeds are given in kilometers per hour while in the U.S. they are given in miles per hour.

In a discussion of wind direction, the compass point from which the wind is blowing is considered to be its direction. Therefore, a north wind is one that is blowing from the north towards the south. In aviation weather reports, area and aerodrome forecasts, the wind is always reported in degrees true. In ATIS broadcasts and in the information given by the tower for landing and take-off, the wind is reported in degrees magnetic.

Veering & Backing

The wind veers when it changes direction clockwise. Example: The surface wind is blowing from 270°T. At 2,000 feet it is blowing from 280°T. It has changed in a right-hand, or clockwise, direction and is called a veering wind.

The wind backs when it changes direction counterclockwise. Example: The wind direction at 2,000 feet is 090°T, at 3,000 feet 085°T. It is changing in a left-hand, or counterclockwise, direction and is called a backing wind.

In a descent from several thousand feet above the ground to ground level, the wind will usually be found to back and also decrease in velocity, as the effect of surface friction becomes apparent. Above the friction/surface layer (2 to 4 thousand feet), the pressure gradient and the Coriolis force are in balance and the air is moving parallel to the isobars. In the friction layer near the surface, wind speed starts to decrease due to friction. Because of the reduced wind speed, the Coriolis force is also reduced and the air is not deflected to the right as much. Conversely, in a climb from the surface to several thousand feet AGL, the wind will veer and increase.

Wind Speed

There are certain tell tale signs that help a pilot to determine the speed of the wind.

Wind Speed	Wind Speed Sign
A wind of 1 to 2 knots	smoke drifts and water ripples.
A wind of 4 to 6 knots	leaves rustle; small wavelets break the surface of water bodies but there are no white caps.
A wind of 7 to 10 knots	leaves and small twigs move as do flags; scattered whitecaps break the surface of water bodies.
A wind of 11 to 16 knots	small branches move; long waves and frequent whitecaps can be seen on water surfaces.
A wind of 17 to 24 knots	small trees sway; many long white-caps break the water surface.
A strong wind of 25 to 31 knots	large branches move; large waves, spray and white foam crests break the surface of water bodies.

Fig.6.15 **Wind Speed Identifiers**

6.4.5 Wind Shear

Wind shear is the sudden "tearing" or "shearing" effect encountered along the edge of a zone in which there is a violent change in wind speed or direction. It can occur at high or low altitude and is most often associated with strong temperature inversions or density gradient. It produces churning motions and consequently, turbulence. Under some conditions, wind direction changes of as much as 180 degrees and speed changes of as much as 80 knots have been measured.

The effect on aeroplane performance of encountering wind shear derives from the fact that the wind can change much faster than the aeroplane mass can be accelerated or decelerated. Severe wind shears can impose penalties on an aeroplane's performance that are beyond its capabilities to compensate, especially during the critical landing and take-off phase of flight.

In Cruising Flight

In cruising flight, wind shear will likely be encountered in the transition zone between the pressure gradient wind and the distorted local winds at the lower levels. It will also be encountered when climbing or descending through a temperature inversion and when passing through a frontal surface. Wind shear is also associated with the jet stream (see below). Aeroplanes encountering wind shear may experience a succession of updrafts and downdrafts, reductions or gains in headwind, or wind shifts that disrupt the established flight path. It is not usually a major problem because altitude and airspeed margins will be adequate to counteract the shear's adverse effects. On occasion, however, the wind shear may be severe enough to cause an abrupt increase in load factor which might stall the aeroplane or inflict structural damage.

Near the Ground

Wind shear, encountered near the ground, is more serious and potentially very dangerous. There are four common sources of wind shear encountered near the ground: frontal activity, low level wind shear associated with thunderstorms, temperature inversions and strong surface winds passing around natural or man-made obstacles.

FRONTAL WIND SHEAR

Wind shear is usually a problem only in fronts with steep wind gradients. If the temperature difference across the front at the surface is 5°C or more and if the front is moving at a speed of about 30 knots or more, wind shear is likely to be present. Frontal wind shear is a phenomenon associated with fast moving cold fronts but can be present in warm fronts as well.

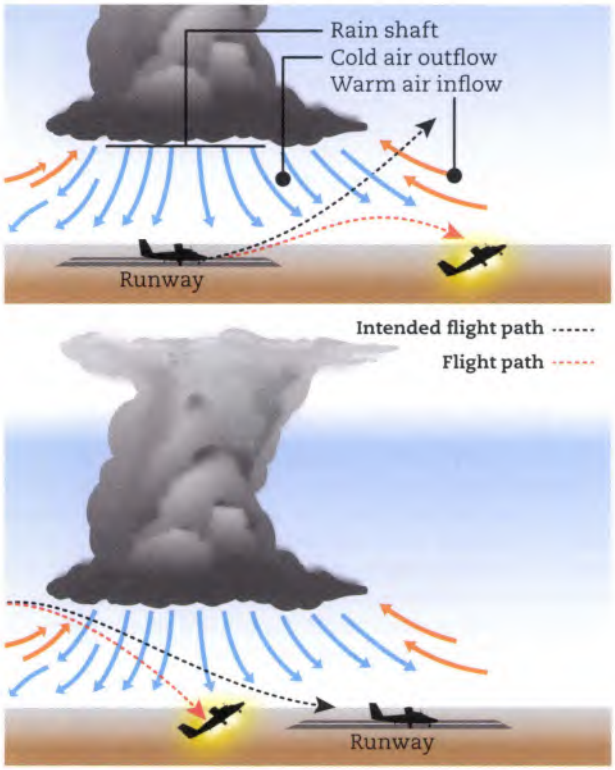


Fig.6.16 **Thunderstorm Wind Shear**

LOW LEVEL WIND SHEAR

Low level wind shear, associated with thunderstorms, occurs as the result of two phenomena, the gust front and downbursts. As the thunderstorm matures, strong downdrafts develop, strike the ground and spread out horizontally along the surface well in advance of the thunderstorm itself. This is the gust front. Winds can change direction by as much as 180° and reach speeds as great as 100 knots as far as 10 miles ahead of the storm. The downburst is an extremely intense localized downdraft flowing out of a thunderstorm. The power of the downburst can exceed aircraft climb capabilities. The downburst (there are two types of downbursts: macrobursts and microbursts) usually is much closer to the thunderstorm than the gust front. Dust clouds, roll clouds, intense rainfall or virga (rain that evaporates before it reaches the ground) are clues to the possibility of downburst activity but there is no way to accurately predict its occurrence. (See also **Thunderstorms**.) The two diagrams in Fig.6.16 depict the possible accident sequence when an aircraft encounters severe wind shear during the take-off or landing approach.

TEMPERATURE INVERSIONS

Overnight cooling creates a temperature inversion a few hundred feet above the ground that can produce significant wind shear, especially if the inversion is coupled with the low level jet stream.

As a nocturnal inversion develops, the wind shear near the top of the inversion increases. It usually reaches its maximum speed shortly after midnight and decreases in the morning as daytime heating dissipates the inversion. This phenomenon is known as the low level nocturnal jet stream. The low level jet stream is a sheet of strong winds, thousands of miles long, hundreds of miles wide and hundreds of feet thick that forms over flat terrain such as the prairies. Wind speeds of 40 knots are common, but greater speeds have been measured. Low level jet streams are responsible for hazardous low level shear.

As the inversion dissipates in the morning, the shear plane and gusty winds move closer to the ground, causing wind shifts and increases in wind speed near the surface.

SURFACE OBSTRUCTIONS

The irregular and turbulent flow of air around mountains and hills and through mountain passes causes serious wind shear problems for aircraft approaching to land at airports near mountain ridges. Wind shear is a phenomenon associated with the mountain wave (see **Mountain Wave** above). This type of wind shear is almost totally unpredictable but should be expected whenever surface winds are strong.

Wind shear is also associated with hangars and large buildings at airports. As the air flows around such large structures, wind direction changes and wind speed increases causing shear.

Wind shear occurs both horizontally and vertically. Vertical shear is most common near the ground and can pose a serious hazard to aeroplanes during take-off and landing. The aeroplane is flying at lower speeds and in a relatively high drag configuration. There is little altitude available for recovering and stall and maneuver margins are at their lowest. An aeroplane encountering the wind shear phenomenon may experience a large loss of airspeed because of the sudden change in the relative airflow as the aeroplane flies into a new, moving air mass. The abrupt drop in airspeed may result in a stall, creating a dangerous situation when the aeroplane is only a few hundred feet off the ground and very vulnerable.

The operational aspects of flight in wind shear zones is discussed in the Chapter **Airmanship**.

6.4.6 The Jet Stream

Narrow bands of exceedingly high speed winds are known to exist in the higher levels of the atmosphere at altitudes ranging from 20,000 to 40,000 feet or more. They are known as jet streams. As many as three major jet streams may traverse the North American continent at any given time. One lies across Northern Canada and one across the U.S. A third jet stream may be as far south as the northern tropics but it is somewhat rare. A jet stream in the mid-latitudes is generally the strongest.

The jet stream appears to be closely associated with the tropopause and with the polar front. It typically forms in the break between the polar and the tropical tropopause where the temperature gradients are intensified (see Fig.6.17). The mean position of the jet stream shifts south in winter and north in summer with the seasonal migration of the polar front. Because the troposphere is deeper in summer than in winter, the tropopause and the jets will normally be at higher altitudes in the summer.

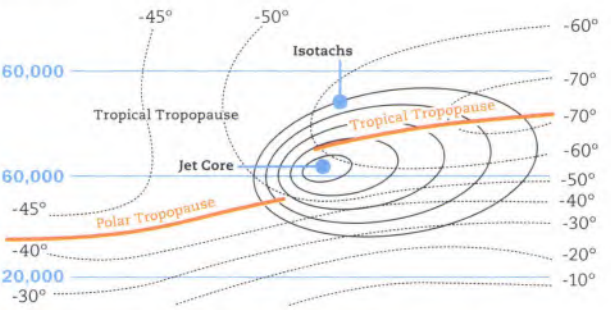


Fig.6.17 **The Jet Stream & the Tropopause**

Long, strong jet streams are usually also associated with well developed surface lows beneath deep upper troughs and lows. A low developing in the wave along the frontal surface lies

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

south of the jet. As it deepens, the low moves near the jet. As it occludes, the low moves north of the jet which crosses the frontal system near the point of occlusion. The jet flows roughly parallel to the front (see Fig.6.18).

The subtropical jet stream is not associated with fronts but forms because of strong solar heating in the equatorial regions. The ascending air turns poleward at very high levels but is deflected by the Coriolis force into a strong westerly jet. The subtropical jet predominates in winter.

The jet streams flow from west to east and may encircle the entire hemisphere. More often, because they are stronger in some places than in others, they break up into segments some 1,000 to 3,000 nautical miles long. They are usually about 300 nautical miles wide and may be 3,000 to 7,000 feet thick. These jet stream segments move in an easterly direction following the movement of pressure ridges and troughs in the upper atmosphere.

Winds in the central core of the jet stream are the strongest and may reach speeds as great as 250 knots, although they are generally between 100 and 150 knots. Wind speeds decrease toward the outer edges of the jet stream and may be blowing at only 25 knots there. The rate of decrease of wind speed is considerably greater on the northern edge than on the southern edge. (Note the closeness of the isotachs, lines joining points where winds of equal speed have been recorded, on the polar edge of the jet in Fig.6.17.) Wind speeds in the jet stream are, on average, considerably stronger in winter than in summer.

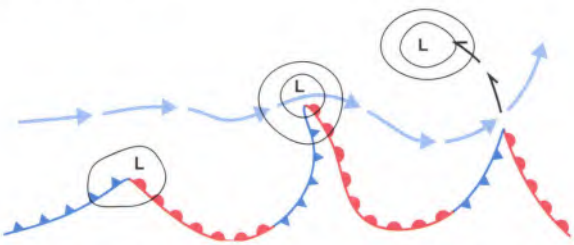


Fig.6.18 **Jet Stream Position Relative to a Frontal System**

The air in a jet rotates slowly around the core with the upward motion on the equatorial edge. If the air is moist, cirrus clouds will form in the ascending air. Their ragged, windswept appearance is always an indication of very strong winds. Sometimes quite dense cirrostratus clouds form in broad bands over the ridge of the jet stream, following the flow of the jet. They may be 10 to 12 thousand feet thick. The clouds taper off, sometimes quite sharply, at the polar edge of the jet. Dense, jet stream cirriform cloudiness is most prevalent along mid-latitude and polar jets.

Like other weather phenomena, jet streams grow, shift, intensify, decline and die. Since they do shift location rapidly from day-to-day and with the seasons, their position can best be found with reference to specially constructed charts prepared by weathermen. Knowing the location of the jet stream is important in planning long range flights at high altitudes. For obvious reasons, on a flight eastbound, a pilot would want to take advantage of the excellent tail winds the jet stream would provide, whereas on the flight westbound, he/she would want to avoid it.

Clear Air Turbulence (CAT)

Closely associated with the jet stream is clear air turbulence (CAT), a bumpy, turbulent condition that occurs in cloudless sky and can be severe enough to be a hazard to modern high performance aeroplanes. It occurs at high altitudes, usually above 15,000 feet and is more severe near 30,000 feet. CAT develops in the turbulent energy exchange along the boundary between contrasting cold and warm air masses. Such cold and warm advection along with strong wind shear develops near the jet stream especially where curvature of the jet stream increases sharply.

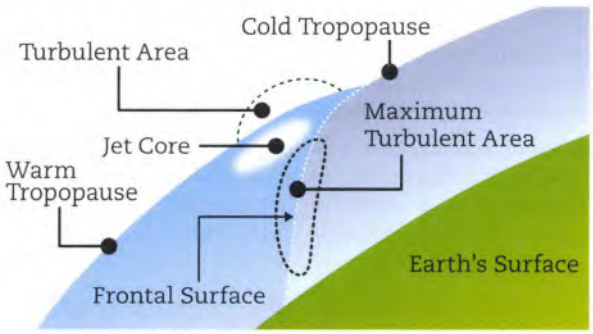


Fig.6.19 **Turbulence Associated with the Jet Stream**

The most probable place to expect CAT is just above the central core of the jet stream near the polar tropopause and just below the core. Clear air turbulence does not occur in the core. CAT is encountered more frequently in winter when the jet stream winds are strongest. Nevertheless, CAT is not always present in the jet stream and, because it is random and transient in nature, it is almost impossible to forecast.

Clear air turbulence may be associated with other weather patterns, especially in wind shear associated with the sharply curved contours of strong lows, troughs and ridges lying aloft, at or below the tropopause, and in areas of strong cold or warm air advection. Mountain waves create severe CAT that may extend from the mountain crests to as high as 5,000 feet above the tropopause. Another form of CAT which may be encountered at lower levels is wing tip vortices, which are discussed in the Chapter **Airmanship**.

Since severe CAT does pose a hazard to aeroplanes, pilots should try to avoid or minimize encounters with it. These rules of thumb may help. Avoid jet streams with strong winds (150 knots) at the core. Strong wind shears are likely above and below the core.

CAT within the jet stream is more intense above and to the lee of mountain ranges.

If the 20 knot isotachs (lines joining areas of equal wind speeds) are closer than 60 nautical miles on the charts showing the locations of the jet stream, wind shear and CAT are possible.

Turbulence is also related to vertical shear. If the wind speed is increasing by more than 5 knots per thousand feet, turbulence is likely. Vertical shear is also related to temperature gradient. If the 5°C isotherms on the upper level charts are closer than 120 nautical miles (2 degrees of latitude), there is usually turbulence.

Wind shift areas associated with pressure troughs are frequently turbulent. The sharpness of the wind shift affects the degree of turbulence.

Curving jet streams are likely to have turbulent edges, especially those that curve around a deep pressure trough.

When moderate or severe CAT has been reported or is forecast, adjust speed to rough airspeed immediately on

encountering the first bumpiness or even before encountering it to avoid structural damage to the aeroplane.

The areas of CAT are usually shallow and narrow and elongated with the wind. If jet stream turbulence is encountered with a tailwind or headwind, a turn to the right will find smoother air and more favourable winds. If the CAT is encountered in a crosswind, it is not so important to change course as the rough area will be narrow.

Establish a course across a sharp pressure trough line rather than parallel to it if turbulence is encountered in an abrupt wind shift associated with the trough.

Mountain waves produce intense vertical and horizontal wind shear. If the flight path crosses a mountain range where a mountain wave condition may exist, select turbulence penetration speed and avoid areas where the terrain drops sharply.

6.5 Humidity, Temperature & Stability

6.5.1 Humidity

Of all the elements which compose the lower atmosphere, water vapour is the most variable. Although it forms but a small proportion of the total mass of air at any time, its effects from a flying point of view are of great importance. It is the only gas which can change into a liquid or a solid under ordinary atmospheric conditions and it is because of this characteristic that most of the "weather" develops.

The moisture in the atmosphere originates principally from evaporation from the earth's water bodies (oceans, lakes, rivers, etc.) and from transpiration from the earth's vegetation. It exists in the atmosphere in two forms. In its invisible form, it is water vapour. In its visible form, it is either water droplets or ice crystals.

By a process called condensation, water vapour changes into water droplets. By a process called deposition, water vapour changes directly into ice crystals. In its visible form, as either water droplets or ice crystals, moisture forms clouds and fog. Further developments within a cloud may lead to precipitation.

The amount of water vapour that a given volume of air can contain is governed by its temperature. Warm air can hold more moisture than cold air. When a mass of air contains the maximum amount of water vapour it can hold **at a given temperature**, it is said to be saturated. If the temperature falls any lower after the air is saturated, some of the invisible water vapour will condense out in the form of visible water droplets. By this process of condensation, clouds, fog and dew are formed.

If the temperature is below freezing when the saturation occurs, the water vapour changes directly into ice crystals without passing through the visible water droplet stage. This process is deposition.

The reverse of deposition is sublimation: if the visible water droplets or ice crystals are heated, they will turn back into the invisible gas, water vapour. Therefore, if fog or clouds are heated, they will disappear.

Any change of state, even though there is no change of temperature, involves a heat transaction. During the process of condensation, as water vapour changes to visible water droplets while remaining at the same temperature, energy is released to the atmosphere in the form of heat. This heat is known as the latent heat of vaporization. In the reverse process, heat is absorbed when liquid evaporates to its invisible state at the same temperature.

Melting and freezing involve the exchange of the latent heat of fusion. In the process of deposition, the change directly from water vapour to ice crystals, the release of energy in the form of heat is equal to the latent heat of vaporization plus the latent heat of fusion.

Proof of the energy inherent in latent heat is seen in the thunderstorm and in the hurricane. The tremendous power of these two weather phenomena is derived from the energy released in the form of the latent heat of vaporization and of fusion as the water vapour changes to water droplets and to ice crystals. These violent forms of weather customarily occur in very warm, moist air since more energy is released during condensation and deposition at warmer temperatures than at cooler ones.

The process of condensation or deposition cannot take place unless there are microscopic particles present in the air on which the water vapour can condense. The atmosphere contains a vast quantity of impurities, such as fine dust from deserts, smoke from industrial regions, salts from the oceans, and seeds, pollen, etc. Since these originate from the earth, they exist only in the lower layers of the atmosphere. They act as condensation nuclei on which the condensation of water vapour takes place when air is cooled below its saturation temperature (dewpoint).

Supercooled Water Droplets

One would expect that visible water droplets in the air would freeze as soon as the ambient temperature drops to 0°C. In fact, liquid water droplets often persist at temperatures well below 0°C and are then referred to as supercooled.

The reason for the existence of liquid water droplets at temperatures well below freezing is complicated. Briefly, it might be said that the freezing process is initiated by the nuclei on which the water droplets form. These nuclei are of different composition and because of their varying chemical characteristics, some of them do not initiate the freezing process until quite low temperatures. The temperature at which a supercooled water droplet freezes also depends on its size. Large droplets freeze at temperatures only slightly below freezing whereas very minute droplets may remain in liquid form until the temperature nears -40°C. Below -40°C, very few, if any, supercooled droplets exist. Supercooled water droplets are often found in abundance in clouds at temperatures between 0°C and -15°C.

Dewpoint

The temperature to which unsaturated air must be cooled at constant pressure to become saturated (without the addition or removal of any water vapour) is called the dewpoint.

When the spread between the temperature and dewpoint is very small, the air can be said to be nearly saturated and a slight drop in temperature may cause condensation in the form of clouds, fog, or precipitation.

Relative Humidity

The relative humidity is the ratio of the actual water vapour present in the air to the amount which the same volume of air would hold if it were saturated (at the same atmospheric

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

pressure and temperature). Saturated air has 100% relative humidity. Completely dry air has 0% relative humidity.

When a given mass of air is heated and no new water vapour is added, the relative humidity of air **decreases**. If the mass of air is cooled, the relative humidity **increases**. If cooling continues long enough, the relative humidity will reach 100% and the air will be saturated.

Hence, the **smaller** the spread between temperature and dewpoint, the **higher** will be the relative humidity.

Fog or low clouds are likely to form when the temperature is within 2°C of the dewpoint.

Absolute humidity expresses the **weight** of water vapour per unit volume of air. It is usually stated in grains of water vapour per cubic foot of air. (A grain is 1/7,000th part of a pound.)

Dew & Frost

On clear, still nights, vegetation often cools by radiation to a temperature below the dewpoint of the adjacent air. Moisture, known as dew, then collects on the leaves.

Frost forms in the same way, when the dewpoint is colder than freezing. Through the process of deposition, ice crystals will form and adhere to any object (such as a metal aeroplane) which has lost sufficient heat by radiation cooling to be cooler than the dewpoint. Sometimes dew forms and later freezes. Frozen dew is hard and transparent. Frost, however, is white and opaque.

6.5.2 Temperature

The source of energy which warms the earth's surface and its atmosphere is the sun. The method by which the heat is transferred from the sun to the earth is known as solar radiation. Radiation itself is not heat. The temperature of a body is affected only if it can absorb radiation.

Some of the solar radiation that reaches earth is absorbed in the stratosphere and the ionosphere but the rest passes through the lower portions of the troposphere and is absorbed by the earth. The earth, in turn, radiates energy back into the atmosphere. This outgoing radiation is known as terrestrial radiation. On a world wide basis, the average heat gained through incoming solar radiation is equal to the heat lost through terrestrial radiation in order to keep the earth from getting progressively hotter or cooler. However, regional and local imbalances between solar and terrestrial radiation cause temperature variations that have great significance in weather formation.

Some of the outgoing terrestrial radiation is absorbed by the lower levels of the atmosphere. The rest passes out into space. The lower levels of the atmosphere are therefore not heated directly by the sun. The sun heats the earth and the earth heats the atmosphere. This fact is of the greatest importance in an understanding of weather. **The atmosphere is heated from below and not from above**.

The amount of solar energy received by any region varies with time of day, with seasons, with latitude and with surface topography. Temperatures can, therefore, vary widely.

Diurnal Variation occurs during the day when solar radiation exceeds terrestrial radiation and the surface of the earth becomes warmer. At night, solar radiation ceases but terrestrial radiation continues and cools the surface. Warming and cooling of the atmosphere occur as a result of this diurnal imbalance.

Seasonal Variation is the result of the axis of the earth's tilt to the plane of its orbit. The angle at which the solar radiation strikes the earth varies from season to season. The Northern Hemisphere receives more solar energy in June, July and August and is therefore warmer and receives less in December, January and February and is therefore cooler.

Latitude has an effect because the sun is more directly overhead in equatorial regions than at higher latitudes. The tropics consequently receive the most radiant energy and are warmer than the polar regions where the slanting rays of the sun deliver less energy over a given area.

Topography has an effect because land surfaces absorb more solar radiation than do water surfaces and radiate it more readily. Land surfaces therefore warm up more rapidly during the day and cool more rapidly at night. All land surfaces do not, however, absorb radiation at a uniform rate. There is great variation in radiation absorption by varying types of land surface. Wet soil (as found in swamps and marshes) is almost as effective as water in suppressing temperature changes. Heavy vegetation acts as an insulation against heat transfer. The greatest temperature changes occur over arid, barren surfaces such as deserts and rocky plains.

Some of the solar radiation is reflected back out to space by the earth's surface and is not absorbed at all. Some of this reflection is due to the angle at which the radiation strikes the surface but the principal cause of reflection is the type of surface. A snow surface, for example, can reflect 90% of the radiation.

Clouds greatly affect the rate of radiation. A layer of clouds will reflect a high percentage of the incoming solar radiation back out to space, drastically reducing the amount of energy reaching the earth to warm it. On a cloudy night, the clouds absorb the outgoing terrestrial radiation and radiate a considerable part of it back to earth, hindering the escape of heat.

How the Atmosphere is Heated

The lower layers of the atmosphere are heated by radiation, as we have learned, and to some small degree by conduction. Air is, however, a poor conductor of heat and thus conduction plays only a small role. The heat is distributed to the higher layers of the troposphere by several processes.

1. Convection. The air over a very warm surface becomes buoyant and rises rapidly through the atmosphere. A compensating flow of cold air descends to take its place. A vertical circulation is thereby created that distributes the heating through the upper layers.
2. Advection. A flow of air that moves from a cold area over a warm area will be heated in its lowest layers by the warm earth over which it is flowing. Warming of the air in this manner is known as advection heating.
3. Turbulence. Mechanical turbulence which is the result of friction between the air and the ground causes a mixing process that spreads the surface heat into the air aloft.
4. Compression. There are some weather systems which are favourable for the development of sinking air. This occurs in anticyclonic pressure systems or in air flowing down the side of a mountain range. As the air descends, it reaches regions of increased atmospheric pressure and is compressed and its temperature rises. This phenomenon is called subsidence.

Temperature Scales

The scales commonly used in meteorology to measure the temperature are the Celsius, Fahrenheit, and Absolute (Kelvin) Scales. The Celsius scale is used in Canada for all meteorological temperature readings. In the U.S., the Fahrenheit scale is most commonly used.

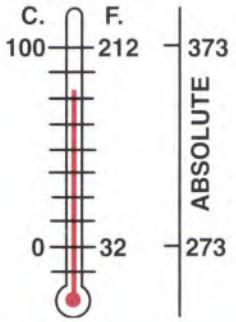


Fig.6.20 **Temperature Scales**

The Celsius scale has a freezing point of 0° and a boiling point of 100°.

The Fahrenheit scale has a freezing point of 32° and a boiling point of 212°.

The Kelvin scale assumes an absolute zero of -273.15°C. The absolute temperature can be found by adding 273.15 to the Celsius temperature.

For Example: +10°C = 283.15° Absolute
-10°C = 263.15° Absolute.

To convert Celsius to Fahrenheit, or Fahrenheit to Celsius, use the following formulae:

To Obtain Degrees F	9/5 C + 32
To Obtain Degrees C	5/9 (F - 32)

For Example: 20°F = 5 / 9 (20 - 32) = -6.7°C.
20°C = (9 / 5 x 20) + 32 = 68°F.

Fig.6.21 **How to Convert between Celsius & Fahrenheit**

Nine degrees on the Fahrenheit scale equal five degrees on the Celsius scale. Do not, however, interpret this to mean that 9°F equals 5°C (9°F equals -12.8°C).

Isotherms

On meteorological maps, lines joining places of equal temperature are known as isotherms.

Density & Temperature

The density of air means its mass per unit of volume. Cold air is dense because the molecules which compose it are moving relatively slowly and are packed closely together. Warm air is **less dense** because the molecules which compose it move about rapidly. Hence, they take up more space and there are fewer molecules in a given volume. Since cold air is denser, it is therefore **heavier** and tends to sink due to the force of gravity. Warm air, being lighter, is pushed up by the denser cold air and tends to rise.

How the Atmosphere is Cooled

Since the atmosphere is heated from below, the temperature usually decreases with height through the troposphere. The rate of decrease with height is called the lapse rate. The average lapse rate is about 2°C per thousand feet. This figure is based on the lapse rate of ICAO Standard Air which is defined as 1.98°C per thousand feet. It is this figure which is universally used in the calibration of altimeters.

This lapse rate, however, can really be only a theoretical figure. In practice, it seldom exists since there are such wide variations in air masses and the cooling process. Sometimes, the temperature remains unchanged through several thousand feet. Sometimes, the temperature will rise with height. (See **Inversions and Isothermal Layers** below.)

The atmosphere is cooled by several processes. At night, solar radiation ceases but terrestrial radiation continues. The temperature of the earth, therefore, gradually decreases. Air in contact with the cooling earth will in turn be cooled. This cooling process is known as radiation cooling. It rarely affects more than the lower few thousand feet of the atmosphere. Radiation cooling will be reduced if a blanket of clouds is present. The clouds absorb the terrestrial radiation and reflect it back to earth, slowing down the rate at which the earth cools. If the circulation is such that air from a warm region moves over a colder region, the air will be cooled. Cooling due to this process is known as advection cooling.

The most important cooling process in the atmosphere is cooling resulting from expansion as air is forced to rise. As a parcel of air rises, it encounters lower pressure and expands. As it expands, the temperature of the air decreases. In a rising current of air, the temperature decreases at a rate that is entirely independent of the lapse rate in the surrounding non-rising air. Such a temperature change results from the adiabatic process, the word adiabatic meaning that the temperature change takes place without adding or taking away heat from outside the parcel of air. Conversely, if a parcel of air should sink, it will be compressed by the increasing pressure and its temperature will rise (adiabatic heating).

ADIABATIC LAPSE RATES

Saturated air cools by expansion at a different rate than does unsaturated air. The dry adiabatic lapse rate is considered to be 3°C per 1,000 feet.

If a parcel of air rises and cools until the temperature reaches the dewpoint, condensation will occur, since the air has now become saturated. The change of water vapour to water droplets involves a heat transaction, the latent heat of vaporization, which causes the air to cool at a slower rate than that at which unsaturated air cools. The saturated adiabatic lapse rate is about 1.5°C per 1,000 feet. The saturated adiabatic lapse rate, however, shows considerable variation because it is dependent on the rate at which the water vapour is condensing and the figure of 1.5°C must be regarded as an average value only. In actuality, the saturated adiabatic lapse rate can vary from 1°C to almost 3°C.

If saturated air aloft begins to sink, it will be compressed and its temperature will rise. As it warms, it becomes unsaturated and will heat at the dry adiabatic lapse rate. Adiabatic heating of air flowing down the eastern slope of the Rocky Mountains produces the warm, dry Chinook wind.

Understanding and applying the adiabatic lapse rate is important to you as a pilot. Knowing surface temperature and dewpoint, you are able to determine at what altitude you might expect the bases of the clouds to be. You are also able to determine at what altitude you might expect to encounter icing conditions. You are able to calculate the temperature at various altitudes.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Let us consider the following situation. The surface temperature is 15°C and the dewpoint is 5°C. The surface elevation is 1,500 feet. At what height might the bases of the convective type clouds be expected to be? We know that the temperature in a rising column of unsaturated air decreases 3°C per 1,000 feet. The calculation to find the answer to this problem is not a simple case of determining the spread between the surface temperature and the dewpoint and dividing that figure by 3. The fact is that the dewpoint also falls as the column of unsaturated air rises. It decreases at a rate of about 0.5°C per 1,000 feet. Therefore, in a rising column of unsaturated air, temperature and dewpoint converge at a rate of about (3°C less 0.5°C) 2.5°C per 1,000 feet. In this problem, the spread between temperature and dewpoint on the surface is 10°. Ten divided by 2.5 is 4. The bases of the clouds can be expected to be at a height of approximately 4,000 feet AGL or 5,500 feet ASL. The dewpoint temperature at this altitude would be 3°C.

A quicker method by which to calculate the bases of cumulus clouds is to determine the spread between temperature and dewpoint and multiply by 400.

At what height might icing conditions be encountered in the cloud? In saturated rising air, the lapse rate averages about 1.5°C per 1,000 feet. The base of the cloud is at 5,500 feet ASL at a temperature of 3°C. The spread between the dewpoint and freezing is 3°C. Three divided by 1.5 is 2. The freezing level, therefore, could be expected at about 2,000 feet above the bases of the clouds, or at 7,500 feet ASL.

What is the temperature at 10,000 feet ASL? The temperature at 5,500 feet is 3°C. For the remaining 4,500 feet, the temperature decreases 1.5°C per 1,000 feet, giving a cooling of 4.5 x 1.5 or 6.6°. The temperature at 10,000 feet would, therefore, be 3° less approximately 7°, or -4°C.

It must be remembered that the temperature within a rising column of air is quite different than the temperature in the surrounding non-rising air.

The foregoing discussion of lapse rates may leave the impression that lapse rates are constant. In fact, they are not but vary considerably around the stated averages. Many factors, such as moisture content of the air, stability, decrease in lapse rate with height, decrease in dewpoint with height will affect the rate at which temperature decreases with height.

Inversions & Isothermal Layers

Normally, the temperature of the atmosphere decreases with height. However, this is not invariably the case. Sometimes, warmer air may be found at higher altitude. Such a reversal of normal conditions is known as an inversion if the temperature is actually increasing with height. In an isothermal layer, the temperature remains constant throughout a layer of some depth.

Inversions and isothermal layers can occur on a clear, still night when the cold ground cools the air above it in the lower levels. The temperature at the top of an inversion so formed may be 15° to 20°C warmer than the temperature at the surface. If there is a wind, the turbulence will mix the air in the lower few thousand feet of the atmosphere and distribute the cooling effect. In this case, the inversion will be much weaker or the temperature may be so uniform as to produce an isothermal layer.

Inversions may also occur as cold air, which is denser than warm air, flows into a low lying area such as a valley and becomes trapped there. Warm air, lifted above colder air over a frontal surface (see **Fronts** below), is another cause of an inversion.

The intensity of an inversion is weak during windy conditions, under a cloud cover and in maritime areas and it is strong under calm conditions and in valleys. A ground based inversion favours poor visibility by trapping fog, smoke and other obstructions in the lower levels of the atmosphere.

6.5.3 Stability

The normal flow of air tends to be horizontal. But disturbances may cause vertical updrafts or downdrafts to develop. Air that will resist upward or downward displacement and tends to return to its original horizontal level is said to be stable. Air which tends to move further away when disturbed is unstable. The vertical currents associated with an unstable condition may cause turbulence and, if intensive enough, thunder shower activity.

When air rises, it expands and cools adiabatically. If a mass of rising air (cooling by expansion) is still **warmer** than the air surrounding it, it is considered to be **unstable**. If disturbed, it will tend to rise further.

If a mass of rising air is **cooler** than the air around it, it is considered to be **stable**. If disturbed, it will tend to sink back to its original level.

The lapse rate in the part of the air which is not rising is one of the most important factors which determines the stability of air. If the lapse rate is steep, there is colder air aloft which will tend to sink to the surface if the air is disturbed and the warm air of the lower levels will rise. If the lapse rate is shallow so that there is only a slight temperature decrease with height or if there is warmer air on top, there will be no tendency for vertical motion to develop.

The relationship between lapse rate and stability, therefore, depends on the steepness of the lapse rate. Unstable air is indicated by a steep lapse rate; stable air by a shallow lapse rate, an isothermal layer or an inversion. It follows, also, that any modification of the lapse rate results in modification of stability. If the lapse rate becomes steeper, the air becomes more unstable. If the lapse rate becomes less steep, the air becomes more stable.

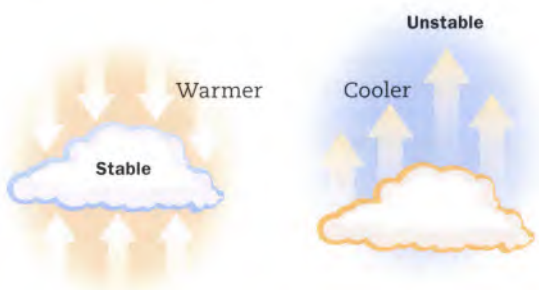


Fig.6.22 **Stable & Unstable Air**

A lapse rate can be steepened by increasing the lower level temperature (as happens with daytime heating of the earth) or by decreasing the temperature aloft. It can be made more shallow by decreasing the temperature in the lower levels (as happens with nighttime cooling of the earth) or by increasing the temperature aloft (as in an inversion).

Since the lapse rate is seldom uniform with height, there is considerable variation in the degree of stability or instability. In some situations, the rising currents may reach 20,000 feet or more; in other situations, the rising air will rise only a few thousand feet. It is possible for air to be stable near the surface and unstable aloft, but more commonly, it is unstable in the lower few thousand feet and stable aloft.

So far, we have considered masses, or parcels, of air which have, for any reason, been displaced upwards. If a layer of air becomes warmer in the lower levels or cooler in the upper levels, it will have a steep temperature lapse rate. It will therefore become **unstable**. A layer of air which has a small temperature lapse rate will be **stable**. There will be little tendency for vertical currents to develop.

Flight Characteristics		
Weather Element	In Stable Air	In Unstable Air
Visibility	Poor low level visibility (fog may occur)	Good visibility (except in precipitation)
Cloud Type	Stratus	Cumulus or Cumulonimbus
Precipitation	Steady	Showery
Winds	Steady which can change markedly with altitude	Gusty
Turbulence	Smooth flying conditions	Moderate to severe

Fig.6.23 **Flight Characteristics in Stable & Unstable Air**

Lifting Agents

There are five principal conditions that provide the lift to initiate rising currents of air.

1. Convection. The air is heated through contact with the earth's surface. The rising columns are usually local and separated by areas of sinking air. They result from unequal heating of different types of land surface and especially from the different surface temperatures of land and water areas.
2. Orographic Lift. Air moving up a sloping terrain, such as a mountainside, will continue its upward movement, especially if it is unstable.
3. Frontal Lift. When different air masses meet, warm air is forced aloft by the advancing or receding wedge of cold air. (See **Fronts** below.)
4. Mechanical Turbulence. Friction between the air and the ground disrupts the lower levels of the air into a series of eddies. These eddies are usually confined to the lower few thousand feet of the atmosphere but may extend higher if the air is unstable and surface winds are strong.
5. Convergence. In a low pressure area, the winds blow across the isobars into the centre of the low. Air accumulates in the centre of the low and the excess air is forced to rise.

6.5.4 Vapour Trails (Contrails)

The white vapour, or condensation, trails (contrails) you see high up in the blue behind jet aeroplanes owe their origin to two different causes.

1. Exhaust Trails. When, in the combustion process, the hydrogen and carbon in aviation fuel are burned, the exhaust is composed of a colourless gas, which is a product of the burned carbon, and water vapour, which is a product of the burned hydrogen. Both of these by-products are invisible. The water vapour will remain invisible as long as the humidity of the surrounding air has not reached its saturation point. Warm air can contain much more invisible water vapour than can cold air before it becomes saturated. In the extreme low temperatures encountered at very high altitudes, the cold air is incapable of absorbing the excess water vapour coming out of the exhaust. The water vapour therefore condenses into a visible cloud of water droplets or ice crystals. This is known as an **exhaust trail**.
2. Wing Tip Trails. As we learned in **Theory of Flight (Drag)**, vortices, in the form of eddies rotating with a corkscrew motion, are formed off the tips of an aeroplane wing in flight. These rapidly rotating vortices have considerable centrifugal force acting outwards, which causes a rarefaction and therefore an expansion of the air in the middle of the vortex. Air, which expands, cools. If the vortex is strong enough and the humidity of the air high enough, this cooling will cause condensation. The white cloud-like trails which form off the wing tips are known as **wing tip trails**.

The creation of a super-saturated plume capable of generating a contrail depends on the quantity of water vapour, as well as the plume's temperature and pressure. These are linked to engine speed, aircraft aerodynamics and altitude.

Also, the presence of condensation nuclei, which are primarily linked to engine emissions, influence contrail formation. Soot produced by combustion, most of which are made of pure carbon or hydrocarbons, can provide nuclei. Other aerosols that may form nuclei include natural ones (such as mineral dust coming from desert regions) and anthropogenic ones (such as sulfates from sulfur dioxide).

6.6 Air Masses

In the past, the weatherman based predictions of the weather mainly upon the existence and movement of high and low pressure areas and the wind and weather systems which are associated with them. Today, the whole system of weather forecasting is based upon the properties of air masses (of which pressure is only one factor), the changes which occur as an air mass moves away from its source, and the weather phenomena which can be predicted along the front where two air masses of different properties come in contact.

An air mass may be defined as a large section of the troposphere with uniform properties of temperature and moisture in the horizontal. An air mass may be several thousands of miles across.

It takes on its original properties from the surface over which it has formed. An air mass which has formed over the ice and snow surfaces of the Arctic would be cold and dry. An air mass that has formed over the South Pacific would be warm and moist.

An air mass which has formed over a large body of water and is therefore moist is referred to as maritime air. One which originates over a large land area and is therefore dry is referred to as continental air.

The three main sources of the air masses of North America are: (1) The Arctic Region, which extends from the north pole south to the permafrost line. (2) The Polar Region, which extends

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

south from the permafrost line to where the mean temperature is 10°C. (3) The Tropical Region, which lies below Latitude 30°N.

The principal air masses of North America are as follows:

1. Continental Arctic (cA) and Continental Polar (cP). Cold dry air masses which originate over the intensely cold ice and snow covered surface of the far north and bring a cold wave when they move south.
2. Maritime Arctic (mA) and Maritime Polar (mP). These are cold air masses which form over the Arctic and acquire moisture as they move south over the cold waters of the North Atlantic and North Pacific oceans. The Maritime Polar air mass is air which has moved farther out and over the ocean and, through contact with the ocean surface, has become more warm and moist than Maritime Arctic air.
3. Maritime Tropical (mT). Because the continent of North America narrows down towards its southern extremity, most of the tropical air in the southern latitudes is in contact with the warm ocean surface and becomes hot and moist. Source regions for Maritime Tropical air are: The Gulf of Mexico, the Caribbean Sea, and the Tropic of Cancer regions of the North Atlantic and North Pacific oceans.

In winter, the most common air masses that form over North America are Maritime Polar, Maritime Arctic and Continental Arctic. Continental Polar seldom appears over this continent. In most cases, Maritime Arctic and Maritime Polar air masses found over the continent have entered from the west. Maritime air masses found over the Atlantic Ocean affect only the east coast. The air mass in the southern portion of the continent is Maritime Tropical.

In summer, snow and ice melt, leaving numerous small lakes in the northern reaches of Canada and Alaska. These lakes provide moisture that affects the forming air masses. In summer, therefore, Maritime Arctic is the principal air mass and Continental Arctic rarely appears. Maritime Polar which enters from the Pacific Ocean and Maritime Tropical are the other common summer air masses.

6.6.1 Weather in an Air Mass

There are three main factors that determine the weather in an air mass — moisture content, the cooling process and the stability of the air.

Some air masses are very dry and little cloud develops. Maritime air has a high moisture content and cloud, precipitation and fog can be expected.

Even if the air is moist, condensation and cloud formation occur only if the temperature is lowered. The cooling processes that contribute to condensation and the formation of clouds are (1) contact with a surface cooling by radiation, (2) advection over a colder surface and (3) expansion brought about by lifting. It follows, therefore, that cloud formation within an air mass is not uniform. Clouds may form, for example, in an area where the air is undergoing orographic lift even though the rest of the air mass is clear.

Stability of the air is of prime importance. In stable air, layer cloud and poor visibility are common. Good visibility and cumulus cloud are common in unstable air.

6.6.2 Modification of Air Masses

Although the characteristics of an air mass are determined by the area over which it forms, as an air mass moves away from its source area it is modified by conditions over which it passes. If the modification is extensive both horizontally and vertically, the air mass is given a new name. Continental Arctic air, for example, by moving out over the oceans, becomes moist and may be renamed Maritime Polar or Maritime Arctic.

Temperatures may vary considerably within an air mass as the air is warmed while passing over relatively warm surfaces and cooled while passing over relatively cool surfaces.

Moisture content may also vary. The air mass will pick up moisture as it passes over lakes, wet ground or melting snow. Moist air passing over a mountain range may lose a great deal of moisture as precipitation as it ascends the western slope of the range. The air will be much drier when it reaches the prairies.

Stability characteristics also may vary considerably. Air warming from below by radiation becomes unstable as convective currents develop. Air that is cooled from below becomes more stable as vertical motion is blocked. Changes in stability alter weather conditions quite considerably.

These variations in the properties of a particular air mass during its life are not unusual. As a result, it is impossible to say that a certain weather pattern will always occur in an air mass that is classified, for example, as Continental Arctic.

Nevertheless, it is possible to define in broad terms some typical characteristics of the particular air masses.

Air Mass	Characteristics
Continental Arctic (cA)	forms over a region that is covered with ice and snow.
	moisture content is low.
	as it moves south, it is gradually heated. Strong winds set up turbulence and, if it acquires moisture, stratocumulus clouds with light snow will develop.
	if it moves over open water, such as the Great Lakes, it will be heated and acquire moisture. A steep lapse rate and accompanying instability give rise to cumulus clouds and snow showers. Eddying, gusty winds cause restricted visibility in blowing snow.
	usually follows a path from the polar regions across the prairies and into the eastern part of the continent. It rarely affects the Pacific Coast.
Maritime Arctic (mA)	forms over Siberia or Alaska and travels across the North Pacific where it becomes moist and unstable.
	stratocumulus clouds.
	when the air is lifted by coastal mountains, thunder storms develop. Precipitation occurs in the form of snow showers, snow and rain.
	loses most of its moisture as precipitation on the western slopes of the Rockies and is dry when it reaches the prairies.
	mA that develops over the North Atlantic affects only the east coast of North America.
	in summer, mA develops in polar regions and moves south over the lakes of the northern part of the continent. Daytime heating makes the air unstable.
Maritime Polar (mP)	reaches the Pacific Coast after a long journey over the ocean. It is more extensively modified than mA and the air mass is somewhat more stable.
	orographic lift along the mountains produces extensive cloud formation and considerable rain. It is, therefore, drier when it reaches the prairies.
Maritime Tropical (mT)	forms over oceans and water bodies of the Tropics.
	very warm and moist.
	rarely penetrates north of the Great Lakes in winter, although it does frequently appear aloft.
	unstable when it is lifted at a front, giving snow, freezing rain, rain, severe icing and turbulence.
	extensive fog often occurs, especially on the east coast.

Fig.6.24 **Types of Air Masses**

Characteristics of Air Masses	
Cold Air Mass (when warmed from below)	**Warm Air Mass (when cooled from below)**
Instability	Stability
Turbulence	Smooth Air
Good Visibility	Poor Visibility
Cumuliform Clouds	Stratiform Clouds and Fog
Showers, Hail, Thunderstorms	Drizzle

Fig.6.25 **Characteristics of Air Masses**

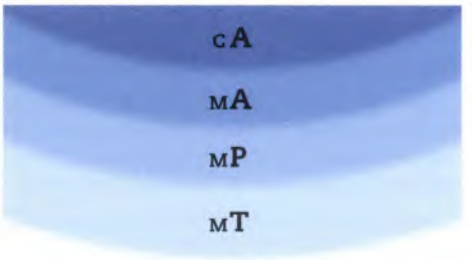


Fig.6.27 **Air Masses**

6.7 Fronts

The troposphere is made up of air masses. The transition zone between two air masses is called a front. The interaction of these air masses, along their frontal zones, is responsible for weather changes.

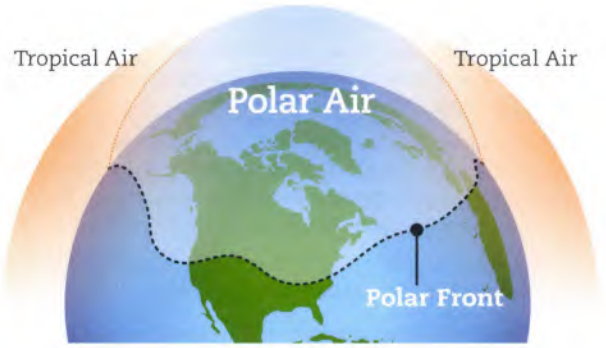


Fig.6.26 **The Polar Front**

6.7.1 Polar Front Theory

The present day theory, which explains the formation of depressions or lows, was developed by the Norwegians and is known as the Polar Front Theory. It is based on the fact that the polar regions are covered by a mass of cold air and the equatorial regions by a mass of warm air. In the temperate zone, the two air masses meet. Air masses do not usually mix. The transition zone between the two masses is therefore narrow and is called a polar front.

From the discussion of air masses, it is evident that the cold air dome covering the polar region, in fact, encloses two other domes and that frontal systems will be found along the zones separating them. Continental Arctic (cA) air makes up the smallest and most northerly dome and its edge, the cA front, is the most northerly frontal system to be found on the weather map. A dome of Maritime Arctic (mA) air overlies the cA air and its edge lies somewhere between the Continental Arctic front and the polar front. The fronts are named for the colder air mass involved in the system. The sloping surface of each dome acts as a lifting surface for the warmer air mass associated with it. Fig.6.27 illustrates in vertical cross section the four air masses and the three frontal surfaces separating them.

A front, correctly defined, is the transition zone between two air masses as it appears on the surface. The sloping side of the cold air is called a frontal surface.

The discussion below deals with the development of frontal waves and depressions along the polar front. Similar frontal waves and depressions occur along the Continental Arctic and the Maritime Arctic fronts.

Development of a Frontal Depression

The air on the northern side (considering the Northern Hemisphere) of this surface of separation is termed **arctic and polar air**. It is normally cold and dry. The air on the southern side is termed **tropical air**. It is normally warm and moist.

Due to the difference in the properties of these two air masses, the polar front is known as a surface of discontinuity. Depressions form along this surface of discontinuity (the polar front) and are the means whereby interchange takes place between the warm and cold air masses.

Along the polar front, the cold polar air flows from the north-east towards the south-west on the north side (Fig.6.28) while the warm air flows from south-west towards the north-east on the south side.

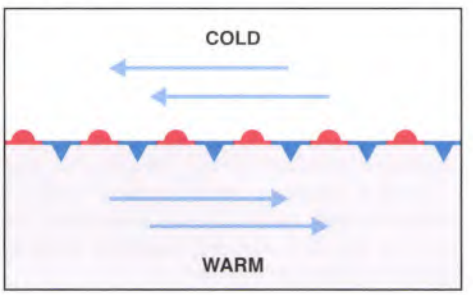


Fig.6.28

The arrangement is not a stable one but is subject to continual disturbances due to the warm air bulging north and cold air bulging southward (Fig.6.29). This northward bulge, once having started, continues to develop, the cold air on the northward side swinging round at the back, setting up a counterclockwise circulation and emphasizing the bulge. This bulge is the new depression (low pressure area) just born. It normally travels northeastward along the polar front. The polar front has now been bent or broken into two sections, the warm front (▬▬▬▬▬) and the cold front (▲▲▲▲▲). This deformation is called a frontal wave (Fig.6.30).

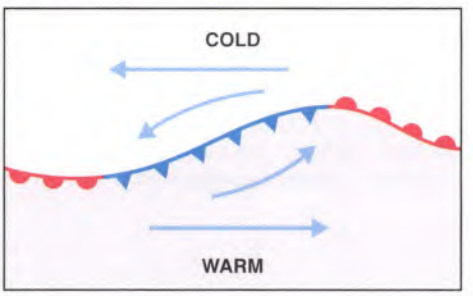


Fig.6.29

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

The area contained within the bulge of the polar front is the warm sector and contains the warm or tropical air, while the rest of the area is composed of the polar air.

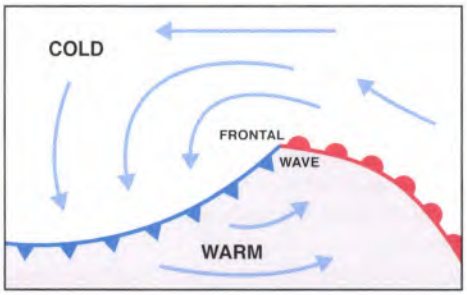


Fig.6.30

The pressure at the peak of the frontal wave falls and the low pressure area deepens. The surface winds become stronger and the fronts begin to move. Both fronts are curved in the direction toward which they are moving. The peak of the wave is called the crest. At the cold front, the cold flow of air from the northwest is undercutting the warm southwesterly flow. At the warm front, the southwesterly flow of warm air is overrunning the retreating flow of cold air. At the same time, the entire system in the immediate future is moving over the ground in a direction parallel to the isobars in the warm sector (see Fig.6.40, isobars in the warm sector). The wave is rotating about the centre.

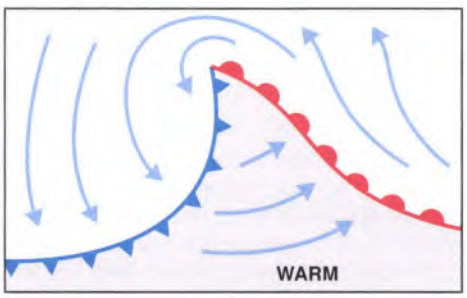


Fig.6.31

The cold front moves faster than the warm front (Fig.6.31) and soon catches up with it. The two fronts merge causing an occluded front, or occlusion ( ) (Fig.6.32). As the occlusion increases in dimension, the low pressure area weakens and the movement of the fronts slows down. Sometimes a new frontal wave may begin to form on the westward portion of the polar front (Fig.6.33). In the final stage, the two fronts have become a single stationary front again ( ). The low pressure area has virtually disappeared (Fig.6.34).

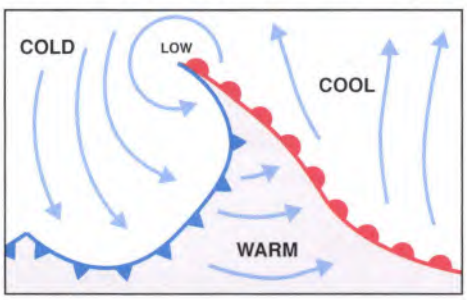


Fig.6.32

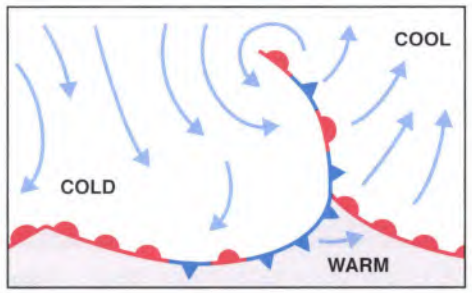


Fig.6.33

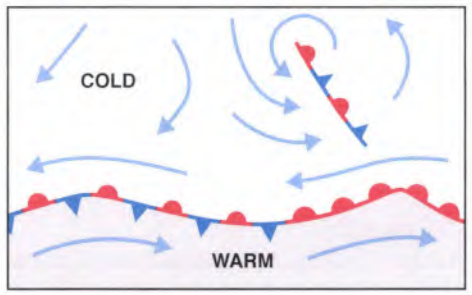


Fig.6.34

A cold front is that part (or parts) of a frontal system along which cold air is **advancing** and is coloured blue on the weather map.

A warm front is that part (or parts) of a frontal system along which cold air is **retreating** and is coloured red on the weather map.

6.7.2 Types of Front

The Warm Front

As a mass of warm air advances on a retreating mass of cold air, the warm air, being lighter, ascends over the cold air in a **long gentle slope**.

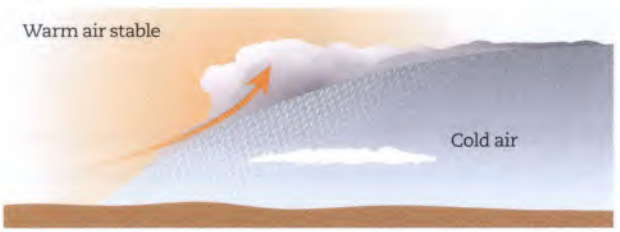


Fig.6.35 **A Warm Front with Overrunning Warm, Stable Air**

As a result, the cloud formation associated with the warm frontal system may extend for 500 or more nautical miles in advance of it. Warm fronts usually move at relatively slow speeds and therefore affect a vast area for a considerable length of time.

If the warm air is moist and stable, stratiform clouds develop in a distinctive sequence. The first signs of an approaching warm front are high cirrus clouds which thicken to cirrostratus and altostratus as the warm front approaches. The ceiling gradually falls and there follows a long belt of steady rain falling from heavy nimbostratus cloud. Precipitation may lead the frontal surface by as much as 250 nautical miles.

If the warm air is moist and somewhat unstable, cumulonimbus and thunderstorms may be embedded in the stratiform layers.

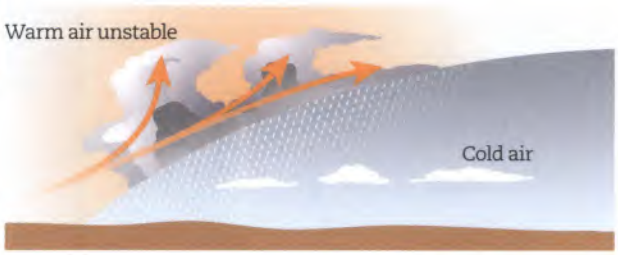


Fig.6.36 **A Warm Front with Overunning Warm, Unstable Air**

Heavy showers in advance of the surface front can then be expected.

Very low stratus and fog throughout the frontal zone are typical characteristics of warm fronts.

The passing of the warm front is marked by a rise of temperature, due to the entry of the warm air, and the sky becomes relatively clear.

The Cold Front

When a mass of cold air overtakes a mass of warm air, the cold air being denser stays on the surface and undercuts the warm air violently. Surface friction tends to slow down the surface air while the upper air, not being subject to the friction, retains its speed and tends to catch up. As a result, the slope of the advancing cold front is quite steep. The rapid ascent of the warm air gives rise to cumuliform cloud. The width of cloud cover is usually relatively narrow, only about 50 nautical miles (Fig.6.37). Precipitation in the form of rain, snow or hail will be of the showery type and quite heavy. The cumuliform clouds that form at the frontal surface frequently build up into thunderstorms creating some of the most violent weather a pilot may encounter. Sometimes, a continuous line of thunderstorms (a squall line) will develop ahead of a particularly fast moving cold front.

Fig.6.37 **A Cold Front Undercutting Warm, Moist, Unstable Air**

A sharp fall in temperature, a rise in pressure and rapid clearing usually occur with the passage of the cold front.

Sometimes, an advancing cold front will be relatively slow moving. Because it does not undercut the warm air so violently, a rather broad band of clouds develops extending a fair distance behind the frontal surface. If the warm air is stable, these clouds will be stratiform; if the warm air is unstable, they are cumuliform and possibly thunderstorms. With passage of the frontal surface, clearing is more gradual.

The Stationary Front

There is generally some part of a front along which the colder air is neither advancing nor retreating. There is no motion to cause the front to move because the opposing air masses are of equal pressure. The surface wind tends to blow parallel to the front and the weather conditions are similar to those associated with a warm front although generally less intense and not so extensive. Usually a stationary front will weaken and eventually dissipate. Sometimes, however, after several days, it will begin to move and then it becomes either a warm front or a cold front.

The Occluded Front

With the progress of time, as a depression advances, the cold front gradually overtakes the warm front and lifts the warm sector entirely from the ground. It is simply a case of the cold air catching up with itself as it flows around the depression. Thus only one front remains which is called an occluded front or occlusion. An occluded depression soon commences to fill up and die away.

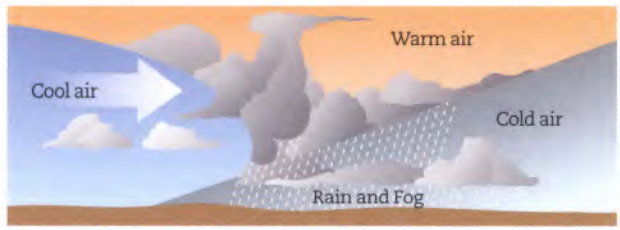


Fig.6.38 **A Warm Front Occlusion Lifting Warm, Moist, Unstable Air**

The cold air, in the distance it has travelled, may have undergone considerable change. Therefore it may not be as cold as the air it is overtaking. In this case (**cool** air advancing on **colder** air), the front is known as an occluded warm front or a warm occlusion and has the characteristics of a warm front, with low cloud and continuous rain and drizzle. If the warm air is unstable, heavy cumulus or cumulonimbus cloud may be embedded in the stratiform cloud bank (Fig.6.38).

If the cold air is colder than the air it is overtaking (**cold** air advancing on **cool** air), the front is known as an occluded cold front or a cold occlusion. A cold occlusion has much the same characteristics as a warm front, with low cloud and continuous rain (Fig.6.39). If the warm air is unstable, cumulonimbus and thunderstorms are likely to occur, with the violent turbulence, lightning and icing conditions associated with these clouds.

It will be noted that, in the case of either a warm or cold occlusion, **three** air masses are present, a cool air mass advancing on a cold air mass, or a cold air mass advancing on a cool air mass, with, in either case, a warm air mass lying wedge shaped over the colder air. This wedge shaped mass of warm air is known as a trowal in Canada. (In some other countries, it is called an upper front.)

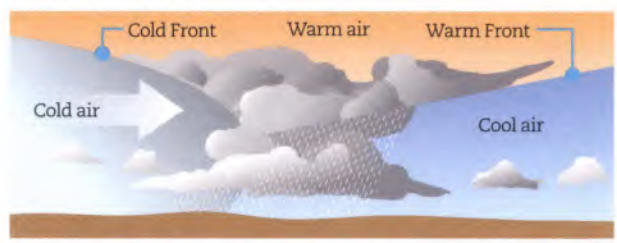


Fig.6.39 **A Cold Front Occlusion Lifting Warm, Moist, Unstable Air**

The Upper Front

In Canada, the term upper front refers to a non-occlusion situation. Sometimes, cold air advancing across the country may encounter a shallow layer of colder air resting on the surface or trapped in a topographical depression. The advancing cold air rides up over the colder, heavier air. The cold front which

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

is the leading edge of the advancing cold air leaves the ground and moves along the top of the colder air. It is then known as an upper cold front.

Sometimes, the structure of the advancing cold front is such that the cold air forms a shallow layer for some distance along the ground in advance of the main body of cold air. The frontal surface of the main mass of cold air, in this situation, will usually be very steep. The line along which the frontal surface steepens is also known as an upper cold front.

On occasion, an advancing warm front rides up over a pool or layer of cold air trapped on the ground. A station on the ground does not experience a change of air mass because the front passes overhead. This is known as an upper warm front.

Sometimes, the surface of the cold air that is retreating ahead of an advancing warm front is almost flat for some distance ahead of the surface front and then steepens abruptly. The line along which the surface of the retreating cold air steepens sharply is also called an upper warm front.

6.7.3 Frontal Weather

The theory of the polar front, which for the sake of simplicity has been described in the form of its original conception, might leave the impression that depressions form only along some well defined line lying somewhere midway between the poles and the equator. Air masses are in a constant state of formation over all the land and water areas of the world. Once formed, they tend to move away from the source regions over which they form. The same frontal processes and phenomena occur whenever a mass of warm air and a mass of cold air come in contact.

There is a widespread impression among pilots that fronts always bring bad weather and that all bad weather is frontal. Actually some fronts have little or no weather associated with them. A slight change of temperature and a windshift may be the only evidence that the front has gone through. And, of course, bad weather can develop without the passage of a front. Fog, for example, generally occurs when no fronts are present and severe thunderstorms may develop in an air mass which has no frontal characteristics.

Another common misconception is that the front is a thin wall of weather. This false idea is perhaps occasioned by the line that indicates a front on a weather map. The line on the map only shows the surface location at which the pressure change, windshift and temperature change occur. The actual weather associated with the front may extend over an area many miles in width, both well ahead and also for many miles behind the actual line on the weather map.

A front itself is actually a transition zone between two large air masses with different properties of temperature and moisture. Each individual air mass may extend over hundreds of thousands of square miles. Everywhere along the boundary of an air mass, where it overrides or undercuts the air mass upon which it is advancing, and for a considerable height upward from the surface as well, there is a frontal zone. The frontal zone aloft is called a frontal surface. The frontal zone on the ground is called the front. The frontal weather associated with the front, therefore, can be expected to extend for hundreds of miles along the boundary of the air mass.

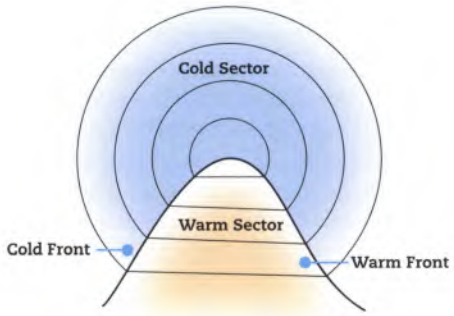


Fig.6.40 **Development of a Depression Showing Isobars**

The isobars are bent into the form of a "V" or "trough" at both the warm and cold fronts.

Frontogenesis means a front which is increasing in intensity.

Frontolysis means a front which is decreasing in intensity.

If you examine the diagrams showing fronts on a weather map, you will notice that all fronts lie in regions of lower pressure. The isobars are bent sharply at a front. These two factors are characteristic of all fronts.

Weather at the Cold Front

Cold fronts are not all the same. The weather associated with a cold front may vary from a minor windshift to severe thunderstorms, low ceilings, restricted visibility and violent gusty winds. The severity of the weather is determined by the moisture content and stability of the warm air mass that the cold air mass is undercutting and the speed of the advancing cold front.

Fast moving cold fronts may travel across the country with a speed of 30 knots or more. If the warm air that is being undercut by the cold air mass is very moist and unstable, towering cumulus clouds and thunderstorms are likely to develop. Heavy rain or hail may be associated with the front. A slower moving cold front advancing on more stable and drier air in the warm sector will produce less severe weather conditions, stratus or altocumulus clouds with light or no precipitation.

A long line of cumulus clouds on the western horizon is usually an indication of an approaching cold front. Sometimes a deck of altocumulus cloud or decks of stratus and stratocumulus extending ahead of the front will mask the main frontal cloud from the view of the high flying or low flying pilot respectively.

WEATHER CHANGES

The weather changes that may be observed at the cold front are:

1. Windshift. The wind direction will always veer as the front passes. Gustiness may be associated with the windshift.

   In flying through a cold front, the windshift may be quite abrupt and occurs at the frontal surface rather than at the front. The windshift is always such that an alteration in course to the right is required, no matter which way you are flying through the front.

2. Temperature. On the ground, the temperature may drop sharply as the front passes, but usually it drops gradually. The air immediately behind the front has

been warmed in passing over the warm ground. Therefore, it may be several hours before the temperature drops to the true value of the cold air mass.

In flying through a cold front, there will be a noticeable temperature change when passing through the frontal surface.

3. Visibility. Visibility usually improves after passage of a cold front. If the front is moving fairly rapidly, the width of frontal weather generally is less than 50 miles. If the front is moving slowly, however, flight operations may be affected for many hours.
4. Pressure. The approach of a cold front is accompanied by a decrease in pressure. A marked rise will be noticed when the front has passed.
5. Turbulence. Turbulence may be associated with the cold front if it is active, although thunderstorms are not always present. Even in cases where there are no clouds, turbulence may be a problem. As a rule, flight through an active cold front can be expected to be rough.
6. Precipitation. The frontal rain or snow is usually narrow, especially if it is showery in character.

   Icing in the turbulent cumulus clouds can be severe.

SQUALL LINE

A long line of squalls and thunderstorms which sometimes accompanies the passage of a cold front is called a squall line (or line squall). It is usually associated with a fast moving cold front that is undercutting an unstable warm air mass. It may form anywhere from 50 to 300 nautical miles in advance of the front itself. The squall line is a long line of low, black, roller like cloud, which often stretches in a straight line for several hundred miles and from which heavy rain or hail falls for a short time. Thunder and lightning frequently occur. The squall is also accompanied by a sudden wind change from southerly or south-westerly to north or north-westerly, together with a sudden drop in temperature and a rise in barometric pressure. The actual wind squall lasts only for a few minutes but is often extremely violent, constituting a serious menace both to shipping and to aeroplanes. The signs indicating the approach of a squall line are unmistakable. Aeroplanes on the ground should be immediately hangared. Those in the air should at all costs avoid this violent weather phenomenon.

Weather at the Warm Front

Warm front changes are usually less pronounced than cold front changes. The change is also generally very gradual. However, the weather at a warm front is usually more extensive and may cover thousands of square miles.

A wide variety of weather characterizes warm fronts. The weather may even vary along a given front.

The degree of overrunning and the moisture content and stability of the overrunning warm air determine the severity of the weather. If the warm air is very moist, the cloud deck forming in the overrunning air may extend for hundreds of miles up the slope of the retreating cold air. If the warm air is unstable, thunderstorms may be embedded in the cloud deck.

High cirrus cloud is the first sign of the approach of an active warm front. Cirrostratus soon follows (the high thin cloud which causes a halo around the sun or moon). The cloud gradually thickens and the base lowers until a solid deck of altostratus/altocumulus covers the area. Low nimbostratus moves in, merging with the altostratus, with the result that a solid deck of cloud extending from near the surface to 25,000 feet or more covers the whole area. Precipitation is usually heavy.

WEATHER CHANGES

The weather changes that may be observed at the warm front are:

1. Windshift. With the passage of a warm front, the wind will veer but the change will be much more gradual than in the case of a cold front.

   When flying through a warm front, the windshift will occur at the frontal surface and will be more noticeable at lower levels. When flying through a warm front, the windshift is such that a course alteration to the right is necessary.
2. Temperature. The warm front brings a gradual rise in temperature.

   A pilot flying through the frontal surface will notice a more abrupt temperature rise.
3. Visibility. Low ceilings and restricted visibility are associated with warm fronts and, because warm fronts usually move quite slowly, these conditions persist for considerable time.

   When rain falls from the overrunning warm air, masses of irregular cloud with very low bases form in the cold air. Fog is frequently a condition 50 nautical miles ahead of an advancing warm front.
4. Turbulence. Cumulonimbus clouds are frequently embedded in the main cloud deck and these storms are responsible for the most severe turbulence associated with a warm front. However, these storms and the turbulence they occasion are less severe than those associated with cold fronts. The principal problem with these storms is that they cannot be located by sight since they are embedded in the main cloud cover.
5. Precipitation. The first precipitation begins in the region where the altostratus layer of cloud is from 8,000 to 12,000 feet above the ground. As the front approaches, the precipitation becomes heavier. Occasional very heavy precipitation is an indication of the presence of thunderstorms.

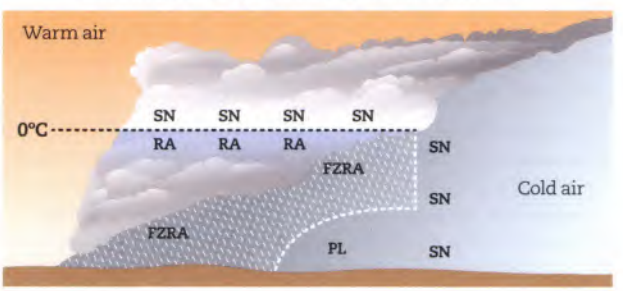


Fig.6.41 **Precipitation in a Warm Front in Winter**

WINTER WARM FRONT

In winter, when temperatures in the cold air are below freezing and temperatures in the lower levels of the warm air are above freezing, snow and freezing rain can be expected.

Snow falls from that part of the warm air cloud that is high and therefore below freezing in temperature. From the lower cloud, where temperatures are above freezing, rain falls. However,

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

as the rain falls through the cold air (of the cold air mass that the warm air is over running), it becomes supercooled and will freeze on contact with any cold object. This is known as freezing rain (FZRA).

In the area ahead of the freezing rain, there is a region where the rain falling through the cold air becomes sufficiently supercooled to freeze and falls to the ground as ice pellets (PL).

A pilot approaching the frontal surface at higher altitudes may not encounter the ice pellets, but the pilot flying at quite low altitudes can expect to encounter snow, ice pellets and then freezing rain.

Icing is a problem associated with warm fronts in winter. Snow is not responsible for icing, unless it is very wet when it can stick to an aeroplane and form ice. Freezing rain, however, causes a rapid build-up of ice. Icing will also be a problem in the cloud layers.

Weather at Trowals & Upper Fronts

The weather that occurs with a trowal is a combination of cold and warm front conditions. The cloud pattern ahead of the approaching trowal is similar to that of a warm front. Cold front cloud formations will exist behind it. Cumulus build-ups and thunderstorms are likely to be interspersed with stratiform clouds, continuous precipitation and widespread low ceilings. In winter months, freezing rain and severe icing conditions are likely hazards as the rain aloft in the occluded warm air falls through the freezing temperatures of the ground based cold sectors. The maximum precipitation, convective activity and icing conditions usually occur in the northeast sector of the low and extend some 50 to 100 miles ahead of the occluded front.

6.8 Precipitation & Fog

6.8.1 Precipitation

Precipitation occurs when the water droplets (visible as a cloud) grow sufficiently in size and weight to fall due to gravity. In clouds with temperatures above freezing, vertical air currents cause the droplets to move about. As a result, they collide with other drops and gradually grow in size as they absorb those drops with which they collide. They gain momentum until they fall through the air as rain. A single water droplet must grow enormously in order for precipitation to take place. The average raindrop is about one million times larger than a cloud water droplet. This process is known as coalescence. Precipitation due to coalescence alone generally occurs only in warm climates.

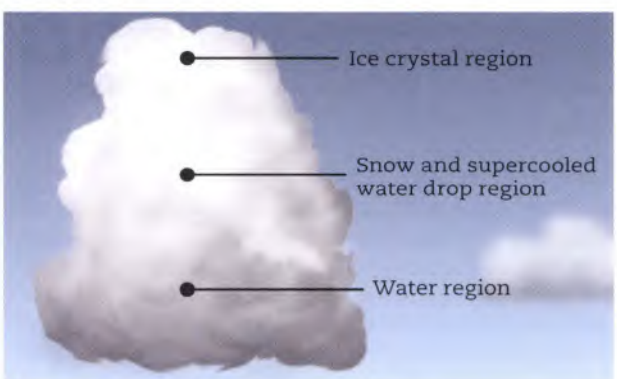


Fig.6.42 **Regions of a Cloud**

In a stable cloud such as stratus, there is very little vertical motion, not even enough to sustain small water droplets. They frequently escape and drift slowly to the earth. This form of precipitation is called drizzle.

A second mechanism by which precipitation occurs requires that ice crystals and water droplets exist side by side in a cloud at temperatures below freezing. The ice crystals grow at the expense of the water droplets. The droplets tend to evaporate and the resulting water vapour deposits on the ice crystals. The ice crystals grow in size and weight. They are sustained in the cloud until they grow large enough that their terminal velocity exceeds the updraft velocity in the cloud. They then fall as precipitation. If the temperature below the region of formation is above freezing, the crystals will melt, coalesce with other drops and will arrive at the earth as rain. If the temperatures are cold all the way to the ground, the ice crystals will aggregate into snow flakes. In Canada, heavy rainfall usually occurs as a result of a combination of deposition and coalescence.

Two facts are therefore significant. If the ice crystals are necessary for the occurrence of heavy precipitation, the cloud from which the rain is falling must have built up well above the freezing level. Since the size of a raindrop is a function of the turbulence in the parent cloud, large drops and heavy precipitation are an indication of strong vertical motion.

Steady precipitation falls from a layer of stratus cloud. A shower, a sudden heavy burst of precipitation, falls from a well developed cumulus or cumulonimbus cloud, which may be embedded in a stratus layer.

Precipitation may take many forms such as drizzle, rain, hail, snow and ice.

Drizzle

Precipitation in the form of very small drops of water which appear to float is called drizzle. At temperatures at or below the freezing level, drizzle will freeze on impact with objects and is known as freezing drizzle.

Rain

Precipitation in the form of large water droplets is called rain. Freezing rain is composed of supercooled water droplets that freeze immediately on striking an object which is itself at a temperature below freezing.

Hail

Observations have revealed the fact that water drops, certainly in the liquid form, can exist with temperatures as low as -40°C. It is clear, then, that small drops can be supercooled a long way without freezing.

Most big clouds formed as a result of an upward current of air are divisible into three well defined regions.

First there is the lowest layer where the cloud particles are in the form of water drops.

Next there is a region where some of the water droplets are frozen into ice crystals (snow) but some are still liquid but supercooled.

Third there is the highest region of the cloud where the water vapour, via deposition, changes into minute ice crystals.

There is no sharp dividing line between the snow and supercooled water regions. For some distance, the ice crystals and supercooled water drops are co-existing. When a supercooled

water drop collides with an ice crystal, it at once freezes on the latter, imprisoning a little air which causes it to freeze in the form of soft ice. As it falls through the supercooled region, more soft ice is deposited on it, increasing its size. The ball of soft ice so formed then falls through the water region. Water freezes on it in the form of hard, transparent ice. Finally the ball falls out of the base of the cloud as a hailstone, a hard, transparent layer of ice covering a soft, white core.

Sometimes gusts carry hailstones back up to the top of the cloud, in which case the whole process is repeated, perhaps several times. In this way, very large hailstones are formed. The vertical gusts which produce very large hailstones may have speeds in excess of 85 knots. The conditions which produce hail are very similar to those in which thunderstorms originate. Hence hail is often encountered in a cumulonimbus thundercloud.

Snow Pellets (Soft Hail)

If the water region lying below the supercooled region of the cloud is not of great depth, the hailstone does not acquire the hard, transparent covering and arrives at the ground as the original soft, white ice. It is then known as a snow pellet or soft hail.

Snow

In the formation of snow, the invisible water vapour in the air changes directly into ice crystals via deposition, without passing through any intermediate water stage. Snow flakes are formed of an agglomeration of ice crystals and are usually of a hexagonal or star like shape. Snow grains are tiny snow crystals that have acquired a coating of rime. They fall from non-turbulent clouds.

Ice Prisms

Ice prisms are tiny ice crystals in the form of needles. They may fall from cloud or from a cloudless sky. They exist in stable air masses and at very low temperatures.

Ice Pellets

Ice pellets are formed by the freezing of raindrops. They are hard transparent globular grains of ice about the size of raindrops. They generally rebound when striking the ground.

Precipitation & Cloud Type

Each of the various forms of precipitation is associated with a particular type of cloud. While the table below is generally typical, exceptions do occur.

Precipitation	Cloud Type
Drizzle, freezing drizzle, snow grains	Stratus and stratocumulus
Snow or rain (continuous)	Thick altostratus and nimbostratus
Snow or rain (intermittent)	Thick altostratus and stratocumulus
Snow showers, rain showers	Altocumulus, heavy cumulus and cumulonimbus
Snow pellets, hail, ice	Cumulonimbus pellet showers
Ice pellets (continuous)	Any cloud that gives rain — the temperature is below freezing
Ice prisms	No cloud necessary

Fig.6.43 **Cloud Types & their Associated Precipitation**

6.8.2 Fog

Fog is, in fact, a cloud, usually stratus, in contact with the ground. It forms when the air is cooled below its dewpoint, or when the dewpoint is raised to the air temperature through the addition of water vapour.

To form a water drop in the atmosphere (the basis of fog formation), there must be present some nucleus on which the water may form. Dust, salt, sulphur trioxide, smoke, etc. provide this function.

Given a sufficient number of condensation nuclei, the ideal conditions for the formation of fog are high relative humidity and a small temperature dewpoint spread and some cooling process to initiate condensation. Light surface winds set up a mixing action which spreads and increases the thickness of the fog. In very still air, fog is unlikely to form. Instead dew will collect.

Fog is most likely to occur in coastal areas where moisture is abundant. Because of the high concentration of condensation nuclei, it is also common in industrial areas.

Smoke and dust in the air over large cities produce the "pea soup" fogs characteristic of large industrial centres. The carbon and dust particles cause such fogs to be dark. Otherwise, when composed of water drops only, fog is white in colour.

For weather reporting purposes, pilots should be aware that fog is identified when the reported visibility is 1 kilometer or less. When visibility is greater than 1 kilometer but less than 5 kilometers, aviation weather reports refer to fog as mist. (See **Aviation Weather Reports**.) Fog and mist both apply to hydrometeors; in other words, moisture is involved in their presence.

Fog is usually dissipated by sunlight filtering down through the fog or stratus layer. This results in heating from below.

Radiation Fog

Radiation fog is formed on clear nights with light winds. The ground cools losing heat through radiation. The air in direct contact with the earth's surface is cooled. If this air is moist and the temperature is lowered below the dew point, fog will form. The ideal conditions for the formation of radiation fog are a light wind which spreads the cooling effect through the lower levels of the air, clear skies that permit maximum cooling and an abundance of condensation nuclei. This type of fog is commonly called ground fog, since it forms only over land. Radiation fog normally forms at night but sometimes it thickens or even forms at sunrise as the initial slight heating from the sun causes a weak turbulence. Radiation fog tends to settle into low areas, such as valleys, and it is usually patchy and only a few hundred feet thick. It normally dissipates within a few hours after sunrise as the sun warms the earth and radiation heating causes the temperature to rise.

Advection Fog

Advection fog is caused by the drifting of warm damp air over a colder land or sea surface. This type of fog may persist for days and cover a wide area. It occurs most frequently in coastal regions. Widespread fog forms when moist air from a warm region of the ocean moves over colder waters. It will persist for lengthy periods since the water surface is not affected by daytime heating. Advection fog will spread over land if the circulation is from the sea to a colder land surface and will

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

persist until the direction of the wind changes. Although it may dissipate or thin during the day from daytime heating, it will reform at night. The warm sector of a frontal depression is also favourable for the formation of advection fog.

Upslope Fog

Upslope fog is caused by the cooling of air due to expansion as it moves up a slope. A light upslope wind is necessary for its formation.

Steam Fog

Steam fog forms when cold air passes over a warm water surface. Evaporation of the water into the cold air occurs until the cold air becomes saturated. The excess water vapour condenses as fog. Steam fog occurs over rivers and lakes, especially during the autumn.

Precipitation-Induced Fog

Precipitation-induced fog is caused by the addition of moisture to the air through evaporation of rain or drizzle. This type of fog is associated mostly with warm fronts and is sometimes known as frontal fog. The rain, falling from the warm air, evaporates and saturates the cooler air below.

Ice Fog

Ice fog forms in moist air during extremely cold calm conditions. The tiny ice crystals composing it are formed by sublimation and are often called needles. Ice fog is caused by the addition of water vapour to the air through fuel combustion. The very cold air cannot hold any additional water vapour and the excess sublimates into visible ice crystals. Ice fog may appear suddenly when an aircraft engine is started.

6.8.3 Haze

Haze is composed of very small water droplets, dust or salt particles so minute that they cannot be felt or individually seen with the unaided eye. Haze produces a uniform veil that restricts visibility. Against a dark background, it has a bluish tinge. Against a bright background, it has a dirty yellow or orange hue.

Smoke, industrial pollutants and smog from vehicular exhausts are responsible for the thick blanket of haze that severely restricts visibility in some urban and industrial areas. When flying in such conditions, visibility is very poor, especially when flying into the sun.

For weather reporting purposes, pilots should be aware that haze is identified when the reported visibility is 5 kilometers or less and the obscuration is predominantly of lithometeors; that is, it is due to solid particles in the air and not moisture.

Haze is a problem only in very stable air. In unstable conditions, the particles scatter.

6.8.4 Visibility

Visibility is one of the most important elements of weather from the standpoint of aircraft operations. It, in conjunction with the height of cloud layers aloft, determines whether an airport is open to traffic. VFR operations generally require a minimum of three miles ground and flight visibility and a height of cloud layers aloft that ensures that the aircraft can maintain 500 feet distance from the cloud base and 500 feet above the surface of the ground.

Restrictions to visibility would include cloud, precipitation, fog, haze, smoke, blowing dust or snow. Blowing snow, dust and sand can produce very poor visibility conditions. Blowing snow can be responsible for optical illusions. Precipitation, in the form of rain, snow and drizzle, appreciably reduces visibility. Drizzle which occurs in stable air is often accompanied by fog or smog.

Reduced visibility is a function of the stability of the air. If the air is stable, impurities that contribute to haze are trapped in the lower levels. Stable air is also favourable to drizzle and fog. If the air is unstable, vertical currents scatter the haze particles but cause blowing snow and dust which also contribute to reduced visibility.

Visibility means the distance at which prominent objects may be seen and identified by day and prominent lighted objects by night.

Flight visibility is the average range of visibility forward from the cockpit of an aeroplane in flight. It is sometimes called "air-to-air visibility".

Slant range visibility is the distance a pilot can see over the nose of the aeroplane towards the ground. It is sometimes called "approach visibility".

Ground visibility is the visibility at an airport, as reported by an accredited observer.

Prevailing visibility is the distance at which objects of known distance are visible over at least half the horizon. It is reported in miles and fractions of miles.

Runway visual range (RVR) represents the distance a pilot will be able to see the lights or other delineating markers along the runway from a specified point above the centreline that corresponds to eye level at the moment of touchdown. RVR is reported in hundreds of feet. A device, called a transmissometer, that is installed adjacent to the runway samples a specified portion of the atmosphere and converts the sample into an estimate of the runway visual range. The reading derived from a transmissometer located adjacent to the runway threshold is reported as RVR "A"; that from a transmissometer located adjacent to the runway midpoint is reported as RVR "B". RVR information is available from ATC, the control tower and the flight service station. The actual RVR reading is provided to pilots if the RVR is less than 6,000 feet.

6.8.5 VMC & IMC

Visual meteorological conditions (VMC) is a term used by meteorologists to indicate that visibility, distance from cloud and ceiling are equal to or better than the minima under which flight according to the visual flight rules (VFR) may be conducted.

Instrument meteorological conditions (IMC) is a term that indicates that visibility, distance from cloud and ceiling are below minima and flight can be conducted only under instrument flight rules (IFR).

6.8.6 Lake Effect Snowfalls

Lake-generated snow squalls form when cold air, passing for long distances over the relatively warm waters of a large lake, picks up moisture and heat and is then forced to drop the moisture in the form of snow upon reaching the downwind shore. Lake-effect snows are common over the Great Lakes

region because these large bodies of water can hold their summer heat well into the winter, rarely freeze over, and provide the long fetch which allows the air to gain the heat and moisture required to fuel the snow squalls. Lake-effect snows are most pronounced and effective wherever terrain features such as small hills or mountains are oriented along the lee shores.

Each year as the warm weather of early autumn fades and the cold of winter starts to appear, the waters of the Great Lakes become increasingly warmer relative to the cold air masses formed in the north. When cold and relatively dry air traverses the lake, the lower levels are warmed and moistened. This air now becomes lighter than the air above it, a condition known as convective instability, and starts to rise. Depending on the degree of instability of the air mass (i.e. how much warmer the lake water is compared to the air temperature), bands of either stratus, stratocumulus, or cumulus clouds will form over the water, advancing with the wind toward the downwind shore.

The upward motion of air increases further along the lee shore where the land surface slows down the onshore flow, creating a convergence of air. The air, having no place else to go, rises rapidly, triggering the formation of snow showers or squalls. Sloping terrain along the shoreline also enhances vertical motions. If snow showers have not begun to fall over the lake, they soon fall as the air rises over the shoreline.

6.9 Thunderstorms

A thunderstorm is a weather phenomenon whose passage creates extremely serious hazards to flying. It has aptly been described as a cumulus cloud gone wild. It is always accompanied by thunder and lightning, strong vertical drafts, severe gusts and turbulence, heavy rain and sometimes hail. It is a weather condition of which a pilot should be enormously respectful. It has been estimated that, at any one time, there are about 1,800 thunderstorms in progress over the earth. With this kind of frequency, every pilot is sure to come occasionally in contact with one.

The basic requirements for the formation of a thunderstorm are unstable air, some form of lifting action and a high moisture content. Since these are also the requirements for the formation of a harmless cumulus cloud, it follows that the intensity of the conditions is the key to development of a thunderstorm. These violent weather factories occur when an air mass becomes unstable to the point of violent overturning. Such unstable atmospheric conditions may be brought about when air is heated from below (convection), or forced to ascend the side of a mountain (orographic lift) or lifted up over a frontal surface (frontal lift). The resulting buoyancy causes air which is warmer than its environment to push up in the form of convection currents, like drafts up a chimney flu.

If a mass of superheated moist air rises rapidly, an equal amount of cooler air rushes down to replace it.

When these conditions lead to the development of a thunderstorm, the area in which the rising and descending currents are active is called a thunderstorm cell. A thunderstorm may be composed of a number of such cells. As a storm develops, each successive cell grows to a greater height than did the previous one.

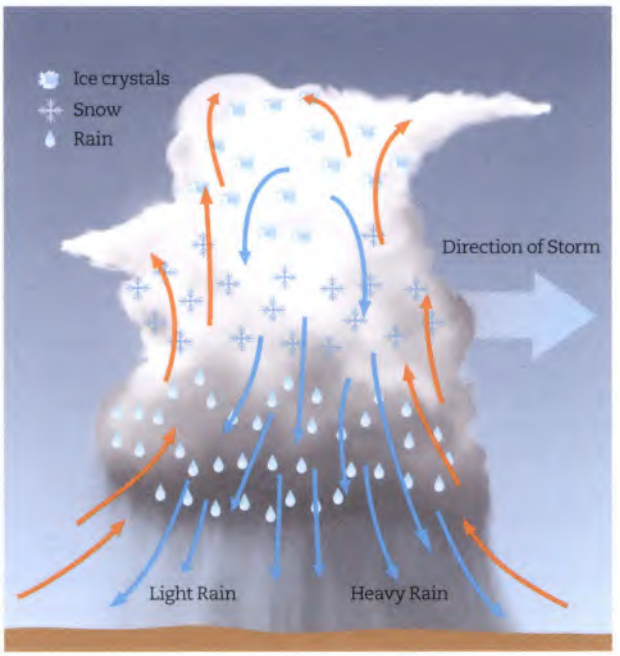


Fig.6.44 **Thunderstorm Cell in Mature Stage**

There are three distinct stages in the life cycle of a thunderstorm. Every thunderstorm begins life as a cumulus cloud. The cloud starts growing upward, driven by the latent heat of vaporization and/or fusion as water vapour condenses. Strong updrafts prevail throughout the cell and it rapidly builds up into a towering cumulonimbus cloud. Temperatures within the cell are higher than temperatures at the same level in the surrounding air, intensifying still more the convective currents within the cell. There is usually no precipitation from the storm at this stage of its development since the water droplets and ice crystals are being carried upwards or are kept suspended by the strong updrafts.

In its mature stage, the build-up of a towering cumulonimbus thunderstorm may reach heights as great as 60,000 feet. The updrafts may attain speeds of 6,000 feet per minute. As the water droplets grow large enough to fall, they drag air down with them, starting a downdraft in the middle region of the cell that accelerates downward. The speed of the downdraft, although not as great as the updrafts, may nevertheless be as high as 2,000 feet per minute. Violent turbulence is associated with the up and down drafts. The appearance of precipitation on the ground is evidence that the thunderstorm cell is in its mature stage. The mature stage lasts for about 15 to 20 minutes, although some thunderstorms have been known to last as long as an hour. Lightning, microbursts, gust front wind shear, hail and tornados are all phenomena associated with a thunderstorm in its mature stage.

Then the cell begins to dissipate. The cool precipitation tends to cool the lower region of the cloud and the cell loses its energy. The downdraft spreads throughout the whole area of the cell with the exception of a small portion at the top where updrafts still occur. The rainfall gradually ceases. The top of the cell spreads out into the familiar anvil structure.

Individual thunderstorms are usually no more than 10 nautical miles in diameter. However, they do tend to develop in clusters of two or more. Such clusters, with individual thunderstorms in various stages of development, may cover vast areas and last for many hours, travelling great distances across the country during their life cycle.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

There are two main types of thunderstorm: **air mass thunderstorms** and **frontal thunderstorms**.

Air mass thunderstorms usually form either singly or in clusters on hot summer days in warm moist air. Being scattered, there is usually VFR weather around them and they are therefore easy to avoid. They form either as a result of convection or orographic lift.

Frontal thunderstorms are associated most commonly with an advancing cold front but do develop in warm fronts as well. They usually form a line that may extend for hundreds of miles. They pose a special hazard to pilots because they are often embedded in other cloud decks and are therefore impossible to see. An advancing line of frontal thunderstorms should be avoided. Squall line thunderstorms rolling along in advance of a cold front are particularly violent.

6.9.1 Thunderstorm Weather

Thunderstorms produce very complex wind patterns in their vicinity. Wind shear can be found on all sides of a thunderstorm cell, in the downdraft directly beneath the cell and especially at the gust front that can precede the actual storm by 15 nautical miles or more.

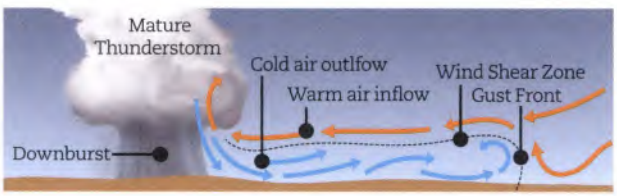


Fig.6.45 **Gust Front**

In the cumulus stage of a thunderstorm's development, there is an inflow of air (updraft) into the base of the cloud. As the thunderstorm matures, strong downdrafts develop and the cold air rushing down out of the cloud spreads out along the surface of the ground well in advance of the thunderstorm itself undercutting the warm air in such a manner as to resemble a cold front. This is the gust front and turbulence within this lower level of spreading air is severe. The gust front generates strong, gusty winds near the surface which can change direction by 180 degrees and gust up to 50 knots in a matter of seconds upon gust front passage.

The severe downward rush of air and its outburst of damaging winds on or near the ground is commonly called a downburst. Downbursts can be classified as either macrobursts or microbursts. A macroburst is a large downburst with a diameter of 2 nautical miles or more when it reaches the earth's surface and with damaging winds which last from 5 to 20 minutes. The most intense of these cause tornado like damage.

Smaller downbursts with a surface outflow diameter of less than 2 nautical miles and peak winds that last less than 5 minutes are called microbursts. Wet microbursts occur in the presence of storm clouds with precipitation reaching the ground. Dry microbursts originate in moisture laden towering cumulus clouds. The downward flowing column of air contains precipitation (called virga) which evaporates before reaching the ground. The evaporation of the water appears to further cool the air, increasing the intensity of the microburst.

Downdrafts in microbursts can have vertical speeds as great as 6,000 feet per minute. As they near the ground, these downdrafts spread out in all directions to become horizontal winds with speeds as high as 80 knots. They rapidly change direction and even reverse, causing very severe and dangerous wind shear. Because of the rapidly changing winds, both in speed and direction, an aeroplane encountering a microburst may lose so much lift that it cannot remain airborne. Depending upon the intensity of a thunderstorm, microbursts may occur anywhere up to 10 miles from the storm cell itself. Sometimes micro-bursts are concentrated into a line structure and, under these conditions, activity may continue for as long as an hour. Once microburst activity starts, multiple microbursts in the same general area are common.

Lightning flashes are the visible manifestation of the discharge of electricity produced in a thunderstorm. Areas of positive and negative charge accumulate in different parts of the cloud until the difference in electrical potential reaches a critical value and the air breaks down electrically. A lightning flash, a large electrical spark in the atmosphere, then follows. The mechanism by which electrification occurs in the thunderstorm is complex and varied. Ice particles and supercooled water droplets impacting on pellets of soft hail, the upward transport of rain in the strong vertical currents, coalescence of droplets, mass movement of charge by air flow are all factors.

In an active thunderstorm, the positive charge usually collects in the upper portion of the cloud and the negative charge in the cloud base. Flashing in a single thunderstorm cell may reach a peak of five discharges in a minute. Besides the activity within the individual cell, lightning may travel from one cloud to another or from the cloud to the ground. Occasionally, it will travel from the ground to the cloud, if a negative charge has accumulated in the ground.

Thunder is the noise which accompanies a lightning flash. It is attributed to the vibration set up by the sudden heating and expansion of the air along the path of the lightning flash.

Hail may be regarded as one of the worst hazards of thunderstorm flying. It usually occurs during the mature stage of cells having updrafts of more than average intensity. The formation of hail has been covered earlier in this section.

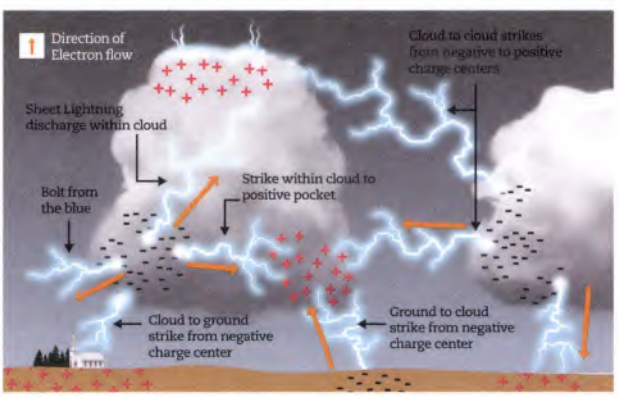


Fig.6.46 **Electrical Activity in a Thunderstorm**

Icing in a thunderstorm is encountered at or above the freezing level in the areas of heaviest turbulence during the mature stage of the storm. The altitudes within a few thousand feet of the freezing level, above or below, are especially dangerous.

The barometric pressure ahead of a thunderstorm falls abruptly as the storm approaches, rises quickly when the rain comes, and returns to normal when the storm subsides. Occasionally after a storm, the pressure falls below normal, then rises to near normal again. All this can happen in a matter of 10 to 15 minutes.

The dangers of flying in or close to a thunderstorm are:

1. Turbulence. Turbulence, associated with thunderstorms, can be extremely hazardous, having the potential to cause overstressing of the aircraft or loss of control. Thunderstorm vertical currents may be strong enough to displace an aircraft up or down vertically as much as 2,000 to 6,000 feet. The greatest turbulence occurs in the vicinity of adjacent rising and descending drafts. Gust loads can be severe enough to stall an aircraft flying at rough air (maneuvering) speed or to cripple it at design cruising speed. Maximum turbulence usually occurs near the mid-level of the storm, between 12,000 and 20,000 feet and is most severe in clouds of the greatest vertical development.

   Severe turbulence is present not just within the cloud. It can be expected up to 20 miles from severe thunderstorms and will be greater downwind than into wind. Severe turbulence and strong out-flowing winds may also be present beneath a thunderstorm. Microbursts can be especially hazardous because of the severe wind shear associated with them.

2. Lightning. Static electricity may build up in the airframe, interfering with operation of the radio and affecting the behaviour of the compass. Trailing antennas should be wound in. "Lightning blindness" may affect the crew's vision for 30 to 50 seconds at a time, making instrument reading impossible during that brief period. Lightning strikes of aircraft are not uncommon. The probability of a lightning strike is greatest when the temperature is between -5°C and 5°C. If the aeroplane is in close proximity to a thunderstorm, a lightning strike can happen even though the aircraft is flying in clear air. Lightning strikes pose special hazards. Structural damage is possible. The solid state circuitry of avionics is particularly vulnerable to lightning strikes. Electrical circuits may be disrupted. The possibility of lightning igniting the fuel vapour in the fuel cells is also considered a potential hazard.

3. Hail. Hailstones are capable of inflicting serious damage to an aeroplane. Hail is encountered at levels between 10 and 30 thousand feet. It is, on occasion, also encountered in clear air outside the cloud as it is thrown upward and outward by especially active cells.

4. Icing. Heaviest icing conditions occur above the freezing level where the water droplets are supercooled. Icing is most severe during the mature stage of the thunderstorm.

5. Pressure. Rapid changes in barometric pressure associated with the storm cause unreliable altimeter readings.

6. Wind. Abrupt changes in wind speed and direction in advance of a thunderstorm present a hazard during take-off and landing. Gusts in excess of 80 knots have been observed.

   Very violent thunderstorms draw air into their cloud bases with great intensity. Sometimes the rising air forms an extremely concentrated vortex from the surface of the ground well into the cloud, with vortex speeds of 200 knots or more and very low pressure in its centre. Such a vortex is known as a tornado.

7. Rain. The thunderstorm contains vast amounts of liquid water droplets suspended or carried aloft by the updrafts. This water can be as damaging as hail to an aircraft penetrating the thunderstorm at high speed. The heavy rain showers associated with thunderstorms can cause contamination of the wing surface that results in early stall. If encountered during approach and landing, heavy rain can reduce visibility and cause refraction on the windscreen of the aircraft, producing an illusion that the runway threshold is lower than it actually is. Water lying on the runway can cause hydroplaning which destroys the braking action needed to bring the aircraft to a stop within the confines of the airport runway. Hydroplaning can also lead to loss of control during take-off.

St. Elmo's Fire

If an aeroplane flies through clouds in which positive charges have been separated from negative charges, it may pick up some of the cloud's overload of positive charges. Flames may flash along the wings and around the propeller tips. These are called St. Elmo's Fire. They are awe-inspiring but harmless. If the aeroplane flies in the vicinity of a cloud where negative charges are concentrated, its positive overload may discharge into the cloud. In this case, it is the aeroplane which strikes the cloud with lightning! The electricity discharges cause a noisy disturbance in the lower frequency radio bands but do not interfere with the very high frequencies. This precipitation static, as it is called, tends to be most severe near the freezing level and where turbulence and updrafts and downdrafts occur.

6.9.2 Thunderstorm Avoidance

Because of the severe hazards enumerated above, attempting to penetrate a thunderstorm is asking for trouble. In the case of light aeroplane pilots, the best advice on how to fly through a thunderstorm is summed as follows — **DON'T DO IT.**

Detour around storms as early as possible when encountering them en route. Stay at least 5 miles away from a thunderstorm with large overhanging areas because of the danger of encountering hail. Stay even farther away from a thunderstorm identified as very severe as turbulence may be encountered as much as 15 or more nautical miles away. Vivid and frequent lightning indicates the probability of a severe thunderstorm. Any thunderstorm with tops at 35,000 feet or higher should be regarded as extremely hazardous.

Avoid landing or taking off at any airport in close proximity to an approaching thunderstorm or squall line.

Microbursts occur from cell activity and are especially hazardous if encountered during landing or take-off since severe wind shear is associated with microburst activity. Dry microbursts can sometimes be detected by a ring of dust on the surface. Virga falling and evaporating from high based storms can cause violent downdrafts.

The gust front, another zone of hazardous wind shear, can be identified by a line of dust and debris blowing along the earth's surface.

Swirls of dust or ragged clouds hanging from the base of the storm can indicate tornado activity. If one tornado is seen, expect others since they tend to occur in groups.

Do not fly under a thunderstorm even if you can see through to the other side, since turbulence may be severe. Especially,

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

do not attempt to fly underneath a thunderstorm formed by orographic lift. The wind flow that is responsible for the formation of the thunderstorm is likely to create dangerous updrafts and downdrafts and turbulence between the mountain peaks.

Reduce airspeed to maneuvering speed when in the vicinity of a thunderstorm or at the first indication of turbulence.

Do not fly into a cloud mass containing scattered embedded thunderstorms unless you have airborne radar.

Do not attempt to go through a narrow clear space between two thunderstorms. The turbulence there may be more severe than through the storms themselves. If the clear space is several miles in width, however, it may be safe to fly through the centre, but always go through at the highest possible altitude.

When flying around a thunderstorm, it is better to fly around the **right side** of it. The wind circulates anticlockwise and you will get more favourable winds.

If circumstances are such that you must penetrate a thunderstorm, the following few simple rules may help you to survive the ordeal:

1. Go straight through a front, not across it, so that you will get through the storm in the minimum amount of time.
2. Hold a reasonably constant heading that will get you through the storm cell in the shortest possible time.
3. Before entering the storm, reduce the airspeed to the aeroplane's maneuvering airspeed to minimize structural stresses.
4. Turn the cockpit lights full bright. (This helps to minimize the risk of lightning blindness.) Turn on the pitot heat and check the carburetor heat. Ensure seat belts are tightly fastened. Secure loose objects in the cabin.
5. Try to maintain a constant attitude and power setting. (Vertical drafts past the pitot pressure source and clogging by rain cause erratic airspeed readings.)
6. Avoid unnecessary maneuvering (to prevent adding maneuver loads to those already imposed by turbulence).
7. Determine the freezing level and avoid the icing zone. Avoid dark areas of the cell and those areas of heavy lightning.
8. Do not use the autopilot. It is a constant altitude device and will dive the aeroplane to compensate for updrafts, causing excessive airspeed, or climb it in a downdraft, creating the risk of a stall.

Lightning Detection Equipment

Lightning detection equipment, installed in the aeroplane, can help a pilot avoid thunderstorms.

This equipment detects the electromagnetic discharges associated with vertical air currents. All thunderstorms contain strong updrafts and downdrafts. These opposing ascending and descending air currents rub against each other, generating static electricity. The electrons tend to accumulate in positive and negative charges and when they have built up sufficiently, the potential difference will cause a current discharge. This discharge manifests itself not only as lightning but also in the radio spectrum. The lightning detection equipment picks up the radio frequencies from these discharges, a computer processes the signals, plots them by range and azimuth and presents them on a small, circular, radar like screen. The static electrical discharges picked up by the equipment may or may not be associated with lightning. It receives these signals through 360 degrees around the aeroplane and from as far away as 200 nautical miles.

Fig.6.47 **Lightning Detection Equipment**

Each static discharge is represented by a bright green dot on the cathode ray tube display. Clusters of dots indicate areas of thunderstorm activity. The display can be programmed to 3 different range settings, 40, 100 and 200 miles. It is most accurate on the 40 mile range. On the 200 mile range, the equipment sees everything but range is not so accurate. Generally, the display is more accurate and easier to read as the storm intensifies. In heavy electrical activity, the system has a problem called radial spread. The dots tend to spread over the display screening the areas between major clumps of storm caused dots.

Lightning detection equipment has some advantages over weather radar. Radar measures rainfall intensity. Lightning detection equipment is capable of detecting turbulence in clouds that have little or no precipitation. It is also able to see through areas of heavy precipitation to detect turbulent areas beyond. It does not, however, see rain.

There is an advantage in having both lightning detection equipment and weather radar installed in the aircraft, since they each provide valuable information in locating thunderstorms. Models of this equipment are available that interface with radar, displaying information from both systems on the same screen.

Lightning detection equipment is not dependent on line-of-sight. It will see, for example, the weather behind mountains. The system can, therefore, be used on the ground to determine weather for a 200 mile radius and is a useful flight planning tool.

Weather Radar

Airborne weather radar is one of the best instrument aids that a pilot can have in locating and avoiding thunderstorms. It is able to detect and display on the cockpit radar screen any significant weather that lies ahead on the flight route. The radar equipment does this by measuring precisely rainfall density of targets under observation. The antenna of the weather radar radiates a very narrow and highly directional beam, in the X band of the radio spectrum, straight ahead of the aircraft. The beam is cone-shaped and from 3 to 10 degrees in diameter. (Beam width is a function of antenna size and type.) The antenna scans left and right to cover a sector of about 120 degrees.

Although weather radar is not able to detect turbulence itself, the intensity of precipitation within a storm is a reliable indication of the amount of turbulence within a storm since strong drafts and gusts are necessary to produce water drops of significant size and quantity. Radar sees only water drops that are large enough to be affected by gravity and fall as rain. Because of the characteristics of X band radio waves and water, raindrops reflect the radiated beam back to the radar receiver. The sum of the reflections from all the raindrops appears on the screen as a target.

The computerized receiver measures the rainfall rate and grades the targets into levels which are represented on the screen by colours, green for level 1 which is light rain, yellow for level 2 which is medium rain and red for level 3 which is heavy rain. Areas of steep rain gradients are easy to see because of the colour coding. A precipitation rate that changes from minimum to maximum over a short distance is known as a steep rain gradient and usually is associated with a shear zone. Any target that is showing red is said to be contouring, is considered to be a storm and must be avoided and detoured. Areas of no precipitation between targets remain black and are called corridors.

Fig.6.48 **Airborne Weather Radar**

The airborne display is gradated into mileage rings. Distance to the storm as well as its bearing with respect to the aeroplane's heading are displayed. As a result, the pilot is able to select a safe and smooth flight path through thunderstorm areas. It is wise to give all contouring targets at least a 10 mile clearance. A corridor between 2 targets should be at least 20 miles wide before considering it a safe passage.

Most weather radar systems manufactured today present a digital display that does not fade between sweeps. Some equipment incorporates automatic tilt to compensate for the attitude of the aeroplane. On some models, tilt is handled manually. Since the weather radar only can display targets illuminated by the radar beam, tilt management of the radar antenna is essential. The tilt feature controls the up and down angle of the antenna and consequently the plane of scan of the antenna. This feature is important in evaluating weather. The antenna beam does not see the whole storm, but only a 3 to 10 degree slice of it. By setting the tilt higher, the beam scans the upper region of the cell. By setting it lower, the beam scans the lower region of the cell. Since rain is most concentrated in the middle and lower regions of a thunderstorm, the best part of a storm to scan is this middle/lower area that gives the best indication of size and intensity.

It does take skill and training to use airborne weather radar most effectively. Interpreting the display is not an exact science but depends on the pilot's general knowledge of thunderstorms, the quality of the preflight briefing that he/she has received, and his/her familiarity with the limitations of the radar equipment in his/her aeroplane.

There are some limitations to weather radar. Moisture in relatively close proximity to the aeroplane can scatter the radar beams. This problem, called attenuation, means that heavy rain areas can block out a radar return from significant weather that lies beyond. Moisture and ice on the radar dome (the radome) installation on the nose of the aeroplane can diminish the radar signal. Useful range of the weather radar is only about 90 to 100 miles.

6.10 Icing

When an aeroplane, while flying at a level where the temperature is at or below freezing, "strikes" a supercooled water droplet, the droplet will freeze and adhere to the aeroplane. Dangerous icing can occur in cloud, freezing rain, or freezing drizzle.

The cloud in which icing most frequently occurs in winter is stratocumulus, but the heaviest deposits are encountered in cumulus and cumulonimbus. Clouds composed of ice crystals (such as cirrus) do not present an icing hazard. The ice crystals do not adhere to the wing.

The more dangerous types of icing are encountered in dense clouds, composed of heavy accumulations of large supercooled drops, and in freezing rain.

The seriousness of icing depends on the air temperature, the temperature of the aircraft skin and the amount of water striking the aircraft.

A supercooled water droplet freezes if disturbed. When struck by an aircraft, the drop begins to freeze immediately but, as it freezes, it releases heat to raise its temperature to 0°C. Freezing by impact then ceases and the remaining liquid in the drop begins to freeze more slowly as a result of cold surroundings. At very low temperatures, a large part of the drop freezes by impact. At higher temperatures, a smaller part of the drop freezes by impact leaving a greater amount to freeze more slowly.

How fast this liquid part of the drop freezes depends on the temperature of the aircraft skin. The higher the temperature, the more the drop will spread from the point of impact before freezing is complete.

Whether or not a drop freezes completely before another drop strikes the same spot is another factor affecting the character of icing. The amount of water intercepted by an aircraft in a given time is called its rate of catch. This rate varies with the liquid water content of the cloud, the size of the water droplets, the airspeed and the type of wing of the aircraft.

The liquid water content varies from level to level within the cloud. Generally, the amount of supercooled water in a cloud increases with height when the temperature is just a little below 0°C but decreases with height when the temperature is well below freezing, since at such low temperatures, more drops will freeze into ice crystals reducing the liquid content.

The size of droplets also affects the rate of catch. Small drops tend to follow the airflow and are carried around the wing. Large, heavy drops tend to strike the wing. When a small drop does hit, it will spread back over the wing only a small distance. The large drop spreads farther.

As for airspeed, the number of droplets struck by the aircraft in a certain time increases as the airspeed increases.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

The curvature of the leading edge of the wing also has an effect on the rate of catch. Thin wings catch more droplets than do thick wings.

The rate of catch is, therefore, greatest for an aircraft with thin wings flying at high speed through a cloud with large droplets and a high liquid water content.

6.10.1 How Icing Affects the Aeroplane

Ice collects on and seriously hampers the function of not only wings, control surfaces and propellers, but also windscreens and canopies, radio antennas, pitot and static pressure sources, carburetors and air intakes. Turbine engines are especially vulnerable. Ice forming on the intake cowling constricts the air intake. Ice on the rotor and stator blades affects their performance and efficiency and may result in flame out. Chunks of ice breaking off may be sucked into the engine and cause structural damage.

The first structures to accumulate ice are the surfaces with thin leading edges: antennas, propeller blades, horizontal stabilizers, rudder, landing gear struts. Usually the pencil-thin outside air temperature gauge is the first place where ice forms on an aeroplane. The wings are normally the last structural component to collect ice.

Sometimes, a thin coating of ice will form on the windshield, preceded in some instances by frosting. This can occur on take-off and landing and with sufficient rapidity to obscure the runway and other landmarks during a critical time in flight.

Icing of the propeller generally makes itself known by a slow loss of power and a gradual onset of engine roughness. The ice first forms on the spinner or propeller dome and then spreads to the blades themselves. Ice customarily accumulates unevenly on the blades, throwing them out of balance. The resulting vibration places undue stress on the blades and on the engine mounts, leading to their possible failure.

If the propeller is building up ice, it is almost certain that the same thing is happening on the wings, tail surfaces and other projections. The weight of the accumulated ice is less serious than the disruption of the airflow around the wings and tail surfaces. The ice changes the airfoil cross section and destroys lift, increases drag and raises the stalling speed. At the same time, thrust is degraded because of ice on the propeller blades and the pilot finds him/herself having to use full power and a high angle of attack just to maintain altitude. With the high angle of attack, ice will start to form on the underside of the wing adding still more weight and drag. Landing approaches and landing itself can be particularly hazardous under icing conditions. Pilots should use more power and speed than usual when landing an ice-laden aeroplane.

If ice builds up on the pitot and static pressure sources, flight instruments may cease operating. The altimeter, airspeed and rate of climb would be affected. Gyroscopic instruments powered by a Venturi would be affected by ice building up on the Venturi throat.

Ice on radio antennas can impede VOR reception and destroy all communications with the ground. Whip antennas may break off under the weight of the accumulating ice.

Carburetor icing may occur in clear air at higher than freezing temperatures.

Tailplane Stall

Because of the narrow camber of the airfoil section and the small radius of curvature of the leading edge, tailplanes are very susceptible to ice accretion. The tailplane has an ice collection efficiency that is twice or three times that of the wings. If there is a half inch of ice on the wing, the accumulation on the tailplane may be an inch or more. In certain circumstances, ice may be accumulating on the tailplane when there is no visible ice on the wing.

The principal danger attributable to tailplane ice occurs during approach and landing when the flaps are extended or after nose-down pitch and speed adjustments are made following flap extension. Most tailplanes are set at an angle of incidence to provide negative lift to balance the lift of the wings. During approach and landing, the tail is already at a high angle of attack. Extension of the flaps causes a major change in the downwash on the tail and a further increase in the angle of attack of the tailplane. If, at the same time, there is substantial ice contamination of the tailplane, tailplane stall is likely to occur.

Buffeting, reduction in the elevator effectiveness, unusual nose-down trim changes and nose-down pitch warn of impending tailplane stall. Corrective action should entail immediate retraction of the flaps to the previous setting and an increase of the airspeed commensurate with the reduced flap setting. Pilots should apply sufficient power for the configuration and conditions while heeding manufacturer's recommendations for power settings. Increasing the airspeed increases the margin of safety when the wing is approaching the stall condition; however, pilots should be aware that higher power settings may reduce the margin of safety in some aircraft because the increased airspeed increases the downwash on the tailplane. Any nose-down pitch changes should be made slowly. Land the aircraft with the reduced flap setting.

6.10.2 Types of Icing

The three main types of ice accretion, in order of their hazard to flying, are as follows:

Clear Ice

A heavy coating of glassy ice which forms when flying in dense cloud or freezing rain is known as clear ice or glaze ice. It spreads, often unevenly, over wing and tail surfaces, propeller blades, antennas, etc. Clear ice forms when only a small part of the supercooled water droplet freezes on impact. The temperature of the aircraft skin rises to 0°C with the heat released during that initial freezing by impact of part of the droplet. A large portion of the droplet is left to spread out, mingle with other droplets before slowly and finally freezing. A solid sheet of clear ice thus forms with no embedded air bubbles to weaken its structure. As more ice accumulates, the ice builds up into a **single** or **double** horn shape that projects ahead of the wing, tail surface, antenna, etc. on which it is collecting. This unique ice formation severely disrupts the airflow and is responsible for an increase in drag that may be as much as 300 to 500%.

The danger of clear ice is great owing to (1) the loss of lift, because of the altered wing camber and the disruption of the smooth flow of air over the wing and tail surfaces, (2) the increase in drag on account of the enlarged profile area of the wings, (3) the weight of the large mass of ice which may accumulate in a short time, and finally (4) the vibration

caused by the unequal loading on the wings and on the blades of the propeller(s). When large blocks break off, the vibration may become severe enough to seriously impair the structure of the aeroplane.

When mixed with snow, clear ice may have a whitish appearance. (This was once classified as rime-glazed but it is now considered to be a form of clear ice.) Clear ice occurs most often in the 0°C to -10°C temperature range and is often found in cumulus clouds and unstable conditions.

Rime Ice

An opaque, or milky white, deposit of ice is known as rime. It accumulates on the leading edges of wings and on antennas, pitot pressure sources, etc. For rime to form, the aircraft skin must be at a temperature below 0°C. The drop will then freeze completely and quickly without spreading from the point of impact. It is also dependent on a low rate of catch of small supercooled water droplets.

Rime forms when the aeroplane is flying through filmy, stratiform clouds with temperatures between -10°C and -20°C. The deposit has no great weight. Its danger lies in the aerodynamic alteration of the wing camber and in the choking of the orifices of the carburetor and instruments. Rime is usually brittle and can easily be dislodged by de-icing equipment.

Occasionally, both rime and clear ice will form concurrently. This is called mixed icing and has the bad features of both types.

Frost

A white semi-crystalline frost which covers the surface of the aeroplane forms in clear air by the process of sublimation. This has little or no effect on flying but may obscure vision by coating the windshield. It may also interfere with radio transmission and reception by coating the antenna with ice. It generally forms in clear air when a cold aircraft enters warmer and damper air during a steep descent.

Aircraft parked outside on clear cold nights are likely to be coated with frost by morning. The upper surfaces of the aircraft cool by radiation to a temperature below that of the surrounding air.

Frost which forms on wings, tail and control surfaces must be removed before take-off. Frost alters the aerodynamic characteristics of the wing sufficiently to interfere with take-off by increasing stall speed and reducing lift.

Frozen dew may also form on aircraft parked outside on a night when temperatures are just below freezing. Dew first condenses on the aircraft skin and then freezes as the surface of the aircraft cools. Frozen dew is usually clear and somewhat crystalline, whereas frost is white and feathery. Frozen dew, like frost, must be removed before take-off.

In fact, any snow or moisture of any kind should be removed since these may freeze to the surface while the aeroplane is taxiing out for take-off. The heat loss due to the forward speed of the aeroplane may be sufficient to cause congelation.

6.10.3 Intensity of Icing

Icing may be described as light, moderate and severe (or heavy). In severe icing conditions, the rate of accretion is such that anti-icing and de-icing may fail to reduce or control the hazard. A change in heading and altitude is considered essential. In moderate icing, a diversion may be essential since the rate of accretion is such that there is potential for a hazardous situation. Light icing is usually not a problem unless the aircraft is exposed for a lengthy period.

Clear ice is considered more serious than rime ice since the rate of catch must be high to precipitate the formation of clear ice.

The seriousness of an icing situation is, of course, dependent on the type of aircraft and the type of de-icing or anti-icing equipment with which the aircraft is equipped or the lack of such equipment.

6.10.4 Icing in Clouds & in Precipitation

Severe icing is likely to occur in the upper half of heavy cumulus clouds approaching the mature cumulonimbus stage especially when the temperatures are between -25°C and 0°C. The horizontal extent of such cloud is, however, limited so that the aircraft is exposed for only a short time.

Icing is usually less severe in layered stratus cloud than in cumulus type clouds but it can be serious if the cloud has a high water content. Since stratus cloud is widespread in the horizontal, exposure to the icing condition can be prolonged. Icing is more severe if cumulus clouds are embedded in the stratus layer.

Freezing rain is common ahead of warm fronts in winter. Serious icing occurs when the aircraft is flying near the top of the cold air mass beneath a deep layer of warm air. Rain drops are much larger than cloud droplets and therefore give a very high rate of catch. In freezing temperatures, they form clear ice.

Drizzle falls from stratus cloud with a high water content. As the droplets fall through the clear air under the cloud, their size decreases due to evaporation. Therefore, icing in freezing drizzle is usually maximum just below the cloud base where the drops are largest. Such icing is of the clear ice type with the resultant ice formations becoming large and strangely shaped. Freezing drizzle occurs most often in the Great Lakes and maritime regions where the air in frontal systems can be loaded with large quantities of water. While it is predominantly a low altitude phenomenon occurring at the altitudes at which most piston-engined aeroplanes fly, research aircraft have encountered freezing drizzle at altitudes up to 15,000 feet at -10°C.

Snow and ice crystals do not adhere to cold aircraft and do not usually constitute an icing problem. However, if the aircraft is warm, the snow may melt as it strikes the warm surface and ice accretion may result. If supercooled water droplets are also present with the snow, a rapid build-up of rough ice can occur.

6.10.5 Protection from Icing

Many modern aeroplanes that are designed for personal and corporate use, as well as the larger transport type aeroplanes, are fitted with various systems designed to prevent ice from forming (anti-icers) or to remove ice after it has formed (de-icers).

1. Fluids. There are fluids which are released through slinger rings or porous leading edge members to flow over the blades of the propellers and the surfaces of the wings. A fluid is an anti-icing device since it makes it difficult for ice to form.
2. Rubber Boots. Membranes of rubber are attached to the leading edges. They can be made to pulsate in

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

such a way that ice is cracked and broken off after it has already formed. This is a de-icing device.

3. Heating Devices. Heating vulnerable areas is a method for preventing the build-up of ice. Hot air from the engine or special heaters is ducted to the leading edges of wings, empennages, etc. Electrically heated coils protect pitot pressure sources, propellers, etc.

6.10.6 Icing Avoidance

Few single-engine aeroplanes, or even light twin-engine types, incorporate any means of ice prevention and none are certified to fly in icing conditions. Even for those aircraft that are equipped with de-icing and anti-icing systems, certification testing probably did not produce quantitative documentation on how effective the de-icing equipment would be in coping with severe icing or, in fact, anything heavier than light icing. A few tips are therefore in order to help pilots avoid or get out of icing situations.

When ice formation is observed in flight, there is only one certain method of avoiding its hazards and that is to get out of the ice-forming layer as quickly as possible. This may be done by quickly performing a 180° turn to fly back out of the icing situation. If the accumulation of ice has already become serious, it may be necessary to make a precautionary landing. The second alternative would be to descend and fly "contact" below the ice forming zone. The advisability of this course would depend on the ceiling and visibility along the route at the lower level. The third alternative is to climb above the ice forming zone. This alternative would obviously require an aeroplane having good performance and fitted with radio and proper instruments for flying "over the top".

Prompt action on the radio is important when icing starts. Information about the latest weather for altitudes above and below will help the pilot to make the decision on what action to take.

In any event, the decision must be made rapidly since, once ice has started to form, the condition may become critical in a matter of approximately six minutes.

Freezing rain and freezing drizzle account for the most rapid and most hazardous build-up of ice on an aircraft. Freezing precipitation is commonly accepted as forming from precipitation aloft falling through an above zero warm layer into a sub zero zone at the surface. The warm precipitation then either supercools in the cold air at low level or freezes on contact with a cold surface. Large supercooled droplets in this situation develop through a condensation-coalescence process. However, studies have found that freezing precipitation (especially freezing drizzle) can occur without a region of warm air aloft. Supercooled warm rain falls from cloud that is entirely below 0°C (called supercooled warm rain process). This phenomenon is particularly common on the east coast of Canada where 60 to 75% of freezing drizzle events occur with no warm air aloft. They occur when winds are from the north and east (i.e. from over the ocean). Since the classic course of action to get out of an icing condition is to climb into the warm air aloft, pilots are cautioned to understand that in the situation described above, there may be no warm layer aloft. The higher you go, the smaller will be the freezing droplets and the smaller will be the rate of catch. However, there will be no warm air to melt the accumulated build-up.

Pilots flying in light aeroplanes which are not fitted with an outside air temperature gauge will be well advised to have one installed as this instrument will warn of temperatures that are conducive to icing conditions.

Avoid flight into an area where icing conditions are known to exist. Do not fly through rain showers or wet snow when the temperature is near 0°C. Do not fly into cumulus clouds when the temperature is low.

Pilots flying with autopilot (see **Autopilot** under **Radio Navigation**) should take particular note of the hazards of freezing precipitation and icing when flying with the autopilot engaged. Prior to engaging the autopilot, the pilot must trim the aircraft to establish straight-and-level flight. In this way, there is no undue strain on the autopilot to keep the aircraft flying in the stable manner selected by the pilot. Should the aircraft fly into icing conditions after the pilot has engaged the autopilot, the icing occurring unevenly over the various control surfaces will put severe strain on the autopilot as it attempts to maintain the original stability selected by the pilot. Such loads on the airframe unbalance the aircraft in flight. Under such meteorological circumstances, a pilot should frequently disconnect the autopilot and re-trim the aircraft before re-engaging the autopilot.

Always consult a weather office or flight service station to obtain a forecast about expected icing conditions before taking off on any flight in fall or winter.

Do not remain in icing conditions any longer than necessary. For that reason, during climbs or descents through a layer in which icing conditions exist, plan your ascent or descent to be in the layer for as short a time as possible. However, keep your speed as slow as possible consistent with safety. Speed of an aeroplane affects accretion of ice. The faster an aeroplane moves through an area of supercooled water drops, the more moisture it encounters and the faster will be the accumulation of ice.

If ice has started to build up on the aeroplane, do not make steep turns or climb too fast since stalling speed is affected by ice accumulation. Fuel consumption is greater due to increased drag and the additional power required. Land with more speed and power than usual. Do not land with power off.

The problem of icing takes on new aspects for pilots of jet aircraft. At one time, the pilots of aeroplanes flying through high cirrus clouds did not worry about ice forming on the aeroplane as cirrus clouds are composed of ice crystals rather than water droplets. With the increased speeds of which jet aeroplanes are capable, the heat of friction is sufficient to turn the ice crystals in the cloud to liquid droplets which subsequently freeze to the aeroplane.

6.11 Turbulence

Turbulence is one of the most unpredictable of all the weather phenomena that are of significance to pilots. Turbulence is an irregular motion of the air resulting from eddies and vertical currents. It may be as insignificant as a few annoying bumps or severe enough to momentarily throw an aeroplane out of control or to cause structural damage.

Most of the causes of turbulence have been mentioned in other sections of this chapter since turbulence is associated with fronts, wind shear, thunderstorms, etc.

In reporting turbulence, it is usually classed as light, moderate, severe or extreme. The intensity of the turbulence is

determined by the nature of the initiating agency and by the degree of stability of the air.

Light turbulence momentarily causes slight changes in altitude and/or attitude or a slight bumpiness. Occupants of the aeroplane may feel a slight strain against their seat belts.

Moderate turbulence is similar to light turbulence but somewhat more intense. There is, however, no loss of control of the aeroplane. Occupants will feel a definite strain against their seat belts and unsecured objects will be dislodged.

Severe turbulence causes large and abrupt changes in altitude and/or attitude and, usually, large variations in indicated airspeed. The aeroplane may momentarily be out of control. Occupants of the aeroplane will be forced violently against their seat belts.

In extreme turbulence, the aeroplane is tossed violently about and is impossible to control. It may cause structural damage.

Whether turbulence will be light or more severe is determined by the nature of the initiating agency and by the degree of stability of the air.

6.11.1 Mechanical Turbulence

Friction between the air and the ground, especially irregular terrain and man-made obstacles, causes eddies and therefore turbulence in the lower levels. The intensity of this eddy motion depends on the strength of the surface wind, the nature of the surface and the stability of the air. The stronger the wind speed, the rougher the terrain and the more unstable the air, the greater will be the turbulence. Of these factors that affect the formation of turbulence, stability is the most important. If the air is being heated from below, the vertical motion will be more vigorous and extensive and the choppiness more pronounced. In unstable air, eddies tend to grow in size; in stable air, they tend not to grow in size but do dissipate more slowly.

Turbulence can be expected on the windward side and over the crests of mountains and hills if the air is unstable. There is less turbulence on the leeward side since subsidence stabilizes the air. Mountain waves produce some of the most severe turbulence associated with mechanical agencies. In strong winds, even hangars and large buildings cause eddies that can be carried some distance downwind.

Fig.6.49 **Mechanical Turbulence**

Strong winds are usually quite gusty; that is, they fluctuate rapidly in speed. Sudden increases in speed that last several minutes are known as squalls and they are responsible for quite severe turbulence.

6.11.2 Thermal Turbulence

Turbulence can also be expected on warm summer days when the sun heats the earth's surface unevenly. Certain surfaces, such as barren ground, rocky and sandy areas, are heated more rapidly than are grass covered fields and much more rapidly than is water. Isolated convective currents are therefore set in motion which are responsible for bumpy conditions as an aeroplane flies in and out of them. This kind of turbulence is uncomfortable for pilot and passengers. In weather conditions when thermal activity can be expected, many pilots prefer to fly in the early morning or in the evening when the thermal activity is not as severe.

Convective currents are often strong enough to produce air mass thunderstorms with which severe turbulence is associated.

Turbulence can also be expected in the lower levels of a cold air mass that is moving over a warm surface. Heating from below creates unstable conditions, gusty winds and bumpy flying conditions.

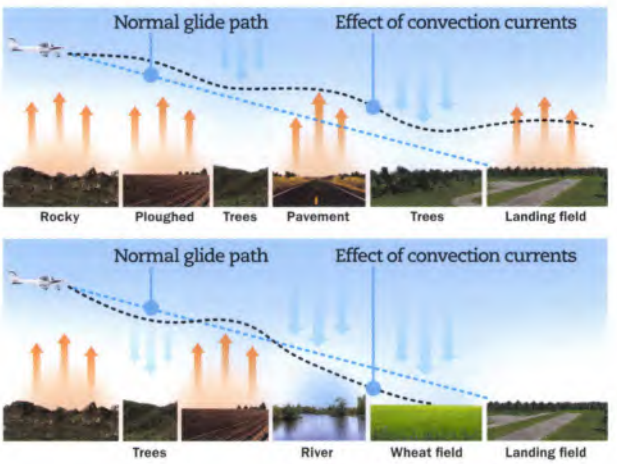


Fig.6.50 **The Effect of Thermal Turbulence**

Thermal turbulence will have a pronounced effect on the flight path of an aeroplane approaching a landing area. The aeroplane is subject to convective currents of varying intensity set in motion over the ground along the approach path. These thermals may displace the aeroplane from its normal glide path with the result that it will either overshoot or undershoot the runway (see Fig.6.50).

6.11.3 Frontal Turbulence

The lifting of the warm air by the sloping frontal surface and friction between the two opposing air masses produce turbulence in the frontal zone. This turbulence is most marked when the warm air is moist and unstable and will be extremely severe if thunderstorms develop. Turbulence is more commonly associated with cold fronts but can be present, to a lesser degree, in a warm front as well.

6.11.4 Wind Shear

Any marked changes in wind with height produce local areas of turbulence. When the change in wind speed and direction is pronounced, quite severe turbulence can be expected. Clear air turbulence is associated at high altitudes with the jet stream. (See also **Wind Shear** and **The Jet Stream**.)

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

6.11.5 Clear Air Turbulence

Clear air turbulence (CAT) is the turbulent movement of air masses in a sky that is practically devoid of any clouds. It results from the intersection of bodies of air that are moving at widely differing speeds, most often associated with the jet stream.

Temperature gradient, wind shear, and mountain waves are most often causal factors in the appearance of CAT. Most frequently encountered in the upper levels of the troposphere where it meets the tropopause, CAT is difficult to detect, although it is often present when thin cirrus cloud is visible.

Colloquially referred to as an "air pocket", CAT can be hazardous to the safety of any flight. (See also **The Jet Stream**.)

6.12 High Level Weather

In recent times, there has been a rapid increase in the number of general aviation aeroplanes capable of flight at high levels. As a result, some comment about weather conditions at these heights, between 20 and 60 thousand feet, would seem to be in order. There are certain aspects of weather at high levels that differ from the weather that predominates at the lower levels. For the most part, the weather at the lower levels does not extend to these great heights.

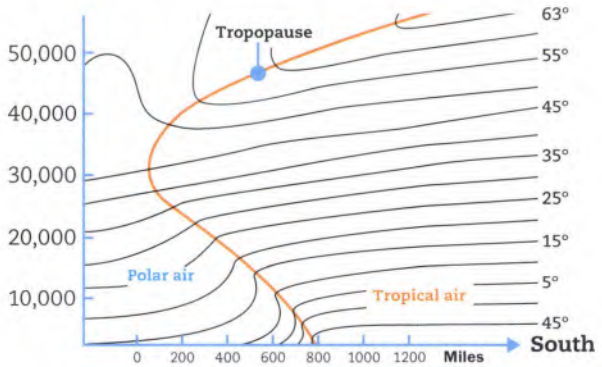


Fig.6.51 **Temperature Cross-Section through a Typical Front**

As has been seen earlier in this chapter, the troposphere extends up to a level between 20 and 60 thousand feet and is characterized by a general decrease of temperature with height. Separating the troposphere from the stratosphere is the tropopause.

The troposphere is composed of a number of different air masses with different characteristics and temperatures. The height of the tropopause over warm air masses originating in hot regions is quite high, over cold air masses originating over arctic regions quite low. As these air masses move away from their source regions, they carry their tropopauses with them. As a result, at the polar front that separates the warm tropical air mass from the cold polar air mass, the height change of the tropopause occurs rather abruptly, producing a distinct break in it. Sometimes the two parts seem to overlap and sometimes there is quite a gap between them (Fig.6.51).

The position of the tropopause can sometimes be visually recognized quite clearly. There is frequently a haze layer with a definite top at the tropopause. Anvil tops of thunderstorms spread out at the tropo-pause even though the convective core of a particularly active cell may extend up into the stratosphere. Winds are normally strongest at the tropopause, decreasing above and below it. Wind shear and turbulence occur near the tropopause.

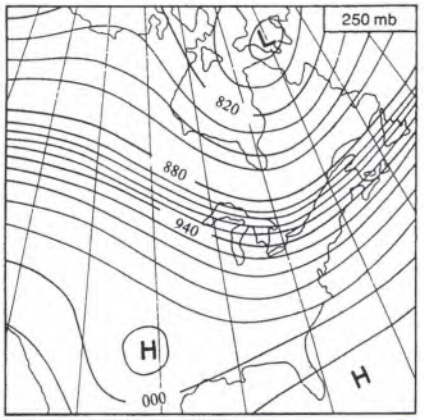


Fig.6.52 **250 hPa Chart**

High level charts are prepared by the weather service indicating pressure distribution at heights of 18,000 feet (500 hPa) and 34,000 feet (250 hPa). The contour lines represent the approximate height of the pressure level indicated by the map. The wind direction is parallel to the contour lines and flows from west to east. The winds are strongest where the contour lines are closest, where the gradient is the steepest (Fig.6.52). These charts are of immense value to pilots planning high level flights.

6.12.1 Winds at High Levels

In the temperate latitudes, the prevailing winds blow from the west to the east. The sub polar low and the subtropical high created by the circulation cells at 60 degrees north latitude and 30 degrees north latitude are responsible for this general wind pattern. (See **The Hemispheric Prevailing Winds**.)

The most important wind pattern in the high levels, however, is the jet stream, a narrow band of extremely high speed winds, that flows from west to east and takes a snake like pattern in its path across the hemisphere. The jet streams are closely associated with the tropopause, especially with the break in the tropopause that occurs over the polar front. (See also **The Jet Stream** in the Section **Winds**.)

6.12.2 Turbulence at High Levels

Cumulonimbus clouds very often extend to very great heights even several thousand feet into the stratosphere. Severe turbulence is associated with such towering build-ups even at high levels.

The most severe turbulence at high levels is clear air turbulence, a bumpy condition that occurs in cloudless sky and, for that reason, is encountered without warning. It can be severe enough to be hazardous to high performance aeroplanes. Clear air turbulence is associated with wind shear within the jet stream. (See also **Clear Air Turbulence** in the Section **Winds**.)

6.12.3 Visibility at High Levels

Usually there is little smoke or dust at altitudes above 20,000 feet. In some cases, smoke from large forest fires and smoke and dust from volcanic eruptions may rise to the tropopause. However, such occurrences are not common.

Haze layers which are not visible to a ground observer are frequently present in the upper troposphere. They are less dense than cirrus cloud but nevertheless do restrict visibility to zero

when the aeroplane is flying into the sun. Such haze layers occur in stagnant air masses.

Most cloud above 20,000 feet is composed of ice crystals. The cirrus layers may vary in thickness from less than 100 feet to more than 20,000 feet. Cirrus cloud is frequently found above 30,000 feet and sometimes above 40,000 feet.

Substances, such as dust, smoke and haze, that are obstructions to visibility originate on the earth's surface and must be carried aloft by strong vertical currents. In the stratosphere the air is stable. Obscuring materials therefore cannot be transported above the tropopause. Visibility in the stratosphere is excellent. However, it is very difficult to spot other aeroplanes in the stratosphere, possibly because there is lack of detail in the surroundings to provide contrast or to provide a focal point on which the eyes can focus. The condensation trail formed by the passage of an aeroplane is about the only way to spot that aeroplane at distances greater than 5 nautical miles. (See also **Vapour Trails**.)

6.12.4 Icing at High Levels

Icing above 20,000 feet is rare since most clouds are composed of ice crystals.

However, very high speed aeroplanes may experience icing problems in cirrus clouds. The heat due to friction is sufficient to melt the ice crystals in the cloud to liquid droplets which subsequently freeze to the cold exterior surfaces of the aeroplane.

6.12.5 Canopy Static

Canopy static is sometimes a problem at high levels. It is caused by the discharge of static electricity generated by the friction between solid particles in the atmosphere, especially the ice crystals in the cirrus clouds, and the plastic covered aeroplane surfaces. It reduces radio reception and can occur in such rapid succession that it seems to be a continuous disturbance. Changing altitude will generally eliminate the problem.

6.13 Weather Awareness

Look for cloudy unsettled weather when

- The barometer is falling.
- The temperature at night is higher than usual.
- The clouds move in different directions at different levels.
- High thin white clouds (cirrus) increase. A large ring appears around the sun or moon and stays there until the overcast clouds thicken and obscure the sun or moon.
- Summer afternoon clouds darken.

Look for steady precipitation when

- There have been signs of unsettled weather.
- The wind is south or southeast, the pressure falling. Rain (or snow) within a day if the pressure is falling slowly. If it is falling rapidly, rain soon with winds increasing.
- The wind is southeast to northeast, the pressure falling. Rain (or snow) soon.
- Thunderclouds developing against a south or southeast wind.

Look for showers when

- Thunderclouds develop in a westerly wind.
- Cumulus clouds develop rapidly in the early afternoon in the spring or summer.
- The barometer rises.
- The wind shifts into the west or northwest.
- The temperature falls.

Look for continued bright weather when

- You can look directly at the sun when it sets like a ball of fire.
- The barometer is steady or slowly rising.
- Cloudiness decreases after 3 p.m. or 4 p.m.
- Morning fog breaks within two hours after sunrise.
- There is a light breeze from the west or northwest.
- There is a red sunset.

Look for higher temperatures when

- The barometer falls. In summer a falling barometer may indicate cloudy weather which will be cooler than in clear weather.
- The wind swings away from the north or the west.
- The morning sky is clear, except when the barometer is high or is rising in wintertime, or if the wind is strong from the north or west.

Look for lower temperatures when

- The wind swings from the southwest into the west, or from the west into the northwest or north.
- When skies are clearing (although clearing skies in the morning will likely mean warmer weather by afternoon, particularly in the summer).
- In the winter, the barometer rises.
- Snow flurries occur with a west or north wind.
- Pressure is low and falling rapidly, wind east or northeast and backing slowly into north. (The fall in temperature will be gradual.)

6.14 Weather Information

The format and method by which aviation weather information is distributed is subject to frequent revision. The reader is advised to check recent NOTAMS and the AIM for any changes that might have been incorporated since publication of this edition.

6.14.1 Weather Charts

Canadian weather charts are prepared on a regular schedule by the Atmospheric Environment Service (AES) and disseminated to all weather offices and flight service stations. They are used by meteorologists and briefers to give weather briefings to pilots. Along with weather reports and forecasts, they provide a comprehensive picture of the weather.

Surface Analysis Charts

Surface analysis charts are issued in all countries to show the state of the weather at a specific date and time.

The construction of the analysis chart, so far as the representation of high and low pressure areas, with their accompanying wind systems, temperatures and frontal conditions will be more readily understood by reference to the sections **Isobars**,

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

High and Low Pressure Areas, Air Masses and Fronts which were discussed in the preceding pages of this Chapter.

Surface pressure patterns can be considered as representative of the atmosphere up to 3,000 feet AGL. Some surface analysis charts may include additional weather information.

A typical surface analysis chart prepared by the Meteorological Service of Canada is reproduced as Appendix B at the end of this book. This chart depicts the surface weather at a given time for all of Canada and the United States. The information used to compile such a chart is received from weather stations all over the continent which make hourly reports. The charts themselves are issued four times a day at six hour intervals. However, it is several hours after the information is received before the charts can be prepared and distributed, so that they are always several hours out of date when received at the weather office. The time of the observations on which the chart is based is indicated in the title box on the corner of the chart. Reporting stations are marked by circles and weather information is placed around the station circle in a standard pattern called a station model. All of the symbols used on a weather chart are depicted and explained on the reverse side of the weather chart in Appendix B, at the end of this book.

Surface Prognostic Charts

Surface prognostic (forecast) charts are issued to show what the weather chart is expected to look like, a specified number of hours hence. They are actually graphic forecasts of the expected movement of high and low pressure areas, with their accompanying weather systems, and hence are valuable to a pilot in predicting changes which may occur before his/her actual time of departure or during the progress of his/her flight. The charts are issued 48 hours before the time for which they are valid and a second revised chart is issued 12 hours later (36 hours before the time for which it is valid). As with surface analysis charts, the pressure patterns depicted can be considered representative of the atmospheric weather up to 3,000 feet AGL.

Upper Level Analysis Charts

Upper level analysis charts are similar in construction to surface analysis charts, except that they show flow patterns aloft. Actual weather conditions in the upper air are measured twice a day at 0000Z and at 1200Z. The data is plotted on constant pressure analysis charts for specific pressure levels in the atmosphere. Each upper level analysis chart depicts actual weather conditions aloft at a specific time.

Upper level analysis charts are prepared for 850, 700, 500 and 250 hectopascals (representing on the average the 5,000 ft/1,500 m, 10,000 ft/3,000 m, 18,000 ft/5,500 m and 34,000 ft/10,400 m levels). These charts show reported atmospheric conditions at the pressure levels, such as wind speed and direction, temperatures, moisture content and frontal and pressure systems. Used in conjunction with the surface analysis charts, they give a picture of the extent of the weather systems, cloud levels, thunderstorms, rain, etc.

The solid lines on an upper level analysis chart represent the approximate height of the pressure level indicated by the chart and are called contour lines rather than isobars as they are called on surface analysis charts. The contours are labelled in decameters (10's of metres). On a 500 hPa chart, for example, 540 means 5,400 metres. On a 250 hPa chart, 020 means 10,200 metres. Contours are spaced 60 metres apart on 850, 700 and 500 hPa charts and 120 metres apart on 250 hPa charts.

Dashed lines represent isotherms connecting areas of equal temperature and are labelled in 5° increments. They appear only on the 850 hPa charts and the 700 hPa charts.

Fronts are indicated on upper level charts only when they extend up to the pressure level of the chart and appear usually only on the 850 hPa charts. Information from a reporting station is indicated as on a surface analysis chart but is called a plotting model rather than a station model. Information about wind direction and speed is included in the plotting model.

Upper Level Prognostic Charts

Upper level prognostic (forecast) charts, like their surface counterparts, are useful in anticipating weather conditions which may be expected to exist at some later specified time.

Upper level wind and temperature prognostic (forecast) charts are prepared for FL240, 340, 390 and 450. They are issued 12 hours before the time for which they are valid and depict forecast winds and temperatures for the chart level. They are issued four times a day.

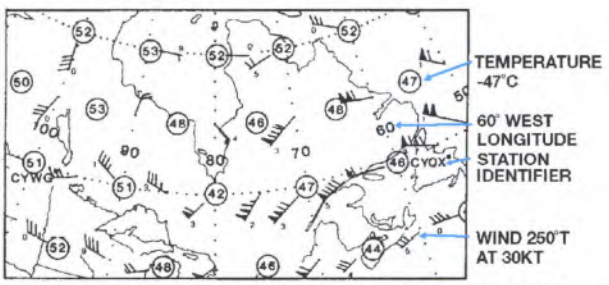

TEMPERATURE -47°C
60° WEST LONGITUDE
STATION IDENTIFIER
WIND 250°T AT 30KT
CYWG
CYQX
FL340 WIND/TEMPERATURES VALID 0000 UTC SUN 26 JUN 2022 BASED ON 1200 UTC SAT 25 JUN 2022 WIND SPEED IN KNOTS, TEMPS UNSIGNED UNLESS POSITIVE

Fig.6.53 **Upper Level Wind & Temperature Prognostic Chart**

Winds are depicted using arrow shafts with pennants (50 knots each), full feathers (10 knots each) and half feathers (5 knots each). The orientation of the arrow indicates wind direction in degrees true and a small number at the pennant end of the arrow shaft gives the 10s digit of the wind direction.

Temperatures in degrees Celsius are presented in circles at fixed grid points for the flight level. All temperatures are negative unless otherwise noted.

Wind and temperature information from these charts, in conjunction with the upper winds and temperature forecast (FD) and the significant weather prognostic (forecast) charts (see following) can be used to determine wind shear and clear air turbulence (CAT).

Significant Weather Prognostic Charts

Significant weather prognostic (forecast) charts are prepared for FL 100 — 240 (the mid levels of the atmosphere) and for FL 250 — 630 (the high levels). They show occurring and forecast conditions considered to be of concern to aircraft operations. They are issued 4 times a day, 12 hours before the time for which they are valid.

The charts for FL 250 — 600 forecast any significant weather, such as thunderstorms, cloud heights when they extend into the heights depicted by the chart, tropopause heights, jet streams, turbulence, severe squall lines, icing and hail, widespread sand and dust storms, tropical cyclones and hurricanes, and the surface positions of frontal systems associated with significant weather phenomena.

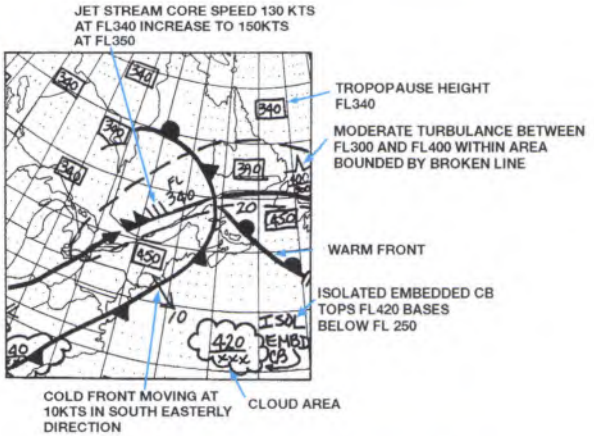


Fig.6.54 **Significant Weather Prognostic Chart**

The charts for the lower levels (FL 100 — 250) depict any of the above conditions which are applicable and also include information on moderate to severe icing, cloud layers of significance, marked mountain waves, the freezing level line at 10,000 feet and the surface positions and direction of movement of frontal and pressure systems. The recorded pressure at the centre of high and low pressure areas is indicated in hectopascals; for example, H x 1020 or L x 996.

The symbols used in significant weather prognostic (forecast) charts are depicted and explained on the reverse of the weather chart in Appendix B.

Interpreting Weather Charts

In the reproduction of the surface weather chart (see Appendix B), note the frontal pattern, the distribution of pressure, and the general circulation of the wind. The following observations are a few of the many and varied deductions that a pilot might make by studying the weather chart.

A cold front, now lying off the Atlantic coast, brought sunny skies to the Maritime Provinces. The high pressure area has also brought cool temperatures. A quasi-stationary front, lying in an east west line through Maryland and Virginia will probably move towards Nova Scotia, bringing cloud and precipitation to that area. An arctic cold front is moving southward out of the prairies towards southern Ontario. Temperatures in the cold air are near freezing. A warm front has moved across British Columbia and has now reached central Alberta. A widespread area of rain and low cloud is affecting the weather there.

6.14.2 Weather Observation Systems

Weather observations are taken every hour at selected aerodromes and at other locations throughout Canada and the U.S. There are over 230 surface weather observation sites in Canada. Observations are taken by specially trained observers or by automated systems. The weather data is collected then coded into weather observations for dissemination.

There are two types of automated weather stations used for the gathering of weather data for aviation. They are:

1. The Automated Weather Observation System (AWOS) which consists of a full suite of sensors that measure cloud base height, sky cover, visibility, temperature, dew point, wind velocity, altimeter setting, precipitation occurrence (type, amount and intensity), and icing
2. The Limited Weather Information System (LWIS) which collects limited data hourly, reporting wind direction, speed and gust, temperature, dew point, and altimeter setting

Both AWOS and LWIS may be equipped with a voice generation module that users may access via VHF radio. Frequencies may be found within those Canada Flight Supplement listings where the service is available.

Note that with respect to AWOS data gathering, it may take upwards of 15 minutes for the weather to cross the AWOS sensors before the weather is fully detected. AWOS system algorithms can only then process the data. Owing to this consideration, the reported weather observation may differ from the current weather in the vicinity of the aerodrome.

At major airports, a fully automatic and computer-controlled operational information display system (OIDS) provides continuously updated information for the now wind and the mean wind. The now wind is averaged over the last 5 seconds; the mean wind is averaged over the last 2 minutes. The mean wind is given in ATIS broadcasts; landing and taxiing information is inputted into the AWOS data. The now wind is given for landing and take-off clearance and on pilot request. OIDS also determines the current altimeter setting and reads the runway visual range (RVR) as an average over the last 1 minute.

NavCanada aviation weather cameras (WxCam) are installed at weather observation sites. These transmit images every 10 minutes to the NavCanada Aviation Weather Web Site for viewing by site users. (See **Internet** in this Chapter.) Also, one or more cameras (webcams) not belonging to NavCanada but accessible to pilots, may be installed at various observation sites. Aerodrome operators should be contacted for information regarding the presence of on-site webcams.

6.14.3 Weather Reporting Systems

An aviation weather report is a statement of weather conditions actually existing at a particular place at a given time. They are taken hourly by trained observers or by AWOS/LWIS at hundreds of stations throughout Canada and the United States.

Information about current weather is also available via the weather radar network which issues reports in graphic form. Observations of actual conditions observed by pilots during flight are available as PIREPs. Runway surface condition reports detail runway conditions at aerodromes all across the continent.

Aviation Routine Weather Report (METAR)

Weather data is transmitted in a code called METAR which is the name given to the international meteorological code for an aviation routine weather report. METAR observations are normally taken and disseminated on the hour. A SPECI, a special aviation weather report, is reported when weather changes of significance to aviation are observed. METAR and SPECI reports are not encoded by the observer but are generated electronically. The code used for METAR is composed of groups which are always in the same relative position to one another. When a weather element or phenomenon does not occur, the group is omitted. The METAR code sequence is as follows: report name; station identifier, date and time of observation; wind and gust information; variations in wind direction; prevailing visibility; runway visual range and variation in RVR; present weather; sky condition; obscured sky; temperature and dewpoint; altimeter setting; recent weather; wind shear; remarks. The contents of each of these groups is described in detail below.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

The aviation weather reports describe the existing weather conditions at specific times and at specific stations. They do not give the complete weather picture. Between stations that are a hundred miles apart, the weather can be drastically different than that reported at either station. In addition, weather conditions can change very quickly and be quite different from the condition reported at a particular airport in the time it takes you to fly there.

For the full weather picture, consult the reports over several hours to determine the improving or deteriorating trends and also consult the forecasts.

REPORT NAME

The code name METAR or SPECI is given in the first line of text. A METAR report is the regular hourly report. A SPECI report is issued when significant changes in weather conditions occur off the hour.

STATION IDENTIFIER

Weather reporting stations are assigned four letter identifiers in both Canada and the United States. In the U.S., the first letter of the identifier is K to denote a U.S. station. The three letters that follow the first are an abbreviation of the airport name; for example, "PIT" for Pittsburgh would appear as KPIT. In Canada the first letter of the identifier is C to denote a Canadian station. The three letters following the C identify the station. The first letter of the three letter group historically indicates the type of weather reporting station.

For Example:

"Y" historically indicates a reporting station co-located with an airport.

"Z" historically is used only if the "Y" could cause a conflict with an identifier in use in the U.S.A.

"W" historically indicates a reporting station not co-located with an airport.

"U" historically indicates a reporting station co-located with a radio beacon.

Thus, "CYOW" which is the identifier for Ottawa/MacDonald-Cartier International Airport is so identified owing to it historically having been co-located with a weather reporting station. It should be noted that "OW," as it is for all other major Canadian airport identifiers – "VR" for Vancouver, "QB" for Quebec City, "WG" for Winnipeg, "YC" for Calgary, etc. – is a designation that is carried over from Canada's transcontinental railway station Morse code assignment system.

DATE & TIME OF OBSERVATION

A 6 digit grouping giving the date and the time of observation in UTC (universal co-ordinated time) is included in all reports. The official time of observation (on the hour) is used for all METAR reports that do not deviate from the official time by more than 10 minutes. In SPECI reports, the time is reported in hours and minutes and refers to the time at which the weather changes occurred that required the issue of the report. The word AUTO follows the date and time grouping when the report is from an automatic weather observation station (AWOS). A correction to a METAR or SPECI is denoted by the letters CCA (for the first correction), CCB (for the second correction), etc.

Therefore, a date and time grouping **201200Z AUTO** indicates a report taken on the 20th day of the month at 1200 UTC by an automated weather station. A date and time grouping **170500Z CCA** indicates the first correction of a report taken on the 17th day of the month at 0500 UTC.

WIND & GUST INFORMATION

The 2 minute mean wind direction and speed are reported in a 5 digit grouping. Information on gust activity is preceded by the letter G and follows the wind direction and speed grouping.

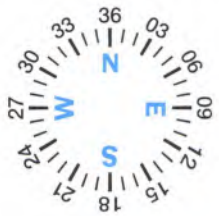


Fig.6.55 **Wind Direction**

Wind direction is that from which the wind is blowing. It is always reported in a 3 digit grouping given in degrees true and rounded off to the nearest 10 degrees. The third digit is therefore always a zero. A wind blowing directly from the north is reported as 360. Wind speeds are reported in knots in a 2 digit grouping.

In the case of mean wind speeds of 3 knots or less and a variable direction, the speed grouping is encoded as VRB.

Calm is encoded as **00000KT**

Gust information is included if gust wind speeds exceed the mean wind speed by 10 knots or more in the 10 minute period preceding the observation. The letter G indicates the existence of gust conditions and the 2 or 3 digit group that follows the G reports the peak gust. If the gust criteria are not met, the G grouping is omitted.

Wind units are reported as KMH, KT and MPS, the standard ICAO abbreviations for kilometers per hour, knots and meters per second, respectively. In Canada and the U.S., wind speed is reported in knots.

Therefore, a wind grouping **04010G25KT** indicates a wind blowing from 040° true at 10 knots, gusting to 25 knots. A wind grouping **270VRB** indicates a light and variable wind blowing from 270° true.

VARIATIONS IN WIND DIRECTION

A grouping composed of 3 digits, the letter V and 3 more digits is used to report variations in wind direction. It is included only if, during the 10 minute period preceding the observation, the wind direction varies 60 degrees or more and the mean speed exceeds 3 knots. The two extreme directions are encoded in clockwise order.

Therefore, **060V130** indicates that the wind is varying from 060° to 130°.

PREVAILING VISIBILITY

A grouping composed of no more than 3 digits and the letters SM reports the prevailing visibility in statute miles and fractions thereof. If the visibility in any one sector of the runway is less than the prevailing visibility, that information is reported as remarks at the end of the METAR report.

In Canada and the U.S., visibility is reported in statute miles. In other countries, it is reported in metres.

Therefore, **1/2SM** indicates a prevailing visibility of 1/2 of a statute mile.

RUNWAY VISUAL RANGE & VARIATIONS IN RVR

Runway visual range information is included whenever the prevailing visibility is 1 mile or less and/or the runway visual range is 6,000 feet or less.

The grouping is identified by the letter R which precedes a 2 digit group that designates the runway (e.g. 08). The letters L, C or R (left, centre or right) are added if there are 2 or more parallel runways. A slash followed by a 4 digit grouping reports the visual range in hundreds of feet. The letters FT indicate that the units for RVR are feet. A slash followed by the letter D, U or N indicates the trend in the RVR. A distinct upward or downward change of 300 feet or more is encoded as U or D (upward or downward). An N indicates no distinct change has been observed. When it is not possible to observe the tendency, the tendency indicator is omitted.

Therefore, **R29L/4000FT/U** indicates a runway visual range for runway 29 left of 4,000 feet. The trend indicates an upward, improving change.

PRESENT WEATHER

The grouping representing present weather may consist of up to three groups. Each group may contain from two to nine characters.

Present weather comprises weather phenomena which may be one or more forms of precipitation, obscuration or other phenomena. Weather phenomena are preceded by one or two qualifiers which describe the intensity of or proximity to the station of the phenomenon, the other of which describes the phenomenon.

Intensity is reported as (-) light, (no sign) moderate, or (+) heavy.

The proximity qualifier VC (for vicinity) is used in conjunction with the following phenomena:

Descriptor	Weather Phenomena
DS	Duststorm
SS	Sandstorm
FG	Fog
SH	Shower
PO	Dust or Sand Swirls
BLDU	Blowing Dust
BLSA	Blowing Sand
BLSN	Blowing Snow
FC	Tornado, Waterspout or Funnel Clouds

Fig.6.56 **Present Weather Phenomena**

VC is used when these phenomena are observed within 8 km (5 s.m.) but are not at the station. VCFC (tornadoes in the vicinity) shall be reported without regard to any distance restriction. When VC is associated with SH (showers) in a report, the type and intensity of precipitation is not specified.

The descriptor: no present weather group has more than one descriptor.

Descriptor	Weather Description
MI	Shallow
BC	Patches
DR	Drifting
BL	Blowing
SH	Shower(s)
TS	Thunderstorm
PR	Partial
FZ	Freezing

Fig.6.57 **Present Weather Descriptors**

The descriptors MI (shallow), PR (partial) and BC (patches) are used only in conjunction with fog (FG). For example, **BCFG** indicates fog patches.

The descriptors DR (drifting) and BL (blowing) are used only in combination with snow (SN), dust (DU) and sand (SA). Drifting is used when the phenomenon is below 2 metres; 2 metres or more is defined as blowing. If snow and blowing snow are occurring together, both are reported but in separate groups (for example **SN BLSN**)

SH (shower) is used only in combination with one or more of rain (RA), snow (SN), ice pellets (PL), snow pellets (GS) and hail (GR). For example, SHPL indicates ice pellet showers; **-SHRAGR** indicates light showers composed of rain and hail.

TS (thunderstorm) will be reported either alone or in combination with one or more of the precipitation types. The end of a thunderstorm is the time at which the last thunder is heard, followed by a 15 minute period with no further thunder.

FZ (freezing) is used only in combination with fog (FG), drizzle (DZ) and rain (RA).

Weather phenomena. Different forms of precipitation are combined in one group, the dominant form being reported first. The intensity qualifier represents the overall intensity of the entire group, not just one component of the group.

Precipitation forms are reported as follows:

Descriptor	Weather Precipitation
DZ	Drizzle
RA	Rain
SN	Snow
SG	Snow Grains
PL	Ice Pellets
GR	Hail
GS	Snow Pellets
IC	Ice crystals
UP	Unknown Precipitation (AUTO)

Fig.6.58 **Weather Precipitation Descriptors**

Obscuration. Obstructions to vision are reported whenever the prevailing visibility is 6 miles or less. An obscuration occurring simultaneously with one or more forms of precipitation is reported in a separate group.

Descriptor	Weather Obscuration
HZ	Haze
FU	Smoke
SA	Sand
DU	Dust
FG	Fog (VSBY less than 5/8)
BR	Mist (VSBY equal to or greater than 5/8)
VA	Volcanic Ash

Fig.6.59 **Weather Obscuration Descriptors**

Other Phenomena are reported as follows:

Descriptor	Weather Phenomena
PO	Dust/Sand Whirls
SS	Sandstorm
DS	Duststorm
SQ	Squalls
+FC	Tornado/Waterspout
FC	Funnel Cloud

Fig.6.60 **Weather Phenomena Descriptors**

Therefore, **-RADZ BR** indicates light rain and drizzle with mist, visibility greater or equal to 5/8 statute miles. +BLSN indicates heavy blowing snow.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

SKY CONDITION

As seen in the section **Clouds**, sky condition for layers aloft are reported in a group that symbolizes layer coverage and the height of the layers above station elevation. Cloud amount is encoded as follows:

Descriptor	Sky Condition
CLR	Sky clear (AWOS Report)
SKC	Sky clear; no cloud present
FEW	Trace to 2 oktas (2/8 of the sky is covered)
SCT	3 to 4 oktas (3/8 to 4/8 of the sky is covered)
BKN	5 to less than 8 oktas (5/8 to less than 8/8 of the sky is covered)
OVC	8 oktas (8/8 of the sky is covered)

Fig.6.61 **Sky Condition Descriptors**

In METAR reporting, the celestial dome is divided into 8 segments, each called an okta.

There is no provision in METAR for reporting thin layers or partially obscured condition except for the designation SKC. A cloud ceiling is said to exist at the height of the first layer for which the coverage symbol BKN or OVC is reported.

Significant convective clouds, when observed, are identified by adding the letters CB (cumulonimbus) or TCU (towering cumulus) to the cloud group without a space.

The height of the layer above station elevation is reported in increments of 100 feet to a height of 10,000 feet, thereafter in increments of 1,000 feet.

Height	Reporting Format
100 feet	001
400 feet	004
500 feet	005
1,000 feet	010
3,000 feet	030

Height	Reporting Format
5,000 feet	050
10,000 feet	100
12,000 feet	120
25,000 feet	250
30,000 feet	300

Fig.6.62 **Height of Cloud Layer Designations**

The term CAVOK is **not** used in Canada in METAR reports. Reports from other countries may use the term. When it is used, the term implies that the following conditions are occurring: visibility of

10 kilometers or more; no cloud below 5,000 feet; no precipitation, thunderstorm, sandstorm, duststorm, shallow fog or low drifting dust, sand or snow. The term CAVOK is still used in Canada by ATC and is used in ATIS messages.

Therefore, **SCT 050** indicates scattered clouds at 5,000 feet.

BKN 030 BKN100 indicates a broken sky condition at 3,000 feet and at 10,000 feet.

SCT 030 SCT 040TCU indicates scattered clouds at 3,000 feet and scattered towering cumulus at 4,000 feet.

FEW 004 BKN 080 indicates a few clouds at 400 feet and a broken condition at 8,000 feet.

OBSCURED SKY (VERTICAL VISIBILITY)

When the sky is obscured, a three digit group following the letters VV is included in the METAR report. VV is the group identifier and the vertical visibility is reported in units of hundreds of feet. The inclusion of a vertical visibility in the METAR report indicates an obscured sky condition.

Therefore, **VV010** indicates that the sky is obscured and vertical visibility is 1,000 feet.

TEMPERATURE & DEWPOINT

The air temperature and the dewpoint are reported in 2 two digit groups separated by a slash (/). They are rounded to the nearest whole degree Celsius. Negative values are preceded by the letter M.

Therefore, **15/10** indicates an air temperature of 15°C and a dewpoint temperature of 10°C.

M05/M10 indicates an air temperature of minus 5°C and a dewpoint temperature of minus 10°C.

ALTIMETER SETTING

The altimeter setting is given in hundredths of inches using four digits preceded by the letter A. (Internationally, the altimeter setting is reported to the nearest hectopascal and is preceded by the letter Q).

Therefore, **A2992** indicates an altimeter setting of 29.92 inches of mercury.

Q1013, in an international METAR report, indicates an altimeter setting of 1013 hectopascals.

RECENT WEATHER

The METAR report includes information on recent weather. The group is preceded by the letters RE followed, without a space, by the appropriate abbreviation for the applicable weather when the phenomena were observed during the hour since the last routine report but not at the time of observation. The RE group may also be included in SPECI reports.

The following may be reported as recent phenomena: freezing precipitation; moderate or heavy rain, drizzle or snow; moderate or heavy ice pellets, hail or snow pellets; moderate or heavy blowing snow; sandstorm or duststorm; thunderstorm; volcanic ash.

The same weather phenomenon will be reported in both the present weather and in the recent weather groups only if the phenomenon was of greater intensity during the period since the last METAR report.

Therefore, a moderate rainshower at the time of observation with a heavy rainshower 20 minutes before the time of observation would be coded SHRA in the present weather grouping and as RERA in the recent weather grouping.

REBLSN indicates moderate blowing snow has occurred since the last routine report.

WIND SHEAR

The wind shear group, identified by the indicator WS, is used to report low level wind shear (within 1,600 feet AGL) on the take-off and approach path. The runway designator RWY is normally followed by a 2 digit group to indicate the runway number but the letters L, C or R may be included if there are parallel runways.

Therefore, **WS RWY18** indicates that windshear was encountered on runway 18.

WS RWY20R indicates that windshear was encountered on runway 20 right.

WS ALL RWY indicates that windshear was encountered on all runways.

REMARKS

The remarks grouping is identified by the indicator RMK and includes information on cloud type and layer opacity (in oktas), sea level pressure (SLP) in hectopascals and any other information significant to aviation, such as density altitude.

Therefore, **RMK SC3 CI0 SLP134 DENSITY ALTITUDE 2500 FT** indicates 3/8 opacity of stratocumulus, 0 opacity of cirrus and sea level pressure of 1013.4 hPa, and a density altitude of 2,500 ft.

RMK ST8 ACSL OVR RDG NW SLP992 indicates 8/8 opacity of stratus, mountain wave clouds (altocumulus standing lenticular) were reported over the ridge northwest of the station. Sea level pressure of 999.2 hPa.

The following abbreviations are used for the various cloud types:

Descriptor	Cloud Type
Ci	cirrus
St	stratus
Cs	cirrostratus
Sf	stratus fractus
Cc	cirrocumulus
Sc	stratocumulus
As	altostratus
Cu	cumulus
Ac	altocumulus
Cf	cumulus fractus
Acc	altocumulus castellanus
Tcu	towering cumulus
Ns	nimbostratus
Cb	cumulonimbus

Fig.6.63 **Cloud Type Designations**

The following example is that of a METAR weather report.

METAR CYWG 172000Z 30015G25KT 3/4SM R36/ 4000 FT/D -SN BLSN BKN008 OVC040 M05/M08 A2992 REFZRA WS RWY36 RMK SF5NS3 SLP134

Decoded the above reads:

METAR: METAR report.

CYWG: Code letters of reporting station (CYWG means Winnipeg).

172000Z: Date and time of observation (17 means 17th day of the month; 2000Z means 2000 UTC).

30015G25KT: Wind and gust information (300 means that the wind is from 300° true; 15 means windspeed is 15 knots; G25KT means gusts to 25 knots have been reported).

3/4SM: Prevailing visibility (3/4SM means 3/4 statute mile).

R36/4000FT/D: Runway visual range (R36 means runway 36; /4000FT/D means visual range is 4,000 feet and is decreasing).

-SN BLSN: Present weather (-SN means light snow; BLSN means blowing snow).

BKN008 OVC040: Sky condition (BKN008 means broken cloud cover at 800 feet; OVC040 means overcast at 4,000 feet).

M05/M08: Temperature and dewpoint (M05 means air temperature of minus 5°C; M08 means dewpoint temperature of minus 8°C).

A2992: Altimeter setting (A2992 means altimeter setting of 29.92 inches of mercury).

REFZRA: Recent weather (REFZRA means freezing rain was reported since the last scheduled report but is not present at the time of this observation).

WS RWY36: Windshear (WS means windshear was reported on runway 36).

RMK SF5NS3 SLP134: Remarks (RMK means remarks; SF5 means 5 oktas of stratus fractus cloud; NS3 means 3 oktas of nimbostratus cloud; SLP134 means sea level pressure of 1013.4 hPa).

Weather Radar Network

Specially designated weather surveillance radars are installed at sites across Canada. Observations are made of precipitation areas and convection type storms. The computer-generated composite reports are transmitted in graphic form and give a visual representation of the radar report. They are transmitted on weather communication circuits and are also available on weather websites such as the NavCanada Aviation Weather Web Site. Radar images are updated approximately every 10 minutes for individual radars.

Weather radar imagery is broken down into two components: a precipitation intensity component and an echo tops component. The precipitation component provides an indication of precipitation intensity measured by rate of fall in mm/hr or cm/hr, at a specific altitude. Two settings are used for the scale: one for rain with a scale of up to 300 mm/hr, and one for snow with a rate of fall of up to 40 cm/hr. The echo tops radar component provides an indication of the vertical extent of the precipitation area, though cloud tops could extend higher than the precipitation area itself.

The radar presents a display of weather in a 150 nautical mile radius. The rate of movement (velocity) of the precipitation areas is determined by the doppler system and is accurate for a 65 nautical mile (120 kilometer) radius. Radar does not show turbulence. Turbulence is usually associated with heavy rainfall and can be presumed, therefore, to be present in any area showing heavy precipitation.

Radar returns are usually described by colour or level. The colours normally range from blue or green (indicating weak returns), to red or magenta (which indicate very strong returns). By way of example, a yellow return on the scale of reflectivity indicates moderate precipitation of approximately 6.4 mm per hour (35 dBZ). A red return on the scale of reflectivity indicates heavy precipitation of approximately 51 mm per hour (50 dBZ). A magenta return on the scale of reflectivity indicates extremely heavy precipitation of approximately 410 mm per hour (65 dBZ).

Weather radar colour composite products integrate several individual radar images into a single product. This has the advantage of reducing issues such as radar signal attenuation and masking by virtue of having adjacent radar sites observe precipitation areas from different directions.

Pilots who are not experienced with interpreting weather radar products should always consult weather briefers when using such products for flight planning.

Satellite Imagery

Satellite images are taken from either geostationary or polar orbiting weather satellites. Two of the most common types of satellite imagery are visible and infrared, and both are available from the NavCanada Aviation Weather Web Site.

Geostationary satellites orbit the earth at an altitude of approximately 36,000 km over the equator. Their position does not change relative to a point on the surface of the earth. Polar orbiting satellites orbit the earth at an approximate altitude of 850 km, circling the earth 14 times per day.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

The complexities associated to interpreting satellite imagery is such that pilots should always consider consulting weather briefers when using satellite products for flight planning purposes.

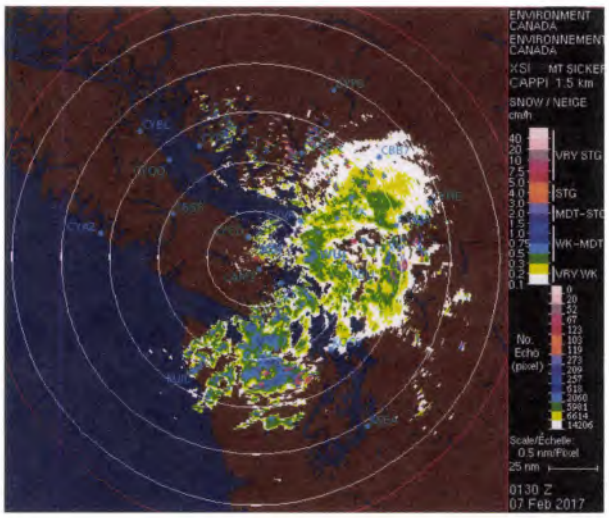


Fig.6.64 **Weather Radar Map Showing Intensity & Height**

Pilot Reports (PIREP)

Observations of actual conditions taken by pilots during flight, referred to as PIREPs, are also available on the communication circuits. They are reports of any unusual weather conditions encountered, such as unpredicted thunderstorms, tornadoes, hail, severe icing or turbulence, mountain waves, low ceilings or visibility. They are especially valuable as they provide up-to-date information that is not so promptly available from forecasts or ground reporting stations. They may also be the only information available for areas between reporting stations, especially mountain and large water areas where weather commonly develops.

Pilots are urged to provide PIREPs to any FIC or ATS facilities over normal en route navaid and voice frequencies. Such reporting should include cloud tops, upper cloud layers, cruising level wind velocities, and other meteorological information which may be significant for the safety and comfort of others flying. The information can be used by ECCC meteorologists to confirm or amend aviation weather forecasts.

PIREPs less than one hour old that contain information regarding conditions considered hazardous to other aircraft are broadcast immediately to aircraft in the affected area and will be included in subsequent scheduled weather broadcasts. PIREPs are also transmitted under the headings "**UACN10**" for normal PIREPs and "**UACN01**" or "**UUA**" for urgent PIREPs.

Controllers and flight service personnel are required to solicit PIREP when any of the following weather conditions are known to exist:

1. Ceilings below 2,000 feet
2. Visibility less than 3 statute miles
3. The presence of moderate or heavy precipitation
4. Turbulence, icing, thunderstorms
5. Winds in excess of 50 knots
6. When conditions differ substantially from those forecast

Controllers and flight service personnel are also required to obtain PIREP during the climb-out and approach phases of flight when less than VMC conditions exist.

PIREP should be passed directly to an FIC specialist via an en route frequency, if airborne, or via a toll-free or collect telephone call, after landing. In transmitting a PIREP, you should include time of observation, type of aircraft, altitude, position and meteorological conditions. PIREPs received by flight service personnel will be immediately disseminated on meteorological communications circuits and provided to other ATS units.

It is good practice to make a habit of filing pilot reports on weather conditions you encounter when flying cross-country. Report good weather as well as bad, especially if the conditions are better than forecast and/or are improving. That information may be very useful to a fellow pilot facing a "GO"/"NO GO" decision back at home base.

Clear air turbulence (CAT) PIREP provide the best information on this phenomenon and any pilot encountering CAT should report it to the radio facility with which he/she is in contact.

Wind shear PIREP are also valuable, since strong wind shear close to the ground is a hazard to aircraft during landing and take-off. Since few instruments are available to detect and measure this phenomenon, any pilot encountering it should report it immediately. Pilots using inertial navigation systems (INS) should report the wind and altitude both above and below the wind shear layer. Pilots without this equipment should report loss or gain of airspeed and the altitude at which it was encountered and the general effect on the aircraft of the wind shear encounter.

Airframe icing should also be reported. Since the accumulation of ice on an aeroplane can be hazardous, knowledge of the existence of icing conditions will assist other pilots to avoid them. Icing conditions are reported as to intensity (trace, light, moderate or severe) and as to type (rime or clear).

Volcanic ash is potentially dangerous to aircraft and any encounter with it should be reported immediately. Pilot reports on this phenomenon can provide valuable information on the spread of volcanic ash from an eruption. Volcanic ash can rise rapidly to altitudes above 60,000 feet and exist in hazardous concentrations up to 1,000 nautical miles from the source. Volcanic ash is not detectable on radar.

Weather reporting resulting from PIREPs may appear as shown in the example below.

For Example:

UACN10 CYXU 032133

YZ UA /OV YXU 090010 /TM 2120 / FL080 /TP PA31 /SK 020BKN040 110OVC /TA -12 /WV 030045 /TB MOD BLO 040 /IC LGT RIME 020-040 /RM NIL TURB CYYZ-CYHM

Decoded, the above reads:

UACN10: (Message Type). Regular PIREP. Urgent PIREP are encoded as UACN01.

CYXU: (Issuing Office). London flight information centre (FIC).

032133: (Date/Time of Issue). PIREP was issued by the FIC on the 3rd day of the month, at 2133Z.

YZ: (Flight Information Region – FIR). Toronto FIR. If the PIREP extends into an adjacent FIR, both FIRs will be indicated.

UA /OV YXU 090010: (Location). London VOR 090° radial, 10 NM. PIREP location will be reported with the reference to a NAVAID, airport or geographic co-ordinates (latitude/longitude).

/TM 2120: (Time of PIREP). PIREP reported by pilot at 2120Z.

/FL080: (Altitude). 8,000 ft ASL. Altitude may also be reported as "DURD" (during descent), "DURC" (during climb), or "UNKN" (unknown).

/TP PA31: (Aircraft Type). Piper Navajo (PA31).

/SK 020BKN040 110OVC: (Sky Cover). First layer of cloud based at 2,000 ft with tops at 4,000 ft ASL. Second layer of cloud based at 11,000 ft ASL.

/TA -12: (Air Temperature). Oustide air temperature -12°C.

/WV 030045: (Wind Velocity). Wind direction 030° true, wind speed 45 kts. Wind direction reported by pilots in degrees magnetic will subsequently be converted to degrees true for inclusion in PIREP.

/TB MOD BLO 040: (Turbulence). Moderate turbulence below 4,000 ft ASL.

/IC LGT RIME 020-040: (Icing). Light rime icing (in cloud) between 2,000 ft ASL and 4,000 ft ASL.

/RM NIL TURB CYYZ-CYHM: (Remarks). No turbulence encountered between Toronto and Hamilton.

In PIREP, cloud heights are always given as a height above sea level (ASL).

SIGMET

SIGMETs are significant meteorological information advisories issued by a meteorological watch office (MWO) to advise pilots of the occurrence, or expected occurrence, of specific weather phenomena which may be hazardous to the safety of aircraft operations.

SIGMETs advise of the following phenomena:

1. Frequent thunderstorms (FRQ TS), frequent thunderstorms with hail (FRQ TSGR), frequent thunderstorms with hail and possible tornado/waterspout (FRQ TSGR POSS +FC), frequent thunderstorms with hail and tornado/waterspout (FRQ TSGR +FC), squall line (SQLN TS), squall line with hail (SQLN TSGR), squall line with possible tornado/waterspout (SQLN TSGR POSS +FC), squall line with tornado/waterspout (SQNL TSGR +FC)
2. Severe turbulence (SEV TURB)
3. Severe icing (SEV ICE)
4. Severe icing due to freezing rain (SEV ICE [FZRA])
5. Severe mountain wave (SEV MTW)
6. Low-level wind shear (L LVL WS)
7. Heavy dust storm (HVY DS)
8. Heavy sandstorm (HVY SS)
9. Radioactive cloud (RDOACT CLD)
10. Volcanic ash (VA)
11. Tropical cyclone (TC)

Severe (SEV) turbulence (TURB) refers only to low-level associated with strong surface winds, to rotor streaming, and/or to turbulence whether in cloud or not in cloud near jet streams.

Thunderstorms (TS) imply severe icing and turbulence; therefore, separate SIGMET for these phenomena are not issued in connection with the convective clouds.

SIGMET will only be issued for one of these criteria at any time. If more than one criterion occurs, then more than one SIGMET will be issued.

Frequent (FRQ) coverage indicates an area of thunderstorms within which there is little or no separation between adjacent thunderstorms and with a maximum spatial coverage greater than 50% of the area affected or forecast to be affected by the phenomenon, at a fixed time or during the period of validity.

The period of validity of a SIGMET is 4 hours. It may be issued up to 4 hours prior to the commencement of the phenomenon. In the case of SIGMETs for volcanic ash and tropical storms, the validity period is for 6 hours, and they may be issued up to 12 hours before either phenomenon enters the affected region.

In the case of a SIGMET issued for an expected forecast phenomenon, the beginning of the validity period will be the time of the expected commencement of the phenomenon. The location of the phenomenon is depicted as an area using coordinate points. The description always begins with the abbreviation for "within" (WI), and the area can be described as a circle, a line or a polygon. Distances are in nautical miles, and direction is to one of the eight points of the compass (i.e., N, NE, E, SE, S, SW, W, NW).

AIRMET

AIRMETs are airmen's meteorological information advisories issued by a meteorological watch office (MWO) intended for aircraft in flight. An AIRMET notifies pilots of potentially hazardous weather conditions that are occurring or are expected to occur, and that are not described in the Graphic Area Forecast and do not require issuance of a SIGMET.

AIRMETs advise of the following phenomena:

1. Mean surface wind speed (SFC WSPD) above 30 knots
2. Surface visibility (SFC VIS) and or cloud of less than 3 statue miles, and/or broken cloud (BKN CLD) or overcast cloud (OVC CLD) conditions below 1,000 feet AGL over a widespread area
3. Thunderstorms (TS) and/or towering cumulus (TCU) that are either isolated (ISOL) or occasional (OCNL) or frequent (FRQ) and where there may be the presence of hail (GR)
4. Moderate turbulence (MOD TURB) except for turbulence in convective clouds
5. Moderate icing (MOD ICE) except for icing in convective clouds
6. Moderate mountain wave (MOD MTW)

An isolated (ISOL) phenomenon consists of individual features which affect, or are forecast to affect, an area with a maximum spatial coverage of 25% or less of the area concerned, at a fixed time or during the period of validity.

An occasional (OCNL) phenomenon consists of well separated features which affect, or are forecast to affect, an area with a maximum spatial coverage of 26% to 50% of the area concerned, at a fixed time or during the period of validity.

Frequent (FRQ) coverage indicates an area of towering cumulus (TCU) within which there is little or no separation between adjacent clouds and with a maximum spatial coverage greater than 50% of the area affected, or forecast to be affected, by the phenomenon at a fixed time or during the period of validity.

An AIRMET will be issued for only one of the criteria described above at any time. If more than one criterion occurs, then more than one AIRMET will be issued.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

The period of validity of an AIRMET is 4 hours and it may be issued up to 4 hours prior to the start of the validity period (i.e., the expected time of the occurrence of the phenomenon). In the case of an AIRMET issued for an expected forecast event, the beginning of the validity period will be the time of the expected commencement of the forecast phenomenon.

Like SIGMETs, the location of the phenomenon is depicted as an area using coordinate points. The description always begins with "within" (WI), and the area can be described as a circle, a line or a polygon. Distances are in nautical miles, and direction is indicated to one of the eight points of the compass.

Runway Condition Reports

The Pilot's Operating Handbooks for all aeroplanes specify performance data relating to landing distance, crosswind limitations, etc. These figures presuppose bare, dry runways. Any contaminant, such as water, snow or ice will degrade braking capability on landing, substantially increase the landing roll, and make directional control difficult if a crosswind is also involved. Where runway conditions can affect the performance of an aircraft, it is important to have some source of information for runway conditions.

Contaminated runways are also of concern to the aircraft that is taking off. If the runway is wet or icy, traction will be reduced. The accelerate-stop distance or the required take-off distance could exceed the available runway length. Studies have shown that the accelerate-stop distance is increased by approximately 15% on wet runways, 50% on snow, 75% on water deeper than 3 mm and 100% on ice covered runways. Take-off distance is increased 10% when 15 mm of loose snow or 8 mm of slush covers the runway.

Runways in Canada, as well as some in the northern parts of the United States are, on average, wet or contaminated one third of the time during the five coldest months of the year. Runway surface condition (RSC) reports are, therefore, issued to advise pilots of surface contamination. Included in an RSC report is information on the braking action that is derived from a decelerometer.

A decelerometer is an instrument which measures the decelerating forces acting on the test vehicle (on which it is installed) when the brakes are applied. The resulting figures are compiled in an index and are referred to, in Canada, as the Canadian Runway Friction Index (CRFI).

When available, index readings are included as part of the runway surface condition report. These reports are transmitted on the communication circuits as a special type of NOTAM known as an RSC NOTAM. (See NOTAM, in Chapter **Radio Communications**.) They are available from air traffic services (ATS), from flight information centres (FIC), and via NavCanada's Collaborative Flight Planning Service (CFPS) tool.

RSC NOTAM incorporate standardized safety information from the Global Reporting Format (GRF) developed by the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO). The reports provide runway surface information describing the runway condition. The decelerometer index describes braking action quantitatively.

The RSC NOTAM format can break up certain runways into thirds rather than report conditions as an average across a runway's full length. Segmenting the runway in this way, where applicable, offers enhanced situational awareness for pilots. If, for example, the touchdown zone of a runway has ice, but the far end of the runway has slush, the RSC NOTAM advises pilots accordingly of these differing conditions over the full runway length. It should be noted that a maximum of two surface descriptions can be reported in RSC NOTAM, either per runway third or for the full runway length. If more than two runway surface descriptors are present on a runway third, the two most prevalent or severe conditions are reported.

Runways that are reported in thirds include a Runway Condition Code (RWYCC). This is a single-digit value that reports the slipperiness of a runway third based on a standardized assessment matrix. Actual values reported may not correlate to what is seen in the matrix given that the RWYCC can be downgraded (or upgraded as circumstances warrant) by aerodrome operators based on their observations. RWYCC values range from 0 to 6, with 0 representing the most slippery conditions and 6 representing a dry runway.

If the percent coverage on a runway third is less than or equal to 25%, the conditions are reported and a RWYCC of 6 is assigned. If the percent coverage on a runway third exceeds 25%, the RWYCC is based on the runway surface description with the higher coverage or the more slippery condition, as circumstances warrant. The final RWYCC is then confirmed, upgraded or downgraded based on other information, including from CRFI measurements, braking action reports, and directional control observations.

While some aerodromes will report runways in thirds (and include RWYCCs), others will not. At those aerodromes that include RWYCCs, this functionality may not be leveraged for all of the aerodrome's runways. While all aerodromes use the RSC NOTAM format, the reporting of runway conditions by runway thirds or by full runway length is determined by aerodrome operators who base their considerations on the types of aircraft using the aerodrome. In general, pilots can expect longer runways to be reported in thirds and shorter runways to be reported by full runway length.

If an aerodrome has multiple runways, all runways are reported in a single RSC NOTAM. If multiple runways are reported, they are reported in the order of ascending pairs.

Runway surface condition descriptions are reported with the associated percentage of coverage and, when applicable, the associated depth in inches. The table below identifies RSC descriptors used in RSC NOTAM reports.

RSC Descriptors		
Compacted Snow	Ice	Wet
Dry	Slippery When Wet	Wet Ice
Dry Snow	Slush	Wet Snow
Dry Snow on Top of Compacted Snow	Slush on Top of Ice	Wet Snow on Top of Compacted Snow
Dry Snow on Top of Ice	Standing Water	Wet Snow on Top of Ice
Frost	Water on Top of Compacted Snow	

Fig.6.65 **RSC Descriptors Used in RSC NOTAM**

All NOTAM follow an international ICAO format consisting of a number of fields that are either compulsory or optional depending on their relevance. The validity period of a NOTAM is a maximum of either 8 hours or 24 hours depending on the reporting method and classification of the aerodrome (subject to the published aerodrome operating hours).

With reference to the RSC NOTAM example shown below, Item A) of the NOTAM is the location indicator of the affected aerodrome. Item B) of the NOTAM will indicate the beginning of the NOTAM duration period and Item C) will indicate the end of the NOTAM duration period. If there are significant changes a new NOTAM will be issued.

As multiple runways are reported in a single RSC NOTAM, it is possible that the NOTAM will be disseminated in multi-parts. Item E) of an RSC NOTAM contains three sections:

1. RSC information
2. CRFI information
3. Remarks

Note that all runways at an aerodrome that have winter maintenance are reported in both the RSC and CRFI sections.

The RSC section of the RSC NOTAM contains the following information:

1. RSC header, which includes the runway (RWY) identifier: RWY in use designator, when reporting by thirds (e.g., RSC 33), or full RWY designator when reporting by full runway length (e.g., RSC 07/25)
2. Runway condition code (RWYCC) for each runway third (only if reporting is by thirds)
3. Up to two runway surface descriptions, including percent coverage and, if applicable, the associated depth (per third if reporting by thirds, per runway if reporting by full runway length)
4. Cleared runway width (if reduced)
5. Snow drifts, windrows, and/or snowbanks on the runway (where applicable)
6. Other localized conditions (where applicable)
7. Any treatments applied to the runway (where applicable)
8. Conditions for the remaining width of the runway (where applicable)
9. Snowbanks adjacent to the runway (as applicable)
10. RWY remarks including if the RWYCC was upgraded or downgraded (where applicable)
11. The RSC validity time.

The validity period of the RSC report is in the format MMM DD HHMM – MMM DD HHMM. This is provided as multiple runways are presented in a single report with each runway potentially having a different validity period.

Following the runway surface condition reports in an RSC NOTAM is a section for CRFI readings. Like RWYCCs, some CRFI readings of runways will be reported in thirds and others will report the average along the full length. However, it should be noted that CRFI reporting requirements are independent and unrelated to runway surface condition reporting.

Note that the CRFI section will always appear in the RSC NOTAM regardless of whether an observation was taken or not. In cases where a CRFI observation is not available, the term "NR" for "Not Reported" will be stated.

The CRFI index readings are on a scale from 0 (non-existent braking) to 1 (excellent braking). Low numbers, such as 0.2, 0.3, represent low braking coefficients. Numbers such as 0.7 and 0.8 indicate braking coefficients expected on dry runways.

Concluding the RSC NOTAM are three separate remarks sections for taxiway conditions, apron conditions and general remarks.

The following example is that of a complete RSC NOTAM.

(S1017/20 NOTAMN

Q) CZZZ/QFAXX/IV/NBO/A/000/999/4519N07543W005

A) CYKF B) 2102121450 C) 2102122250

E) RSC 03/21 60 PCT 1/4IN DRY SNOW. 70FT WIDTH. REMAINING WIDTH 1/4IN DRY SNOW ON TOP OF COMPACTED SNOW. VALID FEB 12 1345 – FEB 12 2145.

RSC 05 3/5/3 30 PCT 1/8IN DRY SNOW, 50 PCT 1/8IN SLUSH, 40 PCT 1/8IN DRY SNOW. 175FT WIDTH. CHEMICALLY TREATED AT HHMM. REMAINING WIDTH 1/4IN DRY SNOW ON TOP OF COMPACTED SNOW. RWYCC DOWNGRADED, RWY MARKINGS OBSCURED. VALID FEB 12 1445 – FEB 12 2245.

RSC 23 3/5/3 40 PCT 1/8IN DRY SNOW, 50 PCT 1/8IN SLUSH, 30 PCT 1/8IN DRY SNOW. 175FT WIDTH. CHEMICALLY TREATED AT HHMM. REMAINING WIDTH 1/4IN DRY SNOW ON TOP OF COMPACTED SNOW. RWYCC DOWNGRADED, RWY MARKINGS OBSCURED. VALID FEB 12 1445 – FEB 12 2245.

RSC 15 5/5/5 30 PCT 1/8IN DRY SNOW, 30 PCT 1/8IN DRY SNOW, 30 PCT 1/8IN DRY SNOW. 190FT WIDTH. CHEMICALLY TREATED AT HHMM. REMAINING WIDTH 1/4IN DRY SNOW ON TOP OF COMPACTED SNOW. VALID FEB 12 1245 – FEB 12 2045.

RSC 33 5/5/5 30 PCT 1/8IN DRY SNOW, 30 PCT 1/8IN DRY SNOW, 30 PCT 1/8IN DRY SNOW. 190FT WIDTH. CHEMICALLY TREATED AT HHMM. REMAINING WIDTH 1/4IN DRY SNOW ON TOP OF COMPACTED SNOW. VALID FEB 12 1245 – FEB 12 2045.

ADDN NON-GRF/TALPA INFO:
CRFI 03/21 -8C .30 OBS AT 2102121345.
CRFI 05 -8C .32/NR/.30 OBS AT 2102121445.
CRFI 23 -8C .30/NR/.32 OBS AT 2102121445.
CRFI 15 -8C .39/.40/.40 OBS AT 2102121245.
CRFI 33 -8C .40/.40/.39 OBS AT 2102121245.

RMK: ALL TWY 1/8IN DRY SNOW, CHEMICALLY TREATED AT HHMM. TWY F, D BRAKING ACTION POOR.

RMK: ALL APN 1/8IN DRY SNOW, CHEMICALLY TREATED AT HHMM, BRAKING ACTION POOR.

RMK: CLEARING/SWEEPING IN PROGRESS.

The above is a new NOTAM issued, in this example, for the Region of Waterloo International Airport (CYKF). The start time for the NOTAM is February 12, 2021 at 14:50 hrs UTC. It is valid until February 12, 2021 at 22:50hrs UTC.

If Runway 03 is in use (reported by full runway length), ATS phraseology for the above RSC NOTAM example is as follows:

ATS: Runway Surface Condition, Runway Zero-Three Two-One, Six-Zero Percent One-Quarter Inch Dry Snow, Seven-Zero Foot Width, Remaining Width One-Quarter Inch Dry Snow on Top of Compacted Snow, at One-Three-Four-Five.

Friction Index Runway Zero-Three Two-One, Temperature Minus Eight, Was Decimal Three-Zero at One-Three-Four-Five.

If Runway 05 is in use (reported by thirds), ATS phraseology for the above RSC NOTAM example is as follows:

ATS: Runway Surface Condition, Runway Zero-Five, Condition Code Three-Five-Three, Three-Zero Percent One-Eighth Inch Dry Snow, Five-Zero Percent One-Eighth Inch Slush, Four-Zero Percent One-Eighth Inch Dry Snow, One-Seven-Five Foot Width, Chemically Treated at One-Four-Two-Zero, Remaining Width One-Quarter Inch Dry Snow on Top of Compacted

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Snow, Runway Condition Code Downgraded, Runway Markings Obscured, at One-Four-Four-Five.

Friction Index Runway Zero-Five, Temperature Minus Eight, Was Decimal Three-Two, Not Reported, Decimal Three-Zero, at One-Four-Four Five.

The terminology used in an automatic terminal information service (ATIS) message for RSC will be the same as the phraseology seen above. In an ATIS message, the RSC information will appear after stating the landing/departing runway.

6.14.4 Aviation Weather Forecasts

A weather forecast is a statement of **anticipated** conditions expected at a particular place, over an area, or along a route during a given period, based on available information. The forecaster will usually state the degree of confidence with which the forecast is made.

In planning a flight, the pilot must have reasonable knowledge of the following facts:

1. Whether the ceiling and visibility at destination (or at alternate landing places) will be sufficiently good to make a safe landing. If the flight is to be made by visual contact, the ceilings and visibilities must be VFR along the entire route.
2. The wind conditions at various flight levels to estimate the time and fuel required, and to choose a route and altitude to fly that will give the most favourable winds.
3. At what levels to expect icing conditions and how to avoid severe icing zones.
4. Where thunderstorms, turbulence or hail may be encountered to delay the start of the flight or land en route to avoid dangerous weather in the air.

Since the weather is constantly changing, the conditions shown in a weather report may change during a flight and a forecast of the changes must be obtained before departure.

The following code identifies the various types of forecasts:

Code	Forecast Type
TAF	Aerodrome Forecast
GFA	Graphic Area Forecast
FD	Winds and Temperatures Aloft Forecast
WA	AIRMET Message
WS	SIGMET Message

Fig.6.66 **Forecast Codes**

Graphic Area Forecast (GFA)

The graphic area forecast (GFA) is designed to be a more intuitive product than its alphanumeric counterpart, thus making it easier for pilots, weather briefers and dispatchers to use. Consisting of a series of temporally adjusted weather charts, each panel that makes up the GFA describes graphically the most probable meteorological conditions expected to occur between the surface and FL240 over a given area at a specified time.

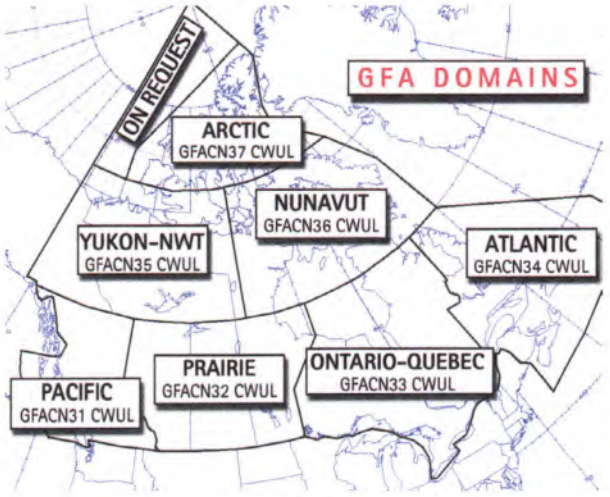


Fig.6.67 **GFA Domain**

Produced four times daily at a half-hour prior to the beginning of the forecast period, the GFA is issued at approximately 2330, 0530, 1130 and 1730 UTC valid for 0000, 0600, 1200 and 1800 UTC respectively. National coverage is ensured by dividing the country into seven distinct areas (called domains) each of which has a corresponding GFA product. Fig.6.67 shows the area coverage and designation of each of the seven GFA domains covering Canadian airspace.

Each GFA consists of two distinct types of charts: one chart depicts clouds and weather while the second chart depicts icing, freezing level and turbulence for the same corresponding time and area. Each pair of GFA charts shows the meteorological conditions for one of three different time periods: a short-range forecast, a 6-hour forecast, and a 12-hour forecast. There are, therefore, six charts issued for each GFA collection: three each for clouds and weather and three each for icing, freezing level and turbulence. The 12-hour forecast chart also includes a textual IFR outlook for a further 12-hour period. AIRMET and SIGMET are used to amend the area forecast and such amended versions are identified chronologically by the correction code CCA, CCB, or CCC, etc., in the title box. Pilots can obtain the GFA from flight service stations designated to provide weather briefings or through access to the Nav Canada website.

GFA speeds are expressed in knots and heights in hundreds of feet ASL; for instance, 2 means 200 feet, 45 means 4,500 feet. Heights above ground are indicated by the abbreviation AGL, ABV GRND, or CIG. Horizontal visibility is expressed in statute miles and times are in universal co-ordinated time (UTC). A nautical mile scale bar appears in the corresponding legend box to facilitate determining distances on the chart. Symbols used in the GFA are consistent with those found on similar meteorological products and only standard abbreviations are used.

When the GFA is used for times between the chart valid periods, those using the charts must move the synoptic features and interpolate their position for intermediate times. Therefore, estimated positions should be used to determine the future position of associated organized weather systems. Each 5 kt of motion indicates a change in position of 30 n.m. over 6 hours. The scale in the GFA legend can be used as a tool to interpolate these advancing weather system positions. Since each GFA panel is a snapshot of a specific future time, they do not highlight temporal changes unless specifically

stated in the GFA. The existence of convective clouds, morning fog and other daily weather phenomena often change over the course of the day, if not over the course of a few hours. It is important, then, for pilots to check the latest weather observations which may indicate if weather phenomena are moving faster or slower than expected. Verify if any special comments appear in the GFA; and check for any AIRMET that may have amended the GFA. To use the GFA effectively, it is always best to consult a weather briefing specialist.

ELEMENTS OF A GFA CHART

A GFA chart is divided into the following four parts: a title box, a legend box, a comments box, and the weather information section. The title box includes the chart name, issuing office four-letter identifier, the date/time of issue, the name of the GFA region, the chart type and the valid date/period of the chart. This title box is found in the upper right corner of the GFA.

The legend box describes symbols which may be used in the chart and includes a scale bar for determining distances on the chart.

The comments box provides information that forecasters deem important; for example, formation or dissipation of fog, increasing or decreasing visibility, etc. It is used to describe elements that are difficult to render pictorially or that would otherwise clutter the chart. Standard phrases such as HGTS ASL UNLESS NOTED and TCU, ACC AND CB IMPLY SIG TURBC AND ICE. CB IMPLIES LLWS are also included in the comments box. The 12-hour IFR outlook is included in the comments box of the 12-hour clouds and weather depiction chart.

WEATHER INFORMATION SECTION: CLOUDS & WEATHER

The clouds and weather chart (Fig.6.68) provides a forecast of cloud layers and/or surface-based phenomena, visibility, weather and obstructions to vision at the valid time of that particular chart. In addition, the chart includes a forecast of relevant synoptic features that are responsible for the depicted weather with an indication of their speed and direction of motion at the valid time. Isobars, are shown at 4 mb intervals.

When the speed of movement is forecast to be 5 knots or more, the motion of synoptic features is shown by an arrow and a speed value. For speeds less than 5 knots, the letters QS are used meaning "quasi-stationary".

The bases and tops of organized areas of broken or overcast cloud between the surface and FL240 are shown by enclosing the area with a scalloped, cloud-like, border. When convective clouds are forecast, the tops are indicated even if they extend beyond 24,000 feet. Cirrus clouds are not depicted in the GFA. In areas where organized clouds are not forecast and the visibility is expected to be greater than 6 statute miles, a scalloped border is not used. Significant cloud layers are based on the amount at each level, not on the summation amount, and cloud types are stated if forecast to be present.

Surface-based layers are described in plain English. The abbreviation OBSCD (obscured) is used to describe surface-based layers. The vertical visibility into surface-based layers is measured in hundreds of feet. Forecast visibility is measured in statute miles and is indicated as P6SM when expected to be greater than 6 statute miles. Forecast weather is included immediately after the visibility. Obstructions to vision are indicated only when visibility is forecast to be less than 6 statute miles, as in 2-4SM -RA BR. A solid line encloses areas of continuous precipitation while dashed lines enclose areas of intermittent showery precipitation.

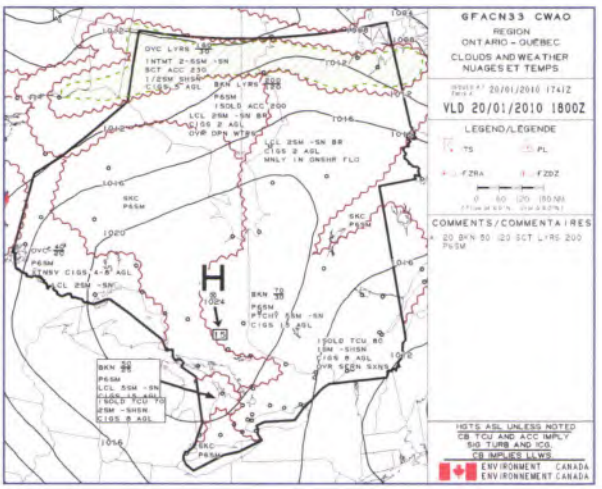


Fig.6.68 **GFA Clouds & Weather Chart**

Isobars are only shown on the clouds and weather chart. Surface winds, with a sustained speed of at least 20 knots, are indicated by wind barbs with an associated speed value. Wind gusts are indicated by the letter "G".

The IFR outlook indicates main areas where IFR weather is expected, the cause for the IFR weather and any associated weather hazards.

WEATHER INFORMATION SECTION: ICING, TURBULENCE & FREEZING LEVEL

The icing, turbulence and freezing level chart (Fig.6.69) depicts forecasted areas of icing and turbulence as well as the expected freezing level for a specific time. The type, intensity, base and top is included for each icing and turbulence area. Surface synoptic features such as fronts and pressure centers are also shown. This chart is used in conjunction with the associated clouds and weather chart issued for the same valid period.

Icing is depicted whenever moderate or severe icing is forecast for the coverage area. Areas of light icing are described in the comments box and the bases and tops of each icing layer, measured in hundreds of feet MSL, as well as the type of icing (RIME, MXD, or CLR) are indicated. Icing that is expected to be present for only part of the forecast period covered by the chart is shown with its expected time of occurrence.

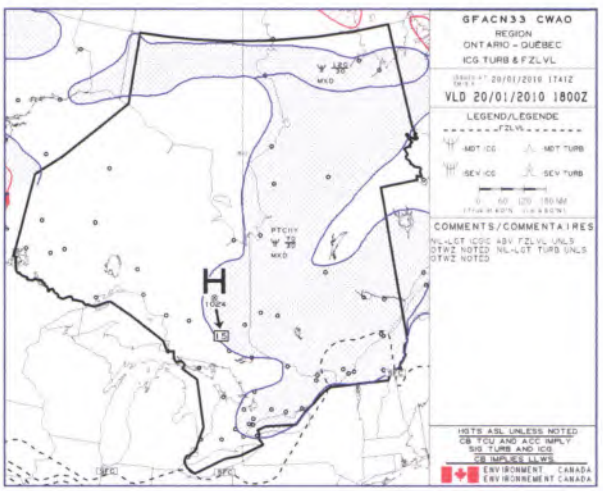


Fig.6.69 **GFA Icing, Turbulence, Freezing Level Chart**

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Light, moderate and severe turbulence are depicted when forecast for the coverage area with layer bases and tops indicated in hundreds of feet MSL. Turbulence due to gusty surface winds, low level wind shear, lee waves, or low level jets are shown with the indicating cause in abbreviations such as MECH, LLWS, LEE, WV, LLJ or CAT.

Freezing level contours are indicated on the chart by dashed lines. The height of the freezing level is measured above MSL and the contour lines for the freezing level are at 2,500 foot intervals starting at the surface. The comments box is used to explain modifications to the freezing level.

Aerodrome Forecast (TAF)

An aerodrome forecast, known by the international meteorological code TAF, states in specific terms the expected weather conditions that will affect landing and take-off at the aerodrome. Wind, low level wind shear, prevailing visibility, significant weather and sky condition are given for an area within 5 nautical miles of the aerodrome. Aerodrome forecasts are issued only for those aerodromes for which routine hourly and special reports are available.

Aerodrome forecasts are transmitted on the Environment Canada telecommunications network and on the ADIS circuit (automated data interchange system) as soon as possible but not later than 20 minutes prior to their period of coverage. They are issued at least four times daily at 0440, 1040, 1640 and 2240 UTC. The normal validity period is 24 hours, beginning at 0500Z, 1100Z, 1700Z and 2300Z. A 30-hour TAF is issued for designated ICAO destination and alternate aerodromes. An aerodrome forecast is valid from the time of issue until it is amended or until the next scheduled TAF is issued. When a new TAF is issued, it automatically cancels the previous one.

Aerodrome forecasts shall always contain, as a minimum, information about the following elements: wind, visibility, weather and cloud. They are transmitted in the following format:

REPORT NAME

The code name TAF may be followed by the letters AMD to indicate an amended or corrected forecast.

LOCATION IDENTIFIER — DATE & TIME — PERIOD OF COVERAGE — AUTOMATIC STATION INDICATOR

The four letter ICAO station identifier (as in METAR) is followed by the seven digit group that indicates the date and time of origin of the forecast. Following that is an eight digit group that indicates the period of coverage of the forecast. This period is normally 24 hours, except in the case of amended TAFs. The word AUTO is included if the forecast is based on observations from an automatic weather station (AWOS).

Therefore, **CYUL 090440Z 0905/1005 AUTO** indicates an aerodrome forecast for Montreal issued on the 9th day of the month at 0440 UTC. It is valid from 0500 UTC on the 9th to 0500 UTC on the 10th. The forecast is based on observations from an automatic weather station.

WIND

The forecast wind is encoded as in a METAR report giving direction in degrees true and speed in knots with an indication of gust activity. The code VRB is used when the wind speed is 3 knots or less but may be used for higher speeds when it is impossible to forecast a single direction (as, for example, when a thunderstorm passes). A calm wind is coded as 00000KT.

Therefore, **35020G45KT** indicates that the wind direction is forecast to be from 350° true at 20 knots, gusting to 45 knots.

LOW LEVEL WIND SHEAR

When strong, non-convective, low level wind shear is forecast to occur over the aerodrome, this optional group will be used. The coded grouping begins with the letters WS followed by a 3 digit grouping indicating the height in hundreds of feet AGL of the shear zone. A slash followed by a 5 digit group indicates the wind speed and direction of the shear zone.

Therefore, **WS 015/20015KT** indicates that wind shear is forecast at 1,500 feet AGL over the aerodrome. The wind is from 200° true at 15 knots.

PREVAILING VISIBILITY

The prevailing visibility is encoded as in a METAR report, except that visibility greater than 6 statute miles will be indicated by the code P6SM.

Therefore, **3/4SM** indicates that the visibility is forecast to be 3/4 statute mile.

SIGNIFICANT FORECAST WEATHER

Significant forecast weather is encoded with the same codes as used for weather phenomena in METAR reports. Intensity and proximity qualifiers, descriptors, precipitation and obscuration are included as required. The abbreviation NSW, for no significant weather, may be used.

The codes TEMPO (for temporary fluctuation) or BECMG (for becoming) are used to forecast the end of significant weather. In this case, the code NSW (no significant weather) is included.

The code TEMPO or BECMG is also used to forecast a significant change in weather or visibility. In this case, all weather and visibility groups are repeated, including those which are unchanged.

If a different weather condition is not indicated after TEMPO or BECMG, then the previously given condition continues to apply.

Therefore, **-RA BR TEMPO RA BR** indicates a forecast of light rain and mist and a temporary fluctuation that will bring moderate rain and mist.

3SM -DZ BR BECMG 1SM -DZ BR indicates a forecast visibility of 3 statute miles in light drizzle and mist, becoming visibility of 1 statute mile in light drizzle and mist.

24015KT 4SM BLSN BECMG 30015KT indicates a forecast wind from 240°T at 15 knots, visibility of 4 statute miles in blowing snow, becoming wind from 300°T at 15 knots (visibility of 4 statute miles in blowing snow continues to apply).

SKY CONDITION

Sky condition is encoded as in a METAR report, using the symbols SKC, FEW, BKN, OVC or VV. Forecast cloud type is not identified except in the case of CB layers. The letters CB then follow the coded height. The specific height of cirriform cloud is given in TAF forecasts.

When TEMPO or BECMG is used to forecast that clouds and/or obscuration are no longer expected, SKC (sky clear) will be indicated.

When TEMPO or BECMG is used to forecast a significant change in sky condition, all layers will be repeated including those which are unchanged.

Therefore, **SCT008 BKN015CB BKN250** indicates scattered cloud at 800 feet, broken cumulonimbus at 1,500 feet, broken cloud at 25,000 feet.

SCT100 BECMG SKC indicates scattered cloud at 10,000 feet becoming sky clear.

PROBABILITY & TIME OF OCCURRENCE

In order to indicate the probability of changing conditions that would constitute a hazard to aviation, the indicator PROB is included with digits indicating the percentage of probability and the probable time period in UTC.

Therefore, **PROB 30 0920/0923 1/2SM +TSRAGR** indicates a 30% probability between 2000 and 2300 UTC on the 9th day of the month of visibility of 1/2 statute mile and thunderstorms, heavy rain and hail.

FORECAST CHANGE & TIME

When a permanent change is forecast to occur rapidly, a part-period forecast comes into effect at the time of the change. It is indicated by the letters FM and it supersedes all prior conditions.

Therefore, **24010KT P6SM SKC FM 091640 27015KT P6SM SKC** indicates that the wind is forecast to be from 240° true at 10 knots, visibility greater than 6 statute miles and sky clear. After 1640 UTC on the 9th day of the month, the wind is forecast to change to 270° true at 15 knots. Visibility will continue to be greater than 6 statute miles and the sky will be clear.

A temporary fluctuation of some weather element is indicated by the code TEMPO and an eight digit group indicating the time of the specified period of fluctuation. The changing conditions are indicated.

Therefore, **09004KT 1 1/2SM BR VV004 TEMPO 0912/0915 3/4SM BR VV001** indicates a forecast wind from 090° true at 4 knots, visibility of 1 1/2 statute miles, mist (sky obscured), vertical visibility of 400 feet. A temporary fluctuation is forecast for between 1200 and 1500 UTC on the 9th day of the month, of visibility of 3/4 statute mile, mist (sky obscured) and vertical visibility of 100 feet.

A permanent change in some of the forecasted weather elements is indicated by the code BECMG with a time indication.

Therefore, **FM 1200Z VRB02KT 2SM BR SKC BECMG 0913/0915 P6SM SCT020** indicates that from 1200 UTC the wind direction is forecast to be variable at 2 knots, visibility will be 2 statute miles in mist, sky will be clear. Between 1300 and 1500 UTC on the 9th day of the month, conditions are forecast to become visibility greater than 6 statute miles with scattered cloud at 2,000 feet.

For Example:

TAF CYOG 011640Z 0117/0217 28015KT P6SM -SNRA FEW015 OVC040 TEMPO 0117/0123 2SM -SNRA BR OVC015 FM012300 28015KT P6SM BKN030 BKN250 TEMPO 0123/0203 -SHRA FM021000 30015KT P6SM SKC.

Decoded, the above reads:

Aerodrome forecast for Windsor issued on the 1st day of the month at 1640Z and valid from 1700Z (on the 1st) to 1700Z (on the 2nd).

Wind 280° true at 15 knots, visibility greater than 6 statute miles, light snow and rain, few clouds at 1,500 feet, overcast at 4,000 feet.

A temporary fluctuation between 1700Z and 2300Z will bring visibility of 2 statute miles, light snow and rain, mist, overcast at 1,500 feet.

From 2300Z, the wind will be from 280° true at 15 knots, visibility greater than 6 statute miles, broken sky cover at 3,000 feet, broken at 25,000 feet.

A temporary fluctuation between 2300Z and 0300Z will bring light rainshowers.

From 1000Z, the wind will be from 300° true at 15 knots, visibility greater than 6 statute miles, sky clear.

Upper Level Wind & Temperature Forecast (FD)

An upper level wind and temperature forecast provides an estimate of upper wind conditions and temperatures at selected levels. Wind direction is given in degrees true to the nearest 10° and wind speeds in knots. Data for the production of FDs is derived from a variety of atmospheric data sources taken at 32 sites twice daily at 0000Z and 1200Z. This data is used to issue periodic forecasts during the 24 hour period. The time of issue and the validity period is indicated in the body of the forecast.

Some lower level groups are omitted. No winds are forecast within 1,500 feet of the station elevation and no temperatures are forecast for the 3,000 foot level or for a level within 1,500 feet of the station elevation.

For Example:

FDCN01 CWAO 171530Z

BASED ON 1200Z

DATA VALID 171800Z FOR USE 1500-2100Z

	3000	6000	9000	12000	18000
YVR	2021	2425-07	2430-10	2434-18	2542-26
YYF	2523	2432-04	2338-08	2342-13	2448-24
YXC	—	2431-02	2330-06	2344-11	2352-22
YYC	—	2426-03	2435-06	2430-12	2342-22
YQL	—	2527-01	2437-05	2442-10	2450-21

Fig.6.70 **Upper Winds & Temperature Forecasts**

Decoded, the above reads:

Winds and temperature forecast, issued by the Montreal Meteorological Centre at 1530Z on the 17th day of the month.

Based on data fed into the computer at 1200Z. Forecast is valid for 1800Z on the 17th day of the month and for use for 3 hours either side of 1800Z, i.e. from 1500Z to 2100Z.

Vancouver: (YVR): At 3,000 feet, wind from 200° at 21 knots. At 6,000 feet, wind from 240° at 25 knots and temperature -7°C. At 9,000 feet, wind from 240° at 30 knots and temperature -10°C. At 12,000 feet, winds from 240° at 34 knots and temperature -18°C. At 18,000 feet, winds from 250° at 42 knots and temperature -26°C.

For Example:

FDCN1 KWBC 081750Z

DATA BASED ON 081200Z

VALID 090000Z FOR USE 1800Z-0300Z TEMPS NEG ABV 24000

	24000	30000	34000	39000
YVR	2973-24	293040	283450	273763
YYF	3031-24	314041	304551	304763
YQL	2955-28	306845	307455	791159

Fig.6.71 **Upper Winds & Temperature Forecasts**

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Decoded, the example reads:

Winds and temperature forecast, issued by the U.S. Meteorological Service in Washington at 1750Z on the 8th day of the month.

Based on data fed into the computer at 1200Z on the 8th. The forecast is valid for use from 1800Z on the 8th to 0300Z on the 9th. Temperatures above 24,000 feet should be read as negative values.

YQL: At 24,000 feet, the wind is from 290° at 55 knots and the temperature is -28°C. At 30,000 feet, wind from 300° at 68 knots and temperature -45°C. At 34,000 feet, wind from 300° at 74 knots and temperature -55°C. At 39,000 feet, wind from 290° at 111 knots and temperature -59°C.

When the wind speed is greater than 100 knots (100 to 199 knots), 50 is added to the direction code and 100 is subtracted from the speed code. Therefore, in the YQL forecast for 39,000 feet, subtract 50 from 79 to determine that the wind direction is from 290° and add 100 to 11 to determine that the wind speed is 111 knots.

If the windspeed is forecast to be 200 knots or more, the wind speed is coded as 99 (199 knots). Thus, 7799 is decoded as the wind from 270° at 199 knots or greater.

The code 9900 is used to indicate light and variable winds or wind speeds of less than 5 knots.

Winds aloft are given for a number of representative levels from 3,000 feet ASL to 53,000 feet ASL. Winds at heights not reported can be obtained by interpolation.

For Example:

> What is the wind at Penticton (YYF) at 8,000 feet?
>
> The wind at 6,000 feet is from 240° at 32 knots.
>
> The wind at 9,000 feet is from 230° at 38 knots.
>
> Hence, the wind is backing approximately 3° per 1,000 feet. At 8,000 feet, it would be from approximately 233°.
>
> The velocity of the wind is increasing 2 knots per 1,000 feet. At 8,000 feet, it would be blowing at approximately 36 knots.

The same kind of interpolation can be made for the temperature.

6.14.5 Weather Information Sources

Information about prevailing weather conditions and forecasts of expected weather developments is available in Canada from Environment Canada, NavCanada, flight service stations, flight information centres, and weather stations. In the U.S., the same type of information is available from the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, airport flight service stations and city weather bureau offices.

Trained weather experts will discuss your proposed flight and will review with you the latest weather maps, aviation weather reports at your point of departure and destination and for points along your intended route, area and aerodrome forecasts, radar precipitation patterns, sigmet, PIREP, etc. If you are not familiar with the format of the coded reports, they will explain them to you in plain language and will advise you as regards the existing and anticipated weather conditions along your route. This service is known as a weather briefing.

When requesting weather information either in person or by telephone, always identify yourself as a pilot and give your pilot licence number. Indicate the type of aircraft, its registration, the type of flight plan (VFR or IFR), your intended route, altitude, destination, departure time and time of return. When filing VFR, advise if you are equipped and prepared for IFR flight. This information helps the flight service or weather station personnel to select the information that is pertinent to your needs.

Tell the briefer to speak slowly as you are going to copy everything he/she says. Special weather briefing forms are available on which to notate this information so that it is available to you later for reference.

Your chance of totally understanding a weather briefing and coming away from it with a clear three dimensional picture of what is happening in the skies over your area of the country is greatly enhanced if you do some preparation before contacting anyone in the weather service. Make a habit of watching the TV weather channels. Then check the weather information in the local paper and on the Internet. By getting as much information as possible from the publicly available weather services, you will know quite a bit about the day's weather before you even approach the weather briefer.

Pilot Briefing Service (PBS)

The pilot briefing service is a fully interpretive weather briefing service which is available at all FIC. Access is also available by calling 1-866-WX-BRIEF or via a local telephone number. Calls to 1-866-WX-BRIEF are routed to the FIC that serves the area from which the call originates.

Weather briefers are authorized to provide an interpretation and adaptation of meteorological information to fit the changing weather situation and the special needs of the service user. They consult and advise on special weather problems and, on request, will provide flight documentation for long range flights.

To tailor the briefing to a pilot's planned flight, the flight service specialist requires information from the pilot as stated earlier in this section: i.e., type of flight (VFR or IFR), type of aircraft, departure aerodrome, estimated time of departure, destination aerodrome, estimated time of arrival, planned cruising levels or altitudes, route to be flown, planned intermediate stops, and alternate aerodromes. The flight service specialist will conclude the briefing by soliciting flight plan information from the pilot.

Weather from Air Traffic Service (ATS)

On initial contact with ATS, or as soon as practicable afterwards, all aerodromes with operational ATS will provide the current wind and altimeter information to pilots unless it is known that the pilot already has this information. ATS procedures require that wind information be transmitted with landing and take-off clearance only when the wind speed is 15 kt or greater. Wind velocity (direction and speed) data is typically updated every five seconds using a running 2-minute average. Variations to the wind speed (gusts) and/or wind direction are based on wind data from the previous 10 minutes.

At aerodromes with an operational ATIS (see below), the full details of the most recent METAR or SPECI will be included in the recorded ATIS message. Occasionally, such as during rapidly changing weather conditions, this information will be provided directly by ATS. Where ATIS is not operational, updated information about current weather elements from METAR/SPECI is available on request.

Weather from Automatic Terminal Information Service (ATIS)

As described in the Chapter **Aerodromes & Airspace** as well as within the Chapter **Radio**, automatic terminal information service (ATIS) is a continuous broadcast of recorded aeronautical information that is available at busier airports. Among the information that these broadcasts provide to pilots is current weather information. This automatically broadcast, and regularly updated weather information consists of wind direction and velocity, visibility, obstructions to vision, sky condition, temperature, dew point, altimeter setting and, if necessary, density altitude. Recorded observations may also include remarks regarding lightning and clouds of vertical development.

Environment Canada Bulletin Board Service

Environment Canada offers a package of aviation weather products on their bulletin board service at their weather.gc.ca website. The products provided by the site predict the evolution of weather elements that can affect aircraft in flight, particularly with respect to turbulence and icing, as well as hazards associated to volcanic ash suspended in the atmosphere. The site also offers radar and satellite imagery, as well as a link to the NavCanada Aviation Weather Web Site, (see section **Internet** below), which offers highly thorough weather reporting.

Internet

A number of websites on the Internet provide access to current aviation weather information, including weather chart displays with graphics and text. Most are updated every hour or more frequently when significant weather conditions could affect aviation. Area and aerodrome forecasts, significant weather advisories and surface weather observations are included.

Canada's air navigation system provider, NavCanada, carries in-depth weather information through its Aviation Weather Web Site (AWWS) service available through its website at www.flightplanning.navcanada.ca. The AWWS provides access to the following:

1. Coded and plain language surface weather observations (METAR and SPECI)
2. Aerodrome forecasts (TAF)
3. Pilot weather reports (PIREP)
4. Route specific alphanumeric information
5. Weather charts
6. Satellite and composite radar imagery
7. Plotted wind and temperature charts
8. NOTAM
9. Weather cameras
10. Live runway visual range (RVR)
11. Supplemental and reference information

When flying in the U.S., the National Weather Service in the U.S. offers thorough weather information through its website at www.nws.noaa.gov.

Private, non-governmental service providers are also a source for aviation weather information. Subscription-based providers such as Sirius XM offer solutions that bring real-time weather information into the cockpit. These weather services typically include, amongst other extensive information: weather radar, forecast winds, cloud and echo tops, METARs and TAFs, graphical turbulence guidance, winds aloft, and freezing level. Pilots should note, however, that although the information is delivered in real-time, there remains an inevitable delay in the time that it takes for the weather information to reach the cockpit. Pilots should, thus, be aware that weather information reaching the cockpit could be upwards of 10 minutes old, if not more.

CAVOK

In air-to-ground communications when transmitting meteorological information to arriving aircraft, the term CAVOK (kav-oh-kay) derived from the words "ceiling and visibility OK", is used to indicate the weather condition in which there is no cloud below 5,000 feet, or below the highest minimum sector altitude, whichever is higher, in which there is no cumulonimbus, no precipitation or thunderstorm activity, fog or drifting snow and in which the visibility is 6 statute miles or more. The term is also used in ATIS messages. It is not used in aviation weather reports or forecasts.

6.14.6 "Weather Sense"

The pilot gets information about the weather along his/her intended route from the aviation weather reports, from the area and aerodrome forecasts and from a study of the weather map. One of the most important attributes that a good pilot possesses is the ability to use this information to form in his/her own mind a three dimensional picture not only of the current weather but also of how that weather may develop and change, deteriorate or improve during his/her flight.

A pilot needs to understand when and how a particular weather condition could develop to become hazardous and to plan ahead on alternative action. It is, therefore, always advisable to look at a weather map with a view to looking for weather, wind circulation, ceilings and visibility not only along the route but also to either side of the route to be flown in order to know which way to turn in case the weather "closes in" at your terminal. Always have an "out" in case things turn bad.

This is a skill acquired through knowledge and experience and one which is invaluable to adopting a true defensive attitude towards weather.

Weather is constantly in a state of change. Weather systems travel across the country, sometimes quite rapidly, sometimes intensifying as they move. Local geographical conditions cause local peculiarities in the weather over a particular area that can develop very suddenly.

Sometimes in a matter of minutes the weather at a particular landing strip may change from clear to below VFR. Often aerodromes within a few miles of each other have drastically different conditions of visibility and ceiling.

Some weather conditions are invisible and therefore are encountered without warning. Windshifts, severe vertical currents and turbulence are hazards that occur in clear air.

A defensive attitude towards weather is therefore an important concept for a pilot to cultivate. It is founded in a thorough understanding of how, when and why weather phenomena develop and what sequence of events and combinations of circumstances can change good weather into bad. It is strengthened by a resolve never to take off on a flight without

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

obtaining a thorough weather briefing and to keep a constant check on the weather by means of radio during a flight.

It is an ability to read weather signs, to recognize situations in which, for example, turbulence may be present and to be prepared to avoid or compensate for them. It is an ability to recognize little signs that give warning of a developing situation that could affect the safe outcome of a flight, smoke trails, for example, or ripples on water, etc., that indicate wind direction and turbulence that might be encountered during landing. It involves alertness in noticing and recognizing a deteriorating weather situation, such as loss of visual reference in worsening visibility and to turn back out of it before you get boxed in with no room to maneuver.

Above all, it involves the wisdom to cancel a planned flight or to turn back when deteriorating conditions present a situation with which you cannot cope. It is knowing and respecting your own limitations.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

4 Navigation & Communications

navigation/ *n.* **1** the act or process of navigating. **2** any of several methods of determining or planning a ship's or aircraft's position and course by geometry, astronomy, radio signals, etc.

communication/ *n.* **1 a** the act of communicating, esp. imparting news. **b** an instance of this. **c** the information etc. communicated. **2** a means of connecting different places. **3** routine exchange of information. **4 a** the science and practice of transmitting information esp. by electronic or mechanical means. **b** a field of study encompassing writing and broadcasting skills as they apply to media and business. **c** the function of communicating information to the public by a company, organization etc.

Overview of Part 4

7 Air Navigation

7.1 Latitude & Longitude 195
7.1.1 Geographical Co-ordinates 195
7.1.2 Time & Longitude 196
7.1.3 Great Circles & Rhumb Lines 197
7.1.4 Headings & Bearings 197

7.2 The Earth's Magnetism 197
7.2.1 Variation 198
7.2.2 The Magnetic Compass 199
7.2.3 Dry Vertical Card Compass 202
7.2.4 Finding the Sun's True Bearing 202

7.3 Units of Distance & Speed 203
7.3.1 Conversions 203

7.4 Aeronautical Charts 203
7.4.1 The Lambert Conformal Conic Projection 204
7.4.2 The Mercator Projection 204
7.4.3 Types of Aeronautical Charts 205
7.4.4 Plotting Instruments 210
7.4.5 Preparing the Chart for a Flight 211
7.4.6 Ten Degree Drift Lines 212
7.4.7 "Two-Point" Method of Flying a Visual Range 213
7.4.8 Return to Point of Departure 213
7.4.9 Groundspeed Check 214
7.4.10 The "One-in-Sixty" Rule 214
7.4.11 The Pilot Navigator 214

7.5 Navigation Problems 214
7.5.1 Navigation Terms 214
7.5.2 The Composition of Velocities 215
7.5.3 The Flight Computer: Wind Side 216
7.5.4 Solving Problems with the Wind & Drift Computer 216
7.5.5 The Flight Computer: Circular Slide Rule Side 218
7.5.6 Solving Problems with the Circular Slide Rule 218
7.5.7 Solving Navigation Problems 220
7.5.8 Electronic Flight Calculator 225

8 Radio Communication

8.1 Radio Theory & Principals 227
8.1.1 Wavelength & Frequency 227
8.1.2 Radio Bands 227
8.1.3 Single & Double Channel Communication 230
8.1.4 Characteristics of Radio Signals 230
8.1.5 Data Link Communications 231

8.2 Radio Communication Equipment 231
8.2.1 The VHF Transceiver 232
8.2.2 The HF Transceiver 232
8.2.3 Care of Aeroplane Radio 232

8.3 Radio Communication & Air Traffic Services (ATS) 233
8.3.1 Air Traffic Control (ATC) Services 233
8.3.2 Flight Advisory Services 235
8.3.3 NOTAM 237
8.3.4 Information Supplements & Circulars 238

8.4 Radio Communication Procedures 239
8.4.1 Phraseology 239
8.4.2 Priority of Communication 242
8.4.3 Good Radio Technique 242
8.4.4 Communication Checks 243
8.4.5 Electronic Interference to Navigation & Communication Systems 243
8.4.6 Radiotelephone Procedures in Communication with Ground Stations 243

9 Radio Navigation

9.1 VHF Omnirange Navigation System (VOR) 251
9.1.1 Victor Airways 252
9.1.2 Advantages of VOR Navigation 252
9.1.3 Disadvantages of VOR Navigation 252
9.1.4 The VOR Station 253
9.1.5 VOR Navigation Equipment 253
9.1.6 VOR Receiver Checks 254
9.1.7 VOR Navigation 254
9.1.8 TACAN (Tactical Air Navigation) 256
9.1.9 VORTAC 256
9.1.10 Horizontal Situation Indicator (HSI) 257

9.2 Radio Beacons 258
9.2.1 Non-Directional Beacons (NDB) 258
9.2.2 Fan Marker Beacons 258
9.2.3 Marine Beacons 258

9.3 Automatic Direction Finder (ADF) 258
9.3.1 ADF Navigation Equipment 259
9.3.2 ADF Navigation 260
9.3.3 ADF System Inaccuracies 262
9.3.4 Radio Magnetic Indicator (RMI) 263

9.4 Distance Measuring Equipment (DME) 263

9.5 Instrument Landing System (ILS) 265
9.5.1 ILS Categories 266
9.5.2 Localizer Approach 266

9.6 Area Navigation 266
9.6.1 Area Navigation (RNAV) 266
9.6.2 Inertial Navigation System (INS) 267
9.6.3 Global Navigation Satellite Systems (GNSS) 267

9.7 Radar & Surveillance Systems 269
9.7.1 Primary Surveillance Radar (PSR) 270
9.7.2 Secondary Surveillance Radar (SSR) 271
9.7.3 Automatic Dependent Surveillance (ADS) 273
9.7.4 Airborne Collision Avoidance System (ACAS) 273

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

7 Air Navigation

The earth on which we live is a ball, or sphere, technically an oblate spheroid. Not knowing any better, the human race has for centuries lived on the outside of the sphere, enduring heat and cold, clouds and rain, snow and sleet, fog, mist and mortal uncertainty. In due course, cities of the future may be located underground in a world of perfectly regulated conditions of heat, light and fresh air. Or, they'll be found in orbit, and in and amongst the stars. Meanwhile, we are here today and gone tomorrow and must make the best of our cabbage-patch world, such as it is.

Man is a restless soul; travel and curiosity have always been two of his most cultivated and persevering habits. To make it possible to move about on this great terrestrial sphere, he must have some master plan to enable him to define position, direction and distance.

There are several methods of navigation used by pilots to find their way from place to place on this earth of ours.

Pilotage is navigation by reference only to landmarks.

Dead reckoning is navigation by use of predetermined vectors of wind and true airspeed and precalculated heading, groundspeed and estimated time of arrival.

Radio navigation is navigation by use of radio aids, that is, navigation signals broadcast by radio stations on the ground or from satellites.

Inertial navigation is navigation by self-contained airborne gyroscopic equipment or electronic computers that provide a continuous display of position.

Satellite navigation is navigation by use of positioning and guidance systems using transmiters and receivers that provide pinpoint positioning accuracy via orbiting satellites.

Most pilots use these various methods of navigation in combination. The use of pilotage by itself is limited by visibility (you have to be able to see the landmarks) and by familiarity with the area over which the flight is being conducted. Therefore, pilotage in combination with dead reckoning is a more effective method of navigation and is the subject of this chapter. Radio navigation and inertial navigation are discussed in a later chapter.

Also in a later chapter is a description of GPS, and of how the GPS system provides electronic navigation to pilots. Almost all aircraft today are equipped with some form of GPS navigation device. These devices calculate location, and feed that information into multi-input navigational computers for autopilot, course information and display, and course tracking and recording. Notwithstanding their now ubiquitous use, pilots should have a fundamental knowledge of basic navigation to use in combination with their chosen GPS cockpit navigation devices.

7.1 Latitude & Longitude

As a well-planned modern city is an orderly gridwork of intersecting streets and avenues, so ancient master minds have divided the surface of our sphere into a geometrical pattern of intersecting circles called the graticule. Those running north and south are meridians of longitude. Those running east and west are parallels of latitude. In exactly the same way that Scud Runner's Cafe may be located at the corner of 49th Street and 11th Avenue, so the town of Riverton may be located at the intersection of the 75th meridian west and the 40th parallel north.

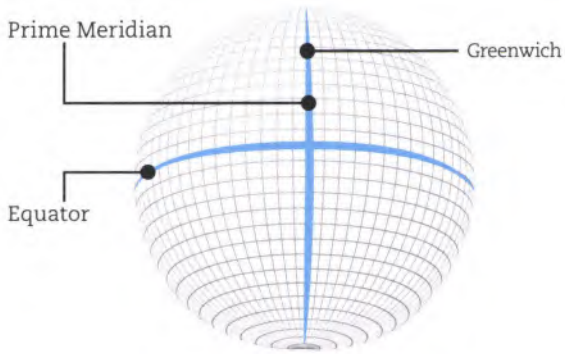


Fig.7.1 **Latitude & Longitude**

Meridians of longitude are semi great circles joining the true or geographic poles of the earth. They are also called true meridians since they join the geographic poles, as opposed to magnetic meridians which join the magnetic poles.

Longitude is measured from 0° to 180° east and west of the prime meridian which is the meridian which passes through Greenwich, England. The prime meridian is numbered 0°. The meridian on the opposite side of the earth to the prime meridian is the 180th and is called the international date line for here the time changes a day.

Longitude is measured in degrees (°), minutes (') and seconds ("). There are 60 minutes in a degree and 60 seconds in a minute.

Parallels of latitude are circles on the earth's surface whose planes lie parallel to the equator. The equator is a great circle on the surface of the earth lying equidistant from the poles.

Latitude is measured from 0° to 90° north or south of the equator, which is numbered 0°. Latitude is expressed in degrees (°), minutes (') and seconds (").

7.1.1 Geographical Co-Ordinates

The location of cities, towns, airports, etc. may be designated by their geographical co-ordinates, that is, the intersection of the lines of latitude and longitude marking their position on a map.

Fig.7.2 **Geographical Co-ordinates**

In Fig.7.2, the co-ordinates of the airport at Matagami are 49°46'N, 77°48'W. In other words, the airport is located 49 degrees, 46 minutes north of the equator and 77 degrees 48 minutes west of the prime meridian.

On a chart, the lines representing the meridians and parallels are numbered (in Fig.7.2, 78°00'W, 77°30'W and 50°N). Each small mark along the lines represents one minute.

One position on the earth's surface is related to another by the change of latitude (written Ch.Lat.) and the change of longitude (Ch.Long.) between the two places.

If an aeroplane is to proceed from a place, Dunnville, to a place, Harrisburg, the Ch.Lat. is named north or south according to whether Harrisburg is north or south of Dunnville. Similarly, the Ch.Long. is named east or west, depending on whether Harrisburg is east or west of Dunnville.

For Example:

Harrisburg	Lat. 60°27'N.	Long. 40°20'W.
Dunnville	Lat. 45°30'N.	Long. 15°30'E.
	Ch. Lat. 14°57'N.	Ch. Long. 55°50'W.

In the above example, Harrisburg is obviously north of Dunnville by 14°57' of latitude, hence its Ch.Lat. is 14°57'N. Harrisburg is west of Dunnville, but as Dunnville is east of the prime meridian, the Ch.Long. in this case is the sum of the longitude of the two places. Not that any community 15° east of the prime meridian is likely to have a name such as Dunnville, but the example is merely chosen to help you to get the general idea.

7.1.2 Time & Longitude

The earth rotates about its own axis. It also revolves in an elliptical orbit around the sun. As a result of these revolutions of the earth, it appears to us as though the sun were revolving around the earth instead.

The time between one apparent passage, or transit, of the sun over a meridian and the next passage over that same meridian is called an apparent solar day and varies throughout the year.

To provide a convenient method of measuring time, an imaginary sun called the mean sun, is assumed to travel at a uniform rate of speed throughout the year. The interval between two successive transits of the mean sun is called a mean solar day.

The mean solar day is divided into 24 equal hours. The mean sun is assumed to travel once around the earth every mean solar day, and therefore travels through an angle of 360° of longitude in that time. Hence, mean time may be expressed in terms of longitude, and vice versa.

For Example:

24 hrs. = 360° Long.	360° Long. = 24 hrs.
1 hr. = 15° Long.	1° Long. = 4 min.
1 min. = 15' Long.	1' Long. = 4 sec.
1 sec. = 15" Long.	1" Long. = 1/15 sec.

Time will vary on different meridians on the earth at any particular instant from 0 hours to 24 hours. The mean time on any particular meridian is called its local mean time (LMT).

In order to have a universal standard time for reference at any point on the earth, a mean value, based upon measurements of time in a number of places on the earth, has been established and is known as co-ordinated universal time (UTC). UTC is also referred to as Z time (Zulu time). (Co-ordinated universal time replaced Greenwich mean time (GMT) which was the universally accepted standard for the measurement of time until December 1985.)

UTC is the local mean time for the prime meridian.

The LMT of any place east of the prime meridian is **ahead** of UTC.

For Example: Cairo 1400 = UTC 12:00.

The LMT of any place west of the prime meridian is **behind** UTC.

For Example: UTC 1200 = Toronto 07:00.

If every place kept its own local mean time, confusion would result. For this reason the world is divided into 24 time zones (Fig.7.3). Each zone is 15° of longitude wide and keeps the time of the mid-meridian of the zone. The zones are numbered from 1 to 12 east of the prime meridian (minus) and 1 to 12 west of the prime meridian (plus). If either the zone number or the longitude of the mid-meridian of the zone is known, zone time can readily be converted to UTC (Fig.7.3). It will be seen that when it is noon at the prime meridian, it is midnight on the 180th meridian. Here the time changes a day. Travelling from east longitude to west longitude (i.e. from Tokyo to San Francisco), the time goes back a day (i.e. from Wednesday to Tuesday). Travelling from west longitude to east longitude (i.e. San Francisco to Toyko), time goes forward a day (i.e. from Tuesday to Wednesday).

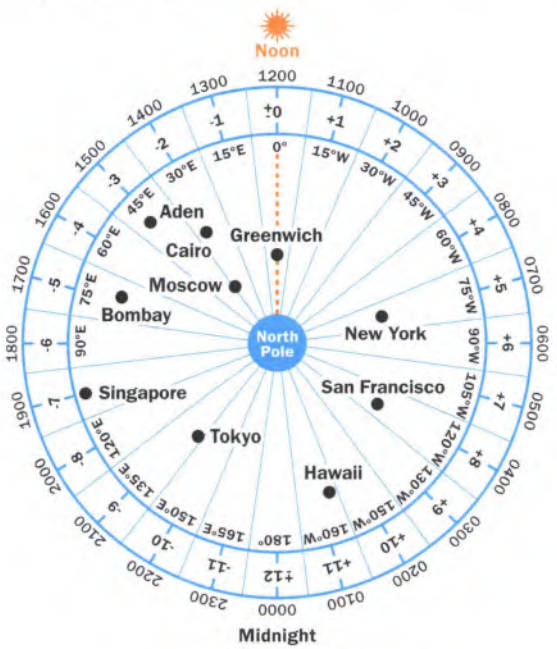


Fig.7.3 **Zone Time & Longitude**

Air traffic control and meteorological facilities in both Canada and the United States operate on UTC, or Z time, not local zone time. A pilot flying on a long cross-country flight would be wise to adjust his/her personal wrist watch (or aeroplane clock) to UTC and refer to it when radioing position reports. Such a precaution will eliminate any chance of error in reporting time since it is often most difficult to determine exactly when one zone (which, to add to the confusion, might be on local daylight saving time) ends and another begins. To be one hour in error when reporting to an air traffic control unit could have serious consequences.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

When travelling westward into a new time zone, watches are turned back one hour from the previous zone. When travelling eastward, watches are advanced one hour each time a new time zone is reached.

The relationship of UTC to standard zone time in North America is indicated below. Standard time is the result of synchronizing of clocks in different geographical locations within a time zone, and of setting those times in terms of offsets from UTC. Daylight saving time is the practice of advancing of clocks from Spring until Fall which results in a change in the offsets from UTC during those seasons.

12:00 (noon) UTC equals:	
08:30 NST	Newfoundland Standard Time (NST = UTC - 3.5 hours)
09:30 NDT	Newfoundland Daylight Time (NDT = UTC - 2.5 hours)
08:00 AST	Atlantic Standard Time (AST = UTC - 4 hours)
09:00 ADT	Atlantic Daylight Time (ADT = UTC - 3 hours)
07:00 EST	Eastern Standard Time (EST = UTC - 5 hours)
08:00 EDT	Eastern Daylight Time (EDT = UTC - 4 hours)
06:00 CST	Central Standard Time (CST = UTC - 6 hours)
07:00 CDT	Central Daylight Time (CDT = UTC - 5 hours)
05:00 MST	Mountain Standard Time (MST = UTC - 7 hours)
06:00 MDT	Mountain Daylight Time (MDT = UTC - 6 hours)
04:00 PST	Pacific Standard Time (PST = UTC - 8 hours)
05:00 PDT	Pacific Daylight Time (PDT = UTC - 7 hours)

Fig.7.4 **Time Zones**

The above abbreviations are frequently contracted to "Z" (Co-ordinated Universal Time), "A" (Atlantic Standard Time), "E" (Eastern Standard Time), etc.

7.1.3 Great Circles & Rhumb Lines

A great circle is a circle on the surface of a sphere whose plane passes through the centre of the sphere and which, therefore, cuts the sphere into two equal parts (Fig.7.5). Only one great circle may be drawn through two places on the surface of the sphere that are not diametrically opposite each other. The shortest distance between these two points (A and B in Fig.7.5) is the shorter arc of the great circle joining them.

The equator is a great circle. The meridians are only semi great circles since they do not completely encircle the earth but run only half way around it from pole to pole. With the exception of the equator, the parallels of latitude are not great circles as their planes do not pass through the centre of the earth.

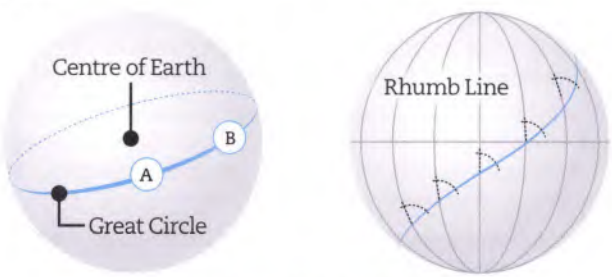


Fig.7.5 **Great Circles (Left) & Rhumb Lines (Right)**

Since a great circle route represents the shortest distance between two points on the surface of the earth, its advantage to the air navigator will be obvious. Most long-distance flights are flown over great circle routes or modified great circle routes.

A great circle, however, does not cross the meridians it meets at the same angle. For this reason, the heading must be changed at frequent intervals to enable the aeroplane to maintain a great circle route.

A rhumb line is a curved line on the surface of the earth, cutting all the meridians it meets at the same angle (Fig.7.5). All parallels of latitude are rhumb lines. The meridians and the equator are also rhumb lines while also being great circles. Any rhumb line that is not at the same time a parallel of latitude, will spiral into the poles (Fig.7.5).

When two places are not situated on the equator, or on the same meridian, the distance measured along the rhumb lines joining them will not be the shortest distance between them. However, the direction of the rhumb line is constant. A rhumb line route offers to the navigator, therefore, the advantage of following a constant heading.

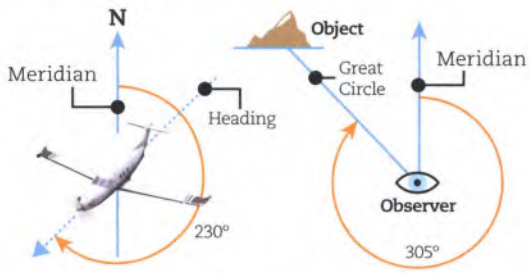


Fig.7.6 **Headings (Left) & Bearings (Right)**

7.1.4 Headings & Bearings

Direction is measured in degrees clockwise from north which is 0° (or 360°). East is 90°, south is 180° and west is 270°.

The direction of any point on the surface of the earth from an observer is known, if the angle at the observer between a meridian passing through the observer and a great circle joining the observer to the object is known. This angle is the azimuth or the bearing of the point. The angle is measured clockwise from the meridian through 360° (Fig.7.6).

The angle between the meridian over which an aeroplane is flying and the line representing the direction in which the aeroplane's nose is pointing (the fore and aft axis), measured clockwise, is the aeroplane's true heading (Fig.7.6).

Since the meridians are imaginary lines, the angle between a meridian and a particular heading or bearing cannot be measured directly. By the aid of a compass, however, the direction of the meridian may be determined and the angle ascertained.

7.2 The Earth's Magnetism

The earth is a magnet and like any other magnet has a north and south magnetic pole. Lines of magnetic force, which are generated by currents of molten iron flowing around a solid core deep within the earth, flow between these two poles creating a magnetic field that surrounds the earth. A compass needle will be influenced by the earth's magnetic field and will lie parallel to one of the magnetic lines of force with its north seeking pole pointing to magnetic north. (This does not necessarily mean that it is pointing directly towards the magnetic north pole.) The magnetic line in which the compass needle lies is called a magnetic meridian.

By referring to Fig.7.7, you will note that the earth's magnetic lines of force are horizontal at the equator, but become gradually vertical towards the poles. There are two forces acting

on a compass needle. One, the horizontal H force, acting horizontally, tends to hold the needle level (B). The other, the vertical Z force, acting vertically, tends to pull the seeking end of the needle down (A and C). A freely suspended magnet under the influence of a large directional (H) force and a small vertical (Z) force would lie parallel to the earth's surface. This occurs near the magnetic equator. As the magnet is moved north or south from the equator, H force decreases and Z force increases; the pole seeking end of the magnet would be pulled down from the horizontal. The angle between the horizontal and the plane the magnet lies in under the influence of Z force is called dip and from latitudes north or south of 45 degrees is quite large, increasing to near 90 degrees at the poles. Dip must be corrected or compensated for in a compass during construction (see **Magnetic Dip**).

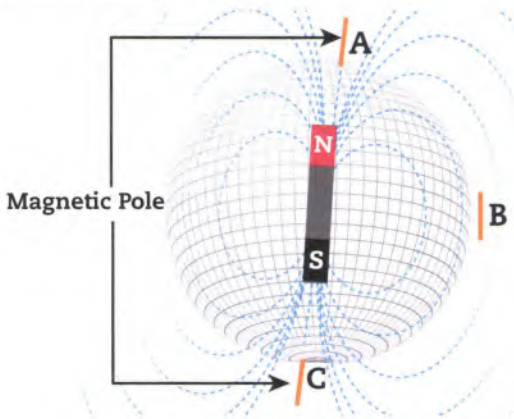


Fig.7.7 The Earth's Magnetism

7.2.1 Variation

The magnetic meridians do not coincide with the true meridians because the north magnetic pole does not coincide with the true, or geographic, pole. Averaged over thousands of years, the position of the north magnetic pole will roughly correspond with the position of the geographic pole, but, at any given time, the two poles can be very far apart. Most recently, the north magnetic pole was located at 81.3°N, 110.8°W, near Ellesmere Island in the Canadian Arctic, approximately 1,200 km south of the true north pole.

The angle between the true meridian and the magnetic meridian in which the compass needle lies is called magnetic variation (also known as magnetic declination).

Since the magnetic north pole is not stationary but moving in an erratic circle, the variation is not constant at any one place, but changes slowly from year to year. This is called annual change. Natural Resources Canada, about once per decade, re-plots the position of the north magnetic pole and updates its charts, repositioning magnetic meridians and assigning corrected magnetic variation where necessary.

Isogonic Lines

The direction of the earth's magnetic field is measured, periodically, over most of the earth's surface. The results of such a survey are plotted on a chart. Lines are drawn on the chart joining places having the same variation and these lines are called isogonic lines or isogonals. Isogonals are not straight lines but bend and twist due to the influence on the magnetic field of local magnetic bodies below the earth's surface.

The isogonals are numbered east and west according to whether the compass variation is to the east or west of true north.

Isogonic lines are represented on aeronautical charts by dashed lines with the amount of variation indicated. In Fig.7.2, the 15°W isogonic line can be seen to pass near the Matagami Airport.

Agonic Lines

In each hemisphere there will be places where the north pole and north magnetic pole will be in transit, that is, where they will lie in the same straight line. These places will, therefore, have no magnetic variation. Lines drawn through places of no variation are called agonic lines. Like the isogonic lines, they twist and curve, due to the local attraction of magnetic bodies in the earth.

The agonic line for the Western Hemisphere passes just to the west of Thunder Bay, Ontario, and just to the west of Chicago, Illinois. East of this line the variation is westerly and west of it the variation is easterly.

The Effect of Variation

If the magnetic pole lies west of the true pole from a given point, the compass needle will point west of true north. Hence, the magnetic meridian will lie west of the true meridian.

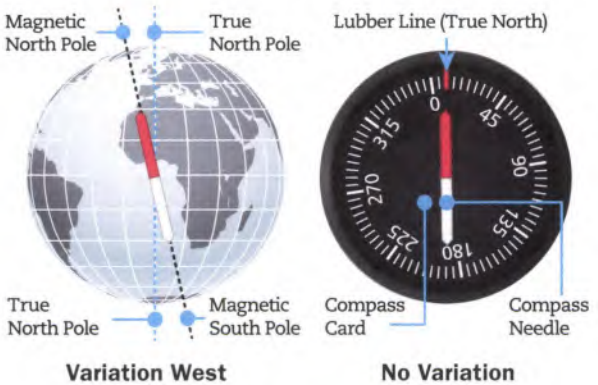


Fig.7.8 Variation Effect

In this case, the variation is named west (Fig.7.8).

Similarly, if the compass needle points east of true north, the magnetic meridian will lie east of the true meridian, and the variation will be named east.

Fig.7.9 is intended to represent a compass installed in an aeroplane whose nose is pointed towards true north.

The lubber line of a compass is always permanently fixed in the fore and aft line of the aeroplane and therefore always indicates the direction in which the aeroplane is heading. The compass card is always read against the lubber line.

The compass needle pivots and is free to point always towards magnetic north, regardless of what direction the aeroplane may be heading.

In Fig.7.8 (at right), there is no variation. The magnetic meridian, in which the compass needle lies, coincides with the true meridian in which the longitudinal axis of the aeroplane lies.

Fig.7.9 (at left) illustrates westerly variation. The compass needle is deflected 30° west of the true meridian. The compass card is always attached to the compass needle and, therefore, when the compass needle is deflected towards the

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

west, it drags the whole compass card around with it. As a result, the reading at the lubber line is more than it should be. Although the aeroplane is actually pointed towards true north, the compass reads 30°.

Fig.7.9 **Variation Examples**

Fig.7.9 (at right) illustrates easterly variation. When the needle is deflected east of the true meridian, the compass card is rotated so that a smaller reading is opposite the lubber line. Although the aeroplane is in fact pointed towards true north, the compass reads 320°.

CONVERSION OF TRUE & MAGNETIC HEADINGS

It is necessary for a pilot to be able to convert true headings and bearings to magnetic headings and bearings, and vice versa, rapidly in the air.

To convert Magnetic to True:
Subtract . . . . . Westerly Variation
Add . . . . . Easterly Variation

To convert True to Magnetic:
Subtract . . . . . Easterly Variation
Add . . . . . Westerly Variation

An easy way to remember how to apply variation is to remember the rhyme:

Variation West, Magnetic Best
(Better than True)
Variation East, Magnetic Least
(Less than True)

Example 1. To convert a magnetic bearing of 80° to a true bearing when the variation is 13°W.

Magnetic Bearing . . . . . 80°
Variation. . . . . 13° W
Hence, True Bearing . . . . . 67°

Example 2. To convert a true heading of 136° to a magnetic heading when the variation is 8°E.

True Heading. . . . . 136°
Variation. . . . . 8° E
Hence, Magnetic Heading. . . . . 128°

7.2.2 The Magnetic Compass

In some general aviation aeroplanes, the magnetic compass is the only direction finding instrument installed in the aeroplane. Even in aeroplanes that have more complicated direction finding devices, such as a heading indicator, these instruments must be set with reference to the magnetic compass.

A compass is a reliable, self-contained instrument that requires no external power source. It will continue to perform satisfactorily in a steady climb or glide, provided that neither is greater than 20°. In turns or rapid changes of speed, however, the compass will not give an accurate reading of direction. To use the instrument properly, a pilot must understand how a compass works and to what errors it is subject.

Fig.7.10 **Magnetic Compass**

Construction of the Magnetic Compass

The magnetic compass consists of north seeking magnets (usually two) attached to a float to which is also attached a compass card. This complete magnet system is mounted on a pivot and is free to rotate. The whole assembly is mounted within the compass bowl.

To damp out oscillations of the magnetic system which may be caused by turbulence, the bowl is filled with alcohol or white kerosene. This liquid also helps to reduce the weight of the compass card and the magnets that are carried by the pivot. The liquid also helps to lubricate the pivot point. An expansion chamber is provided to allow for expansion of the liquid due to temperature changes. The bowl and container are of brass, which is non-magnetic.

The compass card is usually graduated in 5° divisions (the compass headings). The last 0 is omitted from the numbers, which are shown as 3 for 30, 33 for 330, etc. The card is read through a window on which is painted a white vertical line (the lubber line).

As previously stated, the lubber line indicates the direction the aeroplane is headed and should be exactly in line with, or parallel to, the fore and aft (longitudinal) axis of the aeroplane.

Since the headings are painted on the reciprocal side of the card, which the pilot sees looking forward, the card appears to be going the wrong way when the aeroplane is turning.

The magnetic compass is affected by anything metal that is placed too near to it. Photographic exposure meters, screwdrivers and other tools, headsets, manuals bound with steel covers can affect the compass and cause distorted readings. For example, in one reported incident, an exposure meter lying within four inches of the compass caused a 23° error; in another incident, a pair of pliers lying six inches from the compass caused a 10° error.

Compass Errors

DEVIATION

When magnets mounted in simple direct reading compasses are installed in aeroplanes, they usually do not point directly in the direction of magnetic north but, due to the influence of

magnetic fields associated with the metal in the aeroplane's frame and engine, are deflected slightly to what is called compass north.

The angle through which the compass needle is deflected from the magnetic meridian is called deviation.

Deviation is named east if the north seeking end of the needle is deflected to the east of magnetic north. It is named west if the needle is deflected west of magnetic north.

If deviation causes the compass needle to be deflected west of the magnetic meridian, the compass card will be dragged around counterclockwise and the reading opposite the lubber line will be more than it should be.

Similarly, if the compass needle is pulled over east of the magnetic meridian, the compass card will be rotated clockwise and the reading opposite the lubber line will be less than it should be.

To convert Compass to Magnetic:
Subtract . . . . . Westerly Deviation
Add . . . . . Easterly Deviation

To convert Magnetic to Compass:
Subtract . . . . . Easterly Deviation
Add . . . . . Westerly Deviation

An easy way to remember how to apply deviation is to remember the rhyme:

Deviation West, Compass Best
(Better than Magnetic)
Deviation East, Compass Least
(Less than Magnetic)

Example 1. To convert a magnetic heading of 270° to a compass heading when the deviation is 3° East.

Magnetic Heading . . . . . 270°
Deviation . . . . . 3° East
Hence, Compass Heading . . . . . 267°

Example 2. To convert a compass heading of 002° to a magnetic heading when the deviation is 4° West.

Compass Heading . . . . . 002°
Deviation . . . . . 4° West
Hence, Magnetic Heading . . . . . 358°

Because a compass can be affected by anything metal, it is essential that pilots avoid placing metallic objects near the compass during flight.

The effect of deviation is neutralized in aeroplanes as far as possible by a procedure called swinging the compass. The compass is fitted with corrector magnets, which are permanently installed and connected by gears. They are located in the top and bottom of the compass case and are adjusted by screws. As the compass is swung, the screws are adjusted to eliminate deviation. It is rarely possible to eliminate all the deviation. What remains after the compass has been swung is tabulated on a compass deviation card to enable the pilot to make allowance for it. A typical compass deviation card is illustrated in Fig.7.11.

The compass is swung on a compass swinging base located remote from any magnetic influences, such as metal hangars, gas pumps, etc. There should be no metal objects in the vicinity of the compass or on the person performing the swing. Magnetic bearings, every 30°, are laid out on the base. The aeroplane is lined up with each bearing and the compass heading compared with each in turn. The method of correcting deviation is detailed below. The compass should be swung with the engine running and all radio and electrical equipment functioning.

Deviation can also be determined by the use of a landing/master compass. As the aircraft is lined up on the various compass headings, the readings of the aircraft compass are compared to the readings of the landing compass to determine deviation.

The simplest method of swinging the compass is as follows:

1. **Place aeroplane on N**. Take out deviation.
2. **Place aeroplane on E**. Take out deviation.
3. **Place aeroplane on S**. Take out **half** the deviation.
4. **Place aeroplane on W**. Take out **half** the deviation.
5. Commencing with the corrected reading on W, place the aeroplane successively on magnetic headings every 30°; that is, W, 300°, 330°, N, 030°, 060°, E, 120°, 150°, S, 210°, 240°. Take compass readings on all 12 points. Enter the readings on the deviation card (Fig.7.11) which is then placed near the compass in the aeroplane. Enter details in the Aircraft Log.

FOR	N	030	060	E	120	150
STEER	003	031	061	090	122	147
FOR	S	210	240	W	300	330
STEER	179	209	241	270	298	334

Fig.7.11 **Compass Deviation Chart**

The deviation card illustrated reads: "For N Steer 003". This means that on a heading of north magnetic, the compass has a 3° deviation west (Deviation West, Compass Best). It is therefore necessary to steer 003° by the compass to make good a magnetic heading of north. And so on for the other points of the compass.

Some types of retractable landing gear will be found to be magnetized to such an extent that they will cause considerable deviation of the compass when retracted. In such cases, the compass must be swung in the air with the landing gear retracted.

This can be done by the following simple method:

1. Select a road or railroad on the map whose bearing is as nearly as possible magnetic north and south and another as nearly as possible magnetic east and west. Smooth air is essential, preferably with no wind.
2. Align the aeroplane heading on magnetic north by sighting up the north-south road or railroad.
3. Set the heading indicator.
4. Hold the heading constant by the heading indicator and correct the magnetic compass to match the heading on the heading indicator.
5. Repeat the process on east.

The heading indicator can now be used to align the aeroplane on the other headings and make the necessary corrections by the same method as that detailed above for swinging the compass on the ground.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

The heading indicator is subject to precession error. The aeroplane should not be flown more than 5 minutes without realigning the heading indicator on one of the roads selected.

If a driftmeter is available, the compass may be swung in the air with prevailing wind conditions. This and other methods which require the use of special navigation equipment are beyond the scope of this pilot-navigator text but may be found in the many handbooks which deal more extensively with navigation.

If roads or railroads are scarce in the area, the airport runways may be utilized. Airport runway bearings are numbered to the nearest 10° magnetic and accurate bearings to the nearest degree should be obtained.

The use of the omnirange to establish magnetic headings for compass swinging is not recommended. The needle is not sufficiently sensitive for this purpose, except when close in to the station. In addition, the VOR is subject to certain course errors.

MAGNETIC DIP

The earth's lines of force are horizontal at the equator but become vertical towards the poles. This causes the compass to tend to dip in higher latitudes. (See Fig.7.7.)

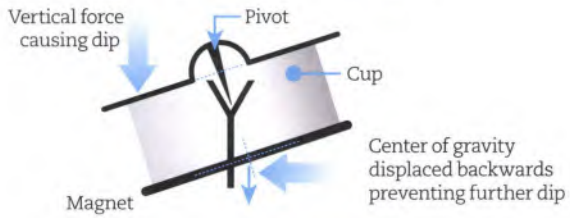


Fig.7.12 **Magnetic Dip**

To compensate for dip, the magnet system is (1) balanced pendulously on a pivot bearing with the centre of gravity of the system below or lower than the pivot point, or (2) the top part of the pivot is so constructed that the centre of buoyancy of the system is well above its centre of gravity, or (3) a combination of both methods. As one end of the magnet system begins to dip below the horizon, the C.G. is moved out of line with the pivot so that the weight of the system counteracts Z Force or, as one end of the magnet system tends to dip, the centre of buoyancy moves out of line with the pivot and C.G., counteracting Z Force. The resultant dip, in "normal" latitudes, is about 2 or 3 degrees (Fig.7.12). Note the relative positions of the pivot and centre of gravity and keep them in mind in the discussion of northerly turning error, acceleration and deceleration errors that follows.

NORTHERLY TURNING ERROR

When an aeroplane in flight executes a normal turn, it banks and the wing on the inside is lowest. The plane of gyration of the magnetic system of the compass tends to maintain a position parallel to the transverse plane of the aeroplane due to the fact that the centre of gravity of the magnetic system is placed below the point at which the system pivots. As a result of the turn, the forces acting on the magnet system undergo certain changes which have a marked effect upon the direction indicating properties of the compass and, under certain conditions, large apparent deviations will be observed.

When an aeroplane is in straight-and-level flight, H, the horizontal component of the earth's total force, is exerting its maximum influence while Z, the vertical component, is exerting a force in the vertical plane of the magnet system but can cause no deflection of the system. If the magnet system is tilted sideways through 90° (i.e. to the east or to the west), the system will take up a position under the combined influence of H and Z, parallel to the direction of the lines of force of the earth's magnetic field at the position. But if the system is now turned in azimuth until its normal axis of rotation is parallel to the meridian, H is no longer able to affect the magnet system, which will come entirely under the effect of Z, and will take up a vertical position, north-seeking end downwards in the Northern Hemisphere and upwards in the southern. Consequently, the north-seeking end of the magnet system will rotate towards the inside of the turn in the Northern Hemisphere (centripetal force which acts through the pivot towards the centre of the turn) and towards the outside in the southern (centrifugal force which acts through the centre of gravity towards the outside of the turn). This is the magnetic factor responsible for northerly turning error.

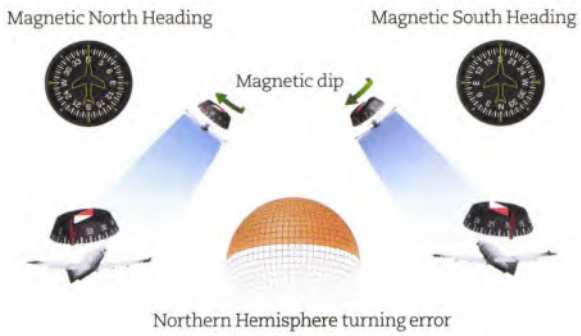


Fig.7.13 **Northerly Turning Error**

There is also a mechanical factor which has a slight effect on the compass during turns. When the aeroplane commences a turn, the liquid in the compass bowl tends to turn with the bowl. This liquid swirl drags the magnet system with it and causes a rotation of the system towards the centre of the turn.

The error is most apparent on headings of north and south. When making a turn from a heading of north, the compass may briefly give an indication of a turn in the opposite direction but it then corrects itself to turn with the aeroplane. It does, however, under register the turn (or lags). The compass is said to be "sluggish" in the northerly quadrant. When making a turn from south, it gives an indication of a turn in the correct direction but at a much faster rate than is actually occurring. It over registers (or leads). In the southern quadrant, the compass is said to be "lively". The error is less pronounced in turns from south than from north.

The effect of northerly turning error is greatest over the poles and gradually decreases towards the magnetic equator, where it is zero. The deflection of the compass is maximum on north and south headings and nil on east and west.

An understanding of the vagaries of the magnetic compass caused by northerly turning error has been of invaluable assistance to pilots who have experienced loss of gyros, or who are flying an aeroplane that is not equipped with gyros, at a time when they have to fly by reference to instruments. In fact, the method was first used by World War I pilots. The method is to establish a south heading. The compass on south is very sensitive and leads any turn. Therefore, if the compass indicates that the aeroplane is turning, control movements should be applied to return it to its original heading. The tilt of the compass card will indicate when one wing is down.

Accurate turns onto any heading are quite simple if use is made of a heading indicator. However, if there is no heading

indicator and turns must be made from north or south headings by reference to the magnetic compass, the following simple rules may prove helpful:

On turns from north, northerly turning error causes the compass to lag.
On turns from south, northerly turning error causes the compass to lead.

The greatest effect will be experienced when the turn commences near to the north and south headings and will be less noticeable when the commencement of the turn is nearer to east and west headings.

The fact should be realized that, often in a turn, an aeroplane may be subject to gust loads which will further aggravate the constant behaviour of a compass. Under certain conditions, an aeroplane may be turning but the compass, being subject to outside forces, does not indicate a turn at all but maintains a constant heading. When the aeroplane levels out for straight-and-level flight, the compass will spin rapidly to indicate the new heading.

In an aeroplane with a turn and bank indicator, a pilot may make reasonably accurate turns to a particular heading by banking the aeroplane into a standard rate 1 turn and allowing 1 second for every 3 degrees of the compass (i.e. 30 seconds to turn 90 degrees).

While reading the compass when holding north or south headings, always make sure the wings are level and the turn needle is centred.

ACCELERATION & DECELERATION ERRORS

When an aeroplane increases its speed, a force is set up in the direction in which the aeroplane is moving. This is acceleration and will act through the pivot of the compass. The magnet system, however, tends to lag behind due to inertia acting through the centre of gravity. On east and west headings, this causes a turning moment, tending to rotate the magnet system and so causing deflection of the compass card.

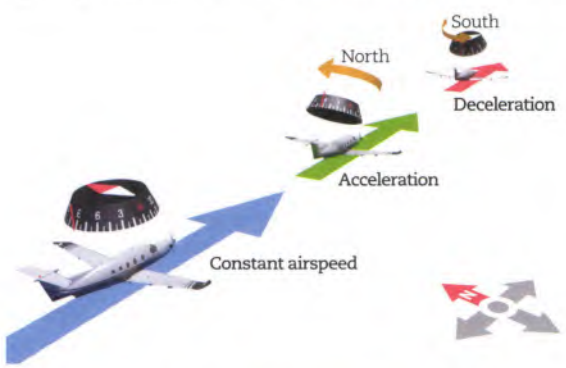


Fig.7.14 Acceleration Error

When the aeroplane decreases its speed, **deceleration** causes a similar effect but the deflection will be in the opposite direction.

On east and west headings, **acceleration** causes the compass to register a turn towards **north**.

On east and west headings, **deceleration** causes the compass to register a turn towards **south**.

The deflection of the compass will occur only while the aeroplane is accelerating or decelerating. Immediately the aeroplane is again in equilibrium, the compass will return to its normal magnetic heading.

When reading the magnetic compass on east or west headings, always make sure that the airspeed is kept constant.

The effect of acceleration and deceleration compass error is nil on north and south headings.

7.2.3 Dry Vertical Card Compass

The dry vertical card compass looks like a heading indicator (directional gyro) but is in fact a compass. The display features a miniature aeroplane that points to the headings on a vertical card that rotates. All headings are simultaneously displayed, so that alternate headings (180°, 90°, 45°, etc.)are easily determined.

The vertical card compass utilizes a sensing magnet which is not pendulous and which does not float in liquid. Instead it rotates in a fixed plane in relation to the compass housing. It is heavily damped and limited to only 20 degrees of pitch and roll. As a result, although the vertical card compass is still subject to lead and lag as a result of northerly turning error and to acceleration and deceleration error, the errors are less noticeable than in the standard compass. The vertical card compass is generally more stable and consistent in its readings.

Fig.7.15 Dry Vertical Card Compass

The vertical card compass is more sensitive to magnetic and electrical disturbances in the aeroplane and requires careful swinging.

7.2.4 Finding the Sun's True Bearing

In a booklet called **Finding The Sun's True Bearing**, Transport Canada has published tables that give the sun's true bearing for locations from 40 degrees north latitude to 85 degrees north latitude, based on 10 day intervals throughout the year and eight minute intervals throughout the day.

The use of these tables eliminates the need for an astro compass and the somewhat cumbersome procedure for determining position by this instrument. With the booklet, an accurate clock, a heading indicator and, of course, the sun in the sky, it is relatively simple to keep an accurate check on true bearing.

By dead reckoning, it is necessary to determine the geographical co-ordinates of the position on the earth over which the aeroplane is flying. Let us suppose that the aeroplane is over a

landmark whose co-ordinates are 55°15'N and 120°10'W. The time is 1809 UTC and the date is June 9th.

DATE	HOURS				
	0800	0808	0816	0824	0832
DEC 31	126.4	128.0	129.6	131.3	132.9
JAN 10	125.0	126.6	128.2	129.8	131.5
JAN 20	123.3	124.9	126.6	128.2	129.9
JAN 30	121.6	123.2	124.9	126.6	128.2
FEB 9	119.9	121.5	123.2	124.9	126.6
FEB 19	118.2	119.9	121.6	123.3	125.1
MAR 1	116.6	118.3	120.1	121.8	123.6
MAR 11	115.1	116.8	118.6	120.4	122.2
MAR 21	113.6	115.3	117.1	118.9	120.8
MAR 31	112.0	113.9	115.7	117.5	119.4
APR 10	110.5	112.3	114.2	116.1	118.0
APR 20	108.9	110.7	112.6	114.5	116.4
APR 30	107.2	109.1	111.0	112.9	114.8
MAY 10	105.5	107.4	109.3	111.2	113.1
MAY 20	103.9	105.7	107.6	109.5	111.4

Fig.7.16 Sun's True Bearing (Portion)

Find the page in **Finding The Sun's True Bearing** for 55 degrees north latitude.

Multiply the number of whole degrees of longitude by 4 (120 x 4 is 480) to obtain the correction in minutes for the local civil time (LCT). Convert this value to hours and minutes (480 minutes is 8 hours 00 minutes). Since you are west of the prime meridian, subtract this correction from the time in UTC (1809 minus 0800) to determine the LCT 1009.

55 DEGREES NORTH LATITUDE				
DATE/HOURS	1000	1008	1016	1024
APR 30	139.0	141.5	144.0	146.6
MAY 10	137.7	140.2	142.8	145.5
MAY 20	136.2	138.8	141.5	144.2
MAY 30	134.7	137.3	140.0	142.8
JUN 9	133.3	136.0	138.7	141.5
JUN 19	132.3	134.9	137.6	140.4
JUN 29	131.7	134.4	137.0	139.8

Fig.7.17 Sample for 55 Degrees North Latitude

On the 55 degree north latitude page, find on the tables the date June 9th and the time LCT 1008 (closest to 1009). According to the tables, the sun's true bearing for that time, date and latitude is 136 degrees.

Turn the aeroplane so that it is facing directly into the sun. Set the heading indicator to 136 degrees.

7.3 Units of Distance & Speed

A statute mile is a distance of 5,280 feet.

A nautical mile (6,080 feet) is the average length of one minute of latitude. For all practical purposes, it may be taken as the length of one minute of arc along any great circle.

A kilometer is a distance of 1,000 meters.

A knot is a speed of one nautical mile per hour.

One nautical mile equals 1.15 statute miles.

A scale of nautical miles (based on the scale of the chart at mid-latitude) is printed on all ICAO aeronautical charts.

Practically all circular slide rule computers have statute mile/nautical mile conversion indexes printed on the outer scale.

The abbreviation, officially adopted for nautical miles is n.miles or n.m. or NM; for statute miles, s.miles or s.m. or SM.

7.3.1 Conversions

Speed

- To convert knots to mph, multiply knots by 1.15.
- To convert mph to knots, divide mph by 1.15.
- To convert kilometers per hour to knots, multiply by 0.54.
- To convert kilometers per hour to mph, multiply by 0.62.

Hours & Minutes

To convert minutes to hours, divide by 60 (60 min. = 1 hr.).

For Example: 30 min. = 30 ÷ 60 = 0.5 hrs.

To convert hours to minutes, multiply by 60.

For Example: 0.75 hrs. = 0.75 x 60 = 45 min.

Time in Flight

To find the time in flight, divide the distance by the groundspeed.

For Example: Distance to fly = 120 n.m.
Groundspeed = 80 knots
Time to fly =
120 ÷ 80 = 1.5 hrs
1.5 hrs x 60 = 90 min = 1 hr. 30 min.

Distance

To find the distance flown in a given time, multiply groundspeed by time.

For Example: Time flown = 1 hr. 45 min.
Groundspeed = 120 knots
Distance to fly = 120 x 1.75 = 210 n.m.

Groundspeed

To find the groundspeed, divide the distance flown by the time.

For Example: Distance flown = 270 n.m.
Time flown = 3 hrs.
Groundspeed =
270 ÷ 3 = 90 knots.

7.4 Aeronautical Charts

The earth is a sphere and therefore its surface cannot be represented accurately on a flat plane. The chart maker's problem can be readily appreciated by cutting a rubber ball in half and then attempting to flatten out one of the halves in a flat plane.

Since the surface of a sphere cannot be accurately projected onto a chart, a chart must show the portion of the earth's surface it represents with some distortion.

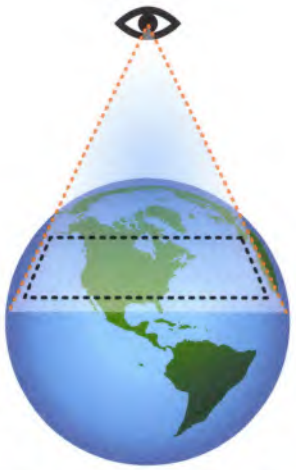


Fig.7.18 **Lambert Conformal Conic Projection**

Fig.7.19 **Lambert Conformal Conic Development**

There are four basic elements in chart construction. These are:

1. Areas.
2. Shapes.
3. Bearings.
4. Distances.

According to the particular purpose of a chart, one or more of these elements is preserved as nearly correct as possible, with consequent unavoidable distortion in the remaining elements.

The mathematical bases on which charts are constructed are termed projections.

There are two principal types of chart projections used in air navigation charts, the Lambert Conformal Conic Projection and the Transverse Mercator Projection.

7.4.1 The Lambert Conformal Conic Projection

The basic idea upon which the Lambert Conic Projection is developed is that of supposing a cone to be superimposed over the surface of a sphere (Fig.7.18). If the cone were opened and unrolled, the meridians and parallels would appear as shown in the illustration (Fig.7.19).

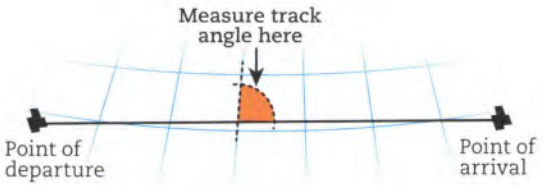


Fig.7.20 **Measuring the Track**

On the Lambert Conformal Conic Projection, the angles between meridians and parallels will be the same on the chart as they are on the ground. The term conformal refers to this characteristic. Scale must be the same along both meridians and parallels.

The properties of the Lambert Projection are:

1. Meridians are curves or straight lines converging towards the nearer pole. If they are curves, the curvature is often so small as to be inappreciable. The angle which one meridian makes with another on the earth is called convergency. It varies with latitude. At the equator, there is no convergency between meridians. At the poles, the meridians converge at angles equal to the change of longitude between them.
2. Parallels of latitude are curves which are concave towards the nearer pole. On any but large scale charts, the curvature is considerable.
3. The scale of distance is practically uniform throughout the entire chart sheet, the maximum distortion being not more than 1/2 of 1%.
4. A straight line drawn between any two points on the chart may be assumed, for all practical purposes, to represent an **arc of a great circle**.

Since a great circle does not cross every meridian at the same angle, a straight line on the charts will not have the same bearing when measured on two or more different meridians. Hence a straight line, or great circle route, cannot be flown without changing heading at regular intervals.

To make good a given track, or straight line, on this type of chart, it is necessary to change heading 2° for every 3° of longitude. Flying **east**, the 2° is added. Flying **west**, it is subtracted.

For flights up to roughly 300 miles, the heading change referred to above may be averaged by measuring the course or track on the meridian nearest the centre (Fig.7.20).

The VFR Navigation Charts (VNC Series) and the World Aeronautical Charts (WAC Series) are based on Lambert Conformal Conic Projections.

7.4.2 The Mercator Projection

The principle on which the Mercator Projection is based is that of a cylinder which has its point of tangency at the equator. Its approximate form may be visualized by imagining a light at the centre of a globe that casts a shadow of the meridians and parallels on a cylinder of infinite length enclosing it. As will be seen in Fig.7.21, the shadows of the more northerly parallels of latitude will be cast wider apart on the cylinder than they actually are on the sphere.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

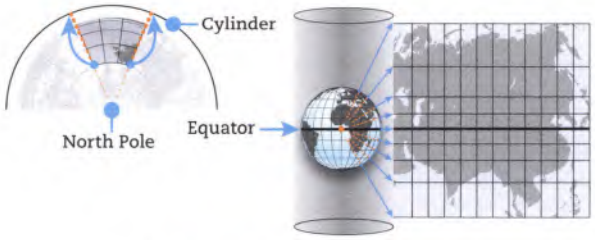


Fig.7.21 **Mercator Projection & Development**

The shadows of the meridians on the cylinder will be straight and parallel lines to infinity, whereas on the sphere they converge to meet in a point at the poles. It is, in other words, as though the meridians were stretched apart at the poles to the same distance they are apart at the equator. This causes extreme exaggeration of longitude in northerly areas.

The principal characteristics of the Mercator Projection are:

1. Meridians are straight and parallel lines.
2. Parallels of latitude are straight and parallel lines.
3. A straight line drawn between any two points on the chart will represent a rhumb line.
4. Owing to the method of projection, there is no constant scale of distance on a Mercator chart and areas are greatly exaggerated in high latitudes.

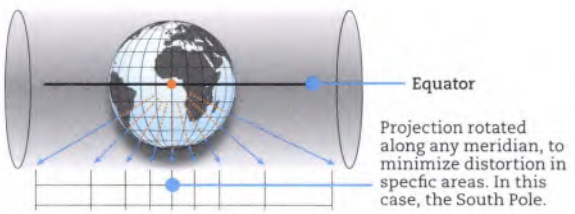


Fig.7.22 **Transverse Mercator Projection**

Mercator charts are, as a rule, graduated on the right and left hand sides for latitude, and at the top and bottom for longitude. The divisions of the longitude scale are only to be used for laying down and taking off the longitude of a place. The longitude scale must never be used for measuring distance. Since 1 minute of latitude is always equal to one nautical mile, the latitude scale is used for measuring distance. The Mercator Projection is relatively precise in depiction of distances in the equatorial regions. However, distortion, as has been stated, becomes more pronounced with distance from the equator.

The Transverse Mercator Projection

To overcome distortion, the Mercator technique can be applied by rotating the cylinder 90 degrees so that the point of tangency is a meridian of longitude rather than the equator. In this case, the chart is accurate along the selected meridian.

Such a projection is called a Transverse Mercator Projection.

The Transverse Mercator Projection, because of its method of production, is quite accurate in depicting scale, especially on charts covering a relatively small geographical area. Depending on the area to be depicted, any one of the 360 meridians of longitude can be selected as the point of tangency for the chart projection.

The VFR Terminal Area Charts (VTA Series) are based on Transverse Mercator Projections.

7.4.3 Types of Aeronautical Charts

VFR Navigation Charts (VNC Series)

VFR Navigation Charts (also called Sectionals) are designed primarily for visual navigation and are most useful during flight at lower altitudes and at slower speeds. Each chart covers a fairly extensive portion of land, reducing quite considerably the number of charts required to cover the whole continental land mass.

The chart is printed on both sides, the northern half of the area to be depicted on one side and the southern half on the reverse. The title of the chart and other aeronautical information is printed on two sides of a white border on one edge of the chart.

Each chart is identified by the name of a principal landmark on the chart (e.g. Toronto, Winnipeg, Vancouver, Yellowknife, Cambridge Bay).

The scale of the chart is 1:500,000 or about one inch to eight statute miles.

VFR Navigation Charts are based on the Lambert Conformal Conic Projection and conform to the characteristics of that projection.

To keep pace with rapidly changing facilities, the charts are reprinted at regular intervals with updated information. The publication date is always shown with the chart identification.

World Aeronautical Charts (WAC Series)

World Aeronautical Charts are designed also for visual navigation and are most useful during flight at the higher altitudes and at greater speeds. Each chart depicts a sizeable portion of the country's geographical area. They are similar to sectional charts; however, they are less detailed owing to their smaller scale.

In Canada and the Unites States, WACs have been discontinued. They remain available in other countries such as Australia where they are identifiable by a geographic name and corresponding four digit number.

WAC Charts are based on the Lambert Conformal Conic Projection and conform to the characteristics of that projection.

The scale of the chart is 1:1,000,000 or about one inch to sixteen statute miles.

The chart is printed on both sides of the sheet, the northern half of the area to be represented on one side and the southern half on the reverse. The title of the chart and other aeronautical information is printed on two sides of a white side border on one edge of the chart.

VFR Terminal Area Charts (VTA Series)

VFR Terminal Area Charts are large scale charts (1:250,000) published for airports where there is a high volume of air traffic and at which there is usually a mix of controlled airspace. Before entering such classified airspace, a VFR flight must contact the appropriate ATC unit and receive clearance to enter the area. VTA charts depict VFR call up points outside the area and VFR checkpoints within the area. Radio communication information and other information that is necessary for conducting flight through the area is given on the chart.

The edge of the area is marked by a solid blue line. The edge of the control zone is marked by a dashed blue line.

VFR Terminal Area Charts are based on the Transverse Mercator Projection and conform to the characteristics of that projection.

A more detailed discussion of classified airspace is given in the Chapter **Aerodromes & Airspace**.

Enroute Charts

Enroute Charts provide information for radio navigation over designated airways systems. Enroute Low Altitude Charts (LO) are intended for use up to, but not including, 18,000 feet. Enroute High Altitude Charts (HI) are intended for use at 18,000 feet and above. Terminal Area Charts depict aeronautical radio navigation information in congested areas at a larger scale and are intended for use from the surface up to, but not including 18,000 feet ASL.

Enroute charts do not portray any cities, towns, or topographical features, but depict all radio navigation aids, including airways, beacons, reporting points, communication frequencies, etc.

Uncontrolled airspace is tinted a basic light green while controlled airspace (such as airways, control zones, terminal control areas, etc.) is shown in solid white. VHF facilities and associated airways are overprinted in black (omnirange stations, victor airways, etc.) and LF/MF data is shown in green.

The directions, or bearings, of all airways (magnetic), distances between checkpoints, minimum enroute altitudes, VOR change-over points, station identification letters, radio frequencies, and other pertinent radio navigation information is clearly shown in bold, easy to read characters.

The scale is not constant, but varies to suit the requirements of each individual chart, or series of charts.

Each chart contains two separate chart sheets printed back to back. A table of chart symbols and a list of all radio communication facilities available within the area covered by the charts is printed on the front sheet.

Canada Flight Supplement (CFS)

The **Canada Flight Supplement (CFS)** is a joint civil/military publication published and producd by NavCanada. It contains information on Canadian and North Atlantic aerodromes which are in turn shown on IFR Enroute charts, VFR Terminal Area Charts and VFR Navigation Charts. This flight information publication is designed to be used in conjunction with all Canadian charts and should be carried by any pilot departing on a flight. It is revised and reissued every 56 days and is available in English and bilingual versions.

The **CFS** is made up of six sections: (1) General, (2) Aerodrome/Facility Directory, (3) Planning, (4) Radio Navigation and Communications, (5) Military Flight Data and Procedures and (6) Emergency.

The **General** section has information of a general nature: abbreviations, a cross reference of aerodrome names and abandoned aerodromes, conversions tables, the phonetic alphabet, a legend of chart symbols and a comprehensive section explaining the annotations and codes used in the Aerodrome and Facility Directory.

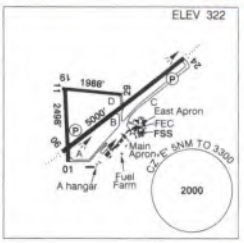
The **Aerodrome/Facility Directory** lists all aerodromes alphabetically by the community in which they are located. For example, Toronto/Buttonville, Toronto/Downsview, Toronto/Billy Bishop, Toronto/Lester B. Pearson, etc. The word "heliport" identifies a location that is for helicopter use only.

A sketch of the aerodrome, when provided, depicts the aerodrome and its immediate surroundings as seen from the air. The sketch shows runway layouts, taxiways, locations of buildings and tower (if present), as well as trees, power lines, obstacles, etc. Known obstacles 300 feet AGL or higher, not within the shadow of an adjacent higher obstacle, as well as those lower than 300 feet AGL that are considered significant to VFR flight conditions are shown on the sketch.

CANADA FLIGHT SUPPLEMENT / GPH 205 Effective 0901Z 14 July 2022 to 0901Z 8 September 2022

ONTARIO — AERODROME/FACILITY DIRECTORY

ST. CATHARINES / NIAGARA DISTRICT ON — CYSN



REF	N43 11 30 W79 10 16 11°W UTC-5(4) Elev 322' VTA A5000 LO6 HI5 CAP
OPR	Niagara District Aprt Comsn 905-684-7447 11-24Z‡ Mon-Fri, 1230-2100Z‡ Sat-Sun Oct 16-Apr 16, exc hols. O/T 2hrs PN, call out chg may be levied ctc opr Cert Ldg fees
PF	A-1,7 C-2,3,4,5,6
CUST	AOE/15 888-226-7277 13-05Z‡
FLT PLN	When FSS clsd pilots to open/close VFR flt plan and obtain IFR clnc fr London rdo FISE or by phone. To file an IFR arr rpt ctc Toronto Centre 888-217-1241 if unable via rdo.
FIC	London 866-WXBRIEF (Toll free within Canada) or 866-541-4104 (Toll free within Canada & USA)
WX	METAR 12-02Z‡ O/T LWIS TAF 14-02Z‡, issue times: 14, 20Z.
SERVICES	Svcs avbl 13-23Z‡ O/T call out chg applies 905-684-3600
FUEL	100LL, JA-1
OIL	Aeroshell W100, 15W50
S	1,2,3,4,5,6
RWY DATA	Rwy 06(064°)/24(244°) 5000x100 ASPH Rwy 01(009°)/19(189°) 2498x75 ASPH Rwy 11(107°)/29(287°) 1988x75 ASPH
RWY CERT	Rwy 06/24 AGN IIIA Rwy 01/19 AGN I Rwy 11/29 AGN I
TWY CERT	Twy D AGN I
RCR	Opr CRFI Win maint 11-24Z‡ Mon-Fri, 1230-2100Z‡ Sat-Sun Oct 16-Apr 16, exc hols. O/T 2hrs PN, call out chg may be levied ctc opr. PLR
LIGHTING	06-AO(TE ME) P2, 24-AO(TE ME) P2 Opr 1215-02Z‡ O/T ARCAL-123.25 type K
COMM	
RADIO	123.25 (V) 1215-02Z‡ (emerg only 905-688-8367)
RCO	London rdo 126.7 (FISE)
ATIS	128.525 1215-02Z‡
MF	rdo 123.25 1215-02Z‡ 5NM 3300 ASL (CAR 602.98)
ATF	tfc 123.25 02-1215Z‡ 5NM 3300 ASL
ARR	Toronto Tml 133.4
DEP	Toronto Tml 133.4
PAL	133.3
PRO	For flt over Niagara Falls, see Niagara Falls VTPC. Glider activity vic of the aprt Sat, Sun, hols Apr-Jun & Sep-Nov. Gliders non-std pattern. NOISE MITIGATION: After tkof from Rwy 24, track on or N of the extended rwy centreline, no turns below 1000 ASL.
CAUTION	Hold position on Twy A is for both Rwy 01 and 06. Pilots intending to depart Rwy 06 must verify correct orientation on Rwy 06 prior to departure. Hold position on Twy B is for Rwy 06/24 and Rwy 29.

Fig.7.23 **CFS Example for Aerodrome at St. Catherines, Ontario**

Also included in the sketch is an obstacle clearance circle (OCC). The OCC is a guide for pilots operating VFR within close proximity to aerodromes and should not be construed as providing minimum descent altitudes. The single altitude associated with the OCC, determined by adding 1,000 feet to the highest obstruction (ASL) located within the same geographic area that the circle describes (and rounded up to the next 100-foot increment), is shown. An obstacle may be a man-made structure or a topographic height feature.

The Control Zone radius (in nautical miles) is indicated on the upper outer circumference of the OCC along with the class of airspace designated for the Control Zone. The altitude (ASL) up to which the Control Zone extends will also be shown. If the Control Zone is not of the standard cylindrical shape, the note "shape irregular" will be indicated on the lower outer circumference of the OCC.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

The centre of the OCC describes the centre of the aerodrome. The OCC is not applicable to heliports.

Information is given about the operator of the aerodrome and the facilities available under the categories: Public Facilities (telephone, food, taxi, accommodation, car rental, etc. available in the terminal or near the aerodrome), Customs, Flight Planning (FIC, weather, etc.), Services (fuel, oil, maintenance services, etc.), Runway Data, Lighting, Communications (radio, ATIS, ground, tower, mandatory frequency, aerodrome traffic frequency, arrival and departure control, etc.), Navigation (ILS, NDB, Tacan, Vortac, DME, PAR, etc.), Procedures (recommended routes, altitudes, special circuit procedures, etc.).

The **Planning** section gives information on such subjects as flight plans, notifications and itineraries, position reports, PIREPs, equipment prefixes and suffixes, transponder codes, classification of the airspace, weather minima, cruising altitudes, flight restrictions, preferred IFR and RNAV routes. It also contains the chart updating section.

The **Radio Navigation and Communications** section lists pertinent information about navigation aids, the mountain valley communication service, commercial broadcasting stations and volmet stations.

The **Military Flight Data and Procedures** section lists information that is mainly pertinent to military operations in Canada and the North Atlantic.

The **Emergency** section gives information on transponder operation, unlawful interference, traffic control light signals, fuel dumping, search and rescue, emergency radar assistance, communication failure procedures, military visual signals, interception signals for civil aircraft, and ESCAT.

Airport/Facility Directory

In the United States, an **Airport/Facility Directory** is published every 56 days by the National Aeronautical Charting Office. Serving the same purpose in the U.S. as the Canada Flight Supplement does in Canada, the Airport/Facility Directory contains the latest available information on U.S. airports, seaplane bases, heliports, communication data, navigation facilities, special procedures, and other valuable services. Seven of these directories are published to cover the entire country and each of these seven directories covers its specific corresponding region consisting of several states.

Water Aerodrome Supplement

Information about all water aerodromes that are shown on Canadian aeronautical charts is contained in the **Water Aerodrome Supplement**.

The format of this booklet is much like that of the **CFS**. An introductory section contains explanatory information about annotation and codes used in the Directory.

In the **Aerodrome/Facility Directory**, water aerodromes are listed alphabetically and a sketch of the water body on which the aerodrome is located is included. Also included is an obstacle clearance circle similar to that included with aerodrome layouts in the **CFS**. The 4 letter alpha/numeric identifier, the geographical co-ordinates, magnetic variation, time conversion from UTC, elevation and a list of the aeronautical charts on which the aerodrome is depicted are given. Also included is information about the operator of the aerodrome, public facilities, flight planning services, services such as fuel, oil, radio and navaids and a final remarks section with pertinent information about special procedures, hazards, available mooring, etc.

CANADA WATER AERODROME SUPPLEMENT

Effective 0901Z 24 March 2022 to 0901Z 20 April 2023

AERODROME/FACILITY DIRECTORY B251

VANCOUVER INTL BC CAM9

REF	N49 10 37 W123 10 15 Adj SW 17°E (2013) UTC-8(7) Elev 00' VTA A5004 T1
OPR	Vancouver Intl Aprt Authority 604-207-7022; Seair Seaplanes 604-273-8900 or 1-800-447-3245 Reg
PF	B-1,2,3,6 C-4,5
CUST	AOE/15 888-226-7277 Daylight hrs only
FLT PLN	
FIC	Kamloops 866-WXBRIEF (Toll free within Canada) or 866-541-4101 (Toll free within Canada & USA)
ACC	IFR 604-586-4590/4591or 800-668-1333; IFR tng flts PPR ctc 604-586-4592 (collect calls accepted)
SERVICES	Fuel & beaching 604-273-8900 or 129.30 daylight hrs.
FUEL	100LL, JA
OIL	All
S	3,4,5
A/D DATA	Fraser River 066°-246°. Middle Arm 099°-279°. Tidal range 14', shallow water close to shores. Docks, ramp. Open water all year.
COMM	
RCO	Pacific rdo 123.15 (FISE)
ATIS	124.6 restrictions are bcst on ATIS 1-877-517-2847
CLNC DEL	121.4 All dep acft ctc clnc del
TWR	118.7 (South) 119.55 (North) VFR 124.02 125.65 226.5 236.6 (E) (emerg 604-775-9531)
TML	125.2
NAV	
NDB	VR 266 (MZ) N49 10 22 W123 03 26
VOR/DME	YVR 115.9 Ch 106 N49 04 38 W123 08 57 (37')

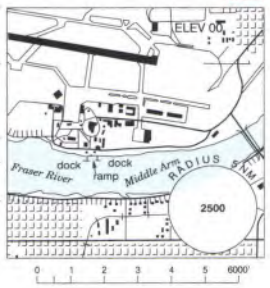


Fig.7.24 **Water Aerodrome at Vancouver, BC**

The sections entitled **Planning, Radio Navigation and Communications** and **Emergency** contain information exactly similar that included in the same sections in the **CFS.**

Basic Chart Information

All airway courses shown on aeronautical charts are in degrees magnetic except when labeled "T" for degrees true.

As satellite electronic signals are not subject to magnetic variations, aeronautical charts that are published exclusively for air navigation using only GPS and/or GNSS satellite frequencies (see Data Link Communications), will have all courses shown as true.

In the future, there may come a day when magnetic courses shown on all aeronautical charts will be completely eliminated with true courses becoming the exclusive norm. This is expected to occur when all air navigation is switched from ground-based radio navigation transmitters to satellite navigation.

Scale

The scale of the chart is the relationship between a unit of distance (i.e. one inch) on the chart to the distance on the earth that the unit represents. On most aeronautical charts, the scale is expressed as a representative fraction. (Charts, by definition, are special purpose maps containing essential geographic information for specific applications.)

VFR Navigation Charts have a scale of 1:500,000, that is, one inch on the chart is equal to 500,000 inches on the ground (or approximately one inch to 8 statute miles).

World Aeronautical Charts (which are no longer published for North America) have a scale of 1:1,000,000, that is, one inch on the chart is equal to 1,000,000 inches on the ground (or approximately one inch to 16 statute miles).

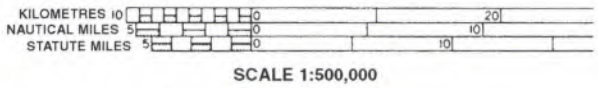


Fig.7.25 **A Graduated Scale Line**

VFR Terminal Area Charts have a scale of 1:250,000, that is, one inch on the chart is equal to 250,000 inches on the ground (or approximately one inch to 4 statute miles).

A graduated scale line also gives scale information. On aeronautical charts, three such scale lines are printed on the border of the chart. One line represents kilometers, one statute miles and the other nautical miles. A scale line based on 1:500,000 is represented in Fig.7.25. A conversion scale for converting feet to meters is also printed on the margin of aeronautical charts.

Latitude & Longitude

A graticule (grid-like pattern of meridians and parallels) is depicted on aeronautical charts. The meridians are graduated in minutes of latitude and the parallels in minutes of longitude. This makes it possible for latitude and longitude to be measured on the chart. In addition, the subdivided meridians provide a scale of nautical miles, since a minute of latitude may be considered as a nautical mile.

On VFR Navigation Charts (VNC), the meridians of longitude and the parallels of latitude represented on the chart are numbered at the edge of the chart. Parallels and meridians are also conveniently numbered within the body of the chart. Meridians and parallels, at 30' intervals, are divided into 1 minute divisions.

On WAC Charts, each meridian of longitude and parallel of latitude printed on the body of the chart is marked off in minutes of latitude and longitude. The numbers of each parallel and meridian appear frequently on the graticule.

On VFR Terminal Area Charts (VTA), latitude and longitude are indicated on the edge of the chart but not throughout the body of the chart.

Relief

The representation of relief, or ground elevation above sea level, on aeronautical charts is of primary importance. On charts used for air navigation, it is essential that height and position of the highest parts of hills and mountains should be clearly shown and that sufficient detail should be given to make easy the recognition of prominent features. Relief is shown by contour lines, layer tinting and spot heights.

LAYER TINTING

The chart is coloured to represent different levels of elevation. On the white border of every chart, an elevation legend is printed to show what colours are used for different elevations.

On VFR Navigation Charts and VFR Terminal Area Charts, the legend is called a hypsometric tint scale (see Fig.7.26). The colour coding ranges from green through shades of yellow to dark bronze to represent increasing elevations in thousand foot (300 meter) increments.

On WAC Charts, a coloured pictorial scene gives terrain characteristic tints. The colour coding ranges from green through shades of grey to yellow for the highest elevations.

All bodies of water including rivers and streams are coloured blue.

Where differences in elevation are considerable, a layer tinted chart is very easily read, since the relief stands out as on a model, but it is not possible to show minor variations of height and the impression may be that the ground within the tinted areas is level.

CONTOURS

Contour lines are drawn on a chart joining points of equal elevation above mean sea level. The height of a contour line (in feet or meters) is indicated on the chart by figures. The gradient (steepness) of a slope is indicated by the horizontal distance between the contour lines. The closer the contours, the steeper the slope of a hill or valley.

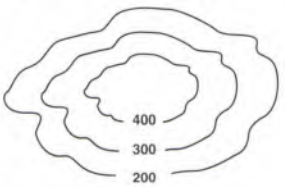


Fig.7.27 **A Hill Represented by Contour Lines**

SPOT HEIGHTS

Figures printed on a chart show the height above sea level at any particular point. Especially high elevations are marked by a dot with the spot height beside the dot. The higher the elevation of the hill represented by a spot height, the larger in size are the numerals indicating its elevation. The highest spot on a particular chart is represented by the largest size of numerals and the numeral is boxed with the layer tinting removed within the box.

The highest elevation on a particular chart is also indicated on the white border of the chart. On VFR Navigation Charts and VFR Terminal Area Charts, it is shown, together with its geographical co-ordinates, at the top of the hypsometric tint legend (see Fig.7.26). On WAC Charts, the highest elevation with its geographical co-ordinates is printed as shown in Fig.7.28.

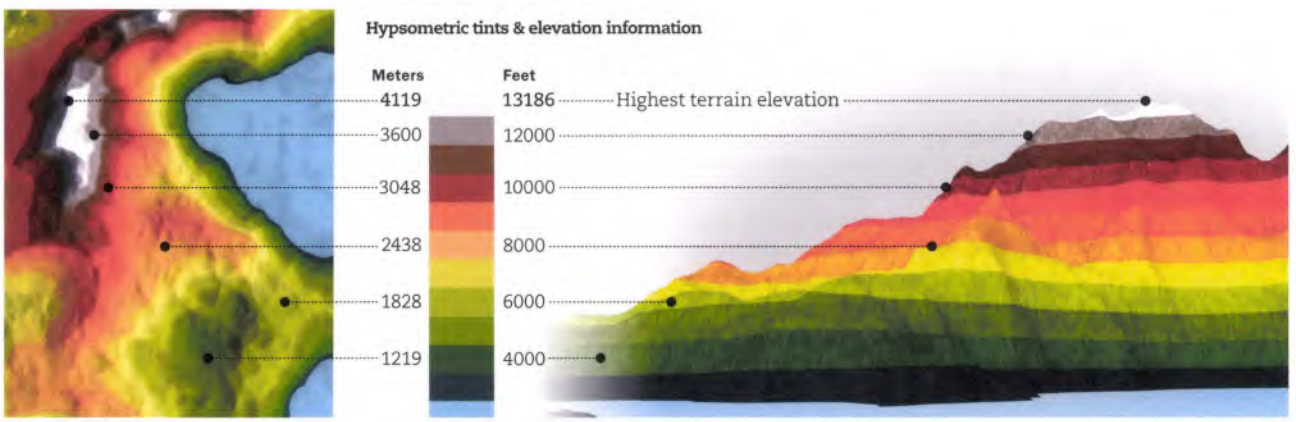


Fig.7.26 **Layer Tinting Legends**

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Relief Portrayal

Elevations are in feet

Highest Terrain Elevation is 12972 located at 53°07'N 199°09'W

Fig.7.28 **Elevation Information**

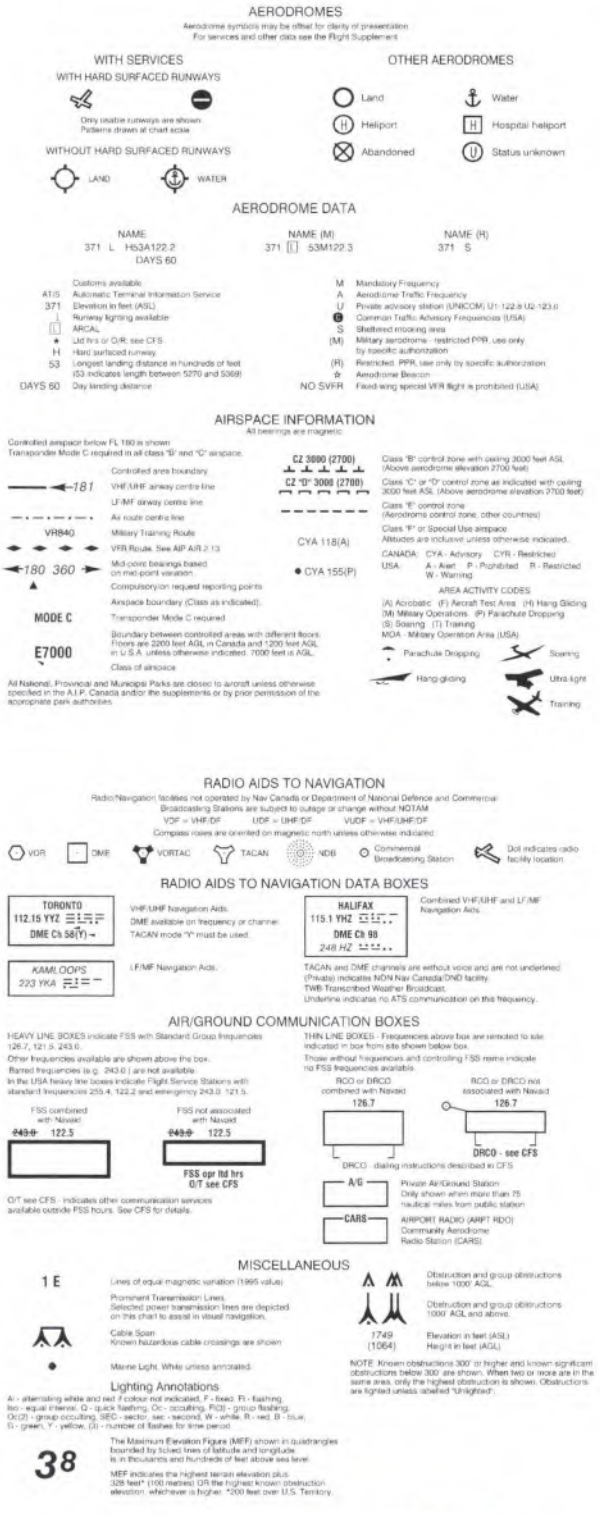

AERODROMES
WITH SERVICES
WITH HARD SURFACED RUNWAYS
WITHOUT HARD SURFACED RUNWAYS
LAND
WATER
OTHER AERODROMES
Land
Water
Heliport
Hospital heliport
Abandoned
Status unknown
AERODROME DATA
NAME
NAME (M)
NAME (H)
DAYS 60
Customs available
ATIS Automatic Terminal Information Service
371 Elevation in feet (ASL)
Runway lighting available
ARCAL
Ltd hrs or O/R; see CFS
H Hard surfaced runway
53 Longest landing distance in hundreds of feet
DAYS 60 Day landing distance
M Mandatory Frequency
A Aerodrome Traffic Frequency
U Private advisory station (UNICOM) U1: 122.8 U2-123.0
Common Traffic Advisory Frequencies (USA)
S Sheltered mooring area
(M) Military aerodrome - restricted PPR, use only by specific authorization
(R) Restricted. PPR, use only by specific authorization
Aerodrome Beacon
NO SVFR Fixed-wing special VFR flight is prohibited (USA)
AIRSPACE INFORMATION
All bearings are magnetic
Controlled airspace below FL 180 is shown
Transponder Mode C required in all class "B" and "C" airspace.
Controlled area boundary
VHF/UHF airway centre line
LF/MF airway centre line
Air route centre line
VR840 Military Training Route
VFR Route. See AIP A/R 2.13
180 360 Mid-point bearings based on mid-point variation.
Compulsory/on request reporting points
Airspace boundary (Class as indicated).
MODE C Transponder Mode C required
E7000 Boundary between controlled areas with different floors. Floors are 2200 feet AGL in Canada and 1200 feet AGL in U.S.A. unless otherwise indicated. 7000 feet is AGL.
Class of airspace
All National, Provincial and Municipal Parks are closed to aircraft unless otherwise specified in the A.I.P. Canada and/or the supplements or by prior permission of the appropriate park authorities.
CZ 3000 (2700) Class "B" control zone with ceiling 3000 feet ASL (Above aerodrome elevation 2700 feet)
CZ "D" 3000 (2700) Class "C" or "D" control zone as indicated with ceiling 3000 feet ASL (Above aerodrome elevation 2700 feet)
Class "E" control zone (Aerodrome control zone, other countries)
Class "F" or Special Use airspace. Altitudes are inclusive unless otherwise indicated.
CYA 118(A)
CANADA: CYA - Advisory CYR - Restricted
USA: A - Alert P - Prohibited R - Restricted W - Warning
CYA 155(P)
AREA ACTIVITY CODES
(A) Acrobatic (F) Aircraft Test Area (H) Hang Gliding (M) Military Operations (P) Parachute Dropping (S) Soaring (T) Training
MOA - Military Operation Area (USA)
Parachute Dropping
Soaring
Hang-gliding
Ultra-light
Training
RADIO AIDS TO NAVIGATION
Radio/Navigation facilities not operated by Nav Canada or Department of National Defence and Commercial Broadcasting Stations are subject to outage or change without NOTAM
VDF = VHF/DF UDF = UHF/DF VUDF = VHF/UHF/DF
Compass roses are oriented on magnetic north unless otherwise indicated.
VOR DME VORTAC TACAN NDB Commercial Broadcasting Station Dot indicates radio facility location
RADIO AIDS TO NAVIGATION DATA BOXES
TORONTO 112.15 YYZ DME Ch 58(Y)
VHF/UHF Navigation Aids.
DME available on frequency or channel.
TACAN mode "Y" must be used.
HALIFAX 115.1 YHZ DME Ch 98 248 HZ
Combined VHF/UHF and LF/MF Navigation Aids.
KAMLOOPS 223 YKA
LF/MF Navigation Aids.
TACAN and DME channels are without voice and are not underlined. (Private) indicates NON Nav Canada/DND facility.
TWB Transcribed Weather Broadcast.
Underline indicates no ATS communication on this frequency.
AIR/GROUND COMMUNICATION BOXES
HEAVY LINE BOXES indicate FSS with Standard Group frequencies 126.7, 121.5, 243.0.
Other frequencies available are shown above the box.
Paired frequencies (e.g. 243.0) are not available.
In the USA heavy line boxes indicate Flight Service Stations with standard frequencies 255.4, 122.2 and emergency 243.0 121.5.
FSS combined with Navaid
FSS not associated with Navaid
243.0 122.5
FSS opr ltd hrs O/T see CFS
O/T see CFS - Indicates other communication services available outside FSS hours. See CFS for details.
THIN LINE BOXES - Frequencies above box are remoted to site indicated in box from site shown below box.
Those without frequencies and controlling FSS name indicate no FSS frequencies available.
RCO or DRCO combined with Navaid
RCO or DRCO not associated with Navaid
126.7
DRCO - see CFS
DRCO - dialing instructions described in CFS
A/G Private Air/Ground Station. Only shown when more than 75 nautical miles from public station
CARS AIRPORT RADIO (ARPT RDO) Community Aerodrome Radio Station (CARS)
MISCELLANEOUS
1 E Lines of equal magnetic variation (1995 value)
Prominent Transmission Lines. Selected power transmission lines are depicted on this chart to assist in visual navigation.
Cable Span Known hazardous cable crossings are shown
Marine Light. White unless annotated.
Lighting Annotations
Obstruction and group obstructions below 1000' AGL
Obstruction and group obstructions 1000' AGL and above.
1749 (1064) Elevation in feet (ASL) Height in feet (AGL)
NOTE: Known obstructions 300' or higher and known significant obstructions below 300' are shown. When two or more are in the same area, only the highest obstruction is shown. Obstructions are lighted unless labelled "Unlighted".
A - alternating white and red if colour not indicated, F - fixed, Fl - flashing, Iso - equal interval, Q - quick flashing, Oc - occulting, FlG) - group flashing, Oc(2) - group occulting, SEC - sector, sec - second, W - white, R - red, B - blue, G - green, Y - yellow, (3) - number of flashes for time period
38 The Maximum Elevation Figure (MEF) shown in quadrangles bounded by ticked lines of latitude and longitude, is in thousands and hundreds of feet above sea level.
MEF indicates the highest terrain elevation plus 328 feet* (100 metres) OR the highest known obstruction elevation, whichever is higher. *200 feet over U.S. Territory.

Fig.7.29 **Aeronautical Information Legend**

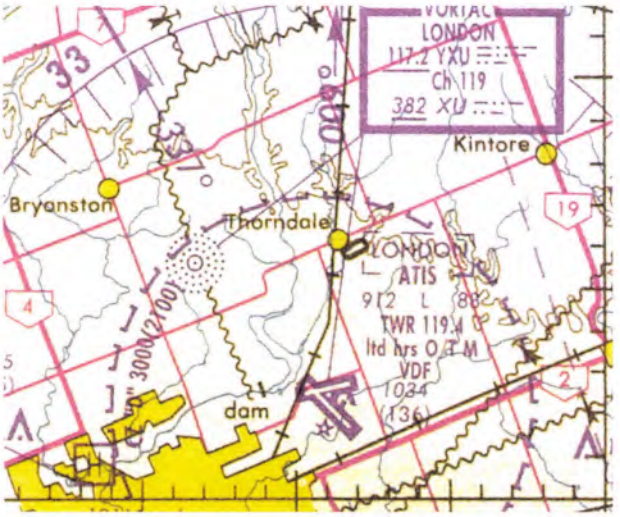


Fig.7.30 **Aerodrome at London, Ontario**

Isogonic Lines

Isogonic lines (lines joining places of equal magnetic variation) are depicted by dashed lines. The degree of variation is printed at regular intervals along the line.

Communities, Roads & Railways

Yellow squares represent towns and small villages. Hamlets are represented by small circles. A city is depicted by a yellow area outlined in black that corresponds to the actual shape and size of the community.

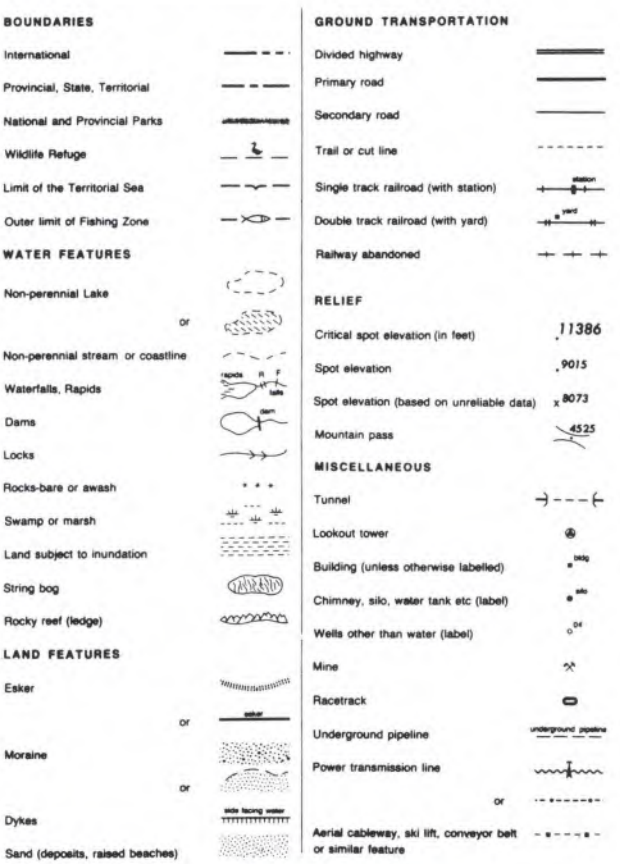


Fig.7.31 **Topographical Symbols**

Highways are indicated by red or brown lines, double lane highways by double lines. Railways are shown as black lines.

Aerodromes

Small aerodromes are shown by a circle as depicted in Fig.7.29. The code letter or symbol included in the circle indicates its status.

Aerodromes with hard surface runways are depicted at their location on the chart by a diagram of the landing areas.

Aerodromes with services are shown as:

- (showing the actual runway layout)
- if hard surface
- if non-paved

Aerodromes without services are shown as:

- for land
- for heliport
- for hospital heliport
- if abandoned

Airport information is also given in a box adjacent to the schematic depiction of the runway configuration (Fig.7.30).

Class F Airspace

Areas that have been designated as Class F Airspace are marked on aeronautical charts with information about them printed on the chart. These include restricted and advisory areas and altitude reservations.

Compass Rose

A circle overprinted on a chart divided into 360°, from which directions may be measured, is called a compass rose. The centre of the compass rose is a transmitting navigational facility such as a VOR or a TACAN station. The compass rose is oriented on the chart on magnetic north.

It has a diameter of approximately 30 nautical miles on VFR Navigation Charts (1:500,000).

A more detailed study of radio navigation facilities appears in the Chapter **Radio Navigation**.

Aeronautical Information

The date of issue of a particular chart is always included with the information printed with the title for the chart. Always use up-to-date charts in planning a cross-country flight. Radio frequencies change, high rising obstructions are built and airport facilities change. It is essential to have the latest information in order to conduct a safe and efficient flight.

A legend of aeronautical information explaining the symbols and data appearing on the chart is always printed somewhere on the sheet. On VTA, VFR Navigation and WAC Charts, it appears on the white side border. This legend includes information on Aerodromes, Radio Facilities and Airspace Information, etc. (Fig.7.31). A legend of topographical symbols used on aeronautical charts is shown in Fig.7.31.

7.4.4 Plotting Instruments

The Navigation Plotter

Of great assistance to a pilot in plotting and planning flights is an instrument such as the navigation plotter. It combines a protractor and a straightedge in one device which also incorporates a mileage scale for both 1:500,000 and 1:1,000,000 charts.

The plotter is made of clear plastic so that details of the chart can be seen through it.

With the straightedge, the pilot can draw a track from the airport of departure to the planned destination.

The direction of a track is determined by using the protractor portion of the plotter. It is numbered from 000° to 180° on the outside scale and from 180° to 360° on the inside scale. The outside scale is used for easterly tracks and the inside scale for westerly tracks.

To use the plotter, place the hole in the centre of the plotter over an intersection of the track line and one of the longitude lines on the chart. A point somewhere near the midpoint of the track is best chosen to obtain greater accuracy.

Place a pencil point through the hole and rotate the plotter until the top edge of the straightedge is aligned with the track line.

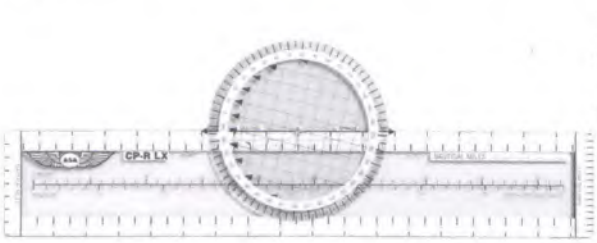


Photo courtesy of asa2fly.com

Fig.7.32 **Navigation Plotter**

Read the direction of the track in degrees true where the longitude line of the chart intersects the scales. (Use the outer scale for easterly tracks and the inner scale for westerly tracks.)

For measuring tracks that are almost directly north and south, a latitude line may be used as a line of reference and the small scale at the centre of the protractor used to determine direction.

In using the straightedge to determine the distance from the airport of departure to the destination, be sure to use the correct side of the straightedge for the type of chart in use. The mileage scale on one side of the straightedge is 1: 500,000 for VNC Charts and is marked off in both statute and nautical miles. The reverse side of the straightedge has a scale of 1: 1,000,000 for WAC Charts and is also marked off in both statute and nautical miles.

Photo courtesy of asa2fly.com

Fig.7.33 **Protractor**

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

The Protractor

A navigation plotter, such as that described above, is not the only instrument that can be used to plot tracks. A simple protractor and a ruler will serve the purpose just as well.

A protractor, being square, can be used both for determining direction and as a straightedge. The instrument has a compass rose graduated in 360° marked around the outer edges. It is transparent so that, when placed on a chart, the chart is visible through it.

Place the protractor on the chart with the hole in the centre lying on the track at a point **where the north-south line on the protractor lies along the meridian**. If this is not convenient, one of the parallel lines may be lined up parallel with the nearest meridian. The track is read off where it cuts the edge of the protractor.

The Ruler

In addition to a protractor, a pilot will require a ruler to measure distance. A mileage scale is printed on every aeronautical chart and it is a simple matter to measure the distance from the airport of departure to the destination and lay this distance off against the chart scale to determine the mileage. The distance scales on ICAO charts in a given series are nearly, but not exactly, constant and are also affected by humidity. A ruler which is constructed mathematically to scale may not exactly correspond to the chart sheet you are using. For practical air pilotage purposes, the difference is inappreciable. For extreme accuracy, note the difference between the ruler and the chart scale at the 100 mile mark and apply it.

7.4.5 Preparing the Chart for a Flight

Chart reading, either on the ground or in the air, calls for a clear understanding of the scale of the chart and a "sense" of that scale (in other words, a sense of proportion). It also requires an understanding of the direction of true or magnetic north and of the symbols used on the chart.

The direction of north should never be in doubt. Remember that the right and left hand edges of the chart sheet are not always parallel to the meridians.

In preparing for a cross-country flight, draw a line on your chart from your point of departure to your destination. Using a plotter, as described above, determine the direction of the track in degrees true. Having determined the direction, it is then necessary to apply the magnetic variation to find the direction of the track in degrees magnetic (see **Magnetism**).

The magnetic variation is generally clearly stated on aeronautical charts. On flights up to 300 miles, the variation should be averaged for the entire route. This is done by using the isogonic line which intersects the track (as nearly as possible) midway between the point of departure and the destination. On longer flights, the heading should be altered at regular intervals to allow for accumulated changes in variation.

Deviation will also have to be applied to determine the compass heading to fly to make good the desired track over the ground. This information can be found on the compass deviation card in the aeroplane.

Now measure the track and divide it into equal intervals of 10 to 20 miles each. During the flight, these divisions will help you to estimate your groundspeed, quickly to measure distance to landmarks and airports and to monitor fuel and time en route.

Study the chart in the vicinity of the track line for landmarks that you will easily be able to identify during the flight. Check the ground elevation along the route and select a flight altitude that will clear any high ground at sufficient altitude to comply with regulations and safety considerations. Check for any high rising obstructions such as broadcast towers and plan to fly at an altitude well above them. Be sure that your track does not proceed through a restricted area. Do as much preparation in advance as possible. Once in the air, you are kept busy flying the aeroplane.

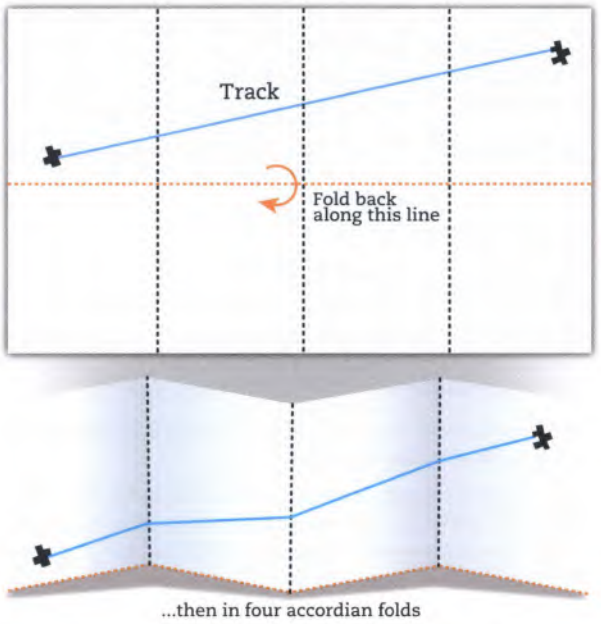


Fig.7.34 **Folding a Chart for Use in Flight**

Folding a Chart

A chart should be folded into a strip about eleven or twelve inches wide with the track lying somewhere about the centre of the strip.

It should then be folded "accordion" fashion, so that successive portions of the track can be read by turning the folds over one by one (Fig.7.34).

If more than one chart sheet is used, the sheets should be numbered and arranged in the order in which they will be required. This is important.

To Plot a Track between Points on Different Charts

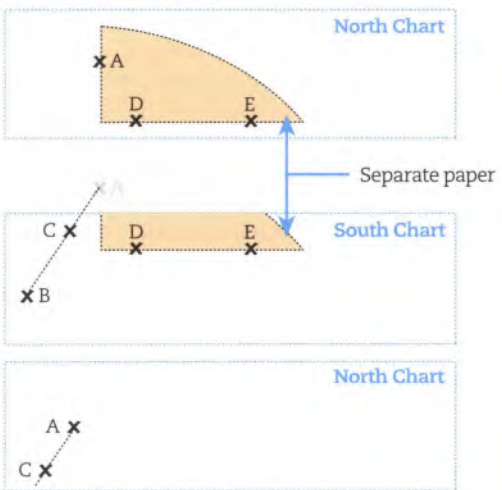


Fig.7.35 **Plotting a Track**

1. Lay a separate piece of paper over the north chart so that the side edge is aligned with A, one end of the required track (i.e. the point of departure or the destination). Mark A on the edge of the paper. On the bottom edge, mark D and E, two points common to both charts. There is an overlap of about 3 miles between the north and south portions of the chart.
2. Position the paper on the common points of the south chart. Using a ruler to connect A and B (the other end of the required track), draw a line from B to C near the edge of the chart, a common point on both charts.
3. Locate point C on the north chart and draw a line connecting C and A to complete the required track.

Landmarks

Water can be seen at great distance and offers the best landmark of all. During wet seasons, it must be remembered that flood areas may easily be mistaken for lakes. Some rivers and streams may be obscured by trees in summer and therefore be hard to identify.

Heights of land can be seen for very great distances but are not as numerous as other landmarks.

Roads are good landmarks but it is sometimes difficult to distinguish main roads from unimportant ones since even secondary roads are paved. Double lane throughways are very noticeable and are especially good landmarks. The intersection of two main roads is also a good landmark.

Railway lines do not show up as clearly as roads, but are less numerous and therefore serve as distinctive and useful landmarks. Railway crossings or junctions are especially prominent and present distinctive patterns.

Towns can usually be readily identified by shape, and particularly by the pattern of roads or railway lines entering or leaving them. Smoke haze over larger cities makes them sometimes very difficult to recognize, particularly in dull weather and when approaching them towards the sun.

Golf courses and race tracks are both fairly good landmarks and are possible emergency landing grounds for aeroplanes having reasonably low landing speeds.

Flying by Chart Reading

Skill in chart reading does not begin and end in the ability to pick out conspicuous landmarks and locate them on the chart.

Further, and most emphatically, **it does not consist of following the winding paths of rivers and railways**, in order to reach your destination. When visibility is normal, a well-trained pilot should be able to fly a direct route to the destination by chart reading alone.

Chart reading is a great deal more difficult at low altitudes than it is at higher ones, due to the relative nearness of the horizon and to the fact that pilots cannot see enough of the terrain at one glance to enable them to relate what they see to what is on their chart. When first practicing chart reading and cross-country navigation, flights should be conducted, at least, at 2 or 3 thousand feet above the ground.

When flying by chart reading, it is advisable to orient the chart to the direction in which the aeroplane is proceeding along its route, even though this may mean that the lettering on the chart is sideways or upside down.

7.4.6 Ten Degree Drift Lines

For the pilot who has carefully prepared his/her charts and determined his/her compass heading, following a track over the ground between the point of departure and the destination would be a simple matter except for one thing: the wind. The wind has a perverse habit of blowing from the right or from the left and displacing the aeroplane from its track. In order to compensate for the wind, it is necessary to adjust the heading of the aeroplane somewhat into wind in order to maintain the desired track. In effect, the aeroplane is flying slightly sideways along the required track. This is known as crab.

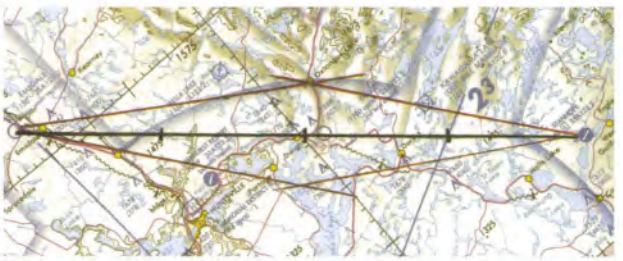


Fig.7.36 **Ten Degrees of Drift Lines**

Before taking off, the conscientious pilot gets a thorough weather briefing and learns from the briefer the expected direction and speed of the wind that will be encountered. He/she then calculates the heading to fly in order to make good the required track. (How to do this is explained in **Navigation Problems** later in this chapter.) Unfortunately, even that does not always solve the problems caused by the wind.

Because winds are often different than what they were forecast to be, pilots may find themselves off track a short time after starting off on the flight. Determining what heading to take up in order to get back on the required track and what heading to fly once back on track in order to reach the destination is simplified if pilots have drawn 10 degree drift lines on either side of the route they have laid out on the chart.

These lines, opening out from the departure point (or the point at which pilots set heading) and closing down to the destination, enable a pilot to estimate track errors and to determine what heading changes to make. Each of the lines makes an angle of 10 degrees with the track line. If you have used a black pen to draw the track line, use a red pen (or some other colour) to draw the 10 degree drift lines so that, during the flight, there is no chance of confusing the track with the 10 degree drift lines,

First of all, here are five terms that apply to these calculations:

1. Required Track. The proposed path of the aeroplane over the ground.
2. Track Made Good. The actual path of the aeroplane over the ground.
3. Track Error. The angle between the required track and the track made good, measured in degrees either left or right of the required track.
4. Opening Angle. The angle between the required track and the track made good.
5. Closing Angle. The angle between the old required track and the new required track necessary to arrive at the destination.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

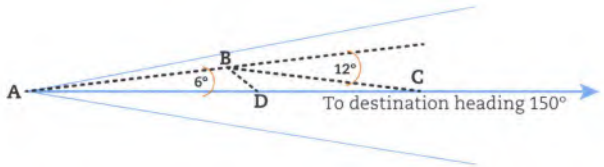


Fig.7.37 **Double Track Error Method & Visual Alteration Method of Regaining the Required Track**

The required track and the ten degree drift lines are drawn on a chart as shown in Fig.7.36. The airport at Emsdale is the point of departure and the destination is Stanhope. Ten nautical mile intervals have been marked on the track line to assist in distance calculations.

Having taken off from the airport of departure and flown for about 10 or 15 miles, you note that the aeroplane is not on the required track. You can change the heading either to return to the track or to fly directly to the destination on a new track. It is usually better, if you have not passed the halfway point, to return to the required track since this is the route that has been studied and prepared on the chart. There are two methods by which you can return to the required track: (1) the double track error method or (2) the visual alteration method.

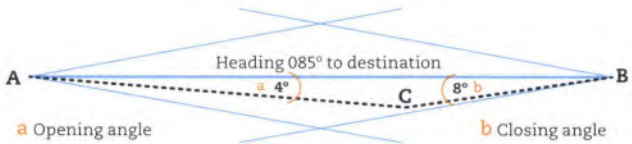


Fig.7.38 **Opening & Closing Angles Method**

The Double Track Error Method

Fig.7.37 depicts the double track error method of regaining the required track.

The heading necessary to fly the required track from point A to the destination is calculated to be 150 degrees. About 15 nautical miles from point A, you accurately pinpoint your position at B and estimate, using the ten degree drift lines as a guide, that the track error (or opening angle) of the track made good is about 6 degrees to the left of the required track. If you alter your heading by 6 degrees to the right and take up a heading of 156 degrees, you will be following a track that is parallel to the required track. In order to regain the required track, you need to double the track error; that is, you need to alter your heading by 12 degrees to the right and take up a new heading of 162 degrees (original heading of 150 degrees plus 12 degrees). You will regain the required track at C in approximately the same period of time as it took to reach position B from A. It is helpful if there are some terrain features along the track line to confirm that the required track has been regained. If there are none, you can assume that you have reached the required track at the calculated time. On regaining the track, you should subtract half of the correction applied to the original heading (162 degrees less half of 12 degrees) to establish the proper heading (156 degrees) to maintain the required track and reach your destination.

The Visual Alteration Method

If you can positively identify a landmark that is right on the required track, you may choose to regain the track by the visual alteration method. You establish your position at B (Fig.7.37) and note that the track error is about 6 degrees and that a heading of 156 degrees (the original heading plus the track error) would produce a track parallel to the required track. You then fly visually to the positively identified landmark (D). On reaching that point, you take up a heading of 156 degrees which should keep you on the required track right to your destination.

Opening & Closing Angles Method

Sometimes more than half the flight has been completed before you are able to determine your exact position. Perhaps there have been no terrain features on which to make a fix. In this case, you may choose to regain the required track by the visual alteration method or you may choose to fly directly to the destination using the opening and closing angles method.

After flying for more than half the calculated flight time, you are able to pinpoint your position at C (Fig.7.38). Using the 10 degree drift lines, you find your opening angle (a) to be about 4 degrees to the right of the required track. The closing angle (b) into the destination B appears to be about 8 degrees. In order to fly directly to B, add the opening angle and the closing angle and adjust your heading by this amount to the left. Your new heading would, therefore, be 073 degrees (085 degrees less 12 degrees).

The opening and closing angle method may be used at any distance along the track. It is not limited to use only after the halfway point has been passed.

7.4.7 "Two-Point" Method of Flying a Visual Range

When it is not possible to obtain a wind before departure or time does not permit plotting it, a satisfactory method of determining the heading to steer is that known as flying a visual range.

Two points are selected along the track about 5 or 10 miles apart. The pilot, having gained the altitude it is intended to maintain throughout the flight, flies a heading by map reading that will pass over these two points. The compass will then indicate the heading to steer for the balance of the flight. Other points along the route may be selected subsequently and a series of ranges flown. This method is particularly useful if it is necessary to alter heading during a flight to a destination other than that originally intended.

7.4.8 Return to Point of Departure

In order to return to the point of departure, a pilot needs to calculate the reciprocal of his/her outbound heading to determine the heading to take up for the homebound flight.

By reciprocal is meant the reverse, or opposite, of a given direction such as a heading, course or bearing.

The reciprocal is found by adding or subtracting 180; **adding** if the direction is 180 degrees or less, **subtracting** if it is greater than 180 degrees.

For Example:

Track ..... 187°
Reciprocal ..... 007°

However, determining the reciprocal of a heading is not so simple. Since wind drift allowance is the vital consideration in determining the heading to make good a particular track and since the wind will have quite a different effect in making good a reciprocal track, it can readily be seen that adding or

subtracting 180 from the heading is not the method to calculate the reciprocal heading. The approximate heading to steer to make good the reciprocal track may be calculated by the following method:

Calculate the reciprocal of the heading out and double the wind correction angle the opposite way.

If the wind correction angle out has been 5° to port, to double it the opposite way, you **add** 10° (to starboard) to the reciprocal of the heading out to obtain the heading home. (Any correction applied to the right, or starboard, or clockwise, is **added**.)

If the wind correction angle out has been 5° to starboard, you **subtract** 10° (to port) from the reciprocal of the heading out to obtain the heading home. (Any correction applied to the left, or port, or counterclockwise, is **subtracted**.)

Sample Problem

You are flying a compass heading of 122°. You run into bad icing conditions and decide to turn for home.

A glance at your flight plan tells you that your true heading is 117° and your track (true) is 122°.

The reciprocal of your heading is 297° (117° + 180° = 297°).

You have been steering 5° to port of your track (to correct for a drift of 5° to starboard).

To double the wind correction angle the opposite way, you would now steer 10° to starboard of 297°.

The true heading for home would therefore be 297° + 10° = 307°.

Using the same variation you had on your heading out and the deviation applicable to the new heading, you can now easily determine the compass heading to steer for home.

7.4.9 Groundspeed Check

By noting the distance between checkpoints along your route and keeping track of the time, the groundspeed may be found.

Fig.7.39 shows a small section of a chart on which is shown a portion of a flight track. At 10:24, the aeroplane passed over Kirkfield. At 10:43, it passed over Apsley. The distance from Kirkfield to Apsley is 39 nautical miles and the time taken to fly the distance was 19 minutes. The groundspeed, therefore, is 123 knots. Let us suppose that the destination is 82 nautical miles beyond Apsley. At a groundspeed of 123 knots, the flight should take a further 40 minutes and the aeroplane can expect to arrive at its destination at 11:23.

Fig.7.39 **Groundspeed Check**

7.4.10 The "One-in-Sixty" Rule

A pilot on a cross-country flight, who has got off track, will be able to estimate the distance he/she is off track quite easily, but it is very difficult to know how many degrees it is necessary to alter heading by compass to correct the error.

An error in the track of one degree will cause an error in position of about one mile in a distance of 60 miles.

Suppose an aeroplane is 2 miles off its track after travelling 30 miles. The error in the track will be roughly 4°. Therefore the correction to the compass heading will be 4° to correct the error. This will put the aeroplane on a track parallel to the required track but 2 miles from it. Suppose the aeroplane is 60 miles from its destination. An additional 2° correction to heading will gradually close the track. Therefore a total correction of 6° will bring the aeroplane in to its destination.

7.4.11 The Pilot Navigator

Flying alone in the cockpit of an aeroplane, a pilot cannot really handle cumbersome plotting instruments. The basic preparation for a flight, marking the route and studying it, must be done in advance. However, not all contingencies can be foreseen and it is often necessary to make calculations and estimates during the flight.

The ability to make accurate estimates is a skill that is learned with practice. During any flight, you should practice making such estimates. Frequently select towns, lakes, airports, etc., that are off course, estimate the distance they are from the aeroplane, what heading would be required to fly to them and how long it would take to make the flight. A good knowledge of the principles of navigation will enable you with practice to make very accurate mental calculations en route.

With good average visibility, favourable weather, and a good chart of the territory to be flown over, successful navigation depends on little more than the ability to read a chart in general terms.

With low visibility or over comparatively featureless country, however, steering an accurate heading by compass becomes of primary importance. Accurate chart reading is essential; the route and groundspeed must be checked frequently in order that the exact position of the aeroplane may be checked at frequent intervals.

7.5 Navigation Problems

7.5.1 Navigation Terms

Wind is air in motion, especially a mass of air having a common direction or motion. Wind moves horizontally. (A movement of air vertically is called a current.)

Indicated airspeed is the aeroplane's speed as indicated by the airspeed indicator.

True airspeed is the speed of the aeroplane relative to the air. It is calibrated airspeed corrected for the airspeed indicator error due to density and temperature.

Groundspeed is the speed of the aeroplane relative to the ground. An aeroplane is affected by wind. If there is no wind

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

at all, true airspeed and groundspeed will be the same. If, however, an aeroplane is flying in an air mass that is moving in the same direction, the aeroplane will have a tailwind that will help its progress over the ground, with the result that its groundspeed is in excess of the true airspeed. Conversely, a headwind will impede the progress of the aeroplane over the ground with the result that the groundspeed is slower than the true airspeed.

The heading of an aeroplane is the angle between the longitudinal axis of the aeroplane at any moment and a meridian. In other words, it is the direction the nose of the aeroplane is pointing, measured from an imaginary line running north and south. If the heading is measured from a true meridian, it is referred to as a true heading, if from a magnetic meridian, as a magnetic heading. If it is measured from the direction of a compass needle, it is referred to as a compass heading. The angle is measured clockwise through 360°.

The track (intended) is the direction an aeroplane intends to travel over the ground. The intended track may be represented by a straight line drawn on a chart. Its direction is the angle between this line and a meridian measured clockwise through 360°. As in the case of headings, tracks are named **true**, **magnetic** or **compass** with reference to the meridian from which they are measured.

The track made good is the actual path travelled by the aeroplane over the ground. Like the intended track, it may be represented by a line drawn on a chart and (provided it is a reasonably straight line) its direction measured from a true or magnetic meridian or compass north.

Drift. A wind blowing from either the starboard or port side of an aeroplane will cause the aeroplane to drift away from its intended track. In order to maintain the intended track, it is necessary to turn the aeroplane slightly into wind to compensate for the force acting laterally upon it. Drift (or drift angle) is the angle between the heading being flown and the track made good over the ground. In other words, it is the angle at which the pilot heads the aeroplane across the track to keep the wind from blowing him/her off the track. It is expressed in degrees either port or starboard.

A true meridian is a meridian on the surface of the earth joining the true north and south poles. On practically all charts used for air navigation purposes, the true meridians are shown.

A magnetic meridian is the direction in which a compass needle will lie when influenced only by the earth's magnetic field. In actual practice, magnetic meridians are not shown on charts but are found by adding or subtracting the variation at any particular place to or from the true meridian. (Variation is indicated on charts by isogonic lines, which are lines joining all places of equal variation.)

Compass north is the direction in which a particular compass needle will lie when influenced by both the earth's magnetic field and local magnetic influences (deviation) in the aeroplane. The actual reading on a compass at any time is the angle between compass north and the direction the aeroplane is heading.

Azimuth means direction measured as an angle clockwise from a meridian. It is the same as a bearing. The azimuth, or bearing, may be true, magnetic or compass.

7.5.2 The Composition of Velocities

The velocity of a body is the rate of change of position of a body in a given direction; hence it involves both speed and direction.

A velocity may be represented by a straight line. The direction may be shown by the direction of the line and the speed by the length of the line to scale.

The straight line referred to above which represents the velocity of a body may also be referred to as a vector. A vector may be defined as a quantity having both magnitude and direction. In aviation, vectors almost invariably represent speed and direction (or, in other words, velocity).

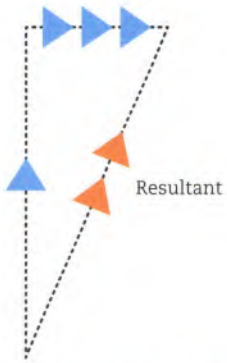


Fig.7.40 **Composition of Velocities**

A body may be subjected to two or more velocities at the same time and these may not act in the same straight line.

For example, an aeroplane may be flying on a heading due north at 80 knots with a wind blowing from the west at 20 knots. The aeroplane will have two velocities, one towards the north at 80 knots and the other towards the east at 20 knots.

These two velocities are equivalent to a single velocity which is called the resultant. The resultant, in this case, would represent the track and groundspeed of the aeroplane (Fig.7.40).

When the components act in the same straight line, the resultant is obtained by addition or subtraction. When the components act in other than the same straight line, the resultant may be found by a triangle of velocities.

The Triangle of Velocities

If a moving point possesses, simultaneously, velocities representing speed and direction, these may be represented by two sides of a triangle (AB and BC in Fig.7.41). They are, then, equivalent to a resultant velocity represented by the third side (AC).

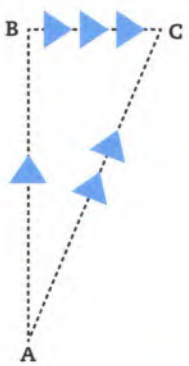


Fig.7.41 **Triangle of Velocities**

Arrowheads should always be used to show the direction of the components clearly. A single arrowhead represents the heading of the aeroplane. Double arrowheads represent its track. Triple arrowheads indicate the wind.

The solution of navigational wind and drift problems is based on the principal of the triangle of velocities.

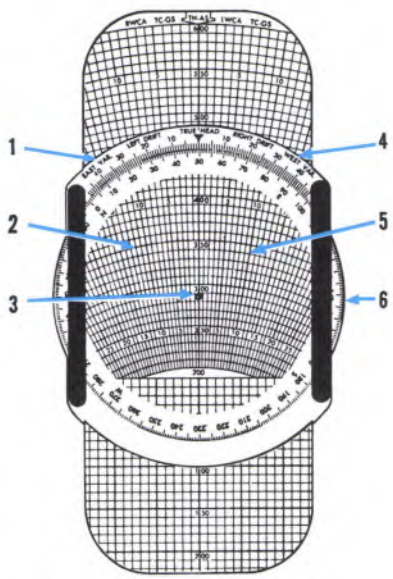
The **heading and true airspeed** of an aeroplane can be represented by one side of a triangle. The **wind and windspeed**, drawn to the same scale, can be represented by another, and the **track and groundspeed** by the third.

A knowledge of any four of these is sufficient to complete the triangle, from which the remaining two may be determined.

In setting out a navigation problem involving a triangle of velocities, it is essential that all units of distance and speed be compatible. For example, all speed units must be in knots if the distance measurements are in nautical miles. Conversion tables for converting statute to nautical miles (or vice versa) appear on the final pages of this book.

7.5.3 The Flight Computer: Wind Side

Wind and drift problems may be solved on navigation computers in a fraction of the time it takes to plot them on paper. All pilots should be able to use a navigation computer and this section is written with the assumption that students have a computer available.



1. Variation Scale.
2. Speed Lines.
3. Grommet.
4. Drift Scale.
5. Drift Lines.
6. Compass Rose.

Fig.7.42 **Dead Reckoning Computer: Wind Drift Side**

Such a navigation computer (for example, the popular E6-B) is commonly known as a dead reckoning computer. One side of the computer is a circular slide rule. The other side is a wind drift computer (shown in Fig.7.42). The wind side of the computer is used to solve the wind and drift problems that follow.

The instrument has a compass rose which can be rotated. The dial inside the compass rose is a transparent window on which pencil marks can be made and erased. In the centre of the window is a dot with a ring around it, the grommet, which is a reference point used in plotting. Through the window can be seen a grid marked out in concentric arcs and radial lines. This is printed on a sliding plastic strip. The concentric arcs represent speed in mph or knots and will be referred to as speed lines. The radial lines represent degrees of drift to right or left and will be referred to as drift lines. At the top is a scale graduated in degrees of drift to right or left, the wind correction angle (WCA) scale. This may also be used as a variation scale to apply magnetic variation, east or west. In the centre is an arrow referred to as the true index (on some computers, it is called the true head).

Any navigation problem which can be plotted can be solved on the computer, including multiple drift, off-course, radius of action, interception, etc. Basic problems of primary interest to the pilot-navigator only are dealt with in the text which follows.

7.5.4 Solving Problems with the Wind & Drift Computer

Headings, Speeds & Winds

In the sample problems that follow, the techniques required to find the heading to steer to make good a given track, and to find the groundspeed when the airspeed and the wind and the windspeed are known, are explained. Plotting methodology and computer (E6-B) techniques are described to arrive at the solutions.

SAMPLE PROBLEM 1

A Skylark Deluxe is to proceed from Niagara Falls to Toronto Island airport. The intended track (true) is 332°. The true airspeed of the aeroplane is 85 knots. The wind is 280° (true) at 25 knots. (Note that the direction of the wind is the direction from which it blows.)

What is the heading to steer and what is the groundspeed?

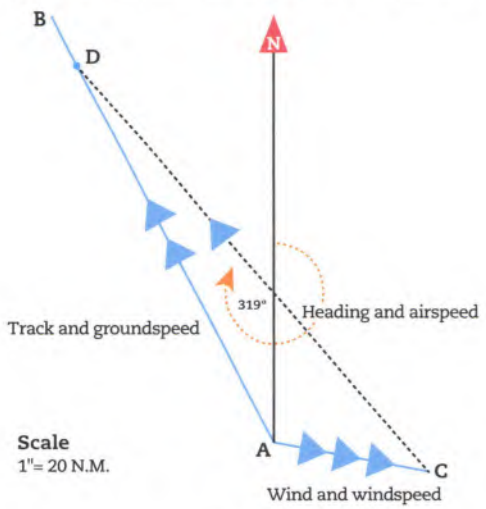


Fig.7.43

Solution by Plotting:

First draw a vertical line to represent a true meridian on your plotting paper and mark the scale you are using in one corner. This applies to the solution of all wind and drift problems.

1. From A, draw A-B, 332° to represent the true track (Fig.7.43).
2. From A, draw A-C at 280° to the meridian but downwind from A. The line A-C, therefore, is drawn at an angle of 100° to the true meridian. Draw the line A-C 25 n.m. to scale to represent the wind and windspeed.
3. With C as centre and radius 85 n.m. (the true airspeed), describe an arc cutting A-B at D. Join C-D.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Therefore, in the triangle A-C-D, A-C represents the wind and windspeed, C-D the heading and true airspeed and A-D the track and groundspeed.

The heading to steer is the angle C-D makes with the meridian, which is 319°. This heading will be correct whatever the distance to be flown, so long as the wind and the airspeed of the aircraft remain constant.

The heading to steer by compass is found by applying the variation and deviation to the true heading.

The drift is the angle between the heading and the track. In this case, it is 13° to starboard.

The length of the line A-D represents the groundspeed, which is 67 knots

The time taken is found by dividing the total distance by the groundspeed and multiplying by 60. Toronto Island is 39 n.m. from Niagara Falls. The estimated elapsed time would therefore be: (39 ÷ 67) x 60 = 35 minutes.

Solution by Computer:

1. Set the wind direction (280°) on the compass rose opposite the true index.
2. Move the slide so that any convenient whole number shows under the grommet (centre of the disc).
3. Draw a line up from the grommet 25 units in length to represent the wind speed and draw an arrow at the end of the line (Fig.7.44).
4. Set the true track (332°) at the true index.
5. Set the arrowhead of the wind line on the 85 knot speed line (the true airspeed of the aeroplane) (Fig.7.45).
6. Read the groundspeed at the grommet — 67 knots.
7. From the drift line passing through the arrowhead of the wind line, read the wind correction angle (angle between the heading and the track). The heading is 13° to the **left** of track. The wind correction angle is 13° left.
8. Read the true heading on the wind correction angle (WCA) scale left at the 13° mark — 319° (Fig.7.46).

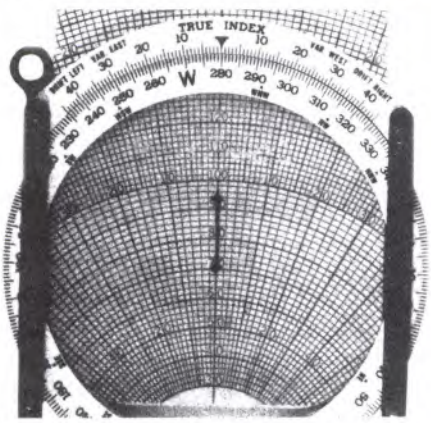


Fig.7.44

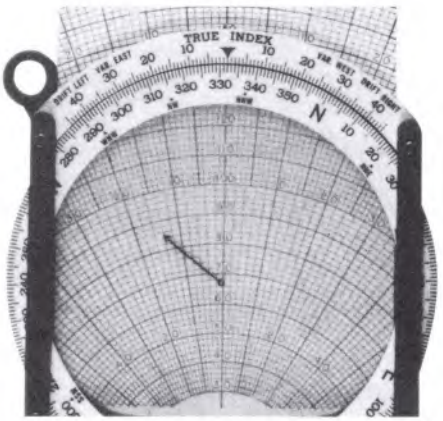


Fig.7.45

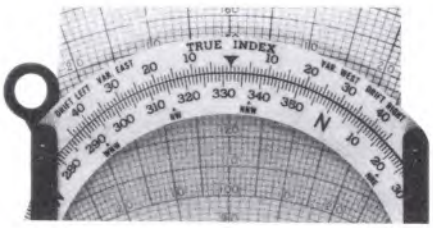


Fig.7.46

SAMPLE PROBLEM 2

Suppose that it is desired to leave Niagara Falls and arrive at Toronto Island airport at a specified time, in other words, to make good a given groundspeed.

The true track is 332°. The wind is 280° (true) at 25 knots. The groundspeed required is 67 knots. What is the heading to steer and the true airspeed?

Solution by Plotting:

1. Draw A-C (Fig.7.43) to represent the wind and windspeed.
2. Draw A-D to represent the track and groundspeed.
3. Join C and D. C-D is the heading to steer (319°) and the true airspeed is 85 knots.

Solution by Computer:

1. Set the wind direction (280°) under the true index.
2. Draw a wind vector up from the grommet to the proper length to represent 25 knots and draw an arrow at the end of the line.
3. Rotate the compass rose until the true track (332°) is set at the true index.
4. Move the slide until the grommet is on the speed line representing 67 knots.
5. Read the drift at the arrowhead of the wind vector line — 13° left.
6. Read the true heading on the WCA scale left at the 13° mark — 319°.
7. Read the true airspeed at the speed line under the arrowhead — 85 knots.

SAMPLE PROBLEM 3

To find the wind and windspeed, knowing the heading and true airspeed and the track and groundspeed.

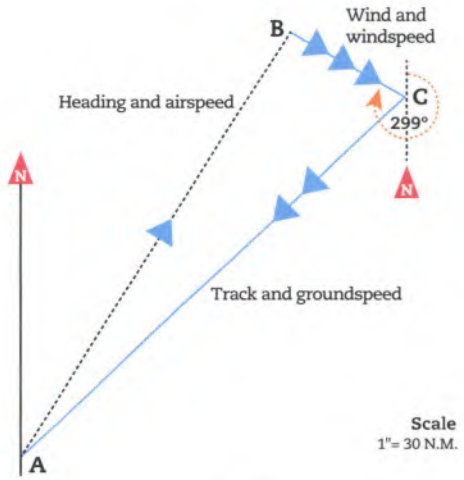


Fig.7.47

A Nav Air Tutor is flying on a heading of 033° magnetic, at a cruising speed of 95 knots. It is making good a track of 048° magnetic and a groundspeed of 100 knots. What is the wind and windspeed?

Solution by Plotting:

1. From A draw A-B, 033°, 95 knots to scale, to represent the heading and true airspeed (Fig.7.47).
2. From A draw A-C, 048°, 100 knots to scale to represent the track and groundspeed.
3. Join B-C.

The angle B-C makes with the meridian (transferred) represents the wind and windspeed — from 299° magnetic at 26 knots.

The direction of the wind is always from the heading to the track.

Solution by Computer:

1. Set the track (048° magnetic) opposite the true index.
2. Move the slide until the 100 knot speed line (representing the groundspeed) is under the grommet.
3. Mark a cross at the intersection of the 95 knot speed line and the appropriate drift line.
4. Compare the heading and the track. If the heading is to the left of the track, use the left drift lines. If the heading is to the right of the track, use the right drift lines. In this case, the heading is 15° to the left of the track. Therefore, mark a cross at the intersection of the 95 knot speed line and the 15° left drift line.
5. Rotate the compass rose until the cross is on the centreline above the grommet.
6. Read the wind direction (299° magnetic) opposite the true index and the windspeed (26 knots) on the centreline between the cross and the grommet.

7.5.5 The Flight Computer: Circular Slide Rule Side

Navigation calculations are much simplified by the use of an E6-B computer. The wind drift side of the computer has already been discussed. The other side is a circular slide rule.

Fig.7.48 **The Circular Slide Rule**

The circular slide rule, illustrated in Fig.7.48, is logarithmic in principle and can be used to solve any problem of multiplication, division or proportion. From a navigational point of view, its value lies in the rapid solution of time, speed, distance and conversion problems.

Note that the slide rule consists of three scales. The outer scale is fixed to the computer. The two inner scales are printed together on a disc that may be rotated to any position opposite the outer scale.

The outer scale represents miles, gallons, true airspeed and corrected altitude. The inner scale represents time in minutes, calibrated airspeed and calibrated altitude. The third scale represents time in hours and minutes.

The figures on a slide rule may represent any proportion or multiple of ten. 10 on the outer scale may therefore represent 1, 10, or 100. 45 on the inner scale may represent 4.5, 45, or 450. In the latter case, if 450 represented 450 minutes, the equivalent hours and minutes could be read directly on the third scale as 7 hrs. 30 min.

7.5.6 Solving Problems with the Circular Slide Rule

Time, Speed & Distance

For time, speed and distance problems, the outer scale represents miles, the inner scale minutes and the third scale hours and minutes. In such problems, there are three variables: time, distance and speed. Two must be known to solve a problem.

To find the distance when the groundspeed (140 kts) and the time (48 mins) are known, set 140 on the outer scale opposite 60 (the black arrow) on the inner scale. Read the distance on the outer (miles) scale opposite 48 on the inner (minutes) scale. The distance is 112 n.m.

To find the elapsed time when the groundspeed (146 kts) and the distance (100 n.m.) are known, set 146 on the outer scale opposite 60 (the black arrow) on the inner scale. Read the time on the inner (minutes) scale opposite 100 (10) on the outer (miles) scale. The elapsed time is 41 minutes.

To find the groundspeed when the distance (30 n.m.) and the time (15.5 minutes) are known, set 30 on the outer scale

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

opposite 15.5 on the inner scale. Read the groundspeed on the outer (miles) scale opposite 60 (the black arrow) on the inner (minutes) scale. The groundspeed is 116 knots.

Fuel Consumption

To solve problems relating to fuel consumption, the outer scale may be used to represent gallons and the inner scale to represent time.

To find endurance when the consumption in gallons per hour (16) and the quantity of fuel (72 gallons) are known, set 16 on the outer scale opposite 60 (the black arrow) on the inner scale. Opposite 72 on the outer scale, read the endurance on the inner scale. The answer is 270 minutes, or 4 hours and 30 minutes.

To find fuel consumption when the amount of fuel consumed (12 gallons) in a given time (2 hr. 21 min.) is known, set 12 on the outer scale opposite 2 hr. 21 min. on the third scale. Read the fuel consumption in gallons on the outer scale opposite 60 on the inner scale. The fuel consumption is 5.1 gallons per hour.

Conversion

To convert nautical to statute miles, the nautical and statute mile indexes will be found on the outer scale (towards the left-hand side in Fig.7.48). Set any figure on the inner scale representing nautical miles opposite the nautical mile index and read the corresponding statute miles on the inner scale opposite the statute mile index. Or, to convert statute miles to nautical miles, set the figure representing statute miles opposite the statute miles index and read the corresponding nautical miles opposite the nautical mile index.

To convert imperial to U.S. gallons, mark 10 (for 1) on the inner scale as the imperial gallons index and 12 (for 1.2) as the U.S. gallons index. Set any figure on the outer scale (7.2 imp. gals. for example) opposite 10 on the inner scale. The figure on the outer scale that is opposite 12 will be the corresponding U.S. gallons. Answer: 8.65 U.S. gals.

To convert litres to U.S. gallons, mark 10 (for 1) on the inner scale as the litre index and 26.4 (for 0.264) as the U.S. gallons index. Set any figure on the outer scale (89 litres for example) opposite 10 on the inner scale. The figure on the outer scale that is opposite 26.4 will be the corresponding U.S. gallons. In this case, 23.5 U.S. gallons.

To convert litres to imperial gallons, mark 10 (for 1) on the inner scale as the litre index and 22 (for 0.22) as the imperial gallons index. Set any figure on the outer scale (75 litres for example) opposite 10 on the inner scale. The figure on the outer scale that is opposite 22 will be the corresponding imperial gallons. In this case, 16.5 imperial gallons.

To convert Celsius to Fahrenheit, this conversion cannot be worked on the slide rule. Practically all navigation computers, however, have a Celsius to Fahrenheit conversion table printed on them. For the computer illustrated in Fig.7.48, the table is printed on the reverse side.

Altitude Correction

The pressure altimeter used in aeroplanes is a relatively accurate instrument. However, it is calibrated to indicate the true altitude in ICAO Standard Atmosphere conditions (i.e. perfectly dry air with a MSL pressure of 29.92 inches of mercury and a MSL temperature of 15°C and standard lapse rate). With the subscale that is incorporated into the pressure altimeter, the pilot can correct for changes in atmospheric pressure but cannot correct for temperatures varying from that of standard atmosphere. In fact, the only time an altimeter correctly registers altitude is when the aircraft is sitting on the ground at an airport for which the current altimeter setting has been set on the subscale of the altimeter that is calibrated absolutely accurately. Whenever an aircraft is in flight, the altitude indication of an altimeter is in error.

The amount of error depends on the degree to which the average temperature of the column of air between the aircraft and the ground differs from the average temperature of the standard atmosphere of the same column of air.

To calculate true altitude using a computer, it is necessary to know the pressure altitude. Alter the subscale on the sensitive altimeter to read 29.92 and read the pressure altitude. Set the pressure altitude against the outside air temperature in the computer window marked "For Altitude Computations."

Calculate the difference between the published altitude of the airport for which you have set the current altimeter setting and the indicated altitude on the altimeter. Opposite that figure on the calibrated altitude scale (inner scale), read the true altitude on the corrected altitude scale (outer scale).

For Example:

> Indicated altitude is 8,500 feet. Pressure altitude is 9,000 feet. The elevation of the airport for which the altimeter setting is set on the altimeter is 2,600 feet. The outside air temperature at flight level is -25°C.

1. Set the pressure altitude of 9,000 feet against the OAT, -25°C, in the altitude computations window.
2. The temperature error occurs only in the airspace between ground level (at 2,600 feet) and the indicated altitude at flight level (at 8,500 feet), that is, in 5,900 feet of airspace.
3. Opposite 5,900 feet (59) on the inner scale, read 5,450 (54.5) on the outer scale.
4. Add the 2,600 feet previously deducted as being errorless to the figure 5,450 to find the true altitude of 8,050 feet ASL (5,450 + 2,600) at flight level.

Airspeed Correction

The airspeed indicator is also subject to error as a result of temperature and the decreasing density of the air with altitude.

To find true airspeed, set the flight level air temperature opposite the flight level pressure altitude in the computer window marked "For Airspeed Computations". Pressure altitude is obtained by setting the reading 29.92 on the subscale of the sensitive altimeter. Convert the indicated airspeed (IAS) to calibrated airspeed (CAS) using the airspeed correction table in your Pilot's Operating Handbook. Read the true airspeed on the outer scale opposite the figure representing the calibrated airspeed on the inner scale.

For Example:

> Pressure altitude is 16,000 feet. Temperature is -10°C. A calibrated airspeed of 200 knots is equivalent to a true airspeed of 260 knots.

Density Altitude

The performance data published in the Pilot's Operating Handbook is related to standard atmosphere (29.92 inches of mercury at 15°C at sea level). Any increase in temperature or altitude means a decrease in the aircraft's optimum performance, since air density decreases with both altitude and temperature. Knowing the density altitude at the airport from which you are operating is therefore of special importance in determining the required take-off and landing distances. If both elevation and temperature are high, the available runway may be insufficient for the performance capabilities of your aeroplane.

Density altitude is pressure altitude corrected for temperature.

To find density altitude, set the pressure altitude opposite the air temperature in the computer window marked "For Airspeed Computations".

For Example:

> Pressure altitude is 6,000 feet. Temperature is 20°C. The density altitude, read in the little window marked "Density Alt", is 8,000 feet.

7.5.7 Solving Navigation Problems

Fuel Hours

Many navigation problems are based on fuel hours combined with the wind drift problems which we have already studied. The fundamental factors required for the solution of all fuel hour problems are:

1. The fuel consumption.
2. The quantity of fuel available in the tanks.
3. The groundspeed of the aeroplane.

The **time** the aeroplane can fly on its available fuel (less reserve) can be found from 1 and 2.

The **distance** the aeroplane can fly in that time can be found from 3.

SAMPLE PROBLEM 1

A pilot starts to fly from Winnipeg, Manitoba to Regina, Saskatchewan. The track is 277° true and the distance is 288 nautical miles. The plane has a cruising speed of 120 knots. Fuel capacity is 45 gallons. Fuel consumption is 11 gallons per hour. Unable to get a forecast wind, the pilot assumes no wind. At the end of 28 minutes, the aircraft is over Portage La Prairie. With this wind, the pilot is anxious to know if there is sufficient fuel to reach Regina without drawing on the 45 min. reserve.

Solution:

Fuel capacity is 45 gallons. Fuel consumption is 11 gal/hr. Using the circular slide rule, the fuel hours on board are calculated to be 246 minutes, or 4 hours 6 minutes. Deduct 45 minutes for reserve, and the safe fuel hours available are 3 hours 21 minutes.

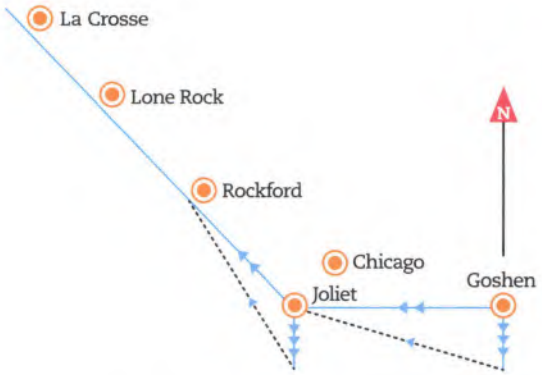


Fig.7.49 **Fuel Hours Problem**

Portage La Prairie is 42 n.m. from Winnipeg. The aeroplane has covered this distance in 28 minutes. Its groundspeed therefore is 90 knots.

At a groundspeed of 90 knots, the flight from Winnipeg to Regina (288 nautical miles) will take 3 hours 11 minutes which is sufficient to reach Regina without drawing on the aeroplane's 45 min. reserve.

SAMPLE PROBLEM 2

A pilot wishes to fly from Goshen, Indiana to Fargo, N.D., via Joliet, Illinois, along the airways. He/she wishes to know the farthest point attainable along the route before refuelling. A schematic diagram of the route is shown in Fig.7.49.

The aeroplane has a cruising speed (true) of 100 knots. Its fuel capacity is 25 gallons and its consumption 5.5 gals/hr. The wind is from the north at 30 knots.

Solution:

The aeroplane's endurance, found by using the circular slide rule, is 272 minutes. Deduct 45 minutes for reserve and the safe endurance is 227 minutes.

The track from Goshen to Joliet is 270°T and the distance is 107 nautical miles. By plotting or by wind drift computer, the groundspeed on the leg to Joliet is found to be 95 knots. At this groundspeed, the elapsed time to Joliet will be 68 minutes. Safe fuel hours remaining are 159 minutes (227 min. less 68 min.).

The track from Joliet towards Fargo is approximately 316°T. Using the same wind, by plotting or by wind drift computer, the groundspeed on this leg will be found to be 77 knots. At this groundspeed, in 154 minutes the plane will travel 198 n.m. The airport safely nearest this distance along the track is La Crosse (197 n.m.).

Radius of Action (R/A)

The radius of action (R/A) is the maximum ground distance an aircraft can fly outwards from a datum point before returning to the same or another datum point under given conditions of wind, true airspeed, fuel consumption and a given quantity of fuel.

The fundamental questions in determining the time to turn in order to reach its base at a given time are: when and where shall the turn be made and what will be the course back.

The radius of action problem presented here deals with an aircraft that will return to its point of departure. Radius of action problems may also involve a return of the aircraft to a second base.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

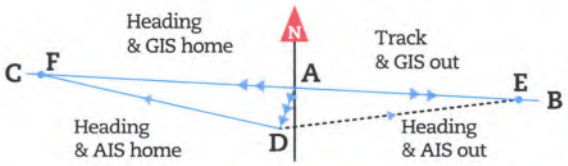


Fig.7.50 **Radius of Action**

SAMPLE PROBLEM

The problem is to find the R/A along a track, 093 true. Wind from 020 T at 20 knots. Cruising speed 110 knots. Fuel endurance 5 hours (i.e., 4 hours 15 minutes plus reserve).

Solution by Plotting:

1. From A (Fig.7.50) draw A-B 93° (to represent the track out) and extend it back to some point C (to represent the track home).
2. From A, draw A-D at 020° to the meridian (the wind line is always drawn downwind), 20 knots to scale.
3. With centre D, and radius 110 knots (the true airspeed) describe arcs cutting A-B and A-C at E and F. Join D-E and D-F.

A-E = Groundspeed Out = 102 kts.

A-F = Groundspeed Home = 114 kts.

The safe fuel hours = 5 hours, less 45 min. reserve, which is 4 hrs. 15 min., or 4.25 hrs.

Formula for The Radius of Action
(R/A): F x [(O x H) ÷ (O + H)]

Where

F = Safe fuel hours.
O = Groundspeed out.
H = Groundspeed home.

Therefore, using the formula above:

R/A = 4.25 x [(102 x 114) ÷ (102 + 114)]
= 4.25 x (11628 ÷ 216) = 229 n.m.

The heading to steer out is 083°T (D-E)

The heading to steer home is 283°T (D-F)

Formula for Time to Turn
R/A ÷ O

Therefore, the time to turn is 229 ÷ 102, or 2.24 hrs. or 2 hr. 14 min.

Solution by Computer:

The solution of this type of problem, requiring the use of both sides of the computer, is broken down into two steps:

Wind-vector calculation, which computes the true heading and groundspeed outbound and inbound; and

Radius-of-action calculation, which computes time to turn and the radius-of-action distance.

1. Set up a wind triangle as in wind drift problem 1, using a wind velocity of 020° at 20 knots, true track of 093° and a true airspeed of 110 knots, to determine heading and groundspeed.
2. The drift is 10° left.
3. Read true heading out (083°) at the 10° mark on the WCA Scale Left.
4. Read the groundspeed out (102 knots) at the grommet.
5. To determine the true heading for the return flight, rotate the compass rose until the reciprocal of the true track outbound (273°) is opposite the true index. To find the reciprocal of a true track, add or subtract 180 degrees. Therefore, the reciprocal of the true track 093° is 273° (093 + 180). Note: on a reciprocal heading, the drift will be opposite in direction.
6. Reposition the slide to place the arrowhead of the wind vector line at the intersection of the 110 knot speed line (the true airspeed) and the 10° right drift line.
7. Read the groundspeed (114 knots) at the grommet.
8. Read the true heading home (283°) at the 10° mark on the WCA Scale Right.

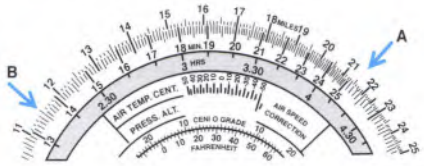


Fig.7.51

This completes the solution of groundspeed and true heading, outbound and inbound. The remainder of the problem is solved on the circular slide rule part of the computer.

9. Opposite the safe endurance time of the aeroplane (4 hrs. 15 mins.) on the inner scale (A in Fig.7.51), set the sum of the groundspeed out and the groundspeed home (which is 216 knots) on the outer scale.
10. Opposite the groundspeed home (114 knots) on the outer scale, read the time until time-to-turn in minutes on the inner scale (134 mins. or 2 hrs. 14 mins.). See B on Fig.7.51.

Therefore on the outbound flight, you can fly for 2 hrs. and 14 mins. before you must turn back.

11. To determine the distance flown in this time, place the groundspeed out (102 knots) on the outer scale opposite the pointer on the inner scale. Opposite the time (134 minutes) allowed for the outbound flight on the inner scale, read the distance on the outer scale, 229 nautical miles.

229 nautical miles is the radius of action.

Point of No Return

On long flights over oceans, jungles, or featureless country such as the Arctic, there is a point somewhere along the track beyond which, if trouble occurs, there is insufficient fuel remaining to return to base and it is mandatory to go on. This is called the point of no return. If the trouble is due to weather or some other cause which doesn't impair the performance of the aeroplane, this point is the time to turn which was determined in the radius of action problem above.

Critical Point

An aeroplane forced to turn back might be in difficulties (such as the loss of an engine in a multi-engine aeroplane) and be forced to fly at less than its normal cruising speed.

In an emergency such as this, there is little time for calculation. The reduced airspeed of the aeroplane in distress should therefore be anticipated in advance. A good figure to assume is 60% of normal cruise speed. The critical point is a position somewhere along the route between two air bases from which it is **equally quick** to fly to either base. Based on a reduced airspeed, a predetermined critical point will enable a pilot in distress to instantly make up his/her mind whether it is advisable to turn back or to continue on.

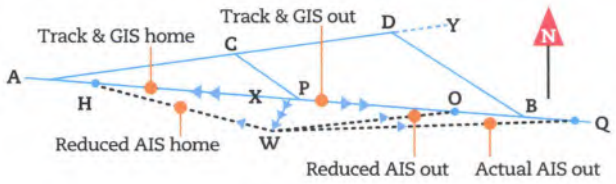


Fig.7.52 **Critical Point**

SAMPLE PROBLEM

An aeroplane cruising at a true airspeed of 250 knots is flying from A to B along a track of 095° T, a distance of 1,800 n.m. The average wind over the route is estimated to be from 030° T at 30 knots. The reduced airspeed is assumed to be 60% of the normal cruise speed, or 150 knots.

Solution by Plotting:

1. Draw A-B, the intended track, 095°, 1,800 n.m. to any convenient scale (Fig.7.52).
2. From some point X draw XW, 030°, 30 knots (the wind down-wind). For convenience, a much larger scale can be used to plot this portion of the problem than that used to draw the line A-B.
3. With centre W and radius 150 n.m. (the reduced airspeed), describe arcs cutting X-B and X-A at O and H. Join W-O and W-H.W-O is the heading to steer out, 085°T.

   W-H is the heading to steer home, 285°T.

   X-O is the reduced groundspeed out, 135 kts.

   X-H is the reduced groundspeed home, 159 kts.
4. Draw any line A-Y inclined to A-B and mark off A-C equal to X-H, and C-D equal to X-O.
5. Join D to B. Through C draw a line parallel to D-B cutting A-B at P. P is the critical point. It is 973 n.m. from A.
6. With centre W and radius 250 knots (the true airspeed), describe an arc cutting A-B (produced) at Q. Join W-Q. W-Q is the actual groundspeed out, 236 knots.

The time to turn is the time to fly 973 n.m. at the actual groundspeed out, i.e.: 973 ÷ 236 = 4.12 hr. (4 hr. 7 min.)

Fig.7.53

Solution by Computer:

1. Set up a wind triangle as in wind drift problem 1, using the true airspeed of 250 knots.
2. Read the groundspeed of 236 knots at the grommet.
3. Set up a wind triangle as in wind drift problem 1, using the reduced airspeed of 150 knots.
4. The drift is 10° left.
5. Read the true heading out (085°) at the 10° mark on the WCA scale left.
6. Read the reduced groundspeed out (135 knots) at the grommet.
7. To determine the inbound heading and groundspeed, rotate the compass rose to set the reciprocal track (095° + 180° = 275°) at the true index.
8. Reposition the slide to place the arrow head of the wind vector line at the intersection of the 150 knot speed line and the 10° right drift line.
9. Read the reduced groundspeed home (159 knots) at the grommet. Read the true heading home (285°) at the 10° mark on the WCA scale right.

On the circular slide rule side of the computer:

10. Place the reduced groundspeed home on the outer scale opposite the reduced groundspeed out on the inner scale. See A on Fig.7.53.
11. Search the slide rule for two numbers such that their sum will equal the total distance between the two points. One figure will be the distance from the base to the critical point, and the other will be the distance from the critical point to the destination. As to which figure is the one to choose as the critical point, visualize the effect of the wind.

In this case, we find that 973 on the outer scale corresponds with 827 on the inner scale, their sum equalling 1,800 nautical miles which is the total distance. The wind is a tail wind for the flight home and therefore the choice for the critical point is 973 nautical miles. See B on Fig.7.53.

12. The time to the critical point is found by dividing the distance found in Step 11 (out to the critical point) by the normal ground-speed out (found in Step 2 to be 236 knots). On the computer, set the pointer opposite 236 and read the time opposite 973. The answer is 247 mins, or 4 hrs. 7 mins.

The critical point, therefore, is 973 nautical miles from base, and the time to turn is 4 hours and 7 minutes.

Formula for the Critical Point:
$P = (D \times H) \div (O + H)$

Therefore, P = (1,800 x 159) ÷ (135 + 159) = 973 n.m.

Formula for Time to Turn: P ÷ G

Therefore, the time to turn is 973 ÷ 236 = 4.12 hrs. (4 hr. 7 min.).

Where

P = the critical point.
D = the total distance to fly.
O = the reduced groundspeed out.
H = the reduced groundspeed home.
G = the actual groundspeed out.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Calculating the Climb or Descent

An aeroplane's airspeed is reduced during its climb and sometimes during a portion of its descent from cruising altitude. Its groundspeed is similarly affected. In planning a cross-country flight, the climb and descent vectors (that is, the portions of the flight required for climb and letdown) should each be calculated as separate time and distance problems, using the average wind and average airspeed temperature correction during the climb or letdown. The three separate segments of the flight should then be added to find the total time (time during climb + time at cruising altitude + time during letdown = total elapsed time). This may prove too time-consuming for the average pilot-navigator. A general rule that you may find helpful is: compute your flying time for the total distance using your true airspeed and the wind at cruising altitude. Then add 1 minute per 1,000 ft. of cruising altitude above the elevation of the airport at point of take-off to allow for time lost in climb and letdown. For example: cruising altitude, 7,000 ft. less elevation of airport, 1,000 ft. = 6,000 ft. Add 1 min/1,000 ft. which is 6 minutes to your total time to allow for climb and letdown.

SAMPLE PROBLEM 1

An aeroplane is flying towards its home airport where the elevation is 1,267 feet MSL (above mean sea level). It is flying at an altitude of 10,000 feet MSL, at a groundspeed of 165 knots. The pilot wishes to descend at a rate of 400 feet per minute and arrive over the airport at 1,000 feet above the ground, maintaining a constant groundspeed of 120 knots. How many minutes before the estimated time of arrival over the airport should the descent to be started?

Solution:

The airport has a field elevation of 1,267 feet MSL. Therefore 1,000 feet above ground will be 1,267 + 1,000 = 2,267 feet above sea level.

The pilot's descent will be 10,000 - 2,267 = 7,733 feet. At a rate of 400 feet/min., the time required to letdown will be 7,733÷400 = 19.3 minutes.

SAMPLE PROBLEM 2

After landing, the pilot referred to above decides to take off again and climb to a cruising altitude of 9,000 feet MSL, at a rate of 300 feet/min. In the climb, he/she makes good a groundspeed of 165 knots. How far, in nautical miles, will he/she be from the airport when he/she reaches cruising altitude?

Solution:

The airport has an elevation of 1,267 feet MSL. The climb to cruising altitude will therefore be 9,000 - 1,267 = 7,733 feet. At a rate of 300 feet/min., this will take 7,733÷300 = 25.7 minutes. At a groundspeed of 165 knots, he/she will travel 165÷60 x 25.7 = 70.6 nautical miles.

SAMPLE PROBLEM 3

The E6-B computer can also be used for calculating descent. Refer to the first problem above in which an aeroplane flying at 10,000 MSL is approaching an airport whose elevation is 1,267 MSL. Descending at approximately 400 ft/min and maintaining a constant groundspeed of 120 knots, how many miles out should the pilot begin his/her descent in order to arrive over the airport at circuit height?

Fig. 7.54

Solution:

Find the number of feet to descend (10,000 - 2,267 = 7,733) in hundreds on the outer scale. Set under it the rate of descent in hundreds of feet on the hour scale (400 ft/min would be 4.00 hours) (see Fig.7.54 "A"). On the minutes scale, find the groundspeed in tens of miles (120 knots would be 12) and read the number of miles directly on the miles scale (38.5 miles) (Fig.7.54 "B").

The same setting can be used to determine what rate of descent will bring the aeroplane to circuit height above the airport, if the pilot begins his/her descent 38.5 miles out from the airport.

Calculating Climb Restriction Problems

At some airports, especially in congested areas, ATC may issue a departure clearance requiring a minimum climb rate per nautical mile. You will have to decide quickly if you are capable of this requirement. The following is a rapid method for solving this problem.

SAMPLE PROBLEM

ATC has given a clearance. . . "This departure requires a minimum climb rate of 400 feet per mile until . . . . ." Your planned climb speed gives a 120 knot groundspeed. What climb rate in feet per minute must you meet to comply with the clearance?

Solution:

Set your climb groundspeed of 120 knots on the miles scale adjacent to 60 minutes on the minute scale. Find the given climb requirement of 400 feet per nautical mile on the minutes scale. On the miles scale read 800. You will be required to maintain a climb rate of 800 feet per minute. If your aeroplane will do at least this considering its weight and the power available, then accept the clearance and go.

You must use nautical miles in computing this problem.

Finding the Wind Velocity in the Air

Of all the various methods devised for finding the wind velocity in the air, the only two which have any practical value from a pilot-navigator's point of view is (1) the track and groundspeed method and (2) the drift method, since one does not involve any deviation of the aeroplane from its track and the other is so easily accomplished when flying over areas where the track and groundspeed method cannot be used.

TRACK & GROUNDSPEED METHOD

An aeroplane on a navigation exercise passes checkpoint A at 10:10 and arrives at checkpoint B at 10:27. The cruising speed is 120 knots. The aeroplane is flying on a heading of 120°T.

A line joining A and B on the map represents the actual track made good (107°T).

The distance between A and B is 36 nautical miles. Therefore, the groundspeed is 127 knots.

Knowing the heading and airspeed (120°T — 120 knots) and the track and groundspeed (107°T — 127 knots), the wind velocity can now be found by plotting or computer as detailed in wind drift problem 3. The answer: wind from 218° at 29 knots.

DRIFT METHOD

A steady heading is flown at a constant airspeed and the drift noted. The heading is then altered, if possible by not less than 50°, and the drift again noted. If time permits, the heading should again be altered, either at least another 50° in the same direction, or back 100°, and a third drift noted.

It will be seen that very little time is lost by use of this method. If the heading alterations are made first to one side of the track and then to the other and, provided that approximately the same time intervals are flown on each leg of the flight to that point, the aeroplane will be very close to the original track when turned on to the original heading again.

This third drift angle is not essential, but it is desirable as a check. The wind velocity can then be found by combining this information on a mechanical computer or by plotting on the map or chart.

The Air Position

No pilot can ever become hopelessly lost if he/she knows his / her **air position**. The air position of an aeroplane at any time is its imaginary position, assuming that there has been no wind since it left the ground. It will be obvious then that, if the air position is known, the worst a pilot can be in error as regards **ground position** is a distance and direction equal to the speed and direction of the wind for the length of time he/she has been flying.

The air position is recorded by navigators on what is known as an **air plot**. This is the laying down on a map or chart of the **heading and airspeed** of the aeroplane during the entire time it is in the air.

While it is not possible for the pilot-navigator to keep an air plot and fly the aeroplane at the same time, it is of the **utmost importance** to keep a mental picture of air position. By jotting down in a log the exact time that each change in compass heading is made (should the whereabouts become uncertain in poor visibility) he/she can run back over the log and construct a rough diagram of the air position in his/her mind. Thus, when some landmark does appear in view below, he/she has a good general idea of the area on the map to search in order to identify it.

The keeping of a log does not require recording endless volumes of figures on a comprehensive form. The few simple notations required by the pilot-navigator, such as time of departure, heading flown, times over points along the route, groundspeeds calculated, etc., can be jotted down on the border of the map if a note book doesn't happen to be handy.

POSITION LINES

Suppose you are standing on a street in Toronto down which you can see the Legislature rising above the end of the avenue of trees. You consult your street guide and identify the street as University Avenue. You know you are somewhere on University Avenue but you have no means of knowing exactly where. However, you note that you are standing at the crossing of a street named Dundas Street. Now you locate the intersection of University Avenue and Dundas Street on the map and you have fixed your exact position.

Position lines are obtained by observing the bearing of two or more objects and are plotted on a map or chart to fix the position of the observer in the same way that the intersection of University Avenue and Dundas Street was used to locate a position above.

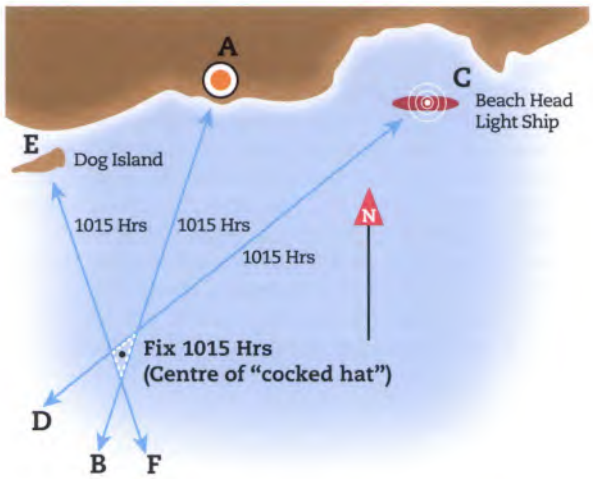


Fig.7.55 **Fix By "Cocked Hat", Three Position Lines**

SAMPLE PROBLEM

A Twin Otter is patrolling out to sea off the Atlantic Coast. The port of St. Hilda is sighted and is found to bear 018° T. If the bearing of St. Hilda is 018° from the aeroplane, then the direction of the aeroplane is the reciprocal (opposite) of 018° or 198° from St. Hilda. A line is drawn on the chart from St. Hilda 198° (A-B in Fig.7.55). This is a position line somewhere on which it is known the aeroplane must be at a particular time. A position line is identified by arrowheads at either end and the time at which it was obtained is clearly marked, in this case 1015 hrs.

Suppose that, at the same time, the Beach Head light ship was found to bear 052°. A second position line (C-D) may be drawn 232° from the light ship on the chart.

Where the two position lines intersect gives the position of the aeroplane at 1015 hrs. This is called a fix.

It will be seen that in Fig.7.55 a third position line (E-F) has been plotted from a bearing on Dog Island of 338° (reciprocal 158°). The purpose of including this third position line in the figure is to show that where three or more position lines are used, they may not always intersect at a common point. Note that E-F does not pass through the intersection of A-B and C-D, but forms a small triangle, or cocked hat. This is due to small errors in taking the bearings or in plotting. If the cocked hat is small, the fix is taken to be the dot shown in the centre of the triangle. If the cocked hat is excessively large, no reliance can be placed on the fix.

When plotting a fix by two or more position lines, the angle between the position lines should not be less than 30° and preferably about 60°.

Upon obtaining a fix and marking it on a chart, it is possible to calculate the latitude and longitude of the aeroplane at the time the bearing was taken. This information is important in relaying position reports over water and uninhabited areas to air traffic control authorities.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

There are many methods of obtaining position lines — by transit, by direction finding radio, by observations of celestial bodies, etc. It is of the **utmost importance** that the simple methods detailed above, explaining their use in fixing the position of an aeroplane, should be thoroughly understood by the elementary student in order to enable the student later on to tackle the more advanced problems he/she will encounter in radio and celestial navigation.

7.5.8 Electronic Flight Calculator

A wide selection of electronic flight calculators are available on the market. They are very versatile and very popular and may well be stated as having rendered wind drift computers and circular slide rules as mere back-up devices for air navigation.

These calculators, similar to the one illustrated in Fig.7.56, are preprogrammed to solve navigational problems, such as true heading, groundspeed, time en route, distance, wind drift, fuel requirements, true airspeed, density altitude, rate of climb and descent, conversions (n. miles to s. miles, C° to F°, etc.), weight and balance, etc., in a matter of seconds.

Flight calculators made by different manufacturers will each operate slightly differently. Usually it is necessary first to select a function key that corresponds with the problem to be solved and then punch in the known information to solve the problem.

Photo courtesy of asa2fly.com

Fig.7.56 **Electronic Flight Calculator**

A careful reading of the instruction book that comes with the flight calculator you have purchased and some practice handling it will enable you to solve most of the navigation problems with which you will be confronted.

Transport Canada officials have approved several of these flight calculators for use in Canadian exams. A list can be obtained by contacting the testing centre prior to taking the examination. The manual on how to use the flight calculator may not be taken into the examination.

Navigation questions may be solved, at the examination, by plotting and formulae, by use of a flight computer and circular slide rule or by use of an electronic flight calculator.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

8 Radio Communication

Radio is the magic genie that creates invisible traffic arteries in the skies, whose voice reaches out to airmen in the overcast from the unseen world below — the guide to the weather that lies along the route, to the traffic pattern plan that must be observed, to the vast amount of timely information that must be received to make flying as it is practiced today a safe and practical undertaking.

Radio has been perfected to the point where it has come to be regarded in the present-day world of aviation as **indispensable**. While the vast airway radio networks of Canada and the United States offer a rapid and reliable means of communication and air navigation, it should never be taken for granted that radio equipment is **infallible**. It can, and does, on occasion fail. Complete dependence on radio has provided the prelude to all too many an aeroplane disaster. A pilot should by all means make full use of the radio equipment. He/she should never, however, forget the simple traffic rules and signals that apply when his/her radio fails to function, nor cease to practice elementary navigation as a precaution against the time when he/she may be caught with a dead radio.

8.1 Radio Theory & Principles

8.1.1 Wavelength & Frequency

When a stone is dropped in water (Fig.8.1), waves are set up. While the height, or strength, of the waves grows weaker as they travel away from the point where the stone hit the water, the length of the waves (W.L.) never varies.

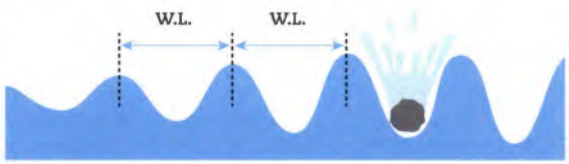


Fig.8.1 **Wavelength**

A radio transmitter sets up waves in the air in the same way that the stone sets up waves in water. The length of these waves remains constant, but the strength, or amplitude, decreases with distance from the transmitting station.

The actual linear measurement of the wave is known as the wavelength and is referred to in meters. The period in which the wave vibrates (that is, rises and falls) between its crest and trough, is called a cycle. The number of cycles per second of time is called frequency.

Very low to high frequencies are expressed in kilohertz (kHz), that is, "thousands of cycles". For example, 3023.5 kHz stands for 3,023,500 hertz.

Very high frequencies (VHF) are expressed in megahertz (MHz), that is, "millions of cycles". For example 100 MHz stands for 100,000,000 hertz.

The relationship between wavelength and frequency is as follows: the wavelength in meters is equal to 300,000 divided by the frequency in kilohertz.

Conversely, the frequency in kilohertz is equal to 300,000 divided by the wavelength in meters.

The speed of radio energy or light is 300,000,000 meters per second. This figure is divided by 1,000 to equal 300,000, the figure used in the formula above.

Frequency Bank Limits

Designation		Frequency		Wavelength (Meters)
VLF	Very Low	0-30	Kilohertz	300,000-10,000
LF	Low	30-300	"	10,000-1,000
MF	Medium	300-3,000	"	1,000-100
HF	High	3,000-30,000	"	100-10
VHF	Very High	30-300	Megahertz	10-1
UHF	Ultra High	300-3,000	"	100-10 cm
SHF	Super High	3,000-30,000	"	10-1 cm
EHF	Extremely High	30,000-300,000	"	1-1 mm

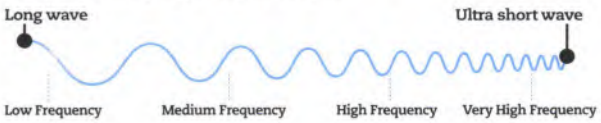


Fig.8.2 **Wavelength & Frequency**

8.1.2 Radio Bands

The airway radio communication facilities and radio navigation aids operate in the LF (low frequency), MF (medium frequency), HF (high frequency), VHF (very high frequency) and UHF (ultra high frequency) bands.

Low & Medium Frequency

The non-directional beacons and marker beacons transmit navigation signals, and in some cases also voice transmissions, on the LF/MF bands of 200 to 415 kHz and 510 to 535 kHz.

Commercial broadcast stations transmit in the medium wave band on frequencies between 550 kHz and 1,750 kHz which is therefore known as the "Broadcast Band". Broadcast stations, as well as providing news and entertainment, can be used for directional bearings or "homing" with automatic direction finding equipment.

High Frequency

Frequencies between 3,000 kHz and 30,000 kHz are known as high frequencies.

HF frequencies are allocated in 100 Hz steps so that more than 250,000 separate frequencies are available. Quite a number of these frequencies have been given to aviation use.

Because the range of HF signals is much greater than, for example, VHF signals, HF is an excellent air/ground communication facility in the northern remote areas of Canada and on long overwater flights.

HF radio is especially valuable as a communications facility for long range use because of a special characteristic of HF radio waves. They are reflected back to earth by the ionosphere. (See below **Characteristics of Radio Signals**.) HF radio is therefore the only way to maintain constant contact at ranges of 2,500 miles or more and on transoceanic flights. Pilots use it regularly to relay the position reports they give at every 5 degrees of longitude change.

HF signals are, however, unpredictable. Since the height of the ionosphere varies from day to night and is affected by

sunspots, auroras, etc., the angle at which the signals are reflected back to earth can be erratic.

HF stations in the upper range of the HF band have a greater reception distance during daylight hours, whereas stations in the lower range of the band have a greater reception distance during the night. Therefore, pilots should remember the rhyme (below) and select stations accordingly.

Sun Up, Frequency Up
Sun Down, Frequency Down

The frequency 5,680 kHz is the designated HF air/ground communication channel in use in the remote areas of Canada. It is assigned to flight service stations in these northern regions to provide communication facilities for aeroplanes operating in the area. HF communication must be conducted on single sideband.

SINGLE SIDEBAND HF

Single sideband (SSB) permits transmissions to be carried over considerable distances (several thousands of miles in some cases). It is more efficient for use in areas where regular navigation aids and communication stations are non-existent.

SSB is a method of compressing speech, or other intelligence, into a narrower band width. A fully amplitude modulated (AM) signal has two-thirds of its power in the carrier and only one-third in each of the sidebands. The sidebands carry the intelligence and the carrier serves only to demodulate the signal at the receiver. By eliminating the carrier and emitting only one sideband, available power is used to greater advantage. To recover the intelligence, the carrier must be re-inserted at the receiver. By this method, a gain of approximately 9 db over AM is obtained, equivalent to increasing the transmitter power 8 times.

In addition to the increase in power and range, SSB communication conserves spectrum space. An SSB voice signal requires less than 3 kHz of spectrum space, in contrast to the 7 or 8 kHz taken up by an AM signal.

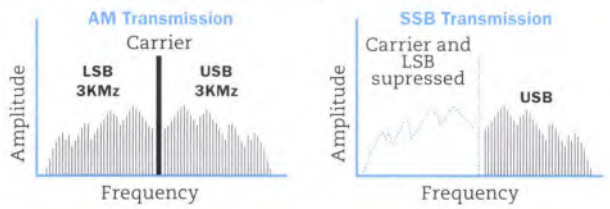


Fig.8.3 **Single Sideband**

Either the upper sideband (USB) or the lower sideband (LSB) may be employed. In more complex systems, both sidebands, with suppressed carrier, are used to convey two separate channels of intelligence.

The benefits of SSB are greatest and most easily observed under poor propagating conditions. As a given transmission path deteriorates due to a combination of noise, severe selective fading and narrow band interference, the superiority of SSB over AM is evident.

HF/SSB frequencies in the range of 2,800 to 22,000 kHz (2.8 to 22 MHz) are allocated to aeronautical communication uses. An S.S.B. high frequency receiver is needed to receive the single sideband signal.

Very High Frequency

The VHF band lying between 30 MHz and 300 MHz is the most important from the pilot's point of view. Certain ranges of frequencies within this band have been allocated exclusively for aviation use for communications and for navigation aids.

The frequency range from 108.00 MHz through 117.95 MHz is used for navigation aids, such as the VHF omninavigation stations (VOR), and the instrument landing systems (ILS). Voice reception is also provided on these frequencies.

The frequency range from 118.00 MHz through 136.000 MHz is allocated to civilian aviation voice communications. Within the last number of years, 40 new channels between 136.00 and 136.975 MHz have been allocated to civilian aviation. These latter channels are mostly used by air carriers for en route communications.

VHF FREQUENCY UTILIZATION PLAN

Time was when a pilot could travel anywhere in North America with a few simple transmitting and receiving frequencies, but today's multiplying traffic congestion has created vast and complex radio problems. To call a radio facility today, a pilot must be able to select the right radio frequency — much like looking up the right number in a telephone directory. This information is available on aeronautical charts and in the **Canada Flight Supplement**.

For ATC purposes throughout North America, channel allocation is based on 25 kHz spacing. (In central Europe, to solve frequency congestion problems, there is a requirement for aircraft operators to communicate with ATC on more sophisticated radio transceivers having 8.333 kHz spacing.) Within the band of VHF frequencies used by aviation in North America, there are 720 individual frequencies that can be allocated by utilizing 25 kHz spacing. (For Example: 119.000, 119.025, 119.050, 119.075, 119.100, 119.125, etc.).

A 720 channel transceiver with 25 kHz spacing capability is required in all aircraft operating in the high level airspace, in all aircraft operating under instrument flight rules (IFR) and in all aircraft operating in the terminal airspace of the large, busy airports where frequency congestion is a problem.

For the present time, aircraft can still operate VFR in many areas of the country with radio equipment capable of only 50 kHz spacing but the time is fast approaching when the demand for discreet frequencies will be such that equipment with 760 channel capability will be universally required. Operators of equipment with only 50 kHz spacing may find their access to certain airspace restricted.

Equipment capable of only 50 kHz spacing can receive only 360 frequencies (For Example: 119.05, 119.10, 119.15, 119.20, etc.) Owners of equipment with 360 channel capability need to be careful not to be confused by the way in which a frequency might be published. A 360 channel radio will receive 119.050 MHz and 119.100 MHz if the frequencies 119.05 MHz and 119.10 MHz are selected but it will not receive the intervening channels, 119.025 MHz and 119.075 MHz. Sometimes frequencies with 25 kilohertz spacing are published with only 2 digits to the right of the decimal point (the following 0 or 5 is omitted). A 360 channel receiver will receive 119.05 MHz and 119.10 MHz but will not receive 119.02 MHz or 119.07 MHz or 119.12 MHz.

The following are some of the most common VHF frequencies in use.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

The universal VHF emergency frequency is 121.50 MHz. Aircraft equipped with dual communication systems should monitor 121.50 MHz continuously while in the air.

The frequency 122.20 MHz is used in Canada by flight service stations for both transmitting and receiving. In the United States, the frequency 122.20 MHz or 122.30 MHz is used by FAA flight service stations to reply to private aircraft at controlled airports and 123.60 MHz at uncontrolled airports.

Pilots operating in uncontrolled airspace are advised to remain continuously tuned to 126.70 MHz, to use this frequency when transmitting position reports and for general pilot broadcasts.

The frequency 122.90 MHz has been allocated for use by aircraft engaged in various private aeronautical activities (private multiple) which might include such things as parachute jumping, aerial crop spraying, formation flying, etc. and can be used both in ground to air and air-to-air transmissions.

The frequency 123.400 MHz is allocated for the use of soaring activities which include balloons, gliders, sailplanes, ultralights and hang gliders for air-to-air and air-to-ground communications. It may be designated as the ATF at privately operated aerodromes used primarily for these activities.

UNICOM. Private advisory stations transmit and receive on a range of frequencies between 122.700 and 123.500 MHz. The most common frequency is 122.800 MHz. The word UNICOM is an acronym standing for "universal communication". A UNICOM facility is an air-to-ground communication facility operated by a private agency to provide private advisory station (PAS) service at uncontrolled airports. The facility may provide limited airport advisory service (when it is the designated mandatory frequency) and other information relating to fuel and service available. An authorized approach UNICOM (AAU) is also a privately owned air-to-ground communications facility. Its operators are trained to provide operational information to pilots conducting published instrument approaches. Approach limits are based on a local altimeter setting. At controlled airports, the private advisory station is used by aeronautical operators for company business. Aeronautical advisory stations in the U.S. transmit and receive on 122.80 MHz at airports where there is no control tower and on 123.00 MHz at airports that are served by a control tower.

Frequency Allocation. The following listing of the allocation of VHF channels to the various aeronautical facilities under the Frequency Utilization Plan, is relatively complete. However, changes in the plan are made from time to time and are published in Transport Canada Information Circulars.

In the case of air navigation aids (such as omniranges, ILS localizers, etc.), the frequencies are those on which the navigation signals are transmitted and are also the frequencies on which stations with simultaneous voice facilities will reply to a call.

With the confusing number of VHF channels in use and the frequent changes that are continually taking place, it is advisable, when calling any airway communication station, control tower or other facility, to state the frequency on which you are calling. For example: **Gore Bay Radio. This is Golf Foxtrot India Bravo on 122.30**.

Ultra High Frequency

Frequency	Purpose
108.05 through 117.95 MHz	Navigation aids.
108.1 through 111.9 MHz	ILS localizers with simultaneous voice channel, operating on odd tenth decimal frequencies.
110.1 MHz	ILS ramp check.
112.1 — 117.95 MHz	Omniranges (VOR).
114.8 and 115.7 MHz	VOR ramp check.
118.00 — 119.65 and 119.75 through 121.40 MHz	Air traffic control. Two-way.
119.70 MHz	Aircraft to air traffic control. Below 12,000 ft.
121.50 MHz	Emergency. Air-to-ground.
121.6 MHz	Search and rescue.
121.6 — 121.95 MHz	All aircraft and air traffic control. Two-way. Airport utility (ground control).
122.00, 122.20, 122.30 and 122.50 MHz	All aeroplanes to flight service stations
122.10 MHz	All aeroplanes to community aerodrome radio stations.
122.70, 122.80, 122.85 and 123.20 MHz	Private advisory stations. Two-way. Air-to-ground. Uncontrolled airports. UNICOM.
122.75 MHz	Private advisory. Private aerodromes. Air to air in Southern Domestic Airspace. General aviation.
122.90 MHz	Private multiple. The communication services normally encompassed by these stations would include forest fire fighting, aerial spraying, aerial advertising, parachute jumping, etc.
122.95 and 123.00 MHz	Private advisory stations. Controlled airports.
123.10 MHz	World wide search and rescue.
123.15 MHz	Flight service stations.
123.20 MHz	Private advisory. Uncontrolled airports. Air-to-ground. This frequency may also be used for communication with ground stations for the purpose of passing weather and other information to aircraft. Air-to-air to broadcast position and intention at an aerodrome for which there is no designated MF or ATF and no ground station.
123.30 and 123.50 MHz	Private advisory. Flight training. Flight test.
123.40 MHz	Soaring activity.
123.45 MHz	Air-to-air in Northern Domestic Airspace.
123.60 through 126.65 MHz	Air traffic control.
126.2 MHz	Military air traffic control. Two-way.
126.70 MHz	All civil aeroplanes for pilot broadcasts.
126.75 and 126.80 MHz	Air traffic control communications. Below 24,000 ft.
128.825 through 132.025 MHz	Aeroplanes to company stations.
132.050 through 134.95 MHz	Air traffic control. Above 24,000 ft.
135.00 through 136.00 MHz	Aeroplanes to company stations.
135.85 through 135.95 MHz	Flight inspection.
135.9 MHz	Military advisory.

Fig.8.4 **Frequencies Table**

The UHF band includes the frequencies lying between 300 MHz and 3,000 MHz. These frequencies are mostly allocated to special government use, except that distance measuring equipment (DME) and the glide slope portion of ILS operate on frequencies in the UHF Band.

8.1.3 Single & Double Channel Communication

The radio equipment installed in aeroplanes is capable of both receiving and transmitting. In some cases, a transmission from the aeroplane is carried on one frequency and reception from the ground station is carried on another. In some cases, the same frequency is used for both transmitting and receiving.

Single channel simplex means communicating in one direction at a time; transmitting and receiving on the same radio frequency.

Double simplex means transmitting on one channel frequency and receiving on another frequency, but not simultaneously.

Double channel duplex means transmitting on one channel frequency and receiving on another frequency simultaneously.

8.1.4 Characteristics of Radio Signals

Waves emitted from low, medium and high frequency transmitting stations are of two types: ground waves and sky waves.

Ground Waves

Ground waves follow the surface of the earth. The ground waves, by nature, travel in a straight line. They do, however, because of the phenomenon called diffraction, bend around obstacles in their path. As the earth's surface is full of large and small obstacles, the repeated bending of the ground waves causes them to follow the earth's curvature. This bending is further enhanced by surface attenuation. As part of the ground wave comes in contact with the surface, it loses some of its energy to the surface and slows down. This slowing down causes a downward tilt in the wave that also helps the wave to follow the earth's curvature. The waves continue until they become undetectable due to surface attenuation.

The degree to which attenuation affects the ground waves depends on the nature of the surface. The conductivity of the earth's surface varies greatly. A radio wave will, for example, travel a greater distance over water than land. Conductivity is very poor over sand and ice but fairly high over rich soil.

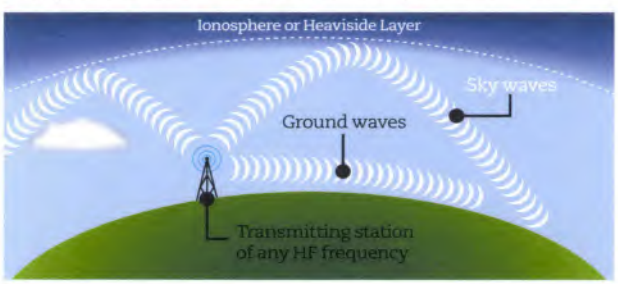


Fig.8.5 **Ground & Sky Waves**

Attenuation also depends on the frequency in use. The higher the frequency, the greater the attenuation. Very low frequency waves (VLF) are least affected by attenuation and bending is due to diffraction. Ranges of several thousand miles are common in VLF transmission. Attenuation has an increasing effect on the ground waves of low and medium frequencies, slowing them down and decreasing the range of their signals. High frequency is severely affected by attenuation so that the HF ground waves have a range of only about 100 nautical miles before they become undetectable. VHF and UHF waves (see below) are not affected by attenuation. Their radio waves do not bend.

Sky Waves

Sky waves travel up into the atmosphere and are reflected back to earth from the ionosphere. The behaviour of sky waves means that radio signals from the frequencies in the lower end of the radio spectrum (especially HF) can be heard at distances much beyond the range where the ground waves have become undetectable.

Between the point where the ground waves end and the reflected waves strike the earth, there is a skip zone, where very erratic signals or no signals at all are heard.

The skip characteristic of these signals accounts for the fact that sometimes you may hear a station, then lose it and later hear it again as you fly farther away from the station.

Fig.8.6 **Line-of-Sight Transmission**

The behaviour of the sky waves is responsible for one of the chief advantages of HF radio — that of long range communication. It is possible on HF to communicate with a station 1,000 kilometers away but at the same time be unable to reach a station 100 kilometers away.

Transmission capabilities of low, medium and high frequency radio waves may vary by night and day. At night, the sky waves travel at a flatter angle, causing a skip zone of greater extent, but a signal distance far greater than during the day.

Transmissions are also affected by such things as sunspot activity or electromagnetic disturbances which can upset the reflecting ability of the ionosphere. When this occurs, the radio waves are not reflected back to earth and a fade out is experienced.

Static is also a major problem in this frequency range.

Very High Frequency Waves

Very high frequency radio waves have different properties entirely from the ground and sky waves described above. They do not bounce between the reflecting ionosphere and earth, but continue straight out into space. This means that they can only be received by an aeroplane on a line-of-sight position in relation to the station. VHF waves do not follow the curvature of the earth, nor bend around obstructions. For this reason, the higher the altitude at which the aeroplane is flying, the greater the distance at which it will be able to receive VHF signals (see Fig.8.5 and Fig.8.6).

Ht. Above Station	Reception Distance	Ht. Above Station	Reception Distance
1,000 ft.	39 n.m.	10,000 ft.	122 n.m.
3,000 ft.	69 n.m.	15,000 ft.	152 n.m.
5,000 ft.	87 n.m.	20,000 ft.	174 n.m.

Fig.8.7 **Table of VHF Reception Distance**

Although line-of-sight transmission reduces the distance at which signals can be read at low altitude, this shortcoming

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

is offset by the fact that stations below the horizon several hundred kilometers apart cannot interfere with one another.

VHF offers virtual freedom from atmospheric and precipitation static. Conversation is much like talking over an ordinary telephone.

In addition to quiet, reliable communication, VHF equipment is smaller and lighter than corresponding L/MF equipment and, consequently, less power is required for normal communication.

Precipitation Static

An aircraft flying in cloud or precipitation will accumulate electrical charges as a result of frictional contact with the liquid and solid particles in the atmosphere. These charges will accumulate until they are great enough to cause a discharge into the surrounding air. This discharge manifests itself as static on the aircraft radio receiver.

Precipitation static arises through contact with solid particles, such as dust and sand, ice crystals, rain, snow crystals, wet snow and freezing rain. It also arises through contact with an external electric field. Almost all clouds have electrical fields associated with them. The greater the turbulence in the cloud, the stronger the external field is likely to be. Strong electrical fields are associated with the precipitation areas below clouds and, of course, with thunderstorms. An aeroplane flying in the vicinity of an external electrical field will accumulate a strong charge that will cause considerable precipitation static in radio reception.

Static due to external fields is most common in summer when thunderstorms are most frequent. Static in the winter time is most commonly attributed to ice crystals which occur at ordinary flight levels at this time of year.

8.1.5 Data Link Communications

Data link extends the information superhighway to aviation, expanding the exchange of information through digital communications. The availability of information in the cockpit and the reliability and efficiency of communications between pilots and airspace managers are greatly enhanced through this space age telecommunication network. Data link communication allows messages, requests and air traffic clearances to be displayed both to pilots and air traffic controllers in textual form, eliminating the reliance on copying voice transmissions.

The data link communication infrastructure includes Mode S secondary surveillance radar, communication satellites and VHF links. Each of these links can be used to exchange data between aircraft and ground systems.

Mode S is a secondary surveillance radar system that provides two-way data communications capability for air traffic, flight information and surveillance services. In Mode S, each aeroplane is addressed individually. It gives identification, altitude and data. The opportunity to send data back and forth allows the controllers through their computer network to keep track of the aircraft's position and route. (See also **Transponder** in Chapter **Radio Navigation**.)

VHF data link is widely used for aircraft operations and for limited flight information and air traffic services, such as pre-departure clearance, ATIS information, taxi instructions, take-off and landing requests and clearances, altimeter information, runway assignment, etc. Graphical weather service provides to the cockpit weather graphics information derived from ground based weather radars. This information is displayed on a cockpit control and display unit. Text weather products are also provided and displayed.

Satellite/VHF Data Link

Satellite communications (SATCOM) are used for communications in the oceanic environment and remote areas. The rapid progress in satellite technology has had a major impact on aviation communication, navigation and surveillance capabilities. New technology has increased the performance of satellite transmitter and receiver systems. They have already been proven in widespread use by the shipping industry. Geosynchronous satellites are also available for navigation use.

Satellite communications have the advantage of virtual global coverage, unlimited range, high reliability and good propagation conditions. High quality communication is available regardless of location, weather or ionospheric effects. The satellite communication network is capable of providing a data link capability via VHF radio. Aircraft can patch into the satellite system by means of a special antenna installed on the aircraft. A small antenna supports a data service, a larger one a voice service. Suitably equipped aircraft are also able to contact ATS on a satellite voice frequency. A unique telephone number is assigned to this facility in each flight information region. It may be used only by aircraft using the satellite network and is to be used only for non-routine flight safety calls.

Precise navigation service is also provided by the global navigation satellite system (GNSS). A complete GNSS includes satellites as well as ground based systems that are used to augment and monitor the satellites. There are three navigation satellite systems: the Chinese BeiDou, the Russian GLONASS and the American GPS. The American global positioning system (GPS) operates with a minimum of 24 low orbiting satellites that claims accuracies in the region of 100 meters in three dimensions (latitude, longitude and altitude).

A satellite surveillance system is intended to compensate for the lack of radar coverage over ocean and remote areas. It implies some form of regular polling of an aeroplane's own navigation equipment (INS, Omega, VLF, etc.) so that ATC can monitor its position and ensure safe separation from other aircraft.

Satellites are not totally new to aviation. The signals of emergency locator transmitters (ELTs) have for some time been monitored by satellite and the ability of the system to accurately locate downed aircraft has been proven.

8.2 Radio Communication Equipment

To be fully capable of two-way communication with ground stations or other airborne stations, the radio equipment installed in an aeroplane must consist of a transmitter, a receiver, an antenna, a microphone and a speaker or headset. When the transmitter and receiver are combined in one control unit, it is known as a transceiver.

In transmitting, the spoken words of the pilot are picked up by the microphone and relayed to the transmitter where they are converted to radio signals. The radio signals are carried by a

wire to the antenna where they are broadcast in all directions to be received by radio receivers in various radio ground and airborne stations.

In receiving, the antenna picks up a radio signal from a transmitting station, carries it by a wire to the aircraft receiver where it is converted to a voice signal and heard through the speaker or earphones.

Proper transmitting technique is to hold the microphone in the palm of the hand with the thumb resting lightly on the "press-to-talk" switch. Hold the microphone within one or two inches of the lips and press the microphone button. Side tone permits you to hear the sound of your own voice in the earphones and to monitor your transmission.

Headsets usually come with a boom type of microphone attached. The boom holds the microphone at exactly the right distance from the lips. The microphone button is usually attached to the control wheel.

When finished speaking, you must release the button in order to receive. (The button automatically switches the set back to the receiver position.)

8.2.1 The VHF Transceiver

Most VHF communication equipment is incorporated in a unit that also includes the VHF navigation equipment. Such a radio unit is usually called a NAV/COM.

In the radio illustrated in Fig.8.8, the communication equipment occupies the left side of the unit and is marked COM. It has single channel simplex capability and 25 kHz spacing. It has crystal controlled tuning and an electronic display of the frequency selected.

Fig.8.8 VHF NAV/COM Equipment

Frequencies in the range from 118.000 to 135.975 MHz are tuned by the two large knobs. As is the case in many VHF transceivers, the frequency selector does not display the third digit after the decimal.

The 0 or 5 is automatically provided. The transceiver shown in Fig.8.8 is tuned to 118.00 MHz. The frequency 136.97 MHz is on standby. The communication portion of this transceiver will receive 760 channels.

Volume is controlled by the small knob on the bottom right. The unit also includes a squelch control that eliminates undesirable noise.

To use the squelch control, turn the knob fully clockwise, then turn it back until the noise just ceases to be heard. Do not retard the squelch below this level at any time, as otherwise you may lose a weak signal which you desire to hear. In order to hear stations that are far off, it may be necessary to turn the squelch full on and put up with the noise to have the advantage of long distance communication.

Optimum operation of a 760 channel transceiver (i.e. strong reception and transmission over the full range of the channels) requires installation of a blade type antenna, rather than the whip type antenna commonly used with VHF communication equipment with less channel capability.

Operation of the NAV portion of the VHF transceiver is described in the Chapter **Radio Navigation**.

8.2.2 The HF Transceiver

The HF transceiver illustrated in Fig.8.9 is typical of HF equipment capable of full single sideband HF communication. It is capable of frequency selection in 0.1 kHz steps in the band from 2 MHz to 26.999 MHz (2,000 kHz to 26,999 kHz). It also has the ability to preset and store up to 24 channels. A single frequency synthesizer eliminates the need to change crystals when new channels are required (an inconvenience in old model HF radios). Other operating frequencies may be selected, however, without disturbing the presets. All frequencies are displayed in large gas discharge numerics.

Selection of upper sideband, lower sideband or AM operating modes is available and can also be preset. Either single simplex or semi-duplex channels can be easily selected.

The system requires only a 10 foot wire antenna rather than the long trailing antenna normally associated with the old type HF radio. Antenna tuning is accomplished automatically. A squelch control helps to eliminate undesirable noise.

Fig.8.9 M/HF Transceiver

8.2.3 Care of Aeroplane Radio

Proper operation and care of aeroplane avionics is an important factor in maintaining its serviceability. Avionics is a term used to describe the electronic navigation and communication equipment in an aeroplane. It also includes any instruments and flight control equipment associated with radio.

Heat is the enemy of avionics. On most modern aeroplanes, all the avionics equipment is stacked in a central position on the control panel. The heat generated by each individual radio in the stack combines with that generated by the others to produce temperatures that are beyond the tolerance of the equipment. A radio cooling kit that draws cool air from outside the aeroplane and pumps it around the radios should be installed. A radio may be expected to be warm but it should not be uncomfortably hot to the touch.

Good radio reception, free of interference and static, is dependent on proper bonding of all metal parts of the aeroplane and on the use of static discharge wicks. The metal surfaces of an aeroplane are an essential part of the aircraft electrical ground system and for this reason it is important that all metal parts be connected together. If they are not, electrical fields may be generated around isolated metal components that not only may cause radio interference but may be conducive to formation of a spark that could cause a fire. Static discharge wicks are usually attached to the trailing edge of the wing to discharge static electricity into the atmosphere. Here are a few good practices to follow:

1. Turn off all radios when starting the engines of the aeroplane. Large voltage transients are created during the start procedure and it is wise to protect radio equipment from these.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

2. Do not turn a radio on and off repeatedly. Once it is turned on, keep it on for the entire time that it may be needed. Then turn it off.
3. Allow communication equipment to warm up for a minute or so before beginning a transmission. This practice is especially important for the older tube type of equipment.
4. When an aeroplane is flown at high altitudes and the equipment is mounted outside the heated areas, all radio units should be operated during the descent in order to reduce moisture condensation in the boxes. This practice is especially recommended with radar units in which high voltages are generated.
5. Incorrect voltage affects the operation of radios and can shorten component life. For this reason, it is wise to monitor aeroplane generator voltage on a periodic basis.
6. Be sure the aeroplane battery is maintained in good condition. This is especially important with the new solid state radios and aeroplane alternator systems.
7. When a problem does occur in the radio equipment, accurate description of the symptoms will assist the service man's diagnosis of the trouble.
8. Have the microphone tested at an avionics shop. Carbon microphones age very quickly because the carbon has a tendency to dry up. Transistorized or dynamic microphones seldom deteriorate with age.
9. Keep antennas clean. Dirt build-up decreases the efficiency of an antenna dramatically.

8.3 Radio Communication & Air Traffic Services (ATS)

8.3.1 Air Traffic Control (ATC) Services

Control Tower

Many airports have the service of a control tower to ensure the efficient and safe movement of air traffic. The air traffic controllers in the tower are responsible for the control of all traffic, taking off and landing, and for the control of all VFR traffic within the airspace surrounding the airport.

The radio frequency on which the tower operates can be found on aeronautical charts in the aerodrome information, in the **Canada Flight Supplement** for Canada, and the **Airport/Facility Directory** for the United States. As well as the primary frequency on which the tower both transmits and receives, there are other frequencies on which the tower transmits and/or receives. These frequencies are listed in the COMM section of the information about a particular airport.

Ground Control

Most controlled airports also have ground control. The ground controller is responsible for the movement of all traffic on the ground at the airport, except aircraft landing and taking off.

The ground controller operates on a special frequency allocated for that purpose. At most airports, that frequency is 121.9 MHz, although other frequencies in the range 121.7 through 121.9 MHz are used if there is a possibility of interference with another ground controller at a nearby airport.

The ground control frequency in use at any particular airport is published in the **Canada Flight Supplement** and in the **Airport/Facility Directory**.

Ground controllers will provide the pilot with precise taxi instructions and information about services and facilities.

Apron Advisory Service

At very busy airports where there is a lot of ground traffic in the vicinity of the terminal, apron advisory service is sometimes provided by ATS. This service normally provides gate assignment, push back instructions and advisories on other aircraft and vehicles on the apron. Aircraft entering the apron will be advised by the ground controller to contact the apron controller for explicit instructions as to where to park or what gate to use. Aircraft leaving the apron should contact the ground controller on the appropriate frequency to obtain taxi clearance before exiting the apron and entering the maneuvering area. Apron advisory service operates on its own assigned frequency.

Clearance Delivery

Aeroplanes intending to depart a major airport on a VFR flight plan may be required to call clearance delivery (if this facility is in operation) before starting to taxi. The clearance delivery controller will ask for the aircraft registration, type, destination and requested altitude. Although the main duty of the clearance delivery controller is to relay IFR clearances, with respect to VFR traffic he/she performs the clerical task of preparing the flight progress strips that are given to the tower controller, thus allowing the ground controller, who formerly performed this job, to concentrate more fully on the job of directing the ground movement of aircraft.

The clearance delivery frequency in use at any particular airport is published in the **Canada Flight Supplement** and in the **Airport/Facility Directory**.

Terminal Arrival & Departure Control

Arrival control is provided to expedite the flow of IFR flights inbound within a terminal control area.

Departure control provides the same service for outbound IFR flights.

The frequencies for arrival and departure control for particular airports are listed in the **Canada Flight Supplement**, in the **Canada Air Pilot**, and in the **Airport/Facility Directory** for the United States.

Most arrival and departure control units are equipped with radar surveillance scopes, or scanning screens, which give the controller the range and azimuth of every aeroplane in the vicinity. Controllers are therefore able to issue any necessary instructions for the maintenance of safe separation and the avoidance of collision hazards. These facilities are purely traffic control services and should not be confused with a radar assisted approach (ASR and PAR), which provides instrument glide path landing guidance. They do, however, give position information and will furnish a lost pilot with the distance and the magnetic heading to the airport. They will

also furnish the wind speed, the runway in use and pertinent traffic information.

Although arrival and departure control is principally in operation to handle IFR traffic, at some busy airports arriving and departing VFR traffic is also handled by this facility. In such a case, the pilot is instructed by an air traffic control unit or in the ATIS information to contact arrival or departure control on the assigned frequency.

Arriving VFR aeroplanes may contact arrival control on their own initiative and request radar assistance if they wish to do so. It is important to make the call at a reasonable distance from the facility and state your position as accurately as possible to assist the controller in locating you on the radar scope. You may be asked to make some identifying turns or, if you are transponder equipped, to operate the transponder on a specific code. Remain in communication with arrival control until advised to contact the tower.

Radar identification and radar vectoring by ATC do not relieve you, as pilot, of the responsibility of collision avoidance and terrain and obstacle clearance. As a VFR flight, you are also responsible for maintaining VFR.

Departing VFR traffic may also contact departure control for radar assistance. The request should be made on initial contact with ground control or clearance delivery and information as to the direction of the flight should be given. The tower will advise when to contact departure control. Departure control takes over when the aircraft clears the runway on take-off and vectors it on radar until it is established on a course along the appropriate navigation facility.

Vectors are defined in the Chapter Air Navigation. In radar advisory service, the term has acquired a new meaning and is used to designate headings given to pilots to steer (for the purpose of avoiding other traffic or for detouring around thunderstorms). A radar traffic controller giving steering instructions to an aircraft is said to be vectoring the aircraft.

Radar Service

The modernization and expansion of the radar system has greatly enhanced the smooth flow of air traffic and efficiency and safety in traffic movements. By reducing the separation between aircraft, radar has substantially increased airspace utilization.

Radar vectoring is used when necessary for separation purposes or for noise abatement procedures, when requested by the pilot or when vectoring will offer advantages to the pilot or controller. Vectoring instructions would take the form, For example: **Turn Right Heading 030 for Vectors to Victor 300.**

When requested by the pilot, VFR aircraft are provided with information on observed radar targets that may be of concern to the pilot. In advising of the existence of other traffic, the ATC unit uses the positions of the clock to indicate the whereabouts of these other aircraft. (For Example: Traffic at 3 O'Clock. Four Miles. Eastbound.) The type of aircraft and altitude and the relative speed of the aircraft will be included if known.

Radar equipped ATC units can also provide information on the location and movement of areas of heavy precipitation and on severe weather conditions.

It is important that pilots respond only to those radar vectors directed to themselves. Following the radar instructions issued to another aircraft creates a potentially hazardous situation.

Ht. Above Station	Radar Range	Ht. Above Station	Radar Range
1 ft.	1 n.m.	4,239 ft.	80 n.m.
17 ft.	5 n.m.	6,624 ft.	100 n.m.
66 ft.	10 n.m.	9,539 ft.	120 n.m.
414 ft.	25 n.m.	14,904 ft.	150 n.m.
1,060 ft.	40 n.m.	26,496 ft.	200 n.m.
2,385 ft.	60 n.m.	41,400 ft.	250 n.m.

Fig.8.10 Radar Coverage Area

RADAR NAVIGATION ASSISTANCE

Radar navigation assistance is available from certain ATC units. As long as the aircraft is operating within areas of radar and communication coverage and can be radar identified, the ATC facility will provide assistance to navigation in the form of position information, vectors or track and groundspeed checks, information about traffic in proximity to the flight path of the aircraft and about weather phenomena such as thunderstorms.

VFR flights may be provided with the service at the request of the pilot, at the suggestion of the controller or in the interest of flight safety.

While being vectored by the radar service, the pilot is responsible for avoiding other traffic and for maintaining VFR. If the vector is leading the aircraft into IFR conditions, the pilot should request a vector that will allow the flight to remain VFR. The pilot is also responsible for maintaining adequate clearance above the terrain and any obstacles. If the vector is not providing adequate obstacle or terrain clearance, the pilot must inform the controller and request a heading that will allow adequate clearance, or climb to a more suitable altitude, or, if necessary, revert to navigation without radar assistance.

A pilot requesting radar assistance in an emergency situation should provide the following information to the ATC unit: the nature of the emergency and the type of assistance required, the position of the aircraft and the existing weather conditions, the type of aircraft, the altitude, whether the pilot has an IFR rating and whether the aircraft is IFR equipped.

Flight Information Service

Flight information service is provided by air traffic control units to provide pilots with information about hazardous flight conditions. Such data would include information about conditions and hazards which was not available at the time of take-off or which may have developed along the route of flight.

Flight information service is provided whenever practicable to any aircraft in communication with an air traffic control unit either prior to flight or when in flight.

VFR flights are provided with information concerning severe weather conditions along the proposed route of flight, changes in serviceability of navigation aids, conditions of airports and associated facilities and other items considered pertinent to the safety of flight.

Flight information messages are intended as information only. If a specific action is suggested, the pilot is responsible for making the final decision concerning the suggestion.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

8.3.2 Flight Advisory Services

Flight Information Centres (FIC)

A network of five flight information centres (FIC) in Canada provide pilots with enhanced access to higher quality flight information. These centres (located in Quebec City, London, Edmonton, Kamloops, and Whitehorse) centralize those flight information services that are not location dependent, such as en route advisory services, weather and preflight briefings, flight planning, and related services.

Through toll-free (1-866-WX-BRIEF or 1-866-GO-METEO) telephone access, FIC provide 24-hour per day flight planning and weather briefing services across the country with flight service specialists assigned to provide support for flight operations.

Pilots can maintain contact with the FIC throughout the flight and are able to close flight plans with their chosen FIC by radio when landed. Pilots may, therefore, conduct an entire flight by dealing with one FIC as opposed to several FSS along their route.

The aviation weather briefing service (AWBS) is provided by FIC. It is a fully interpretive preflight and en route weather briefing service provided by briefers who are trained to adapt meteorological information to meet the needs of all aviation users and to provide advice on special weather problems. The sites have a full range of weather products including satellite and radar imagery. Flight service specialists also accept flight plan information during a briefing.

Flight information service en route (FISE), available on the en route frequency, provides pilots with information on weather reports, forecasts, SIGMET, AIRMET, PIREP, METAR, TAF, NOTAM, CRFI, altimeter settings and other operational information pertinent to the en route phase of flight.

An FIC can provide, upon request from an aircraft, a relay of communication with ATC for IFR clearances and SVFR authorizations. Also, en route aircraft may submit to an FIC the following: PIREP, IFR and VFR position reports (including arrival and departure times), and revised flight plan or flight itinerary information.

Alerting service is provided for flights by FIC for which a VFR flight plan or flight itinerary has been filed. If the flight plan is not closed within a specified period of time after the expected time of arrival, it is FIC personnel who will alert the search and rescue centre, will make a communication search of area airports to determine if the aircraft has landed safely, and, if the aircraft is not located, will alert SAR to commence an air search.

FIC personnel are responsible for the co-ordination and dissemination of NOTAM information, and CRFI information. A pilot may report to an FIC any hazards to the air navigation system that may need NOTAM distribution.

Emergency assistance service is provided by FIC to aid any pilot when in an emergency, or potential emergency situation, such as being lost, encountering bad weather conditions, or experiencing aircraft-related emergencies or equipment failure. Emergency navigational assistance can be provided to a pilot who is lost or experiencing VFR into IMC, by transferring the pilot to ATC for ATS surveillance service.

Flight Service Stations (FSS)

Flight service stations have been established at some aerodromes across the country. They are staffed by FSS specialists trained to provide an efficient flight safety service to pilots.

The majority of FSS provide service 24 hours a day to the airports where they are located and to any number of remote communication outlets (RCOs) assigned to them.

Flight service station communications with aircraft are conducted on a standard set of frequencies, including the emergency channel 121.50 MHz, and the advisory channel 122.2 MHz. Most stations have 122.1 MHz (receive only), and a number of the more northerly stations have 5,680 kHz.

During their hours of operation, the FSS provides pilots with the ability to obtain and pass information, or to report emergencies should the need arise. In addition, the FSS relays position reports and ATC clearances in areas where aircraft are beyond the communication range of ATC facilities.

Flight service stations, located at airports without control towers and at controlled airports when the control tower is not in operation, provide an airport advisory service (AAS) to arriving and departing aircraft. A landing or take-off advisory may include wind direction and velocity, the favoured runway, visibility, altimeter setting, pertinent NOTAM, airport conditions, such as snow on the runway, braking action, obstructions or any known hazards. The airport advisory service does not exercise actual traffic control but will advise all aircraft in the area of known and observed traffic, both in the air and on the ground in a manner that will convey the positions and intentions of conflicting traffic so that pilots can organize themselves into a safe traffic flow. In reporting aircraft and ground traffic that may affect the aircraft's safety, the word "traffic" is used to precede the phrase that summarizes the situation. If the FSS specialist is aware of a potential conflict, departing aircraft will be requested to hold short of the active runway until the conflicting aircraft or vehicle is off the runway.

At some uncontrolled airports where there is no FSS, advisory service is provided through RCOs. This service is called remote aerodrome advisory service (RAAS) and consists of weather reports which include wind and altimeter settings, the runway in use, field condition reports, NOTAM, PIREP and known aircraft and vehicle traffic. The RAAS is a remote service provided by an FSS not located at the airport. It must be remembered that the information about aircraft and vehicle traffic that the FSS personnel are able to provide is only the information that they have received by radio or landline; it is not based on personal knowledge of what they can see happening.

The FSS specialists control vehicles operating on the maneuvering area of controlled airports when the control tower is closed. This vehicle control service (VCS) is also provided at airports without a control tower. VCS is not available at airports served by RAAS and RCOs, although the FSS specialists will advise aircraft of the presence of vehicles on the maneuvering area about which they have knowledge.

At uncontrolled airports where mandatory frequencies (MF) have been designated, the FSS operate this air/ground facility and provide the airport advisory service and vehicle advisory service to aircraft operating at the airport and in the air within a designated distance from the airport.

Flight service specialists have available comprehensive and current weather information that pilots can use to make

decisions based on weather determinants. They also provide other information on airways, status of navaids, communication facilities, and airports, special regulations, NOTAM, CFRI reports and any other conditions a pilot may expect to encounter en route.

The FSS responds to declared emergencies, such as being lost, encountering adverse weather, or experiencing aircraft-related emergencies or equipment failure. Airports with on-site FSS also provide homing assistance to aircraft in emergency or when requested by a pilot (see below). They accept flight plans for relay to ATC, and they broadcast flight safety information such as unfavourable flight conditions and hazards along the route of flight to pilots concerned. FSS also provide VFR alerting service.

Flight service stations are connected to ATC centres by direct phone lines in most cases, permitting quick access to centre facilities for those aircraft requiring inflight instructions when flight paths do not permit radio contact with ATC units.

The FSS provide a weather observing service to provide weather information to AES for preparation of weather reports and forecasts. FSS personnel make regular hourly reports but also report any significant weather changes as they occur.

FSS no longer broadcast weather on their navigation aid frequencies on a scheduled basis. However, pilots, who are proceeding into remote areas where public telephone is not available, may request that any FSS specified weather information be broadcast over a voice-capable navigation aid at prearranged times.

The call sign of an FSS is RADIO. In communicating with a flight service station while en route, call, for example, **Ottawa Radio** or **Saskatoon Radio**.

Remote Communication Outlets (RCO)

In order to provide extended communications capability, remote transmitting and receiving facilities have been established. These remote communication outlets (RCO) are operated from the nearest flight service station. Aircraft in the general area of the RCO can therefore communicate directly with an ATC centre which may be hundreds of kilometers away. The RCO is connected by landlines with the FSS. Not all of the FSS services are available through an RCO. It is primarily used to provide information to en route traffic and will also accept position reports and relay ATC clearances. (RAAS) are also provided (see above).

A dial up remote communications outlet (DRCO) is a standard RCO which has a direct connection to an ATS unit through a commercial telephone line which pilots can access by a dial-up procedure. The pilot activates the system, via the aircraft radio transmitter, by keying the microphone four times on the published DRCO frequency. The frequencies for each DRCO are published in the **Canada Flight Supplement**. If the keying procedure is successful, the pilot will hear a dial tone, signalling pulses and a ringing signal. Once the communication link is established, the DRCO equipment will broadcast a pre-recorded voice message that confirms "Link Established". The pilot must then initiate the radio conversation using standard radiotelephony phraseology (for example, **Regina Radio. This is Piper Golf Papa Tango Echo**). If the keying procedure is unsuccessful in establishing the communication link, the aircraft may be out of radio range of the DRCO or the DRCO may be in use by another aircraft.

Community Aerodrome Radio Stations (CARS)

Community aerodrome radio stations (CARS) provide air/ground airport radio at certain airports. The service is provided by observer-communicators who are trained to conduct aviation weather observations and to provide radio communications for arriving and departing aircraft.

CARS are located at uncontrolled aerodromes within mandatory frequency (MF) areas. Pilots must, therefore, communicate on the MF as per uncontrolled aerodrome procedures. At aerodromes within controlled airspace served by CARS, pilots must contact ATS via the RCO, the private advisory station (PAS, see below), or by telephone to obtain special VFR authorization or IFR clearances. Hours of operation for CARS are listed in the **Canada Flight Supplement**.

CARS provide emergency communication advising a designated FIC as well as local authorities of any distress, urgency calls or ELT signals. They provide airport information for landing and departing aircraft: surface wind, altimeter setting, aircraft and vehicle traffic and aerodrome conditions.

CARS observer-communicators monitor, record and relay surface weather data for aviation purposes. They may request PIREPs from pilots to confirm the weather conditions that they observe. They may also, if necessary, accept flight plans or flight itineraries; however, pilots are encouraged to obtain full pre-flight briefings and file their flight plan or itinerary with the appropriate FIC.

Observer-operators at CARS are only authorized to provide NOTAMs and weather information for their own aerodrome. Information for other areas and aerodromes should be obtained by pilots from the appropriate FIC.

Private Advisory Stations (PAS)

Aeronautical operators may establish their own radio stations at controlled airports for use in connection with company business, such as servicing of aircraft, etc. The private advisory station does not relay information relative to ATC, weather reports, condition of landing strips or other information normally provided by ATC units.

UNICOM

Universal communications (UNICOM) is an air-to-ground communications facility operated by a private agency that provides private advisory station service to aircraft at uncontrolled aerodromes.

Use of the information received from a UNICOM station is entirely at the discretion of the pilot. UNICOM is employed at airports with low traffic volume and where, typically, no control tower is in operation.

Aircraft may call a UNICOM to make announcements of their location and intentions. In cases where the UNICOM station is not staffed, no acknowledgement may follow the call.

Automatic Terminal Information Service (ATIS)

Non-control information relating to ceiling, visibility, wind, runway in use, NOTAM affecting the airport, etc. is continuously broadcast on the automatic terminal information service (ATIS). The information is recorded by tower personnel and is broadcast on the voice facility of the VOT (VOR Omnitest Facility) or on a specially assigned VHF/UHF channel.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Each recording is identified by a phonetic alphabet code letter, beginning each day with "Alfa". As airport conditions, such as wind, altimeter setting, etc., change, a new tape is prepared. Each succeeding message is given a new identifying letter (Bravo, Charlie, etc.) A typical ATIS message might be:

ATIS: Vancouver International Airport. Information Bravo. Weather at 1400 Zulu. Three Thousand Scattered, Measured Ceiling Five Thousand Overcast. Visibility Ten. Haze. Temperature One Five. Dew Point Eight. Wind Two Five Zero (magnetic) at Ten (knots), Altimeter Two Niner Niner Eight. Runway Two Six. Inform Vancouver ATC on Initial Contact that you have received Information Bravo.

The ATIS broadcast may also include special information for air traffic using precision instrument approach facilities: the type of instrument approach in use, information on the landing runway and the take-off runway for both IFR and VFR traffic, information on parallel or simultaneous runway operations and stopping distance, any NOTAM affecting the airport, the serviceability of NAVAIDS and field conditions.

You should listen to the ATIS broadcast before contacting the tower or the terminal controller (when landing) or the ground or clearance delivery controller (when taking off) and inform the controller **on the initial contact** that you have the ATIS information, repeating the code word which identifies the message. The controller then does not have to issue this information in his/her message to you.

During periods of rapidly changing conditions which would create difficulties in keeping the ATIS message current, the following message will be recorded and broadcast:

ATIS: Because of rapidly changing weather and airport conditions, contact ATC for current information.

The word CAVOK, as has already been seen, is used in ATIS messages to denote a weather condition in which visibility is 6 statute miles (10 kilometers) or more, there are no clouds below 5,000 feet (1,500 meters) and no precipitation, thunderstorms, shallow fog or drifting snow.

The ATIS service is in operation at most of the major international airports. Information on the frequency on which the ATIS is broadcast is printed on aeronautical charts and also in the **Canada Flight Supplement**.

8.3.3 NOTAM

A NOTAM (derived from the expression "Notice to Airmen") is a notice that contains information considered essential to personnel undertaking flight operations. Information contained in a NOTAM relates to the establishment or condition of, or any changes in, any aeronautical facility, service, procedure, or hazard that could put any flight operation at risk.

A NOTAM is originated and issued promptly whenever the information to be distributed is of a temporary nature and of short duration, or when operationally significant permanent changes or temporary changes of long duration are made at short notice. NOTAMs are distributed to FIC, FSS, and to aircraft operators, including by voice advisory using radio communications. They can also be found on the NavCanada website.

All Canadian NOTAMs are presented in a format prescribed by the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO). They consist of a number of fields that are either mandatory or optional depending on their applicability.

A NOTAM will be issued for multiple reasons, examples of which are for circumstances such as: establishment, closure or significant changes in operation of aerodromes or runways; establishment, withdrawal or significant changes in the operation of aeronautical services and/or in the operational capability of radio navigation services, visual aids, lighting systems, and air/ground communication services; occurrence or correction of major defects or impediments in maneuvering areas; changes to availability of fuel and/or oil at an aerodrome; presence of hazards that affect air navigation (including obstacles, military operations, rocket launches, fireworks, airshows, sporting events, public gatherings, etc.); an operationally significant change in volcanic activity and/or the extent of volcanic ash; the establishment of operations of humanitarian relief missions, etc. In addition to the latter examples for which NOTAM are issued, NOTAM can also be issued for any other operationally significant circumstances.

The format of a NOTAM consists of the following elements: a NOTAM series letter and 4-digit number; a 4-digit location indicator of either an aerodrome or a flight information region; a start and end time displayed as a 10-digit date-time group expressed as YYMMDDHHMM (in UTC); an optional schedule when the information contained in the NOTAM occurs during more than one period within the overall period of the NOTAM; NOTAM text which is mandatory and contains the subject and condition of the subject of the NOTAM using abbreviations, indicators, identifiers, call signs, frequencies, numbers and plain language; lower and upper vertical limits which are mandatory if the NOTAM is a navigation warning. (Navigation warnings include activation of advisory areas and restricted airspace, and activities related to SAR or blasting operations.)

For example:

(N0914/22 NOTAMR N0901/22
A) CYXH B) 2206291415 C) 2206301900
D) JUN 29 1415-2000, JUN 30 1000-1900
E) RWY 09/27 CLSD)

Decoded, the above reads:

(N0914/22: NOTAM Series Letter(s) is, in his case, "N." The NOTAM issuance number is 914 in the year 2022.

NOTAMR: NOTAMs are identified as "new" (NOTAMN), as "replacing" (NOTAMR), or as "cancelling" (NOTAMC). In the case of a NOTAMR or NOTAMC, the NOTAM replaced or cancelled is specified. (In this example, N0901/22 is being replaced.)

A) CYXH: This is the location indicator of an affected aerodrome, (in this case, Medicine Hat, Alberta). Note that 4-letter location indicators (aerodrome or FIR) can be included in this field. If the aerodrome indicator contains a number (e.g. CTF5), the NOTAM will show CXXX in A), and the aerodrome name will be noted in the E) section.

B) 2206291415: This is the start time of the NOTAM, shown as 10 digits, YYMMDDHHMM, and always shown in UTC. Therefore, in this example, the NOTAM was in effect on June 29, 2022 at 14:15hrs UTC.

C) 2206301900: This is the end time of the NOTAM, formatted in the same way as shown above. An indication of "EST" means that the end time is estimated. An indication of "PERM" means that the information is permanent and aeronautical products (such as a navigation chart) will be amended in due time.

D) June 29 1415-2000, June 30 1000-1900: This is an optional line showing the schedule if the information occurs during more than one time period in the NOTAM "in force" period. The dash ("-") indicates "to" in the NOTAM.

E) RWY 09/27 CLSD: This is the NOTAM text, which is a mandatory field that contains the subject and information for which the NOTAM is issued. It will use approved abbreviations and plain language.

When required, two items may additionally be included in NOTAMs.

For example:

A) CZYZ B) 2206291415 C) 2206301900
E) ADVISORY AREA CYA534(S) KARS ACT
SFC TO BLW 2500FT AMSL
F) SFC G) 4500FT AMSL

F) shows the lower vertical limit (in this example, the "surface"), and G) the upper vertical limit (in this example, 4,500 ft) affected by the NOTAM, (for example, if an advisory or restricted area is active, which are shown on navigation charts as CYA or CYR). These two items are compulsory if the NOTAM relates to a navigation warning. In G) **UNL** is used to indicate "unlimited" while **AMSL** indicates "above mean sea level." All navigation warnings contain an FIR location indicator in item A), regardless of the distance to an aerodrome. When consulting NOTAM for your flight, always look for navigation warnings under the appropriate FIR.

NOTAM also contain a Qualifier line (also known as a "Q-line") intended for flight planning system users for parsing and tailored briefings, that provides coded information about the coordinates, the radius of the area of influence, vertical limits, subject and condition, etc. However, this is suppressed in NOTAM viewed via the NavCanada website as it is intended for tailoring of briefings. When viewable in the NOTAM, the Q line will be shown immediately before the A) item, after the NOTAM identifier information.

8.3.4 Information Supplements & Circulars

In addition to NOTAM, Aeronautical Information Publication (AIP) Supplements and Aeronautical Information Circulars (AIC) are two other means to inform pilots of temporary events, closures or outages that may affect a flight. Both AIP Supplements and AIC can be found on the Nav Canada website.

AIP Supplement (AIP SUP)

The type of information provided by AIP SUP is similar to what would be found in a NOTAM. AIP SUP are presented as documents in plain language, making use of graphics, colours and hyperlinks as needed. They are typically issued when the information that they provide is temporary but of extended duration, (for example, up to three months or more). AIP SUP can also be issued for circumstances of shorter duration when a need exists to better explain the reasons for their issuance with more text and illustrations. By use of illustrations, pilots may be better able to create mental pictures of the AIP SUP's content, thereby improving the safety of their flight. An example of an illustration issued within an AIP SUP may be that of a runway showing a temporarily reduced width accompanied by depictions of the runway's temporary markings and lighting.

It is possible that the information contained within an AIP SUP may first be addressed in a NOTAM. When the information contained therein is of longer duration, it will be transferred to an AIP SUP with the NOTAM thereafter being cancelled. Consulting AIP SUPs is, therefore, considered critically important given that their contents may describe important information that has exceeded the shorter duration for which the same information would have been issued initially as a NOTAM.

In certain cases, the AIP SUP may be complemented by a NOTAM. For example, in the case of a major construction project at an airport, the AIP SUP may provide an overview of the project while describing accompanying on-going hazards and conditions. Concurrently, a NOTAM may offer a more dynamic description of the airport facilities, such as notification of runway lighting availability.

For example:

AIP Canada Supplement 10/23

CONSTRUCTION AT MONTREAL/PIERRE ELLIOTT TRUDEAU INTL (CYUL)

13 MARCH 2023 TO 23 JUNE 2023

Runway 06L/24R Construction Work

Montreal/Pierre Elliott Trudeau Intl (CYUL) will commence the following construction work, starting 13 March 2023:

- Runway pavement rehabilitation, including concrete slab replacement between future Taxiway B2 and Taxiway B1
- Rehabilitation of Taxiway B2 and B1
- Construction of new high speed exit taxiway

Construction activities will run continuously for the entire duration of the work, with the following impacts on operations:

- Runway 06L/24R closed via NOTAM for the entire duration of the work
- Taxiway B2 North of Taxiway B closed via NOTAM for the entire duration of the work
- Taxiways B1 and B3 closed via NOTAM for the entire duration of the work
- Approach lights and runway edge lights for Runway 06L/24R will be disconnected
- Low-visibility operations plan (LVOP) and CAT II procedures will be unavailable for the duration of the work

Aeronautical Information Circulars (AIC)

An AIC, also presented as a plain language document, contains information that doesn't qualify for inclusion in the aeronautical publications and charts, nor does it qualify for the issuance of a NOTAM. These circulars contain information related to flight safety, air navigation, technical, administrative or legislative matters. For example, AIC may contain the following: a long-term forecast of any major change in legislation, regulations, procedures or facilities; information of a purely explanatory or advisory nature liable to affect flight safety; information or notification of an explanatory or advisory nature concerning technical, legislative or purely administrative matters.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

For example:

Aeronautical Information Circular 33/22

CHANGE IN HOURS OF AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICE WINDSOR, ONTARIO (CYQG)

NAV CANADA, the country's provider of civil air navigation services, conducted an assessment of the hours of operation for the air traffic control (ATC) service provided at the Windsor airport.

The assessment concluded that the hours of operation of the Windsor control tower can be decreased, opening one half hour later and closing one half hour earlier, each day.

The revised hours of operation for the airport control tower will be: 07:00 to 22:00 local time (1200Z to 0300Z during standard time and 1100Z to 0200Z during daylight savings time). The overnight mandatory frequency (MF) hours will be revised to reflect the amended tower hours of operation.

This change will take effect 23 February 2023, at 0901 Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). The appropriate aeronautical publications will be amended.

8.4 Radio Communication Procedures

Correct procedure on the part of operators of radiotelephone equipment is necessary for the efficient exchange of communications and is particularly important where lives and property are at stake. It is also essential for a fair sharing of "On the Air" time in the crowded radio spectrum.

Radiotelephone equipment installed in any civil aircraft may be operated only by persons holding an appropriate radio operator's licence, Restricted Operator Certificate—Aeronautical (ROC-A). A reciprocal agreement between Canada and the U.S.A. permits citizens of either country to operate radio equipment installed in aircraft registered in either country if the operator holds a valid Canadian or U.S. pilot's licence and a valid Canadian or U.S. radio operator's licence.

The use of French is authorized in aircraft communication in or over the province of Quebec and at the Macdonald-Cartier International Airport in Ottawa. Information on the bilingual services that are available at specific Quebec airports and at Ottawa can be found in the COMM section of the airport listings in the **Canada Flight Supplement**. ATIS is usually given in English on one frequency and in French on another. Other ATS services, such as tower, ground, arrival and departure, are bilingual. English shall be used elsewhere in Canada. For safety and operational efficiency, once the language has been determined, that language shall be used throughout the course of that communication. Pilots should make themselves thoroughly familiar with aeronautical phraseology in the language of their choice.

8.4.1 Phraseology

Standard phraseology is recommended in the interest of clarity and brevity. It is not compulsory for a pilot to use these standard phrases. If you wish to communicate with a radio facility in your own words, by all means do so. However, use of the standard phrases does provide a uniformity in transmission; it makes your transmissions more readily understood by the ground station operators and enables you to understand more easily transmissions to you.

Ground Stations

Ground radio facilities are identified by their names.

In calling a particular facility, a pilot would use the name of the station followed by the facility he/she is contacting.

For Example:

Winnipeg Approach. This is...
Vancouver Centre. This is...
Calgary Ground. This is...
Cleveland Precision Radar. This is...
Ottawa Radio. This is...
Quebec Tower. This is...
Fort Frances UNICOM. This is...

Call Sign	ATS Unit/Function
Airport Radio	Community Aerodrome Radio Station (CARS)/Wx Service & Information Remote Communication Outlet (RCO)/ Wx Service & Information Mandatory Frequency (MF)/Wx Service & Information
Arrival	Terminal Control/Arrival Control
Centre	Area Control Centre
Clearance Delivery	Airport Control/Clearance Delivery
Departure	Terminal Control/Departure Control
Ground	Airport Control/Ground Control
Radio	Flight Information Centre (FIC)/Flight Information Service Enroute (FISE)
Radio	Flight Service Station (FSS)/Aerodrome Advisory Service (AAS)
Terminal	Terminal Control/Terminal Control
Tower	Airport Control/Tower Control
Unicom	Unicom or Aerodrome Traffic Frequency/Airport Advisory

Fig.8.11 **Ground Station Phraseology**

Pronunciation of Numbers

Numbers are pronounced as follows:

Number	Pronunciation
0	ZEE-RO
1	WUN
2	TOO
3	TREE
4	FOW-er
5	FIFE
6	SIX
7	SEV-en
8	AIT
9	NIN-er
Thousand	TOU-SAND
Decimal	DAY-SEE-MAL

Fig.8.12 **Numbers Phraseology**

When referring to numbers, except whole thousands, each digit is stated separately.

For Example:

Ten is spoken One Zero.
Nineteen is spoken One Niner.
Eight hundred is spoken Eight Zero Zero.
Eleven thousand is spoken One One Thousand.

Wind speed and cloud base numbers may be expressed in group form.

For Example:

Wind Two Seven Zero at Ten.
Three Thousand Four Hundred Broken.

Phonetic Alphabet

To avoid confusion due to the similarity in sound of some letters of the alphabet (such as B and C), a phonetic alphabet has been devised. It should be used for single letters or to spell out groups of letters as much as possible.

Letter	Associated Word
A	Alfa
B	Bravo "BRAH-voe"
C	Charlie
D	Delta
E	Echo
F	Foxtrot
G	Golf
H	Hotel
I	India
J	Juliet "Jool-ee-YET"
K	Kilo "KEE-loe"
L	Lima "LEE-mah"
M	Mike
N	November
O	Oscar
P	Papa "POP-ah"
Q	Quebec "KAY-BECK"
R	Romeo
S	Sierra
T	Tango
U	Uniform
V	Victor
W	Whiskey
X	X-Ray
Y	Yankee
Z	Zulu

Fig.8.13 **Phonetic Alphabet**

Aircraft Call Signs

In radio communications, the call letters of your aeroplane must be expressed in phonetics at all times. On initial contact, you must give the manufacturer's name or the type of aeroplane, followed by the four letters of the registration. The words helicopter, glider or ultralight are acceptable substitutes for the type of aircraft.

For Example:

Piper Tomahawk Golf Mike Oscar Tango
or
Ultralight India Bravo Charlie Hotel.

In subsequent communications, the call letters may be abbreviated to the last three letters of the registration if the abbreviation is initiated by the ATC controller or FSS operator.

For Example:

Piper Tomahawk Golf Mike Oscar Tango
becomes Mike Oscar Tango.

In the case of foreign aircraft, on initial contact, the manufacturer's name or type of aircraft and the full aircraft registration must be given. The registration may be abbreviated, in subsequent communications, to the last three characters, if the abbreviation is initiated by ATC.

For Example:

Cessna 172 N8723T becomes
Two Three Tango.

A flight responding to a medical emergency for the transport of patients, organ donors, organs or other urgently needed medical material or services is called a medical evacuation flight (MEDEVAC). The word MEDEVAC is included after the four characters of the registration and is retained as part of the call sign even if the call sign is abbreviated to three letters.

For Example:

Whiskey Zulu India Medevac.

Expressing Time

The 24 hour system is used in expressing time. It is expressed by four figures, the first two denoting the hour past midnight and the last two the minutes past the hour.

For Example:

12-Hour System	Expressed in 24-Hour System
12:00 midnight	0000
12:30 a.m.	0030
2:15 a.m.	0215
5:45 a.m.	0545
12:00 noon	1200
3:30 p.m.	1530
10:50 p.m.	2250

Fig.8.14 **24-Hour Time System**

The day begins at 0000Z and ends at 2359Z. 2400Z is not used in flight operations.

Normally co-ordinated universal time (UTC) is used. In fact, all air traffic control facilities in North America operate on UTC. The letter Z after the hour indicates UTC.

Where operations are conducted solely within one time zone, standard zone time may be used, if care is taken to indicate clearly the time zone. Daylight Saving Time is not used. Standard time zones are indicated by letters as follows:

Time Zone	Code Letter
Newfoundland	N
Atlantic	A
Eastern	E
Central	C
Mountain	M
Pacific	P
Yukon	Y

Fig.8.15 **Time Zone Code Lettering**

2:15 p.m. EST is expressed 1415E.
9:00 a.m. PST is expressed 0900P.
11:45 p.m. UTC is expressed 2345Z.

In air traffic control procedure, the hour is often omitted and the time referred to in minutes past the hour only.

For Example:

10:25 would be referred to as 25 and spoken Two Five.

However, if the hour is included in the time, it is spoken in four digits.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

For Example:

8:45 a.m. is spoken Zero Eight Four Five.
12:30 a.m. is spoken Zero Zero Three Zero.
12:45 p.m. is spoken One Two Four Five.

Airways & Air Routes

The phonetic alphabet is used in referring to airways and air routes.

For Example:

Airway V52 is spoken Victor Five Two.
Airway G1 (Green 1) is spoken Golf One.
Airway A2 (Amber 2) is spoken Alfa Two.
Airway R3 (Red 3) is spoken Romeo Three.
Airway B4 (Blue 4) is spoken Bravo Four.
Airway J500 (High Level 500) — Juliet Five Hundred.
Air Route GR1 (Green Route 1) — Golf Romeo One.
Air Route AR2 (Amber Route 2) — Alfa Romeo Two.
Air Route RR3 (Red Route 3) — Romeo Romeo Three.
Air Route BR4 (Blue Route 4) — Bravo Romeo Four.

Flight Altitudes & Headings

Flight altitudes are always given in thousands and hundreds of feet above sea level.

For Example:

One Thousand. (1,000 feet ASL)
Two Thousand Five Hundred. (2,500 feet ASL)
One Zero Thousand. (10,000 feet ASL)
One Six Thousand. (16,000 feet ASL)
Flight Level Two Four Zero. (FL 240)

Aircraft headings are given in groups of three digits, in degrees magnetic (if operating in the Southern Domestic Airspace) or in degrees true (if operating in the Northern Domestic Airspace).

For Example:

060 is spoken Heading Zero Six Zero.
275 is spoken Heading Two Seven Five.

Aerodrome elevations are expressed in feet.

For Example:

Field Elevation Six Seven Five.

Radio Frequencies

Radio frequencies containing a decimal point are expressed with the decimal point in the appropriate place in the sequence:

For Example:

121.5 MHz is spoken as
One Two One Decimal Five Megahertz.

It is necessary that pilots on the initial call state the frequency on which they are transmitting. This procedure is required in order to provide the ground station communicators, who guard many frequencies, with a positive indication of the correct transmitter to be selected for answering the call.

The ground station will normally reply on the frequency on which the call is received. Calls received on 122.2 MHz will be answered on the navigational aid frequency. Pilots requiring an exception to this procedure should state the frequency on which the reply is expected.

Aircraft: Vancouver Radio — This is Beechcraft Foxtrot Delta Lima Tango — On One Two Two Decimal Two — Over.

The ground station will reply on the navigational aid frequency.

Aircraft: Ottawa Radio — This is Piper Foxtrot Alfa Golf Lima — On One Two Two Decimal Two — Reply on One Two Six Decimal Seven — Over.

The ground station will reply on 126.7 MHz.

Aircraft: Montreal Radio — This is Cessna Golf Bravo Romeo Yankee — On One Two Six Decimal Seven — Over.

The ground station will reply on 126.7 MHz.

Transponder codes are given in numbers preceded by the word SQUAWK.

For Example:

Code 1200 is spoken **Squawk One Two Zero Zero**.

Runway Visual Range (RVR)

Runway visual range information is provided by ATC, arrival control, PAR, control towers and flight service stations.

For Example:

RVR Runway Two Five,
Three Thousand Six Hundred Feet.

RVR Runway One Niner, Variable from One

Thousand Feet to Two Thousand Feet.

The Morse International Code

It is not necessary for a pilot to know Morse code in order to use aeronautical radio facilities. However, the identifiers of VOR stations, ILS localizers and non directional beacons are broadcast in Morse code and it is therefore advantageous to have some knowledge of the code.

A	•—	S	•••
B	—•••	T	—
C	—•—•	U	••—
D	—••	V	•••—
E	•	W	•——
F	••—•	X	—••—
G	——•	Y	—•——
H	••••	Z	——••
I	••	1	•————
J	•———	2	••———
K	—•—	3	•••——
L	•—••	4	••••—
M	——	5	•••••
N	—•	6	—••••
O	———	7	——•••
P	•——•	8	———••
Q	——•—	9	————•
R	•—•	0	—————

Fig.8.16 **The Morse International Code**

Standard Phrases

The following phrases and words in the left column and their corresponding meanings in the right column should be used whenever applicable.

Phrase	Meaning
Acknowledge	Let me know you have received and understood this message.
Affirmative	Yes.
Approved	Permission granted.
Break	Separation between portions of the message.
Break Break	Separation between messages for two different aircraft.
Check	Examine a system or procedure.
Confirm	Verify (clearance, instruction, action, information) given.
Contact	Establish communication with...
Correct	True or accurate.
Correction	An error was made in transmission, the correction will follow.
Disregard	Ignore.
Do you read me?	I have called you more than once. If you are receiving me, please reply.
Expedite	Comply with instruction as soon as possible.
Go ahead	Proceed with your message.
How do you read?	Can you hear my transmission clearly?
I do not understand	I do not understand, please rephrase your last transmission.
I say again	I repeat for clarity or emphasis.
Immediately	Immediate action as required for safety reasons.
Monitor	Listen to (frequency) without checking in.
Negative	No, or Permission not granted, or Not correct, or Not capable.
Over	End of transmission, require response.
Read Back	Repeat all, or specified part of message back.
Recleared	A change has been made to your last clearance and this new clearance supersedes your previous clearance or part thereof
Roger	I have received your transmission (generally used by ATC rather than pilots).
Say again	Repeat all, or specified part of last transmission.
Speak slower	Reduce rate of speech.
Stand by	Wait and monitor frequency, caller will re-establish contact.
Unable	Cannot comply with instruction, or clearance, or request.
Wilco	I understand the message and will comply.
Without delay	Follow instructions expeditiously, specifically and safely.
Word twice	Communication difficult: please say every word or group of words twice. Communication difficult: therefore, I will repeat every word/group of words twice.

Fig.8.17 **Standard Phraseology Meanings**

The following phrases and words are applicable to the standard operation of helicopters.

Phrase	Meaning
Air taxi	To taxi while airborne: generally above twenty knots airspeed, altitude at pilot's discretion, generally below one hundred feet AGL
Autorotation	The condition of flight during which the main rotor is driven only by aerodynamic forces with no power from the engine
External load	Helicopters are capable of suspending material under the helicopter during flight. When operating with a load, a helicopter may fly slower and avoid overflying built up areas
Ground taxi	For wheel-equipped helicopters: to taxi on the ground
Hold	To hold short of a designated location in current state (i.e., on ground, in hover) or position
Hover	To hold a position while airborne: done in ground effect, further movement requires ATC instruction
Hover taxi	To taxi while in ground effect: generally less than twenty knots airspeed, altitude less than twenty-five feet AGL unless higher required for operational reasons (e.g., to reduce ground effect turbulence or provide clearance for cargo slingloads)
Helipad	Designated area in which helicopters may take off and land
Long line	An external load suspended on a line from the helicopter. A length may be specified. Expect helicopter to operate as with external load, but also with the extra altitude required to accommodate the length of the line
Rotor downwash	Wake turbulence caused by the movement of the rotors while hovering

Fig.8.18 **Helicopter Phraseology Meanings**

8.4.2 Priority of Communication

In general, the following priorities are applied to radio communications by flight service stations.

1. Emergency communications (Distress and Urgency).
2. Flight safety communications (ATC clearances, airport advisories, position reports, airfile flight plans, etc.).
3. Scheduled broadcasts.
4. Unscheduled broadcasts.
5. Other air-ground communications.

NOTAM, SIGMET or PIREP messages are generally handled as priority item 4.

8.4.3 Good Radio Technique

Optimum use of aircraft radio communication facilities depends on the good technique of the operator.

It is good procedure to listen briefly on the channel to be used before transmitting to ensure that you will not interrupt or cause harmful interference to stations already in communication.

Plan the content of your message before transmitting so that your call will be brief and clear. Use standard phraseology whenever practical. Use a normal conversational tone and volume of speech, and avoid general conversation. Only operational transmissions should be made.

Radio contact consists usually of four parts: the call-up, the reply, the message and the acknowledgement.

Aircraft: Tower — This is Piper Cherokee Golf Alfa Victor Yankee — Over.

Tower: Golf Alfa Victor Yankee — (This is) Buttonville Tower.

Aircraft: Buttonville Tower — Golf Alfa Victor Yankee — One Five West — Two thousand five hundred feet — VFR — Landing Instructions.

Tower: Alfa Victor Yankee — Buttonville Tower — Runway One Five — Wind One Three Zero at Ten — Altimeter Two Niner Niner Two — Cleared to the Circuit.

Aircraft: Alfa Victor Yankee.

"This is" and "Over" may be omitted.

1. Pronounce words clearly. Do not slur sounds or run words together.
2. Speak at a moderate rate, neither too fast nor too slow.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

3. Keep the pitch of the voice constant. High pitched voices transmit better than low pitched voices.
4. Do not shout into the microphone.
5. Position the microphone correctly — about 1 inch from the lips.
6. Know what you are going to say before starting the communication. "Ums"and "ahs" take up valuable air time.
7. Acknowledge receipt of all ATC messages including frequency changes directed to and received by you. The acknowledgement should take the form of a transmission of the aircraft call sign or a read back of the clearance or other appropriate message with the call sign. Clicking your microphone button as a form of acknowledgement is not proper radio procedure.
8. Profanity or offensive language is not permitted.
9. Do not request transportation, accommodation or other personal services from airways communication stations. They will not accept such messages.

The important thing is to prevent misunderstandings. Let the controller know who you are (on every transmission) and what you are doing. Repeat his/her message if necessary to avoid error.

Simple misunderstanding is one of the greatest problems in pilot/controller communication. In many cases, the pilot or the controller think they hear what they expect to hear. The practice of reading back to the controller any clearance received helps to avoid this kind of misunderstanding. The use of standard phraseology also helps to avoid misunderstandings and interjects professionalism into transmissions. If you are given a clearance that you do not understand or that does not make sense, ask for a clarification. Never "roger" anything that you do not fully understand.

8.4.4 Communication Checks

Aircraft operators may sometimes wish to check the serviceability of their communication equipment. Such a check may be made while the aircraft is airborne (signal check), while the aircraft is about to depart (preflight check), or by ground maintenance personnel (maintenance check).

The readability scale employed for communications checks has the following meaning: 1. Unreadable; 2. Readable now and then; 3. Readable with difficulty; 4. Readable; 5. Perfectly readable. The strength scale has the following meaning: 1. Bad; 2. Poor; 3. Fair; 4. Good; 5. Excellent.

Aircraft: Churchill Radio — This is Piper Foxtrot Romeo Yankee Tango — Signal Check on Five Six Eight Zero — Over.

Tower: Piper Romeo Yankee Tango — This is Churchill Radio — Signal Check Reading You Strength Five — Over.

Radio checks, when required, should whenever possible be requested on frequencies other than ATC frequencies since frequency congestion is a problem. Normally the establishment of two-way contact is sufficient proof that radios are serviceable.

8.4.5 Electronic Interference to Navigation & Communication Systems

Portable electronic devices produce radiation which may cause interference to aircraft navigation and communication systems. These systems are most vulnerable to this type of disruptive interference during the approach, landing and take-off phases of flight. During these stages, the aircraft is at low altitude and may also be subject to disruptive interference from ground based sources, the combined effect of which may cause unreliable indications by ILS, VOR and ADF equipment.

Citizen band (CB) radios, cellular telephones and transmitters that remotely control devices, such as toys, which intentionally radiate radio frequency signals are prohibited on board aircraft.

Audio or video recorders, audio or video playback devices, electronic entertainment devices, laptop computers, hand-held calculators, FM radio receivers, TV receivers and electronic shavers may not be used during the critical phases of take-off, climb, approach and landing. They may be used during the cruise phase of flight if they have been demonstrated to be acceptable. Hand-held electronic calculators, for example, have been found to cause interference to ADF equipment in the 200 to 450 kHz frequency range if the calculator is positioned within 5 feet of the loop or sense antenna. In a small general aviation aeroplane, it is probably wise to avoid using such equipment even during cruise if ADF, VOR and DME systems are being used to provide navigational direction.

8.4.6 Radiotelephone Procedures in Communication with Ground Stations

In the following examples of communications between aircraft and various ground stations, the initial call-up and reply have been omitted in order to conserve space.

Call-Up & Taxi Authorization

Permission to taxi should be requested on the ground control frequency that is published in the **Canada Flight Supplement**. If no flight plan has been filed, you should inform the controller of the nature of your flight (e.g. local VFR). Do not leave the apron until authorized by the controller to do so. Ground control will reply, authorizing you to proceed to the runway in use and will give you the surface wind, the altimeter setting and the time.

At a number of major airports where clearance delivery is in operation, VFR flights are required to contact this controller before starting to taxi and before contacting the apron and/or ground controller.

Transponders should be adjusted to "standby" while taxiing and switched to "on" or "ALT" only immediately before take-off.

Radio checks may be requested on the ground control frequency.

Aircraft: Norwood Ground Control — This is Cessna Foxtrot Mike Kilo Alfa — Preflight Check — One Two One Decimal Niner (1) — Over.

Ground: Cessna Foxtrot Mike Kilo Alfa — This is Norwood Ground Control — Radio Checks Strength Five.

Aircraft: Norwood Ground Control — Cessna Foxtrot Mike Kilo Alfa on West Ramp — VFR to Forestville — Taxi Instructions — Over.

Ground: Mike Kilo Alfa (2) — Taxi to Runway Two Seven (3) — Wind Two Seven Zero at One Zero (4) — Altimeter Two Niner Seven Five (5) — Time Zero Five (6).

(1) Meaning you expect a preflight check on 121.9 MHz.

(2) After communication has been established, the aircraft registration may be abbreviated to the last three letters, phonetically expressed.

(3) Runway 27 lies approximately 270° magnetic. Your compass or heading indicator should therefore read 270° when you line up for take-off.

(4) The wind is west at 10 kts. Winds given by control towers are magnetic whereas those given by meteorological stations are true.

(5) Set the barometric scale on your altimeter to 29.75.

(6) Set your clock to 05 minutes past the hour.

With the increasing traffic around all airports, frequency congestion is becoming a problem and brevity in your transmissions is therefore desirable.

At many major airports, information about ceiling, visibility, runway in use, etc. is given over the automatic terminal information service. Listen to this information and when first calling ground control, state that you have the information broadcast on ATIS. Be sure to specify the phonetic identifier of the ATIS message (i.e. ATIS Information Bravo).

At an airport where there is no ATIS, listen on the ground control frequency to the controller talking to other aeroplanes and take note of the "numbers". When making your first contact, inform the controller:

Aircraft: Norwood Ground Control — Cessna Foxtrot Mike Kilo Alfa with the Numbers — etc. etc.

The controller then does not have to take up valuable air time repeating information that you already know.

If authorized to taxi to the runway in use, no further authorization is required to cross any inactive runway en route. However, at no time, may a taxiing aircraft taxi on or across an active runway unless authorized to do so. If for any reason, the airport ground controller requires that you request further authorization before crossing or entering any runway en route, this requirement will be reflected in the taxi authorization.

To emphasize the protection of active runways and to prevent runway incursions, ATC will request a readback of a "Hold/Hold Short" of a runway or taxiway instruction. Examples of hold points that should be readback are:

Tower: Hold or Hold on Runway . . . . or on Taxiway . . . . Hold East (or North, etc.) of Runway . . . . Hold Short of Runway . . . . or of Taxiway . . . .

With the increased simultaneous use of more than one runway, instructions to enter, cross, backtrack or line up on any runway should be acknowledged by a readback.

Authorization to taxi "to" the runway in use is not authorization to taxi "on" the assigned runway. You must hold short of the runway in the designated taxi holding position until receiving authorization to taxi on the runway to take-off position. If no taxi holding position is established, you should hold at sufficient distance from the edge of the active runway so as not to create a hazard to arriving or departing traffic (200 feet is the recommended distance).

You may be instructed to "line up" or "line up and wait." This may occur when the ATC unit is busy with other arriving or departing aircraft, or for wake turbulence separation. "Line up" and "line up and wait" are not take-off clearances.

Flight Plan Filing via Radio

If you have not previously filed a flight plan, you may file one giving the information over the radio. However, filing a flight plan by radio is only permissible when it is impossible to file one in person by telephone, or by Internet. A long transmission such as the filing of a flight plan aggravates the congestion of the air-ground communication channels and ties up controllers whose job is to expedite the safe and orderly movement of traffic.

If you must make a change to your flight plan regarding its route, duration or destination, direct the change to the appropriate ATS unit as soon as possible.

Aircraft: Summit Tower — This is Cessna Foxtrot Papa Tango Victor — Here is my Flight Plan — Cessna 172/SD/C — Airspeed One Two Five Knots — Departing Summit — Eight Thousand Five Hundred VFR (1) via Victor Seven — Destination Huntington — Departing at One Three — Elapsed Time One Hour Plus Four Minutes — Fuel on Board Three Hours Plus Ten Minutes — Garrett ELT — Standard VHF, ADF, DME and Transponder Equipped — Two Persons on Board — Pilot Ayer Worthy, 123 A Street, Anytown, Ontario — Amphibian — Aircraft Blue with White Trim — Arrival Report will be filed at Huntington FSS — Pilot Licence YZP 123456 — Over.

Tower: Papa Tango Victor — I have your Flight Plan.

Aircraft: Roger Papa Tango Victor.

(1) VFR, Visual Flight Rules, do not require any stated altitude. However, air traffic control strongly recommends that you state your altitude and route. "Eight thousand five hundred" means 8,500 feet altitude. "Victor seven" means that you will fly via VOR Airway V7.

Take-Off Clearance

When you have run up your engine(s) and made your cockpit check, if you have not already done so, change to tower frequency and request a clearance for take-off:

Aircraft: Moncton Tower — Cirrus Foxtrot November November Charlie — Ready for Take-off on Runway Two Niner.

Tower: Cirrus November November Charlie — Cleared for Take-off on Runway Two Niner.

Aircraft: Roger November November Charlie.

Having received and acknowledged take-off clearance, you should take off without delay. If, for some reason, you are unable to do so, inform the tower immediately.

When you receive your take-off clearance, it is good practice to repeat the runway number in your read back. This helps to verify that you are using the correct runway.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Special Clearance

Should you wish to execute some special maneuver, such as a right-hand turn after taking off, the following phraseology would be appropriate:

Aircraft: Bonanza Golf Alfa Tango Hotel — Ready for Take-off on Runway Zero Four — Request Right Turn Out — Over.

Tower: Bonanza Alfa Tango Hotel — Right Turn Approved — Cleared for Take-off on Runway Zero Four.

Aircraft: Roger Alfa Tango Hotel.

After take-off, remain tuned to the tower frequency. The tower will usually call you after take-off, give you any necessary traffic information and your time off. You should remain tuned to the tower frequency while in the control zone. (Aeroplanes doing local flying must remain tuned to the tower frequency at all times.) You do not need permission to change from the tower frequency once you are clear of the control zone. To make such a request would needlessly increase frequency congestion. Once outside the control zone, you should monitor 126.7 MHz.

VFR Position Reports

An aeroplane flying VFR is not required to report its position to intermediate stations en route. However, it is a good idea to do so and there is a special sequence to follow in making this report. After calling the FIC and receiving their acknowledgement of your call, you should state your wish to give a report on your position. The sequence of this report is as follows:

Position Reporting Sequence			
1	Identification	4	Altitude
2	Position	5	VFR Flight Plan
3	Time over	6	Destination

Fig.8.19 **Position Reporting Sequence**

Aircraft: Ottawa Radio — This is Cessna Golf Delta Delta India — VFR Position Report — Over.

Station: Delta Delta India — This is Ottawa Radio — Go Ahead.

Aircraft: Ottawa Radio — Delta Delta India — By Ottawa at Five Eight — Six Thousand Five Hundred — VFR Flight Plan — Destination Muskoka.

En Route Reports (Class B Airspace)

VFR flights are subject to ATC control when flying in Class B airspace. Aeroplanes flying VFR in Class B airspace must obtain air traffic clearances and file en route position reports at all compulsory reporting points, or other reporting points which may be specified by ATC.

It is a good idea to keep a pencil and paper handy to copy down the clearances. Pilots in Class B airspace shall read back the text of an ATC clearance when requested to do so by an ATC unit. (In fact, any VFR flight may be asked to read back the text of an ATC clearance.) The shorthand symbols in Fig.8.20 used by ATC controllers may prove useful to you.

Words and Phrases	Shorthand	Words and Phrases	Shorthand
ABOVE	ABV	AND	&
ADVISE	ADV	APPROACH	AP
AFTER (PASSING)	<	FINAL	F
AIRPORT	A	LOW FREQUENCY RANGE	R
ALTERNATE INSTRUCTIONS	( )	OMNI	O
ALTITUDE 6,000-17,000	60-170	PRECISION	PAR
STRAIGHT-IN	SI	FOR FURTHER CLEARANCE	FFC
SURVEILLANCE	ASR	FOR FURTHER HEADINGS	FFH
APPROACH CONTROL	APC	HEADING	HDG
AT (USUALLY OMITTED)	@	HOLD (DIRECTION)	H-W
(ATC) ADVISES	CA	INTERSECTION	XN
(ATC) CLEARS OR CLEARED	C	(ILS) LOCALIZER	L
(ATC) REQUESTS	CR	OMNI (RANGES)	O
BEARING	BEAR	OUTER COMPASS LOCATOR	LOM
BEFORE	>	OUTER MARKER	OM
BELOW	BLO	RADAR VECTOR	R V
BOUND	B	RADIAL	RAD
EASTBOUND, etc.	EB	RANGE (LF/MF)	R
OUTBOUND	OB	REMAIN WELL TO LEFT SIDE	LS
INBOUND	IB	REMAIN WELL TO RIGHT SIDE	RS
CLIMB (TO)	↑	REPORT DEPARTING	RD
CONTACT	CT	REPORT LEAVING	RL
COURSE	CRS	REPORT ON COURSE	R-CRS
CROSS	X	REPORT OVER	RO
CROSS CIVIL AIRWAYS	#	REPORT PASSING	RP
CRUISE	→	REPORT REACHING	RR
DELAY INDEFINITE	DLI	REPORT STARTING PROCEDURE TURN	RSPT
DEPART	DEP	REQUEST ALTITUDE CHANGES ENROUTE	RACE
DESCEND (TO)	↓	REVERSE COURSE	RC
DIRECT	DR	RUNWAY	RY
EACH	ea	STANDBY	STBY
EXPECT APPROACH CLEARANCE	EAC	TAKEOFF (DIRECTION)	T→N
EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE	EFC	TOWER	Z
FAN MARKER	FM	TRACK	TR
		TURN LEFT	LT
		TURN RIGHT	RT
		UNTIL FURTHER ADVISED	UFA
		VICTOR	V

Fig.8.20 **Shorthand Symbols**

For Example:

C FTOM BLT/V5 15 M5/UXB

Means:

ATC clears Foxtrot Tango Oscar Mike to Bolton via Victor 5. Climb to 5,000 feet immediately and maintain 5,000 until reaching Uxbridge reporting point.

You have filed a flight plan from Yarmouth, Nova Scotia for a flight to St. Johns, (Torbay) Nfld., in Class B airspace, at 13,000 feet via Victor airway 312. Compulsory reporting points along the way are: Halifax, Copper Lake, Sydney and Atlantic. Your aeroplane is fitted with a VHF transceiver and an omnirange receiver. (Maximum line- of-sight reception distance at 13,000 feet is 140 n.m., so some of the latter portion of your flight will be by D/R navigation). You have taken off at 1915Z and are climbing to your intended altitude. You contact Yarmouth radio for a clearance (from Moncton Centre) to enter the Class B airspace.

All clearance reports you make are to the air traffic control centre (ATC) but may be made through a communications facility such as a tower, flight service station or omnirange station, etc. The communications facility relays your message to ATC and issues the clearance to you. (When you report to a remote communication outlet (RCO), however, you are in effect in direct communication with the centre by remote control).

Aircraft: Yarmouth Radio — This is Twin Comanche Golf Kilo Tango Mike — One Two Two Decimal Two (listening on Omni Frequency) — Over.

Station: Golf Kilo Tango Mike — This is Yarmouth Radio — Go Ahead.

Aircraft: Golf Kilo Tango Mike at One One Thousand Five Hundred — Two Zero Miles East on Victor Three One Two (1) — Requesting One Three Thousand Controlled VFR to Torbay via Victor Three One Two — Over.

Station: ATC Clears Kilo Tango Mike to Torbay via Victor Three One Two — Climb to and Maintain One Three Thousand VFR — Report Reaching One Three Thousand — Over.

Aircraft: (Repeats clearance back) Kilo Tango Mike is cleared to Torbay via Victor Three One Two — Climb to and Maintain One Three Thousand VFR — Report Reaching One Three Thousand — Over.

Station: Roger Yarmouth Radio Out.

You report on reaching 13,000 feet as instructed.

Aircraft: Yarmouth Radio — This is Golf Kilo Tango Mike at One Three Thousand at Two Two (2) — Over.

Station: Kilo Tango Mike — This is Yarmouth Radio — Check you at One Three Thousand at Two Two — Over.

Aircraft: Kilo Tango Mike.

(1) Meaning the 050 radial of the Yarmouth omnirange which provides the outbound track for Victor Airway 312.

(2) Meaning 22 minutes past the hour, i.e. 1922 Z.

When you arrive over the Halifax omnirange (your first reporting point), you check the time, calculate your groundspeed and your estimated time of arrival over the next reporting point. You have contacted Halifax radio and the station has acknowledged your call.

Aircraft: Golf Kilo Tango Mike over Halifax at One Five — One Three Thousand — VFR — Estimating Copper Lake (3) at Two Zero Four Zero — Sydney (4) — Over.

(3) Your next reporting point.

(4) The next succeeding reporting point.

Station: Check you over Halifax at One Five — One Three Thousand — VFR — Estimating Copper Lake at Four Zero — Over.

Aircraft: Golf Kilo Tango Mike.

You tune in the Charlottetown VOR on 114.9 MHz and select 162° on your omni bearing selector. This is the 162° radial of the Charlottetown omnirange. Where it intersects Victor airway 312 is the Copper Lake reporting point. When your needle centres, you are over Copper Lake.

Aircraft: Sydney Radio — This is Twin Comanche Golf Kilo Tango Mike — One Two Six Decimal Seven — Over.

If the station does not reply immediately,

Aircraft: Sydney Radio — This is Twin Comanche Golf Kilo Tango Mike — One Two Six Decimal Seven — Do you read? — Listening on One One Four Decimal Niner — Over.

If a station does not answer you after two or more calls have been made, you may issue a general call, requesting any station hearing you to contact the station you are calling.

For Example:

Aircraft: Any Station receiving me — Any Station receiving me — This is Golf Kilo Tango Mike — Advise Sydney Radio I am calling on One Two Six Decimal Seven — Listening on One One Four Decimal Niner — Kilo Tango Mike Out.

When contact with the station has been established,

Aircraft: Over Copper Lake at Four Zero — One Three Thousand — VFR — Estimating Sydney at Two One One Five — Atlantic — Over.

Station: Check you over Copper Lake at Four Zero — One Three Thousand — VFR — Estimating Sydney at Two One One Five — Atlantic — Sydney Altimeter Two Niner Seven Five (and any other information considered necessary, such as the weather ahead, etc.) — Over.

Aircraft: Roger Kilo Tango Mike.

You arrive over Sydney at 2115Z and decide to request permission to descend below Class B airspace. You have contacted the station and he/she has acknowledged your call.

Aircraft: By Sydney at One Five — One Three Thousand — VFR — Estimating Atlantic at Two One Five Two — Requesting Descent Below One Two Thousand Five Hundred — Over.

On account of traffic, or for some other reason, your request cannot be immediately approved.

Station: Golf Kilo Tango Mike Maintain One Three Thousand — Report Atlantic for Further Clearance — Call Five Minutes West of Atlantic — Over.

Aircraft: (Reads back clearance) Golf Kilo Tango Mike Maintaining One Three Thousand — Will Call Five Miles West of Atlantic on One Two Six Decimal Seven — Over.

Station: Negative Five Miles — Call Five Minutes West of Atlantic — Over.

Aircraft: Negative Five Miles — Call Five Minutes West of Atlantic — Over.

Station: That is Correct — Sydney Radio Out.

You arrive five minutes west of Atlantic reporting point at 2147Z and have established contact with Sydney Radio:

Aircraft: Golf Kilo Tango Mike Five Minutes West of Atlantic at Four Seven — Requesting Further Clearance — Over.

Station: ATC Clears Kilo Tango Mike to Descend Immediately — Report Leaving One Two Thousand Five Hundred — Traffic is Westbound Aero Commander Maintaining Eight Thousand Estimating Atlantic at Five Six (5) — Over.

Aircraft: (Reads back clearance) Kilo Tango Mike is Cleared to descend immediately — Report Leaving One Two Thousand Five Hundred — Check the Traffic as Westbound

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Aero Commander at Eight Thousand — Estimating Atlantic at Five Six — Over.

Station: Roger Sydney Radio.

(5) Meaning there is an Aero Commander at 8,000 ft. which will be over Atlantic at 2156Z.

You report as you pass through the 12,500 foot level on your descent and decide to check the weather at your destination:

Aircraft: Leaving One Two Thousand Five Hundred at Five Zero — Requesting the Latest Torbay Weather and Altimeter.

Station: Check you leaving One Two Thousand Five Hundred at Five Zero — Here is the Latest Torbay Weather — One Thousand Scattered... etc. etc. — Altimeter Two Niner Zero Three — Over.

Aircraft: Weather Received — Kilo Tango Mike Over.

En Route Radar Surveillance

When operating in areas where radar coverage exists, VFR aircraft that are transponder equipped may request radar traffic information. ATC will provide this information, workload permitting.

Aircraft: Calgary Advisory — Cessna Foxtrot Bravo Charlie Delta — Two Zero Northwest at Nine Thousand Five Hundred — VFR — Squawking One Two Zero Zero — En route to Edmonton — Request Radar Surveillance.

Arrival Reporting

When you are approximately 15 nautical miles from your destination but before entering the controlled airspace, call the tower on the published frequency. When the tower replies, give your altitude, and position in miles and direction from the airport. The tower will reply, giving you the runway to use, wind direction and velocity, traffic, and any other information or instructions considered necessary.

If the airport has ATIS and you have listened to and noted the information, inform the tower on your initial contact that you have the ATIS information. Or, if you have listened to communications between the tower and other aeroplanes and have noted the pertinent information about runway, wind, altimeter setting, etc., tell the controller that you have the "numbers".

Always check the **Canada Flight Supplement** for special procedures relating to a particular airport. If the airspace surrounding a control zone has been designated as classified airspace, it is required that you contact the appropriate air traffic control facility to secure a clearance before entering the airspace. The controller will give you instructions on how to join the circuit and will tell you when to switch to the tower frequency.

Aircraft: London Tower — This is Beech Golf Sierra Tango Bravo.

Tower: Beech Golf Sierra Tango Bravo — This is London Tower — Go Ahead.

Aircraft: Beech Golf Sierra Tango Bravo — One Five Miles Northwest — At Three Thousand — VFR — Landing London — Request Landing Instructions — Over.

Tower: Beech Sierra Tango Bravo — Cleared to Enter Traffic Circuit (1) — Runway Three Two (2) — Wind Two Seven Zero Degrees at One Five — Altimeter Two Niner Seven Zero — Over.

Aircraft: Roger Sierra Tango Bravo.

(1) Should the traffic be right-handed instead of the conventional left- hand circuit, this will be indicated as follows: Cleared to the Right Traffic Circuit.

(2) Should the field have parallel runways, the appropriate runway will be designated as follows: Runway Three Two Left.

Once established in the traffic circuit, you should advise the tower who will reply with further information.

Aircraft: London Tower — Golf Sierra Tango Bravo is Downwind.

Tower: Sierra Tango Bravo — You are Number Two (3) — Follow Piper Warrior on Base Leg.

Aircraft: Sierra Tango Bravo.

(3) This means that you are second in line to land and that there is one aircraft ahead of you.

Final Approach

When you are on the base leg and about to turn in on final approach, request landing clearance. Normally, the tower controller will initiate landing clearance without the need for you to request it. If landing clearance is not received, you must pull up and make another circuit.

Aircraft: Winnipeg Tower — This is Mooney Foxtrot Echo Lima Sierra — Landing Clearance Runway Two Five — Over.

Tower: Echo Lima Sierra — Cleared to Land on Runway Two Five.

Aircraft: Echo Lima Sierra.

or

Tower: Mooney Foxtrot Echo Lima Sierra — Widen your Approach — Cessna 310 Just Landing — You are Number Two.

Aircraft: Wilco Foxtrot Echo Lima Sierra.

Tower: (When runway is clear) Echo Lima Sierra — Cleared to Land on Runway Two Five.

Aircraft: Echo Lima Sierra.

If preceeding traffic has not cleared the runway, the tower may instruct you to pull up and make another circuit, even though landing clearance had been given.

Tower: Echo Lima Sierra — Pull Up and Go Around — Traffic Still on Runway.

Aircraft: Echo Lima Sierra — Pulling Up to Go Around Again.

At some high density airports, aeroplanes are simultaneously cleared to land on intersecting runways. In this situation, the tower may advise:

Tower: Yankee Sierra Uniform — You are Cleared to Land on Runway Three Three — Hold Short of Runway Two Four Right Which Has Landing Traffic.

Aircraft: (Reads back clearance) Yankee Sierra Uniform — Cleared to Land

on Runway Three Three — Hold Short of Runway Two Four Right.

In accepting this landing clearance, you, as pilot, must ensure that your approach and landing are such that you will be able to stop before you reach the intersecting runway.

A landing aircraft may be "Cleared for the Option" which gives the pilot the option of making a touch-and-go, low approach, missed approach, stop-and-go or a full stop landing. This procedure will be used only during light traffic conditions.

Aircraft: Halifax Tower — This is Cessna Golf India Tango Juliet — Downwind Runway Three Four — Request The Option.

Tower: India Tango Juliet — Cleared for the Option.

Aircraft: India Tango Juliet.

Straight-In Approach

A pilot, after first reporting some distance from the field, may request a straight-in approach without entering the traffic circuit, if the traffic permits.

Aircraft: Regina Tower — This is Beaver Foxtrot Hotel India Oscar — Approaching Runway Three Zero on a Heading Three Zero Zero Degrees Magnetic — Requesting a Straight In Approach — Over.

Tower: Foxtrot Hotel India Oscar — Cleared Straight In.

Aircraft: Foxtrot Hotel India Oscar.

Touch-and-Go Landings

Aeroplanes practising landings, who wish to touch down and take off immediately, may be given a touch-and-go clearance. This should be requested by the pilot when turning off the base leg on to the final approach.

Aircraft: Saint Stevens Tower — Whiskey Whiskey Delta (1) — Requesting a Touch-and-Go Landing — Over.

Tower: Whiskey Whiskey Delta — Cleared Touch-and-Go.

If it is not possible to approve the touch-and-go landing because of other traffic, the tower will reply:

Tower: Whiskey Whiskey Delta — Negative Touch-and-Go.

(1) Since this would not be the initial communication, the call letters have been shortened to the last three of the four letter registration of the aeroplane.

Taxi Clearance

After landing, taxi straight ahead and clear the runway as quickly as possible at the first available taxiway or turn-off point. After leaving the runway, continue taxiing to a point at least 200 feet from the runway, or across the holding position marker before coming to a stop.

Your time of landing will be given by the tower only if requested. When you are clear of the runway, taxi instructions will be given.

Aircraft: Foxtrot Yankee Uniform Delta — Taxi Instructions — Over

Tower: Foxtrot Yankee Uniform Delta — On at One Five — Taxi to the Terminal via Taxiway Alfa.

Aircraft: Foxtrot Yankee Uniform Delta.

At certain designated airports, ground control has been established to handle traffic on the ground and thus relieve traffic congestion on the tower frequencies. Ground control operates on specially designated frequencies, published in the **Canada Flight Supplement**.

In-bound aeroplanes, after landing and clearing the runway, should tune in the appropriate ground control frequency for taxi instructions and further communication with the tower.

Aircraft: Richmond Ground — This is Aero Commander Golf Romeo Delta Tango — Taxi Instructions — Over.

If you must backtrack on the runway to get to a taxiway in order to exit, or cross, a runway during taxi, you will require a clearance to do so.

Arrival Reporting

Arrival reports are required to close flight plans. They may be directed to ATC, FSS or FIC. They may also be provided via telephone or through the Collaborative Flight Planning System (CFPS).

Ensure that you establish initial contact prior to giving your arrival report.

Aircraft: Edmonton Radio – This is Bonanza Foxtrot Foxtrot Yankee Echo – to close VFR flight plan from Medicine Hat Charlie Yankee Xray Hotel to Red Deer Charlie Yankee Quebec Foxtrot – Arrive Charlie Yankee Quebec Foxtrot June two-niner, time one-three-zero-fife Zulu.

Mandatory Frequency (MF) & Aerodrome Traffic Frequency (ATF)

If you are intending to land at an uncontrolled airport for which a mandatory frequency has been designated, you should call the air- ground facility (FSS, CARS or RCO) on the published MF five minutes prior to entering the specified area associated with that airport.

Aircraft: Timmins Radio — This is Piper Lance Golf Echo Echo Whiskey — Five Miles South at Three Thousand Five Hundred — VFR — Landing Timmins at One Six Four Five — Request Weather and Traffic Advisory — Over.

Station: Echo Echo Whiskey — Timmins Radio — Weather is . . . — Runway in Use is Zero Three — Traffic is . . .

Having joined the traffic circuit, you report.

Aircraft: Timmins Radio — Echo Echo Whiskey is Downwind for Runway Zero Three.

Once established on the final approach, you report again.

Aircraft: Timmins Radio — Echo Echo Whiskey is on Final for Runway Zero Three.

Always prefix your transmission with the name of the airport, radio, FSS, FIC, etc. that you are calling so that there is no

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

doubt about your intentions or the airport at which you are intending to land.

At other uncontrolled airports that are considered to be relatively active, aerodrome traffic frequencies have been designated instead of MFs. The ATF is usually the frequency of the ground station where one exists or 123.2 MHz if there is no ground station.

If there is an ATF and a ground station, you should call the facility on the published ATF immediately prior to entering the specified area and follow the same procedures in your transmissions as outlined for an airport with an MF.

At an uncontrolled airport for which neither a mandatory frequency nor an aerodrome traffic frequency has been designated, or during the hours when the ground station is not in operation, you should broadcast your reports blind on 123.2 MHz (or on the frequency of the inoperative ground station).

Aircraft: Hinton Traffic — Piper Warrior Golf Hotel Alfa Bravo — Five Miles South — Landing Runway Zero Two.

When established in the traffic circuit, you report.

Aircraft: Hinton Traffic — Golf Hotel Alfa Bravo is Downwind for Runway Zero Two.

After turning onto the final approach, you report again.

Aircraft: Hinton Traffic — Hotel Alfa Bravo is on Final for Runway Zero Two

After landing at an aerodrome for which an MF is active, report that you are clear of the landing surface.

For start-up, taxi and take-off at an aerodrome for which an MF is active, before entering the maneuvering area, you must report your intentions. Ensure that you make initial contact first, and listen to the ATIS if it is available.

Before moving onto the take-off surface, inform the air-ground facility. Express your departure procedure before your take-off.

Aircraft: Gatineau Radio – Foxtrot Alfa Uniform backtracking runway two-seven.

Station: Foxtrot Alfa Uniform, Roger.

Aircraft: Gatineau Radio, Foxtrot Alfa Uniform taking off runway two-seven, climb runway heading to circuit altitude, right turn out, northbound one-two thousand feet.

You must report when airborne.

Aircraft: Gatineau Radio – Foxtrot Alfa Uniform airborne runway two-seven.

You must report when departing the circuit.

Aircraft: Gatineau Radio – Foxtrot Alfa Uniform clear of the circuit, northbound.

Station: Foxtrot Alfa Uniform, Roger.

When flying through an MF area without the intention of landing or of doing circuits, you must report at least five minutes prior to entering the area. Begin with an initial call.

Aircraft: Qualicum Beach Radio – This is Bonanza Golf Quebec Hotel Papa.

Station: Bonanza Golf Quebec Hotel Papa, Qualicum Beach Radio.

Aircraft: Qualicum Beach Radio – Golf Quebec Hotel Papa twenty miles southwest of Qualicum Beach – Five Thousand Five Hundred Feet – Flying through the area to Campbell River.

You must also report when you are clear of the MF area.

Aircraft: Qualicum Beach Radio – Quebec Hotel Papa is clear of the area.

There are no regulatory requirements with regards to the reporting of intentions at an ATF facility. An ATF is designated for active uncontrolled aerodromes that do not meet the criteria for the establishment of an MF. Nevertheless, in the interest of safety, all aircraft in the area that are capable of radio communications should treat the area as if there were an MF. All radio-equipped aircraft are required to maintain a listening watch on the appropriate frequency

Distress Call

The first transmission of a distress call should be made on the air-ground frequency that is in use at the time. If you are unable to establish communication on that frequency, the distress call and message should be repeated on the general distress frequency (121.50 MHz or 3023.5 kHz) or on any other frequency that is available, in the effort to establish as quickly as possible communication with another station. However, before changing frequencies, you should transmit a message indicating the frequency to which you intend to change.

The distress message should be repeated at intervals until an answer is received, allowing sufficient time between transmissions for a receiving station to reply.

The distress call format is the word mayday repeated three times, followed by your aircraft identification three times. If time permits, your message should give your estimated position, altitude, the type of aircraft, the nature of the emergency and your intended action (such as crash landing in timber, forced landing on water, etc.). Following the transmission of your message, hold the button on your microphone pressed down for 20 seconds to enable D/F bearings to be taken on you:

Aircraft: Mayday — Mayday — Mayday — Foxtrot Oscar November Romeo — Foxtrot Oscar November Romeo — Foxtrot Oscar November Romeo — Five Zero Miles South of Grand Falls at One Seven Two Five Eastern — Four Thousand — Cessna 185 — Icing — Will Attempt Crash Landing on Ice — (Keep microphone button depressed 20 seconds) Foxtrot Oscar November Romeo — Over.

Station: Foxtrot Oscar November Romeo — Foxtrot Oscar November Romeo — Foxtrot Oscar November Romeo — This is Gander Radio — Gander Radio — Gander Radio — Roger Mayday — Gander Radio Out.

The distress signal has priority over all other transmissions and must be sent only on the authority of the person in command of the aircraft. It indicates that the aircraft sending the signal is threatened by grave and imminent danger and requires immediate assistance. Any person who knowingly transmits a fraudulent distress signal is guilty of an offense and liable to imprisonment or fine.

All stations hearing a distress call must cease any transmission of their own so as not to interfere with the MAYDAY message. Any aircraft that hears a distress call that has not been immediately acknowledged should make every effort to attract the attention of a station that is in a position to render

assistance. In relaying a distress call, always follow it with "from" and the call letters of your aircraft.

If and when the aircraft is no longer in distress, a message must be made on the same frequency (or frequencies) as the MAYDAY message was sent, cancelling the state of distress.

Aircraft: Mayday All Stations — All Stations — All Stations — This is Foxtrot Oscar November Romeo — Foxtrot Oscar November Romeo — Foxtrot Oscar November Romeo — At One Seven Four Zero Eastern — Foxtrot Oscar November Romeo Distress Traffic Ended — Ice Cleared — Returning Grand Falls — Out.

A fuel emergency should be declared when the aircraft must land at the nearest aerodrome with less than minimum fuel.

Aircraft: Mayday — Mayday — Mayday — Fuel — Dawson City Radio— Cessna One-Eight-Two Golf Alfa Bravo Uniform

Urgency Call

Urgency signals are preceded by the word pan pan repeated three times. They are given priority over all other communications except distress calls.

The urgency signal indicates that the station calling has an urgent message concerning the safety of a ship, or aircraft or of some person on board or within sight.

The urgency message should be addressed to a specific station and should be transmitted only on the authority of the pilot in command of the aircraft.

Aircraft: Pan Pan — Pan Pan — Pan Pan — Cleveland Tower — This is De Havilland Foxtrot Golf Foxtrot Echo — Advise Stinson Four Nine One November that his/her Undercarriage is Damaged — Over.

Stations which hear the urgency signal should continue to listen for 3 minutes and then, if no further urgency message is heard, may continue normal operations.

Urgency messages may also be directed to all stations.

Station: Pan Pan — Pan Pan — Pan Pan — All Stations, All Stations, All Stations — This is Ottawa Radio, Ottawa Radio, Ottawa Radio — Emergency Descent at Ottawa Airport — Ottawa Tower Instructs All Aircraft Below Six Thousand Feet Within Range of One Zero Miles of Ottawa VOR Leave East and South Sectors Immediately — This is Ottawa Radio — Out.

Urgency messages to all stations must be cancelled when the situation necessitating the message has been resolved or ended.

An urgency message may also be used by an aircraft experiencing difficulties that compel it to land but where immediate assistance is not required.

Aircraft: Pan Pan — Pan Pan — Pan Pan — This is Piper Golf Delta Bravo Kilo — Experiencing Partial Engine Failure — Will Land — Assistance Not Required.

A minimum fuel call alerts ATC that your aircraft does not have enough fuel to divert to another aerodrome, or to enter a holding pattern or to perform an extended downwind. The aeroplane must land at the intended destination in order to maintain its minimum fuel reserve. Similar to a pan pan call, if a pilot notifies ATC of having minimum fuel, it is not an emergency.

Aircraft: Val d'Or Radio — This is Kodiac One-Zero-Zero Golf Delta Kilo November— minimum fuel.

Safety Call

The safety signal is the word security repeated three times. The use of this signal indicates that a station is about to transmit a message concerning the safety of navigation or important meteorological warnings to aircraft in flight.

The safety signal has priority over all other communications except distress and urgency.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

9 Radio Navigation

The use of radio in cross-country flying has made navigation a relatively simple procedure. The VHF omnidirectional range (VOR) navigation system has made flight between VOR stations as easy as following a highway. Distance measuring equipment (DME) relieves the pilot of the time consuming chores of plotting, measuring and computing to determine groundspeed and distance from destination information. NDBs are beacons on which pilots can home or from which they can obtain a fix, if the aeroplane is equipped with automatic direction finding (ADF) equipment. Area navigation systems (such as INS and the satellite based GPS system) guide the aeroplane to its destination effortlessly.

However, radio navigation aids should be considered a valuable aid, but not a substitute for, dead reckoning. Never neglect your compass. Keep an aeronautical chart handy and regularly check your position on it. Radios can, and do, fail and your insurance against becoming hopelessly lost is your conscientiousness in practising basic pilotage.

9.1 VHF Omnirange Navigation System (VOR)

The most widely used means of radio navigation is the very high frequency omnidirectional range (VOR), a ground-based, short-range navaid. Strategically placed throughout Canada and the United States are hundreds of VOR ground stations that transmit signals that, with the proper airborne receiving equipment, can be used for navigation purposes. It is the basis of the VHF airways system and is also used for VOR non-precision instrument approaches.

The omnirange system functions in the static free VHF frequency band between 112.0 and 117.95 MHz. Each station operates on its own assigned frequency.

The omnirange station puts out two signals. One of these signals is non-directional. It has a constant phase throughout its 360° of azimuth. It is transmitted at a rate of 30 times a second. It is called the reference phase.

The other signal rotates at a rate of 30 times per second. It is called the variable phase.

The reference signal is timed to transmit at the instant the variable signal passes magnetic north. In all other directions, the variable signal will occur sometime later than the reference signal.

The principle of the omnirange is based on the phase difference between the two transmitted signals (Fig.9.1). By measuring the time it takes the rotating signal to sweep from north to where it reaches the receiving equipment in the aeroplane, it is possible to determine the bearing of the aeroplane from the station.

To simply illustrate this principle, let us use the case of an airport rotating beacon. The beam of light is rotating clockwise at, let us say, six rpm. This is one complete revolution every 10 seconds, or 36 degrees of azimuth per second. Suppose the green airport identification light was timed to flash each time the beam swept past magnetic north.

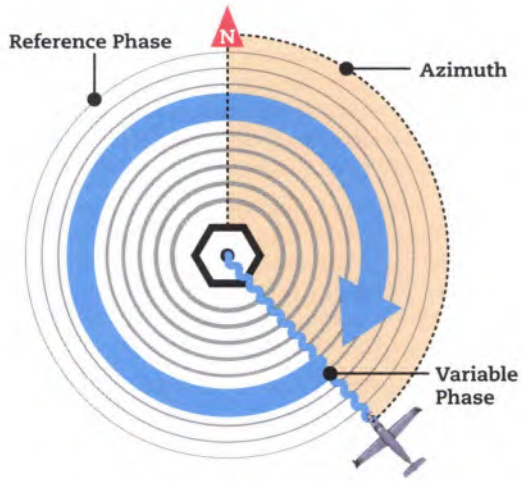


Fig.9.1 **VHF Omnirange**

Now if we had a stopwatch, we could determine our direction from the beacon. When we see the flash of the green light, we would start the watch. When the rotating beam sweeps past us, we would stop it. The number of seconds shown on the watch multiplied by 36 would be our magnetic bearing from the beacon.

Example: The time between the flash of green light and the sweep of the rotating beam past us is four seconds. 4 x 36 = 144. Then our bearing from the beacon is 144° magnetic (Fig.9.2).

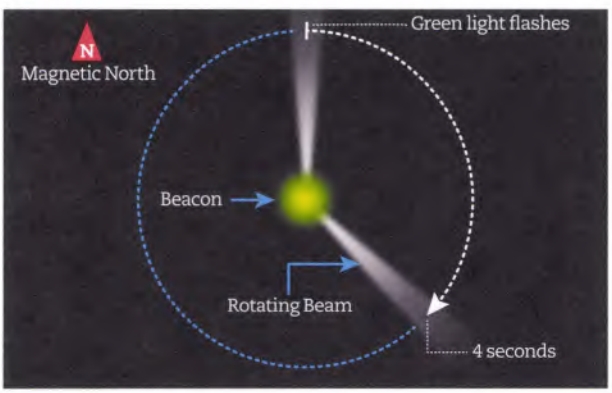


Fig.9.2 **Principles of the Omnirange**

This is exactly what the omnirange equipment does for a pilot, except that the timing between the reference and variable signals is done electronically, and the bearing obtained is any one of the infinite number of beams which radiate out like the spokes of a wheel from the omnirange station and which are referred to as radials.

Although, in theory, there are an infinite number of radials, only 360 are, in practice, usable. These radials are designated by numbers. Each radial is given a number which indicates its magnetic bearing **from** the station. For Example: the radial 45 would be the radial you would follow if you wished to fly a magnetic track northeast away from the station. The radial is located 45° clockwise from the 0° radial which is always aligned with magnetic north.

There are, of course, omni bearings **towards** a station as well as away from it. If you were following the 45 radial to the station, you would be in a position southwest of the station. The 45 radial TO is a reciprocal of the 45 radial FROM.

Omni bearings are called radials regardless of whether they are to or from the station. However, some authorities refer to omni bearings as courses. Other authorities like to consider the radial as the magnetic bearing away from the station, and the course as the magnetic bearing towards the station. "45 FROM" would, therefore, be a radial away from the station, and "225 TO" would be a course towards the station.

A VOR station is depicted on aeronautical charts by a station azimuth (or compass rose) superimposed over the site of the VOR transmitting station, which is represented by a six sided symbol. Fig.9.3 illustrates the azimuth for the Wainwright VOR station. The azimuth is marked off in increments of 5°. The 0° radial is aligned with magnetic north.

The name of the VOR is given in the information box along with the three letter identifier and the associated morse code identification. The frequency of the station is given in megahertz. The frequency for Wainwright is 114.5 MHz.

Several radials are drawn in (274°, 254°, 034° and 087°). These radials are used to provide a flight path between two VOR stations. Such a specially designated flight path is called a Victor airway. The 274° radial is also Victor airway 350 (V350).

Fig.9.3 **How an Omnirange is Shown on a Chart**

9.1.1 Victor Airways

Networks of VHF airways which make use of omnirange facilities crisscross the whole of the United States and most of Canada. These airways are referred to as Victor (or VOR) airways. They are flown by reference to the omni stations, which are located approximately 100 miles apart along the airways. The Victor airways are numbered like highways.

They are approximately 8 nautical miles wide. They are depicted on aeronautical charts by shaded lines the outer edge of which denotes the outer limits of the airway.

Under conditions of low visibility, it is extremely important to fly close to the centreline of the airway, particularly in the vicinity of terminal areas. An adjacent Victor airway may lie as close as 15° to the one you are using and traffic on that airway may be operating at the same altitude you are. Fig.9.4 shows how a Victor airway appears on an aeronautical chart.

Fig.9.4 **Victor Airway (Controlled Airspace)**

Note that the magnetic bearings of the airway illustrated in Fig.9.4 are exact reciprocals: i.e. 228° and 048°. On some airways, these opposite bearings may not be exact reciprocals, due to differences in magnetic variation. For example, a certain Victor airway may be 077° eastbound but be 261° westbound. When flying Victor airways, you fly the omni radial which lies down the centre of the airway.

9.1.2 Advantages of VOR Navigation

The omnirange system provides a multiple number of courses towards and away from each station in the system. These courses are like invisible highways crisscrossing the continent on which the pilot can navigate to or away from any location.

The omniranges may also be used to determine a fix. A pilot is able to establish a position by rapidly tuning two omni stations and reading off their bearings. These will give two position lines. When the latter are drawn on a map, the point where they intersect will be the fix.

Because the omni is **position** sensitive, rather than **heading** sensitive, a pilot can fly a straight line and not worry about compass corrections, variation or deviation. Wind drift is also compensated for automatically. As a result, the aeroplane can be accurately kept on course.

The omni instruments in the aeroplane are designed to show the bearing or direction of the aeroplane from the omni station, **regardless of the direction the nose of the aeroplane may be pointing** (see Fig.9.5). In other words, the omni bearing is a magnetic bearing between the aeroplane itself and the omni station. When you fly towards or away from an omni, you do so by maintaining a line of constant bearing. Obviously, to do this, you must keep kicking the nose around into wind to prevent the wind from drifting you off the bearing line you are endeavouring to maintain. In doing so, you are automatically correcting for wind drift with no effort or calculation of any kind on your part.

The accuracy of the course alignment of the omnirange is within plus or minus 3 degrees. Very precise navigation is therefore possible.

The VOR frequencies are free of static and interference and therefore give reliable indications. Reception is dependent, however, on distance from the station and altitude, (see below).

9.1.3 Disadvantages of VOR Navigation

The VOR signals, transmitted on VHF frequencies, are restricted to line-of-sight reception.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

The curvature of the earth, therefore, has a pronounced effect on the distance at which a VOR signal can be received. At distances of about 50 nautical miles from the station, the signal will be received at an altitude of 1,500 feet AGL. The farther from the station that the aeroplane is, the higher it must be to receive the signal. (See Fig.8.7.)

Fig.9.5 **Omnirange Bearing. The Bearing of the Station from the Aeroplane is 90 Degrees**

At very high altitudes, it is possible to receive incorrect indications because of interference between two stations transmitting on the same frequency. Usually, the same frequency is assigned only to stations that are many hundreds of miles apart. However, on occasion, the areas may overlap and cause erroneous omni readings.

The omnirange signals are also affected by topographical features in the immediate vicinity of the omni station, such as fences, power lines, buildings, etc. This is called site effect error and causes erroneous readings and sometimes complete blanking out of the signal.

In the close vicinity of mountains, the signals are sometimes reflected or completely masked out in the shadow of the mountain. This is known as terrain effect error.

Errors are also occasioned by failure of parts of a particular receiver (receiver error) or by faults in the structure or equipment installed at a particular omnirange station (ground station error).

The vagaries of the VOR system are not of great magnitude.

Site and terrain errors are experienced for short periods and tend to average out before the aeroplane can respond. Receiver error can be eliminated by careful selection and proper maintenance of good reliable equipment. Ground station error, the most serious of those enumerated above, is seldom in excess of 2 degrees and in no case greater than plus or minus 3 degrees of error in displacement.

These vagaries of the omnirange appear in the form of minor irregularities such as course roughness, occasional brief flag alarm activity, course deflections and limited distance range. Over unfamiliar routes, be on the alert for these abnormalities.

9.1.4 The VOR Station

Each VOR station transmits on an assigned VHF frequency. As well as the omni signal, the station transmits a morse code three letter identification. For Example: Toronto YYZ —•—— /—•——/——••

Some omni stations are identified by a recorded voice identification, followed by three letters in code, e.g.: "Indianapolis VOR" (voice) ••/—•/—•• (IND in code). If the omnirange station is unattended and does not provide an air-ground communication facility, the word "unattended" will be included. For Example: "Cooksville Unattended VOR".

Always listen for the identification signal to be sure you have the right station. During periods of maintenance, the coded identification is not broadcast. If you cannot hear the audio signal, take that as indication that the facility may be unreliable even though the VOR signal is being transmitted.

All North American VOR stations operate continuously. Most are equipped with an air-ground communications facility which allows pilots to contact flight service stations. The pilot transmits on 122.2 MHz or 126.7 MHz and receives on the VOR frequency. At selected VORs, taped broadcasts such as the transcribed weather broadcast (TWB) or automatic terminal information service (ATIS) are transmitted.

9.1.5 VOR Navigation Equipment

To use the omninavigation facilities, the aeroplane must be equipped with a VHF receiver, a VOR indicator and an antenna.

The Antenna

The VOR signals are received by the antenna which is normally located on the top of the fuselage or at the tail cone area, where it is free of interference from other electrical equipment. There are 3 types of antennas used with VOR equipment — the V-shaped, flexible steel antenna sometimes called a cat's whisker whip, the blade antenna or the towel bar antenna. The latter two types give somewhat better performance and are required if the VOR is being used in combination with RNAV.

The Receiver

The omnirange receiver is usually incorporated in a unit that has both a transceiver for transmitting and receiving on the communication channels and a receiver for receiving the navigation channels.

The VHF NAV/COM unit illustrated in Fig.9.6 is a typical modern piece of radio equipment. The COM side of the unit has already been discussed in the Chapter **Radio**.

The NAV side of the unit is capable of receiving 200 channels in the frequency range from 108.00 MHz to 117.95 MHz with 50 kHz spacing.

The NAV receiver in Fig.9.6 is tuned to 109.30 MHz. This particular unit allows the pilot to preselect a second VOR frequency (116.40 MHz) in the standby position.

Fig.9.6 **VHF NAV/COM Radio Equipment**

The NAV receiver also functions as a receiver for the glide path and runway localizer of the instrument landing system. ILS localizers operate on odd tenth decimals (i.e. 108.10, 108.30, 108.50, etc.) in the VHF frequency range from 108.10 to 111.90 MHz. When the set is tuned to an ILS frequency, the corresponding glide path frequency (which transmits in the UHF band) is tuned in automatically.

The VOR Indicator

The VOR indicator combines three functions in one unit: a bearing (or course) selector, a course deviation indicator and a TO/FROM indicator.

The VOR indicator illustrated in Fig.9.7 incorporates these three functions. It also incorporates the cross-pointer that is

necessary to give a visual indication of the aeroplane's position when the NAV receiver is tuned to an ILS localizer.

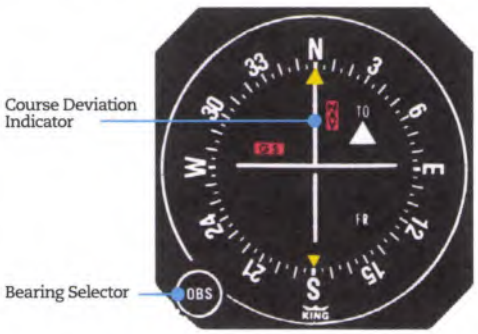


Fig.9.7 **Omni/ILS Indicator**

The omni bearing (or course) selector (OBS) has an azimuth dial graduated in 360 degrees and numbered every 30° from 0 to 33. The numbers represent omni bearings (courses or radials). In Fig.9.7, a bearing (course or radial) of 000° (N) has been selected. The reciprocal bearing or course of 180° (S) is indicated at the tail end of the arrow.

The TO/FROM indicator is located on the right side of the instrument above and below the horizontal bar. Since the magnetic bearing of an omnirange radial can be ambiguous, the sense indicator is used to indicate whether the aeroplane is on a bearing **towards** or **away from** the omnirange station.

If the indicator shows TO, the bearing is towards the station from the aeroplane. If the indicator shows FROM, the bearing is away from the station towards the aeroplane.

The course deviation indicator (CDI) is a vertical needle that moves to the right or left of the row of vertical dots to indicate whether the aeroplane is to the right or left of the course or radial which the pilot has set up on the bearing selector. The course deviation indicator is often simply called the left/right needle or the track bar indicator (TB).

When the NAV receiver is tuned to an ILS localizer, the vertical needle indicates deviation from the selected localizer course. The horizontal needle indicates deviation above or below the glide path. The ILS landing system is more fully discussed later in this Chapter.

9.1.6 VOR Receiver Checks

VHF equipment should be tested periodically to determine its accuracy. Low power VHF (VOT) omnitest transmitters have been installed at various locations throughout Canada and the United States and provide a means of checking a VOR receiver while the aeroplane is on the ground. These transmitters radiate a signal such that an aeroplane will receive an indication as if it were positioned on the magnetic north (000°) radial from the VOR facility. With the needle centered, the omni bearing selector should read 000° with the indicator in the FROM position or 180° with the indicator in the TO position. The bearing accuracy of the transmitted signal is maintained within a tolerance of 1°. An apparent error greater than 4° in the aeroplane VOR receiver is beyond acceptable tolerance. The equipment should be repaired or replaced. An apparent error of less than 4° is acceptable. Do not try, however, to make an allowance for the error and apply a correction factor when selecting a VOR radial. A makeshift practice such as this would only complicate VOR navigation procedures. Besides this, there is no guarantee that the error is uniform through 360 degrees.

VOR checkpoints are established at some airports on the maneuvering area where there is a sufficiently strong VOR signal to facilitate a check of VOR equipment. A sign at the checkpoint indicates the radial and the distance from the VOR transmitter. The radial indicated on the aircraft VOR indicator should be within 4° of the posted radial. The distance measurement is a check for DME equipment (see **Distance Measuring Equipment**, below).

The airports with VOT facilities are listed in the **Canada Flight Supplement**.

Where there are no special omnitest facilities, you may test your equipment for accuracy by the following method. Tune in the frequency of the nearest omni station and centre the needle. Then rotate the dial 180° and centre the needle again. The reciprocal of reading should be within 4 degrees of the original reading for permissable tolerance.

An alternate method of checking a VOR receiver while in flight is to select a VOR radial that lies along the centerline of a VOR airway. Select a prominent ground checkpoint on this radial about 20 miles from the VOR station. When directly over the ground checkpoint at reasonably low altitude, note the VOR bearing indicated by the receiver. A variation of 6° between the indicated bearing and the published radial is the maximum permissible.

In an aircraft equipped with dual VOR systems, one VOR receiver can be checked against the other when both are tuned to the same VOR facility.

9.1.7 VOR Navigation

To use the VOR navigation system, you must first tune in the proper station on the VOR receiver. The frequency of a particular VOR station is published in the information box for that station on the aeronautical chart. Always listen for the identification signal to be sure the proper station has been selected.

To select a radial, rotate the bearing selector. As you do so, the course deviation indicator (CDI) will begin to move towards the vertical row of dots. When the needle becomes centred, the reading on the bearing selector is the radial transmitted by the omni station on which the aeroplane is located. Regardless of the heading of the aeroplane, it is somewhere on the radial indicated by the bearing selector.

The CDI needle, when centred, indicates that the aeroplane is located on the selected radial but it does not indicate on which side of the station the aeroplane is located. The TO/FROM indicator resolves this ambiguity.

The To/From Indicator

Fig.9.8 illustrates the sectors in which either a TO or a FROM signal is received when the bearing selector is indicating an omnirange radial. For the illustration on the left, the 160° radial of a particular omni station has been selected on the bearing selector. In the illustration on the right, the 45° radial has been selected.

If the aeroplane is anywhere within the unshaded segment, regardless of the direction the aeroplane may be heading, the TO/FROM indicator will read FROM the station. If the aeroplane is anywhere within the shaded portion, the TO/FROM indicator will read TO the station, even though the aeroplane may actually be heading in a direction away from the station.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

If the aeroplane happens to be in a position exactly 90° to the selected radial, the opposing signals that actuate the TO and FROM indicator cancel each other and produce an OFF situation.

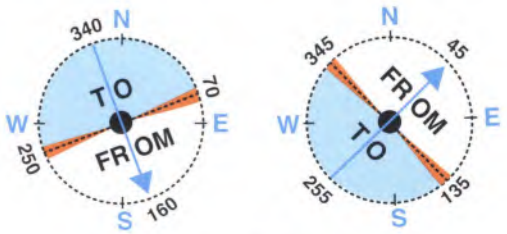


Fig.9.8 **Omnirange TO/FROM Bearings**

In Fig.9.9, the bearing selector in each aeroplane has been set to 0°. Aeroplanes A, B and H would show TO. Aeroplanes D, E and F would show FROM. Aeroplanes C and G would show OFF.

When the aeroplane passes over the omni station, the TO/FROM indicator will change from TO to FROM or vice versa to show station passage.

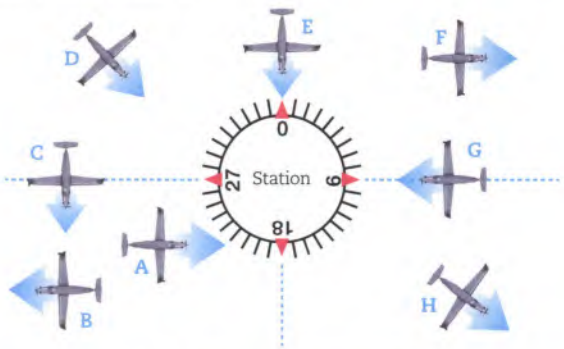


Fig.9.9 **TO/FROM Indicator Samples**

The Course Deviation Indicator

The course deviation indicator will remain centred as long as the aeroplane is actually on the radial indicated on the bearing selector. If the aeroplane is off course to the right of the radial, the CDI will swing to the left of centre. If the aeroplane is off course to the left of the radial, the CDI will swing to the right of centre. In other words, the CDI points in the direction in which the radial lies. To centre the needle, fly into the radial, that is, steer into the needle. When the needle centres, the aeroplane is back on course.

This is normal needle sensing and applies when the aeroplane is headed in the same direction as the radial selected. For example, if the selected radial is 90° and the aeroplane is headed in an easterly direction, normal needle sensing will apply.

If, however, the 90° radial has been selected, but the aeroplane is headed in a westerly direction, then reverse needle sensing will occur. To centre the needle, in this situation, it is necessary to fly away from the needle.

The easiest method of using the VOR system is to select a radial that is in the same general direction as the heading of the aeroplane and use normal needle sensing.

The CDI, as well as the TO/FROM indicator, gives an indication of station passage. As the aeroplane passes over the station, the needle swings to one side and then returns to its original position.

To Fly a Radial Inbound To an Omnirange Station

Suppose you wish to plan a flight from some place on the map to another place where an omnirange is located. Measure the magnetic track on the map from the place where you are now to the omnirange to which you wish to fly. (The magnetic compass rose printed around the omni station on the map is for your convenience in measuring.) The magnetic track you have just measured is the radial you need to fly to reach the station. First of all, tune and identify the station, and then

1. Set the bearing selector to the radial you obtained above.
2. Head the aeroplane in a direction calculated to make good the intended radial.
3. Observe the TO/FROM indicator. It should indicate TO.
4. The CDI will now point towards the direction the aeroplane must be steered to reach the selected radial. Steer into the needle until the vertical needle is centred. Then alter course as necessary to keep the needle centred.

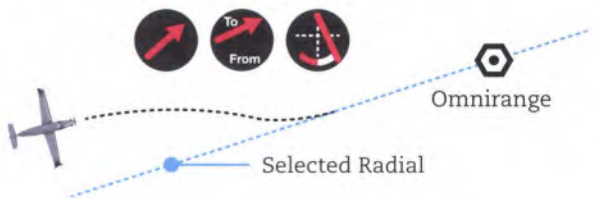


Fig.9.10 **Flying a Radial Towards an Omnirange**

This procedure is known as intercepting the radial and the heading which was flown in order to make the interception is known as the intercept heading. The angle of interception is the angle the intercept heading makes with the selected radial. If you choose to intercept the radial at a large angle of interception (i.e. near 90°), you will reach the radial quickly but, unless you turn quickly, you may easily overshoot it. Selecting a shallower angle of interception (somewhere near 45° or less) will bring you to the selected radial not quite so quickly, but will allow you to make a smoother turn onto it. Of course, if you are quite close to the station, a shallow angle of interception may lead the aeroplane past the station before the interception can occur. You will have to take the factor of distance from the station into consideration when selecting the angle of interception.

How rapidly you are approaching the selected radial is indicated by the movement of the CDI. If it moves quickly from the side of the case towards the centre, a high rate of interception is indicated. Rate of interception is determined by groundspeed, angle of interception, distance from the station and whether you are flying towards or away from the station.

In order to effect a smooth transition from the intercept heading to the inbound radial, maintain the intercept heading until the CDI needle begins to move. As it nears the centre, begin to turn gradually onto the desired inbound heading. With practice, you will be able to achieve the desired heading for the inbound radial just as the needle centres.

When you pass over the station, the sense indicator will change from TO to FROM. This positively identifies your passage over the station. Suppose you should wish to return to the station. Execute a 180° turn. Be sure to turn the course selector 180°. If you do not do this, you will be flying a course

towards a station on a FROM indication. The sensing of the needle will be reversed, and instead of turning towards the needle, you will have to turn away from it to centre it.

So far we have laid much emphasis on the need of doing no more than simply "flying the needle". Now let us offer a word of caution. Flying the needle can be overdone! Always remember that your omni equipment tells you where you are rather than how to get there. To get there, you must head the aeroplane in the right direction. Do not become "needle conscious" to the extent of neglecting your "heading consciousness".

Having intercepted the radial you intend to fly, always turn first to the heading of the radial. Probably after a short time, you will notice some drifting off course, since there is usually a crosswind component. To select a heading that will keep you on the radial, you must make a series of corrections to compensate for the wind drift. Suppose that you are tracking on the radial 030° inbound to station A. You note that on a heading of 030° you have drifted off course to the left. You, therefore, select a heading of 050° (an intercept angle of 20°) to intercept the radial and get back on course. Having intercepted the radial again, divide the intercept angle by 2 and take up a heading of 040°. You note that you are now drifting slightly off the radial to the right and therefore deduce that the correct heading to fly to stay on track is one somewhere between 030° which allows you to drift left of track and 040° which allows you to drift right of track. Intercept the radial again and fly a heading of approximately 035° which should allow you to remain on track directly to the station. This procedure of intercepting a radial and making corrections to remain on track is called bracketing.

In this way, you use the needle as a **guide** to correct the heading, rather than as a primary flight instrument, and you will avoid swinging wildly back and forth across the intended radial, trying to get the needle to stay in the centre.

Remember that the omni bearing and aeroplane heading will never be very far out of agreement, the difference being the wind correction angle. So centre the needle by making gentle corrections to your **heading** rather than concentrating on the needle itself and you will find that flying the omni is the easiest thing you ever tried to do.

To Fly a Radial Outbound From an Omnirange Station

The procedure is exactly the same as that described above, except that the aeroplane is headed in a direction calculated to make good the radial away from the station, and the sense indicator will read FROM.

To Obtain a Fix by Omnirange Bearings

In the same way that we were able to fix the position of an aeroplane by position lines obtained by compass bearings (See **Position Lines** in Chapter **Air Navigation**), we can also obtain a fix by bearings taken on two or more omni stations.

The pilot of the aeroplane in Fig.9.11 is flying along a track, A-B. He wants to check his position. He tunes in omni station Y and rotates the bearing, or course, selector until the course deviation indicator is centred. As will be seen, the bearing selector will read 273° (FROM). He now tunes in omni station X and obtains a reading on the bearing selector of 185° (FROM). By drawing on the map the two position lines, 273° and 185° from the omni stations, the point where they intersect will be the position at the time the bearings were taken.

It is possible to determine groundspeed and to make time and distance calculations by taking, over a period of time, several fixes from the same two omni stations.

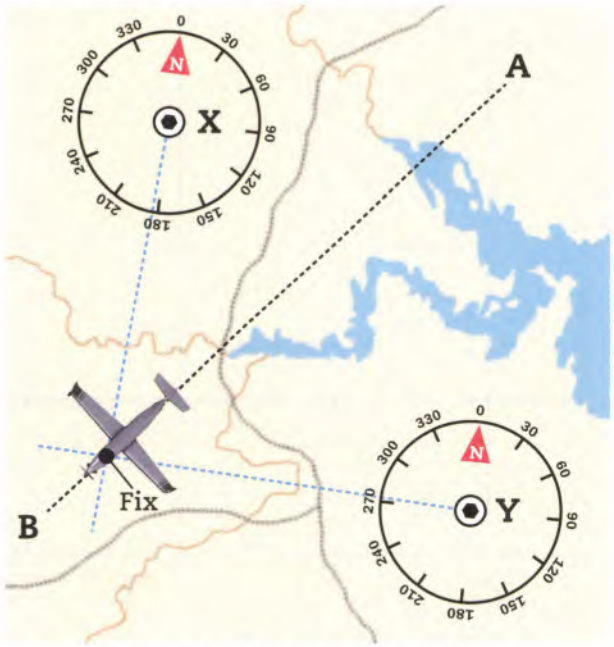


Fig.9.11 **Fix by Omnirange Bearings**

Dual Omni Installations

Many aeroplanes are equipped with two complete NAV/COM units. As well as providing the dependability factor that, if one radio fails, the second is available for both navigation and communication purposes, the two NAV units allow the pilot to select and fly one radial to or from an omni station and, at the same time, continuously take bearings on another off track station to determine position (i.e. to obtain fixes).

9.1.8 TACAN (Tactical Air Navigation)

TACAN operates in the UHF 960 to 1,215 MHz band. Although it is primarily a military system, civil aeroplanes possessing the appropriate equipment may use it as a navigational aid. It combines the functions of the civil VOR (omnirange) and DME (distance measuring equipment) and therefore indicates to the pilot the azimuth, or direction, of the station to which the equipment is tuned and also its slant distance in nautical miles. Its use requires special TACAN equipment installed in the aeroplane.

An aeroplane equipped with distance measuring equipment (DME) can interrogate a TACAN for distance information but any apparent radial information obtained through a coupled VOR receiver is invalid and should be considered a false signal.

9.1.9 VORTAC

In the past, TACAN was a separate navigation system providing azimuth and distance guidance to military aeroplanes. VOR/DME was a system designed to provide similar information to civil aeroplanes. It was found to be practical to combine them into a unified system by installing TACAN facilities at existing VOR stations, thereby bringing all air traffic, both military and civil, under one common control using coincidental facilities operating from the same geographical locations. The collocated facilities are called VORTAC's.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

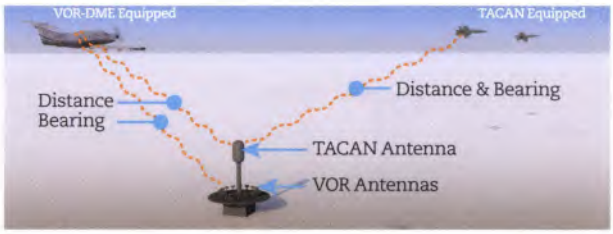


Fig.9.12 **VORTAC Station, Showing Facilities Available for Use with Various Types of Airborne Equipment**

VORTAC, therefore, gives the pilot the azimuth, or direction, to or from the station to which he/she is tuned on VHF and both the direction and distance on UHF.

A pilot with an omnirange receiver can tune in a VORTAC station for directional guidance.

A pilot with DME equipment can interrogate the VORTAC station for distance information. (DME is discussed more fully later in this Chapter.)

A pilot with TACAN airborne equipment can get both azimuth, and distance from the VORTAC facility.

Fig.9.13 **A VORTAC Station**

VORTAC stations are depicted on aeronautical charts in the same manner as are VOR stations, except that the symbol sited at the location of the VORTAC transmitter is a three sided figure as shown in Fig.9.13. The TACAN channel, as well as the VHF frequency, is printed in the information box.

9.1.10 Horizontal Situation Indicator (HSI)

The horizontal situation indicator (HSI), also known as the navigation situation display (NSD) or the pictorial navigation indicator (PNI), is an instrument that combines the display of a heading indicator (or directional gyro) with the display of the omni indicator. It was developed to make the pilot's job simpler, eliminating the need to compare the displays of several instruments, to mentally calculate heading changes and to continuously scan and cross check. The instrument enables the pilot to visualize the aeroplane's position with reference to the selected radial by giving current heading, selected course, course deviation, station position and, when on an instrument approach, position relative to the glideslope and localizer.

The compass system of the HSI may be a simple gyroscopic heading indicator which must be set to correspond to the magnetic compass prior to take-off and must be adjusted during flight to correct for precession. The somewhat more expensive models of HSI incorporate a slaved compass system. A flux detector is mounted somewhere in the aeroplane where the magnetic influences are least (usually in a wing tip). It senses any movement of the aeroplane with reference to magnetic north and automatically corrects any precession errors in the HSI.

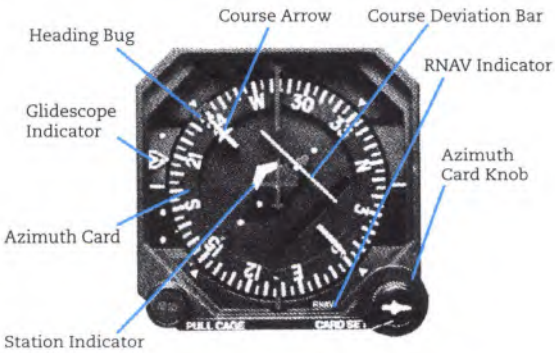


Fig.9.14 **Horizontal Situation Indicator (HSI)**

The azimuth card is controlled by the HSI's gyro system. It operates in exactly the same way as a standard heading indicator, moving as the aeroplane changes heading, so that the heading of the aeroplane is always at the 12 o'clock position under the lubber line. In Fig.9.14, the heading of the aeroplane is about 285°. The nav display superimposed over the azimuth card moves with it, thus constantly showing the relationship between the current heading and the selected VOR radial. As a result, the HSI gives rather the same type of display as does an ADF. The arrow always points directly at the VOR station and indicates the approximate heading to take up to fly there.

The azimuth card knob (the outer portion of the knob at the lower right) is used to set the gyroscopically controlled azimuth card and to correct for precession. In a slaved system, the knob is used to set the system prior to take-off.

The heading bug can be set manually by the pilot (using the knob at the lower left of the instrument) as a reminder of the heading he/she wants to maintain or of the next heading to be flown. When the HSI system is coupled with an autopilot, the heading bug controls the heading mode of the autopilot. Pulling out the knob that controls the heading bug will cage the gyro.

The course set knob (the inner portion of the knob at the lower right) controls the position of the course arrow. The pilot sets this arrow manually to the desired radial of the VOR to which the omni receiver is tuned. In Fig.9.14, the 240° radial has been selected. As the azimuth card rotates, the course arrow moves with the card to always indicate the difference between the aeroplane's heading and the selected course. The arrow consists of two parts. The front and tail end identify the selected radial. The centre portion of the course arrow acts as a course deviation indicator (CDI). By moving to either side of the course arrow, it indicates right or left deviation from the selected radial, just as the left/right needle of a standard omni indicator does. As with standard omni displays, fly into the needle to intercept the selected radial. The dots indicate the number of degrees the aeroplane is displaced from the radial. In VOR use, each dot represents 5 degrees. In Fig.9.14, the CDI indicates that the aeroplane is off course 5 degrees to the left of the radial and must alter course to the right to intercept the 240° radial. When the course deviation indicator and the two parts of the course arrow are all lined up, the aeroplane is on the selected radial.

The station indicator consists of two white arrows aligned with the course arrow. They perform the same function as the TO/FROM indicator of a standard omni display. When the arrow points to the head of the course arrow (as in Fig.9.14), it indicates that the selected radial is TO the station. When the arrow points to the tail of the course arrow, it indicates that the selected radial is FROM the station. On station passage, the arrow moves from the TO to the FROM position, or vice versa. When the selected radial is 90 degrees to the heading of the aeroplane, the white arrows will retract and not be visible. (Conventional TO/FROM indicators would show OFF in this condition.)

In the centre of the instrument, a fixed aircraft symbol shows the position and heading of the aeroplane with reference to the other indications of the instrument. Convenient 45 degree tic marks are painted on the outer edge of the display to help the pilot visualize procedure turns and reciprocals.

A glideslope indicator is also incorporated into the left side of the HSI. It consists of an arrowhead that moves up and down, showing the vertical position of the aeroplane with reference to the glideslope. The aeroplane must fly into the arrow to intercept the glideslope. In Fig.9.14, the aeroplane is below the glideslope and must fly up to intercept it. When adequate glideslope signals are not being received, the indicator and scale are covered by a shutter, or OFF flag.

The HSI may be coupled with an area navigation system. When steering commands are generated by this system, the words RNAV appear in the lower right of the HSI display (see **Area Navigation** in this Chapter).

The HSI also incorporates a red heading flag that appears in the middle of the instrument to indicate loss of electrical power or failure of the azimuth card to track the gyro or slaved system. A nav warning sign appears at the lower right of the display whenever the navigation signal from the tuned VOR is not being received or is too weak for reliable navigation.

9.2 Radio Beacons

As additional aids to navigation, several types of radio beacons are in use along the airways.

9.2.1 Non-Directional Beacons (NDB)

Low powered non-directional beacons operate mostly in the 190-415 and 510-535 kHz band. They are installed at certain locations near airports to assist with instrument approach and holding pattern procedures.

Non-directional beacons may be installed on the localizer of the ILS. They operate, however, independently of the ILS on a continuous basis. They are installed at these locations to enable an aeroplane to home to the localizer and to track the approach course by means of ADF. For this reason, they are sometimes called compass locators. These NDB's transmit their identifier such that the NDB on the front course transmits the first letter of the two letter localizer identification and the NDB on the back course transmits the second. (For Example: at Ottawa, the front course NDB would transmit O and the back course NDB would transmit W.)

NDB's of higher power are also in use as en route facilities. They form the basis for the LF/MF airways/air routes system. ADF equipment is required in the aircraft to use these navigational facilities. They transmit a two-letter station identifier keyed in morse code. (For Example: Flin Flon NDB transmits FO.) Voice transmissions are made from some NDB's.

Fig.9.15 **Non-Directional Beacon**

NDB's are shown on aeronautical charts by shaded circles. Fig.9.15 shows the NDB at Red Deer in Alberta. The name of the NDB, its two letter identification in letters and in morse code and the LF frequency on which it transmits are all given in the information box adjacent to the facility on the map.

9.2.2 Fan Marker Beacons

Fan marker beacons are installed to provide guidance on instrument approaches to some airports in mountain valleys.

Fan markers broadcast a signal that is elliptical in shape and has its major dimension at right angles to the localizer course. They are located on localizer facility courses to identify a designated position along the course. Fan markers are coded and emit an audible high pitched tone. They activate the white light on the marker beacon receiver in the aircraft.

9.2.3 Marine Beacons

Marine radio beacons transmit in the low and medium frequency bands a signal consisting of several letters in code. Some marine radio beacons operate continuously during the navigation season and can be used by aircraft for navigational purposes. Only selected marine radio beacons are shown on en route aeronautical charts.

9.3 Automatic Direction Finder (ADF)

The automatic direction finder is a very useful aid to aerial navigation. It can be used for homing to or finding direction from any station that broadcasts in the low and medium frequency radio bands.

Aviation installations that operate in the low frequency band include non-directional beacons and NDB's co-located with ILS localizers. The ADF is also able to receive commercial AM broadcasting stations and home on them.

An L/MF aviation radio installation (NDB, etc.) is readily recognizable by the morse code identifier that is broadcast continuously. In the case of a commercial broadcasting station, it is sometimes necessary to listen for some time for a station announcement before positive identification can be made.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

However, modern digital tuned receivers do make it easier to tune a station precisely.

The great advantage of ADF is that of range. Not being dependent on line-of-sight as is the VHF omnidirectional range (VOR) system, an ADF receiver is able to pick up stations at considerable distances.

9.3.1 ADF Navigation Equipment

The ADF system consists of an ADF receiver, a loop antenna, a sense antenna and a bearing indicator.

Antennas

Two antennas are required for ADF operation. One of these, known as the sense antenna, is a non-directional antenna that has the capability of providing directional information.

The other antenna is a loop antenna which senses magnetic bearing from the aeroplane to the station.

Back in the early days when ADF equipment was first introduced, the loop antenna was a complicated installation that had to be manually rotated to pick up maximum and minimum signals from a station. Modern ADF equipment is manufactured on the principle of solid state circuitry and has fewer moving parts and is therefore easier to operate and is considered more reliable.

The sense antenna usually is a long wire installed on the top of the aeroplane, stretching from an insulator near the top of the fuselage back to the stabilizer.

The loop antenna, a metal ring enclosing coils of insulated wires, is usually contained within a streamlined housing mounted well forward on the underside of the fuselage.

Fig.9.16 **Automatic Direction Finder**

Very recent innovations in ADF equipment incorporate both the sense and the loop antennas in a single blade antenna installed on the top of the fuselage.

The ADF Receiver

Modern ADF receivers are digital tuned providing rapid and precise tuning to any desired frequency. They receive stations throughout the low and medium frequency band.

The ADF receiver, like the ADF pictured in Fig.9.16, receives information from the antenna and translates it into movement of the needle of the bearing indicator.

The ADF receiver incorporates a five position function selector switch.

The REC position (on other models of ADF equipment, this position is sometimes called ANT for antenna) selects only the non-directional or sense antenna. The loop antenna and therefore the bearing selector are disconnected from the system. With the switch in this position, the receiver operates as an ordinary L/MF receiver, receiving the voice facilities of the station to which it is tuned. This switch position is used for station identification or for listening only.

When operated in the ADF position, the receiver selects the automatic direction finding loop antenna which in combination with the signal received by the sense antenna gives the homing capability of the ADF. The audio feature of the REC position is retained but usually the pilot turns down the volume once the station has been positively identified

The EXR position is a feature of the particular ADF shown in Fig.9.16. It provides extended range selection, permitting strong reception of stations at great distance.

The BFO (beat frequency oscillator) selection provides an aural aid to tuning. It should be used only in tuning unmodulated signals, such as those broadcast by stations in some foreign countries. It is not designed to be used with the modulated signal that is transmitted by commercial broadcast stations and aeronautical LF stations in Canada and the United States. The BFO function allows the underlying morse code identifier to be heard through the audio tone of the unmodulated signal. After the station is tuned and identified, the function selector switch should be repositioned at ADF.

The Bearing Indicator

An ADF bearing indicator incorporates a bearing pointer and an azimuth dial which is graduated in degrees from 0 to 360. Some indicators have a fixed card, such as that in Fig.9.17. Others have a movable card, such as that in Fig.9.18.

With a bearing indicator with a fixed card, the nose of the aeroplane is always oriented to 0 on the bearing indicator, regardless of the actual magnetic heading of the aeroplane.

Fig.9.17 **ADF Bearing Indicator (Fixed Card)**

With a bearing indicator with a movable card, the pilot is able to rotate the azimuth card so that it corresponds with the heading of the aeroplane indicated by the heading indicator and the magnetic compass.

Regardless of which type of bearing indicator is used, the bearing pointer always points in the direction of the station to which the receiver is tuned.

The loop antenna which senses the magnetic bearing of the station is positioned in relation to the longitudinal axis of the aeroplane. It measures, and the ADF pointer on the bearing indicator displays, the number of degrees, measured clockwise, between the longitudinal axis of the aeroplane and the station. This is known as a relative bearing.

The magnetic bearing of a station can, therefore, be determined from the displayed information. It is the sum of the magnetic heading of the aeroplane and the relative bearing.

Magnetic Bearing =
Magnetic Heading + Relative Bearing
MB = MH + RB
Or, conversely
MH = MB - RB or RB = MB - MH

For example, the aeroplane in which the ADF in Fig.9.17 is installed is flying on a magnetic heading of 090°. The ADF bearing indicator (fixed card) indicates that the station to which the ADF receiver is tuned has a relative bearing from the aeroplane of 135°. The magnetic bearing to the station (i.e. the magnetic heading to which the aeroplane would have to turn in order to fly directly to the station) would therefore be 225° (090° + 135°).

Fig.9.18 **ADF Bearing Indicator (Moveable Card)**

An ADF bearing indicator with a movable azimuth card automatically displays the magnetic bearing of the station. In Fig.9.18, the azimuth card of the bearing indicator has been rotated to 350° to correspond to the magnetic heading of the aeroplane. The pointer indicates that the station to which the ADF in this case is tuned has a magnetic bearing of 145° (the relative bearing is 155°).

9.3.2 ADF Navigation

First of all, let us review the behaviour of the bearing indicator in various flight situations.

Let's take an example of an aeroplane with a bearing indicator with a fixed card. If the aeroplane is heading directly towards the station, the bearing indicator pointer will point straight up to 000° (towards the nose of the aeroplane). If the aeroplane is heading directly away from the station, the pointer will point straight down to 180° (towards the tail of the aeroplane). If the aeroplane turns 90° to the signal from the station, so that the station is on its left, the pointer will point to 270° (towards the left wing). If the station is on the right, the pointer will point to 090° (towards the right wing).

Suppose that the bearing indicator has a movable card. The aeroplane in the above example is on a heading of 020° magnetic. The pilot has rotated the azimuth card of the bearing indicator to set 20 under the upper azimuth index. If the aeroplane is flying directly towards the station, the pointer will point straight up to 020°. If the aeroplane is heading directly away from the station, the pointer will point straight down to 200° (020° + 180°). If the station is directly off the left wing, the pointer will point to 290° (020°+ 270°). If the station is off the right wing, the pointer will point to 110° (020° + 090°).

Now, let us suppose that an aeroplane is flying a track that will take it directly over the station to which the ADF is tuned. On the heading in to the station, the ADF pointer will point to 000° (fixed card). As soon as the aeroplane passes over the station, the pointer will swing around and point to 180° as the aeroplane heads away from the station.

Let us suppose that an aeroplane is flying a track that will take it past a station that is off its right wing. As the aeroplane approaches and passes the station, the ADF pointer will gradually increase its reading from its initial indication, past 090° and on towards 180°. As long as the aeroplane maintains a constant heading, the bearing pointer, of course, will never point directly to 180° since the station will never be directly behind the aeroplane.

In the following discussion of how to use the ADF, we will assume that the aeroplane is equipped with an ADF bearing indicator with a fixed card.

Homing to a Station

In order to fly directly to the ADF facility to which the receiver is tuned, simply turn the nose of the aeroplane until the pointer of the bearing indicator points to 000°. Keeping the pointer on zero will result in a straight course to the station. On passage over the station, the pointer will swing around to 180° indicating that the station is now behind. The aeroplane is then able to track away from the station by keeping the pointer of the bearing indicator on 180°.

The above procedure is valid in a no-wind situation. The wind, however, tends to drift the aeroplane to one side or the other of a straight line to the station. A continuous process of correction of drift occurs as the ADF keeps heading the nose of the aeroplane towards the station. The resultant track flown is a curved line (Fig.9.19).

The progressive change in the heading of the aeroplane will be indicated to the pilot by the magnetic compass or heading indicator.

In a crosswind situation where the wind is causing the aeroplane to drift away from the straight line track to the station, it is possible to narrow the curvature of the track by the following method:

The pilot has tuned the station on which he/she wishes to home and has centred the ADF pointer to 000°. As the track that he/she intends to fly is 090° magnetic, the heading indicator will read 090° (Fig.9.19 top).

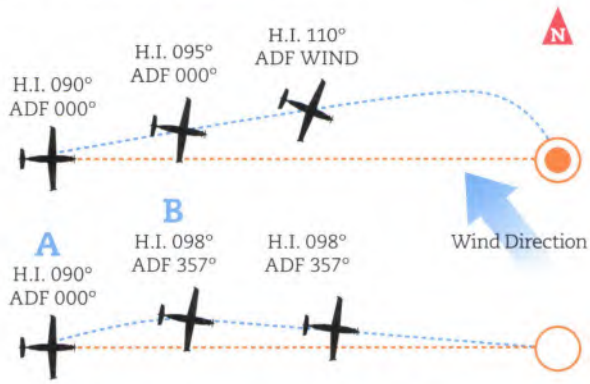


Fig.9.19 **Correction for Wind Drift**

After flying some minutes, the pilot notes the heading by HI has altered to 095°. He/she, therefore, realizes that the aircraft is drifting to port and that the wind is from the starboard. He/she heads the nose of the aeroplane, say, 3° more into the wind, steering 357° by ADF instead of 000° (098° by HI, see Fig.9.19 bottom).

Note that when the heading is altered to starboard by the heading indicator (i.e. increases), the heading on the ADF alters to port (i.e. decreases).

If the heading continues to alter to starboard by HI, the pilot should steer a few more degrees into wind and continue this process until he/she finally observes that the heading by HI remains constant. He/she has now counteracted wind drift and established a straight heading towards the station.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

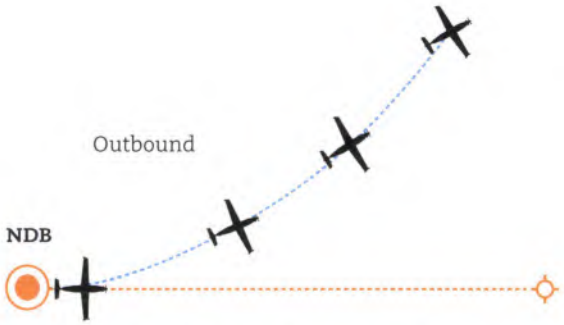


Fig.9.20 **Reverse Homing Error**

Having reached and passed the station, a pilot must be especially careful to maintain the desired track when flying an outbound track from an ADF facility. If there has been a significant crosswind, keeping the ADF needle on the tail of the aeroplane (180°) and allowing the heading to change will result in a curved track leading away from the desired destination. This reverse homing error will take him/her far off course. Flying an outbound track requires special attention to wind drift, crab angle and heading.

To Intercept an ADF Track

Sometimes a pilot may wish to fly a specific course into a station. This would happen when an ADF facility, such as an NDB, is located several miles from an airport. The extension of the magnetic track joining the NDB to the airport will be the track the pilot needs to intercept and turn to in order to arrive over the station on the proper heading to reach the airport.

After tuning in the station, the pilot should select a magnetic heading by HI that will intercept the required course to the ADF facility. By applying the formula given above (i.e. RB = MB-MH), it is relatively simple to determine the relative bearing shown on the ADF indicator that indicates interception of the required track.

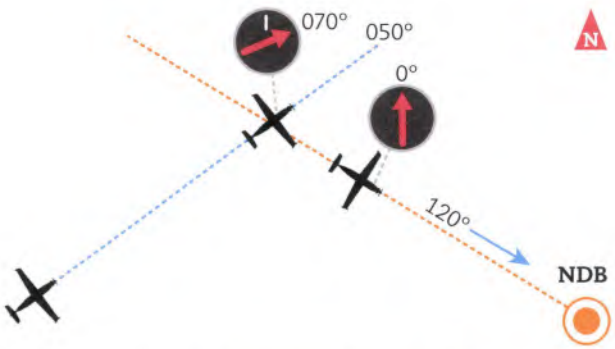


Fig.9.21 **Intercepting an ADF Track**

For example, the course to the NDB that the pilot wishes to intercept has a magnetic bearing of 120°. The magnetic heading selected by the pilot in order to make the interception is 050°. The ADF indicator should indicate a relative bearing of the station of 070° when the aeroplane intercepts the course (magnetic bearing of 120° minus magnetic heading of 050° equals relative bearing of 070°).

On intercepting the course, the pilot should turn the nose of the aeroplane until the bearing indicator pointer centres on 000°and then keep the pointer on 000° to arrive over the station, (Fig.9.21).

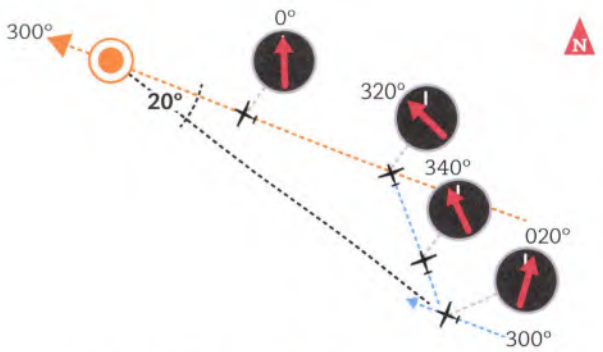


Fig.9.22 **Choosing the Proper Magnetic Heading in Order to Intercept an ADF Course**

In actual practice, some allowance should be made for the turn. The turn onto the desired course should be started a few degrees before the ADF pointer reaches the required relative bearing. How does a pilot choose the proper magnetic heading to fly to intercept a particular ADF course? First of all, he /she should take up a heading which parallels the desired course, check the ADF indicator and note the number of degrees the needle is off the 0 index. The interception angle should be double this amount. For example, let us assume that you wish to intercept a course to an ADF station that has a magnetic bearing of 300° to the station. Take up a heading of 300° and you note on the ADF indicator that the station is to your right at a relative bearing of 020°. Make 40° your interception angle and fly a course of 340° magnetic. When the ADF bearing indicator indicates a relative bearing of 320°, you have intercepted the desired course. (Magnetic heading of 340° plus relative bearing of 320° equals magnetic bearing of 300° — 340 plus 320 less 360). Turn onto a magnetic heading of 300° and fly the ADF track into the station by keeping the ADF needle on 0, (Fig.9.22).

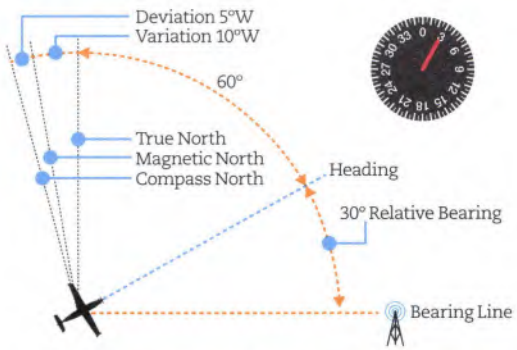


Fig.9.23 **Conversion of a Relative Bearing (Shown on Dial) to a Geographical Bearing**

Taking Bearings

Bearings can be taken on ADF facilities in the same way as they can be taken on VOR stations.

To take a bearing on an NDB or a broadcasting station, etc., that is off track, tune in to the frequency of the station. The pointer on the bearing indicator will indicate the direction of the station from the heading, or longitudinal axis, of the aeroplane. This is, as we have already learned, a relative bearing from the aeroplane to the station.

The magnetic bearing of the station is the sum of the magnetic heading of the aeroplane and the relative bearing.

To plot a position line on an aeronautical chart, the magnetic bearing of the station must be converted to a true bearing by applying deviation and variation.

Fig.9.23 graphically shows how to convert a relative bearing to a true, or geographical, bearing.

The relative bearing of the station from the aeroplane is 30°.

The compass heading of the aeroplane is 075°. Therefore, the compass bearing of the station is 105°.

By applying the deviation of 5°W and the variation of 10°W, the true bearing of 090° is determined.

The true bearing can be plotted as a position line on an aeronautical chart. Draw a line on the chart away from the station, that is, using the reciprocal of the bearing. This is a position line, somewhere on which the aeroplane is known to have been at the time the bearing was taken.

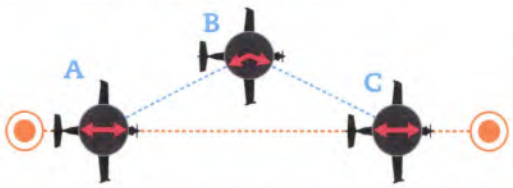


Fig.9.24 **Correction for Wind Drift with Dual ADF**

A. Pilot tunes one ADF to station ahead and the other to station behind. Dual pointers are on reciprocal bearings. B. Wind drifts pilot to left of the course. Dual pointers no longer on reciprocal bearings. C. Pilot steers right until dual pointers are on reciprocal bearings again, indicating that the course has been regained. For remainder of flight pilot maintains heading which will keep dual pointers on reciprocal bearings.

When two or more bearings are taken nearly simultaneously on several different stations and the position lines plotted on a chart, the point where the position lines intersect will be a fix (the position of the aeroplane at the time the bearings were taken).

When plotting a fix by two or more position lines, the angle between the position lines should not be less than 30°.

Dual ADF

Some aeroplanes are equipped with two automatic direction finders. With dual ADF, a pilot may take simultaneous bearings on two stations, or may home on one station and at the same time obtain a continuous bearing on another station, thereby providing a running position fix.

Dual ADF may be used to correct wind drift when homing. This is done by tuning one receiver to a station ahead and the other to a station behind. The heading is adjusted to keep the two needles in line, that is, on reciprocal bearings (Fig.9.24).

Dual ADF is particularly useful to a pilot on instruments executing a holding pattern procedure over an NDB. It can also be used to track the approach course to the runway.

9.3.3 ADF System Inaccuracies

Quadrantal Error

The ADF is affected by an error very similar to deviation in the magnetic compass. This is called quadrantal error. It is caused by refraction, or bending of the incoming radio waves by the metal structure of the aeroplane. Quadrantal error is minimal at the cardinal points (off the nose, tail and wing tips) of the aeroplane and maximum at bearings in between. Most ADF receivers have provisions for making a partial correction for this error. In this case, the loop antenna should be installed in a position on the aeroplane where the built-in quadrantal error compensation matches the error caused by the aeroplane. But this is difficult and time consuming and rarely done. The quadrantal error can be determined by swinging the aeroplane both on the ground and in the air. However, this too is difficult to do and therefore is rarely done. Usually the error is less than 10° and since the system is accurate off the nose and other cardinal points, the quadrantal error does not affect operation of the ADF significantly.

Oscillation of the Needle

Normally, a small degree of needle oscillation is a built-in feature of the automatic direction finder. It indicates to the pilot that the instrument is functioning. Wide fluctuations of the needle, however, may be due to the following causes:

1. Bad static conditions.
2. A weak signal. (The ADF is tuned to a station that is too far distant or not sufficiently powerful.)
3. The aeroplane is midway between two stations which are both transmitting on the frequency tuned.

When wide oscillation, or hunting, of the needle occurs, average the oscillation and fly the average heading.

Night Effect

The low and medium frequency radio bands produce both ground and sky waves. The ADF homes on the ground waves. At night, the sky waves are much stronger than in the daytime since at night they are most reflected by the ionosphere. Since the sky waves may be arriving from any direction depending on how and where they have been reflected, they cause errors in the ADF bearing indication. The bearing indicator will swing rapidly as the sky wave changes. This is called night effect. The farther from the station, the more pronounced will be the night effect. Within some minimum distance of the station (varying from 20 to 40 nautical miles), the night effect usually disappears. Much larger errors are possible due to propagation disturbances caused by sunrise and sunset. Bearings taken between one hour before sunset and one hour after sunrise may be very inaccurate. Night effect is more noticeable over land than over sea. It is also more pronounced at the higher frequencies so that homing on a broadcast station will be more affected than on an NDB beacon. In order to minimize night effect, choose a station to home on with a low frequency.

Terrain Effect

COASTAL EFFECT

As radio waves pass from land to water, their direction of travel is changed. This is known as shoreline effect. Because of this, a bearing taken on an inland station from an aeroplane over water is inaccurate if it makes an angle of less than 30° with the shoreline. At greater angles, bending is negligible. When taking bearings over water, therefore, choose either stations right on the shore, such as marine stations, or stations so located that bearings on them make angles greater than 30° with the shoreline.

MOUNTAIN EFFECT

In mountain terrain, the signal is reflected off the side of mountains. The signal that arrives at the ADF loop antenna may not, therefore, be coming directly from the station.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Erroneous and fluctuating bearings may be registered on the ADF bearing indicator.

ORE DEPOSITS

Ore deposits will sometimes cause the needle of the ADF to deflect off course.

Ice & Sleet

Accumulation of ice and sleet on the antennae tends to produce erroneous readings of the ADF needle and also reduce signal strength.

Precipitation Static

When flying in heavy rain or snow, static may be encountered on the low and medium frequency bands. This static may be severe enough to interfere with the pointing capabilities of the bearing indicator needle. Reception of the audio signal may be so poor that identification of the station is impossible.

Precipitation static can be lessened by reducing the airspeed of the aeroplane.

Thunderstorms, containing large charges of static electricity, also interfere with the L/MF radio waves and cause erroneous readings of the ADF.

9.3.4 Radio Magnetic Indicator (RMI)

The radio magnetic indicator (RMI) is an instrument that combines the directional function of a heading indicator (or directional gyro) with an indicator which points to a specific selected navaid, in other words, a bearing indicator. The development of the radio magnetic indicator was a natural outgrowth of the introduction of ADF and is a valuable instrument because it tends to reduce pilot workload.

Fig.9.25 **Radio Magnetic Indicator (RMI)**

The rotating compass card of the RMI is controlled by a remotely mounted slaved compass so that the magnetic heading of the aeroplane relative to magnetic north is always presented under the index at the 12 o'clock position of the instrument. In a slaved system, there is no tendency to precession and there is, therefore, no requirement for periodic adjustment as is necessary in a gyroscopic heading indicator. The bearing indicator needles of the RMI always point to the navigational facility and therefore display magnetic bearing to the station.

Most radio magnetic indicators use two indicator needles, one of which is tied to the ADF receiver while the other responds to signals from the VOR receiver. Each needle points to the station to which its complimentary nav receiver is tuned. Usually the ADF information is displayed on the double bar pointer and the VOR information on the single bar pointer. The arrowhead of the RMI VOR needle indicates the radial inbound to the station and the tail indicates the radial outbound from the station. (The RMI VOR needle does not represent the position of the aeroplane with reference to a desired radial regardless of the aeroplane's direction of flight, as does the course deviation indicator. It merely points to the station in exactly the same way as the RMI ADF needle points to a L/MF navaid.)

In the RMI depicted in Fig.9.25, the aeroplane is on a magnetic heading of 324°. An NDB (or other L/MF) facility is off the port wing at a bearing of 290° magnetic. A VOR facility is off the starboard wing at a bearing of 012° magnetic. As long as the aeroplane continues on its present course, the ADF needle will continuously move counterclockwise as the aeroplane passes abeam of the station. The VOR needle will move clockwise as the aeroplane moves past that station. (In both cases, the needles will slow in their movement as they approach the 6 o'clock position and will settle short of it, since neither station will ever be directly behind, but always slightly to port and starboard respectively.) If the pilot wishes to intercept the 040° radial inbound to the VOR, he/she would continue on course (324°) until the arrowhead of the VOR needle points to 040° on the compass card and then turn to starboard (into the needle) to that heading. The single bar needle will then be pointing straight up pointing to the VOR station directly ahead. The double bar needle will continue to respond to the ADF signal from the L/MF facility that is now astern of the aeroplane.

The latest generation of RMI incorporates a switching capability by which the pilot is able to select either VOR or ADF for each needle. The instrument can, at the pilot's option, work both needles on two different VOR's or on two different L/MF navaids or on one VOR and one L/MF station. (The aeroplane must, of course, be equipped with dual VHF nav receivers and dual ADF receivers to utilize this feature to full capacity.)

The great advantage of the RMI is that it offers instant information on magnetic bearings to navaids on one instrument. The pilot is free of the mental task of calculating relative bearings and magnetic bearings. In addition, the two needles provide simultaneous bearings on two different stations, giving the pilot position lines by which to continuously establish fixes on stations that are abeam of the aeroplane. The VOR feature of the instrument frees the pilot of the task of centering the needle of the OBS to determine which radial he/she is on. The RMI presents continuously the relative position of a VOR in the same way as it does an ADF station. The information can be used to identify a VOR intersection as has been described above. The RMI provides more warning of interception than does a conventional CDI. To fly directly to a VOR, it is only necessary to read the magnetic bearing to the station under the arrowhead of the VOR needle and turn to that heading.

9.4 Distance Measuring Equipment (DME)

DME (distance measuring equipment) is an electronic transmitter/receiver that gives the pilot a continuous reading of distance to a fixed ground station. It does this by measuring the time it takes a transmitted radio signal to travel to and return from the ground station. Since radio waves travel at a constant, known speed, it is easy to convert the radio signal travel time into distance. The ground installation from which DME can obtain distance information is a VORTAC or a TACAN station transmitting a radar beacon on UHF.

The airborne equipment transmits pulses to the ground station that, in effect, ask "How far am I from your station?" Each aircraft interrogation has a unique transmission rate or pattern which the ground station reproduces in its replies to

that aircraft even transmitting on the same frequency to all aircraft working the station. The airborne DME receiver selects the reply pulses designated for itself (i.e. those with the same rate relationship as used in its own original transmission), measures electronically the time interval between its own transmission and the received reply, converts the elapsed time into a mileage figure which is continuously displayed in the cockpit indicator as the slant range from the aeroplane to the station. The range increases as the plane flies away from a station and decreases as it approaches the station.

Slant range can be converted into ground distance by the following formula: ground distance is the square root of S2 (slant range in nautical miles) minus A2 (altitude in nautical miles). When the slant range is more than double the altitude, the difference between slant range and ground distance is negligible. However, when the aircraft is in the vicinity of a station and at high altitude, the difference between slant range and ground distance will be appreciable. In such a case, the pilot must employ the above formula to determine the actual ground distance from the station unless the DME includes a component solver that converts slant mileage to horizontal mileage automatically.

In practical application, the DME readings can be considered accurate if the aeroplane is over 5 miles from the station. Within 5 miles, slant range must be considered. Directly over a VORTAC installation, the DME will read altitude above the station in nautical miles.

DME units also have the capability to give groundspeed readings and a time-to-station reading.

The DME pictured in Fig.9.26 is a typical airborne unit. It has 200 channel capability and a gaseous discharge display. It features two display modes. The first provides simultaneous distance to station, groundspeed and time to station information. The second displays distance to station and frequency. The frequency may be selected either internally or remotely from a VOR nav receiver.

All DME distance readings are in nautical miles and the groundspeed readings are in knots.

Fig.9.26 **DME Receiver**

A DME groundspeed reading, however, is accurately displayed only when the aeroplane is flying on a course inbound or outbound from a VORTAC station. When the aeroplane is flying past a station, the DME groundspeed reading will be meaningless because of the principle on which the DME makes its computations. An inaccurate reading will also be displayed when the aeroplane is passing directly over the station. The groundspeed indicator will drop to 0 for the period that the aeroplane is over the VORTAC installation.

The groundspeed feature of the DME is of special value to you for it allows you to choose the altitude where you will encounter the most favourable winds. By flying at several different altitudes and observing the groundspeed readout on the DME, you can determine at which altitude the groundspeed was highest (i.e. an indication of the most favourable winds).

The DME is also used in making orbiting or arc approaches to an airport. The DME arc is a course flown at a constant DME distance around a navaid such as a VORTAC which provides distance information. In a case where the VORTAC is located a few miles (for example, 5 miles) from the airport, by keeping that mileage reading constant on your indicator (5 miles in our example), you will be able to bring your aeroplane right over the airport. The exact position of the airport can be pinpointed by using the omni in conjunction with the DME. The airport lies on a particular omni radial from the VORTAC and will be located where the radial intersects the orbiting track.

DME operates in the 960 to 1,215 MHz UHF range, transmitting in the range from 960 to 1,024 MHz and from 1,151 to 1,215 MHz and receiving in the 1,025 to 1,150 MHz range.

DME is normally collocated with VOR installations (VOR/DME). It may also be collocated with an ILS or with localizers for LOC/LDA approaches. It is also sometimes collocated with en route NDBs to provide improved navigation capability. DME channels are paired with VOR, NDB or localizer channels so that, when you choose on your DME equipment a VOR channel, you automatically choose the UHF frequency as well. Channels on the DME channel selector are marked with the VOR frequencies even though it is controlling DME channels in the UHF MHz range. A DME frequency requiring only one decimal place (e.g. 110.3 MHz) is known as an X channel; one that requires 2 decimal places (e.g. 112.45 MHz) is known as a Y channel.

MHz	.0	.1	.2	.3	.4	.5	.6	.7	.8	.9
108	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26
109	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36
110	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46
111	47	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56
112	57	58	59	70	71	72	73	74	75	76
113	77	78	79	80	81	82	83	84	85	86
114	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95	96
115	97	98	99	100	101	102	103	104	105	106
116	107	108	109	110	111	112	113	114	115	116
117	117	118	119	120	121	122	123	124	125	126

Example: TACAN channel 80 pairs with 113.3 MHz

Fig.9.27 **Chart of TACAN & VHF Channels**

The TACAN military installations can also be used to derive distance measurement. The TACAN stations are designated on navigation charts by channel numbers 1 through 126. The chart in Fig.9.27 shows how to translate a TACAN channel into megahertz in the VOR band.

Remember, however, that **only** the distance information derived from a TACAN station is valid. Any apparent radial information obtained through a coupled VOR receiver must be considered a false signal since the nature of the TACAN installation is such that only special TACAN equipment can derive azimuth information from it.

DME equipment is considered reliable up to 200 nautical miles from the station. Some equipment, however, limits its distance readout to a maximum of about 170 miles. It is considered accurate within about 2%. Since UHF reception is dependent on line-of-sight, altitude is important in the efficiency of the equipment. The higher the altitude, the greater the effective range.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

9.5 Instrument Landing System (ILS)

The instrument landing system, or ILS, is a method of guiding a pilot through the overcast to a landing by means of visual reference to instruments in the cockpit. The system provides alignment and descent information about the approach path of the aircraft as it descends towards the runway.

The system consists of a localizer, a glide path transmitter and a non-directional beacon (NDB) along the approach path. A DME fix may replace the NDB in certain installations.

The localizer transmits a radio beam whose purpose is to keep the pilot lined up with the centreline of the runway. The localizer transmitter is located at the far end of the runway and operates in the VHF frequency band between 108.1 and 111.9 MHz (on odd frequencies). The transmitter sends out two signal patterns, one modulated at 90 hertz and the other at 150 hertz. The 90 hertz signal is to the left of the centreline and the 150 hertz signal is to the right of the centreline. When the aircraft is on an extension of the centreline of the runway, it receives the two signals equally and the localizer needle on the OMNI display is centered. The aeroplane will remain lined up with the runway if the pilot maintains a heading to keep the needle centered. The localizer course which is associated with the glide path and the outer marker beacon is called the front course. Many localizer installations also provide a back course which is the reciprocal of the front course and which enables a pilot to carry out a non-precision approach using the other end of the runway. However, when inbound on the back course, reverse needle sensing applies and it is necessary to correct opposite to the needle. There is no glide path information provided for a back course approach. Not all ILS localizers radiate a usable back course signal. Always check the published information about an ILS at any particular runway.

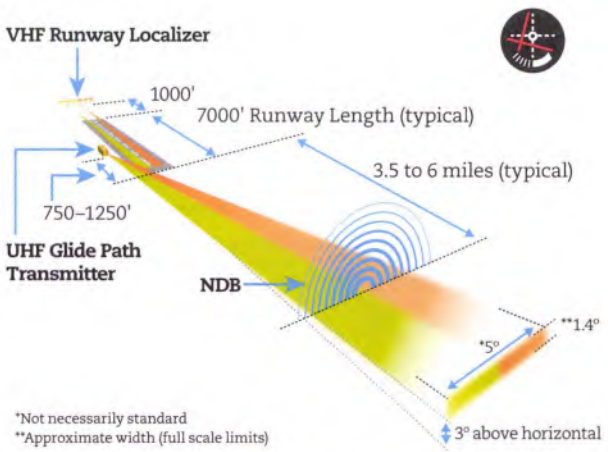


Fig.9.28 **The Instrument Landing System**

The insert shows the localizer and cross-pointer indicators. The instrument illustrated shows the pilot is off the localizer beam to the right and must turn left "into the needle" to centre the vertical needle and get back on the beam. He/she is above the glide path and must fly down "into the needle" to centre the horizontal needle and get back on the glide path.

Note: The above needle indications apply when the pilot is inbound towards the field. When flying outbound away from the field, the needle sensing is reversed.

The glide path beam guides the aircraft along the proper downward approach path to enable it to touch down on the threshold of the runway. The glide path transmitter is situated about 1,000 feet from the approach end of the runway and is offset approximately 400 feet from the runway centreline. It operates in the UHF frequency band between 329.3 and 335.0 MHz. Each glide path frequency is paired with a corresponding VHF localizer frequency. The centre of the glide path beam is aligned with the centre of the localizer beam (the area of equal strength between the 90 and the 150 hertz patterns) and extends about 1° above and below the centre. The glide path projection is normally set at an angle of 3° from the horizontal. There is no usable back course glide path. At some airports, an ILS is installed at each end of a runway to provide a front course approach to either end of the runway. The two systems are interlocked so that only one ILS can operate at any one time.

Identification for both the localizer and glide path is transmitted on the localizer frequency on the form of a two letter or letter number indicator preceded by the letter I: a 1.2 second space separates the I from the standard identifier. For example I OW — ILS Ottawa.

The instrument in the cockpit which enables the pilot to follow these two beams is the course deviation indicator and cross-pointer indicator of the VOR indicator (see Fig.9.7 and the insert in Fig.9.28). The vertical (localizer) and the cross-pointers (glide path) give the pilot directions. If the aircraft gets off to the right or left of the approach to the runway, the vertical needle indicates which side and how far. The horizontal needle indicates if the aircraft is above or below the proper glide path. A flag alarm signal appears when a weak, unreliable or null signal is being received.

A low powered NDB is located on the localizer (front and back courses) about 3.5 to 6 miles from the runway threshold to provide a fix to which the pilot can navigate for the transition to the ILS. In some cases, an en route NDB is located on the localizer to serve as a terminal as well as an en route facility. These NDB's transmit a single letter indicator: the NDB on the front course localizer transmits the first letter of the two letter localizer indicator and the NDB on the back course transmits the second.

A DME fix, which may be installed where it is not practicable to install an NDB provides distance information to define the initial approach fix and missed approach fix.

A further development of the system combines ILS with the automatic pilot, enabling the aeroplane to be flown down the two beams to a landing automatically.

The original ILS installations included several marker beacons. An outer and a middle marker were installed on the front course and a back marker was sometimes installed on the back course. Their purpose was to let the pilot know the distance of the aircraft from the threshold of the runway during an instrument landing approach. The marker beacons emitted an audible signal that was heard as a series of dots and/or dashes. They also illuminated signal lights on the marker beacon receiver in the aircraft. These marker beacons are, for the most part, being phased out and are being replaced by NDB's. They may be retained in a few locations

where terrain difficulties have made the installation of an NDB impracticable.

The broadcast beam of the ILS localizer can be considered valid and reliable through 35° on either side of the front course centreline for a distance of 10 n.m. from the transmitter and through 10° for a distance of 18 n.m. from the transmitter, for both the front and back courses. Beyond these limits, false or erratic indications may be received.

Failure of certain elements of the multi-element localizer antenna systems can cause false courses or low clearances beyond 8° from the front or back course centreline. This could result in a premature cockpit indication of approaching or intercepting an on course centreline. A coupled approach should be initiated only when the aircraft is established on the localizer centreline. It is important also to confirm the localizer or course indication by reference to the heading indicator. False on course captures can occur anywhere from 8° to 35° but are most likely to occur in the vicinity of 8° to 12° azimuth from the published localizer course.

Electronic interference on ILS localizer system integrity is becoming significant especially in built-up areas where power transmitter stations, industrial activity and broadcast transmitters generate interference with localizer receivers.

The interference may be transitory. Certain receivers are more susceptible than others. The interference is not likely to cause erroneous readings where the aircraft is being flown within the margins quoted above.

9.5.1 ILS Categories

Category I (CAT I) allows operation down to minima of 200 feet decision height (DH) with a runway visual range (RVR) of 2,600 feet or, when RVR is not available, 0.5 s.m. ground visibility.

Category II (CAT II) allows operation to minima as low as 100 feet DH with an RVR as low as 1,200 feet depending on the category of aircraft.

Category III (CAT III) minima are prescribed in an air carrier's operating specifications or manuals, or in the Canada Air Pilot (CAP).

Precision approach lighting systems are installed at airports that have been approved for ILS category operations. Such lighting systems include: approach lights, runway threshold lights, touchdown zone lights, centreline lights, runway edge lights, runway end lights, all stop bars and lead-on lights, and essential taxiway lights.

9.5.2 Localizer Approach

A localizer without glide path guidance is installed at some airports to provide track guidance during an approach. These aids may have a back course associated with them. Where the localizer is aligned within 3° of the runway, the approach procedure is called a localizer (LOC) approach.

9.6 Area Navigation

Area navigation systems, such as RNAV, INS, and GPS are invaluable in permitting flight to points that are not served by any kind of navigation aid, in finding airports in marginal weather. They permit straight line cross-country flights over long distances. Area navigation greatly enhances air traffic control flexibility providing relief for some of the problems of air congestion and relieving some of the workload of air traffic controllers. It also contributes to air safety since it permits the pilot to choose a route that will bypass heavily congested areas and it reduces the funnelling of traffic over navigation aids. It permits the establishment of multiple side-by-side routes between main centres and permits segregation of traffic on the basis of speed. The direct point-to-point navigation reduces flight time by shortening flight paths.

9.6.1 Area Navigation (RNAV)

RNAV, by freeing the pilot from the need to fly directly to and away from radio navigation facilities, has provided greater lateral freedom for aircraft and, at the same time, allowed for more complete use of the airspace.

As a result, flight distances can be minimized, traffic congestion decreased and traffic flow at terminal areas can be expedited. In addition, instrument approaches, within certain limits, can be made at airports without local instrument landing systems.

With the capabilities of an RNAV system, precise off-airways, cross-country navigation is possible using the present VORTAC facilities. The RNAV permits a pilot to fly directly from any spot in the service area of a VORTAC to any other spot in that service area, at all times knowing exact position and the distance to destination. Neither the destination point nor the starting point need be serviced by any kind of navigational aid to use this system of straight line navigation. The pilot no longer needs to track to a VORTAC installation, cross it and track out, doglegging his/her way to destination.

A typical RNAV airborne system is pictured in Fig.9.29. This instrument is the computer of the system. In addition to it, the aeroplane must be equipped with a VHF NAV receiver, a DME and a Nav display unit, such as a conventional VOR indicator with RNAV mode or an HSI. The VHF NAV receiver provides the VOR information to the RNAV computer necessary for establishing a waypoint along the radial of a particular VORTAC. The DME provides range information so that the RNAV can compute the distance from the VORTAC to the waypoint. With this information, the RNAV computes the aeroplane's position relative to the waypoint. The HSI indicates the course to fly to reach the waypoint and the DME provides an updated display of distance to the waypoint.

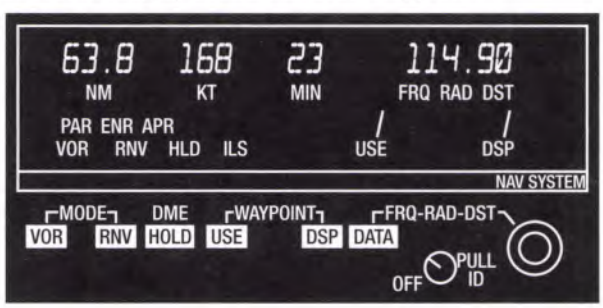


Fig.9.29 RNAV System

In a typical RNAV system, it is possible for the pilot to preprogram the waypoints that will be used during a particular flight. To create a waypoint, it is only necessary to key into the RNAV computer the radial from the VORTAC and the distance from the VORTAC of the site chosen to be a waypoint. During

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

the flight, the pilot selects the desired waypoint and all the information for it that has been stored in the computer's memory will appear on the digital readouts. The remotely channelled NAV receiver and the DME will automatically be channelled to the new VORTAC frequency. The HSI (or OBS) will indicate the aeroplane's position relative to the waypoint. The DME readout will show the distance of the aeroplane from the waypoint.

What the RNAV system does is create an imaginary VORTAC station over the waypoint. The HSI reacts to the radials radiating out from this imaginary VORTAC station. The DME computes distance to it.

When the HSI (or OBS) is working in the RNAV mode, the deflection of the CDI needle that indicates off course error is in nautical miles rather than in degrees. Each dot represents 1/2 mile off course.

Most manufacturers call their area navigation systems of this type RNAV. It is also known as a course line computer or track line computer.

9.6.2 Inertial Navigation System (INS)

The inertial navigation system is a completely self-contained system, independent of any ground based navigation aids. After being supplied with initial position information, it is capable, by use of a computer, precision gyros and sensitive accelerometers, of continuously updating extremely accurate displays of position, groundspeed, attitude and heading. It also provides guidance and steering information for the autopilot and flight instruments. It can calculate the track to fly and the distance between two points and, in flight, the distance an aeroplane is off that track. The airborne equipment uses barometric pressure to resolve DME slant range.

Velocity and distance are computed from sensed acceleration. Two accelerometers, gyro stabilized, are mounted in a gimbal assembly, commonly called the platform. One measures acceleration in the north-south direction and the other in the east-west direction.

The gyro stabilized platform on which the two accelerometers are mounted is kept level with respect to the earth (rather than fixed in space) by a compensating mechanism that allows for the fact that the earth is rotating and that it is round. The computer, which knows the latitude and longitude of the take-off point, computes the information from the accelerometers into present position.

The accuracy of the INS is dependent on the accuracy of the initial position information. Therefore, system alignment, normally called gyrocompassing, at the beginning of the flight is very important. The accelerometers must be levelled and the system must be oriented to true north.

Some systems combine INS and full RNAV (VOR and DME) into one system. The system can therefore be used as a terminal area aid as well as a long distance en route navigation aid. A control display unit such as that shown in Fig.9.30 displays navigation data generated by the system. Waypoint and station data is entered into the computer using optically encoded cards. Information on initial position, nine waypoint positions and nine station positions, with their frequencies, elevation and magnetic variations can be entered into the computer at one time.

The latest generation of inertial navigation systems replaces the precision gyros with laser sensors which measure the aircraft's movement in all three axes (pitch, roll and yaw). While no more accurate than the earlier gyro systems, lasers have much higher mean time between failures, MTBF's, (e.g. 10,000 hours versus 2,500 hours) because of their lack of moving parts. Often, the laser system will provide its data direct to the onboard flight management system. In this application, the laser is called an inertial reference system (IRS).

Fig.9.30 **Inertial Navigation System**

9.6.3 Global Navigation Satellite Systems (GNSS)

The International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) has recognized that a global navigation satellite system (GNSS) will satisfy navigation requirements for aviation in the 21st century. A complete GNSS includes satellites provided by various countries or commercial groups as well as ground systems to augment and monitor the satellites. As referenced earlier (see **Data Link Communications**), there are three satellite navigation systems: the U.S. GPS, the Russian GLONASS and Chinese BeiDou.

ICAO committees are tasked with monitoring and co-ordinating development of a global system to provide cost effective improvements in communications, navigation and surveillance (CNS) and air traffic management (ATM).

GNSS navigation capability is able to provide high integrity, highly accurate navigation service, suitable as a sole means of navigation for en route, terminal and non-precision approach landing operations.

ICAO has developed a concept of automatic dependent surveillance (ADS). With ADS, an aircraft automatically transmits its position and other relevant data to the air traffic control centre via satellite data link. The aircraft position is displayed on a screen similar to present radar displays. This service is primarily intended for oceanic operations, remote land areas and areas where primary and secondary radar is impractical.

Global Positioning System (GPS)

The global positioning system was developed by the U.S. Department of Defense to provide a very precise, global navigation service. GPS is based on a constellation of a minimum of 24 satellites orbiting the earth at an altitude of 11,000 n.m. Each satellite propagates its signal to half of the earth. The system uses technology that can pinpoint position anywhere in the world, 24 hours a day, and claims accuracies in the region of 100 meters in three dimensions.

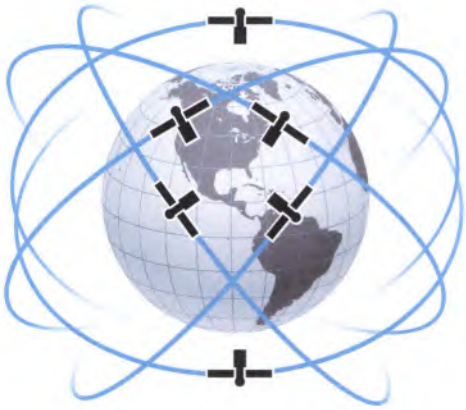


Fig.9.31 **GPS Satellite Orbits**

GPS is based on satellite ranging. Position on earth is determined by measuring distance from a group of satellites in space. The system works by timing how long it takes a radio signal from a satellite to reach the receiver. Since radio waves travel at a constant speed (the speed of light which is 186,000 miles per second), distance is calculated as a function of time.

Both the satellites and the receivers generate a very complicated set of digital codes known as "pseudo-random codes" at precisely the same time. An individual GPS receiver uses the ephemeris data sent by the satellite to calculate the time differential in receiving the satellite code and uses that time/distance information to establish latitude, longitude, altitude and to determine groundspeed.

To achieve the accuracy demanded by the system, very precise clocks are required. The satellites use atomic clocks, the most stable and accurate time reference as yet developed. Receiver clocks must also be very precise but can tolerate some imperfection. By taking readings on at least 4 satellites and using a method known as triangulation, receiver clock errors are cancelled out.

The GPS satellites are constantly monitored by the U.S. Department of Defence. The ground monitoring and control system evaluates the performance of the satellites which orbit the earth every twelve hours.

Ephemeris errors are determined and corrections are sent up to the satellites when necessary. These errors are usually very minor and are caused by gravitational pulls from the sun and moon and by pressure of solar radiation on the satellite. Each GPS satellite transmits not only its pseudo-random code but also a data message about these minor errors.

There are several sources of error in the GPS system. Water vapour in the atmosphere can affect the speed of the signals. The earth's ionosphere also affects the speed of the GPS radio signals. The electrically charged particles that make up the ionosphere slow down the signals at a rate inversely proportional to its frequency squared. The lower the frequency of the signal, the more it gets slowed down. Very sophisticated GPS receivers are able to eliminate this kind of error. However, even without a receiver based correction, these errors are negligible and will cause a position error of only a few meters.

Receivers sometimes make errors by rounding off a mathematical operation. Such receiver errors may incorporate a few feet of uncertainty into every measurement.

Another source of error is the multipath error. The signal transmitted from the satellite bounces around, taking a circuitous route before it reaches the receiver. Special antennas minimize this problem but, in severe cases, it can add some uncertainty to the measurements.

All of these inaccuracies, even if taken together, will affect the accuracy of position calculations by no more than 25 to 50 meters. Triangulation calculations can magnify or lessen these uncertainties depending on the relative angles of the satellites in the sky. The wider the angle between satellites, the better will be the measurement. A good GPS receiver will take into account this subtle principle of geometry that is called geometric dilution of precision (GDOP), will analyze the relative positions of all the satellites available and will choose the best four.

The satellites broadcast two separate forms of the pseudo-random code on the frequencies 1,227.6 and 1,575.42 MHz. The P code, which provides precise position service (PPS), is encrypted so that it can be used only by the military and provides the U.S. Department of Defence with some exclusivity to the system. The C/A code, which provides standard position service (SPS), is used by civilian receivers. The SPS signals are degraded through a technique called selective availability (SA) which artificially creates a significant clock error in order to deny high precision signals to unfriendly military forces. Even with SA, horizontal accuracy is within 100 meters and meets the requirements for en route and non-precision approach applications.

The accuracy of the system can be boosted using a technique called differential GPS (DGPS). A GPS receiver on the ground in a known location acts as a static reference. It measures distances to satellites, calculates corrections to match the GPS position to the actual position and transmits an error correction message to any other GPS receivers in the local area. They in turn use that error message to eliminate virtually all error in their own measurements. Differential GPS measurements are, therefore, much more accurate than standard GPS measurements.

Local area differential (LDGPS) is limited by line-of-sight communication from the differential stations and requires hundreds of ground stations. Wide area differential (WDGPS) has no line-of-sight limitations but has some degradation of accuracy due to transmission of the signal through the ionosphere. It requires fewer ground stations.

The integrity of the GPS system is compromised by the fact that the GPS satellite constellation does not warn users promptly if the system is providing faulty signals. Some receivers provide this integrity through receiver autonomous integrity monitoring (RAIM). RAIM works by calculating aircraft position using different sets of satellites, comparing positions and warning the pilot if there is a discrepancy. It requires at least six satellites within the view of the GPS receiver to provide the receiver with enough information combinations to detect an unhealthy satellite.

GPS equipment used in IFR applications must meet certain standards (TSO C 129), one of which is RAIM capability.

Top of the line GPS receivers are able to track four or more satellites simultaneously and display instantaneous position and velocity information. They also can eliminate the GDOP problem by tracking all satellites in view. Single and double channel receivers with sequencing capability can achieve quite precise measurements but are slower in calculating

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

position and velocity. A single channel receiver moves from one satellite to the next to gather data. The sequencing can interrupt positioning, limiting overall accuracy and limiting its capability to provide continuous positioning. A double channel receiver has increased capability, does not have to interrupt its navigation functions to receive satellite signals and provides more precise velocity measurements but does not have the capability to eliminate the GDOP problems.

GPS allows aircraft to make curved approaches to airports, fly more efficient routes and obtain positional information anywhere in the world. Its benefit is especially realized over oceanic areas.

GPS Augmentation System

Augmentation of the GPS constellation is necessary to meet accuracy, integrity and availability requirements for aviation. A satellite-based augmentation system (SBAS) is known by the acronym WAAS, (see below). A ground-based augmentation system (GBAS) is known by the acronym LAAS, (see below).

WIDE AREA AUGMENTATION SYSTEM (WAAS)

The wide area augmentation system (WAAS) allows GPS to be used as a primary means of navigation from take-off through Category I precision approach. Unlike traditional ground-based navigation aids, the WAAS covers a more extensive service area with ground reference stations linked to a WAAS network. GPS signals are received by these ground reference stations which determine any errors in the signals. Each station in the network relays the data to a wide area master station where correction information for specific geographical areas is computed. The message is then broadcast on the same frequency as GPS to GPS/WAAS receivers on board aircraft that are flying within the broadcast coverage area of the WAAS. The WAAS broadcast message improves GPS signal accuracy from 100 meters to approximately 7 meters. The world-wide installation of these systems creates international navigation capability similar to GPS, but with greater accuracy, availability and integrity.

LOCAL AREA AUGMENTATION SYSTEM (LAAS)

Similar to the WAAS concept which incorporates the use of communication satellites to broadcast a correction message, the local area augmentation system (LAAS) broadcasts its correction message via a very high frequency (VHF) radio data link from a ground-based transmitter. Its impact is on aviation navigation.

LAAS yields the extremely high accuracy, availability and integrity necessary for Category I, II, and III precision approaches, with the ability to pinpoint an aircraft's position to within one meter or less. Curved approach paths are possible using LAAS as are approaches around obstacles. Avoidance of restricted airspace, noise sensitive areas, and congested airspace is also possible with LAAS usage. LAAS provides precision approaches to all runways as well as providing the means for controllers to determine the location of all airport service vehicles and taxiing aircraft to assist in the prevention of runway incursions.

Continuing development and refining of WAAS and LAAS systems will see the two combined into the same avionics equipment for use by air crew and airport personnel.

9.7 Radar & Surveillance Systems

The name radar is an abbreviation of "radio detection and ranging". To operate, radar requires a highly directional radio transmitter/antenna and a scope, or screen, to display the information received by the antenna.

The principal uses of radar in aviation are

1. Fixing positions of aeroplanes in flight.
2. Air traffic control.
3. Detecting thunderstorm activity.
4. Approach and landing guidance to aeroplanes.

Radar operates on the 3,000 to 10,000 MHz frequency band. Extremely short bursts of super high frequency radio energy, called pulses, are fired into space along a beam from a highly directional radar antenna. These pulses strike aeroplanes, ships, buildings and other objects and are reflected back to the sender. The time it takes the pulse to travel to the reflecting object and return is timed electronically in millionths of a second to determine the distance of the object from the sender. This information is displayed on the face of a cathode ray tube called an oscilloscope or, more commonly, a scope or screen. The information appears in the form of a small blip of light that is called a target.

At the centre of the scope is the radar antenna. The scope is marked with concentric rings (called range markers) that measure distance from the antenna (Fig.9.32). An azimuth scale is marked around the circumference of the scope (not shown in (Fig.9.32). The controller working the scope is thus able to determine the bearing and distance of a target representing an aeroplane.

The beam, transmitted by the radar transmitter and called in radar terminology a trace, will pick up only objects towards which it is pointed directly. In order to "see" objects around the entire horizon from the sender's position, the beam is rotated through 360° by a scanner at a constant rate of speed. A sweep line on the scope is synchronized with the rotation of the antenna. The target that appears on the scope fades out after the sweep line passes, but reappears again as the sweep line passes on its next rotation. As a result, the track of an aeroplane can be seen on the radar scope.

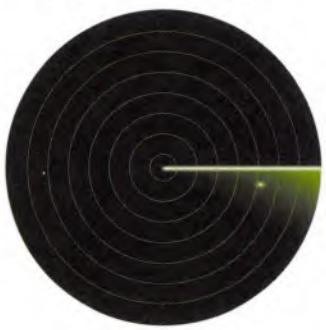


Fig.9.32 **A Radar Scope**

Radio waves travel at a rate of 186,000 miles per second. To measure them, the unit of time used is the microsecond, which is one millionth of a second.

Pulses of electromagnetic energy are beamed out to the target and reflected back (Fig.9.33). The signal which is reflected back is called an echo. It takes 10.75 microseconds for a signal to travel one mile out to a target and for the echo to return. The round trip distance is known as a radar mile.

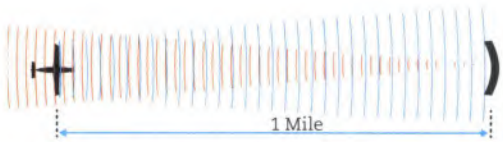


Fig.9.33 **Distance Measuring by Radar**

The use of radar in ATC procedure greatly increases utilization of the airspace and permits expansion of flight information services such as traffic and weather information and navigational assistance.

There are two types of radar systems: Primary Surveillance Radar and Secondary Surveillance Radar.

9.7.1 Primary Surveillance Radar (PSR)

Primary Surveillance Radar (PSR) measures range and azimuth of transmitted and reflected radio frequencies to determine the position of an aircraft. It is, thus, based solely on the echo principle and requires no equipment in the aeroplane.

Primary radar is used by ATC in the following applications:

1. Terminal Surveillance Radar (TSR) is a short-range PSR (80 n.m.) operating in the 1250 MHz to 1350 MHz designed to complement secondary surveillance radar (SSR) for terminal operations.
2. Precision Approach Radar (PAR) is a short-range, high-definition PSR operating on 9000 MHz to 9180 MHz used as an approach aid to guide aircraft to final approach on a designated instrument runway. PAR provides ATC with highly accurate altitude, azimuth and range information to assist pilots with glide path information down to the point of touchdown on the runway.
3. Airport Surface Detection Equipment (ASDE) is a high-definition PSR operating on 16 GHz (16000 MHz). ASDE is used by control tower operators to monitor the position of aircraft and vehicles on the maneuvering areas of the airport, especially during conditions of reduced visibility.
4. Weather Radar is a PSR used by Meteorological Service of Canada to monitor for hazardous weather conditions.

Radar Assisted Approach

The capabilities of the radar systems provide a method of guiding a pilot on instruments down to the runway for a landing by means of verbal instructions from a controller working on a primary surveillance radar system.

A radar assisted approach can be provided when no alternative method of approach is available. It requires no special airborne equipment other than a radio receiver and normal flight instruments. Radar assistance can be requested by a pilot who may have become lost or accidentally caught in instrument conditions. It can also be used in an emergency situation.

The radar operator on the ground can see the aeroplane on the radar scanning screens (Fig.9.34) which are located on their operating panel. Lines and circles on the scanning screens provide the radar operator with azimuth, range and altitude data which enables guiding of the pilot down to the runway of the airport.

To request radar assistance on an approach if you are flying VFR, call the tower. State your approximate position as accurately as you can and your altitude. The tower will assign a transmitting and receiving frequency for communication with the radar controller. You will then be requested to execute a few simple turn maneuvers or, if you are transponder equipped, you will be asked to "Squawk Ident". This is for positive identification of your aeroplane on the scanning screen. At this point the controller may give you lost communications instructions as follows:

Controller: If you lose Radio Contact for any 5 Second Interval, Maintain VFR and Contact the Tower on — MHz (**Tower frequency**) for Secondary Instructions.

If you are lost under VFR conditions, the surveillance approach controller will give you a heading to steer to bring you to the runway and will continue to vector your approach in case you happen to stray from the required track.

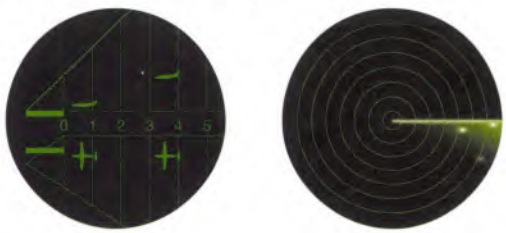


Fig.9.34 **Radar Scanning Screens**

Left: On the precision approach radar screen, the exact position of the aircraft is constantly shown in three dimensions: altitude, azimuth and range. (The aircraft silhouettes have been sketched in to make the principle more easily understood. In actual practice, aircraft appear as blips, as they do on the scope on the right.) The controller has two such scopes, one covering a 10 mile area and the other a 3 mile area. The latter is scaled up to provide greater precision on final approach. The equipment is accurate to within plus or minus ten feet.

Right: On the surveillance scope, circular lines are 5 miles apart. The blips are aircraft. The radar surveillance antenna, rotating through 360°, scans a radius 30 miles out and 10,000 feet up. The position of every aircraft within a 2,800 square mile area is continuously shown on the surveillance scope.

If the visibility is marginal and it is necessary to make a landing under instrument conditions, you will be given precision radar navigation assistance to guide you at a safe altitude, into the traffic pattern and on to the base leg. At this point you will be requested to check your gyro compass and not to reset it during the remainder of the approach. In case your gyro is not working, advise the controller immediately. You will be given a no gyro approach and will probably brief you as follows:

Controller: This will be a No Gyro Precision Approach. Runway One Three. Make Standard Rate Turns. Execute Turn Instructions on Receipt.

Obey the instructions implicitly, using your attitude indicator as your turn reference. Do not attempt to make corrections on your own.

On base leg, as you are about to intercept the final approach leg, the controller will take over and turn you on to the correct heading to line you up for final approach to the selected runway. As you intercept the glide path, you will be given the correct rate of descent to maintain. Instructions will be simple.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Controller: You are now on Final Approach for Runway One Three. Six Miles from Touchdown.

Once the descent has started, if the approach is normal, the controller will merely give you distance, steering and glide path checks. For Example:

Controller: Three Miles from Touchdown. You are on Course. On the Glide Path.

Should you get off the line of approach or glide path, he/she will advise you of the deviation and give you the necessary correction. For Example:

Controller: Four Miles from Touchdown. 200 Feet to the Left. Turn Right. Heading One Three Six. *Followed by*, You are on Course. *Or* You are 50 Feet Above the Glide Path. Ease It Down. *Followed by*, You are on the Glide Path. Adjust Your Rate of Descent *As you near the threshold of the runway, he/she will caution you*, Wheels Down and Locked. *When you reach it, he/she will advise you*, Over the End of the Runway. Take it Visually. *You are then cleared to take over and land.*

9.7.2 Secondary Surveillance Radar (SSR)

Although radar is a very valuable asset to the air traffic control system, it has several disadvantages. In heavy traffic areas, all the targets on the radar scope look the same. There is no way a controller can distinguish between two targets in the same general area. The controller must ask one of the aeroplanes to take up a specific heading and then wait to see which target on the screen reacts to the instruction in order to make an identification. Also, the signal directed to low flying aeroplanes often experiences interference from terrain features, buildings, etc. As a result, the echo is weak. Precipitation also returns echoes.

To overcome these disadvantages of the primary radar system, a secondary radar system was developed. It requires airborne equipment that returns a strong signal to the primary radar transmitter. As a result, the target on the radar scope is stronger and more readily identified by the controller.

Secondary Surveillance Radar (SSR), thus, determines the range to an aircraft by measuring the interval between the transmission of an interrogation signal to an aircraft, and the receipt of a reply from an aircraft. The airborne equipment required to enable the reply is called a transponder. The radar system that uses only transponder generated data on the ground radar display is called a radar digitized display.

Secondary radar is used by ATC in the following applications:

1. En route control is an SSR with a long-range of 200 n.m. or more. It transmits on 1030 MHz and receives transponder replies on 1090 MHz. SSR is the main means for en route surveillance of aircraft; it is not normally combined with primary surveillance radar.
2. Terminal control uses long-range SSR equipment similar to en route control and combines it with a short-range primary surveillance radar.

Transponder

Designed to reinforce a surveillance radar signal, the transponder permits positive identification of an aircraft by the ground facilities of ATC. A typical airborne transponder system includes a control, a receiver/transmitter and a small L-bank antenna mounted on the underside of the aircraft. Ground equipment consists of a transmitter/receiver and a rotating directional antenna that usually is mounted on top of the regular surveillance radar antenna.

The transponder works like this. The ground radar equipment sends out a special interrogation signal asking all aircraft, "Who are you?". Only transponder-equipped aircraft can answer. The airborne transponder picks up the signal and automatically sends back a strong pulsed signal in reply. The reply signal is computed into distance and direction (and into altitude on Mode C) by the ground radar station and is displayed with the aircraft's target on the traffic controller's scope as one or two slashes.

The interrogation signals from the ground radar are moded. Mode A asks for identification. Mode C requests altitude information. Pilots adjust their sets to the appropriate mode. On transponder controls used in general aviation, mode selection of A or A/C is provided. On Mode A, the transponder automatically replies to all interrogations. When the mode selector is placed in the A/C position, the transponder provides proper identification plus automatic altitude information.

Fig.9.35 **Pulse Signals between Aeroplanes & Ground Stations (either way) Moded & Coded for Signal Identification**

In order that altitude information can be encoded by the airborne transponder and relayed to ATC, an encoding altimeter must be installed in the aeroplane and linked into the transponder equipment.

Only aircraft equipped with transponders capable of automatic pressure altitude reporting (i.e. Mode C) may operate in Class A, B and C airspace. Transponders are required in Class D and E airspace if so designated in the Designated Airspace Handbook.

In the transponder shown in Fig.9.36, the Mode A selection is automatically selected when the set is activated. Mode C selection is made by selecting ALT.

Fig.9.36 **Transponder**

Mode C should always be selected (if the transponder is capable of the altitude reporting function) unless directed by ATC otherwise. If the aeroplane is on a VFR flight plan, the appropriate VFR code (see below) **must** also be selected.

The reply signal sent by the airborne transponder is coded. Specific codes are assigned by an air traffic controller on the ground for various flight levels and conditions of flight. The pilot selects this code on the control in the cockpit.

Most transponders have 4096 code capability. All transponder codes are, therefore, 4 digit codes. In Fig.9.36, the code 1200

has been selected. The controller can identify the various code settings assigned to different flight requirements.

In assigning codes, for example, arrival control at a particular ATC centre may use 4700 while departure control will use 2400. One ATC centre in handing a flight over to another centre will ask the pilot to select the code of that centre. A pilot on a VFR flight plan may select 1200 (at or below 12,500 feet) or 1400 (above 12,500 feet) on the transponder control. This will automatically inform the ATC radar controllers that the aircraft is a VFR flight and they will be able to maintain positive separation of their IFR and VFR traffic.

When ATC issues instructions concerning transponder operation, the pilot is required to operate the transponder as directed until receiving further instructions or until the aircraft has landed. Only in the event of an emergency, communication failure or hijack should the transponder code be changed without authority from ATC.

In the event of an emergency and if unable to establish communication immediately with an ATC unit, a pilot wishing to alert ATC to the situation should select code 7700. Upon establishing communication, he/she should operate the transponder as directed by ATC.

In the event of a communications failure, the transponder should be adjusted to reply on Code 7600, in order to alert ATC to the problem. Code 7500 is used to alert ATC of unlawful interference (i.e. hijacking).

On an IFR flight plan, the loss of all radio communication ability necessitates termination of the flight at the first convenient airport. The versatility of the transponder can be seen in the situation in which the communications problem affects only the transmitting capacity. A flight, on an IFR clearance, can be continued by using the transponder as a transmitting device. The ATC controller is able to ask questions and give instructions in normal fashion; the aircraft acknowledges these transmissions by "squawking ident".

If the transponder or encoding altimeter fails during flight in airspace where Mode C is required, the aircraft may be operated to the next airport of intended landing and, thereafter, to complete its itinerary or to a repair base, if authorized by ATC.

ATC may, upon written request, authorize an aircraft not equipped with a Mode C transponder to operate in airspace where its use is mandatory. Such authorization is given only if the safety of air traffic within that airspace is not compromised.

If the controller decides to verify a "target" when more than one aircraft are on the same code, the pilot will be called and asked to "squawk ident". When the pilot presses the ident button on the transponder control, a special signal is sent out that causes the target to "blossom" on the controller's scope. The target will blossom for a few seconds and then return to its regular pattern. The ident feature should be operated only when directed by ATC.

Most controls have a function tester or small reply light which blinks every time the transponder replies to a ground interrogation signal, letting the pilot know that the transponder is operating.

ATC radar units are equipped with an alarm system that is triggered when an aircraft within its radar coverage has selected the emergency, communication failure or unlawful interference transponder codes. It is possible for those codes to be momentarily and unintentionally selected while the aircrew is changing from one code to another. To avoid unnecessary activation of the alarm system at ATC, pilots should be very careful not to select a 7 in the left hand position on the transponder head while changing codes. However, do not select "standby" while changing codes as this action will cause the target to be lost on the radar screen at ATC.

Transponders should be adjusted to "standby" while taxiing for take-off, to "on" as late as practicable before take-off, and to "standby" or "off" as soon as practicable after landing.

ATC Phrase	Meaning
Squawk (four digit code)	Input assigned transponder code
Squawk Ident	Press the "Ident" button on the transponder
Squawk Mode Charlie	Ensure Mode C function is selected
Stop Squawk Mode Charlie	Turn off Mode C function
Stop ADS-B Altitude Transmission	Turn off ADS-B altitude transmission
Reset ADS-B	Turn ADS-B off, then back on
Reset Transponder	Turn transponder off, then back on
Report/Say Your Altitude	State your current altitude
Confirm Squawk	Visually, then vocally confirm the selected mode/code
Squawk Standby	Select "Standby" function
Roger Ident	Used by FSS to acknowledge a request to squawk ident

Fig.9.37 **Transponder Phraseology**

A development in transponder technology is the implementation of Mode S. These are transponders with a data link capability. With 16 million separate codes, Mode S gives each aircraft a unique signature of its own, (referred to as a flight identification, or FLT ID). It is fully compatible with the ATC radar beacon system (ATCRBS). An SSR with Mode S capability will transmit the conventional ATCRBS interrogation, followed by a series of additional signals. The Mode S transponder will reply to the conventional ATCRBS interrogation but also will send back the additional requested data. The information sent through the Mode S system can include clearance delivery, take-off clearance confirmation and other information relating to clearances, routes, and weather information. The information is displayed on a cockpit display through which the crew can acknowledge receipt of the information by pressing a button on the display unit. Mode S has the advantage of helping to reduce the load on the heavily used VHF channels. Mode S transponders are an integral component of all ACAS (TCAS) installations (see below).

Air traffic controllers use certain phraseology when referring to the operation of transponders. See the table below for descriptions of such transponder phraseology.

Encoding Altimeter

Altitude information is relayed by the airborne transponder equipment to the ATC radar display for the information of controllers. The instrument that feeds the altitude information into the transponder is known as an encoding altimeter.

There are two basic types of encoding altimeters — the pneumatic or mechanical type and the servo type. The pneumatic type is essentially a conventional barometric altimeter with an encoding device that converts altitude into digitally coded electrical signals in 100 foot increments. These signals are wired to the transponder which, when set to Mode C, are transmitted as replies to the "What's your altitude?" interrogation of ground radars. It uses evacuated capsules called aneroids to sense altitude, by expanding and contracting with static pressure. The movement of the aneroid walls, via

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

gearing, drives the altimeter pointers for visual display. At the same time, the pressure of the moving aneroids drives a small glass disc providing the electrical signal to activate the encoding device.

Fig.9.38 **Encoding Altimeter**

The servo type of encoding altimeter also uses the aneroid system to sense altitude but the power to drive the encoding and display mechanism is derived from the aeroplane's electrical system. The servo type, having an outside source of power, can drive pointers and encoders and at the same time provide ancillary outputs for an altitude alerter, rate of climb indicator, vertical nav system and autopilot. The servo type encoding altimeter is very accurate and very reliable. Its disadvantage is its complete dependence on electrical power to operate.

Like a conventional altimeter, the encoding altimeter is fitted with a barometric scale by which the pilot is able to set the current altimeter setting on the instrument. The pointers on the face of the instrument respond to any change in the altimeter setting in the same way as does a conventional altimeter. However, the altitude information that is relayed through the encoding altimeter and the transponder to the radar receivers at the ATC unit is based on pressure altitude (a barometric reading of 29.92" Hg). The ATC computers correct the received pressure altitude signals to the local altimeter setting in order to have a uniform standard for altitude information for all the aeroplanes within radar range of any one particular ATC unit.

9.7.3 Automatic Dependent Surveillance (ADS)

Surveillance of aircraft is possible via data link technology. Aircraft so-equipped can automatically provide data derived from on-board navigation and position systems. The airborne equipment has the capability of relaying the exact geographical co-ordinates of the aircraft as it proceeds along its track. This information is displayed on a surveillance screen at the air traffic control unit and is monitored by ATC controllers.

Known as automatic dependent surveillance (ADS), this system has the advantage of providing position monitoring of aircraft that are out of range of normal radar coverage, on transoceanic flights and/or in the remote areas of the continent. Flight control and flight separation can thus be provided for flights in these areas.

Automatic dependent surveillance-broadcast (ADS-B) is the latest innovation in ADS technology. It allows equipped aircraft and ground vehicles to broadcast their identification, position, altitude and velocity to other aircraft and to ATC. This data is transmitted every second. This functionality is known as ADS-B Out. Being so equipped as to receive this information is known as ADS-B In. ADS-B thus allows for the information seen on the ATC controller's surveillance screen to be broadcast back, via satellite, to the aircraft in flight. This enables the aircraft crew to monitor their own progress while also keeping them aware of other traffic in their immediate vicinity.

ADS-B Out enhances safety by making an aircraft visible to ATC and to other ADS-B-equipped aircraft. The benefits of ADS-B In include greater traffic awareness for pilots who can have, displayed in their aircraft, data concerning the altitude, heading, speed, and distance to other aircraft in their vicinity. With ADS-B In, pilots also have access to current weather data, terrain conflicts, and flight information such as NOTAM.

The framework for ADS-B Out functionality in Canada is based upon space-based satellite communications delivered over 1090 MHz. Therefore, for aircraft in Canada to be compatible with the Canadian ADS-B environment, they must be equipped with a 1090 MHz extended squitter ADS-B Out transmitter. (While a "squawk" is a response that a transponder makes to an ATC interrogation, a "squitter" refers to a transponder's random broadcast of data without being interrogated. With ADS-B, an aircraft's GPS navigation system generates information regarding aircraft identification, position, direction of flight, airborne velocity, vertical climb/descent, etc., then transmits this data once per second using an "extended squitter.")

Implementation of mandates requiring ADS-B Out equipment in aircraft are in place in Canada for Classes A, B, C, D, and E airspace. Pilots should be aware of the existence of these mandates, and the activation dates by which they must be followed. (Mandates will be enabled through airspace classification designation and amendment to transponder requirements, as described in the Designated Airspace Handbook.) In the U.S., all aircraft, (including foreign-registered aircraft), must be equipped with ADS-B Out to fly in airspace where a Mode C transponder is required.

Owing to the satellite-basis of the Canadian system, a skyward facing antenna and a WAAS GPS source is required for ADS-B in Canada. In the U.S. where a ground-based ADS-B infrastructure is in place, a belly-mounted antenna is necessary to operate in airspace where ADS-B is mandated. Antennae that transmit both up and down simultaneously can fulfill the ADS-B transmission requirements of both countries.

9.7.4 Airborne Collision Avoidance System (ACAS)

With the substantial increase in air traffic and the concern about mid-air collisions and near misses, it was inevitable that an automatic collision avoidance system (ACAS) would be developed. ACAS is based on transponder technology and requires Mode S capability in the airborne equipment. ACAS equipment designed and manufactured in the United States is called traffic alert and collision avoidance system (TCAS).

An ACAS (TCAS) equipped aircraft constantly sends out interrogations to which any aircraft equipped with at least a Mode C transponder will automatically respond, with no pilot action required.

ACAS (TCAS) is designed to operate independently of ATC. Depending on the type of equipment, ACAS (TCAS) will provide traffic alerts (TA) and/or resolution advisories (RA). TA's provide information on nearby traffic and are intended to help the crew in visual acquisition of conflicting traffic. RA's may be preventative advisories which instruct the pilot to maintain or avoid certain vertical speeds or corrective advisories which instruct the pilot to take preventative action by deviating from the current flight path.

If two ACAS II equipped aircraft are on potential collision courses, their computers will communicate using the Mode S transponder data link which has the capability of providing co-ordinated and complimentary RA's (e.g. one being advised to descend, the other to climb).

There are currently three versions of ACAS (TCAS).

ACAS I is the simplest version. It provides a proximity alert function that gives range, altitude and a rough indication of relative bearing, accurate to about 14 degrees. Its range is about four nautical miles. ACAS I provides a traffic alert only, advising of a potential collision. No guidance (RA) is given. The pilot must visually acquire the traffic and take what avoidance maneuver is necessary.

ACAS II has greater range (about 14 to 15 n.m) and bearing information is accurate to about 9 degrees. It consists of a computer, controls, wiring and antennas which provide both TA's and vertical plane RA's. ACAS II has sophisticated collision avoidance logic built in. It will compute a suitable avoidance maneuver and display it on a separate display screen, weather radar or EFIS cockpit display. If two ACAS II equipped aircraft are on potential collision courses, the avoidance maneuvers are co-ordinated. The system transmits the avoidance maneuver of one aircraft to the other and the second aircraft takes a complementary maneuver.

ACAS III is a more advanced system. It has even greater accuracy and range and will provide for both vertical and horizontal plane maneuver advisories (that is, turns as well as climbs and descents) instead of the vertical advisory only that is given by ACAS II.

ACAS equipped aircraft require two antennas, instead of the one only that is usually installed on the belly of the aircraft. Since the unit is meant to interact with aircraft both above and below, an antenna on the upper surface of the fuselage is also required.

ACAS (TCAS) does not diminish a pilot's responsibility to ensure safe flight. ACAS responds only to aircraft which are transponder equipped whose transponders are functioning. Aircraft without transponders or with only Mode A are invisible to ACAS (TCAS) equipped aircraft. Alerts and advisories are not provided.

Air regulations permit pilots to deviate from an ATC instruction or clearance in order to follow ACAS/TCAS resolution advisories. When responding to a resolution advisory, the pilot is required to advise the appropriate ATC unit of the deviation in flight path as soon as possible. When clear of the conflicting traffic, he/she should expeditiously return to the last ATC clearance or instruction received and accepted. Aircraft maneuvers conducted during a resolution advisory should be kept to the minimum necessary to avoid the conflicting traffic.

9.8 Navigation Systems & Displays

9.8.1 Moving Map Display

A moving map display based on GPS uses the technology and capability of GPS systems to depict the aeroplane's realtime flight path on a multifunction display (MFD) screen that also displays the applicable navigational chart.

With position information obtained from the GPS, the system displays the flight path with the aeroplane's position depicted either in the centre of the map as the map moves or with the map stationery while the aeroplane's position moves. Position relative to navigation aids and airports, terminal control areas, control zones and other special use airspace is continuously displayed.

The adaptability of the system permits a flight crew to program the route they wish to travel and enter all particulars of the route into the system's memory before the flight. The system can also store and display alternate routes. In flight, any route changes are computed resulting in updated information and position being displayed instantly. The system shows the position of the aircraft relative to any selected waypoint; it displays heading, altitude and groundspeed information, it creates new waypoints, and it projects the aircraft's true and intended courses. It can display the approach course to an ILS and at the same time depict the aircraft's position relative to that course. Information about weather ahead derived from the onboard weather radar, operational data relating to the aircraft (airspeed, rate of climb or descent, altitude, etc.) and the engines (engine temperatures, rpm or turbine speeds, etc.) all can be displayed.

Fig.9.39 **Multifunction Display (MFD) with Moving Map**

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

All database information (such as airports and their runways and approaches, navaids, waypoints and intersections) can be called onto the screen for navigation purposes. Flight plans can be created and keyed into the system. When coupled to an autopilot, the moving map display system will fly the aeroplane automatically on the flight plan, as it visually depicts the aircraft's progress on the MFD screen.

The map scale can be zoomed to display an area from 1,000 miles down to 1 mile in length (the latter for approach mode). The system displays minimum en route safe altitude, CDI, groundspeed, ETA, ETE, bearing and distance to the next waypoint, nearest airport or VOR, etc. Geographical information such as elevation, hydrography, man-made obstacles, highways, etc., are also presented.

9.8.2 Flight Management System (FMS)

Most of today's air carrier and corporate aircraft are equipped with computer-based flight control systems known as Flight Management Systems (FMS). Such systems are primarily to facilitate navigation.

A typical FMS consists of a control display unit (CDU), a flight management or navigation computer, global position sensors, and a data loader. The flight management computer accepts information from navigation sensors including VOR, DME and GPS. Data from the sensors is merged to provide accurate position information.

The computer has a programmable database containing known radio navigation stations along with their tunable frequencies, airport information, and instrument departure and arrival information. Owing to frequent database changes, databases can be updated every 28 days for use within the FMS. Custom databases can also be created for FMS as well. In such cases, information pertaining to aircraft performance, frequently used flight plans, and waypoints can be stored for future use in the FMS.

FMS is based on using all the available navigation sensors to fly from point to point along a planned flight route. Waypoints can be selected based on data stored within the navigation database, or via coordinates inputted by the pilot. Once this information has been entered, the FMS can generate commands or cues informing the pilot on where to steer the aircraft.

To navigate, the FMS uses data from all navigation sensors, as well as attitude, heading and air data. Based on its recognition of its initial position at start-up, the FMS will scan its navigation database and select the appropriate navigation stations for the area. Information from this scan is blended with other sensor inputs to identify the aircraft's exact position. As the aircraft begins its journey, the FMS automatically scans and tunes to navigation radio signals along its route, always merging database data with sensor data to pinpoint the aircraft's location at all times during the flight.

In the event that no navigation signal information is being received by the aircraft, the FMS is able to compensate by determining the aircraft's course via a dead reckoning mode. In such situations, the FMS will estimate the location of the aircraft based on the last known position, heading and airspeed. In dead reckoning mode, the FMS will flag the pilot that it is active.

9.8.3 Flight Director

A flight director is a highly sophisticated system that electronically collects the information provided by a number of instruments, feeds this information into a computer and presents it in two visual displays.

Fig.9.40 **Flight Director System. Top: Attitude Director Indicator (ADI) Bottom: Horizontal Situation Indicator (HSI)**

The two instruments that provide this visual display are a horizontal situation indicator (HSI) and an attitude director indicator (ADI). Usually the flight director installation is combined with an autopilot system. The entire package is then known as a flight control system. Different manufacturers give other names to the components of their systems. The HSI is sometimes called the pictorial navigation indicator (PNI) and the ADI is sometimes called the flight command indicator.

We have already discussed the HSI at some length. (See **Horizontal Situation Indicator** in this chapter.) The HSI pictured in Fig.9.40 has two additional features to a conventional HSI. It displays a readout of the selected VOR radial and a DME readout of distance to the station. The ADI is somewhat similar to an attitude indicator but much more sophisticated. It incorporates a command display mounted over a horizon display. It is of prime value as an aid to flying instrument approaches with greater precision. An ADI may use either a cross-pointer or a V-bar as the command display. Fig.9.41 shows a cross-pointer display that indicates that the pilot is to the right of the localizer and below the glide path. The pilot must correct to the left and fly up to bring the cross-pointer back to the stationary aeroplane symbol. (The dotted line in Fig.9.41 represents the horizon.)

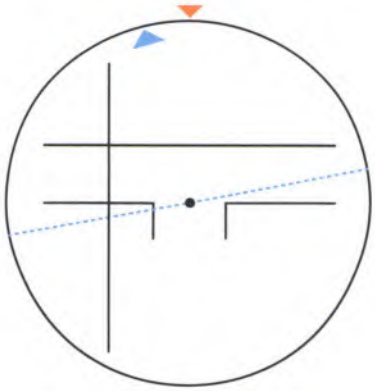


Fig.9.41 **Cross-Pointer of ADI**

Because computers have the ability to accept and process an almost limitless amount of information, some manufacturers include as much information as possible on the ADI. Most of this additional information is displayed around the periphery of the instrument. It may include a ball to indicate slip or skid, an angle of attack indicator, a glideslope needle, a radio altimeter readout, a decision height indicator. The ADI pictured in Fig.9.40 has several of these additional features.

When the flight director installation is combined with an autopilot system, information from the computer is fed directly to the autopilot which makes the necessary flight control corrections.

The flight director, as well as giving commands for an instrument approach, can intercept a radial inbound to a VOR or ILS, give pitch commands for a missed approach, for take-off and climb and for turns to heading, direct a pilot through a back course approach, give guidance on procedure turns and, when in the RNAV mode, capture a course to a waypoint. Altitudes, courses and approaches are selected by the push of a button to feed the flight director the information it needs to accomplish all its functions.

Autopilot

An autopilot system operates on the principle of gyroscopic rigidity in space (a rotating body's resistance to forces attempting to tilt it from its plane of rotation). The system incorporates two gyroscopes to control flight in the longitudinal, lateral and vertical axes of the aircraft. If the aircraft deviates from the programmed attitude, the system computer detects the deviation and issues commands to the servo motors which move the primary flight control surfaces as required to return the aircraft to the required flight attitude. This is called aerodynamic response.

Different autopilot systems provide a wide variety of control. A very simple autopilot may control only the rudder to permit more accurate holding of flight headings. More complex systems offer a greater variety of options. Modes of operation in the roll channel include maintaining the wings level, following a selected heading, following a selected radio path. Modes of operation in the pitch channel include maintaining a certain pitch attitude, a certain vertical speed or following an ILS glide slope. Autopilot systems will react to centre of gravity changes to keep the aircraft in proper trim, will automatically shut down in the event of malfunction, will turn, climb or descend smoothly as directed.

Autopilot computers and flight director computers are interconnected in present day technology. The autopilot controls the aeroplane. The flight director monitors autopilot operation.

Ground Proximity Warning System (GPWS)

The purpose of the ground proximity warning system is to alert the flight crew to the existence of an unsafe condition due to terrain proximity.

It is activated when the aircraft is experiencing an excessive sink rate or when there is an excessive closure rate because of rising terrain. The system relays aural messages and activates warning lights on the instrument panel.

It also warns of terrain proximity during landing and take-off sequences. It is programmed to give warning of closure rates that are in excess of preset threshold values. It recognizes landing gear and flap positions and gives aural warning if they are not in the proper position for landing. It warns of excessive deviation below the glide slope on a front course ILS approach.

For proper operation, the GPWS requires input data relating to airspeed, barometric altitude, radio altitude and glide slope deviation.

9.9 Emergency Locator Transmitter (ELT)

An emergency locator transmitter is a battery operated radio transmitter. Traditional ELTs send out a distinctive analog distress signal on the international emergency frequency 121.5 MHz and/or 243.0 MHz.

A new generation of ELTs transmit a digital signal on 406 MHz. A 406 MHz beacon is uniquely coded and therefore identifiable to the aircraft in which it is installed. A 406 MHz beacon transmits for about half a second every 55 seconds. A 121.5 MHz beacon transmits continuously.

The ELTs in use in general aviation aircraft contain a crash activation sensor (G-switch) which is designed to detect the abnormal deceleration characteristics of a crash and automatically activate the transmitter. They are constructed to survive that crash and to transmit a signal for at least 48 hours at a wide range of ambient temperatures. The ELT is activated if subjected to a force of 5 G's to 7 G's for 11 milliseconds.

Most aircraft are required to have an approved ELT installed. Those exempted are aircraft which operate only within 25 miles of their home airport, multi-engine and jet aeroplanes that operate only in controlled airspace, gliders, airships, balloons, ultralight aeroplanes and gyroplanes.

The ELT has been proven to reduce significantly the time necessary to locate a downed aircraft, thus substantially improving the chances of survival of injured crew and passengers. Do not assume that the automatic activation feature has worked. Ensure that the ELT is indeed sending a signal. Turn the switch to ON. To improve your chances of being located as soon as possible, do not delay turning on the ELT until your flight planned time expires. Such a delay will only delay rescue. Do not cycle the ELT through OFF and ON positions in an attempt to preserve battery life, as irregular operation reduces localization accuracy and will hamper homing

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

efforts. Once the ELT is turned on, leave it on until you have been positively located and have been directed to turn it off by the SAR forces.

A system of orbiting geostationary satellites (COSPAS/SARSAT) is used to detect and locate 406 MHz ELT signals. The system is very efficient. In many cases, a downed aircraft has been located before it was reported missing. The COSPAS/SARSAT satellite can pick up the signal anytime and relays the information to the search and rescue (SAR) aircraft. The SAR aircraft home on the signal to find you. In contrast to 406 MHz ELTs, 121.5 MHz ELTs are no longer monitored by satellite-based tracking systems. Only ground stations and specialized SAR aircraft can pick up 121.5 MHz ELT signals.

406 MHz beacons have superior performance capabilities over 121.5 MHz transmitters. They transmit a stronger signal, are more accurate, verifiable and traceable. Their signals can be accurately detected within a matter of minutes whereas 121.5 MHz signal detction can take upwards of 90 minutes. 406 MHz signals can be pinpointed from 5 kilometers down to within 100 meters of the signal's location. 406 MHz units provide global coverage; 121.5 MHz units provide regional coverage. If an aircraft is equipped with one or more ELTs capable of broadcasting on the frequency of 406 MHz, each ELT must be registered with (in Canada) the Canadian Beacon Registry of the National Search and Rescue Secretariat. Otherwise, they must be registered with the appropriate authority of the country identified in the coded message transmitted by the ELT.

121.5 MHz ELT signals are effective only in line-of-sight. For best range, the ELT transmitter should be placed as high as possible on a level surface with no obstructions between it and the horizon. The antenna should be vertical.

As well as the type of ELT that is installed in the aeroplane and is activated automatically by the impact of a crash landing, there is also a portable hand held type of ELT that is operated manually. Installation of the former type is mandatory but many pilots feel that having the portable ELT aboard as well is an extra precaution.

The ELT will only do its job if it has been "armed". The transmitter has a three position switch — ON, OFF and ARMED. Arming the ELT should be part of the preflight check. Turning it off should be part of post-flight shutdown procedures.

If you have landed because of bad weather or for some other non-emergency reason and no emergency exists, do not activate your ELT. If, however, the delay will extend more than one hour beyond your flight plan or more than 24 hours past your flight itinerary or beyond your specified SAR time, you will be reported overdue and a search will be initiated. To avoid an unnecessary search, you should notify the nearest ATS unit of your changed flight plan. If you cannot contact an ATS unit, attempt to contact another aircraft on one of the following frequencies in order to have that aircraft relay the information to ATS: 126.7 MHz, a local common frequency, 121.5 MHZ or 5,680 kHz.

There are five categories of ELT.

1. Type A or AD — **Automatic ejectable or automatic deployable** automatically eject from the aircraft and are set in operation by inertia sensors when the aircraft is subjected to a crash deceleration.
2. Type F or AF — **Fixed (not ejectable) or automatic fixed** are automatically set in operation by an inertia switch when the aircraft is subjected to crash deceleration forces. The transmitter can be manually activated or deactivated. Provision is also made for recharging the batteries. An additional antenna may be provided for portable use of the ELT. Most general aviation aircraft use this type of ELT.
3. Type AP — **Automatic portable** is similar to type F except that the antenna is integral to the unit for portable operation.
4. Type P — **Personnel** has no fixed mounting and does not transmit automatically. A manual switch is used to start or stop the transmitter.
5. Type W or S — **Water activated or survival** transmits automatically when immersed in water. It is waterproof, floats and operates on the surface of the water. It has no fixed mounting. It should be tethered to survivors or liferafts.

Inadvertent activation of ELTs has been a problem and it is recommended that all pilots operating aircraft with this equipment installed listen on the ELT frequency (121.5 MHz) immediately after arming the ELT and again immediately prior to shutdown to ensure that it is not transmitting. The battery must be disconnected whenever the ELT is removed from the aeroplane for servicing. Any accidental activation of the ELT should be reported immediately to the nearest ATS unit.

The ELT is a battery operated transmitter. Pilots must bear in mind that the battery must be replaced at or about the expiration date marked on the battery. Only approved batteries may be used. ELTs also require an annual recertification to assure that, in a crash situation, they will transmit a signal which will be picked up by the COSPAS/SARSAT satellite. An ELT signal, which is off frequency or low power, could be missed by COSPAS/SARSAT. The satellite requires a coherent signal to develop the position of a crashed aircraft.

Testing of a 121.5 MHz ELT may be carried out in the first 5 minutes of any hour UTC. A maximum 3 audio sweeps taking about 2 seconds is all that is necessary to determine that the ELT is in good operating condition. In no case should the testing take longer than 5 seconds. Longer testing can result in false alarms being registered with ATC.

Testing of a 406 MHz ELT should be carried out in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions only. Given that 406 MHz ELT digital signals are detected almost immediately by COSPAS/SARSAT satellites, selection of the ON position for more than 50 seconds will result in the signal being interpreted as a real emergency. 406 MHz ELTs are equipped with integral self-test functionality. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when carrying out self-tests, and when interpreting the results.

Any accidental activation of the ELT should be reported to the nearest ATC unit giving the location of the transmitter and the time and duration of the accidental transmission, in order to forestall an unnecessary search activity.

It is the pilot's responsibility to ensure that all passengers and crew know the location of the ELT and how to operate it. There must be a placard in the aircraft cabin giving this information.

Commercially available 406 MHz ELTs inlcude an integrated 121.5 MHz transmitter to allow for an additional means of homing in on a downed aircraft. In Canada, all Canadian aircraft that are required to have ELTs must be equipped with a digital ELT capable of broadcasting simultaneously on frequencies of 406 MHz and 121.5 MHz.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

5 General Airmanship

airmanship/ *n.* **1 a** the proficiency in the handling and operating of aeroplanes on the ground and in the air. **b** conversant in the capabilities of an aeroplane. **2** understanding of the necessity and care in the execution of keeping an aeroplane in airworthy conditions. **3 a** knowing how to deal with aeroplane emergencies. **b** knowing how to fly safely.

Overview of Part 5

10 Airmanship

10.1 Care of the Aeroplane 281
10.1.1 Aeroplane Cleanliness 281
10.1.2 Ground Handling of the Aeroplane 282
10.1.3 Picketing an Aeroplane Outdoors 282
10.1.4 Refuelling 282
10.1.5 Winter Operations 283
10.1.6 Critical Surface Contamination 284

10.2 Weight & Balance 286
10.2.1 Weight 286
10.2.2 Balance Limits 288
10.2.3 Weight Shift 290
10.2.4 Weight & Balance & Flight Performance 290

10.3 Aeroplane Performance 291
10.3.1 Effect of Temperature & Altitude on Aeroplane Performance 291
10.3.2 Take-Off Performance Charts 292
10.3.3 Climb Performance Charts 293
10.3.4 Cruise Performance Charts 294
10.3.5 Landing Performance Charts 294
10.3.6 Landings & Take-Offs at Unimproved Airstrips 296
10.3.7 Tailwind Landings 297
10.3.8 Crosswind Landings & Take-Offs 297
10.3.9 Taxiing 298
10.3.10 Cruising Speeds 298
10.3.11 Use of Performance Charts 299

10.4 Wake Turbulence 299
10.4.1 Wake Turbulence Avoidance 300
10.4.2 Jet Blast Hazard 301

10.5 Flight Preparations 302
10.5.1 Preparation for a Flight 302
10.5.2 Pilot's Inspection Prior to Flight 305
10.5.3 Cockpit Check Prior to Flight 307
10.5.4 Take-Off Procedure 308
10.5.5 En Route Procedure 309
10.5.6 Landing Procedure 310
10.5.7 Braking Technique 310
10.5.8 Landing Errors 311
10.5.9 Hydroplaning 313
10.5.10 Go-Around/Overshoot 313
10.5.11 Wind Shear 314
10.5.12 Ground Effect 314
10.5.13 Gust Conditions 315
10.5.14 Low Flying 315
10.5.15 Visibility in Rain 316
10.5.16 Flight in Volcanic Ash 316
10.5.17 Flying the Laminar Flow Airfoil 316
10.5.18 Mid-Air Collision Hazard 316
10.5.19 Practicing Good Airmanship 318

10.6 Emergency Procedures 319
10.6.1 Engine Failure on Take-Off 319
10.6.2 Unlatched Door in Flight 319
10.6.3 Action in the Event of Fire 319
10.6.4 Distress Signals 320
10.6.5 Forced Landing 320
10.6.6 Precautionary Landing 322
10.6.7 Emergency Landing Precautions 322
10.6.8 Activating a Ballistic Recovery System 323
10.6.9 Radar Assistance 324

10.7 Remote Area Flying: Having "Bush Sense" 324
10.7.1 Backcountry Flying 325
10.7.2 Seaplanes 326
10.7.3 Skiplanes 327
10.7.4 External Loads 328
10.7.5 Equipment to Carry On Board 328

10.8 STOL Aircraft 329

10.9 Ultralights 330

10.10 Gliders 331

11 Human Factors

11.1 Physical Factors 333
11.1.1 General Health 333
11.1.2 Hypoxia 333
11.1.3 Ozone Sickness 334
11.1.4 Carbon Monoxide 334
11.1.5 Hyperventilation 335
11.1.6 Decompression Sickness 335
11.1.7 Vision 337
11.1.8 Noise, Vibration & Temperature 338
11.1.9 Sensory Illusions 339
11.1.10 Alcohol 340
11.1.11 Drugs 341
11.1.12 Blood Donations 341
11.1.13 Fatigue 342
11.1.14 Pregnancy 342
11.1.15 Eating 342
11.1.16 Stress 342
11.1.17 Panic 343
11.1.18 Physical Fitness 343

11.2 Psychosocial Factors 343
11.2.1 Pilot Decision Making 343
11.2.2 Human Factors 345

12 Air Safety

12.1 State of Mind 349

12.2 Checklists for Safety 349
12.2.1 Checklist for Safe VFR Flight 349
12.2.2 Make These Resolutions 350
12.2.3 Obey These 12 Important Rules 351
12.2.4 Do's & Don'ts for Safe Flight 352
12.2.5 Principles of Safe Take-Off 352
12.2.6 Principles of Safe Landing 353
12.2.7 I'M SAFE Checklist 354

12.3 Ensuring Safe Outcomes 354
12.3.1 Seatbelts & Shoulder Harnesses 354
12.3.2 Airbag Restraint Systems 354
12.3.3 Flight Helmets 355
12.3.4 Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detectors 355

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

10 Airmanship

Airmanship is proficiency in the handling and operating of aeroplanes on the ground and in the air. It involves understanding of the necessity and care in the execution of keeping an aeroplane in airworthy condition. A proficient pilot is fully conversant with the capabilities of the aeroplane and understands and regularly refers to the flight performance charts in the Pilot's Operating Handbook. The pilot understands the principle of weight and balance and knows how to load an aeroplane properly. He/she knows how to plan and carry out a cross-country flight proficiently, how to avoid wake turbulence, how to make good landings, how to deal with emergencies, etc. This chapter is designed to introduce pilots to the concepts involved in good airmanship and whet their appetite to seek further information and experience in broadening their proficiency as pilots.

10.1 Care of the Aeroplane

The wise pilot carefully and systematically supervises the inspection, maintenance, and servicing of his/her aeroplane. Aeroplane mechanics are, on the whole, more precise, painstaking and conscientious about their work than is the average pilot. They are, however, only human and as such are not infallible. They could forget to clean the filter or fit a split-pin, or ground the airframe while refuelling. It pays a pilot to check every detail him/herself before taking an aeroplane off the line.

10.1.1 Aeroplane Cleanliness

Dirt covers defects, making them more difficult to detect. Dirt also increases skin friction, detracting from the performance of the aeroplane.

Dead insects commonly found on the leading edge of wings and propeller blades cause drag and should be removed to assure maximum aerodynamic efficiency. This is a sensitive area and should be extremely smooth at all times if the manufacturer's performance figures are to be realized. (The manufacturer obtained the performance calculations in a clean aeroplane). Therefore, keeping an aeroplane clean is very important.

External Airframe

For washing aeroplanes, use mild detergent soaps and water. Linseed soap is an approved soap for fabric covered aeroplanes and, when properly used (after the surface is dry, rub down with a soft dry cloth as if to shine), it has the advantage of leaving a thin film which makes the surface slippery and thereby helps to reduce drag. Remove mud with water. Never use gasoline as a cleaning fluid.

Be sure that the drain grommets located at the lowest points in the wings, fuselage and control surfaces are not clogged with dirt or foreign matter. If these are clogged, water is prevented from draining away; moisture left sitting in the interior of the airframe tends to start corrosion and rot. Ventilation, especially important in wood and fabric structures, will also be hampered if the drain grommets are clogged.

Varsol is the approved cleaning fluid for removing oil and grease from engines, fire walls, cowlings and all external metal surfaces including the underside of the fuselage which is most susceptible to collecting grime. Aircraft constructed of composite materials should be kept clean using solutions recommended by the manufacturer.

Metal aeroplanes are susceptible to corrosion and must be kept scrupulously clean to prevent corrosion. Cleaning agents which do not contain abrasive compounds should be used. Wax applied to metal surfaces prevents oxidation and reduces the amount of cleaning and polishing required

Visibility is much better through a clean windshield than through a dirty one. The windshield should always first be washed with clean water using the bare hands to loosen accumulated dirt. Then polish with special non-abrasive liquid cleaners made especially for this purpose. Clean the inside of the windshield as well.

Make certain that the cool air inlets are open and free of foreign objects. In the spring of the year especially, it may be necessary to cover these openings while the aeroplane is parked outdoors to prevent birds from building nests in the engine.

Interior

Dirt and dust in the fuselage increase weight and add to the fire hazard.

Keep the interior of the cabin and fuselage free of dirt and foreign material. Use a vacuum cleaner on floor areas. Be extremely careful when cleaning upholstery as it may have been treated with fire resistant chemicals and this protection should not be removed; follow the manufacturer's recommendations.

Spilled acids, chemicals, fire extinguisher fluids, etc., should be reported as they could cause corrosion and weakness of the structure.

Dirt falling beneath the floor where control pulleys and connections are located can cause wear of the bearing surfaces and lead to incorrect operation. Dirt and dust may also interfere with proper operation of electrical switches.

Propellers

Propellers should be kept clean. As these are rotating airfoil sections, what applies to wing cleanliness applies also to them. They should be kept clean of dead insects, grass and dirt. A clean and waxed propeller will actually produce a higher rpm at full power settings than one that is dirty. A propeller constructed of composite material will require different cleaning methods than those used on metal propellers. Always refer to the Owner's Manual for the manufacturer's recommendations.

Carburetor Air Filter

Inclined to be overlooked by pilots between scheduled maintenance inspections is the condition of the carburetor air filter. It should be kept clean of bugs, plant seeds, dust and dirt at all times. One of the most frequent causes of premature engine wear is a dirty air filter. Constant attention to the cleanliness of this part will assure many additional hours of running before an engine overhaul becomes necessary.

Exhaust Heaters

Cabin heaters which obtain heat from the exhaust system should be inspected at frequent intervals for leaks which might allow carbon monoxide fumes to enter the cabin.

10.1.2 Ground Handling of the Aeroplane

Tricycle geared aeroplanes are most easily and safely maneuvered, during ground handling, by the use of a tow-bar attached to the nosewheel; therefore, it is recommended that one be used whenever possible. When moving tricycle geared aeroplanes by hand when no tow-bar is available, push down on the fuselage at the point where the stabilizer attaches to the fuselage in order to raise the nosewheel. The aeroplane can then be turned by pivoting it about the main gear.

On both tailwheel and tricycle geared aeroplanes, when moving a high wing aeroplane forward or backward by hand, push at the wing strut root fitting or at the main landing gear strut. Low wing aeroplanes are most easily pushed backwards by hand by pushing against the leading edge of the wing; the wing tips may be used to help maneuver the aeroplane.

Under no circumstances should an aeroplane be moved by pulling or pushing on the propeller blades. This action imposes unnecessary stress on the propeller blade, but, more importantly, there is always the danger of serious injury if the propeller is alive.

Fig. 10.1 **Picketing an Aeroplane in the Open**

10.1.3 Picketing an Aeroplane Outdoors

1. Park the aeroplane in a sheltered location, such as behind a row of trees or buildings. (However, parking beside a building is not recommended in winter since ice falling from the roof could damage the aeroplane.)
2. Head the aeroplane into the prevailing wind.
3. Use external control locks to hold the ailerons, flaps, elevators and rudder in the neutral position to prevent damage occurring to control surfaces. (Cockpit control surface locks are not recommended for continuous outdoor storage as gusts can still exert pressure on the various control surfaces and stretching of the control wires will result.)
4. Place chocks behind and in front of all wheels.
5. Fasten ropes to appropriate places on the wings and fasten them to weights buried in the ground. Stakes, pegs or corkscrews are not recommended. If the ground becomes saturated with rain, these will easily pull out.
6. Cover the engine and cabin with a tarpaulin, polyethylene, or canvas, etc.to prevent dust from entering the engine where it might cause excessive wear and to prevent birds from building nests, etc. The covering over the cabin will prevent rain from entering and causing corrosion and general deterioration. Cover the pilot pressure source (pitot tube).
7. In very cold weather, drain the oil into a clean container while it is still warm.
8. Place a spoiler spanwise over the top of the wing about 20% back from the leading edge. Such a spoiler will prevent lift from being developed. A 2 x 4 piece of lumber held in place by a light rope looped around the wing chordwise is an effective spoiler.

10.1.4 Refuelling

Always ground the aeroplane and the hose nozzle when refuelling, owing to the danger of fire from static electricity. Static electricity builds up in aircraft simply as a consequence of moving through the air. After landing, the charge cannot dissipate to ground because of the insulating effect of the rubber tires. In order to dissipate this electrical charge and prevent the generation of a spark that could ignite fuel vapour into a fireball, it is required procedure to properly ground the aircraft before refuelling begins. The grounding wire should be attached to some part of the aircraft; usually the landing gear is selected.

The hose nozzle should make metal to metal contact with the filler neck of the fuel tank that is being filled. Although grounding of the aircraft is important at any time, it is especially important in very cold temperatures which are more favourable to the generation of static electricity.

Static free clothing should be worn at all times when working around aeroplanes in order to reduce the possibility of fire. Nylon and other synthetics are very susceptible to the generation of static electricity.

Plastic containers, funnels or other devices of non-conductive material should not be used for the transfer of fuel to an aeroplane.

Be sure that the proper type of fuel is used in refuelling your aeroplane. Only fuel of the type and octane rating specified by the engine manufacturer should be used. Be especially conscientious in checking the fuel supply if you use jet fuel which is colourless. Two grades of fuel, each with its own distinctive colour, will become colourless when mixed together. Water also is colourless.

Tanks should be filled immediately after flying. Water vapour in the air in an empty or partially filled tank will condense and cause water contamination of the fuel.

All aviation fuels absorb moisture from the air and contain water in both suspended and liquid form. The water in liquid form, being heavier than the fuel, will settle to the bottom of the tank. This water **must** be removed from the tank. During the inspection prior to flight, a reasonable quantity of fuel should be drawn from the lowest point of the fuel system into a glass container. Any water in the sample will settle to the bottom where it can be readily detected. Uncontaminated fuel has an inherent brilliance and will sparkle in the presence of light. Water or fine dirt particles will make the fuel appear cloudy or hazy.

If there is any suspicion of serious water contamination of the aeroplane fuel system, the entire system should be thoroughly checked.

The water that exists in the fuel in suspended form does not ordinarily cause problems. It passes harmlessly through the system and evaporates in the heat of the combustion process. However, in very cold weather, any water in the fuel, including the minute particles in suspension, may freeze into ice

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

crystals that can block fuel lines and filters. A de-icing additive usually prevents this problem but it is important to use only an additive that is recommended by the engine manufacturer. A drop in engine power or in fuel consumption or rough running of the engine are signs of fuel icing.

Water is not the only contaminant that might be present in fuel. Sand, dust, rust and microorganisms may also find their way into fuel supplies. Sand and dust can be blown into tanks during refuelling or introduced through unclean refuelling equipment. A fuel nozzle, for example, that is dragged across the ground will likely pick up dirt. Rust may develop in storage tanks and fuel trucks and rust particles could be introduced into the aircraft fuel tanks if the filtering devices of the refuelling system are poorly maintained. Microorganisms tend to occur in unleaded fuels especially and may multiply sufficiently rapidly to cause corrosion in the fuel tank and clog filters and screens. Careful maintenance, proper filtration during refuelling and thorough fuel inspections will prevent the problems caused by these foreign bodies.

Fuel additives to prevent icing and fouling should be used only if they are approved and only in strict compliance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Do not completely fill the tanks with cold fuel if the aeroplane is to be stored in a warm hangar. Aviation gas will expand about 0.5% in volume for a 5°C rise in temperature.

Because of the danger of static electricity and possible fire, refuelling from drums and cans is not advisable. Unfortunately, in some situations, there is no alternative. Proper bonding and grounding connections are very important and tank caps should not be removed until grounding has been done. To be as safe as possible, first ground the aircraft, then attach the funnel to the aircraft by a grounding wire and finally attach the hand-held refuelling container to the funnel by a grounding wire.

When refuelling from a drum, it is important to use a proper filter/water separator with a portable pump bonded to the drum. Never pump fuel from the bottom of a drum. The pump intake pipe should be made shorter than the depth of the drum by approximately one inch. Do not pump fuel from a drum which has just been moved. Let the drum stand for some time to allow water or dirt to settle to the bottom. A chamois lined funnel should be used only in emergency, since the passage of fuel through the chamois increases the possibility of generation of a charge of electricity. Chamois fibres may clog fuel system filters and nozzles. If you are using a chamois as a filtering device, use a chamois of good quality only. Any reduction in the flow through the chamois should be reason to suspect water contamination. Never wring a chamois free of water as this action nullifies the water separation properties of the chamois. After the flight during which the aircraft was refuelled using a chamois or felt lined funnel, the aircraft should be thoroughly checked for a contaminated fuel system.

All fuel filters, sumps, bowls and screens should be regularly inspected and cleaned. During the preflight inspection, check all drain cocks and tank caps to be sure they are properly closed and seated. The condition of fuel tank caps should be especially noted. Deterioration of the cap seal or corrosion of the cap itself or the cap seating area will permit water to enter the fuel tank.

Only oil of the S.A.E. number or grade specified by the engine manufacturer should be used. The manufacturer usually recommends different oils for varying climatic conditions.

Oil should be changed only in accordance with the recommendation of the engine manufacturer.

The oil tank should never be filled to the top. Leave room for the expansion of the oil when it gets hot.

Be alert for possible battery overcharging which may occur due to faulty current/voltage regulator malfunction. Overcharging produces heat that causes plates within the battery to warp and allows destructive acid to leak out and corrode adjacent parts.

10.1.5 Winter Operations

Flying in the wintertime necessitates extra precautions on the part of the pilot. Snow, ice and cold weather create problems that the pilot who flies only in the summer never has to worry about.

Aircraft tied down outside require special attention because of the hazards posed by the build-up of snow and ice on wings and tail surfaces. They are not designed for the stress of heavy loads of snow and ice; they should be removed even if the aircraft is not going to be flown.

When the aircraft is parked outdoors, blowing snow can enter pitot and static pressure sources, fuel tank vents, airscoops, wheel wells and any other uncovered openings and freeze solid causing malfunctions of the parts affected. Engine covers and pitot pressure source covers should be used in winter.

If the drain holes in the airframe are clogged, water that gets inside the structure will be trapped and will freeze. Ice can jam the controls, throw the weight and balance off, crack the airframe and interfere with proper venting. Inspect the drain holes regularly to be sure they are open.

Water in the fuel lines will at any time of year affect engine performance but, during the winter, there is the added risk of the water freezing, blocking the fuel lines and causing engine stoppage. Refuel after each flight to help prevent condensation and, in addition, drain a substantial amount of fuel from the lowest point of the fuel system before each day's flight and after each refuelling. Special care needs to be taken when the temperature hovers around the freezing level. Moisture in the fuel may be present as suspended ice crystals. They will not show up when a contamination drain check is done. If the temperature rises above freezing, these ice crystals may turn to water and, if they exist in sufficient quantity, may cause engine failure.

Since cabin heaters will be in regular use during winter operations, it is essential to ensure that the cabin heater system is free of cracks or holes. In light aircraft, heat to the cabin is produced by engine exhaust. Any failure in this system may result in carbon monoxide entering the cabin. Even small amounts of this dangerous gas affect judgment and flying ability. Large amounts can be lethal. It is essential to carry out a thorough visual inspection of the external parts of the exhaust system as part of the preflight inspection and on a regular basis perform preventative maintenance. It is also good practice to carry out periodic tests for the presence of carbon monoxide.

Regularly check the carburetor heat control to ensure that it is operating properly throughout its entire range. Be sure also that the carburetor temperature gauge is working properly and is giving true indications. It is your ice warning device. During cold weather operations, when checking proper operation of the carburetor hot air control as part of the normal pre-take-off check, allow the engine to run for a few seconds with the heat control in the full ON position to assure that any ice that may have formed in the carburetor Venturi area during taxiing and warm-up will be eliminated.

Control cables should be checked for proper winter tension. Colder temperatures can cause cables to contract, may lower the cable's tension and make the flight controls less effective.

Retractable landing gear and wheels equipped with wheel pants can become clogged by the mixture of ice, slush and mud that is thrown up during landing and taxiing. Be sure the landing gear is clean and capable of spinning freely. Check strut extensions. Oleos should be serviced with nitrogen for winter operations to prevent the formation of ice crystals in the hydraulic fluid. Struts should be wiped with clean hydraulic fluid to remove snow, ice and dirt. Check tires for proper inflation. Extreme cold temperatures may require that they be serviced. It is wise, in the winter, to remove the streamline wheel covers on fixed gear aircraft to prevent an accumulation of slush that may freeze and lock the wheels or brakes. On retractable gear aircraft, the condition of shields, boots and curtains used to protect activating devices and switches must be carefully maintained. During take-off, more slush and mud will be thrown on the landing gear and may freeze solid after the gear is retracted. To prevent this, delay retracting the gear for a moment or so to allow the slipstream to blow off most of the slush.

Taxiways and runways are often icy and slippery in the wintertime. Taxi very slowly and keep lots of distance between you and other aircraft taxiing ahead. Avoid taxiing through puddles. The water that splashes up on the brakes may later freeze. Avoid the use of brakes as much as possible. When the brakes are used during taxi, heat is generated at the wheel hubs, melting any snow or slush that has accumulated there. As the wheels cool while the aeroplane is stopped (awaiting take-off clearance, for example, or to do the take-off check), the moisture in the wheels is likely to freeze and lock the wheels. Even worse is the situation of moisture in the wheels freezing after the aeroplane takes off. At the next landing, the wheels will be frozen and the landing roll may be unusually short.

Above all, do not hurry your preflight inspection because of the discomforts of the cold weather. Be even more thorough than you would normally be. Dress warmly so that you are comfortable enough to take your time.

Be sure that you have carefully studied the handbooks pertaining to your aeroplane, understand all the systems of the aeroplane and know the recommended winter operation procedures.

It is important to conduct your preflight planning with care, so that your flight can be carried out safely within the limitations of both the weather and your abilities as a pilot. Winter operations mean fewer hours of daylight, snow showers that completely and suddenly obscure the terrain, whiteout conditions, icy runways, etc. Do not fly in icing conditions if you have no de-icing equipment. Even light freezing drizzle will quickly spread a cover of ice over the windshield and side windows, producing instrument conditions inside the cockpit.

In planning any winter flight, it is wise to be prepared for the worst conditions that winter can bring.

Winter cold is just as hard on the human body as it is on the aeroplane. Proper warm winter clothing, including warm boots, gloves and hats, should be worn by all crew members and passengers. Several layers of loose clothing provide more warmth than one bulky layer. Clothing should be kept as clean and dry as possible to be most effective. The clothing worn for an aeroplane flight in the winter should be adequate to keep you warm in the event of a forced landing, not just to keep you comfortable during the flight. The survival kit should be designed for the worst combination of terrain, temperature and precipitation that may be encountered. THINK SURVIVAL! You want to be able to survive the environment after surviving the crash.

Special procedures for the operation of the engine in cold weather have been discussed in the Chapter **Aero Engines**.

Directional control is difficult on an icy runway during take-off, especially in a crosswind situation. Stopping distances, in the event of an aborted take-off, will increase. Acceleration is reduced on snow and slush covered runways. There are limits to the depth of slush that can be tolerated. Consult your Pilot's Operating Handbook for limits for your aircraft.

During landing, it is important to establish a good crosswind correction and stabilize your approach so that you are properly lined up with the runway centreline. Landing with crab or off centre will aggravate control problems on an icy runway. Touchdown should be made at low speed so that deceleration can be accomplished without use of brakes and within the available runway. Reliable information about the current conditions of the runway at your destination (plowing, ice cover, slush) should be obtained before even contemplating the flight.

10.1.6 Critical Surface Contamination

An accumulation of frost, snow or ice on the wings or other horizontal surfaces will substantially alter the lifting characteristics of the airfoil. Even a very light layer of frost will sufficiently alter the lifting characteristics of the airfoil that the aeroplane's take-off capabilities will be substantially affected. The roughness of the frost covered surface spoils the smooth flow of air over the airfoil, separates the vital boundary layer and causes an increase in stall speed and a decrease in the stall angle of attack. Tests have shown that frost on the wings of a conventional light aeroplane has increased the stalling speed by at least 5 to 10% and even as much as 30% and the take-off distance by as much as 100%. In one test, a ski-equipped STOL aeroplane with frost on the wings could not reach a speed at which it could take off even though a large lake was available for the take-off run.

If frost can cause so much trouble, ice is worse. It is possible for the stalling speed of an ice contaminated aeroplane to be increased to such a degree that the aeroplane cannot reach sufficient speed to achieve take-off or, if having achieved take-off, to maintain flight. The aeroplane is very likely to stall as soon as it flies out of ground effect. Ice contamination severely affects the flight characteristics of all aeroplanes. In addition to adding significantly to the weight of the aeroplane, it changes horizontal stabilizer forces, upsetting the aerodynamic balance and centre of gravity location. The turbulent airflow over the ice contaminated wing means that the aeroplane will stall at a higher airspeed and at a lower angle of attack. Lateral control of the aircraft deteriorates requiring

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

larger and larger control wheel deflections to maintain stable flight. Ice and snow on the airfoils can also cause flutter that may result in deformation of wing or aileron structures.

It is, therefore, absolutely critical that all frost, snow and ice be removed from critical surfaces before take-off. Critical surfaces are defined as wings, control surfaces, rotors, propellers, horizontal stabilizers, vertical stabilizers or any other stabilizing surfaces of an aircraft and, in the case of an aircraft with rear-mounted engines, the upper surface of the fuselage.

Never assume that snow will blow off. Snow can actually change to ice during the take-off run. Always clean off any accumulation and be sure the wings are clean before getting underway. Pay special attention to the hinge areas of flaps and control surfaces. Small pieces of ice can restrict their movement and prevent full travel. Wing covers are a good investment for aeroplanes that operate regularly during the winter.

Under the right conditions, ice can form very rapidly, completely coating the aeroplane with a thick covering in a matter of minutes.

Clear ice may form on the upper surface of the wing over the fuel tank after prolonged flight at below freezing temperatures. Rain striking the wing over the cold fuel tank will turn to a sheet of clear ice that is so transparent that it is hard to detect. The refuelling process, if the fuel is warm, can melt snow or ice on the wings that will later refreeze or, if the fuel is cold, can cause moisture to freeze.

In icing conditions, you cannot rely on the stall warning systems to give a warning of an impending stall. These devices are calibrated to perform under clean wing conditions and do not recognize the degraded performance of a contaminated wing.

If the aircraft does not have any de-icing or anti-icing capability, flight through known icing conditions must be scrupulously avoided.

There are a number of major factors that contribute to critical surface contamination and a knowledgeable pilot will recognize them as indicators of an icing condition.

Ambient temperature provides a good indication of the potential for icing conditions.

Aircraft surface temperature indicates the susceptibility of the aircraft to icing. Aircraft surface temperature is affected by solar radiation. An aircraft will have a warmer surface temperature on a sunny day than on an overcast day with identical ambient temperatures. When the fuel in a wing fuel tank is very cold, the cold fuel in the tanks can so chill the aluminum wing surface that moisture in humid air or rain will turn to frost or ice over the fuel tank (cold soaking).

Precipitation type and rate are important factors to consider. Dry snow tends not to stick to aircraft surfaces whereas wet snow will adhere and build up rapidly. Freezing rain combined with snow creates slush. Heavy precipitation is potentially more critical than precipitation falling at a light rate.

Relative humidity must be considered. Very moist air in combination with cold air temperatures and cold aircraft surface temperatures can give icing conditions even on a clear sunny day.

Wind direction and velocity are critical considerations. North winds are cold and dry but south winds are usually moist. High winds will blow snow onto a parked aircraft.

Operation in close proximity to other aircraft must not be overlooked. The exhaust or prop wash from other aircraft can blow snow or slush onto your aircraft or can cause snow on your aircraft to melt and then later freeze as ice. Don't follow too closely behind another aircraft when taxiing to take-off position.

Operation on snowy, slushy or wet surfaces increases the possibility that contaminants will be splashed onto the wings, flaps and control surfaces. It is important to remember that contaminants on the underside of wings are as degrading to performance as contaminants on the upper surface. Keep taxi speeds slow to reduce the possibility of splashing snow and slush onto your aircraft.

Aircraft configuration and surface roughness must be considered. Aircraft collect snow, slush, freezing rain and ice on any exposed surface or angle. Smooth surfaces don't collect as much contamination as do rougher surfaces. However, a smooth surface sometimes gives the appearance of being wet when it, in fact, is covered in clear ice.

Be alert to the conditions that cause icing even before going out to your aircraft. Get a thorough weather briefing and the most up-to-date forecast so that you are aware of temperatures and precipitation at your stops and en route.

Ice and snow not only affect the lifting surfaces. They can clog and close off vital openings, such as the pitot and static pressure sources of the pitot-static system, rendering the airspeed, altimeter and vertical speed useless. Clogged fuel breather vents will prevent the free flow of fuel. Gyroscopic instruments powered by a Venturi would be affected by ice building up on the Venturi throat. Ice on antennas impedes radio reception.

See also **Snow**, **Frost** and **Ice** in Section **Stall** in Chapter **Theory of Flight** and **Icing** in Chapter **Aviation Weather**.

De-Icing

Examine your aircraft very carefully prior to flight. Use your eyes and hands to examine the surfaces to ensure that your aircraft is "clean" before departing on a flight. Have the aircraft de-iced by ground crews if there is any contamination.

The de-icing process is intended to restore the aircraft to a clean configuration so that there is no degradation of the aerodynamic characteristics nor mechanical interference with moving parts, antennas, sensors, etc.

There are several suitable methods to de-ice an aircraft. It may be parked in a heated hangar until all the contamination has melted. Wing covers and other temporary shelters will reduce the amount of contamination and the time required to de-ice the aircraft. Light, dry snow can be removed with a broom. Light frost can be rubbed off using a rope sawed across the contaminated area.

De-icing is most commonly accomplished, especially on larger aircraft, using heated solutions of water and FPD (freezing point depressant) fluids. These fluids lower the freezing point of water in the liquid or crystal (ice) phase. De-icing is often followed by anti-icing using cold, rich solutions with a very low freezing point. The anti-icing solution is relatively thick and forms a protective layer over the aircraft that impedes the formation of ice, snow and frost. De-icing and anti-icing fluids should not be used unless approved by the aircraft manufacturer.

The FPD fluids used to de-ice aircraft in North America are usually composed of ethylene glycol or propylene glycol

combined with water and other fluids. They should not be used in an undiluted state. Ethylene glycol has a much higher freezing point in its pure state than when diluted with water and may freeze when exposed to slight temperature decreases associated with cold-soaked fuels in wing tanks, reduction of solar radiation by clouds obscuring the sun, wind effects and lowered temperature during development of wing lift. Pure propylene glycol, being quite viscous, can cause lift reductions.

FPD fluids in concentrated forms should not be applied to pitot and static pressure sources, angle of attack sensors, control surface cavities, cockpit windows, the nose of the fuselage, the lower side of the radome, air inlets or engines.

SAE and ISO Type I fluids are unthickened. They are used for de-icing but provide very limited anti-icing protection.

SAE and ISO Type II fluids contain no less than 50% glycols and have a minimum freeze point of -32°C. They are thickened and thus have the property of adhering to aircraft surfaces until the time of take-off. These fluids are used for de-icing, when heated, and for anti-icing, when used unheated. They are effective anti-icers because of their high viscosity and pseudo-plastic properties. They remain on the wings during ground operations but flow off the wings readily during take-off. SAE and ISO Type II fluids should not be used on aircraft with a rotation speed (VR) of less than 100 knots. Below this speed, some of the fluid may not completely flow away and may cause some degradation of performance.

SAE and ISO Type III is a thickened fluid with properties between Types I and II. It has a longer holdover time than Type I but less than Type II. It is suitable for use on aircraft with a shorter ground roll to rotation and a rotation speed of less than 100 knots.

SAE and ISO Type IV fluids meet the same specifications as the Type II fluids while also having a significantly longer holdover time. They are dyed green so as not to be mistaken for ice.

Temperature buffer is the temperature difference between the freezing point of the fluid being applied and the ambient temperature. Hold-over time is increased with an expansion of the temperature buffer. (It should not be less than 10° for Type I fluids or 3° for Type II fluids, depending on the ambient temperatures.) The maximum buffer is the best choice. However, greater buffers require the use of more glycol which is costly and increase the burden for collection and processing of FPD spillage and run-off. Nevertheless, the maximum buffer provides the greatest margin of safety and reduces the possibility of refreezing of the FPD fluid during take-off, climb and at altitude.

If your aircraft is fitted with anti-icing or de-icing systems, be sure that this equipment is operational before taking off on a flight during which it may be required. Be sure that you know how and when to use it.

10.2 Weight & Balance

You as pilot are responsible for the safe loading of your aeroplane and must ensure that it is not overloaded. The performance of an aeroplane is influenced by its weight and overloading it will cause serious problems. The take-off run necessary to become airborne will be longer. In some cases, the required take-off run may be greater than the available runway. The angle of climb and the rate of climb will be reduced. Maximum ceiling will be lowered and range shortened. Landing speed will be higher and the landing roll longer. In addition, the additional weight may cause structural stresses during maneuvers and turbulence that could lead to damage.

The total gross weight authorized for any particular type of aeroplane must never be exceeded. A pilot must be capable of estimating the proper ratio of fuel, oil and payload permissible for a flight of any given duration. The weight limitations of some general aviation aeroplanes do not allow for all seats to be filled, for the baggage compartment to be filled to capacity and for a full load of fuel as well. It is necessary, in this case, to choose between passengers, baggage and full fuel tanks.

The distribution of weight is also of vital importance since the position of the centre of gravity affects the stability of the aeroplane. In loading an aeroplane, the C.G. must be within the permissible range and remain so during the flight to ensure the stability and maneuverability of the aeroplane during flight.

Aeroplane manufacturers publish Weight & Balance limits for their aeroplanes. This information can be found in two sources:

1. The Aircraft Weight & Balance Report
2. The Aeroplane Flight Manual/Pilot's Operating Handbook

The information in the Pilot's Operating Handbook is general for the particular model of aeroplane.

The information in the Aircraft Weight & Balance Report is particular to a specific aeroplane. The aeroplane with all equipment installed is weighed and the C.G. limits calculated and this information is tabulated on the report which accompanies the aeroplane logbooks. If alterations or modifications are made or additional equipment added to the aeroplane, the weight and balance must be recalculated and a new report prepared.

10.2.1 Weight

Various terms are used in the discussion of the weight of an aeroplane.

Standard empty weight is the weight of the airframe and engine with all standard equipment installed. It also includes the unusable fuel and oil.

Optional or extra equipment is any and all additional instruments, radio equipment, etc. installed but not included as standard equipment, the weight of which is added to the standard empty weight to get the basic empty weight. It also includes fixed ballast, full engine coolant, hydraulic and de-icing fluid.

Basic empty weight is the weight of the aeroplane with all optional equipment included. In most aeroplanes, the manufacturer includes full oil in the basic empty weight.

Useful load (or disposable load) is the difference between gross take-off weight and basic empty weight. It is, in other words, all the load which is removable, which is not permanently part of the aeroplane. It includes the usable fuel, the pilot, crew, passengers, baggage, freight, etc.

Payload is the load available as passengers, baggage, freight, etc., after the weight of pilot, crew, usable fuel have been deducted from the useful load.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Operational empty weight is the basic empty weight of the aeroplane plus the weight of the pilot. It excludes payload and usable fuel.

Usable fuel is the fuel available for flight planning.

Unusable Fuel is the fuel remaining in the tanks after a runout test has been completed in accordance with government regulations.

Operational gross weight is the weight of the aeroplane loaded for take-off. It includes the basic empty weight plus the useful load.

Maximum gross weight is the maximum permissible weight of the aeroplane.

Maximum take-off weight is the maximum weight approved for the start of the take-off run.

Maximum ramp weight is the maximum weight approved for ground maneuvering. It includes the weight of fuel used for start, taxi and run-up.

Passenger weights are the actual passenger weights that must be used in computing the weight of an aeroplane with limited seating capacity. Allowance must be made for heavy winter clothing when such is worn. Winter clothing may add as much as 14 lbs to a person's basic weight; summer clothing would add about 8 lbs.

On larger aeroplanes with quite a number of passenger seats and for which actual passenger weights would not be available, the following average passenger weights may be used. The specified weights for males and females include clothing and carry-on baggage.

Passenger	Summer	Winter
Males (12 yrs & up)	206 lbs / 93.4 kg	212 lbs / 96.2kg
Females (12 yrs & up)	172 lbs / 78.1 kg	178 lbs / 80.7 kg
Children (2-11 yrs)	75 lbs / 34 kg	75 lbs / 34 kg
Infants (up to 2 yrs)	30 lbs / 13.6 kg	30 lbs / 13.6 kg

Fig.10.2 **Passenger Weights**

Fuel and Oil weights can be derived from their respective quantities. The Pilot's Operating Handbook for aeroplanes of U.S. manufacture give fuel and oil quantities in U.S. gallons. Canadian manufactured aeroplanes of older vintage may have manuals that give fuel and oil quantities in Imperial gallons. Some recently printed manuals may give fuel and oil quantities in litres. At airports in Canada, fuel is predominantly dispensed in litres. It is therefore necessary to convert from litres to U.S. or Imperial gallons as required for your particular aeroplane.

To convert litres to U.S. gallons, multiply by 0.264178. To convert litres to Imperial gallons, multiply by 0.219975.

The following weights are for average density at the standard air temperature of 15°C. At colder temperatures, the weights increase slightly. For example, at -40°C, one litre of aviation gasoline weighs 1.69 lbs.

	Litre	U.S. Gallon	Imp. Gallon
Av. Gas	1.59 lb.	6.0 lb.	7.20 lb.
J.P.4	1.77 lb.	6.6 lb.	8.01 lb.
Kerosene	1.85 lb.	7.0 lb.	8.39 lb.
Oil (65)	1.95 lb.	7.5 lb.	8.85 lb.

Fig.10.3 **Fuel & Oil Weights**

Maximum landing weight is the maximum weight approved for landing touchdown. Most multi-engine aeroplanes which operate over long stage lengths consume a considerable weight of fuel. As a result, their weight is appreciably less on landing than at take-off. Designers take advantage of this condition to stress the aeroplane for lighter landing loads, thus saving structural weight. If the flight has been of short duration, fuel or payload may have to be jettisoned to reduce the gross weight to maximum landing weight.

Maximum weight — zero fuel is the weight of the aeroplane exclusive of usable fuel, but including useful load. Some manufacturers designate this weight for structural reasons. Transport planes carry fuel in their wings, the weight of which relieves the bending moments imposed on the wings by the lift. The maximum weight — zero fuel, limits the load which may be carried in the fuselage. Any increase in weight in the form of load carried in the fuselage must be counterbalanced by adding weight in the form of fuel in the wings.

Float buoyancy is the maximum permissible gross weight of a seaplane and is governed by the buoyancy of the floats. The buoyancy of a seaplane float is equal to the weight of water displaced by the immersed part of the float. This is equal to the weight the float will support without sinking beyond a predetermined level (draught line).

The buoyancy of a seaplane float is designated by its model number. A 4580 float has a buoyancy of 4,580 lbs. A seaplane fitted with a pair of 4580 floats has a buoyancy of 9,160 lbs.

Regulations require an 80% reserve float buoyancy. The floats must, therefore, have a buoyancy equal to 180% of the weight of the aeroplane.

To find the maximum gross weight of a seaplane fitted with, say 7170 model floats, multiply the float buoyancy by 2 and divide by 1.8.(7,170 x 2) ÷ 1.8 = 7,966 lb.

Computing the Load

A typical light aeroplane has a basic weight of 1,008 lb. and an authorized maximum gross weight of 1,600 lb. An acceptable loading of this aeroplane would be as follows:

Basic Empty Weight		1,008 lb.
	Consisting of	Empty Weight. . . . . 973 lb.
		Oil . . . . . 15 lb.
		Extra Equipment . . . . . 20 lb.
Useful Load		592 lb.
	Consisting of	Pilot. . . . . 150 lb.
		Fuel. . . . . 146 lb.
		Payload: Passenger . . . . . 175 lb.
		Baggage . . . . . 121 lb.

SAMPLE PROBLEM

To find the maximum payload that can be transported a given distance and the amount of fuel required.

A seaplane on contract with a mining company is required to transport a maximum load of freight a distance of 300 nautical miles to a bush operation. The estimated groundspeed is 110 knots. The useful load for this aeroplane is 1,836 pounds. Fuel capacity is 86 U.S. gallons. Fuel consumption is 20 gallons per hour or 120 lb of fuel per hour.

The time to fly 300 nautical miles is 164 minutes (300 ÷ 110 x 60). Add to that the 45 minutes required for reserve and the amount of fuel required must be sufficient for 209 minutes of flying time.

The amount of fuel required at 20 gallons per hour is 69.7 U.S. gallons (20 ÷ 60 x 209). That quantity of fuel weighs 418 lb. (69.7 x 6 lb.).

The fuel calculations can also be computed by using the weight of fuel consumed per hour. The weight of fuel necessary for the flight is 418 lb. (120 ÷ 60 x 209).

The useful load is 1,836 lb. The weight of the pilot (170 lb.) and fuel (418 lb.) is 588 lb. Therefore, the maximum payload permissible is 1,248 lb.

What quantity of fuel in litres will be required? One U.S. gallon equals 3.785332 litres. The quantity of fuel required is, therefore, 263.8 litres (69.7 x 3.785332). (See **Conversion Tables**.)

10.2.2 Balance Limits

The position of the centre of gravity along its longitudinal axis affects the stability of the aeroplane. There are forward and aft limits established by the aircraft design engineers beyond which the C.G. should not be located for flight. These limits are set to assure that sufficient elevator deflection is available for all phases of flight.

If the C.G. is too far forward, the aeroplane will be nose heavy, if too far aft, tail heavy. An aeroplane whose centre of gravity is too far aft may be dangerously unstable and will possess abnormal stall and spin characteristics. Recovery may be difficult if not impossible because the pilot is running out of elevator control. It is, therefore, the pilot's responsibility when loading an aeroplane to see that the C.G. lies within the recommended limits.

Usually the Aeroplane Owner's Manual lists a separate weight limitation for the baggage compartment in addition to the gross weight limitation of the whole aeroplane. This is a factor to which the pilot must pay close attention, for overloading the baggage compartment (even if the aeroplane itself is not overloaded) may move the C.G. too far aft and affect longitudinal control.

The Aeroplane Owner's Manual may also specify such things as the seat to be occupied in solo flight (in a tandem seating arrangement) or which fuel tank is to be emptied first. Such instructions should be carefully complied with.

As the flight of the aeroplane progresses and fuel is consumed, the weight of the aeroplane decreases. Its distribution of weight also changes and hence the C.G. changes. The pilot must take into account this situation and calculate the weight and balance not only for the beginning of the flight but also for the end of it.

Definitions

The centre of gravity (C.G.) is the point through which the weights of all the various parts of an aeroplane pass. It is, in effect, the imaginary point from which the aeroplane could be suspended and remain balanced. The C.G. can move within certain limits without upsetting the balance of the aeroplane. The distance between the forward and aft C.G. limits is called the centre of gravity range.

The balance datum line is a suitable line selected arbitrarily by the manufacturer from which horizontal distances are measured for balance purposes. It may be the nose of the aeroplane, the fire wall or any other convenient point (see Fig.10.4).

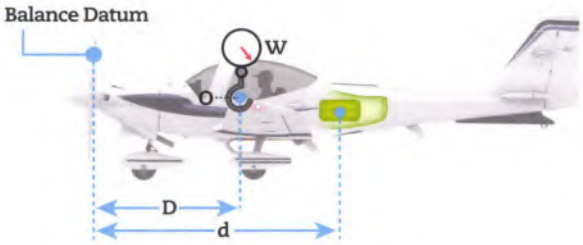


Fig.10.4 **Balance**

The moment arm (D in Fig.10.4) is the horizontal distance in inches from the balance datum line to the C.G. (O in Fig.10.4). The distance from the balance datum line to any item, such as a passenger, cargo, fuel tank, etc. is the arm of that item (d in Fig.10.4).

The balance moment of the aeroplane is determined by multiplying the weight of the aeroplane by the moment arm of the aeroplane. It is expressed in inch pounds. The balance moment of any item is the weight of that item multiplied by its distance from the balance datum line. It is, therefore, obvious that a heavy object loaded in a rearward position will have a much greater balance moment than the same object loaded in a position nearer to the balance datum line.

The moment index is the balance moment of any item or of the total aeroplane divided by a constant such as 100, 1,000, or 10,000. It is used to simplify computations of weight and balance especially on large aeroplanes where heavy items and long arms result in large unmanageable numbers.

If loads are forward of the balance datum line their moment arms are usually considered negative (-). Loads behind the balance datum line are considered positive (+). (In many cases the positive sign is omitted, but the negative sign is always shown. To simplify matters, both are included in our examples). The total balance moment is the algebraic sum of the balance moments of the aeroplane and each item composing the disposable load.

The C.G. is found by dividing the total balance moment (in inch-pounds) by the total weight (in lb.) and is expressed in inches forward (-) or aft (+) of the balance datum line.

The centre of gravity range is usually expressed in inches from the balance datum line (i.e. +39.5" to +45.8"). In some aeroplanes, it may be expressed as a percentage of the mean aerodynamic chord (25% to 35%). The MAC is the mean aerodynamic chord of the wing.

To calculate the position of the C.G. in percent of MAC, let us assume that the weight and balance calculations have found the C.G. to be 66 inches aft of the balance datum line and the leading edge of the MAC to be 55 inches aft of the same reference (Fig.10.5). The C.G. will, therefore, lie 11 inches aft of the leading edge of the MAC. If the MAC is 40 inches in length, the position of the C.G. will be at a position (11 ÷ 40) 27% of the MAC. If the calculated C.G. position is within the recommended range (for example, 25% to 35%), the aeroplane is properly loaded.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

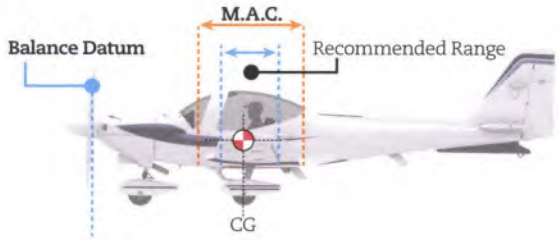


Fig.10.5 **Mean Aerodynamic Chord**

There are several methods by which weight and balance calculations may be made for any loading situation.

Finding Balance by Computation Method

For this example, an aeroplane with a basic weight of 1,575 lb. and an authorized gross weight of 2,600 lb. has been selected. The balance datum line for the aeroplane, selected by the manufacturer, is the fire wall. The recommended C.G. limits are 35.5" to 44.8".

List in table form the aeroplane (basic weight), pilot, passengers, fuel, oil, baggage, cargo, etc., their respective weights and arms. Calculate the balance moment of each. Total the weights. Total the balance moments. Divide the total balance moment by the total weight to find the moment arm (i.e. the position of the C.G.).

(In this example, the oil is listed as a separate item and the balance datum line is the fire wall in order to give an example of a negative moment arm.)

The moment arm for this loading of the aeroplane is 42.52" (110,270 ÷ 2,593). The total weight (2,593 lb.) of the loaded aeroplane is less than the authorized gross weight (2,600 lb.). The moment arm falls within the C.G. range (35.5" to 44.8"). The aeroplane is, therefore, properly loaded.

Item	Weight (Lb.)	Moment Arm (Inches)	Balance Arm (Inch-Lb.)
Basic Aeroplane	1,575	+36	+56,700
Pilot	165	+37	+ 6,105
Passenger (front seat)	143	+37	+ 5,291
Passenger (rear seat)	165	+72	+11,880
Child (rear seat)	77	+72	+5,544
Baggage	90	+98	+8,820
Fuel (60 U.S. Gal. @ 6 lb.)	360	+45	+16,200
Oil (2.4 U.S. Gal. @ 7.5 lb.)	18	-15	-270
	2,593		**110,270**

Fig.10.6 **Example for Finding Balance**

The above example examines the situation of an aeroplane almost at gross weight with the C.G. in a rearward position but within the C.G. range. If this calculation had resulted in a C.G. position that was aft of the C.G. limits, even though the total weight of the aeroplane was under the authorized gross weight, it would be necessary either to lighten the load or to shift the load by, for example, having the passengers change seats.

A lightly loaded aeroplane at the end of a flight when the fuel is almost all consumed may experience the situation that the C.G. moves forward beyond the permissible C.G. range. In some aeroplanes, when flying with only the pilot on board and no passengers or baggage, it is necessary to carry some suitable type of ballast to compensate for a too far forward C.G. Every pilot should, therefore, calculate the moment arm for the lightest possible loading of his/her aeroplane to determine if it is acceptable.

Finding Balance by Graph Method

Most Pilot's Operating Handbooks include tables and graphs for calculating weight and balance. The charts in Fig.10.7 to Fig.10.9 are typical of those found in such manuals. They are very easy to use and eliminate the time consuming mathematical steps of the computation method.

P172 SAMPLE LOADING PROBLEMS	SAMPLE AIRPLANE		YOUR AIRPLANE	
	WEIGHT (LBS)	MOMENT (LB ins. /1000)	WEIGHT ⋮	MOMENT ⋮
1. Licensed Empty Weight (Sample Airplane)	1507	56.6		
2. Oil – 10 Qts.	19	-0.4	19	-0.4
3. Pilot and Front Passenger	340	12.0		
4. Fuel – (41.5 Gal at 6#/Gal)	249	12.0		
5. Rear Passengers	340	23.8		
6. Baggage for Passenger on Auxillary Seat	45	4.3		
7. Total Aircraft Weight (Loaded)	2500	108.3		
8. Locate this point (2500 at 108.5 on the center of gravity envelope, and since this point falls within the envelope, the loading is acceptable.				
NOTE: Normally fuel oil may be assumed for all flights.				

Fig.10.7 **Sample Loading Chart**

Using the charts in Fig.10.7 to Fig.10.9, let us work out a weight and balance problem.

1. Take the authorized empty weight and moment/1,000 from the Weight & Balance Data Sheet carried in the aeroplane and enter them in the columns of the chart in Fig.10.7. For the aeroplane used in our problem, these figures are 1,507 lbs. and a moment of 56.6.
2. Enter the weight and moment/1,000 for the oil in the proper columns. The sample aeroplane in this problem uses 10 U.S. quarts (19 lbs. and a moment of -0.4). You usually have a full load of oil for a trip. Therefore these figures can be considered non-variables.

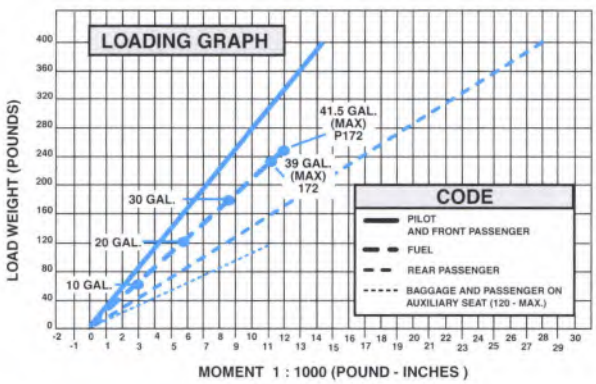


Fig.10.8 **Sample Loading Graph**

3. Compute the weight of the pilot and the front seat passenger. Refer to the Loading Graph (Fig.10.8) and find the moment/1,000 on the scale. Enter these figures on the chart – 340 lbs. and a moment of 12.0.
4. Determine the weight of fuel on board. (In this case, 41.5 U.S. gallons at 6 lbs. per gallon). Find the moment/1,000 from the Loading Graph and enter the figures on the chart – 249 lbs. and a moment of 12.0.

5. Calculate the weight of passengers in the rear seat. Using the proper line on the Loading Graph, find the moment/1,000 and enter these figures on the chart — 340 lbs. and a moment of 23.8.

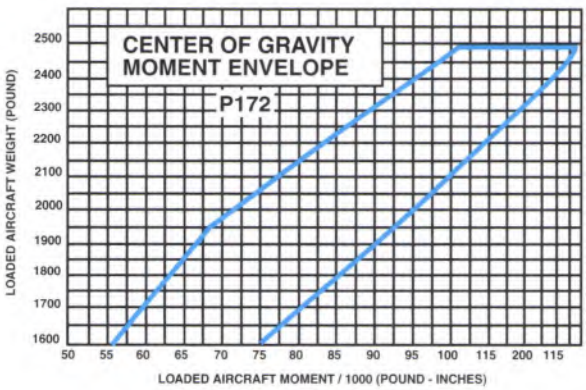


Fig. 10.9 **Sample C.G. Movement Envelope**

6. Weigh the baggage and read the moment/1,000 on the proper line on the Loading Graph. Enter these figures on the chart – 45 lbs. and a moment of 4.3.
7. Total the weight column. The total must be less than the gross weight allowed for your aeroplane. The gross weight of the aeroplane used in this problem is 2,500 lbs. If the total in the weight column exceeds the gross weight, you must lighten the aeroplane's load.

   Total the moment column. Remember to subtract the oil moment.
8. Refer to the Centre of Gravity Moment Envelope (Fig. 10.9). Locate the intersection of the lines connecting the total weight with the total moment/1,000. If this point is within the envelope, your aeroplane is loaded within proper limits. If this point of intersection is outside the envelope, the load must be adjusted.

10.2.3 Weight Shift

Sometimes in weight and balance calculations, the gross weight of the aeroplane or the position of the C.G. turns out to be beyond acceptable limits. If the total weight is too much, some part of the load has to be removed. If, however, the gross weight is not exceeded but the centre of gravity is outside the C.G. envelope, the problem may be solved by shifting some portion of the load from a rearward position to a more forward position (if the C.G. is aft of limits) or vice versa (if the C.G. is forward of limits).

Suppose that the loaded aeroplane weighs 3,000 pounds which is within limits but the C.G. is located in a position that is too far aft. Some baggage or cargo stowed in the rear cargo hold could be moved forward. How much weight must be moved forward to bring the C.G. into acceptable limits?

Apply the following formula:

$$\frac{\text{Weight to move}}{\text{Weight of the Aeroplane}} = \frac{\text{Distance C.G. Must Move}}{\text{Distance Between Arms}}$$

The moment arm of the rear baggage compartment is 125. A more forward position for a piece of baggage has an arm of 40. The aft C.G. limit is 46 but the unacceptable loading has produced a C.G. of 48.

$$\frac{X}{3{,}000} = \frac{2\ (48 \text{ less } 46)}{85\ (125 \text{ less } 40)} \qquad X = 70.5 \text{ lbs.}$$

This formula can also be used to determine how far forward a piece of cargo, equipment, etc. must be moved in order to achieve an acceptable C.G. position. After the piece of cargo/luggage has been moved, recalculate the weight and balance to ensure that the desired result has been achieved.

10.2.4 Weight & Balance & Flight Performance

The flight characteristics of an aeroplane at gross weight with the C.G. very near its most aft limits are very different from those of the same aeroplane lightly loaded.

For lift and weight to be in equilibrium in order to maintain any desired attitude of flight (see **Theory of Flight**), more lift must be produced to balance the heavy weight. To achieve this, the aeroplane must be flown at an increased angle of attack. As a result, the wing will stall sooner (i.e. at a higher airspeed) when the aeroplane is fully loaded than when it is light. Stalling speed in turns (that is, at increased load factors) will also be higher. In fact, everything connected with lift will be affected. Take-off runs will be longer, angle of climb and rate of climb will be reduced and, because of the increased drag generated by the higher angle of attack, fuel consumption will be higher than normal for any given airspeed. Severe G forces are more likely to cause stress to the airframe supporting a heavy payload.

An aft C.G. makes the aeroplane less stable, making recovery from maneuvers more difficult. The aeroplane is more easily upset by gusts. However, with an aft C.G., the aeroplane stalls at a slightly lower airspeed. To counteract the tail heaviness of the aft C.G., the elevator must be trimmed for an up load. The horizontal stabilizer, as a result, produces extra lift and the wings, correspondingly, hold a slightly lower angle of attack.

An aft C.G. means that the aeroplane will have a better range in cruise because of the lower angle of attack and the reduced downward force on the horizontal tail surfaces. Under no circumstances, however, should the aeroplane purposely be loaded with the C.G. outside the envelope in order to achieve better range.

An aeroplane with a forward centre of gravity, being nose heavy, is more stable but more pressure on the elevator controls will be necessary to raise the nose — a fact to remember on the landing flare. The forward C.G. means a somewhat higher stalling speed — another fact to remember during take-offs and landings.

Every pilot should be aware of these general characteristics, shared by most aeroplanes, when they are loaded to their weight and balance limits. The important thing to remember is that these characteristics are more pronounced as the limits are approached and may become dangerous if they are exceeded. Overloading, as well as the immediate degradation of performance, subjects the aeroplane to unseen stresses and precipitates component fatigue.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

10.3 Aeroplane Performance

10.3.1 Effect of Temperature & Altitude on Aeroplane Performance

The figures published in the Pilot's Operating Handbook for the performance capabilities of a certain model of aeroplane are always related to standard atmosphere (29.92 inches of mercury at 15°C at sea level). However, only rarely will the aeroplane actually operate under conditions that approximate standard atmosphere. Any increase in temperature or altitude means a decrease in the aircraft's optimum performance.

Air density decreases with altitude. At 10,000 feet, the pressure exerted by a column of air is considerably less than at sea level. As a result, at high elevation airports, an aeroplane requires more runway to take off. Its rate of climb will be less, its approach will be faster (because the TAS will be faster than the IAS) and the landing roll will be longer.

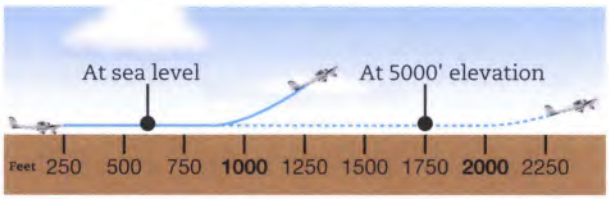


Fig.10.10 **Effect of Altitude & Temperature on Take-off & Climb**

Air density also decreases with temperature. Warm air is less dense than cold air because there are fewer air molecules in a given volume of warm air than in the same volume of cooler air. As a result, on a hot day, an aeroplane will require more runway to take off, will have a poor rate of climb and a faster approach and will experience a longer landing roll.

In combination, high and hot, a situation exists that can well be disastrous for an unsuspecting, or more accurately, an uninformed pilot. The combination of high temperature and high elevation produces a situation that aerodynamically reduces drastically the performance of the aeroplane. The horsepower output of the engine is decreased because its fuel/air mixture is reduced. The propeller develops less thrust because the blades, as airfoils, are less efficient in the thin air. The wings develop less lift because the thin air exerts less force on the airfoils. As a result, the take-off distance is substantially increased, climb performance is substantially reduced and may, in extreme situations, be non-existent.

Humidity also plays a part in this scenario. Although it is not a major factor in computing density altitude, high humidity has an effect on engine power. The high level of water vapour in the air reduces the amount of air available for combustion and results in an enriched mixture and reduced power. In situations of high humidity and high density, it would be wise to add 10% to the computed take-off distance and to expect a reduced rate of climb.

Mountain airports are particularly treacherous when temperatures are high, especially for a low performance aeroplane. The actual elevation of the airport may be near the operational ceiling of the aeroplane without the disadvantage of density altitude. Under some conditions, the aeroplane may not be able to lift out of ground effect or to maintain a rate of climb necessary to clear obstacles or surrounding terrain.

Density altitude is pressure altitude corrected for temperature. It is, in layman terms, the altitude at which the aeroplane thinks it is flying based on the density of the surrounding air mass.

Standard Temperature	Density Altitude at				
	Elevation	27°C	32°C	38°C	43°C
15°	Sea Level	1200′	1900′	2500′	3200′
11°	2000′	3800′	4400′	5000′	5600′
7°	4000′	6300′	6900′	7500′	8100′
3°	6000′	8600′	9200′	9800′	10,400′
-1°	8000′	11,100′	11,700′	12,300′	12,800′

Fig.10.11 **Density Altitude Chart**

Too often, pilots associate density altitude only with high elevation airports. Certainly, the effects of density altitude on aeroplane performance are increasingly dramatic in operations from such airports, especially when the temperature is also hot. But it is important to remember that density altitude also has a negative effect on performance at low elevation airports when the temperature goes above the standard air value of 15°C at sea level. Remember also that the standard air temperature value decreases with altitude.

Fig.10.10 illustrates the effect of density altitude. The take-off run at sea level with a temperature of 15°C (standard air) is 1,000 feet. At a 5,000 foot elevation, with a temperature of 20°C, the take-off run is doubled and the rate of climb diminished 55%.

Fig.10.11 gives some examples of how high temperatures increase the density altitude even at low elevation fields.

Pilot's Operating Handbooks publish tables or charts (see Fig.10.15, Fig.10.17 and Fig.10.24) that give specific figures for performance at varying density altitudes. These figures should always be referred to when operating in high density altitude situations.

In order to compute the density altitude at a particular location, it is necessary to know the pressure altitude. To determine the latter, set the barometric scale of the altimeter to 29.92" Hg and read the altitude. (See also **Density Altitude** in the Chapter **Theory of Flight**.)

Density altitude can be calculated for any given combination of pressure altitude and temperature on the circular slide rule portion of a flight computer. The procedure for doing so has already been discussed in the Chapter **Navigation**.

Density Altitude Koch Chart

The Koch Chart (Fig.10.12) shows in representative form the kind of decrease in performance a pilot can expect when operating in situations of high altitude and/or higher than normal temperatures. It can be used to estimate the increase in an aeroplane's take-off roll, and the decrease in its rate-of-climb over its known standard-air, sea-level values. For example, assume a pressure altitude of 6,000 feet and an airport temperature of 37°C. Locate 6,000 feet on the airport pressure altitude index on the right edge of the chart. Locate 37°C on the temperature index on the left edge of the chart. Join these two points and note where the line cuts the percentage index. The aeroplane's normal take-off distance would be lengthened by 230% and its initial rate of climb would fall off 76%.

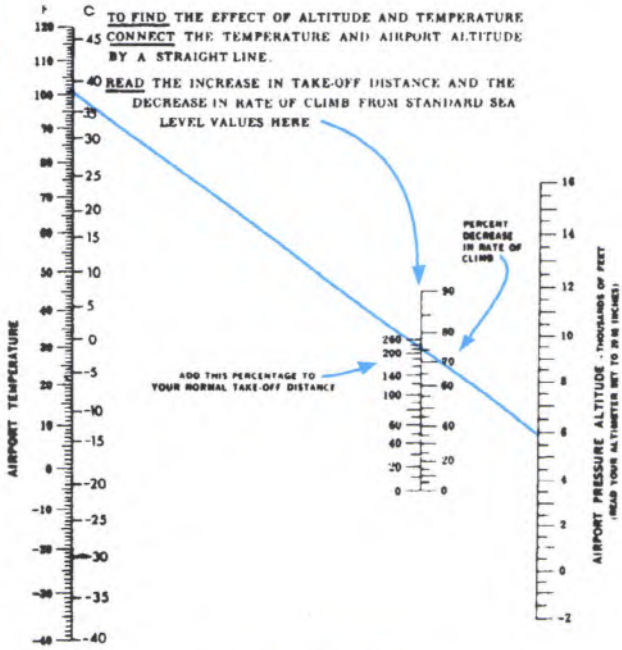

TO FIND THE EFFECT OF ALTITUDE AND TEMPERATURE
CONNECT THE TEMPERATURE AND AIRPORT ALTITUDE BY A STRAIGHT LINE.
READ THE INCREASE IN TAKE-OFF DISTANCE AND THE DECREASE IN RATE OF CLIMB FROM STANDARD SEA LEVEL VALUES HERE
PERCENT DECREASE IN RATE OF CLIMB
ADD THIS PERCENTAGE TO YOUR NORMAL TAKE-OFF DISTANCE
AIRPORT TEMPERATURE
AIRPORT PRESSURE ALTITUDE - THOUSANDS OF FEET (READ YOUR ALTIMETER SET TO 29.92 INCHES)

Fig.10.12 **Koch Chart**

If you have neither your Pilot's Operating Handbook nor a Koch Chart, take-off performance can be calculated by a relatively simple rule of thumb. Remember, first, that an **increase** in density altitude will cause a corresponding **decrease** in take-off performance. Add 10% to the normal take-off ground roll and to the distance to clear a 50 foot obstacle for every 1,000 foot increase in the density altitude up to a density altitude of 3,000 feet. Above 3,000 feet, add 20% per 1,000 foot increase in the density altitude.

For Example:

At an airport at sea level, the altimeter setting is 29.92" Hg and the altimeter indicates that the pressure altitude is 0 feet. The temperature is 15°C which is standard air. The take-off run under these conditions would be 1,000 feet. Suppose that the temperature were to rise to 25°C and the pressure altitude remain constant. The density altitude of the airport at sea level would now be 1,000 feet. For the increase of 1,000 feet in density altitude, add 10% to the take-off run which would now be 1,100 feet.

Fig.10.13 **Denalt Performance Computer**

Denalt Performance Computer

A small circular computer called the Denalt Performance Computer may also be used to calculate expected take-off distance and rate of climb in high density altitude situations. Rotate the computer until the outside air temperature appears in the appropriate window. The take-off factor can then be read opposite the pressure altitude in a second window. (Pressure altitudes from sea level through 14,000 feet, in increments of 2,000 feet, are given.) Multiply this take-off factor by the take-off distance that is normally required for your aeroplane at sea level in standard conditions and at the same gross weight. The percent rate of climb (ROC) can be read opposite the pressure altitude in a third window. Multiply the percent ROC by the normal sea level rate of climb for your aeroplane in standard conditions and at the same gross weight.

10.3.2 Take-Off Performance Charts

The Pilot's Operating Handbook publishes information, usually in chart form, on the take-off performance of a specific model of aeroplane. As a pilot you should familiarize yourself with these charts to be able to predict how your aeroplane will perform under varying conditions and should refer to these charts whenever there is any doubt that the take-off conditions may not be sufficient for the performance capabilities of the aeroplane. In addition, it is important to remember that the charts for any particular aeroplane were compiled from performance figures of factory new equipment in optimum conditions. Any typical general aviation aeroplane, with considerable time on both airframe and engine, will have a poorer performance potential than that predicted by the charts. In addition, underinflated tires, dragging brakes, dirt on the wings, etc. will also affect performance negatively.

TAKEOFF DISTANCE
MAXIMUM WEIGHT 2400 LBS

WEIGHT LBS	TAKEOFF SPEED KIAS		PRESS ALT FT	0°C		10°C		20°C		30°C		40°C	
	LIFT OFF	AT 50 FT		GRND ROLL FT	TOTAL FT TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	GRND ROLL FT	TOTAL FT TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	GRND ROLL FT	TOTAL FT TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	GRND ROLL FT	TOTAL FT TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	GRND ROLL FT	TOTAL FT TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS
2400	51	56	S L	795	1460	860	1570	925	1685	995	1810	1065	1945
			1000	875	1605	940	1725	1015	1860	1090	2000	1170	2155
			2000	960	1770	1035	1910	1115	2060	1200	2220	1290	2395
			3000	1055	1960	1140	2120	1230	2295	1325	2480	1425	2685
			4000	1165	2185	1260	2365	1355	2570	1465	2790	1575	3030
			5000	1285	2445	1390	2660	1500	2895	1620	3160	1745	3455
			6000	1425	2755	1540	3015	1665	3300	1800	3620	1940	3990
			7000	1580	3140	1710	3450	1850	3805	2000	4220	- - -	- - -
			8000	1755	3615	1905	4015	2060	4480	- - -	- - -	- - -	- - -
2200	49	54	S L	650	1195	700	1280	750	1375	805	1470	865	1575
			1000	710	1310	765	1405	825	1510	885	1615	950	1735
			2000	780	1440	840	1545	905	1660	975	1785	1045	1915
			3000	855	1585	925	1705	995	1835	1070	1975	1150	2130
			4000	945	1750	1020	1890	1100	2040	1180	2200	1270	2375
			5000	1040	1945	1125	2105	1210	2275	1305	2465	1405	2665
			6000	1150	2170	1240	2355	1340	2555	1445	2775	1555	3020
			7000	1270	2440	1375	2655	1485	2890	1605	3155	1730	3450
			8000	1410	2760	1525	3015	1650	3305	1785	3630	1925	4005
2000	46	51	S L	525	970	565	1035	605	1110	650	1185	695	1265
			1000	570	1060	615	1135	665	1215	710	1295	765	1385
			2000	625	1160	675	1240	725	1330	780	1425	840	1525
			3000	690	1270	740	1365	800	1465	860	1570	920	1685
			4000	755	1400	815	1500	880	1615	945	1735	1015	1865
			5000	830	1545	900	1660	970	1790	1040	1925	1120	2070
			6000	920	1710	990	1845	1070	1990	1150	2145	1235	2315
			7000	1015	1900	1095	2055	1180	2225	1275	2405	1370	2605
			8000	1125	2125	1215	2305	1310	2500	1410	2715	1520	2950

CONDITIONS:
Flaps 10°
Full Throttle Prior to Brake Release
Paved, Level, Dry Runway
Zero Wind

NOTES:
1. Short field technique as specified in Section 4.
2. Prior to takeoff from fields above 3000 feet elevation, the mixture should be leaned to give maximum RPM in a full throttle, static runup.
3. Decrease distances 10% for each 9 knots headwind. For operation with tailwinds up to 10 knots, increase distances by 10% for each 2 knots.
4. For operation on a dry, grass runway, increase distances by 15% of the "ground roll" figure.

Fig.10.14 **Take-Off Data Chart**

Fig.10.14 depicts a Take-Off Data Chart which tabulates the expected ground run and the expected distance over the ground needed to clear a 50 foot obstacle. The figures are given for a gross weight of 2,400 lb. and for lighter loadings of 2,200 lb. and 2,000 lb. The table includes take-off performance data at sea level and at elevations in 1,000 foot increments up to 8,000 feet and at temperatures varying from 0°C to 40°C.

The performance figures in Fig.10.14 are given for take-off from a hard surface, level, dry runway with no wind and with 10° of flap. For operation on a dry, grass runway, the distance required for the ground roll should be increased by 15%. Less favourable conditions such as long grass, sand, mud, slush,

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

standing water, glassy water (in the case of seaplanes) and soft snow (in the case of skiplanes) can easily double the take-off. A 10% reduction in distances may be applied for every 9 knots of headwind; a 10% increase in distances for every 2 knots of tailwind.

What would be the expected take-off performance to clear a 50 foot obstacle of the aeroplane to which the table in Fig.10.14 applies at an airport with an elevation of 4,000 feet, with a dry, grass runway, an 18 knot headwind and an outside air temperature of 10°C? At an operational gross weight of 2,400 lbs., the expected ground roll with zero wind on a paved dry runway could be 2,365 feet. Eighteen knots of headwind would decrease the ground roll by 20% to 1,892 feet. However, the dry grass runway would increase the roll by 15% of the ground roll figure. Thus, the expected ground roll would be approximately 2,081 feet to clear a 50 foot obstacle.

For some aeroplanes, the take-off data is given only for gross weight. A useful rule of thumb to remember is: a 10% reduction in weight will result in a 10% reduction in take-off roll. A 10% increase in weight will result in a 20% increase in take-off roll.

Some Pilot's Operating Handbooks publish a graph that relates take-off distance to density altitude. Fig.10.15 illustrates such a graph. To use this graph, the pilot must first calculate the density altitude of the airport of operation.

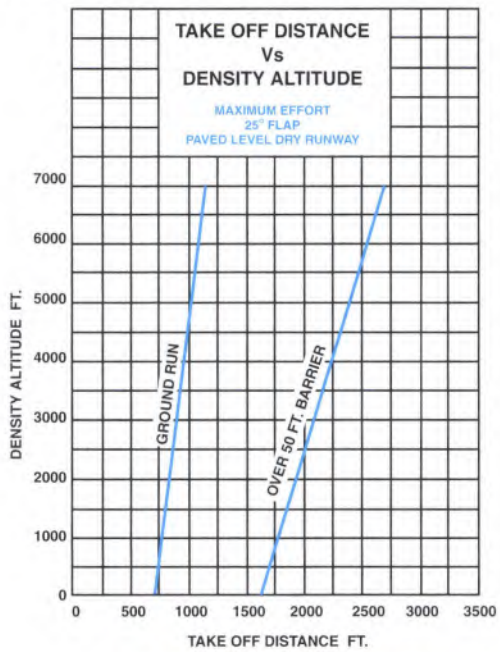


Fig.10.15 **Density Altitude Take-Off Graph**

For example, let us assume that the density altitude is 5,000 feet. Locate the figure 5,000 on the left edge of the graph. Locate the intersection of the 5,000 foot line with the "ground run" line and the "over 50 ft. barrier" line. The ground run to achieve take-off will be approximately 1,000 feet and the distance required to clear a 50 foot obstacle will be approximately 2,335 feet.

If after calculating density altitude and checking the tables, it appears that the take-off run will require more runway than is available, you, as pilot-in-command, have several alternatives. You can lighten the load, if possible, or you can wait until the temperature decreases. Generally, the most critical time for flight operations when the temperature is very hot is from mid-morning through mid-afternoon. This is especially true at high elevation airports, but even at lower elevations, aircraft performance may be marginal. Aircraft operations should, therefore, be planned for early morning or late evening hours.

It is important to remember that in taking off from airfields that are at high elevation, you should use as a reference the same indicated airspeed that you would use during take-off from an airfield at sea level. It is the true airspeed that is affected by the increase in elevation and temperature.

In a high density altitude situation (above 5,000 ft.), a normally aspirated engine should be leaned to achieve maximum power on take-off. The excessively rich mixture that is produced at full rich would further degrade the overall performance. (See also **When to Lean the Engine** in Chapter **Aero Engines**.)

WEIGHT LBS	PRESS ALT FT	CLIMB SPEED KIAS	RATE OF CLIMB - FPM			
			-20°C	0°C	20°C	40°C
2400	S.L.	76	805	745	685	625
	2000	75	695	640	580	525
	4000	74	590	535	480	420
	6000	73	485	430	375	320
	8000	72	380	330	275	220
	10,000	71	275	225	175	- - -
	12,000	70	175	125	- - -	- - -

CONDITIONS:
Flaps Up
Full Throttle

NOTE:
Mixture leaned above 3000 feet for maximum RPM.

Fig.10.16 **Maximum Rate of Climb Data Chart**

10.3.3 Climb Performance Charts

The Pilot's Operating Handbook also publishes data for climb performance. Fig.10.16 illustrates a typical table of figures for maximum rate of climb.

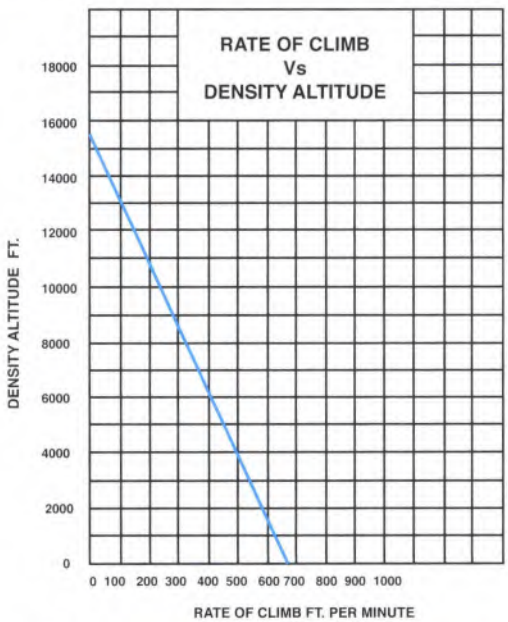


Fig.10.17 **Density Altitude Rate of Climb Graph**

The maximum, or best rate of climb, it will be remembered, is the rate of climb which will gain the most altitude in the least time and is used to climb after take-off until ready to leave the traffic circuit. The table in Fig.10.16 lists the rate of climb in feet per minute at 2,400 lb. gross weight. The chart includes climb performance data at sea level and at pressure altitudes up to 12,000 feet and at temperatures varying from -20°C to 40°C. Note how the rate of climb decreases with altitude. At gross weight, at sea level, with an ambient temperature of 20°C, the rate of climb is 685 feet per minute, at 10,000 feet 175

ft/min, at 12,000 feet 0 ft/min. At 12,000 feet, therefore, (at an outside air temperature of 20°C) the aeroplane has reached its service ceiling.

These climb performance figures are calculated with flaps up, full throttle and the mixture leaned for maximum rpm above 3,000 feet.

CRUISE CLIMB

POWER SETTING		Climb IAS MPH	Fuel Flow Gri. Hr Per Eng	5000 FT. 41°F FROM SEA LEVEL			10000 FT. 23°F FROM SEA LEVEL			15000 FT. 5°F FROM SEA LEVEL		
RPM	M.P.			Dist. Miles	Time Min.	Fuel Used Gal.	Dist. Miles	Time Min.	Fuel Used Gal.	Dist. Miles	Time Min.	Fuel Used Gal.
2600	F.T.	150	Full Rich	9	3	7	18	7	10	30	11	13
2450	29	130	15.5	10	5	7	22	10	9	36	15	12
2450	29	150	15.5	15	6	7	32	12	10	52	13	13
2300	28	150	12.6	20	8	7	43	16	11	70	25	14

NOTE: WARM-UP AND TAKE-OFF ALLOWANCE 4 GALLONS AT SEA LEVEL. MIXTURE AT RECOMMENDED FUEL FLOW, FLAPS AND GEAR UP.

Fig.10.18 Cruise Climb Chart

Some Pilot's Operating Handbooks also publish a graph that relates climb performance to density altitude. The graph in Fig.10.17 is such a chart. It indicates the climb performance that can be expected at varying density altitudes. At a density altitude of 10,000 feet, for example, the aeroplane for which this chart is applicable will climb at about 250 feet per minute. At a density altitude of 16,000 feet, it has reached its ceiling and will not climb any higher.

Many Pilot's Operating Handbooks also publish charts for cruise climb (Fig.10.18). Cruise climb, or normal climb, is the climb airspeed used for a prolonged climb. The chart indicates the fuel used, time required to reach altitude, and still air distance covered in order to reach various altitudes when climbing at a certain indicated airspeed with various power settings.

10.3.4 Cruise Performance Charts

Performance figures for cruise at gross weight are also given in most Pilot's Operating Handbooks. These charts show the fuel consumption, true airspeed, endurance and range that may be expected **when cruising** at a certain altitude with the engine being operated at normal lean mixture, at various combinations of rpm and MP (manifold pressure) settings (to give a required % of power).

The figures in the chart in Fig.10.19 are for a typical general aviation aeroplane. They are tabulated for cruise at various altitudes: 2,500 feet and 5,000 feet are illustrated. The Manual includes figures for 7,500 feet, 10,000 feet, etc., up to the aeroplane's service ceiling.

It must be noted, however, that these figures are calculated on standard air conditions and zero wind. Wind direction and velocity will not affect fuel consumption or endurance but will certainly affect range. Interpolation of the figures must also be made for variations as a result of density altitude.

Some manuals publish their cruise performance data in graph form such as that shown in Fig.10.20. By reference to the graph, a pilot can determine the expected range for any combination of density altitude and percentage of power. For example, at 5,000 feet density altitude and 65% power, the aeroplane for which this graph applies, has a range of approximately 1,050 miles.

To use the graph in Fig.10.20, the pilot must also refer to a graph (Fig.10.21) relating power to altitude to determine what rpm will give the percentage of power required. For example, to achieve 65% power at 5,000 feet density altitude, it is necessary to operate at a power setting of 2,400 rpm.

CRUISE PERFORMANCE

LEAN MIXTURE

Standard Conditions — Zero Wind — Gross Weight- 2800 Pounds

RPM	MP	% BHP	GAL/ HOUR	TAS MPH	60 GAL (NO RESERVE) ENDR. HOURS	60 GAL (NO RESERVE) RANGE MILES	79 GAL (NO RESERVE) ENDR. HOURS	79 GAL (NO RESERVE) RANGE MILES
2500 FEET								
2450	23	76	14.2	158	4.2	670	5.6	885
	22	72	13.4	154	4.5	690	5.9	910
	21	68	12.7	151	4.7	715	6.2	940
	20	63	12.0	148	5.0	730	6.6	965
2300	23	71	13.1	154	4.6	700	6.0	925
	22	67	12.2	149	4.9	740	6.5	970
	21	62	11.5	145	5.2	760	6.9	1005
	20	59	11.0	142	5.5	775	7.2	1020
2200	23	67	12.1	149	5.0	745	6.5	980
	22	63	11.4	146	5.3	770	6.9	1010
	21	59	10.8	142	5.6	790	7.3	1040
	20	55	10.2	138	5.9	810	7.7	1065
2000 MAXIMUM RANGE SETTINGS	20	47	8.7	126	6.9	865	9.1	1135
	19	43	8.2	121	7.3	890	9.6	1170
	18	39	7.5	113	8.0	900	10.5	1185
	17	35	7.0	105	8.6	905	11.3	1190
5000 FEET								
2450	23	78	14.5	163	4.1	670	5.4	885
	22	73	13.6	159	4.4	700	5.8	925
	21	70	13.0	156	4.6	720	6.1	950
	20	65	12.2	151	4.9	750	6.5	985
2300	23	73	13.4	158	4.5	710	5.9	930
	22	69	12.6	155	4.7	730	6.3	965
	21	64	11.9	151	5.0	760	6.6	1005
	20	60	11.2	146	5.4	785	7.1	1035
2200	23	68	12.4	155	4.8	750	6.4	985
	22	64	11.7	151	5.1	775	6.8	1020
	21	60	11.0	146	5.5	800	7.2	1050
	20	57	10.5	143	5.7	815	7.5	1075
2000 MAXIMUM RANGE SETTINGS	19	45	8.5	126	7.1	895	9.3	1175
	18	41	7.9	118	7.6	905	10.0	1190
	17	37	7.3	111	8.2	910	10.8	1200
	16	34	6.8	103	8.8	905	11.6	1190

Fig.10.19 Cruise Performance Chart

10.3.5 Landing Performance Charts

Perfect landings are usually preceded by deliberately planned and well executed approaches. Correct approach speeds are important. The Pilot's Operating Handbook for any particular model of aeroplane recommends the speeds to use on approach with various flap settings. These airspeeds should always be used.

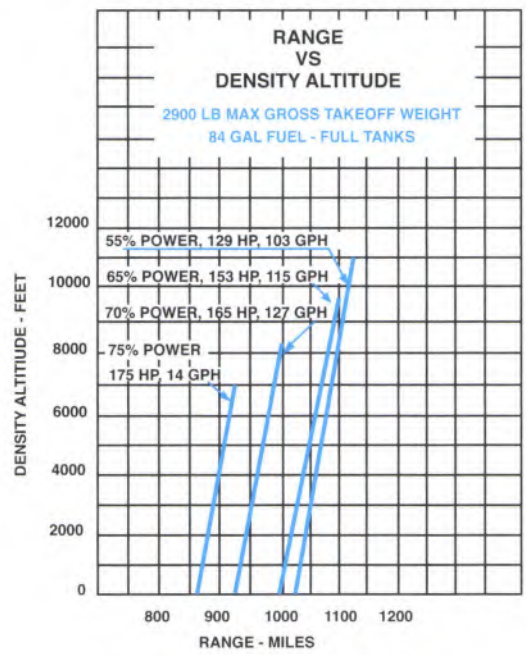


Fig.10.20 Cruise Performance Graph

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

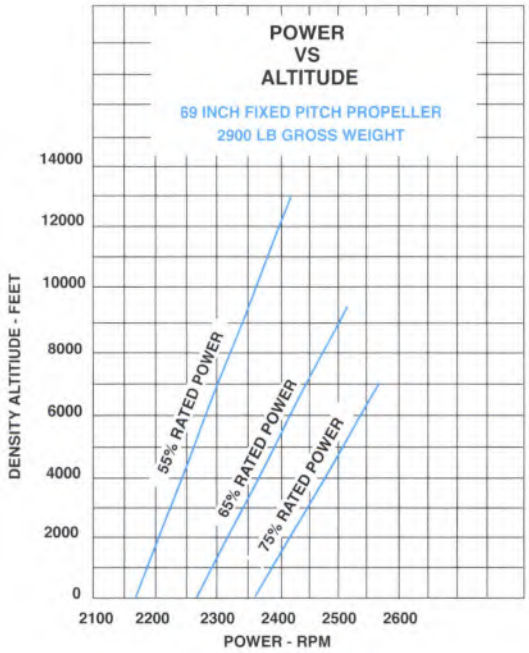


Fig.10.21 **Power Graph**

If information on approach speeds is not available, a useful rule of thumb to determine final approach speed for the average conventional design aeroplane may be found by applying the formula presented in Fig.10.22.

The 1.3 V_{SO} formula should be calculated using calibrated airspeed. Calibrated airspeed is indicated airspeed corrected for position and instrument error. CAS values are published in the Owner's Manual.

For some aeroplanes, there is a significant discrepancy between CAS and IAS, especially at the lower end of the speed range near the stall.

Power-off stall I.A.S.	Over the fence I.A.S.
40	52
45	59
50	65
55	72
60	78
65	85
70	91
75	98
80	104
85	111
90	117
95	124
100	130

Under normal C.G. and load conditions, final approach speed = 1.3 V_{SO}

V_{SO}= Power-off stall speed in landing configuration

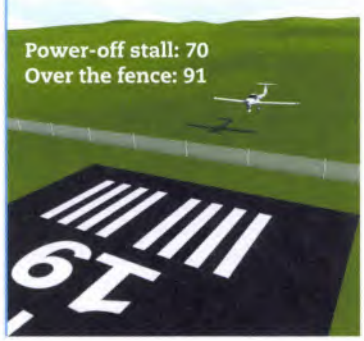


Fig.10.22 **Approach Speed**

The factor of weight is important in determining landing speed. All aeroplanes stall at slower airspeeds when they are light. A lightly loaded aeroplane, landing at the same airspeed that is used when it is heavily loaded, will float before touchdown to dissipate the excess energy, thus extending the landing distance. The 1.3 V_{SO} formula should be calculated using the stalling speed for the **actual** weight of the aircraft, not the maximum landing weight. If the Owner's Manual does not publish a table of approach speeds as a function of reduced weight, a rule of thumb is to reduce the calibrated approach airspeed for the maximum weight of your aeroplane by one-half of the percentage of the weight decrease. If, for example, the aeroplane weight is 20% below maximum, the calibrated approach airspeed would be decreased by half of that, or by 10%.

The 1.3 V_{SO} airspeed should be used only after all maneuvering is completed, that is, on **short final only**.

WEIGHT LBS	SPEED AT 50 FT KIAS	PRESS ALT FT	0°C		10°C		20°C		30°C		40°C	
			GRND ROLL FT	TOTAL FT TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	GRND ROLL FT	TOTAL FT TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	GRND ROLL FT	TOTAL FT TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	GRND ROLL FT	TOTAL FT TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS	GRND ROLL FT	TOTAL FT TO CLEAR 50 FT OBS
2400	61	S.L.	510	1235	530	1265	550	1295	570	1325	585	1350
		1000	530	1265	550	1295	570	1325	590	1360	610	1390
		2000	550	1295	570	1330	590	1360	610	1390	630	1425
		3000	570	1330	590	1360	615	1395	635	1430	655	1460
		4000	595	1365	615	1400	635	1430	660	1470	680	1500
		5000	615	1400	640	1435	660	1470	685	1510	705	1540
		6000	640	1435	660	1470	685	1510	710	1550	730	1580
		7000	665	1475	690	1515	710	1550	735	1590	760	1630
		8000	690	1515	715	1555	740	1595	765	1635	790	1675

CONDITIONS:
Flaps 30°
Power Off
Maximum Braking
Paved, Level, Dry Runway
Zero Wind

NOTES:
1. Short field technique as specified in Section 4.
2. Decrease distances 10% for each 9 knots headwind. For operation with tailwinds up to 10 knots, increase distances by 10% for each 2 knots.
3. For operation on a dry, grass runway, increase distances by 45% of the "ground roll" figure.
4. If a landing with flaps up is necessary, increase the approach speed by 7 KIAS and allow for 35% longer distances.

Fig.10.23 **Landing Distance Chart**

On some aeroplanes, the manufacturer may require a particular approach speed for **all** weights because, during certification flight testing, it was found that for stability and control reasons, or for go-around safety, a fixed airspeed is required. Always comply with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Most Pilot's Operating Handbooks publish information on landing performance in a table such as that in Fig.10.23. The table assumes 30° of flaps, power off, no wind and maximum braking on a paved, dry, level runway. It lists the expected ground roll and distance to clear a 50 foot obstacle when landing at airports of varying elevations and at varying ambient air temperatures. A probable 10% reduction in landing distance is indicated for every 9 knots of headwind; a 10% increase for every 2 knots of tailwind. If, for example, the velocity of the headwind at an airport at 3,000 feet (temperature 20°C) is 9 knots, the ground roll can be expected to be 554 feet [615 - (615 x 10%)].

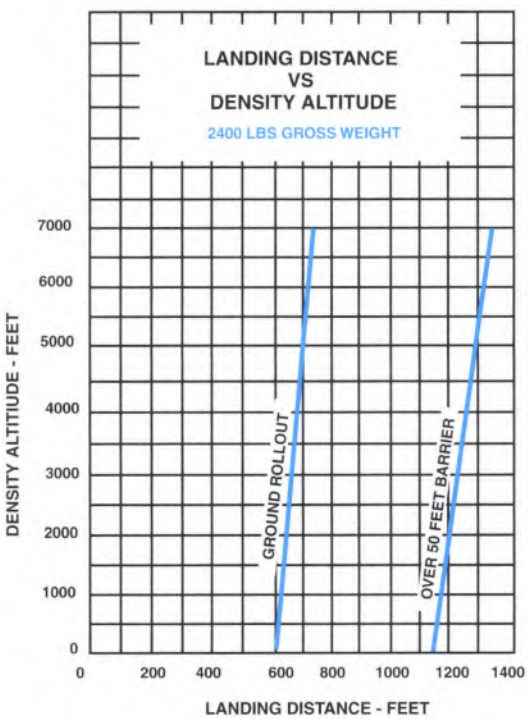


Fig.10.24 **Density Altitude Rate of Climb Graph**

Since there is some loss in the quality of braking action on the grass of a sod runway, the ground roll after landing can be expected to be longer than it would be on a hard surface runway. In the chart in Fig.10.23, a 45% increase is suggested as probable for the ground roll when landing on a sod runway when the grass is dry. In any less favour-able conditions, such as wet grass, slush, or standing water on either a sod or a hard surface runway, braking action will be degraded even further and the landing roll will be increased substantially.

Density altitude affects the landing performance of an aeroplane as greatly as it affects take-off performance. High temperature and high elevation will cause an increase in the landing roll because the true airspeed is higher than the indicated airspeed. Therefore, even though using the same indicated airspeed for approach and landing that is appropriate for sea level operations, the true airspeed is faster, resulting in a faster groundspeed (with a given wind condition).

The increase in groundspeed naturally makes the landing distance longer and should be carefully considered when landing at a high elevation field, particularly if the field is short.

Some Pilot's Operating Handbooks contain performance charts and tables such as the one in Fig.10.24 which relate landing distance to density altitude. Pilots should develop the habit of referring to these charts in order to anticipate the distance that will be required to land their aeroplane under various conditions of flight.

10.3.6 Landings & Take-Offs at Unimproved Airstrips

The data published in the Pilot's Operating Handbook generally applies to dry paved runways. It is almost impossible to produce accurate figures applicable to turf runways because of the number of variables involved. The conditions change depending on whether the turf is wet, dry, frozen, snow or ice covered and change still further depending on how wet, how much snow, etc. The weight of the aeroplane is a factor since a heavier aeroplane tends to sink into the surface. The size of tires, tire pressure and tire tread all have an effect both on take-off roll and on braking action. New tires and new brakes can produce greater braking action. In addition, take-off and landing performance vary with the condition of the aeroplane and the powerplant.

For the most part, a pilot has to learn by experience what his/her aeroplane will do by way of performance at unimproved airstrips.

Rules of Thumb

There are some rules of thumb that will supplement the approved take-off and landing performance charts and increase the safety of operations at unimproved airstrips. They should not be used at variance with data published by the manufacturer.

DENSITY ALTITUDE

For every 1,000 foot increase in the density altitude, add 10% to the ground roll and to the distance to clear a 50 foot obstacle up to 3,000 feet density altitude and add 20% above 3,000 feet density altitude.

WEIGHT

For a 10% decrease in the weight of an aeroplane, there is a 10% decrease in the take-off ground roll and in the distance to clear a 50 foot obstacle. For a 10% increase in the weight, there is a 20% increase in the ground roll/distance (a ratio of 1:2).

SURFACE

On a firm turf runway, add 7% to the ground roll/distance.

On a rough or rocky runway or on short grass (up to 4 inches), add 10%.

On long grass (more than 4 inches), add 30%.

On a soft surface, such as mud or snow, add 75%. In some situations, it may be impossible to achieve take-off, if the conditions are bad enough.

HEADWIND

Use the following formula to determine the effect of a headwind. The formula should not be used for a headwind of less than 10 knots.

90% minus the headwind component divided by the rotation speed equals % of ground roll/distance

For Example:

If the headwind is 10 knots and the rotation speed is 50 knots, then:

90% - [(10 knots ÷ 50 knots) x 100]
= 90% - 20%
= 70% of ground roll/distance.

TAILWIND

Use the following formula to determine the effect of a tailwind. The formula should not be used for tailwinds greater than 5 knots. Take-offs with tailwinds greater than 10 knots are not recommended.

100% plus the tailwind component divided by the rotation speed equals % of ground roll/distance

SLOPED RUNWAY

For every 1° of upward slope in the runway, add 10% to the take-off roll. An upslope of 2° will add quite significantly to take-off distances. Sloping runways provide a different visual perspective than a level surface and landings and take-offs demand more planning and closer attention to flying techniques. When attempting to take off from a runway with an upslope, it is important to know if the aeroplane can climb safely away from the rising terrain. Uphill take-offs with tailwinds should be avoided.

A 1° downward slope in the runway reduces the take-off roll by only 5%. If a take-off is commenced downhill with a tailwind, the aeroplane will accelerate more rapidly. Avoid the temptation to lift off prematurely because the groundspeed seems high. Wait for a safe indicated airspeed.

COMBINED EFFECT

The combined effect of a change in aircraft weight, runway surface, runway slope and/or density altitude, in one or more combinations, can dramatically alter take-off distances.

ABORTING A TAKE-OFF

At 25% of the ground roll to take-off, the aeroplane should have achieved 50% of its lift-off speed.

At 50% of the ground roll, it should have achieved 70% of its lift-off speed.

At 80% of the ground roll, it should have achieved 90% of its lift-off speed.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Lift-off speed should be reached within the first 75% of the usable runway. If lift-off has not been achieved in this distance, the take-off should be aborted. For example, with a ground roll to take-off of 1,200 feet, the minimum runway length must be 1,600 feet.

10.3.7 Tailwind Landings

On occasion, because of dangerous terrain near an airport, it is necessary to operate from a runway with a tailwind component. Safe operation in this situation requires special training and firm guidelines. The tailwind component should be limited to less than 10 knots. Density altitude and aircraft capabilities must be considered.

Tailwinds contribute to an illusion of a "hot" landing (or take-off). The pilot must pay special attention to the airspeed indicator and ignore the illusion of excessive speed. A headwind over the vertical stabilizer contributes to directional control but a tailwind does not, resulting in some degradation of directional control. A tailwind will lengthen the take-off roll and decrease the angle of climb after take-off. During landing, a tailwind will require the pilot to increase the rate of descent to maintain a given glideslope.

The best advice on deciding on whether or not to land or take-off with a tailwind is DON'T. If you have an option, change runways or go to another airport.

10.3.8 Crosswind Landings & Take-Offs

The amount of headwind is an important factor in determining the take-off and landing distance that will be required in any given situation. In Fig.10.23, for example, it was noted that a 10% reduction in landing distance could be expected for every 9 knots of headwind for the aeroplane for which that chart was applicable. Similar reductions in take-off distance were noted in Fig.10.14. The wind, however, is rarely a direct headwind, especially at single strip airports. It is more likely to be blowing from some angle off the runway and will, therefore, be a headwind component.

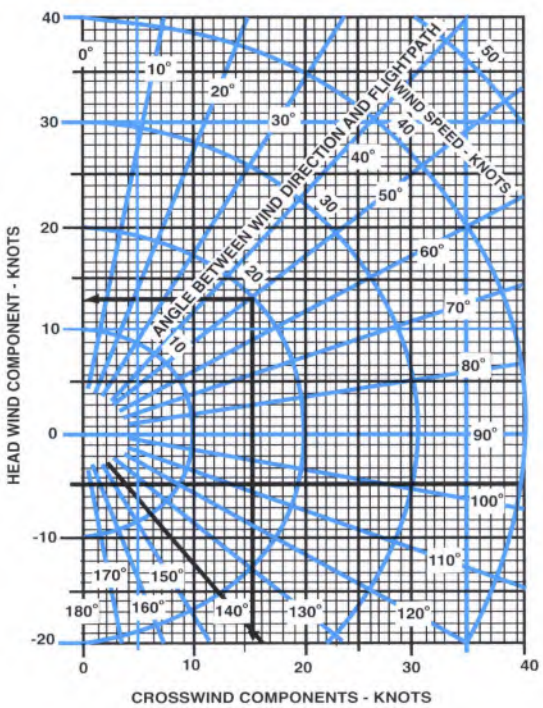


Fig.10.25 **Wind Component Chart**

Wind component charts similar to that in Fig.10.25 are published in Pilot's Operating Handbooks for use in determining headwind components in take-off and landing situations. Let us assume that the wind as reported by the tower is from 080° at 30 knots. The runway in use is 05 and the angle between the wind and the runway is, therefore, 30 degrees. By locating the intersection on the chart of the 30° line representing "angle between wind direction and flight path" and the wind curve, the headwind component is found to be 26 knots and the crosswind component 15 knots. The pilot would, therefore, base his/her take-off performance on a 26 knot headwind component.

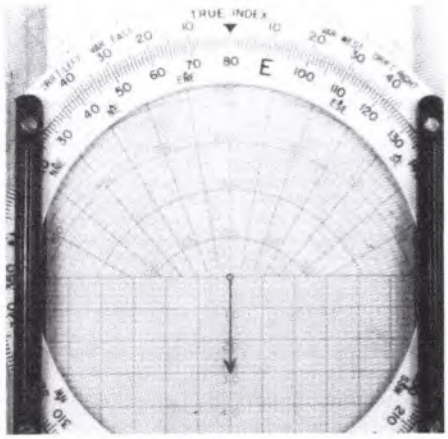


Fig.10.26 **Marking the Wind Speed**

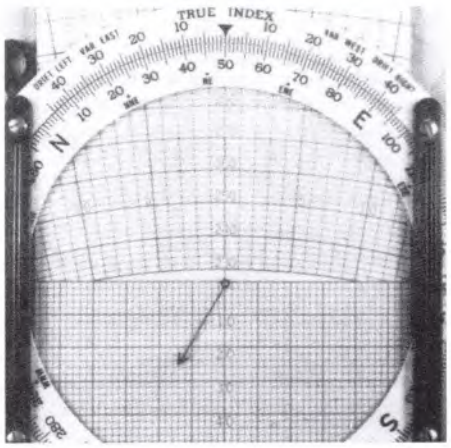


Fig.10.27 **Finding Headwind & Crosswind Components**

If you don't have a crosswind component chart handy, here are some rules of thumb. If the crosswind is 20 degrees off the runway, the crosswind component is 25% of the wind velocity. If the wind is 40 degrees off, the crosswind component is 50%. If the wind is 60 degrees or more off, the crosswind component is 75% of the wind velocity. If the wind is 90 degrees to the landing path, the crosswind component is 100%.

The headwind component can also be quickly calculated using the wind side of a flight computer that has a squared graph section. Using the above wind and runway situation, rotate the compass rose to set the wind direction (080°) under the true index. With the grommet on the straight 0 line, draw a wind vector arrow 30 units long to represent the wind speed (Fig.10.26). Rotate the compass rose to set the runway (050) under the true index. The wind vector arrow indicates a headwind component of 26 knots and a crosswind component of 15 knots (Fig.10.27).

Strong crosswinds that are blowing at angles approaching 90 degrees to the runway cause a problem in directional control. Any pilot who has attempted to land a light aeroplane at a small airport with a single strip that happened that day to be directly 90° to a heavy wind knows the value of good crosswind technique.

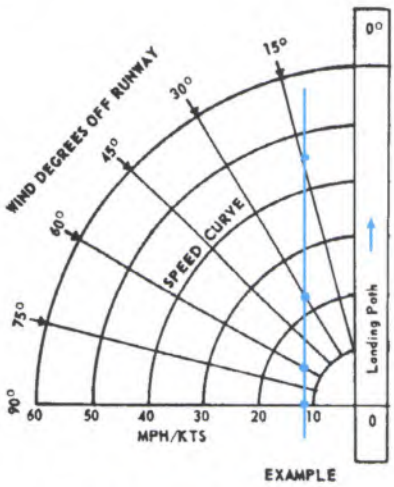


Fig.10.28 Crosswind Tolerance Chart

There are essentially two kinds of contrary wind conditions that affect light planes on landing. There is the fairly steady wind at a pronounced angle to the runway which can be determined. There is also the gusty changeable wind. This second crosswind condition requires instinctively correct responses from the pilot, who must use aileron for keeping the aeroplane over the runway and opposite rudder to line it up with the runway and, at the same time, be prepared to deal with sudden changes in airspeed and altitude due to the gusty conditions.

When the wind is gusting, a shift in almost any direction, even to 180°, can occur. The pilot is well advised to pay special attention to the behaviour of trees, bushes and dust and not just the windsock.

How much contrary wind can an aeroplane handle? This information is usually given in the Owner's Manual. If the manual has been conscientiously written, it will list windspeed maximums for every conceivable angle. It may, however, give only the maximum crosswind angle and the maximum wind velocity.

A crosswind tolerance chart (Fig.10.28) can be used to determine the maximum permissible windspeeds for varying crosswinds. All aeroplanes of North American manufacture are designed to handle crosswinds of 90° with a velocity of 20% of their stall speed. An aeroplane with a stall speed of 60 knots, for example, can tolerate a crosswind of 12 knots (60 x 20%). Draw a line on the graph parallel to the landing path from the point 12 knots on the index at the bottom of the chart. The point at which this line intersects each of the lines representing wind degrees off runway and the speed curves indicates the permissible wind speeds for the varying crosswind conditions. For a crosswind of 60 degrees off the runway, the maximum permissible wind speed is 14 knots; at 30 degrees, 24 knots; at 15 degrees, 45 knots.

Crosswind considerations are of considerable importance for take-off as well as for landing. In take-off, the effect of torque must be remembered. Since torque will tend to push the aeroplane's nose to the left, a crosswind from the right will not be too difficult to handle. In a crosswind from the left, however, it could be possible to run out of right rudder. If the crosswind is near maximum permissible speed, a left-hand crosswind calls for a decision to stay at home, unless the aeroplane is a twin with counter-rotating propellers.

In a stiff crosswind with full upwind aileron held, it is possible to end up making the final segment of the take-off on the upwind wheel only. This makes the aeroplane difficult to handle but the pilot should avoid the temptation to haul the aeroplane off prematurely. It is advisable to break ground at a slightly higher than normal speed, even if it is necessary to force the aeroplane to remain on the runway. Once in the air, the pilot wants to have the positive control responses that come with good flying speed.

On the other hand, it is inadvisable to carry too much airspeed when landing in a crosswind. The greater the angle of the crosswind, the less headwind component there is, so that in a 90° crosswind there is no headwind component at all. Although in extremely gusty conditions, some extra speed is advisable, too much may complicate the job of bringing the aeroplane to a stop before the end of the runway.

10.3.9 Taxiing

Aircraft are just that: **air** craft. They are not necessarily very good **ground** craft. The effect of wind on an aircraft during its roll out and while taxiing demand that the pilot be alert to wind direction. A strong wind that was right down the runway on landing will be a strong crosswind or tailwind while taxiing and will expose the aircraft to directional control problems. The Owner's Manual for your aircraft will give directions on how to taxi in high winds and how to keep the aircraft from tipping over.

Don't ever stop flying an aeroplane until you have parked it, shut off the engine and tied it down.

10.3.10 Cruising Speeds

Between an aeroplane's top speed and its stalling speed, there is a wide range of speeds that have often been referred to as the working speeds. Each is the answer to a particular problem of practical flying.

Best gliding speed or normal glide is the speed at which an aeroplane with power off will glide the farthest distance. This is the speed at which the lift/drag ratio is best and therefore might be called the "speed of least drag".

Speed of slowest descent is the speed at which the aeroplane loses altitude at the least rate. In a nose high attitude, near the stalling speed, the aeroplane sinks most slowly. This speed is made constant use of by glider pilots.

Maximum range speed is the speed at which the aeroplane travels the most miles per gallon of fuel. This speed is about 5 to 10% faster than the best gliding speed.

Maximum endurance speed is the speed at which the fuel consumption is the least per hour. To achieve this condition of flight, the aeroplane is flown quite slowly, with minimum power, very nose-high, with the wings at a high angle of attack. The aeroplane is not covering much distance for it is too slow but its endurance is substantially extended.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Maneuvering speed is the maximum speed at which the aeroplane should be flown in rough air. It is the speed least likely to permit structural damage to the aeroplane in rough air or during aerobatic maneuvers. Maneuvering speed for most aeroplanes is set at about twice the flaps-up, power-off stall speed.

Optimum cruise speed is the speed at which the best balance between use of fuel and maximum range is achieved.

Best rate of climb speed is the speed at which the aeroplane will gain the most altitude in the least time. This speed is rather fast; for most aeroplanes it is approximately the same speed as that of best glide.

Best angle of climb speed is the speed at which the aeroplane climbs most steeply, gaining the most altitude for distance covered over the ground. In routine flying, it is seldom necessary to use best angle of climb speed but it is of importance when it is necessary to climb out over a high obstacle at the end of a runway. It is, however, not a climbing procedure that should be used except in emergency. Firstly, it is a speed that is not much above the stall and the pilot must be very vigilant not to permit the aeroplane to stall. Secondly, at such a slow speed, with full power, insufficient air is passing over the engine to cool it properly. The engine is therefore likely to overheat and the resulting engine wear is undesirable.

Air endurance is the maximum time an aeroplane can continue to fly under given conditions with a given quantity of fuel.

Range is the maximum distance an aeroplane can fly under given conditions with a given quantity of fuel.

Both airspeed and altitude affect the range and endurance. The best airspeed for maximum endurance is generally less than that for maximum range. Generally speaking, a propeller-driven aeroplane may be flown at a relatively low altitude for maximum endurance. For maximum range, a propeller-driven aeroplane should be flown at that height at which, at full throttle, the indicated airspeed is about 5 to 10% better than the best glide speed. This is realized at a relatively high altitude. A jet, on the other hand, would fly at high altitude for both range and endurance.

Range and endurance, when stated in the aeroplane specifications, are usually based on still air, standard atmosphere conditions. However, they may be computed for any assumed wind direction and wind speed.

Aeroplane performance is always a compromise between such variable factors as range vs payload, endurance vs airspeed, etc.

10.3.11 Use of Performance Charts

The performance information that is available to you, as a pilot, in the form of the tables and graphs that have been illustrated in the preceding sections is very valuable. You should thoroughly familiarize yourself with the tables and graphs published in the Pilot's Operating Handbook for your aeroplane and should practice using them at every opportunity in order to gain confidence in their use and to determine for yourself that your calculated or anticipated performance equals the actual or realized performance on any particular flight.

The charts are particularly useful in planning a cross-country flight and in solving the navigational problems of range, fuel consumption, etc., that are part of proper preflight planning.

10.4 Wake Turbulence

The phenomenon of wing tip vortices was introduced in the Chapter **Theory of Flight** in the discussion of induced drag. Lift is generated by the creation of a pressure differential over the wings: low pressure over the upper wing surface and higher pressure under the wing. As the lift producing airfoil passes through the air, the air rolls up and back about each wing tip producing two distinct counter rotating vortices, one trailing each wing tip (Fig.10.29). The intensity of the turbulence within these vortices is directly proportional to the weight and inversely proportional to the wing span and the speed of the aeroplane. The heavier and slower the aeroplane, therefore, the greater is the intensity of the air circulation in the vortex cores. The most violent vortices would be generated by aeroplanes during take-off and landing and at near gross weights when the aircraft are flying at high angles of attack.

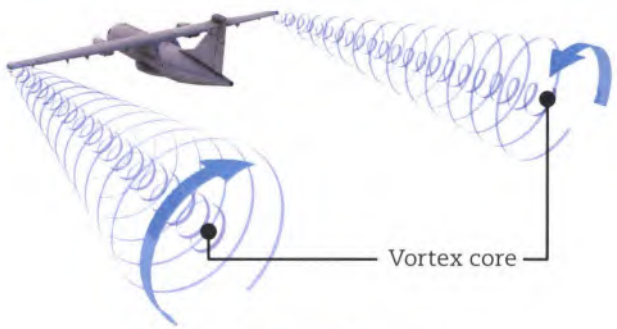


Fig.10.29 **Wing Tip Vortices**

Air density influences vortex strength. In cold air, the vortices can be expected to be more severe. Vortex strength is also affected by the configuration of the aeroplane producing the vortices. The position of flaps and landing gear, as well as the location of the engines and the tail configuration, modify vortex pattern and persistence. For example, the high tail of the DC-9/MD-30 aircraft series increases the persistence of the vortices.

The greatest vortex strength occurs under conditions of clean configuration, high weight and slow speed.

Similar vortices are generated by rotary wing aircraft. These vortices have the same internal air circulation as those generated by fixed-wing aeroplanes, but are potentially more dangerous because the helicopter's lower operating speeds produce more concentrated wakes.

Hovering helicopters can be particularly hazardous to fixed-wing aeroplanes. For a helicopter to hover, the main rotor must supply lift equal to the total weight of the helicopter. As a result, a hovering helicopter's rotor blades move large volumes of air. When hovering with no forward motion, a helicopter's wake does not trail out behind it as it does in the case of an aeroplane; rather, its wake radiates in all directions. When hovering close to the ground, large volumes of rotor downwash can hit the surface with the resulting outwash deflecting off the ground and moving quickly outward, upward, around and away from the main rotors. Hovering requires substantial horsepower that accelerates the air to relatively high velocities that can reach upwards of 100 knots depending on the size of the rotor and the gross weight of the helicopter. For this reason, it is crucial that pilots of fixed wing aircraft be very vigilant when operating in the vicinity of hovering rotorcraft. It is recommended that fixed-wing pilots

stay a minimum of three rotor discs away from a hovering small helicopter, or five rotor discs away from a hovering large helicopter.

Aircraft which fly directly into the core of a vortex will tend to roll with the vortex. The effectiveness of control response and the wing span of the aeroplane determine its capability to counteract the roll.

Fig. 10.30 **Hazards of Wing Tip Vortices**

If the wing span and the ailerons extend beyond the vortex, counter-roll control is usually effective. Aircraft with a short wing span, even though they may be high performance types, will have great difficulty counteracting the roll.

The vertical gusts encountered when crossing laterally through the vortex can impose structural loads as high as 10G on a small aeroplane flying at a high angle of attack. The combined effect of an upgust immediately followed by a downgust has been estimated as high as 80-feet-per-second. Most small planes are designed to withstand vertical gusts of 30-feet-per-second at their normal operating speeds.

Aircraft in the ultralight category are especially vulnerable to the devastating effects of being caught in wake turbulence, even the wake turbulence generated by relatively small transport aircraft.

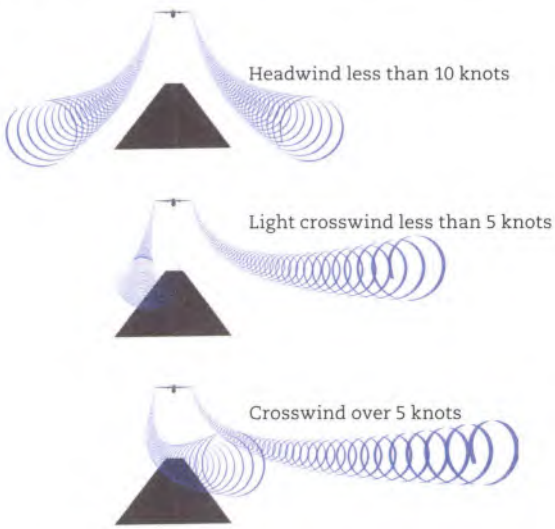


Fig. 10.31 **Wake Turbulence in the Runway Area**

There is a distinct possibility of structural failure when an aeroplane crosses a pair of vortices at a large angle (about 90°). The severe up-down/down-up forces and the pilot's attempt to counteract them could result in airframe design limits being exceeded. Loss of control is another result of encountering these unseen monsters. Vortex cores can produce a roll rate of 80 degrees per second, a situation with which the small light aeroplane is structurally unable to cope.

Vortex generation starts with rotation (the raising of the nose from the runway) and reaches its peak intensity at lift-off when the full weight of the aeroplane is sustained by the wings and when the airspeed is low. It ends when the aeroplane touches down. The vortices of large, heavy aeroplanes settle below and behind the aeroplane at about 300 to 500 feet per minute for about 30 seconds. The vortices of smaller, lighter aeroplanes settle more slowly. In all cases, within about 2 minutes, they level off about 1,000 feet below the aircraft's flight path. They may trail the generating aircraft by 10 to 16 miles depending on its speed and, in still air, decay slowly.

The strength of the vortex remains relatively constant during the first 2 minutes after the passage of the generating aircraft. After that, dissipation of the vortices occurs at varying rates, first in one vortex and then the other. Vortices have been known to last as long as 5 minutes. Atmospheric turbulence helps to break up the vortices; the greater the turbulence, the more rapid the dissipation of the vortices.

The vortex flow field covers an area about 2 wing spans in width and one wing span in depth. The rotating vortex may, therefore, have a diameter as great as 200 feet behind a very large aeroplane.

When the vortices sink to the ground, they tend to move laterally outward over the ground at a speed of about 5 knots. This characteristic means that the laterally moving vortices may position themselves over a parallel runway and constitute a hazard to aeroplanes operating there. In a crosswind condition, the lateral movement of the upwind vortex will be decreased while the movement of the downwind vortex will be increased. As a result, the upwind vortex may remain stationary in the touchdown zone. A tailwind condition can move the vortices of the preceding aeroplane forward into the touchdown zone of the aeroplane following even though the latter takes the precaution of landing beyond the touchdown point of that preceding aeroplane.

Very large jets, in the class of the Boeing 747, Airbus A380, or Lockheed C-5, make the problem of wake turbulence even more acute. These aircraft generate roll velocities exceeding the roll control capability of some of the larger light aeroplanes and far in excess of the capability of small aeroplanes.

The phenomenon of wake turbulence is of immense importance to a pilot. In fact, it can be a matter of life and death. It is of prime importance, that you, for your own safety, learn to envision the location of the vortex wake generated by large aircraft so that you can avoid encountering the very serious hazards that are associated with this situation.

10.4.1 Wake Turbulence Avoidance

Remember that the vortices, in still air, have a downward and outward movement but that the ambient wind will alter their normal pattern of movement. Pilots should be particularly alert to wind conditions and try to picture mentally how those wind conditions will affect the vortices. Will they remain in the touchdown zone, or drift onto a nearby runway, or sink into the landing path from a crossing runway, etc.?

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Phases of Flight Considerations

DURING FLIGHT

Although wake turbulence is most likely to be encountered during the arrival and departure procedures, it can be a hazard during cruising flight as well. Avoid crossing behind and less than 1,000 feet below the flight path of a large, heavy aeroplane or of a helicopter, especially at low altitude when even a momentary wake turbulence encounter could be hazardous. Alter course or climb to be above the expected vortices.

DURING TAXI

Stay well behind large aeroplanes that are taxiing or maneuvering on the ground. Do not cross behind a large aeroplane that is doing an engine run-up. Avoid taxiing below a hovering helicopter. The downwash from its rotors is significant and hazardous.

DURING TAKE-OFF

On the same or a parallel runway, start the take- off roll at the beginning of the runway and plan to be airborne before the rotation point of the previous aeroplane. Stay upwind of the large aeroplane. This action and a normal climb should keep you above the descending vortices of the preceding aeroplane.

Do not make intersection take-offs when large aircraft are using the same runway.

On an intersecting runway, plan to be airborne before you cross the intersection, remembering to keep your flight path well above that of the aircraft that departed on the other runway.

When following an aircraft that has just landed, plan to become airborne beyond the point of touchdown of the preceding aircraft.

DURING LANDING

When following a heavy aircraft that has just taken off, plan to touch down before the rotation point of the preceding aeroplane.

When following an aircraft that has just landed, plan to touch down beyond the point where the preceding aircraft touched down, remembering to keep your approach path above that of that aircraft.

When landing on an intersecting runway behind a large aeroplane that has taken off, note the aeroplane's rotation point and, if it was past the intersection, continue your approach and land prior to the intersection. If the rotation point of the large aeroplane was prior to the intersection, it might be best to abandon the landing unless you can assure a landing well before the intersection.

When departing or landing after a large aeroplane has executed a missed approach or a touch-and-go landing, a vortex hazard may exist along the entire runway. Ensure that an interval of at least 2 minutes has elapsed before making your take-off or landing.

Above all, avoid a long dragged-in approach. The largest number of dangerous encounters with wake turbulence has been in the last half mile of the final approach.

Minimizing Risk

In an effort to minimize the hazards of wake turbulence, ATC has established separation minima that are to be applied to landing and departing aircraft. Controllers generally apply a 6 mile radar separation between a heavy jet and a light aeroplane (one that weighs less than 12,500 lbs.) that is following at the same altitude or at less than 1,000 feet below. A light aeroplane is kept at least 4 miles behind a medium sized aeroplane.

In non-radar departures, a minimum of two minutes is required between the departure of a heavy aeroplane and any lighter aeroplane. This will be extended to 3 minutes if the second aeroplane will use more runway than the first or if it is an intersection take-off.

ATC cannot guarantee that wake turbulence will not be encountered. When the tower controller advises, **"Caution Wake Turbulence"**, you are being warned of the possible existence of this phenomenon.

In some situations, the full wake turbulence separation may not be required. Take-off clearance will usually be issued to a pilot who, on his/her own initiative, has requested a waiver of separation. The waiver may, however, be refused to a light aircraft taking off behind a heavy aircraft if the take-off is started from an intersection or a point significantly farther along the runway or if the preceding heavy aircraft made a low or missed approach along the same runway. A request for a waiver indicates to the controller that the pilot accepts responsibility for wake turbulence separation and avoidance. The controller will still issue a wake turbulence caution with the take-off clearance.

Even when the controller advises of the possibility of wake turbulence, it is solely the pilot's responsibility to avoid encountering it. Don't hesitate to ask for further information if you believe it will assist you in analyzing the situation and deciding on a course of action. Even though you have received a clearance to land or take off, if you believe it safer to wait, or to use a different runway, or in some other way to alter your operation, ask the controller for a revised clearance. The controller is interested in the prevention of accidents too and will assist you in any way possible while accomplishing the job of expediting traffic.

10.4.2 Jet Blast Hazard

The area immediately behind jet aeroplanes can be particularly dangerous to small aeroplanes maneuvering on the ground or about to take off or land. Pilots should exercise caution when operating near active runways or taxiways. With the increasing use of intersecting runways, there is always the possibility of jet blast or propeller wash affecting other aircraft.

Light weight aeroplanes with high wings and narrow track undercarriages are particularly susceptible to jet blast accidents. Stay at least 600 feet away from a jumbo jet when its engines are idling and 1,600 feet away from it when it is at full throttle for take-off. Fig.10.32 illustrates the danger areas.

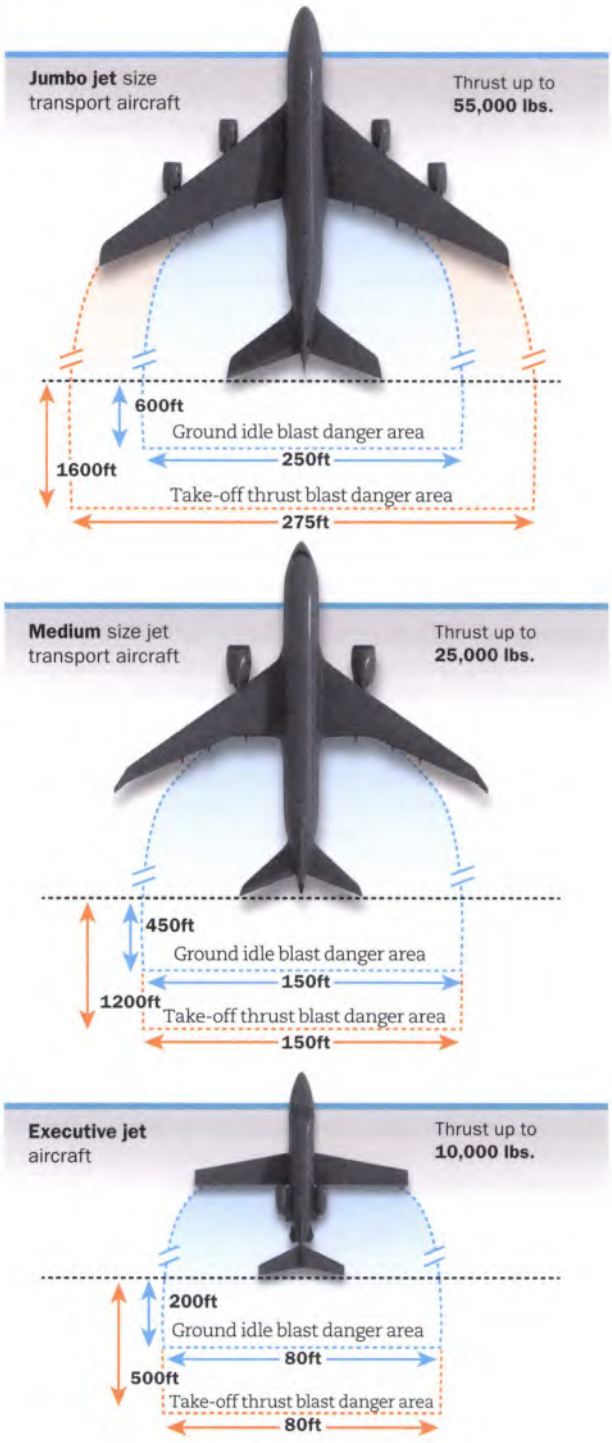


Fig.10.32 **Jet Blast Danger Areas**

10.5 Flight Preparations

Good airmanship involves careful attention to the many facets of preparation for and execution of a flight whether it is a short hop around the circuit or a long cross-country flight.

10.5.1 Preparation for a Flight

Before embarking on any cross-country flight, pilots must prepare and plan carefully. They must confirm that they, as well as their aircraft, are suitably prepared for the flight. Some examples of pre-flight matters to be addressed must include, but by no means be limited to, the following: pilots must ensure (1) that licences and medical certificates are valid; (2) that their current medical fitness is acceptable; (3) that they are current on the type of aircraft to be flown; (4) that required inspections on the aircraft to be flown have been done; (5) that the aircraft's weight and balance is properly calculated, inclusive of passengers and baggage to be carried on board; (6) that the necessary emergency equipment is present, etc.

Once pilots have confirmed such pre-flight fundamentals, they can proceed to an in-depth systematic review of all of the details required to prepare for the flight, including the route to be flown.

Standard items to check are identified below.

FLIGHT PLANNING FORM													
FROM	TO	ALT	I.A.S.	T.A.S.	TRACK (T)	W/V	HDG (T)	VAR	HDG (M)	G/S	DIST	TIME	FUEL

Fig.10.33 **Flight Planning Form**

1. Up-to-date aeronautical charts appropriate for the route of the flight should be obtained (and downloaded if using an electronic flight bag, EFB) and carefully studied to select a route that will take into consideration the nature of the country to be flown over, refuelling points, emergency landing areas, prohibited areas, etc., all of which are factors which influence the selection of a good route. Avoid areas where there is no chance of making a safe forced landing.

   If the flight is to be conducted in accordance with visual flight rules (VFR) by contact navigation (i.e. navigating with reference to landmarks), the track selected should be drawn on the paper chart and its direction measured by a navigation plotter. Distance between checkpoints should be measured, using the mileage scale at the bottom of the chart. The track should then be converted from true to magnetic (applying the variation from the chart) and its direction indicated on the chart by figures above and below the line. Arrows should be used to distinguish between the track out and home. If the flight is to be a long one, the figures should be spotted in at convenient intervals, allowing for changes in variation and for convergency.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

A distance scale should be marked along the track to assist in making groundspeed checks at, say, 50 or 100 mile intervals. Some pilots prefer to mark prominent checkpoints (such as communities, omnirange stations, reporting points, etc.).

Draw 10 degree drift lines on either side of the track opening out from the departure point and closing down into the destination.

The character of the country should be carefully studied, particularly as regards high ground and dangerous obstructions. Outstanding landmarks should be noted.

RADIO FACILITES						
AIRPORT	NAVAID	FREQ	TWR	MF ATF	ATIS	

Fig. 10.34 **Radio Facilities Planning Form**

2. Contact flight service providers to obtain the meteorological information available and access weather information through the Internet. Study the weather map for wind circulation, frontal activity, and the weather over the whole general area in which you intend to fly. (This knowledge will be valuable in case you have to alter your flight plan to an alternate destination.) Check the aerodrome, area and upper winds forecasts, and hourly weather reports along your route.
3. Select the altitude at which you wish to conduct the flight, taking into consideration the winds aloft, high ground and obstructions en route and in the vicinity of landing fields, weather minima for VFR flight, cruising altitude rules.
4. Calculate the true heading to steer and apply the variation to obtain the magnetic heading. Calculate the groundspeed for each leg of the route.
5. Compute the safe and maximum range of your aeroplane. Compute the fuel required, based on the estimated times en route, using the cruise consumption chart in your POH. Select refuelling points.
6. Check suitability of airports, runway patterns and field conditions.
7. Check radio facilities which are available en route and the frequencies on which they operate.
8. Note the time of sunrise and sunset (VFR). Review the latest NOTAM, AIP SUP, AIC. Glance over the airport bulletin board for any helpful postings.
9. Prepare a flight log entering in appropriate sections all the information about the flight, altitude to be flown, track, wind velocity and direction, heading, calculated groundspeed, checkpoints, mileage between checkpoints, radio frequencies for navaids, information about the destination airport and refuelling stops, tower or mandatory frequencies, weather forecast for destination, etc. Forms, such as those shown in Fig.10.33 and Fig.10.34 or electronically generated forms, can be used in preparing your flight log.
10. You are required by Air Regulations to be familiar with pertinent flight information such as navaids, good operating practices, VFR procedures, air traffic control procedures, light gun signals, radio telephone phraseology and techniques, VOR checkpoints, emergency, search and rescue, ESCAT rules, weather information, how and where obtainable.

AIRSPEEDS

Normal Takeoff _____
Normal Climb _____
Best Rate of Climb _____
Best Angle of Climb _____
Max Maneuvering _____
Best Glide _____
Max Flap Extended _____
Max Gear Down _____
Clean Stall _____
Stall with gear and flaps down _____
Never Exceed _____
Normal Approach _____

PERFORMANCE

Takeoff Distance to Clear 50'
Sea Level 15°C _____
5000' ASL 25°C _____

WEIGHT & BALANCE

Center of Gravity Limits
Forward_____Aft _____
Empty Weight _____
Max Takeoff Weight _____
Max Baggage Compartment Weight _____

FUEL & OIL

Fuel Grade _____
Usable Gallons of fuel _____
Consumption per hour 65% at 5000 feet (ISA) _____
Oil Grade _____
Quantity _____

Fig. 10.35 **Aircraft Performance Chart**

11. Note the location of classified airspace (terminal control areas, control zones, etc.). Note the location of specified areas that surround aerodromes at which mandatory frequencies are established. Note Class F airspace (restricted and advisory areas) and air defence identification zones (ADIZ).
12. If the flight is to be conducted VFR at night, check the elevation of the land over which the aeroplane will fly during the climb after takeoff and on the approach to landing. Check also

for obstacles on these flight paths. Plan the flight path to clear all terrain and obstacles.

13. If the flight is to be conducted in accordance with VFR rules but by using only air navigation radio aids, en route low altitude charts and/or the appropriate IFR charts must be used. These charts contain all the distance and en route information necessary for flying from point to point by using radio equipment only.
14. When using paper charts, fold them correctly and place them in the proper sequence in the cockpit. Be sure to carry other charts for areas adjacent to your line of flight. You may need them if you have to fly around bad weather or if you become temporarily lost.
15. Be sure that you are properly licensed and qualified for the particular type of aeroplane you are flying and for the nature of the flight you are about to undertake.
16. See that the aeroplane is properly certified. Ensure that it is serviceable and fit for the flight. Be sure that the mandatory manuals and certificates are on board, along with the licences and/or permits for all members of the crew. See also **Pilot's Inspection Prior to Flight**.
17. Be sure that fuel of the proper grade is on board and that it is sufficient for the flight plus 30 minutes (day) or 45 minutes (night) reserve.
18. Check the load (gross weight must not exceed the authorized limit) and the distribution of the load (to insure that the centre of gravity is within safe limits). Make sure the load is properly secured and does not block the emergency exits.
19. Check the temperature and the elevation of the field. Be sure that runway lengths are adequate if high temperature or high elevation conditions prevail.
20. Review the flight load factors and airspeed limitations as outlined in your Pilot's Operating Handbook.
21. Prepare a table in paper form or in an equivalent electronic format such as that shown in Fig.10.35, showing all the information relating to your aeroplane's performance. Ensure that your route, including all waypoints, are properly and accurately entered into your GPS and any other navigation device.
22. File a flight plan or flight itinerary with ATC or leave a flight itinerary with a responsible person.

A significant percentage of pilots plan their flights using an electronic application, (i.e. an "app"), on a tablet or via an online service. (See also **Smartphones & Tablets** in Chapter **Theory of Flight**.) These apps typically allow for information about a given aircraft to be stored for future flight planning reference. This storing of data about an aircraft – its type, its call-sign, its flight performance data, etc. – accelerates the process of flight planning for actual flights, thereby allowing the app to provide thorough planning information using the data it has stored regarding the aircraft.

Pilots can download all the necessary data pertinent to the flight for which they are preparing. An app that has the intended route of flight superimposed on the display of an electronic VNC allows pilots to zoom in/out as required to best view critical information on the chart. This facility gives pilots the ability to answer important questions regarding their upcoming flight, such as: does the route cross large bodies of water; does it pass through restricted airspace; does it pass through any areas where poor weather is forecast; does it cross inhospitable territory where there are few escapes if mechanical issues arise; does it pass closely to tall obstacles, etc.

If pilots have access to the Internet, most apps will automatically access the winds aloft forecasts and provide information that allows them to make a final decision about the altitudes at which to fly.

Note that, if a pilot's main means of navigation is planned to be by visual reference to objects on the ground, the route on the app's electronic display can always be adjusted. This is typically done by touching a point on the route's electronic display and pulling it across the screen with a fingertip to a new position. In this way, the pilot can easily adjust the app's electronic display to show a flight route that passes over clearly identifiable waypoints that can enhance the visual references while en route. Distinctive towns (preferably with features such as railway tracks or cross-roads), power lines, distinctively shaped lakes, headlands along a shoreline and aerodromes, all make good waypoints.

If the flight is to be made under IFR, then the app will display routes recently cleared by ATC to other aircraft that are similar to the pilot's aircraft of intended use. This makes IFR route selection much easier.

Apps can typically prepare a form for the pilot that they can print and carry, as a hardcopy, during the flight. The form will contain waypoints, distances and anticipated times between them, the estimated heading that is required to fly, the sunrise and sunset times at the point of departure and destination, and the radio frequencies that the pilot will need to use en route. These hardcopy flight logs, generated from the pre-flight electronic data inputs, also typically contain blank frames in which the pilot can record the time that they actually passed over each waypoint while flying.

Once the route and anticipated time en route are established, a full weather briefing from a specialist remains an essential pre-flight protocol. The Internet can give pilots considerable information; their studying of this information before calling flight services is recommended as it will focus the discussion with the flight services specialist resulting in a more informed and streamlined briefing.

Once the route has been selected, a flight plan or a flight itinerary will need to be filed. Some apps will file a flight plan automatically into the NavCanada system once additional information about number of souls aboard and amount of fuel on board has been inputted.

As a weight and balance calculation must be performed before flight, every flight app can not only provide this once the appropriate data is entered into the system, most apps may also provide the means to email the completed weight and balance information to the pilot. This feature allows pilots to meet the regulatory requirement to carry out this calculation and carry it on board during the flight.

If the flight is from Canada to a destination in the USA, pilots must submit a request into the USA's Electronic Advance Passenger Information System (eAPIS: see **Transborder Flights** in Chapter **Air Rules & Procedures**). Most flight apps will advise of this necessity, and many, if not all, may file the eAPIS request on the pilot's behalf. (Some apps may charge a fee for this.)

Pilots should always remember that if they are working on a tablet rather than an online website, they must make sure

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

that the charts they are using are up-to-date. This should also apply to a downloaded Canada Flight Supplement (CFS): the latest version should always be in use by the pilot. Often the manual action of tapping an "Update Charts" button within the app is all that is needed to download the latest documents.

10.5.2 Pilot's Inspection Prior to Flight

A careful inspection of the aeroplane should be carried out prior to flight.

This inspection guide is applicable to almost any single-engine or light twin-engine aeroplane, **provided** it is modified to suit the aeroplane type and the manufacturer's recommendations.

This checklist and all others in this manual are representative only. Always refer to and follow the recommendations of the manufacturer in carrying out any inspections and procedures. Individual models of aeroplane may have special procedures and inspection guidelines that will vary from those published in this manual.

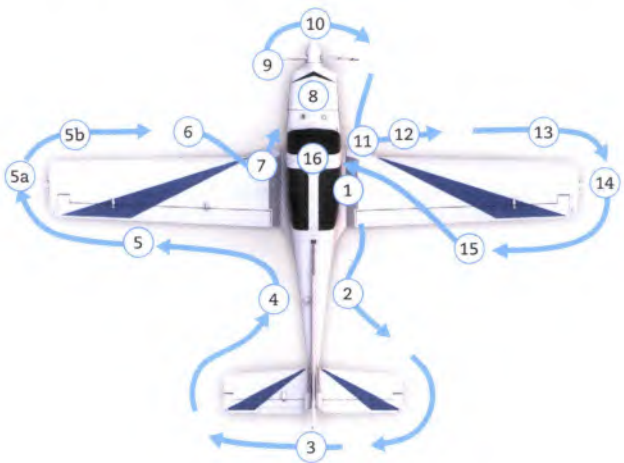


Fig.10.36 **Preflight Inspection**

The circled numbers in Fig.10.36 correspond to the numbers indicated on the list below. By following the numerically indicated route, a systematic inspection of the aeroplane can be accomplished. Stand off and observe the general overall appearance of the aeroplane for obvious defects.

1. Cockpit/Cabin.
   - Battery and ignition switches — OFF.
   - Control locks — REMOVE.
   - Landing gear switch — gear DOWN position.
2. Fuselage.
   - Baggage compartment — contents properly secured and within the safe C.G. limits, that is, not too far forward or too far back to upset the trim. Airspeed static source — free from obstructions. Condition of covering — missing or loose rivets, cracks, tears in fabric, etc.
   - Anticollision and navigation lights — condition and security.
   - Avionics antennae (nav com, VOR, transponder, marker beacon, glideslope, GPS, ELT) — cracks, oil or dirt, proper mounting and damage.
3. Empennage.
   - De-icer boots — condition and security.
   - Control surface locks — REMOVE.
   - Fixed and movable control surfaces — dents, cracks, excess play, hinge pins and bolts for security and condition.
   - Tailwheel — spring, steering arms and chains, tire inflation, and condition.
   - Lights — navigation and anticollision lights for condition and security.
4. Fuselage.
   - Same as Item 2.
5. Wing.
   - Control surface locks — REMOVE.
   - Control surfaces, including flaps — dents, cracks, excess play, hinge pins and bolts for security and condition.
   - General condition of wings and covering — torn fabric, bulges or wrinkles, ripples, loose or missing rivets, etc.
   - 5a. Wing tip and navigation light — security and damage.
   - 5b. De-icer boots — general condition and security.
   - Landing light — condition, cleanliness, and security.
   - Stall warning vane — freedom of movement. Prior to inspection, turn the master switch ON so that the stall warning signal can be checked when the vane is deflected.
6. Landing gear.
   - Wheels and brakes — condition and security, indications of fluid leakage at fittings, fluid lines and adjacent area.
   - Tires — cuts, bruises, excessive wear, and proper inflation.
   - Oleos and shock struts — cleanliness and proper inflation.
   - Shock cords — general condition.
   - Wheel fairing — general condition and security. On streamlined wheel fairings, look inside for an accumulation of mud, ice, etc.
   - Limit and position switches — security, cleanliness, and condition.
   - Ground safety locks — REMOVE.
   - Seaplanes: floats — remove float covers and inspect for water. Pump out with bilge pump if necessary.
7. Fuel tank.
   - Fuel quantity in tank — visually check the tanks to verify the amount and the correct grade or type of fuel. The fuel quantity must be sufficient to allow the aircraft to fly for a period of 30 minutes beyond the destination airport (in VFR flight by day) and for 45 minutes beyond the destination airport (in VFR flight at night).
   - Fuel tank filler cap and fairing covers — secure.
   - Fuel tank vents — obstructions. If the fuel tank is equipped with a quick or snap-type drain valve, drain a sufficient amount of fuel into a container to check for the presence of water and sediment.
   - Drain cocks — make sure they open and close properly. No drips.

8. Engine.
   - Engine oil quantity — secure filler cap and dipstick. General condition and evidence of fuel and oil leaks.
   - Cowling, access doors, and cowl flaps — condition and security.
   - Carburetor air filter — cleanliness and security.
   - Exhaust stacks — check for cracks and studs for tightness.
   - Spark plugs — check terminals for security and cleanliness.
   - Engine mount — for cracks and security. Drain a sufficient quantity of fuel from the main fuel strainer (often referred to as the filter bowl or gascalator) to determine that there is no water or sediment remaining in the system.
   - When closing the cowling, be sure to inspect cowling and baffle seals to assure that they are snug and in place. This is important to assure proper cooling of the engine.
9. Nose landing gear.
   - Wheel and tire — cuts, bruises, excessive wear, and proper inflation.
   - Oleo and shock strut — proper inflation and cleanliness.
   - Wheel well and fairing — general condition and security.
   - Limit and position switches — cleanliness and security.
   - Ground safety lock — REMOVE.
10. Propeller.
    - Propeller and spinner — security, oil leakage, and condition. Be particularly observant for deep nicks and scratches.
    - Assure that the ground area under the propeller is free of loose stones, cinders, etc.
11. Fuel tank.
    - Same as Item 7.
12. Landing gear.
    - Same as Item 6.
13. Pitot.
    - Pitot cover — REMOVE.
    - Pitot and static ports — remove obstructions.
    - General condition and alignment.
14. Wing.
    - Same at Item 5, 5a, and 5b.
15. Cockpit.
    - Cleanliness — see that there are no loose articles which might foul controls, or cause distracting noises.
    - Windshield and windows — obvious defects and cleanliness.
    - Safety belt and shoulder harness — condition and security. See that there is a safety belt for every passenger. Secure belts in unoccupied seats.
    - Fire fighting equipment — check cabin fire extinguisher for capacity and ease of release from its holder and for availability to each crew member. A hand-held fire extinguisher in the cockpit should be of a type suitable for extinguishing any fire that is likely to occur and that is designed to minimize toxic gas concentrations.
    - Emergency exits — not obstructed by disposable load.
    - First aid kit (mandatory) — on board and accessible.
    - Timepiece that is readily available to every crew member.
    - Flashlight, if the flight is to be conducted at night.
    - Tablet and smartphone mounts — securely fastened, unobstructing of panel instruments, switches, flight controls, and away from heat and/or glare of direct sunlight.
    - ELT — secure in mounting, connections tight, general condition and security (no corrosion), antenna secure, annual recertification completed and current, battery not time-expired, ELT switch in ARMED position.
    - Appropriate charts on board or downloaded and readily accessible. Where the aircraft will be operated VFR Over The Top, in night VFR flight or IFR flight, all necessary and latest charts and publications (including the latest CFS) covering the route of the proposed flight and any possible diversionary route must be on board.
    - Cockpit checklists or placards that enable the aircraft to be operated in normal, abnormal or emergency conditions in accordance with the limitations specified in the Aircraft Operating Handbook. These include checklists for pre-start, pre-take-off, post-take-off, pre-landing and emergency procedures. The emergency checklist shall include emergency operation of fuel, hydraulic, electrical and mechanical systems, engine inoperative procedures and any other procedures necessary to ensure the safety of the flight and passengers.
    - Mandatory documents on board — certificate of registration, certificate of airworthiness (or flight permit relating to the flight), journey logbook, the Aircraft Operating Manual, radio equipment licence, licence of each crew member, radio operator's licence, certificate of insurance. Regulations require that a copy of the procedures to be followed in the event of interception be carried on board. Also have on board any special authorization for the flight (e.g. authorization for an employee to collect expenses for flying on business). Check that the C of A is valid and that the aeroplane has been signed out within the required period.
    - Survival equipment — on board. It shall include survival equipment sufficient for the survival on the ground of each person on board, given the geographical area, the season of the year and the anticipated climatic variations. The survival equipment shall include the means of starting a fire, providing shelter, purifying water and visually signalling distress. (See also **Survival Equipment** in Chapter **Aeronautical Rules & Procedures**.)
    - Adjust rudder pedals so that full rudder travel may be assured.
    - Parking brake — SET.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

- Check all instruments for proper reading and, where applicable, fluid levels (turn and bank and compass).
- Landing gear and flap switches or levers in proper position.
- Check all switches and controls.
- Check fuel selector valve to be sure it is moving freely.
- Trim tabs — SET.
- Pilot's seat — LOCKED.

16. Cabin Briefing.
    - Operation of seat belts — how to secure and how to release.
    - Securing of seat backs and chair tables, where applicable.
    - Stowage of carry-on baggage.
    - Smoking limitations — when smoking is permitted, if at all.
    - Location of normal and emergency exits — how to operate door handles.
    - In the case of an over-water flight, the location and use of personal flotation devices and life preservers.
    - In the case of a flight that will require the use of oxygen, the location and the use of oxygen equipment.
    - Crash position, location of fire extinguishers, first aid kit, ELT — how to operate.
    - Emergency procedures should be outlined on cards which passengers should be advised to read so they can act knowledgeably and positively if an emergency situation should arise.

It is extremely important to carry out a thorough preflight inspection before every flight. Small clues indicating a malfunctioning or damaged component may easily be missed in a hurried preflight check. The extra effort involved in not just looking at but really inspecting every part of the aeroplane may make the difference between a safe flight and one that ends in an accident. The time to be even more vigilant is after a maintenance, painting or modification job has been performed on the aeroplane. It is, unfortunately, not uncommon for components to be reinstalled incorrectly.

10.5.3 Cockpit Check Prior to Flight

A systematic and careful cockpit check should also be carried out prior to flight.

1. Do a complete run-up of the engine as described in the Chapter **Aero Engines**.

   During the run-up of the engine and especially when checking the engine for correct and normal operation, if there is any indication that the engine(s) is malfunctioning, under no circumstances should you attempt to take off. There is only one course of action in such a circumstance and that is to return to the ramp and conduct a thorough investigation as to the possible cause of the malfunction. The trouble may be serious, such as wrong fuel in the tanks or air leaks in the fuel line plumbing. If you attempt to take off knowing that the engine(s) is not operating smoothly, you are inviting disaster. Power failure is very likely to occur at the most critical phase of the take-off or during the initial climb.

2. Check all instruments systematically (usually from left to right) and adjust each as they are checked if adjustment is necessary. For example: Set the altimeter setting on the altimeter and check that the height indicated is the elevation of the airport (plus or minus 50 to 75 feet). If the altimeter setting is not known, set the airport elevation under the indicator needle. Wind the clock and set the correct time, etc.
3. Check hydraulics to assure the proper pressure reading on the gauge.
4. Set trim tabs of both elevator and rudder to take-off position according to the particular load and C.G. of the aeroplane.
5. Mixture — Full rich (unless high elevation of the airport requires slight leaning).
6. Carburetor heat — COLD (unless atmospheric conditions necessitate heat).
7. Pitch — Propeller in full fine for take-off.
8. Fuel — Check the fuel gauge(s) for the proper quantity of fuel in each tank and adjust the fuel selector to the proper tank for take-off. Adjust cross feed and booster pumps. Primer locked. Be sure that you have enough fuel for the flight you are planning plus the reserve fuel that is required by regulations.
9. Flaps — Adjust to take-off position.
10. Switches — Magneto ON. Generator ON. Anti-collision beacon ON. Pitot heat, navigation lights etc., as required.
11. Gyros — Adjust the heading indicator to the runway heading. Adjust the attitude indicator if necessary. Allow 5 minutes after engine start for gyros of vacuum operated instruments to reach normal operating speed. Allow 3 minutes if the gyros are electrically driven. If the gyro instruments are Venturi driven, only after the aeroplane is well established in flight will the instruments give reliable indications.
12. Cowl Flaps — Adjust cowl flaps to take-off position.
13. Arm the ELT if you have not already done so. Listen on 121.5 MHz to make sure that the ELT is not transmitting.
14. Safety belts of all passengers and crew fastened. No smoking.
15. Parking brake off. Tailwheel lock adjusted. Water rudders up (seaplanes).
16. Doors and windows or canopy top — Closed and secure.
17. Check freedom of all controls — ailerons, elevators and rudders. While moving the control column and rudder pedals, check that the control surfaces are responding in the proper direction of travel. This check is especially important if the aeroplane has undergone maintenance during which the control connections have been adjusted or removed and reinstalled. It is not unheard of for the controls to be reinstalled in reverse.

The cockpit check should be made **deliberately without haste from a written check list**. A definite sequence should be followed, moving clockwise around the cockpit. Touch each control with your hand and name it aloud. For Example: "Trim Tabs — Flaps — Fine Pitch", etc. With larger and more

sophisticated types of aeroplane, the cockpit check becomes more and more involved. On some large transport aircraft, the cockpit check requires several typewritten pages to list. Always work from a written, not a memorized, checklist no matter how small your aeroplane. You may be interrupted while doing your chores by a radio call, forget where you left off and overlook some vitally important procedure.

There are many checklists relating to the various phases in the operation of an aeroplane. There are checklists for pre-flight, before starting engines, engine starts, before taxiing, engine run-up, before take-off, take-off and climb, cruise, descent, before landing, aborted landing, after landing and after shutdown, as well as checklists relating to emergency situations. Small, single-engine aeroplanes may use only a portion of these. Larger, multi-engine aeroplanes may use them all. Whatever checklists are prepared for your aeroplane, make a habit of always using them during the phases of operation to which they apply.

10.5.4 Take-Off Procedure

Taxiing an aeroplane is an elementary operation, the first thing a student pilot is taught. Nevertheless, no pilot should become complacent about the procedure. It is always necessary to pay close attention to the control of the aeroplane. Taxi slowly enough that the aeroplane will stop instantly when the brakes are applied, slowly enough that it will stop on its own when the throttle is closed. Always check the brakes before moving more than a few metres. Keep a sharp lookout outside of the cockpit and have someone on the ground guide you through any area where the clearance seems marginal. Avoid taxiing too closely behind large turbine powered aeroplanes. Be very careful taxiing in conditions of high winds and gusts.

You are responsible for ensuring that there is no likelihood of collision with another aircraft or vehicle, both during taxi and during take-off, and that the aerodrome is suitable for your intended operation.

Uncontrolled Airports

At an uncontrolled airport at which a mandatory frequency has been designated, always follow the procedures for reporting your intentions to the FSS or CARS operating the MF. If an aerodrome traffic frequency has been designated, report your intentions to the operator of the ATF or broadcast your intentions blind. See **Mandatory Frequency** and **Aerodrome Traffic Frequency** in the Chapter **Aeronautical Rules & Procedures**.

Always taxi downwind to the **extreme end** of the field or runway to take off. By doing this, the full length of the runway is available for the take-off run if it is needed. This practice is a good habit to cultivate. One day, in a short field on a hot day, you will be glad to have every foot of the runway to use. In a seaplane, it is wise to allow at least twice the distance that is really required for the take-off run.

Make a final check of the instruments and everything in the cockpit again. Make a conscientious visual check of the approach path to the runway to see that no aeroplanes are approaching to land. Report your departure intentions on the MF or ATF.

Trim the stabilizer properly for take-off and turn and take off into the wind.

Controlled Airports

WITH RADIO

If your aeroplane is radio equipped, taxi instructions will be given to you verbally by the tower. If you have been authorized to taxi to the runway in use, taxi to the indicated holding position on the taxi strip. If there is no indicated holding position marked, taxi to a position approximately 200 feet from the boundary of the runway in use to do your engine run-up and cockpit check. (You may taxi across non-active runways without further authorization from the tower to reach the runway in use unless otherwise instructed.) Turn at an angle of about 45° to the taxi strip to do your engine run-up in case there may be another aeroplane behind you. When you have made your cockpit check, request a take-off clearance from the tower. (Radio traffic procedures are described in the Chapter **Radio**.)

If requesting take-off clearance from an intersection, it is your responsibility as pilot to ensure that the portion of runway available to you is sufficient for the requirements of your aeroplane. The tower controller bases his/her authorization on the existing traffic, noise abatement rules, etc., and not on the capabilities of your aeroplane.

If you have approached a runway at an intersection but wish to back track on that runway to achieve enough runway length for take-off, you must indicate your intentions to the tower and obtain a clearance for the maneuver prior to entering the runway.

Sometimes, to expedite the movement of traffic, the controller in giving take-off clearance includes the word "immediate". On acceptance of the clearance, you must taxi onto the runway and take off in a continuous movement. If, however, in your opinion, this action would affect your operation, you should refuse the clearance and request a static take-off (i.e. a full stop in position prior to starting the take-off roll). There is documented evidence that the loss of an engine on take-off has been caused by an air gap in the fuel system occasioned by the centrifugal force of the tight turn onto the runway leaving the fuel tank line momentarily exposed.

Always turn left after take-off, unless otherwise authorized by the tower.

WITHOUT RADIO (NORDO)

If your aeroplane is not fitted with radio, you must inform the control tower of your intentions and make arrangements for visual signals. Do your engine run-up and cockpit check on the apron before taxiing to the runway. (The apron is a surfaced area in front of the hangars, sometimes referred to as the tarmac.) When ready for take-off, taxi to position on the taxi strip approximately 200 feet from the boundary line of the runway in use. Turn your aeroplane toward the tower to attract the attention of the controller. Wait for the steady green light signal to proceed onto the runway and take off.

Light Indication	Meaning
Steady Green Light	Clear to take-off.
Flashing Green Light	Clear to taxi, but do not take off.
Steady Red Light (or Red Flare)	Stop. Do not taxi.
Flashing Red Light	Taxi clear of the landing area in use.
Flashing White Light	Return to the ramp or hangar.
Flashing Red and Green Light (U.S.)	Danger. Be on alert.
Blinking Runway Lights	Vehicles and pedestrians are to vacate the runway immediately.

Fig. 10.37 **Light Signals to Aircraft**

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Acknowledge reception of visual signals by the full movement of the rudder or ailerons of your aeroplane at least 3 times in succession or by taxiing the aeroplane to the authorized position.

If your aeroplane is equipped with a receiver only (RONLY), before embarking on the flight, you must advise the tower, preferably by telephone, of this fact. The tower will then transmit clearances and instructions to you on the tower frequency rather than use light signals. Otherwise, the procedures that apply to NORDO aeroplanes apply also to RONLY aeroplanes.

Take-Off Considerations

Be sure, before beginning your take-off run, that you have given full consideration to the effect on your take-off of the following: gross weight and centre of gravity, density altitude, wind direction and velocity, runway conditions, ground effect and emergency procedures in the event of power failure.

It is difficult for controllers to track the many aircraft and vehicles moving on the maneuvering areas of the airport, especially at large airports. Practice ground safety awareness by proceeding with caution when approaching any other taxiway or runway. Always communicate clearly and listen to the other traffic on your frequency. If you have received a clearance that you do not understand, ask for clarification. Have your checks completed and be ready for take-off before requesting it. When cleared for take-off, move onto the active runway decisively and take off, so as not to spoil the timing of the controller and other pilots who are anticipating your action.

After take-off, maintain a listening watch on the appropriate frequency for aerodrome control communications and keep a watchful eye on other aerodrome traffic to avoid potential collision situations.

10.5.5 En Route Procedure

While en route, systematic checks should be carried out.

1. Note the time of take-off in the journey log. Conform to the traffic circuit procedures for departing the circuit. When well clear of the circuit traffic, turn on to the desired heading. Climb to the selected altitude, adjusting the power and the mixture in accordance with the manufacturer's operating instructions. During the climb, check the instruments regularly. On reaching the desired altitude, level off and adjust the power and mixture as necessary.
2. Check distance, time and groundspeed by D.R. navigation as detailed in the Chapter **Air Navigation** or by radio aids as detailed in the Chapter **Radio Navigation**. If using GPS, check groundspeed given on the GPS with the groundspeed estimated during the flight planning. If the actual groundspeed is slower than planned, ensure you have sufficient fuel for the flight, make course corrections and revise your ETA as necessary. Keep a log of the progress of the flight and record the time over all planned checkpoints/waypoints.
3. Fly straight-and-level when checking headings on the magnetic compass. Reset the heading indicator frequently.
4. Avoid thunderstorms. Take appropriate action if this is unavoidable. Avoid turbulent air if possible. If unavoidable, slow the aeroplane to the recommended maneuvering speed. Do not get stranded over a cloud layer. Avoid the wake of large aeroplanes.
5. Check the weather, as you go, by radio, via onboard realtime display, or observation. Listen for the weather reports from stations en route. Maintain a continuous listening watch for en route advisories, SIGMET and AIRMET. Flight information service does provide information regarding unfavourable weather developing along your route, thunderstorms, icing, unserviceability of radio aids, airports or other hazards to safety providing you contact an ATC unit prior to take-off or en route.
6. Apply carburetor heat, windscreen defroster, wing de-icers when necessary.
7. Observe air traffic rules, especially those dealing with distance from cloud (both vertically and horizontally), visibility, cruising altitudes both on and off airways, weather minima in control zones and other controlled airspace.
8. Keep a constant lookout for other aircraft. If your aircraft is equipped with ADS-B In, then this will display the position of any nearby aircraft fitted with ADS-B Out, either on a panel-mounted display or on a tablet.
9. Keep an accurate check on fuel consumption, constantly.
10. Observe wind and weather changes.
11. Report to communications stations en route any unusual weather conditions encountered, or observed, as an aid to other pilots, i.e. provide PIREP.
12. Keep a lookout for bad weather and fly around it if possible. If this is impracticable, turn back. (Remember that weather information displayed on a tablet, while being very useful, may be out of date.)
13. Check your flight and engine instruments frequently. Be sure you understand altimeter setting and altimeter errors thoroughly. Compute true airspeed based on indicated airspeed, outside air temperature and pressure altitude.
14. Report time over intermediate stations en route. This is good practice if you intend to acquire an instrument rating later on: it also provides the search and rescue service with a clue as to your whereabouts if you fail to arrive at your destination. Stay away from any area classified as Class F Airspace.
15. If the flight is being conducted at a high altitude, calculate the point at which to begin a gradual descent that will result in arrival at the destination airport at approximately circuit height. A gradual descent avoids rapid power-off letdowns that contribute to carburetor icing. During such a gradual descent, the aeroplane is able to pick up a bit of airspeed and consequently a better groundspeed which in turn gives a better en route time.

10.5.6 Landing Procedure

On approach to destination, contact the ATC facility that is appropriate for that airport (i.e. terminal area controller, approach control, control tower) several miles outside the boundaries of the classified airspace. If an ATIS broadcast is available, listen to it first and note the information. Follow the instructions of the control facility.

If the airport has no control facilities but does have a designated mandatory frequency or aerodrome traffic frequency, report on the MF or ATF 5 nautical miles before you reach the specified area and again when you have joined the traffic circuit.

If the airport is uncontrolled and has no published frequency, keep a careful watch for other traffic and monitor 123.2 MHz and report your own intentions on this frequency. Observe the wind T or windsock and note the direction of traffic. Conform to the standard procedure for traffic circuits at uncontrolled airports. See also **Aerodrome Traffic Procedures** in Chapter **Aeronautical Rules & Procedures**.

When operating in the vicinity of an aerodrome, you must conform to the traffic pattern that is published for that aerodrome or that is formed by other aircraft in operation there. You must be observant of other traffic for the purpose of avoiding collision.

Pre-Landing Check

1. Fuel. Check gauges as to contents of fuel tanks. Pressures. Tank selectors, cross-feed, booster pump(s) as required.
2. Parking brake off.
3. Gear down. (Amphibians, as applicable)
4. Water rudders up. (Seaplanes)
5. Mixture rich.
6. Fine pitch.
7. Carburetor heat. Check. Set as required.
8. Flaps. As recommended.
9. Safety belts fastened. No smoking.

Be sure, before beginning your descent towards a landing, that you have given full consideration to conditions which might affect the landing: proper approach speed, gross weight and centre of gravity, density altitude, wind direction and velocity and gustiness, runway conditions, runway slope.

Landing & Post-Landing Procedures

1. Keep a sharp look out for other aircraft. Be ready to pull up and go around if necessary.
2. Adhere strictly to approach speeds and flap settings recommended for the aeroplane.
3. In rain and in winter, be prepared for adverse braking conditions. Many airports prepare reports on the condition of the runway and report these to pilots on request.
4. Touch down as near the threshold as possible to have as much runway as possible for the ground run, especially on a slippery runway or when the density altitude is high.
5. Be thoroughly familiar with traffic control light signals as they apply to traffic both on the ground and in the air and be prepared to comply with any signal directed to you.
6. Clear the active runway as quickly as possible.
7. Taxi with the utmost caution to the parking area.
8. Monitor 121.5 MHz just before shutting down your engine to be sure that your ELT has not been inadvertently activated.
9. Record your flight time and air time.
10. Close your flight plan by filing an arrival report with ATC.

    If air traffic control fails to receive an arrival report within a reasonable time, you will be assumed lost and a costly search and rescue operation will commence.
11. Refuel the tanks and service your aeroplane.
12. Tie the aeroplane down securely if hangar storage is not available. Put wing covers and engine covers on if the aeroplane is to be stored in the open in a cold climate.

Post-Flight Inspection

A post-flight inspection is a recommended practice for small aeroplanes as well as for large ones. Mechanical deficiencies which arise during a flight can best be identified and attended to at the completion of the flight. It is an ideal time to check the condition of the aeroplane, noting signs of strain or wear.

Condition	Cause
Wrinkled skin	could indicate internal structural damage as a result of exposure to severe turbulence or excessive airspeeds.
Metal damage	from stones or other debris. Propellers are especially vulnerable.
Mud or ice	that clogs small openings such as the pitot pressure source or vent holes.
Tire surfaces	scuffing and tearing of tires may occur as a result of poor runway conditions.
Uneven landing gear extension	could be caused by the loss of tire pressure, improper hydraulic pressure in struts.
Fuel stains	or other signs of leakage of fuel, oil or hydraulic fluid.

Fig. 10.38 **Post-Flight Inspection Conditions & Causes**

Your experience during the flight may indicate other potential trouble areas. Excessive fuel consumption may indicate a problem with the seating of the fuel caps, with the fuel drains or line fittings. Look for oil drips if the oil consumption was high. Check out any other condition that was abnormal during the flight.

10.5.7 Braking Technique

Excessive braking shortens the life of the brakes and the aircraft tires. Therefore, aeroplanes should not be taxied at excessive speeds with unnecessarily high throttle settings that require use of brakes to maintain control.

Excessive landing speeds also result in accelerated tire wear and increase the possibility that excessive braking may be required to bring the aeroplane to a stop. If you have landed with too much speed and the tower then calls for a short turn-off or if the runway is short or if a vehicle or aeroplane unexpectedly enters the runway, heavy braking will be required to comply with the situation.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Don't begin to brake as soon as you touch down. Right after touchdown, the aeroplane is still producing lift and the application of brakes has no effect on slowing the aeroplane. Aerodynamic drag is the major factor in slowing the aeroplane in the first quarter of its speed decay. Brakes become increasingly effective as airspeed and lift decrease. Once the aeroplane has slowed to at least 75% of its touchdown speed, rolling friction and the use of brakes will bring the aeroplane to a stop.

Form the habit of landing at the proper recommended speed and touching down at the end of the runway so that excessive braking will not be required.

In nosewheel aeroplanes, lower the nosewheel gently to the runway as quickly as possible after touchdown to reduce wing lift. Be sure to fully close the throttle so that there is no extra power counteracting the stopping process. Apply the brakes smoothly and firmly. For the brakes to be most effective, it is necessary to keep as much weight as possible on the main gear wheels. Therefore, while braking, apply some back pressure on the control wheel. Under conditions of deceleration, braking and rolling friction, there is a nosedown pitching force that transfers the weight of the aeroplane to the nosewheel rather than keeping it on the main gear where it is most effective. Do not, however, apply so much back pressure that the nosewheel is lifted off the ground. You need it to steer the aeroplane.

Maintaining positive brake pressure until the aircraft has come to a stop is preferable to pumping the brakes. The former technique results in a shorter landing distance. More significant, however, is the fact that the constant brake pressure allows the brake system to absorb more heat before reaching the point at which the brake fluid would boil.

If brake discs are subjected to excessive heat during a landing, the brake discs may cone (become distorted). As the disc starts to cone, the clearance between the disc and the linings decreases, causing non-uniform pressure distribution and poor braking action. Excessive heat energy is generated if the brakes do not have sufficient time to cool between successive applications (as in two landings within a short time span of each other). This residual energy is stored in the disc and is added to the heat energy created during the next brake application. The resulting high temperature may exceed the brake insulation threshold and cause the brake fluid behind the brake cylinder pistons to boil. Continued brake application will produce excessive pedal travel and poor brake response. Brake fluid will sustain a higher temperature without boiling when it is under pressure. If it is close to its boiling point when under pressure, when the pressure is removed, the brake fluid will boil. It is for this reason that pumping the brakes is an inadvisable technique.

Braking is reduced by sliding wheels. In addition, directional control is jeopardized. During braking, take care not to lock the wheels. Braking effectiveness drops significantly in a skid. To make matters worse, tires can be easily damaged in a skid.

Braking action is virtually non-existent on wet sod or wet runways or on frosted or icy runways. Landing rolls will be substantially increased under such conditions when brakes can be expected to be ineffective.

Braking problems can best be avoided by the use of proper speeds during taxi, landing and take-off and by proper maintenance. Mostly, aeroplane brakes are trouble free. However, if the aeroplane flies less than 200 hours per year and if it is exposed to unusual amounts of moisture, salt or industrial chemicals, corrosion and rust will contaminate the discs. The prime component of the brake system is the hydraulic fluid. It transmits pressure and energy but also lubricates and cools the moving parts. Obviously, the hydraulic fluid must always be at full capacity. But it is also important to use the exact type of brake fluid specified by the manufacturer. Mixing fluids may render the system useless. Some brake fluids may actually dissolve the rubber seals of incompatible systems. In addition, the fluid must be kept clean. Particles of dirt can render the system inoperative.

Tire Pressure

Tire pressure has a direct bearing on the life span and general condition of tires during their useful life. Both overinflation and underinflation result in external signs of misuse and may cause structural damage that leads to blow-outs.

Because they sustain a considerable impact on landing, aircraft tires are designed to have much more flex than automobile tires. Underinflation, however, imposes additional flexing that builds up internal heat that may cause material damage to the inner lining and sidewalls. Worse still, in one known case, the heat from underinflated tires led to the breakout of fire that caused the crash of a passenger-carrying airline and considerable loss of life.

Low pressure can also allow a tube-type tire to slip on the rim, resulting in valve shear. Underinflation makes tires more susceptible to hydroplaning and loss of control on wet surfaces.

Ambient temperature has a direct bearing on tire pressure. There is about one psi (lb. per square inch) of pressure loss for every 2°C to 3°C drop in temperature. In a country like Canada where there can be wide ranges of temperature during one 24 hour period, a very significant loss of tire pressure can take place overnight on a particularly cold night.

Aircraft tires are designed for an optimum pressure and this level should be maintained as closely as possible. Be alert to possible tire pressure loss as a result of seasonal temperature changes, slow leakage developing after a hard landing or terrain damage during taxiing. Acquire a tire gauge and check your tire pressure regularly.

10.5.8 Landing Errors

Unstable Approach

An unstable approach is an approach to landing wherein the pilot fails to keep the aircraft within reasonable limits of certain parameters that would ensure the safety of the landing. The parameters that require stabilizing are: airspeed, angle of descent, rate of descent, and aircraft landing configuration (such as flap settings and trim settings). Unstable approaches are considered as causal factors in a significant number of landing accidents not least of which are runway over-runs or aircraft that land short of their intended runway. It is, therefore, crucially important for pilots to understand the stabilized approach concept to avoid the potentially lethal consequences of this type of landing error.

The concept of a stabilized approach is that in which the pilot establishes and maintains a constant angled glidepath toward an identified aiming point on the landing runway surface with the aircraft in the desired configuration. By his/her use of good judgement culled from visual cues, a stabilized approach depends on the pilot's maintenance of a constant final descent airspeed coordinated with the aircraft's configuration for that airspeed. Done correctly, little floating results in the

flare, and the true aiming point and the desired touchdown point end up nearer to being coincident.

For all practical purposes, at a given pitch attitude there is only one power setting for one airspeed, one flap setting, and one wind condition. A change in any one of these variables requires an appropriate coordinated change in the other controllable variables.

If there is any indication to the pilot that their aiming point on the runway is not where they desire it to be, an adjustment must be made to the glidepath. This in turn moves the aiming point. If, for example, the aiming point is short of the desired touchdown point putting the aircraft on a path to an undershoot, an increase in pitch attitude and engine power must be made while ensuring that a constant airspeed is maintained. Balanced correctly, this results in a shallowing of the glidepath with the aiming point moving toward the desired touchdown point. Conversely, if the aiming point is farther down the runway than the desired touchdown point, the glidepath must be steepened by a simultaneous decrease in pitch attitude and power to avoid the probability of an overshoot. Once again, the airspeed must be held constant when these adjustments are contiguously made.

When the pitch attitude and airspeed have been stabilized, the aeroplane must be re-trimmed to relieve the pressures being held on the controls. Once the approach is properly set up and stable, it is essential that the pilot continuously and proactively monitor the aircraft's approach status so as to ensure that its stability is maintained throughout the approach sequence to touchdown. While doing so, the pilot can focus their attention on the scanning of outside references to aid in any minimally required fine-tuning of control and throttle inputs during this culminating phase of their flight.

It is essential that deviations from the desired glidepath be detected early so that pilots need only make slight and minimal adjustments to its trajectory. The closer the aeroplane gets to the runway, the larger and more frequent required corrections can become if not dealt with in the initial phases of the approach. The more the frequency of adjustments, and the greater their amplitude, the greater the approach will creep towards becoming unstable and, thus, unsafe.

Pilots must never try to stretch a glide by applying back-elevator pressure to reach the desired landing spot. This shortens the gliding distance if power is not added simultaneously. A proper angle of descent and airspeed is maintained by coordinating pitch attitude changes and power changes. When the approach is too high, reduce power and lower the nose. When the approach is too low, add power and raise the nose. Crucially, if the aircraft is not stabilized by 200 ft AGL, then the decision must be taken to overshoot the runway and a go-around must be performed. (See section **Go-around/Overshoot** further in this chapter.)

The errors that are conducive to unstable approaches are many. They can occur in the downwind phase of the flight, in the base phase of the flight, in the base-to-final turn phase, and/or in the final approach phase. Typical errors that can occur are:

- Failure to complete the landing checklist in a timely manner during the downwind phase.
- Failure to adequately stabilize the aircraft's configuration when flaps are extended.
- Failure to anticipate and correct for wind drift on the base leg.
- Failure to prevent a flat or skidding turn from the base leg to the final approach as a result of inadequate correction for the wind.
- Failure to prevent an overshooting or undershooting of the turn onto final approach as a result of too steep or too shallow a turn from the base leg.
- Poor coordination of controls during the turn from the base leg to the final approach.
- Poor trim technique on the final approach.
- Poor altitude control on the final approach resulting from use of elevator alone.
- Focusing attention too close to the aeroplane resulting in a flare that is too high.
- Focusing attention too far from the aeroplane resulting in a flare that is too low.

Planning for the approach in advance is critical: pilots must have a plan for their airspeed, their flap settings, their power settings, their descent rate and their touchdown point. Good planning in advance of their arrival into the downwind will contribute to an effective stable approach. If the plans, however, go awry – for instance, the aircraft is too high, too low, too fast, or drifting off the centreline – it is important that the pilot recognizes these signs and that a go-around is initiated without delay.

Wheelbarrowing

Low wing aeroplanes with steerable nose gear are most susceptible to the pilot error of wheelbarrowing, although any tricycle gear aeroplane can be put into this unfavourable attitude.

It occurs when the pilot has inadvertently thrust too much weight onto the nosewheel. Loss of directional or braking control is the usual result.

Wheelbarrowing usually occurs when the pilot uses excess speed while making an approach in a full flap configuration. He/she may, in this situation, touch down with little or no rotation and then may try to hold the aeroplane on the ground with forward pressure on the control column. As a result, the main wheels are carrying insufficient weight for normal braking response. In winter, when snow or ice make the runway pavement more slippery than usual, the problem is compounded.

Some wheelbarrowing accidents have occurred, under strong crosswind conditions, when the pilot is using the slip method of drift correction.

If there is sufficient runway remaining with no obstructions, the best corrective action is probably a go-around. If this is not possible, close the throttle and ease the column to aft of the normal position. This action may lighten the load on the nose gear and put sufficient weight on the main gear to achieve normal braking response.

The chief cause of wheelbarrowing on take-off is the tendency to hold the aeroplane on the ground with forward control pressure in order to build up a faster than normal groundspeed before rotating.

Balloons & Bounces

Sometimes in the final stages of the approach, the pilot has the sensation that the ground is coming up faster than it in fact is. Increasing the pitch attitude too rapidly causes the aeroplane to climb instead of descend. This climbing during

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

round out is known as ballooning. It is also caused when the flaps are lowered too late in the landing sequence.

A bounce will almost certainly occur if the round out is made too slowly or too late so that the nose gear (in the case of tricycle geared aeroplanes) or the main gear (in the case of tailwheel aeroplanes) touches first. A bounce will also occur if the round out is completed too high and the aeroplane is dropped onto the runway.

A bounce or a balloon each produces a critical situation. Not only is the aeroplane gaining height above the runway but it may also be approaching a stall. As well, the crosswind correction may have been lost and the pitch attitude of the aeroplane may be in excess of that of the normal landing attitude.

The best corrective action for a severe balloon or bounce is to apply power and execute a go around. If the balloon or bounce is low in height and the pitch change is not extreme and there is sufficient runway left, a landing may be made by establishing directional control, applying power to cushion the landing and adjusting the pitch attitude to that landing attitude proper for touchdown.

However, during a bounce or a balloon, the crosswind correction will almost invariably be lost and the aeroplane will start to drift. A landing should not be attempted unless the longitudinal axis of the aeroplane is straight with the runway and all drift has stopped. If the situation is not right, go-around again.

If the pitch attitude has exceeded the landing attitude, the nose high situation means a rapid decrease in airspeed and diminishing response to the controls as the stall is neared. Lowering the nose is essential but lowering it too much may result in a hard landing that could cause structural damage. It is best to apply full power, release some of the back pressure to achieve level flight and then initiate the procedure for a go around.

Porpoising

Porpoising is the name given to the condition in which the aeroplane bounces back and forth between the nosewheel (or tailwheel) and the main gear after touchdown. It occurs most frequently as a result of an incorrect landing attitude and excessive airspeed that results in the nosewheel coming in contact with the runway before the main gear.

The porpoise may become progressively worse resulting in violent unstable oscillation of the aeroplane about the lateral axis that can damage the landing gear and the aeroplane structure.

The best corrective action is to smoothly use the controls to establish the normal landing attitude and add power to get the aeroplane airborne again. If there is sufficient runway left, land; otherwise, go around.

10.5.9 Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is a condition that can develop whenever a tire is moving on a wet surface. The tire squeezes water from under the tread generating water pressures which can lift portions of the tire off the runway and reduce the amount of friction the tire can develop.

On a runway contaminated by rain or wet snow, it can be impossible for an aeroplane to accelerate to take-off speed and then to stop on the remaining runway in an aborted take-off. During landing, deceleration and stopping an aeroplane can be similarly compromised.

There are three types of hydroplaning.

Viscous hydroplaning occurs when there is a thin film of water and relatively low tire speeds. The water lubricates the surface and decreases traction. A water film of only a tiny fraction of a centimetre will drastically reduce the friction between the tire and the pavement and double the stopping distance.

Dynamic hydroplaning requires deeper water and results in complete loss of tire contact with the pavement. The tire lifts off the runway and rides on a wedge of water.

Reverted-rubber hydroplaning can occur when a locked tire skids on a wet or icy runway. Frictional heating raises the tire temperature causing rubber particles to shred off the tread. These particles accumulate behind the tire forming a dam that blocks the escape of water. The trapped water heats and turns to steam. The steam pressure lifts the tire from the surface.

The point at which dynamic hydroplaning begins is determined by water depth, runway texture, tire tread depth and tire pressure. The depth of water on the runway must exceed the depth of the tire's tread and the depth of the runway surface texture. Nosewheel tires will begin hydroplaning earlier than main wheel tires because nosewheel tire pressures are normally lower than those of the main wheels. (It is, therefore, important to lower the nose as soon as possible after touchdown in order to quickly get a vertical load on the nosewheel tire and get it tracking effectively.) The minimum speed (knots) at which dynamic hydroplaning can occur can be calculated by multiplying the square root of the tire pressure (psi) by nine. Once established, hydroplaning can continue at speeds well below this figure.

Tests have shown that one-half an inch of slush on the runway increases take-off distance by about 15%. One-and-a-quarter inches of slush increases safe runway distance by 100%. With two inches of slush, the test aeroplanes could not accelerate to take-off speed.

One of the best ways to minimize the chances of hydroplaning is to ensure that your tires have good treads and are properly inflated and that your brakes are effective. Tires with less than one-sixteenth of an inch of tread and brakes worn to 90% of limits compound the problem. When landing on a dry runway, the required landing distance should not exceed 60% of the available runway. If the runway is wet, the required landing distance is 115% of the dry runway requirement. Ensure that the runway is long enough for your needs before attempting a landing. Remember that runways contaminated by water following or during a rain shower can be as slick as wet ice.

10.5.10 Go-Around/Overshoot

A go-around, or an overshoot (the two terms mean substantially the same thing), is a basic flight maneuver to be used when it becomes inadvisable to continue a landing approach. It should be the pilot's obvious choice of action when there is interfering traffic or when the landing procedures (flare, crosswind correction, touchdown, etc.) do not come together properly to ensure a safe landing and roll out. At a controlled airport, the tower may, because of a potentially unsafe situation on the runway, advise the pilot of an aeroplane on final approach to pull up and go around again.

A go-around can become a very risky flight procedure if the pilot does not decide soon enough that a go-around is the best

choice and delays making a decision until the situation has become critical.

Do not be indecisive about executing a go-around. If there is any suspicion that a landing is turning out poorly, start the go-around procedure. The sooner you make the decision, the easier and safer the procedure will be. A go-around should be viewed as an opportunity to correct what was an unacceptable landing approach and to make a good and safe landing on the next try.

A go-around initiated at relatively high altitude is hardly more than a fly through. Initiated at low altitude, it demands attention to proper procedure. Be mentally prepared for the go-around on every landing. Complete the landing checklist early. Be sure that rich mixture and fine pitch have been selected. They are needed to achieve full power if a go-around is necessary.

Make the go-around decision early. Once having made it, don't change your mind. First, smoothly apply full power, select carburetor heat to the cold position and re-trim the aeroplane for full power operation. Establish and maintain the proper airspeed for level flight and then retract the flaps. When a safe airspeed is attained and there is no chance of the aeroplane settling onto the runway, raise the landing gear. Continue to maintain straight-and-level flight until you reach climb speed.

Climb at the airspeed for best angle of climb, using the maximum allowable power, until all obstacles have been cleared. Then, assume the airspeed for best rate of climb and reduce the power to that recommended in the Pilot's Operating Handbook.

If the go-around was initiated because of other traffic on the runway, make a slight turn to parallel the runway when a safe altitude and airspeed have been obtained. Keep the other aircraft in sight until the possibility of a collision no longer exists.

Make a radio call to advise the tower (or on the mandatory frequency at an uncontrolled airport) of your action at the same time as you are stabilizing the climb at the proper power, speed and trim.

10.5.11 Wind Shear

One of the basic principles of flight is that airspeed is not affected by the movement of the air body itself. This is true except in the situation of wind shear which involves an abrupt or sudden change in wind velocity. Since the inertia of the aeroplane is far greater than that of the surrounding body of air, there is an inevitable lag in the aeroplane's response to the sudden increase or decrease of wind, resulting in a temporary gain or reduction in airflow over the wings and therefore in airspeed. The change in airspeed may not last more than a few seconds. In cruising flight, there would be no serious problem but, under some landing or take-off conditions, it could be critical, since it can cause stalls, undershoots or overshoots.

If, for example, the wind changes suddenly from a no wind condition to a 20 knot tailwind or if there is a sudden 20 knot decrease in the headwind (negative wind shear), inertia causes a several second delay before the aeroplane reacts to the change in wind during which the airspeed will fall by almost 20 knots. If the aeroplane is approaching to land at an airspeed near the stall, the approach path could steepen or a stall could occur since any loss in airspeed means a reduction in lift.

Conversely, if a positive wind shear (increase in the velocity of the headwind or a decrease in the velocity of the tailwind) of 20 knots takes place, again inertia causes a delay in the reaction of the aeroplane and the airspeed briefly builds up by about 20 knots. During this brief lag, there is an increase in lift as a result of the increased airspeed, the rate of descent decreases and there is a tendency to overshoot.

Crosswind shears and vertical shears also have an adverse effect on the aeroplane. An abrupt crosswind shear will make it weathercock into the new wind. An abrupt downdraft causes a brief decrease in the angle of attack of the wing with a resultant loss of lift. An abrupt updraft causes an increase in the angle of attack that, if the aeroplane is already near the stall speed, may push the angle of attack beyond the stall angle.

The important parameter is the rate of change of the wind's velocity with respect to time. This determines the pilot's and the aeroplane's ability to cope with the wind shear. If the aeroplane could be instantaneously accelerated or decelerated to respond to changes in wind speed, there would be no problem. However, there is an inevitable lag in pilot reaction time and in aeroplane response. Large aeroplanes with larger inertia factors adjust less quickly than do smaller general aviation aeroplanes. The outcome of a critical wind shear encounter depends, therefore, upon quick and correct action on the part of the pilot. Even a slight delay in initiating corrective action can result in the loss of crucial performance capability needed for an aeroplane to recover from a severe wind shear encounter at low altitude.

If a pilot is aware of a wind shear condition, he/she can compensate for the expected value of the shear by varying normal approach airspeeds. This is a solution only up to a point. Wind shear is complex and unpredictable. Wind changes can be gradual or abrupt. Strong headwinds or tailwinds can suddenly become weak or vice versa. There may be turbulence. There may be a lateral component that introduces drift and heading problems.

There are certain clues that, by alerting a pilot to its possible presence, can help avoid a wind shear encounter. They include pilot reports (PIREPS) from other pilots who have encountered it, low level wind shear alerting system warnings, the presence of thunderstorms and virga.

During any landing or take-off, a pilot should be especially alert to any fluctuation in airspeed, vertical speed and attitude. Any excessive variation should be taken as an indication of wind shear and corrective action instantly initiated.

See also **Wind Shear** in the Chapter **Aviation Weather**.

10.5.12 Ground Effect

Every pilot has encountered the term ground effect. What exactly is it?

The total drag of an aeroplane is divided into two components, parasite drag and induced drag. Induced drag is the result of the wing's work in sustaining the aeroplane in flight. The wing lifts the aeroplane simply by accelerating a mass of air downward. (It is perfectly true that reduced pressure on top of an airfoil is essential to lift; that, however, is only one of the factors that contributes to the generation of lift.) The amount of downwash is directly related to the work of the wing in pushing the mass of air down and therefore to the amount of

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

induced drag produced. At high angles of attack, induced drag is high. As this corresponds to lower airspeeds in actual flight, it can be said that induced drag predominates at low speed. (See also **Drag** in Chapter **Theory of Flight**.)

Fig.10.39 **In Ground Effect (Bottom), Out of Ground Effect (Top)**

When a wing is flown very near the ground, there is a substantial reduction in the induced drag. Downwash is significantly reduced; the air flowing from the trailing edge of the wing is forced to parallel the ground. The wing tip vortices that also contribute to induced drag are substantially reduced; the ground interferes with the formation of a large vortex (Fig.10.39).

Many pilots think that ground effect is caused by air being compressed between the wing and the ground. This is not so. Ground effect is caused by the reduction of induced drag when an aeroplane is flown at slow speed very near the surface.

Ground effect exerts an influence only when the aeroplane is flown at an altitude no greater than its wing span, which for most light aeroplanes is fairly low. A typical light aeroplane has a wing span of perhaps 35 feet and will experience the effect of ground effect only when it is flown at or below 35 feet above the surface (ground or water).

A low wing aeroplane is generally more affected by ground effect than a high wing aeroplane because the wing is closer to the ground. High wing aeroplanes are, however, also influenced by this phenomenon.

At the moment of take-off, when the wing is only 3 or 4 feet above the ground, a low wing aeroplane will experience a reduction in induced drag of about 48% as compared to the induced drag generated at flight altitude. At 18 feet altitude, the reduction in induced drag drops off to about 8%. When the aeroplane reaches an altitude equal to its wing span, the influence of ground effect disappears.

Pilots get into trouble because of ground effect when they precipitate take-off before the aeroplane has reached flying speed. Take the scenario of a pilot trying a take-off from a poor field. Full power is used and the aeroplane is held in a nose high position. Ground effect reduces induced drag and the aeroplane is able to reach a speed where it can stagger off. As altitude is gained, induced drag increases as the effect of the ground effect diminishes. Twenty or thirty feet up, ground effect vanishes, the wing encounters the full effect of induced drag and the struggling aeroplane which got off the ground on the ragged edge of a stall becomes fully stalled and drops to earth.

A mixture of short runways, rough ground, grass or snow, high airport elevation, high air temperature, a weak engine and a heavy load, in any of many combinations, sets the scene for this type of accident.

When you do find yourself in a marginal take-off situation, know your aeroplane's take-off speed for the conditions prevailing, the distance required to accelerate to that speed and then allow a generous margin of safety by picking up as much speed as possible just off the ground before trying to climb. An aeroplane accelerates more rapidly in ground effect than above it. Therefore, just a few moments in level flight just a few feet off the ground achieves the goal of attaining a safe climb speed more quickly.

Ground effect is also influential in landing. As the aeroplane flies down from free air into ground effect, the reduction of induced drag as it nears the runway comes into effect to make the aeroplane float past the point of intended touchdown. In the common case of an aeroplane coming in with excessive speed, the usable portion of the runway may slip by with the aeroplane refusing to settle down to land. A go-around will probably be necessary. On short fields, approach as slowly as is consistent with safety.

An aeroplane also tends to be more longitudinally stable in ground effect. It is slightly nose heavy. The downwash from the wing normally passes over the tail at an angle that produces a download on the tail. Ground effect deflects the path of the downwash and causes it to pass over the tailplane at a decreased angle. The tailplane produces more lift than usual and the nose of the aeroplane tends to drop. To counteract this tendency, more up elevator is required near the ground. During take-off as the aeroplane climbs out of ground effect, the download on the tailplane increases and the nose tends to pitch up.

10.5.13 Gust Conditions

A gust or bump increases the load on the wings. The speed of the aeroplane should therefore be reduced when flying in gusty air.

In approaching to land, on the other hand, a little higher speed should be maintained to assure positive control.

A tailwheel aeroplane making a landing in gusty wind conditions should make a wheel landing. With this type of landing, the aeroplane makes contact with the ground while still maintaining flying speed. There is no critical period between positive air and positive ground control. If the tail is held high until all forward speed has been lost, there is no tendency for a gust to lift the aeroplane back into the air.

10.5.14 Low Flying

Remember the one about the dear old lady who cautioned her son to "Always fly low and slow"? There is one occasion on which her counsel turns out to be good sound airmanship after all. That is when a pilot is forced to fly low in poor weather. Under these conditions the following precautions should be observed:

Reduce speed because of the limited visibility but keep a safe margin in case it is necessary to turn quickly to avoid a collision. Always keep one hand on the throttle, ready for any sudden emergency. Keep more than a customary sharp lookout both ahead and on either side.

Remember that it is easy to overestimate actual airspeed when flying low downwind, because of the apparent high groundspeed, and a pilot has therefore a tendency to stall after turning downwind.

It should be noted that the tendency to stall when flying downwind is **due to an optical illusion on the part of the pilot**. The actual stalling speed of an aeroplane is the same whether flying upwind or downwind.

When forced to fly low, detour around any towns or cities that lie along your route.

Flying low in poor weather should be resorted to, of course, only in an emergency or when an air traffic controller authorizes you to proceed in conditions that are below the VFR minima.

10.5.15 Visibility in Rain

Rain falling on the windshield of an aeroplane causes a distortion that will make the terrain contours appear lower than they actually are. A hilltop half a mile ahead may appear to be 200 feet lower than it actually is. This distortion is the result of refraction. Light beams are refracted (change direction) as they pass from one medium to another, as from air to water. Water slows up the passage of light and causes it to bend. As a result, objects, terrain, lights appear lower than their actual elevation relative to the aeroplane. Refraction error also causes the eye to see a horizon below the true horizon.

Diffusion also causes a distortion. Lights seen through moisture tend to spread apart and appear less intense and therefore farther away. However, on landing approaches, diffusion has a different effect. Approach lights appear larger and therefore nearer. The degree of distortion will vary according to weather and terrain conditions so no rule of thumb applies. Pilots simply must be aware of the phenomenon and when flying in the rain be alert to the problem. It is essential to ensure proper terrain clearance when flying en route and on final approach to landing.

Rain repellant used on the windshield may help reduce the refraction error. Effective windshield wipers also help to reduce the problem.

10.5.16 Flight in Volcanic Ash

Flight in volcanic ash has the potential for serious and hazardous complications to aircraft components. Aircraft surfaces and windshields can be damaged. Aircraft heat and vent systems, hydraulic and electronic systems may be contaminated. Powerplant failures are a common result of the ingestion of volcanic ash. In addition, volcanic ash is heavy and accumulations of it on the wings and tail surfaces can adversely affect weight and balance.

Ash from volcanic eruptions can rapidly rise to heights in excess of 60,000 feet and be blown downwind of the source for considerable distances. Encounters have been reported 2,400 n.m. from the source and up to 72 hours later.

If ash is visible, **do not enter it**. The risk of entering ash in IMC conditions or at night is particularly dangerous because there is no visual warning. Unfortunately, aviation radar cannot detect volcanic ash. St. Elmo's Fire is a tell tale sign of a night encounter, although engine problems may be the first indication. Exit the cloud as quickly as possible.

In remote areas, pilots are often the first to be aware of a volcanic eruption. If an eruption or ash is observed, an urgent PIREP should be filed with the nearest ATS unit.

10.5.17 Flying the Laminar Flow Airfoil

Laminar flow airfoils, introduced in Theory of Flight, have certain flight characteristics that the pilot flying them must learn to appreciate. The laminar airfoil takes less energy to slide through the air since it has the advantage of producing less drag.

There are, however, also disadvantages to this type of airfoil. The principle disadvantage is that anything that mars the absolutely smooth surface of the wing (mud splashes, dust and dirt, grime or any foreign material) will reduce the efficiency of the wing much more than would be the case with the same amount of foreign material on a wing of conventional airfoil design.

Pilots flying aeroplanes with laminar flow wings must be more precise in their technique. Abrupt changes in speed and angle of attack can suddenly cause large areas of the wing to change from laminar flow to turbulent flow. This can cause large variations in the drag of the wing resulting in hunting and porpoising especially during low speeds.

An aeroplane with a laminar flow wing is subject to more abrupt stalls should the angle of attack be increased suddenly. If the stall is approached gradually, the aeroplane will perform normally. But an abrupt increase in the angle of attack or in G load can result in a violent stall. For this reason, pilots flying this type of airfoil must be especially careful during landing not to approach with too high an angle of attack near the stalling speed. A sudden disturbance can cause instant stall.

10.5.18 Mid-Air Collision Hazard

With the progressive increase in both speeds and traffic density, risk of collision becomes an increasingly serious hazard. For example, a pilot in a high speed executive transport aeroplane who observes a jet 1 1/2 miles distant on a 90° converging track **has only approximately 7 seconds to take evasive action**. However, it takes a minimum of 10 seconds for a pilot to spot traffic, identify it, realize that there is a collision hazard and take evasive action.

Surprisingly, a very small percentage of mid-air collisions occur between aircraft converging at a head-on angle. Most occur as a result of a faster aeroplane overtaking and hitting a slower aeroplane. The closing speed in this case would be relatively slow, giving the pilot ample time to react and take evasive action.

Nearly all mid-air collisions occur during daylight hours, in VFR conditions, within five miles of an airport, usually in the traffic circuit and primarily on final approach.

Given these facts, it would appear that pilots are not practicing the principle of "see and avoid". Seeing is a full time job for every pilot regardless of the type of aeroplane being flown. A pilot must visually scan in all directions constantly.

Scanning

The eye is a miraculous organ but it does have certain limitations. It is vulnerable to dust, fatigue, age, optical illusions, emotion, germs. In flight, vision is affected by atmospheric conditions, hypoxia, acceleration, glare, aircraft design, windshield distortion, etc.

More than this, however, the eye only sees what the mind lets it see. A day dreaming pilot sees nothing.

The eye is subject to focusing problems. It takes **time to adjust** the focus from near to far objects. In hazy conditions with no

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

distinct horizon, there is nothing to focus on and a pilot will experience empty field myopia, not seeing even opposing traffic when it does enter his/her field of vision. Another problem is that of narrow field of vision or tunnel vision. The eyes are limited to a relatively narrow field of vision in which they can actually focus and classify an object. The mind cannot identify targets in the periphery.

Glare on a sunny day makes objects hard to see, especially during flight directly into the sun. Contrast creates another problem. An aeroplane over a cluttered landscape blends into the background and can be almost impossible to see.

Since visual perception is affected by many factors, it follows that pilots must learn to use their eyes in the most efficient and effective manner in an external scan.

Learn how to scan properly, knowing how to concentrate on the areas most critical at any given time. In normal flight, the critical area is about 60° to the left and to the right of the centre of your visual area and about 10° up and down from your flight path. The slower your aeroplane, the greater your vulnerability and the greater the scan area required.

The most effective scan pattern is the block system. Traffic detection can only be made through a series of eye fixations at different points in space. The viewing area (the windshield) should be divided into segments (blocks), each about 10° to 15° wide. The pilot should methodically scan for traffic in each block of airspace in sequential order. In other words, stop and look in block A, move to block B and stop and look, move to block C and stop and look, etc. The sequence may be from left to right, from right to left, or front to left side, front to right side. There is no one scan sequence that is best. You should develop a scan that is comfortable and workable for you. The scan must include a series of fixations in the block areas. When the head is in motion, vision is blurred and the mind will not register targets. You will not see a stationary target, yet it is the one which constitutes a potential mid-air collision hazard.

External scanning must be shared with internal (instrument panel) scanning. Generally, the external scan will take about 3 times as long as the internal scan. The internal scan should start with the attitude indicator, move to the heading indicator, the altimeter, the airspeed indicator, the rate of climb, the turn and bank and back to the attitude indicator. Navigation and engine instruments might be included in every third or fourth scan.

Collision Avoidance

Collision avoidance involves more than proper scanning techniques. There are other important factors in the see and avoid principle.

Plan your flight ahead of time. Have charts folded and in sequence. Prepare a flight log with all the information that might be required during the flight so that you need to spend as little time as possible with your head down in the cockpit.

To do a competent scan, the windshield and windows must be clean and free of obstructions such as solid sun visors and window curtains.

Encourage your passengers to look for other aircraft and bring aircraft sightings to your attention.

All aeroplanes have blind spots because of their inherent design: a window frame, the wing or wing strut, the forward fuselage, etc. These blind spots are inevitable but can be compensated for by the pilot.

Never descend, turn or climb into a blind spot. When letting down, turning, or climbing, it is advisable to make a slight S turn to have a look before initiating the maneuver. During prolonged climbs or descents, outside positive control areas, execute gentle left and right banks every few thousand feet in order to broaden your field of vision and also to increase the likelihood of being seen as a result of motion and light reflection.

Sustained periods of straight-and-level flight outside positive controlled airspace should be broken at intervals by gently banking the aeroplane in each direction in order to broaden your field of vision.

Be especially mindful of the fact that pilots of high wing and low wing aeroplanes can be in each other's blind spot. Collisions of this type happen most frequently at uncontrolled airports, when the low wing aeroplane descends on top of the high wing aeroplane, especially on final approach or just before touchdown, although it can happen anywhere in the circuit.

With the introduction of mandatory communication procedures at uncontrolled airports, the chance of a collision of this type is substantially reduced but not eliminated. There have been incidents of pilots who were talking to each other, but were unable to see each other. Collisions between them were in each other's blind spot. In such a situation, it would be advisable for the pilot, caught in a situation in which another aeroplane is in the same landing pattern but can't be seen, to assume that the other aeroplane is in their blind spot and to make a gentle level turn to the left. Simultaneously he/she should report his/her intentions on the mandatory frequency. Any turn, no matter how slight, will increase the separation between the two aeroplanes and decrease the risk of collision.

While flying at circuit height, your aeroplane will cast a shadow on the ground on a sunny day. So will other aeroplanes. Glance at your shadow occasionally and scan a wide circle around it. Two converging shadows could foretell a collision.

When another aircraft is approaching and it has movement, left, right, up or down, there is no danger of colliding. The rate of movement governs the margin of separation. If, however, the other aeroplane is approaching your track and there is no apparent change in the relative position at which you first saw it, you are on a collision course and should take immediate evasive action. Any turn, climb or descent will provide a margin of separation.

An important thing to remember is that **you cannot hit anything that has moved out of the spot from which it was first noticed**. If, however, it becomes stationary at any point, a collision is imminent.

The most common error is turning the wrong way. The rule of turning towards the target and keeping it in sight as long as possible is the rule for visual collision avoidance. By keeping the other aircraft in sight, you remain in control of the situation.

When meeting another aircraft head on, alter course to the **right** in order to avoid any chance of collision.

Observe rigidly the traffic rules governing flight altitude when flying both on and off airways. Update your altimeter setting as often as practicable.

Be especially alert when flying in areas where traffic is likely to be heaviest — near busy airports especially at lower altitudes and at any height over navigation facilities. When below

3,000 feet and within 10 miles of an airport, reduce speed to the minimum airspeed which permits safe control for any necessary maneuver.

When flying cross-country, avoid high density areas unless landing.

The use of landing lights greatly enhances the probability of an aeroplane being seen and thus is an excellent technique to avoid mid-air collisions. Therefore, turn on your landing lights both during day and night, while landing or taking off, when flying below 2,000 feet AGL within terminal areas and in aerodrome traffic circuits, while operating under Special VFR conditions or in conditions of reduced visibility such as haze or at dusk.

High intensity strobe and anti-collision lights should be on at any time the aeroplane is in the air. However, they should not be used on the ground as they are distracting to pilots taxiing, awaiting take-off or on final approach to landing. Strobe lights should be activated only immediately prior to take-off and extinguished after landing.

A Mode C transponder will permit ATC to use radar to see you, know your altitude and provide you and other aircraft with timely traffic advisories. Also, ADS-B technology, in aircraft so equipped, provides a highly accurate understanding of traffic activities thereby allowing pilots to respond in a timely way to potential traffic conflicts.

If visibility drops below VFR minima and you are not qualified to file an IFR Flight Plan, do not proceed. Land or turn back. Under an overcast with low ceilings (particularly around 1,000 ft.), be careful to avoid approach corridors in the close vicinity of an airport. IFR traffic will be dropping out of the clouds. Approach corridors are shown on instrument approach charts. If you don't happen to have one, you can roughly estimate the location of an approach corridor by visualizing a line from the radio navigation facility to the runway, extending the line 10 miles outbound from the facility and allowing room for the procedure turn which an aeroplane doing an instrument approach will make.

Be careful flying on top of cloud. Don't skim the tops. Jets may come barrelling up out of the clouds as fast as 6,000 fpm. Pilots flying VFR Over The Top must be especially vigilant and maintain a flight path that is at least 1,000 feet above the overcast. It is none too ample a margin.

At night, the see and avoid concept depends on aircraft lights. Navigation and anti-collision lights need to be in good working order.

At night, the eyes see in a different way than they do during the day. Peripheral vision is better than direct staring because the cones in the eye which are concentrated in the centre of the eye need a lot of light to function properly. Conversely, the rods in the eye around the edge of the eye do not require so much light and are more efficient at night. Using peripheral vision is, therefore, better than direct staring. Objects will be more apparent if you look 10 to 15 degrees to one side of the object. (See also **Vision** in Chapter **Human Factors**.)

Aviation Safety Reports have established that air collisions most always happen in ideal weather. When you are flying VFR — **look where you are going**. Do not argue the right-of-way. You may be dead right but, if the other pilot doesn't realize it, you may be just dead, period.

10.5.19 Practicing Good Airmanship

Good airmanship is the result of good planning and preparation. Some tips for good airmanship are listed here.

1. Whenever possible, schedule your flight during a time when traffic is least heavy.
2. Be so familiar with the layout of your aeroplane that you can find and work every control without looking. Practice this blindfolded on the ground until you can do it perfectly.
3. Keep the windows of your aeroplane unobstructed. Don't put maps and computers in the windows.
4. Keep the windows of your aeroplane clean.
5. Wear sunglasses on bright days. Do not use opaque sun visors.
6. Be sure you are flying at the correct altitude for your direction of flight.
7. Always look around carefully before starting a turn, while in the turn and after resuming straight-and-level flight.
8. When climbing or descending, do several clearing turns to check the path of your flight for other aeroplanes.
9. Keep up a regular routine of scanning the sky around you for other aeroplanes. Don't forget to do this while concentrating on one aeroplane. There may be others around also.
10. Keep a watch for older or large aeroplanes and stay out of their way. Visibility out of these types is usually poor.
11. Give your passengers the job of looking for and pointing out other aeroplanes in the air.
12. Pay attention to the radio as other pilots call in and report their positions.
13. Be precise in reporting over the geographic location requested by the controller. Call at that point and not two or three miles beyond.
14. Once you have accepted an ATC clearance, follow it. If an ATC clearance is not acceptable because of the operational capabilities of your aeroplane, so inform ATC and ask for other instructions. Ask to "Say Again" if you don't understand. Never acknowledge a transmission if you have not understood.
15. If you fly a high performance aeroplane, try to slow it down to around 100 knots in the circuit so that your speed matches that of other circuit traffic.
16. Be especially alert when joining the circuit and when turning on final.
17. Be sure to remain VFR and well clear of cloud unless you are cleared IFR.
18. If you are IFR and in good visibility, remember that VFR traffic could be at your altitude and track.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

10.6 Emergency Procedures

Aircraft today are very safe and, especially if they are well maintained, rarely experience malfunction or emergency situations. You should not, however, become complacent but should always be prepared to deal with such a situation should it occur. Being prepared by having a pre-determined plan of action which you periodically review and practice will help you make a good decision when the worst happens.

In almost all situations, the aircraft will be capable of controlled flight. Flying the aeroplane is, therefore, your primary task while you assess and deal with the problem.

No one can predict when an inflight emergency will occur. When it does, there is not much time to react. It is critical that the correct procedures be followed. This can happen only if you have taken training in emergency procedures and regularly review and practice them. Only by regularly rehearsing emergency procedures will you be confident and ready to react correctly when faced with the real thing. Your emergency checklist and Aircraft Operating Manual should always be readily available in an accessible place in case you need to refer to it. Make sure also that the manual you have is for the make, model and year of manufacture of the aircraft you are flying and is current with amendments from the manufacturer.

Some emergency responses will be a combination of memory and non-memory items with vital actions being completed first (your instinctive response thanks to training) and the remaining items completed later on (by referring to your manual or checklist).

10.6.1 Engine Failure on Take-Off

If an engine fails immediately after take-off, land straight ahead. The worst possible action is trying to turn back to the airport. An aeroplane needs both time and altitude to make a 180° turn, neither of which it has if the engine fails at low altitude during climbout. At anything less than 700 feet AGL, the only option is to land straight ahead. Of course, this does not mean ploughing into a brick wall head-on. Some maneuvering within a 60° arc right or left to select an open area that presents an acceptable landing field is a reasonable and practicable action.

It is always best to climb out after take-off at the highest possible airspeed that is consistent with the principles of good airmanship and with the local situation. At the higher airspeed, not only is the engine obtaining better cooling but the flight controls are more effective. In the event of a complete and sudden power failure during the climbout, the margin between the higher airspeed and the stall speed and the responsive controls give the pilot time to transition safely from climbing attitude to normal glide. If the engine fails when the aeroplane is climbing steeply at a low airspeed, there is little margin above the stall speed, the speed decays rapidly and there is poor response from the flight controls. The aeroplane is sluggish in responding to the pilot's attempt to transition to a glide attitude and will probably stall.

Engine Failure During Take-Off

1. Close the throttle.
2. Brake firmly.
3. Maintain runway heading.
4. Turn off the fuel, switch off the magnetos and pull the mixture into idle cut-off.

Engine Failure After Take-Off

1. Lower the nose and assume the speed for best glide.
2. Select the best available landing area in an area of about 60° left or right of the aeroplane heading.
3. Turn off the fuel and the magnetos. Pull the mixture to idle cut-off.
4. Make gentle turns to avoid obstacles.
5. When sure of reaching the chosen landing area, lower the flaps. Do not allow the airspeed to increase.
6. On short final, turn off the master switch. Unlatch the cabin doors (to guard against them becoming jammed).
7. Resist the temptation to turn back to the airport.

10.6.2 Unlatched Door in Flight

If it has not been latched properly, the cabin door may come unlatched during flight. The door will trail in a position a few inches open and will cause a lot of noise and wind in the cockpit. The flight characteristics of the aeroplane will not be affected except that the rate of climb will be reduced. The important thing is to **fly the aeroplane** and not be distracted by the noise and wind.

Slow the aeroplane down because higher speeds will increase the suction forces to pull the door farther open. Don't try to close the door during flight. If the door opened during take-off, return to the airport in a normal manner. If it opened during flight, proceed to the nearest airport. If practicable, during the landing flare out, have a passenger hold the door to prevent it from swinging open.

10.6.3 Action in the Event of Fire

The following checklists for procedures to follow in the event of fire is representative only. Always use the procedure recommended by the manufacturer of the aeroplane you are flying.

Engine Fire on the Ground

Engine fires on the ground usually are the result of improper starting techniques, most specifically, overpriming. Overpriming may cause a backfire and a carburetor fire if the engine does not start. In most cases, any fire resulting from a backfire can be quenched by continuing to crank the engine until it starts. If an engine fire has started and is not put out by getting the engine running, the fuel should be shut off, the primer locked and a fire extinguisher used to put out the fire.

The procedures for dealing with an engine fire will be detailed in your Pilot's Operating Handbook.

Do not fly the aeroplane after the fire has been extinguished until it is inspected by an aircraft maintenance engineer in case there has been internal engine damage. (See also **Procedure for Backfire During Starting** in Chapter **Aero Engines**.)

Engine Fire During Flight

SINGLE-ENGINE AIRCRAFT – ENGINE FIRE

1. Mixture Control (if fitted) — IDLE CUT-OFF.
2. Propeller pitch control (if fitted) — COARSE PITCH.
3. Fuel and oil cocks — CLOSED.

4. Operate engine fire extinguisher.
5. Ignition switch — OFF.
6. Throttle — CLOSED.
7. Reduce airspeed.
8. Radio MAYDAY. State your position.
9. Make a dead engine landing in the most suitable area.

TWIN-ENGINE AIRCRAFT – ENGINE FIRE

1. Identify the problem engine.
2. Mixture Control (if fitted) — IDLE CUT-OFF.
3. Propeller pitch control (if fitted) — FEATHERED.
4. Fuel and oil emergency shut-off — CLOSED.
5. Operate engine fire extinguisher.
6. Ignition switch — OFF.
7. Throttle CLOSED.
8. Fuel selector switch, booster pump, generator switch, etc. (if fitted) — OFF.
9. Radio MAYDAY and advise your point of intended emergency landing.

If mixture control is not fitted begin your action sequence at 3 (for single-engine) or at 4 (for twin).

Electrical Fire

Modern aircraft have elaborate electrical systems that may short circuit and cause a fire. Your Aircraft Operating Manual will detail the procedures for dealing with this type of emergency.

The first step, in most procedures, is to turn off the master switch to stop all power to the electrical systems and to turn off all electrical components in order to prevent further shorting while you attempt to identify and isolate the faulty system or unit. While attempting to locate the cause of the fire, turn on each unit (with the master switch back on) one at a time and wait a significant time between each. With electrical fires, it often takes a while for the faulty electrical component to heat up again and start smouldering. If a circuit breaker has popped or a fuse blown, it is likely related to the fire. Do not reset a circuit breaker or replace a fuse before consulting your Aircraft Operating Manual.

Any fire causes anxiety and stress. Do not get preoccupied with locating the source of the fire and forget to fly the aeroplane.

Fuselage Fire

The modern aeroplane is not a potential torch as were the early wood and fabric aeroplanes. Nevertheless fires do sometimes start, usually through carelessness or from electrical short circuits. A means of controlling a fire should be near at hand.

Portable fire extinguishers suitable for combating cabin fires and approved for use are of 5 types: carbon dioxide, dry chemical, water, Halon 1211 and Halon 1301 extinguishers. Generally, any fire extinguishing agent is a compromise between the hazards of the fire, smoke and fumes and the toxicity of the extinguishing agent. Certain types of extinguishers should not be installed in aircraft because of their high toxicity rating; these include those using carbon tetrachloride, Halon 1001, Halon 1011 and Halon 1202. Check carefully before installing a particular type of fire extinguisher that it is of an approved type and be sure that you know how to use it and the possible dangers involved.

There are three classifications of fires:

Class A — in ordinary combustible material. On these, water or solutions containing large percentages of water are most effective.

Class B — in flammable liquids, greases, etc. On these, a blanketing effect is essential.

Class C — in electrical equipment. On these, the use of a non-conducting extinguishing agent is of first importance.

An extinguisher using Halon 1211 is effective against all 3 classes of fire and has proven to be the most effective on gasoline based upholstery fires. A Halon 1211 extinguisher is, therefore, probably the most useful type to install in a light aircraft. Exposure to high levels of Halon 1211 produces dizziness and impaired co-ordination but these effects disappear quickly when fresh air is introduced. Most non-pressurized aircraft cabins are well enough ventilated to clear out the Halon fumes before they become toxic. Halon 1301 is less toxic than Halon 1211 but is not effective against Class A fires.

Fire extinguishers require periodic inspection. About once a year, they should be discharged, inspected, new seals installed and refilled. Extinguishers should be secured in an accessible position with a quick release bracket.

Generally, in the event of fire:

1. Select all electrical switches (except ignition) — OFF.
2. All windows, ventilators and cabin air extractors — CLOSED.
3. Apply portable fire extinguishers to source of fire.
4. After fire subsides, leave all switches, except ignition, OFF. Land immediately.

10.6.4 Distress Signals

Radio procedures for aeroplanes experiencing emergencies in flight have been discussed in the Chapter **Radio**.

An emergency condition is classified in accordance with the degree of danger or hazard being experienced.

Distress presumes a condition of being threatened by serious and/or imminent danger requiring immediate assistance.

Urgency presumes a condition concerning the safety of an aircraft or other vehicle or of some person on board or within sight which does not require immediate assistance.

10.6.5 Forced Landing

Engine failure and a forced landing are circumstances every pilot hopes never to have to face. However, with proper preparedness, they need not be life threatening. Most frequently, engine failure is a result of fuel starvation or carburetor icing. Apply carburetor heat. Select another fuel tank. Flip on an electric fuel pump if there is one. Select a full rich mixture.

While running through these procedures, prepare the aeroplane for a forced landing. Immediately establish the aeroplane in the airspeed for maximum distance glide (best glide speed). Trim the aeroplane. If it is not properly trimmed, gliding distance will be reduced. If nothing has worked to get the engine going again, accept the inevitable and start thinking about the emergency landing. Select a suitable field.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

A seasoned pilot will seldom get caught with engine failure without having a forced landing area already selected in their mind. He/she forms the habit of picking suitable fields and of constantly checking the wind. As a result, if the engine unexpectedly fails, he/she immediately knows of a suitable field and is free to concentrate entirely on the approach.

Preflight planning, taking into account the possibility of a forced landing, is important. Try to select a route that keeps away from high rough terrain where there would be a poor selection of emergency landing sites. Plan also to fly at fairly high altitudes since excess height can be converted into distance when the engine fails. It also can be converted into time, time to think about what to do.

Selecting a Forced Landing Field

The requirements of a good forced landing ground are:

1. Firm surface, reasonably smooth, with sufficient space to effect a landing into wind. Pasture land is satisfactory because the short grass cannot hide holes, ditches, boulders or other hazards. Avoid plowed fields.
2. Since landing should be made into the wind, select a field, if possible, that is into wind. If your altitude is not sufficient to maneuver into wind or a suitable into wind field is not available, this may not be possible. Be prepared for a crosswind landing.
3. The approach should be clear of obstacles such as trees, telephone wires, high tension lines, houses, etc. Avoid fields immediately alongside highways or railway lines because of wires.
4. Clear take-off run (for when the trouble is corrected).
5. Try to choose a field that is near houses or a road so that help is readily available.

In winter, if on wheels, it is better to attempt a forced landing on a highway comparatively free of traffic than a deep snow covered field.

If forced to fly over very rough bush country on wheels, it is wise to keep within gliding distance of a highway as a possible emergency landing place. In choosing to land on a highway, special care must be taken as there may be unseen hazards such as power lines and signs as well as vehicle traffic. If no such highway exists, by all means pancake into a lake close to a shoreline, or into muskeg, rather than risk crashing through trees.

Flying seaplanes over land was at one time considered a highly hazardous undertaking. Experimental landings, however, have proved conclusively that a seaplane can be landed in a restricted field with less risk of damage than can the average landplane. A pilot should have no hesitation about flying a seaplane overland when necessary, provided good level country lies below, such as would be considered reasonably safe for landplanes.

Forced Landing Sequence

The most important principle of coping with a forced landing is acceptance of the inevitable. Time is critical. Don't waste time trying over and over again to get the engine started. Turn your attention to landing safely. Once you have made up your mind to execute a forced landing, stick to your decision even if the engine should start again as you near the ground. Should the engine start up again on the line of approach and should you decide to carry on, there is no guarantee that the engine may not fail again a few moments later when you are no longer in a position to reach the field.

Practice forced landings and have the procedures down pat so that you act instinctively. Indecisiveness and lack of co-ordination are your worst enemies when faced with the real situation.

Immediately upon engine failure:

1. Reduce speed to gliding speed and set trim. Any excess speed can be used to gain height. However, be sure to maintain flying speed especially in turns to avoid a stall and spin. Remember also that you will lose a fair amount of height in your turns.
2. Select a suitable field. Select a key position, preferably on the downwind side of the field, some physical feature on the ground that will provide continuing orientation to the selected field. Check the direction and glide to the downwind side of field. If sufficient altitude is available, conform to the familiar circuit pattern. It may, however, be necessary to fly directly to the key position or to fly a straight-in approach.
3. Check for the possible cause of the engine failure: fuel selector on the correct tank; fuel selector ON. Switch to another tank that has fuel. Switch on the fuel pump in case the failure is in the regular fuel feed system. Check that the primer is in and locked; that the mixture control is in the full rich position. If the cause of the engine failure cannot be found and rectified, close the throttle, turn off the fuel, place the mixture control in the idle cut off position, turn off the magnetos and turn off the alternator and generator switches. Do not turn off the master switch until the flaps and gear are set for landing.
4. Transmit a MAYDAY radio call. Make this call before you have descended below the radio range of ground stations. Select code 7700 on your transponder. Be sure that your ELT is ARMED (that should have been part of your preflight check).
5. At the downwind side of the field, glide crosswind and look for any obstacles in the field. Turn onto base leg using the key position as a guide. Base leg must be well within the into wind gliding range of the aircraft. Note the drift, which will indicate the strength of the wind. A strong wind will necessitate a base leg closer to the threshold of the chosen field. Look for any obstacles in the field. Decide on your exact landing path.

   If you are much too high over the key position, keep the proper distance from the landing site and lose height by flying between two selected key positions, always turning towards the field so that you can make the final approach at any time. Do not lose too much altitude. It is better to be slightly high than too low.
6. At about 500 feet AGL, turn onto the final approach. When certain of clearing all obstacles on the downwind boundary of the field, sideslip off the surplus altitude or lower the flaps. Do not lower the flaps or gear until absolutely necessary as they increase the drag and steepen the glide.
7. Tend to overshoot. Aim to land well into the field. It is better to overshoot and hit the far fence at low

speed than to undershoot and hit the near fence at flying speed. Reduce your speed as much as possible and keep your angle as shallow as possible. Set the aeroplane down nice and easy. Hard landings as a result of too high a sink rate produce as serious injuries as do excessive deceleration rates.

If the field is hopelessly small or rough for a safe landing, retract the landing gear and make a belly landing.

Procedure After Forced Landing

If the forced landing is due to engine failure, examine the tanks to see if there is gas and oil. Check the high tension leads to the plugs to see that they are intact. Examine the filters for dirt. Do not attempt to repair the trouble, if you have located it, unless you are experienced and qualified to do so.

If the failure is repaired, a thorough test of engine performance must be made before attempting to take off.

If no self-starter is fitted and it is necessary to get an inexperienced person to assist in swinging the prop, see that the person is made familiar with propeller swinging routine before attempting to start the engine. Use wheel chocks.

Never, under any circumstances, have an inexperienced person handle the throttle or switches. The pilot only must operate these when starting an engine.

If the trouble cannot be repaired and it is necessary to obtain assistance, be sure to have the following information ready to transmit over the telephone or radio:

1. Type of aeroplane and engine model number.
2. Exact location of the field in which the forced landing was made and the nearest village or town.
3. Reason for the forced landing and cause, if it can be ascertained.
4. Whether gas or oil is required for the return trip.
5. Any parts, special tools, or materials required to make the necessary repairs.
6. Whether the forced landing field is suitable for take-off.
7. The type of aeroplane that may safely land and take off from the field.
8. The telephone number at which you may be reached.

10.6.6 Precautionary Landing

A precautionary landing is one made with the engine and aircraft functioning normally but when landing is made compulsory due to shortage of fuel, aircraft malfunction, partial loss of engine power, being lost, bad weather, darkness, illness on board, etc.

If you become lost in smoke, haze, rain, fog or snow, do not fly around aimlessly exhausting your fuel supply. Land immediately and wait until conditions improve sufficiently to enable you to take off again and pick up your bearings.

In selecting an appropriate field for a precautionary landing, the criteria are: suitability of the land area, wind velocity and direction, inspection of the landing area, type of approach.

Landing Area. The requirements for a landing area for a precautionary landing are the same as those for a forced landing. It should be sufficiently long for both landing and for a later take-off. It should be into wind. It should be smooth, firm, level and free of obstructions on the approaches. The approach and overshoot areas should be free of high obstacles. It should be close to transportation or communication.

Wind Velocity and Direction. It is possible to judge wind velocity and direction by nearby smoke trails. Grass and grain fields ripple in the direction of the wind. Dust is blown with the wind. Water is calm on the leeward side of lakes.

Field Inspection. Having chosen the field, fly over it at a low altitude (500 to 1,000 feet) at least once, preferably to one side of the proposed landing path, to check the size, surface and gradient of the field and the suitability of the approaches, to identify landmarks and reference points relative to the field which can be used as turning points in the landing circuit. Fly over the field a second time to look for hidden obstacles and rough or swampy ground. During the inspection, a reduced airspeed is preferable. Be alert to illusions created by drift.

Type of Approach. The type of approach will be determined by the information you learned during the inspection. If there is any doubt and no alternate field is available, consider the field short and the surface soft and plan your approach accordingly. The final circuit should be done at circuit height or (if weather does not permit) at the highest altitude allowable under the circumstances. Get into position for a normal engine-assisted approach and landing. Do not neglect the pre-landing cockpit check. Lower the flaps to the landing position (if applicable). Approach with as low a forward speed as possible but with a safe margin above the stalling speed. Aim to touch down as close to the near boundary as is practicable. The aim is to reduce the landing run to the minimum. If the field is very small, switch off the engine after touching down.

Should a landing be made solely as a precautionary measure that will result in the flight being delayed beyond the ETA specified in your flight plan, you should make every effort to notify an FSS or ATC unit that no emergency exists. Search and rescue activity is initiated one hour after the ETA you specified in your flight plan. If you cannot contact anyone, switch on your ELT at the appropriate time and leave it on until search crews locate you. Once located, use your aircraft radio to advise the SAR crew of your condition and intentions.

Take-Off. When you are ready to take off again, the precautions you take are as important as those you took on landing. Inspect the take-off path carefully. This you can do on foot. If the landing path proved satisfactory, use that ground run path for the take-off.

The procedure for a precautionary landing should also be used **when landing at any unfamiliar aerodrome**. The procedure gives you an opportunity to study the field before attempting a landing. However, in the case of an aerodrome, the pass over the airstrip to study it must, of course, be made well above circuit height. The recommended landing procedure ensures adequate ground control no matter what the surface and length of the runway once the landing is made.

10.6.7 Emergency Landing Precautions

If you have landed with trouble sufficiently serious to preclude all hope of getting away, **REMAIN WITH YOUR Aeroplane**. An aeroplane is a comparatively easy object for search and rescue aircraft to spot but a human being in a forest is almost impossible to sight. Anything you can do to attract the attention of the spotters on the search aeroplane will enhance your chances of being found promptly. This is especially important if your emergency landing has turned out to be a crash

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

landing and you and your aircraft are in the middle of a bush. Even when guided by an ELT signal, SAR spotters may have trouble finding the aircraft.

Remain with your aeroplane, reserve your energy and conserve your food supply. Start and maintain a smudge fire. Your smoke signal will assist search planes in locating you.

If your radio is serviceable, use it sparingly. (Short messages save batteries.) State your position as accurately as you can. You may transmit distress signals on any frequency, but almost all aeronautical communication stations listen on 121.5 MHz and 243.0 MHz. Bear in mind that reception is better at night and there is less traffic on the communication channels.

Be sure that your ELT has been activated and is sending a signal. It is your best assurance that you will be located promptly. Do not delay activation of your ELT until your flight planned time expires. That only delays rescue. Once you have turned on your ELT, **do not turn it off** until you have been positively located and directed by SAR forces to turn it off.

It is beyond the scope of this text to discuss in detail the art of survival in the bush after a forced landing. Every aeroplane should be equipped with a survival kit packed with the recommended equipment and supplies that will enable you to make a camp and exist for some period of time until help comes. There are excellent texts available that discuss the subject of survival and we recommend that every pilot secure and study them carefully.

Ground-Air Emergency Signals

1. Make a smudge fire by pouring oil on rags or by using aircraft tires, green grass, brush wood or anything that will produce heavy smoke to attract attention during the day. At night, fire is more effective, the brighter the better. However, you must be careful not to allow the fire to get out of control and start a forest fire or grass fire. In wooded areas, fire, smoke or pyrotechnics must be used with discretion.
2. Make a large SOS on open ground. In snow, outline the SOS with boughs or moss.
3. Make trails in virgin snow. These can be readily seen from search aeroplanes.
4. Lay your cowlings out so they shine in the sun. One of the best conspicuity items now available is a cloth panel of brilliant fluorescent colour. It is a highly effective ground signal when laid out on the ground during the day. It can also be used as a lean-to shelter or as a warm blanket.
5. Keep your aircraft clear of snow or brush.
6. When using your radio, call at appropriate times when others are most apt to be listening. Save your battery as much as possible.
7. Point the flashlight at approaching aeroplanes and flash SOS. At night, a flashlight beam can be spotted from the air from a considerable distance.

10.6.8 Activating a Ballistic Recovery System

As described in the Chapter **The Aeroplane**, ballistic recovery systems (also referred to as airframe parachute systems), in aircraft so equipped, are designed to lower the aircraft and its occupants to the ground in the event of life-threatening emergencies. Reasons for deploying such a system are many and the activation scenarios that would lead to a deployment should be well-rehearsed. While a decision taken to activate such a system falls upon the pilot-in-command, the recommendations provided by the airframe manufacturer and/or the ballistic recovery system manufacturer should always take precedence when emergency circumstances are such that the system must be used. Considerations for use are described below.

A mid-air collision is a very serious scenario that is highly likely to render an aircraft's controls inoperable. If such a collision occurs, an immediate evaluation of the controllability of the aircraft must be made, along with an assessment of the aircraft's structural integrity. If the aircraft is still capable of safe and controlled flight, an emergency landing should be made. If the aircraft is immediately deemed to be uncontrollable, or if it is impossible to assess the condition of the aircraft following a mid-air collision, a deployment of the ballistic recovery system is highly recommended.

Should a structural failure to the airframe result from any airborne encounter aside from a mid-air collision as described above, ballistic recovery system deployment is also highly recommended. A structural failure can be the consequence of an encounter with severe weather, including thunderstorms and turbulence, gusts and wind shear, particularly if the aircraft is flying at a speed above its maximum structural cruising speed. Full control movements above the aircraft's design maneuvering speed, or any maneuver that exceeds the aircraft's design load factor can also result in catastrophic structural failure from which an airframe parachute deployment will be necesssary.

Aircraft loss of control is another scenario in which deployment of a ballistic recovery system is highly and immediately advisable. Loss of control can result from, but is not limited to, any of the following circumstances: severe wake turbulence encounters, severe turbulence encounters, severe airframe icing, pilot disorientation (particularly for VFR pilots flying inadvertently into IMC), and any failure of the aircraft's control system, such as a jammed control, a cable failure or a run-away trim.

If a spin should result from a loss of control situation from which recovery is not possible, then deployment of an airframe parachute must be immediate.

A forced landing onto a surface that is not guaranteed to provide a safe and survivable outcome is one in which the use of an airframe parachute should be considered. Forced landing scenarios that occur when flying over rough or mountainous terrain, over water when beyond gliding distance to land, over fog or during night are advisable times to consider use of an aircraft's airframe parachute. When the risk of not using it will highly jeopardize the lives of the aircraft's occupants, it is highly advisable to employ the chute.

Pilot incapacitation during a flight presents an immediate reason for any non-pilot passengers to hasten their use of an aircraft's airframe parachute. During every pre-flight briefing, pilots of aircraft equipped with ballistic recovery systems

should ensure that occupants are explicitly advised in how to operate the system, and in what circumstances, assuming pilot incapacitation, they should do so.

The maximum airspeed at which an airframe parachute should be deployed is known as the maximum parachute deployment speed, V_{PD}. Deployment beyond this airspeed could result in the aircraft, as well as the parachute, being subjected to loads resulting in structural failure, either to the chute itself or to the airframe. When the decision has been taken to deploy the airframe parachute, every effort should be made to slow the aircraft down to this airspeed. In worst case scenarios, when ground impact is imminent, and time and altitude are not sufficient to allow for slowing of the aircraft to its maximum parachute deployment speed, then the airframe parachute should be deployed. Above all, manufacturer recommendations are of upmost importance to be followed in such cases.

The chances of a successful deployment of an airframe parachute increase with altitude. While successful deployments have been registered by aircraft at an altitude as low as 400 feet, deployment at such a low altitude may not permit the aircraft to be stabilized under the chute, nor will it allow occupants any time to properly secure the interior of the cabin to prepare for the descent to the surface. General recommendations for deployment are such that 2,000 feet is a recommended deployment threshold; nevertheless, manufacturer recommendations should always be strictly followed.

After deployment of an airframe parachute, and depending on the aircraft weight and drag forces, the aircraft can be expected to descend at an approximate rate between 1,000 and 1,800 feet per minute. Lateral speed will be equivalent to the speed of surface winds. The force experienced at touchdown under the canopy of an airframe parachute is typically stated to be equivalent to falling from a height of 12 to 15 feet. At touchdown, aircraft occupants can expect to experience forces of less than 4Gs.

An emergency landing body position is typically suggested by manufacturers. The pilot-in-command must ensure that he/she describes this position to occupants during the pre-flight briefing. Should an airframe parachute deployment be initiated resulting from an emergency situation, occupants must not loosen seat belts until the aircraft has come to a complete stop after contacting the ground.

In most situations, manufacturers will recommend leaving doors latched during an emergency descent under an airframe parachute. However, specific circumstances – such as altitude, terrain, winds, aircraft condition – may require that a door be unlatched. Pilots must ensure that they are clearly cognizant of the recommendations provided by manufacturers regarding doors being latched or unlatched during an emergency descent under an airframe parachute.

10.6.9 Radar Assistance

Radar Assistance is available on a 24 hour basis to all aircraft within the limits of the identification zones. This assistance is available to any aeroplane that is in distress or in an emergency situation. Navigational assistance will be rendered when and wherever possible in the form of position information, vectors or track and groundspeed checks, weather advice, etc. Flights requesting this assistance must be operating within areas of radar and communication coverage and be radar identified. To request radar assistance in an ADIZ, call "**Radar Assistance**" on 126.7 MHz. When circumstances warrant a MAYDAY call, use 121.5 MHz.

If advisory service cannot be furnished because of air defence priority, the station will reply "unable".

When requesting service, climb to the best possible altitude. This will improve your chances of being picked up by the radar station.

A pilot, who is lost or in distress and unable to make radio contact, should attempt to alert available radar systems by the following procedure:

Squawk the emergency transponder code 7700. Monitor the emergency frequencies. Fly a triangular pattern as outlined below.

If the radio receiver of the aeroplane is working but the transmitter is inoperative, it is possible to attract the attention of radar assistance by flying a triangular pattern such as that shown in Fig.10.40. Fly the pattern **to the right**. Hold each heading for 2 minutes. (Jet aeroplanes will hold each heading for 1 minute.) Repeat the triangular pattern twice. Resume the original heading and repeat the triangular pattern at 20 minute intervals.

Fig.10.40 **Triangular Pattern for Lost Aircraft**

Triangular pattern for aircraft lost or requiring assistance. If the radio receiver is operating, fly the pattern to the right or clockwise. If no radio is operating, fly the pattern to the left or counterclockwise.

If the radio is not operating at all or if the aeroplane is NORDO, fly the triangular pattern **to the left**.

An aeroplane may be seen as a blip on a radar scope but cannot be individually identified. By flying the prearranged pattern, the radar facility will be able to identify the blip that is the aeroplane in need of help.

A pilot lost or in need of assistance whose radio receiver is working will receive instructions by radio for guidance to the nearest landing place. An aeroplane whose radio is inoperative will be intercepted by a search and rescue plane and led to the nearest landing field.

Never comply with radar vector instructions intended for another aeroplane.

10.7 Remote Area Flying: Having "Bush Sense"

The vast hinterlands of Canada and the United States offer a challenge to the spirit of exploration which few other lands the world over can rival. To the sportsman pilot, they spell romance, the thrill of the great outdoors, the lure of seldom fished waters, the zest of virgin forest hunting areas, and

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

hiking, camping and relaxing in the deepest recesses of the best that nature has to offer.

Flying in the trackless wilderness, known as bush flying or backcountry flying, can be just as safe and practicable as flying the organized airways. Plain, ordinary airmanship, a knowledge of the basic laws and proper provision for essential needs are the secrets of the bush pilot's much publicized sixth sense. Bush sense is, after all, just reasonable proficiency in the handling of backcountry aircraft, seaplanes and skiplanes, combined with some fundamental knowledge of the nuances particular to the environment in which the flying is taking place. It's knowing your own limitations, it's using checklists, it's pre-planning of your flight, it's pre-flighting your aeroplane, it's knowing your aircraft's systems, and it's knowing your aircraft's performance limits.

Flying single-engine aeroplanes in sparsely settled areas is an undertaking that does call for some special precautions. In these areas, radio aids to navigation, weather information, fuel supplies, aircraft servicing facilities, accommodation and food are limited or non-existent. And landing strips can be tight squeezes between tall trees, with unorthodox approaches, sloping runway profiles, rough surfaces and challenging winds that reduce the pilot's margins for error. Careful preflight planning is of utmost importance.

Aeroplanes must be capable of two-way radio communication with a ground station from any point along the route. Capability on 121.5 MHz and 126.7 MHz is required. Any aeroplane operating in sparsely settled areas must continuously monitor 121.5 MHz. In far northern regions, HF capability on 5,680 kHz is required for any aeroplane operating outside the Arctic Archipelago, as is an emergency locator transmitter capable of operating independently of the aircraft battery.

Frequency 5,680 kHz provides long-range air-to-ground communications coverage in the remote areas of Canada for the provision of flight information service beyond the range of VHF communications. Aircraft must use single sidebands (SSB) when communicating on 5,680 kHz.

Navigation equipment must include a good heading indicator or gyrosyn compass. GPS navigational capability should be considered essential as should ADS-B In and Out. All headings and bearings are measured in degrees true because of the unreliability of the magnetic compass in the areas near the north magnetic pole. A manual entitled **Finding the Sun's True Bearing** can be used to keep the heading indicator aligned.

A flight plan must be filed when proceeding northbound, when entering the Arctic Archipelago and when returning southbound. Adequate emergency equipment must be on board. Within the Arctic Archipelago, fuel must be sufficient for 500 miles range, plus 45 minutes reserve.

10.7.1 Backcountry Flying

While some backcountry airstrips are limited, based on their geography, to aeroplanes that can land on the roughest and shortest patches of land, many backcountry runways are accessible with most popular piston single-engine aircraft. With careful thought and planning, specialized aeroplanes and/or aircraft with major modifications are not always necessary to safely access the majority of backcountry airstrips. A well-trained backcountry pilot flying an aeroplane with a good rate of climb will be able to operate into and out of most backcountry areas. Notwithstanding the latter, much consideration must always be given to safely operate in backcountry surroundings, not least when such backcountry flying includes mountainous regions.

If flying in backcountry areas with rising or mountainous terrain, pilots should always remain on a flight path that will allow them to turn towards lowering terrain. Pilots should plan their flight to remain 2,000 feet above the terrain along their route. When approaching ridges over which they intend to fly, a pilot should turn to approach the ridge at an angle of 45 degrees when approximately a half-mile from the ridge. This allows for a shorter-angled turn-away to escape (to lowering terrain) if an unexpected downdraft or turbulence is encountered from the flow of air over the ridge.

Photo courtesy of CubCrafters Inc.

Fig.10.41 **Backcountry Flying**

When flying upsloping terrain, pilots should not fly beyond a point of no return. This is a point where, if the throttle is reduced to idle, by lowering the nose the aircraft can assume a normal glide and perform a 180 degree turn without impacting the terrain below. Should the latter not be achievable, the pilot should circle away from the upsloping terrain to gain additional altitude before proceeding.

Landing at short backcountry airstrips, be they in mountainous regions or not, requires precise airspeed control to eliminate float over the landing surface. Extended floating runs the risk of the pilot running out of runway once on the ground, thereby heightening the threat that the aeroplane cannot be brought to a safe stop before reaching the end of the runway.

Since take-off distance varies with an aircraft's gross weight, every backcountry pilot should take every precaution possible when considering how they are loading their aircraft. With backcountry airstrips often being both short and soft, weight is a crucial factor when conducting operations. An increase in the take-off weight of the aircraft – which should never, of course, exceed the aircraft's maximum allowable gross weight – will result in a significant decrease in the aircraft's rate of acceleration as well as a significant increase in the aircraft's required take-off distance. A rule of thumb for weight is that for every 10 percent increase in weight, the take-off distance (as well as the landing distance) will increase by 20 percent. Thus, pilots need to be extremely vigilant regarding the weight they are carrying into their flight.

Also, since backcountry flying often takes pilots into higher elevation operations, density altitude becomes a consideration never to be overlooked. When the heat, the humidity and the elevation are high, the physical altitude at which one is operating can rise to a performance altitude that may be many thousands of feet higher than the actual altitude. As a consequence, take-off distances are lengthened and climb rates are lowered when density altitude factors are present.

Furthermore, in the presence of density altitude, aircraft weight becomes an even greater risk factor: a heavy aircraft taking off from a short, soft runway at high density altitude is a scenario that requires absolute assurances from fine pre-flight calculations that the aircraft will safely and efficiently get off the ground and climb. If not, take-off plans should be made for another day under safer conditions. As a general rule of thumb, if the aircraft hasn't achieved over 70 percent of the speed required for rotation by the halfway point of the runway, the take-off should be aborted.

Flying in the backcountry requires that pilots learn how to recognize and take advantage of unique micro-climates that they may encounter. They need to learn to read surrounding terrain, and plan landing approaches based on high, medium and low altitude reconnaissance passes during which they can identify surface conditions, runway slopes and obstructions, and judge landing rollouts. Wildlife, rocks and branches need to be identified; they may be well camouflaged on the runway such that only a low pre-landing pass will reveal their presence.

Backcountry pilots must determine go/no-go points on take-off rolls, plan departure climb paths and post-rotation abort procedures. And critically, when selecting landing and take-off direction, they must recognize when runway slope is more critical than wind direction and speed. For all things related to backcountry flying, it is essential that pilots undertake specific training from experienced professionals before setting off into this unique form of flying.

Aircraft that are considered good for backcountry flying have certain characteristics.

1. A sturdy landing gear that can take lots of punishment is effective for absorbing the shock of landings on surfaces that, given the nature of backcountry flying, can be rough and bumpy.
2. A landing gear geometry that is less prone to causing runway loss of control events, particularly resulting from hard braking, is an important backcountry aircraft configuration.
3. Large "balloon" style or "tundra" low pressure tires, very typical of backcountry aircraft, which can spread the aircraft's weight for soft, rough or rutted surfaces and increase propeller clearance on nosewheel aeroplanes.
4. Excellent control response at low speeds, and good pitch stability, help pilots manage the challenging approaches which are common with backcountry airstrips.
5. High-drag flaps allow steep descents into tight airstrips where surrounding sloped terrain and/or tall trees force upon pilots approaches from higher than common angles.
6. An easy-to-use and fast acting trim is important on an aircraft that experiences significant pitch changes on a go-around from low speed.
7. Good visibility over the nose and for maneuvering is particularly important for pilots to be able to identify all aspects of the backcountry environment that will enhance the execution of their handling of their aircraft.
8. A powerful engine provides pilots with greater acceleration on take-offs, greater rates of climb over obstacles, as well as the ability to power out of potential conflicts, such as downdrafts while flying near or over ridges.
9. It is commonly agreed amongst backcountry pilots that a high-wing configuration is better to not only enhance downward visibility over terrain over which pilots may not be familiar, but it also ensures that the aircraft's wings clear brush that could damage a low-wing configuration while maneuvering on the ground.
10. Tailwheel aircraft benefit from having greater propeller clearance than nosewheel aircraft for backcountry operations; otherwise, tailwheel versus nosewheel configurations are, for all practicable purposes, considered a matter of personal choice for backcountry pilots.

10.7.2 Seaplanes

A seaplane, or floatplane, behaves in the air much like a landplane, being capable of the same normal maneuvers. On the water, the techniques for handling and maneuvering a seaplane are very different from those needed for handling an aeroplane on land. The pilot needs to understand seamanship. A seaplane has no brakes and is affected by both wind and currents. A seaplane always tends to turn into wind. Maneuvering is difficult especially in a strong wind.

Photo courtesy of CubCrafters Inc.

Fig.10.42 Seaplane

Because of the weight of the floats, the useful load of a seaplane is normally less than that of the same aeroplane on wheels. One might assume that the increased drag produced by the floats also means a reduced rate of climb and cruising speed. In fact, seaplanes are usually fitted with fine pitch propellers or with constant speed propellers with extra fine pitch stops that produce the extra power needed to take off from a water surface. The high rpm of the fine pitch propeller gives an increased rate of climb overcoming the drag of the floats. Except in a few odd cases, the drag of the floats does result in a reduced cruising speed. The basic techniques of flying a seaplane, in terms of take-off, landing, taxiing, sailing and general seamanship, mooring and docking, are beyond the scope of this manual. A few pertinent points only will be mentioned.

The preflight inspection of a seaplane involves the same items as a landplane with one important addition. The float compartments must be inspected for water and pumped with a bilge pump, if necessary. Each float has 6 to 10 compartments. Each one must be inspected to be sure it is dry. Be sure the hose in each compartment is connected. Float fittings, struts, attachments and cables and the water rudders must be inspected.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Water rudders are essential to operation on the water. Be sure they operate through their full range of travel.

In cold weather when air temperatures are below freezing, the water clinging to the water rudders may freeze after lift-off. It is a good precaution to play with the rudders for a little while after lift-off until the water is blown off and the chance of the water rudders freezing is minimized.

Temperature variations between large areas of rock and water in the north country cause turbulence more pronounced than in more settled areas. Shoreline bumps can be sudden and violent. A seaplane approach over a shoreline should be made in a straight line and with a margin of surplus speed.

Shoreline bumps also present hazards to take-off. In a strong wind, a very severe down-current of air may be encountered in taking off towards a steep shoreline. Always allow yourself plenty of room when taking off towards a steep rising shore.

One of the most difficult conditions a seaplane pilot has to contend with is glassy water. When water is glassy, its surface is practically invisible from above.

1. Try to land alongside a weed bed if one exists within reasonable distance of the landing area. If necessary, land in the weeds. Wild rice is not heavy enough to turn a seaplane over.
2. Land close to a shoreline, using the shoreline as a guide to the height of the surface of the water. Before doing so, fly over the shoreline at low altitude to look for reefs and shoals.
3. Make a power-on approach using the elevators to hold the nose above the horizon and to maintain a constant airspeed. Adjust the throttle to establish a shallow rate of descent. Fly the aeroplane onto the water in this nose high attitude. On making contact with the water, gradually close the throttle and hold the control column right back in order to slow the aircraft down as soon as possible.

This method of approach and landing on glassy water should be practiced under normal landing conditions at every possible opportunity. If caught with a dead engine over glassy water and beyond gliding distance of a shoreline or weed bed, consider throwing out loose cushions or other items that will float on the surface and provide a visual clue as to the height of the aircraft above the water.

Do not attempt step landings on rough water. Land slow. If gusty weather has necessitated coming in fast, hold off until all surplus speed has been lost. Waves, like sheep, travel in flocks. In very rough water, comparative calm patches can sometimes be found by looking ahead.

When landing in an unfamiliar area, circle the vicinity at low altitude several times to look for rocks, reefs or floating timber. If you are not sure of their location when about to take off, taxi slowly downwind over the area you intend to use on take-off.

The wind direction for landing on water can be observed by noting the calm space which always exists on the lee side of the shoreline over which the wind is blowing. Boats lying at anchor point into the wind. Smoke and flags are also good wind indicators.

When taxiing do so either very slowly or very fast (up on the step). It is important to produce as little spray as possible. Any speed faster than a very slow taxi will produce spray that will strike the propeller, causing erosion of the blades and the possibility of serious damage. There is also the possibility of overheating the engine as there is not much forward speed to provide engine cooling. Apply throttle positively and quickly to get the seaplane on the step. Once on the step, the spray line is behind the propeller.

Do not approach a dock or rocky shore downwind in a high wind head-on. Allow the aeroplane to weathercock and sail it in tail first, using bursts of engine if necessary to steer it.

Special techniques are sometimes necessary when taking off from a very restricted area. One method is to get the aeroplane up on the step when taxiing downwind and then to skid around into the wind in a wide half circle. This maneuver is more applicable to flying boats than seaplanes because of their lower centre of gravity. This procedure must be carried out with caution. If you turn too abruptly, the combination of centrifugal force in the turn and the wind striking the aeroplane broadside may be sufficient to overturn the aeroplane.

A take-off from glassy water can be assisted by taxiing over the area to make ripples or by having a boat do so.

Immediately after taking off in very cold weather, move the controls to prevent spray from freezing on the control hinges.

10.7.3 Skiplanes

Ski equipped aeroplanes offer an almost limitless potential in the wintertime in a country like Canada. Any flat open area, any frozen lake or river is a landing place. Although skis are aerodynamically dirty, they do not affect the performance of the aeroplane significantly. Some care must be taken to avoid bare spots while taxiing, landing and taking off to prevent wearing the bottom coating of the skis.

Photo courtesy of Pilatus Aircraft Ltd.

Fig. 10.43 **Skiplane**

Maneuvering a skiplane on the ground requires special precautions. A skiplane has no brakes. Rolling friction alone brings it to a stop after landing. Taxiing turns can be a problem especially in high winds. In some cases, help from persons outside the aeroplane may be required to keep directional control. Steerable tail skis are usually fitted but, in some wind and snow conditions, their steering effectiveness is considerably diminished.

Snow conditions affect greatly the performance of a skiplane. Even a slight rise or fall in the ambient temperature changes the texture of the snow, making the difference between a surface over which the skis slide freely and a surface that clogs up the bottom of the ski and impedes its progress.

Skiplanes should land and take off directly into wind whenever possible since the ski assembly cannot cope with the side loading in a crosswind drift situation.

An unbroken snow surface with an overcast condition is sometimes as difficult to judge as glassy water. This condition is known as white-out. Although visibility may not be

markedly diminished, depth perception and distance judgment are lost due to loss of horizon and gradient. A condition in which there is blowing snow for a height of three or four feet above the surface produces another kind of white-out that is similar to ground fog. In this case, visibility is drastically reduced. Continued flight into white-out conditions is possible and safe only if the pilot recognizes the phenomenon and changes from visual to instrument flight. When landing in white-out conditions and if in doubt as to your approach height above the surface, fly the aeroplane on, using the same method as detailed above for glassy water.

For soft snow conditions, sweep a runway, or make one by taxiing up and down with the aeroplane lightly loaded before attempting to take off with a full load.

When taxiing in loose snow, make good wide turns to avoid too much torsional strain on the undercarriage.

If the snow is sticky, oil the skis before taking off. One simple method of doing this is to freeze a couple of bags to the ice. Saturate these with coal oil and taxi over them when about to take off.

Check for ice on wings. Make sure that all surfaces are free from moisture, frost, ice or snow before attempting to take off. Even a light coating of frost can destroy the lift of the wings sufficiently to prevent a take-off.

When picketing in the open, skiplanes can be picketed by freezing the ends of the wing and tail mooring lines into the ice. (Dig a channel in the ice through which the lines can be passed and frozen in.) When picketing overnight, block the skis up off the ice or snow, lay green garbage bags under the skis or place a mat of evergreen boughs under them. Skis become warm from taxiing, may melt the ice or snow underneath and, by morning, become frozen in.

If the ice has become soft and honeycombed, it may be necessary to move the aeroplane several times during the night. The weight of the aeroplane generates heat and it may start to thaw its way through the soft ice.

Landing on glare ice is a challenge. Unless the aeroplane is fitted with a steerable tail ski or some other form of anti-ground-looping device, allow yourself as much room as possible in all directions when landing on glare ice.

Wet and slushy snow is similar to mud. With this condition always land with the tail well down. In the spring when there is some doubt as to ice conditions on a lake, land out in the middle. The ice is always thickest there (unless there is a current).

10.7.4 External Loads

In the course of transporting passengers and equipment, fixed wing and helicopter bush pilots are frequently called upon to carry goods that must be securely fastened to the outside structure of the aircraft. Canoes strapped to seaplane pontoons are one popular example.

For safety's sake, pilots should consider the following guidelines prior to taking off while carrying external loads on their aircraft.

1. The external load must be affixed securely to the prime structure of the aircraft so as not to shift in turbulent air.
2. The external load must be positioned so as to allow the aircraft to be operated within its normal C.G. limits.
3. The external load must be located in such a manner so as not to block normal and emergency exits of the aircraft.
4. The nature and shape of the external load must not interfere with the aerodynamic efficiency of the aircraft, by producing hazardous drag and eddying effects that interfere with airflow over control surfaces.
5. Careful consideration must be given to take-off and landing performance when carrying an external load.
6. Pilots must follow manufacturer, and regulatory authority, guidelines that are applicable to the carrying of an external load.

10.7.5 Equipment to Carry On Board

The minimum equipment identified in this section should be carried by aircraft operating over remote areas.

Emergency survival equipment is outlined in Section **Sparsely Settled Areas** in Chapter **Aeronautical Rules & Procedures**.

All crew and passengers should be dressed in, or have available, warm clothing, food and water, to enable them to survive in the temperatures to which they would be exposed in the event of an emergency landing.

Seaplanes

When flying seaplanes, the following should be carried:

- 1 small lightweight folding anchor.
- 2 wing lines (about 30' long).
- 1 line (about 50' long) for anchoring, or for tying the tail to a tree or rock when beached on a shore.
- 1 paddle.
- 1 bilge pump (for pumping out the floats or hull).
- 1 engine cover.
- 1 float repair kit.
- Life jackets for all on board.

Some seaplane pilots are lured into a false sense of security because they have equipped themselves and their passengers with life jackets. They reason that if an accident should happen during take-off or landing, everyone in the aeroplane would be able to swim to shore with the aid of the life jackets. However, it must be remembered that the water in thousands of the Canadian lakes that are frequently used by float planes is so cold that human beings could not survive in it for longer than a few minutes before succumbing to death by exposure.

A gallon pail is not a necessity but comes in handy. It can be used to store some of the emergency kit, for carrying water, as a drogue (sea anchor) or as an anchor (by filling it with stones).

Skiplanes

When flying skiplanes, the following should be carried:

- 1 snow shovel, ice chisel, snow knife.
- 2 wing lines (about 15' is ample).
- 1 line (about 50' long).
- 1 engine heating tent. This fits completely over the nose and reaches to the ground. It is designed to house a stove for preheating the engine in sub-zero weather which is too severe for oil dilution to be effective (below -30°C.).

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

- 1 blowpot, or some other form of stove, for preheating the engine and lubricating oil.
- 1 scraper approved for use on aeroplanes. Avoid using a scraper that will scratch the plexiglass windscreens.
- 1 set of wing covers.
- A tent. (If engine or wing covers are carried, they may be used to improvise a tent.)
- Small hydraulic jack (for jacking up skis).

All Backcountry Aircraft

When flying backcountry aircraft, the following should be carried:

- 1 metal fuel funnel fitted with a water separating filter.
- 1 oil can.
- Engine and airframe tools and spares sufficient to effect at least minor repairs.
- ELT, handheld radio, cell phone, signal kit.

Most bush pilots carry a small portable semi-rotary pump for refuelling out of gas drums.

10.8 STOL Aircraft

Short take-off and landing (STOL) aircraft are fixed-wing aircraft designed with the specific attribute of being able to conduct their operations into and out of short runways. They are often designed to also operate out of soft and/or rough "unimproved" airstrips, as well as high altitude runways. While STOL aircraft are commonly used as bush aircraft for backcountry operations, they also find frequent use in commercial operations for passenger-carrying purposes where operating environments benefit from their unique performance characteristics.

Photo courtesy of Zenith Aircraft Company

Fig.10.44 STOL Aircraft

STOL aircraft are designed to have the lowest stall speed feasible for their design. Their lower resultant speed for approaches and landings contributes to shorter landing rolls after touchdown. Also contributing to shortened ground rolls are large drag-inducing flaps that allow STOL aircraft to descend steeply to a runway without building up excess speed. To further reduce landing rolls, STOL aircraft commonly have large brakes to enhance braking capacity thereby allowing the aircraft – some of which may be further enhanced by thrust reversers or spoilers – to stop in the shortest possible distance. For take-offs, large power-to-weight ratios give STOL aircraft high rates of acceleration that lead to short ground rolls prior to runway lift-off points.

The primary key to creating STOL aircraft lies with the design of the wing. Wings of STOL aircraft are designed to have a high lift coefficient. To achieve the latter, the upper wing surface is often designed with a heavily cambered profile. While a STOL aircraft will generally have a large wing to maximize its lifting capacity for its weight, operational considerations may dictate that the STOL wing's area be as small as is reasonably possible to accommodate the missions for which the aircraft is designed. For example, relatively short wings make the aircraft easier to taxi, especially when operating in off-airport environments where obstructions and confined spaces can restrict the ground operational flexibility of the aircraft. Also, smaller wings (especially those of high-wing design), do not require the added weight of support structures such as wing struts that can increase the overall weight of the aircraft as well as its parasite drag.

High-wing configurations offer several advantages for STOL aircraft. The height of the wing above the ground tends to prevent "floating" of the aircraft in ground effect over the runway. A floating tendency makes it difficult for the aircraft to touch down, thereby increasing the risk of a runway overrun or a need for a go-around. Also, given that most STOL aircraft are designed to operate from unimproved fields, a high-wing places the engines and propellers of twin-engined aircraft away from potentially damaging rocks and surface debris. A high-wing layout can also accommodate the very large wing flaps, or flaperons (see below), that some STOL aircraft use to achieve their high lift characteristics.

To delay their stall to a higher angle of attack, STOL aircraft may use slats on the wing's leading edge to lower the stall speed. Leading edge slats can prevent a stall up to higher angles of attack by funneling and accelerating air, Venturi-like, through the larger underside opening to a slat's wing slot. This funneled air then gets blown onto the top upper wing surface through the narrower trailing edge opening at the slot's upper exit. This has the effect of pulling the accelerated air around the leading edge of the slat, thus resulting in the wing reaching a higher angle of attack prior to the air separating from the wing's upper surface. The wing's lift increases, the aircraft can support a lower speed at a higher-than-normal angle of attack, and the angle of attack at which the wing will stall is higher. (See also **Slats, Slots & Leading Edge Flaps** in the Chapter **Theory of Flight**.)

STOL aircraft may also use vortex generators to lower their stall speed. As seen in the Chapter **Theory of Flight**, vortex generators re-energize boundary-layer air which keeps the main flow of air in contact with the upper surface of the wing at slower speeds and higher angles of attack.

Given that STOL aircraft can fly at very low speeds and are developed to operate in remote areas where variable terrain and obstacles can present operational challenges, slow speed controllability is essential. Flaperons – full span ailerons which also act as full span flaps – are thus common features incorporated into the design of STOL wings. The full span flaps provide maximum high lift capability while the full span ailerons provide maximum roll controllability. Since both functions are shared by the same control surface by means of a mechanical controller, weight is kept to a minimum.

To achieve their short take-off performance, the wing of a STOL aircraft must reach its characteristically high angle of attack as close to the ground as possible. In tailwheel configurations, when on the ground with all three wheels in contact with the surface, a maximum lift angle is statically present if the aircraft is designed with a very long main gear.

A drawback to such a design is a highly inclined cabin which makes crew access and cargo loading difficult while also reducing the pilot's forward visibility. In nosewheel configurations, designing the aircraft's empennage to be higher than normal allows greater elevator input by the pilot at the point of take-off rotation. This generates greater initial lift owing to the higher angle of attack achievable at lift-off. A greater camber to the horizontal stabilizer can also be incorporated into the STOL design. This facilitates the downward thrust of the tail section upon rotation, thus helping generate a quicker transition to the higher angle of attack of the wings at lift-off.

Given that the nature of STOL operations is such that they are often conducted "off airport," STOL aircraft require a durable landing gear system. Since STOL aircraft are very often used in these backcountry environments, they are often also equipped with large tires to help absorb energy on landings.

10.9 Ultralights

In many ways, ultralights are reminiscent of the original flying machines of the Wright Brothers in the early 1900's and of the famed Silver Dart designed by Alexander Graham Bell and first flown in Canada in 1909. Like those first aircraft, the first generation of ultralight aeroplanes had single surface wings with exposed tubing and bracing cables that held everything together. The pilot sat in an unenclosed seat, feeling the rush of surrounding wind. There are still some ultralights of this design manufactured and flying today but the new generation of aeroplanes in the ultralight category has advanced to utilize wings of conventional airfoil section and enclosed cabins. In fact, many of them look very much like the early models in the lines of famous aeroplane manufacturing firms.

Fig. 10.45 **Ultralight**

The origins of the ultralight aeroplane can be traced directly to the hang glider movement. Someone, experimenting to achieve greater flexibility and control, attached an engine to a hang glider and gave birth to the first ultralight.

The simplest and earliest models of this new breed of flying machine were controlled by pilot weight shift. They had no landing gear. The pilot took off by running over the ground fast enough to achieve flying speed. He/she landed it the same way.

Ultralights, for the most part, have moved away from pilot weight shifting as a means of control and have advanced their design to include shock absorbing wheel landing gear, either in the tricycle configuration or a main gear with a tailwheel. They feature independent three axis aerodynamic controls, that is, ailerons, elevators and rudder, that are operated by a conventional stick control and rudder pedals. It should be noted, however, that ultralight control operated as a function of weight shift has not disappeared as a design feature. Some manufacturers still build such ultralights, referred to as "trikes", that make use of this particular means of control.

The joy of the ultralight aeroplane is the slow speed at which it flies. Many ultralights have stall speeds as low as 15 to 18 knots. As a result, landing speeds are low and the runway needed for take-off and landing is quite short. They also cruise at relatively slow speeds. Because ultralight aeroplanes have the capability for sustained flight and would, therefore, be apt to stray into controlled airspace, certain regulations as to their operation have been formulated to govern their use.

A basic ultralight aircraft is defined as an aeroplane having no more than two seats, designed and manufactured to have a maximum take-off weight of 544 kg and a stall speed in the landing configuration (V_{SO}) of 39 knots (45 mph) or less indicated airspeed at the maximum take-off weight.

An advanced ultralight aircraft is defined as a propeller driven aeroplane, capable of carrying a maximum of two persons, including the pilot, with a maximum take-off weight of 350 kg for a single-place aeroplane, or 560 kg for a two-place aeroplane. They are further defined as requiring a maximum stalling speed in the landing configuration, V_{SO}, at the manufacturer's recommended maximum take-off weight, not exceeding 39 knots (45 mph) indicated airspeed. They are limited to non-aerobatic operations, including maneuvers incident to normal flying, stalls and spins (if approved for type), lazy eights, chandelles, and steep turns, in which the angle of bank is not more than 60°. (For Canada, the complete type design standards for advanced ultralight aeroplanes are defined by the Light Aircraft Manufacturers Association of Canada, LAMAC.)

Ultralight aeroplanes must be registered, must be issued with a certificate of registration and must have registration marks painted or attached in some permanent fashion on the aeroplane. The first letter of the registration, as always, begins with the letter denoting the country in which the ultralight is registered. The nationality and registration, the name of the manufacturer, the date and place of manufacture, the model and serial number of the aeroplane must all be inscribed on a fireproof identification plate that is securely affixed in a prominent position on the aircraft.

Anyone piloting an ultralight aeroplane must be the holder of a Pilot Permit – Ultralight Aeroplane. An applicant is issued with a permit only upon both the satisfactory completion of an ultralight ground school course and the satisfactory completion of a written government examination. The exam requires knowledge of aviation regulations, air traffic rules and procedures, as well as basic knowledge of weight and balance requirements. Applicants should also be familiar with any Information Circulars and Supplements relating to ultralights. Flight training is conducted under the direction and supervision of the holder of a Flight Instructor Rating – Ultralight Aeroplane. The applicant must demonstrate proficiency in piloting an ultralight aeroplane.

Passengers may be carried in an ultralight but the pilot-in-command must have a passenger carrying endorsement on their pilot permit to perform this activity. The privileges of this rating allow the permit holder to carry no more than one passenger in an ultralight aeroplane that is not prohibited from carrying passengers in accordance with regulations. To obtain a passenger carrying rating, the applicant must

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

undergo additional training based on the higher level of experience and skill required of those applying for the new rating.

Ultralights may be flown only in accordance with visual flight rules and only during daylight hours. They may not be operated within 5 nautical miles from the centre of any airport or within the control zone associated with any uncontrolled airport, unless prior permission has been obtained in writing or by two-way radio from the airport operator. To operate within the control zone associated with a controlled airport, it is necessary to obtain an air traffic control clearance by two-way radio voice communication from the air traffic control unit in the tower at that airport.

Although by law, any holder of a private, commercial or airline transport licence is legally entitled to fly an ultralight aircraft, such individuals should still seek dual flying instruction in an ultralight before soloing in an ultralight. The flying characteristics of some ultralight aircraft may differ widely from those of conventional aircraft.

10.10 Gliders

If there is one human activity that most closely resembles ornithological flight it is, perhaps, the activity known as soaring; that is, motorless flight using an aircraft (known as a glider or sailplane) that flies like any normal aircraft, while also staying aloft aided by naturally occurring atmospheric lifting agents.

Fig. 10.46 **Glider**

Originally, gliders were launched using winches and bungees off the sides of hills or gently rolling terrains. Today's practice is more commonly geared towards aerial launches from small powered towplanes using thick, 200 foot polypropylene tow rope. Once airborne, and usually between 2,000 and 3,000 feet, the sailplane releases the rope and begins its free flight, the pilot relying on his/her senses and skills to recognize atmospheric activity to extend the duration of the flight before bringing the aircraft back to its earthly origin.

A sailplane is always gliding downwards, but by locating atmospheric lift to offset the downward motion of the aircraft due to gravity, the pilot of a sailplane can gain altitude and fly great distances without necessarily needing to find lift again.

A lifting force is what fuels a glider's capacity to gain altitude and maintain flight. In the earth's atmosphere, it can occur in the form of thermals, ridge lift, and mountain waves.

The thermal is the most common form of lifting agent used by glider pilots. By circling inside a rising column of air resulting from daytime heating, the glider pilot can achieve climbing rates of 1,000 feet per minute. In a strict sense, therefore, it is in fact, solar energy (the energy from the sun heating the ground) that powers the sailplane and keeps it buoyant.

A second form of rising air, the ridge lift, (also known as orographic lift) is air forced upwards by the prevailing action of wind rushing up against a ridge of hills. When the hills are high enough and long enough, the glider pilot can ride along these ridges, never requiring to circle. In this way, gliders can achieve ever greater heights by converting gained airspeed into greater aircraft altitude. These forms of rising air – the upward motion of winds against hills – have on occasion been known to carry sailplanes over distances of 1,000 kilometers.

Discovered by early pioneering glider pilots is the phenomenon known as the mountain wave. Just as water flows over a rock in a stream, wind blowing over a mountain peak forms a wave in the atmosphere, rising at as much as 2,000 feet per minute, and ascending to altitudes of 50,000 feet. The experienced sailplane pilot who crests a mountain wave can find him/herself staying aloft for hours and, indeed, it is the mountain wave effect that has allowed glider pilots to set the altitude records that exist for the sailplane flying category.

Other types of lift involve cumulus cloud flying, flying the edge of a cold front, and using sea breezes to stay aloft and fly large distances.

The rudimentary gliders of yesteryear – often nothing more than kites big enough to carry the weight of one man – have evolved into the highly specialized composite built sailplanes of today. Mostly designed to be light and small, but with high aspect ratios to maximize lift and minimize drag, wooden and aluminum constructions exist alongside the more modern composites, and continue to be used for soaring activity in many parts of the world where soaring is practiced.

Sailplane instrumentation consists primarily of an altimeter, an airspeed indicator, a magnetic compass, a variometer (a sensitive vertical speed indicator), and a yaw string (a device that helps glider pilots compensate for the strong effects of adverse yaw resulting from the large wing spans of common gliders). Pilots can also install total energy systems that provide readings of lift and sink rates outside the sailplane that are independent of pilot-induced control movements. In day VFR flight, a glider must also be equipped with a radio communication system adequate to permit two-way communication on the appropriate frequency when the glider is operated within Class C or Class D airspace, or within an MF area, or an ADIZ.

For additional operational control, most sailplanes are equipped with dive brakes and spoilers to modify descent rates primarily for landings.

Any given glider's primary performance characteristic is its glide ratio. A glider with a glide ratio of 30:1 will travel 30 feet forward for every 1 foot it descends; it is, therefore, the ratio of airspeed to sink speed. A glider's glide ratio varies with the airspeed at which it flies meaning a best glide ratio is an important calculation for every glider pilot to determine.

Anyone piloting a glider must hold a Pilot Licence – Glider which, under day VFR, allows them to operate as pilot-in-command of a glider in which no passenger is carried on board. If a passenger is carried on board, the licence holder must be endorsed in the method of launch by the holder of a Flight Instructor Rating – Glider. Furthermore, for passenger carrying privileges, the method of launch must also have been used by the licence holder for at least three previous solo

flights. To obtain a Pilot Licence – Glider, the applicant must demonstrate proficiency in piloting a glider and successfully complete a written government examination. Flight training must be conducted under the supervision of a holder of a Flight Instructor Rating – Glider.

Aerobatics may be performed in gliders but the pilot-in-command must meet the criteria as described in the **Canadian Aviation Regulations** for conducting aerobatic maneuvers.

All technical records in respect of glider aircraft may be kept in the journey log of the aircraft.

It is not uncommon for glider pilots, due to changing prevailing conditions, to be forced into making off-field landings when it no longer becomes possible to attain their desired landing base. Therefore, it is a good rule during cross-country soaring flights that pilots keep their options open for safe landing areas. A flat, cultivated farmer's field is always a favorable option.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

11 Human Factors

The preceding chapters of this manual have been devoted to the technical aspects of flying. The reader should now understand how lift is produced by an airfoil to make an aeroplane fly, the basic construction of an airframe, all about the operation and care of an aero engine, how to use aircraft communication and navigation radio equipment, how to navigate from A to B, the vagaries of weather, etc. etc.

When the first editions of this book were published and, indeed until not too many years ago, it was generally believed that if an individual had a good understanding of all these technical aspects of pilotage, then they had acquired the basic prerequisites to be a successful, efficient and safe pilot.

In the last few decades, however, it has been learned that a thorough grasp of these subjects, though essential, is not enough. Human factors are a very important part of flight crew training. Human aspects, such as cockpit organization, crew co-ordination, fitness and health, sensory illusions and decision making are as vital to safety in the air as are flying techniques. The relationship of people with machines, the environment and other people is part of the human factors equation.

There is much to understand about the pilot him/herself and their physical and involuntary reactions to the unnatural environmental conditions of flying. During the Second World War, it was first realized that some aeroplane losses were due to pilot incapacitation rather than to enemy action. The challenge of explaining these unusual occurrences was taken up and since that time much research has been conducted into such subjects as hypoxia, spatial disorientation, hyperventilation, the bends, impairment due to drugs and alcohol, and mental stress. Startling and sobering information is now available.

Humankind is essentially a terrestrial creature. The human body is equipped to operate at greatest efficiency within relatively narrow limits of atmospheric pressure and, through years of habit, has adapted itself to movement on the ground.

In their quest for adventure and their desire for progress, humans have ventured into a foreign environment, the air high above the ground. But these lofty heights are not natural to humankind. As altitude increases, the body becomes less and less efficient to a point, at sufficient altitude, of incapacitation and unconsciousness. Completely deprived of oxygen, the body dies in 8 minutes. Without ground reference, the senses can play tricks, sometimes fatal tricks.

Aeroplane accidents are an occurrence that every conscientious pilot is concerned with preventing. Most aircraft accidents are highly preventable. Many of them have one factor in common. They are precipitated by some human failing rather than by a mechanical malfunction. In fact, statistics indicate that human factors are involved in 85% of aircraft accidents. Many of these have been the result of disorientation, physical incapacitation and even the death of the pilot during the flight. Others are the result of poor management of cockpit resources.

It is the intention of this chapter to explain briefly some of these human factors to help pilots understand and appreciate the capacities and limitations of their own bodies so that flying might never be a frightening or dangerous undertaking but instead the enjoyable and safe and efficient experience all lovers of aeroplanes and the airways have always believed it to be.

11.1 Physical Factors

11.1.1 General Health

Since flying an aeroplane demands that pilots be alert and in full command of their abilities and reasoning, it is only common sense to expect that they will ensure that they are free of any conditions that would be detrimental to their alertness, their ability to make correct decisions, and their rapid reaction times before seating themselves behind the wheel of an aeroplane.

Certain physical conditions such as serious heart trouble, epilepsy, uncontrolled diabetes and other medical problems that might cause sudden incapacitation and serious forms of psychiatric illness associated with loss of insight or contact with reality may preclude an individual from being judged medically fit to apply for a licence.

Other problems such as acute infections are temporarily disqualifying and will not affect the status of a pilot's licence. But they will affect their immediate ability to fly and they should seek a doctor's advice before returning to the cockpit of an aeroplane.

In fact, any general discomfort, whether due to colds, indigestion, nausea, worry, lack of sleep or any other bodily weakness, is not conducive to safe flying. Excessive fatigue is perhaps the most insidious of these conditions, resulting in inattentiveness, slow reactions and confused mental processes. Excessive fatigue should be considered a reason for cancelling or postponing a flight.

11.1.2 Hypoxia

The advance in aeronautical engineering in recent years has produced more versatile aeroplanes capable of flying at very high altitudes. At such high altitudes, man is susceptible to one of the most insidious physiological problems, hypoxia. Because hypoxia comes on without warning of any kind, supplementary oxygen must be available in any aircraft that will be flown above 10,000 feet. The general rule of oxygen above 10,000 feet ASL by day and above 5,000 feet ASL by night is one the wise pilot will practice to avoid the hazard of this debilitating condition. Hypoxia can be defined as a lack of sufficient oxygen in the body cells or tissues.

The greatest concentration of air molecules is near to the earth's surface. There is progressively less air and therefore less oxygen (per unit volume) as you ascend to higher altitudes. Therefore each breath of air that you breathe at, for example, 15,000 feet ASL has about half the amount of oxygen of a breath taken at sea level.

The most important fact to remember about hypoxia is that the individual is unaware that they are exhibiting symptoms of this condition. The brain centre that would warn of decreasing efficiency is the first to be affected and the pilot enjoys a misguided sense of well-being. Neither is there any pain nor any other warning signs that tell the pilot that alertness is deteriorating. The effects of hypoxia progress from euphoria (feeling of well-being) to reduced vision, confusion, inability to concentrate, impaired judgment and slowed reflexes to eventual loss of consciousness.

There are four types of hypoxia: Hypoxic hypoxia is a normal effect of altitude and is avoided by the use of on board oxygen systems. Anaemic hypoxia is caused by an over abundance of carbon monoxide in the haemoglobin (see **Carbon Monoxide**

below). Stagnant hypoxia is a condition in which the brain is deprived of an adequate blood supply. Histotoxic hypoxia is caused by chemical poisoning and by high blood alcohol. (See **Alcohol** below).

Effects on Vision at 5,000 Feet

The retina of the eye is actually an outcropping of the brain and as such is more dependent on an adequate supply of oxygen than any other part of the body. For this reason, the first evidence of hypoxia occurs at 5,000 feet in the form of diminished night vision. Instruments and charts are misread; dimly lit ground features are misinterpreted.

Effects Above 10,000 Feet

It is true that general physical fitness has some bearing on the exact altitude at which the effects of hypoxia will first affect a particular individual. Age, drinking habits, use of drugs, lack of rest, etc., all increase the susceptibility of the body to this condition. However, the average has been determined at 10,000 feet.

At 10,000 feet, there is a definite but undetectable hypoxia. This altitude is the highest level at which a pilot should consider him/herself efficient in judgment and ability. However, continuous operation even at this altitude for periods of more than, say, four hours can produce fatigue because of the reduced oxygen supply and a pilot should expect deterioration in concentration, problem solving and efficiency.

At 14,000 feet, lassitude and indifference are appreciable. There is dimming of vision, tremor of hands, clouding of thought and memory and errors in judgment. Cyanosis (blue discolouring of the fingernails) is first noticed.

At 16,000 feet, a pilot becomes disoriented, is belligerent or euphoric and completely lacking in rational judgment. Control of the aeroplane can be easily lost.

At 18,000 feet, primary shock sets in and the individual loses consciousness within minutes.

At higher altitudes, death may result after a prolonged period.

The Canadian Aviation Regulations rule that an aircraft should not be operated for more than 30 minutes between 10,000 feet and 13,000 feet or at all above 13,000 feet unless oxygen is readily available for each crew member. In the U.S., 12,000 feet is used instead of 13,000 feet as the regulated altitude for oxygen usage.

Prevention of Hypoxia

The only way to prevent hypoxia is to take steps against it before its onset. Remember the rule: Oxygen above 10,000 feet by day and above 5,000 feet at night.

Stagnant Hypoxia

Stagnant hypoxia is a condition in which there is a temporary displacement of blood in the head. It occurs as a result of positive G forces and can be attributed to the fact that the circulatory system is unable to keep blood pumped to the head.

G is the symbol for the rate of change of velocity and it represents both a force and a direction. Positive G drives blood from the head to the feet; negative G drives blood from the feet to the head.

G tolerance is lowered by ill health, low blood pressure, obesity, fatigue, smoking, hypoxic hypoxia, hangovers. It is affected by the peak value of the force imposed, the duration and the rate of onset.

Positive G is experienced in an abrupt pull-out from a high speed dive, during an inside loop and in a co-ordinated turn.

The first symptom of stagnant hypoxia is deterioration in vision. The pilot experiences grey-out, a condition in which the vision becomes dim and colourless. As the G force increases, black-out (temporary loss of vision) occurs as the blood supply to the eyes is completely interrupted. As the G forces are further increased, consciousness is lost.

Negative G forces increase the blood pressure in the eyes and cause red-out. Negative G in the excess of -5G can cause rupture of the small blood vessels in the eyes. Negative G is experienced in pushovers and outside loops.

G tolerance is affected by diet, requiring adequate hydration and normal blood sugar. Good physical condition also is important: weight bearing programs are more effective than aerobic training.

11.1.3 Ozone Sickness

Another problem associated with flight at very high altitudes is ozone sickness. Although it has been evident only with flights operating at altitudes of 30,000 feet or more, the advent of general aviation aeroplanes that operate at subsonic speeds at such levels makes this a problem of which even the private pilot should be aware.

Ozone is a bluish gas that exists in relatively high concentrations in the upper levels of the atmosphere, especially in the tropopause. Because the tropopause fluctuates in its average altitude from season to season, any flight operating above 35,000 feet is likely to come into contact with ozone at some time.

Although ozone does have a distinctive colour and odour, passengers and flight crew who have experienced ozone sickness have been unaware of the apparently high concentrations of ozone prior to the onset of the symptoms.

The symptoms of ozone sickness are hacking cough, poor night vision, shortness of breath, headache, burning eyes, mouth and nose, mild chest pains, leg cramps, fatigue, drowsiness, nose bleed, nausea and vomiting. The symptoms become more severe with continued exposure and with physical activity but do diminish rapidly when the aeroplane descends below 30,000 feet.

Some relief from the symptoms can be achieved by breathing through a warm, moist towel. Limiting physical activity to a minimum and breathing pure oxygen are also effective in alleviating the symptoms.

11.1.4 Carbon Monoxide

Oxygen is transported throughout the body by combining with the haemoglobin in the blood. However, this vital transportation agent, haemoglobin, has 210 times the affinity for carbon monoxide that it has for oxygen. Therefore, even the smallest amounts of carbon monoxide can seriously interfere with the distribution of oxygen and produce a type of hypoxia, known as anaemic hypoxia.

Carbon monoxide (CO) is colourless, odourless and tasteless. It is a product of fuel combustion and is found in varying amounts in the exhaust from aeroplane engines. A defect, crack or hole in the cabin heating system may allow this gas to enter the cockpit of the aeroplane.

Susceptibility to carbon monoxide increases with altitude. At higher altitudes, the body has difficulty getting enough

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

oxygen because of decreased pressure. The additional problem of carbon monoxide could make the situation critical.

Early symptoms of CO poisoning are feelings of sluggishness and warmness. Intense headache, throbbing in the temples, ringing in the ears, dizziness and dimming of vision follow as exposure increases. Eventually vomiting, convulsions, coma and death result.

Although CO poisoning is a type of hypoxia, it is unlike altitude hypoxia in that it is not immediately remedied by the use of oxygen or by descent to lower altitudes.

If you notice exhaust fumes or experience any of the symptoms associated with CO poisoning, you should shut off the cabin heater, open a fresh air source immediately, avoid smoking, use 100% oxygen if it is available and land at the first opportunity and ensure that all effects of CO are gone before continuing the flight. It may take several days to rid the body of carbon monoxide. In some cases, it may be wise to consult a doctor.

Cigarettes

Cigarette smoke contains a minute amount of carbon monoxide. It has been estimated that a heavy smoker will lower his/her ceiling by more than 4,000 feet. Just 3 cigarettes smoked at sea level will raise the physiological altitude to 8,000 feet. Haemoglobin has great affinity to the carbon monoxide in the cigarette smoke and absorbs it readily. Its oxygen absorbing qualities are reduced to about the same degree as they would be reduced by the decrease in atmospheric pressure at 8,000 feet ASL.

The carbon monoxide from cigarettes has detrimental effects not only on the smoker but on the non-smoker as well. After prolonged exposure to an increased level of carbon monoxide in a confined area such as a cockpit, crew or passengers will experience symptoms such as respiratory discomfort, headaches, eye irritation from the "second hand" smoke.

Cigarette smoking has also been declared as hazardous to health, contributing to hypertension and chronic lung disorders such as bronchitis and emphysema. It has been linked to lung cancer and coronary heart disease.

11.1.5 Hyperventilation

Hyperventilation, or overbreathing, is an increase in respiration that upsets the natural balance of oxygen and carbon dioxide in the system, usually as a result of emotional tension or anxiety. Under conditions of emotional stress, fright or pain, a person may unconsciously increase his/her rate of breathing, thus expelling more carbon dioxide than is being produced by muscular activity. The result is a deficiency of carbon dioxide in the blood.

The most common symptoms are dizziness, tingling of the toes and fingers, hot and cold sensations, nausea and sleepiness. Unconsciousness may result if the breathing rate is not regulated.

The remedy for hyperventilation is a conscious effort to slow down the rate of breathing and to hold the breath intermittently to allow the carbon dioxide to build up to a normal level. Sometimes, the proper balance of carbon dioxide can be more quickly restored by breathing into a paper bag, that is, by re-breathing the expelled carbon dioxide.

The early symptoms of hyperventilation and hypoxia are similar and may be confused. In fact, both conditions can occur at the same time. A pilot, flying at high altitude, may think that he/she can counteract the effects of hypoxia by taking more rapid breaths. Hyperventilation does not help you get more oxygen. It only increases the emission of carbon dioxide. Hypoxia is unlikely to occur below 8,000 feet ASL. Above 8,000 feet, if oxygen is available, take three or four deep breaths of 100% oxygen. If the symptoms persist, the problem is hyperventilation and should be treated as such.

11.1.6 Decompression Sickness

Trapped Gases

Because of the change in barometric pressure during ascent and descent, gases trapped in certain body cavities expand or contract.

The inability to pass this gas may cause abdominal pain, toothache or pain in ears or sinus cavities. In some cases, the pain may be so severe as to lead to incapacitation. The conditions caused by changing barometric pressure are known as dysbarisms; any physical damage that results is called a barotrauma.

EAR BLOCK

The ear is composed of three sections. The outer ear is the auditory canal and ends at the eardrum. The middle ear is a cavity surrounded by bones of the skull. It houses the organs of hearing and is filled with air. The eustachian tube connects the middle ear to the throat.

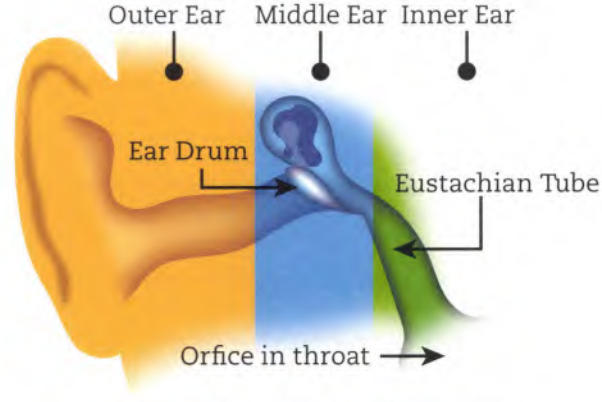


Fig.11.1 Ear Structure & Eustachian Tube

The inner ear controls certain equilibrium senses and contains the cochlea, a small organ that analyzes sound vibrations.

During ascents and descents, air must escape or be replenished through the eustachian tube to equalize the pressure in the middle ear cavity with that of the atmosphere. If air is trapped in the middle ear, the eardrum stretches to absorb the higher pressure. The result is pain and sometimes temporary deafness. Eardrum rupture is even possible.

During climbs, there is little problem since excess air escapes through the tube easily. However, during descents, when pressure in the middle ear must be increased, the eustachian tubes do not open readily. The situation is aggravated if the individual has a cold, an allergy or an infected throat. Pilot and passengers must consciously make an effort to swallow or yawn to stimulate the muscular action of the tubes. Sometimes it is advisable to use the valsalva technique, that is, to close the mouth, hold the nose and blow gently. This action forces air up the eustachian tubes. Children may suffer

severe pain because of ear blocks during descents. They should be repeatedly reminded to swallow or yawn. Small babies are incapable of voluntarily adjusting the pressure in the middle ear and should be given a bottle to suck during descents.

Painful ear block generally occurs as a result of too rapid descent. If the pilot or the passengers are unable to relieve the pain of ear block by the methods described, it may be necessary to climb to altitude again and make the descent more gradually.

After a flight in which 100 percent oxygen has been used, the valsalva procedure should be used several times to ventilate the middle ear and thus reduce the possibility of pain occurring later in the day.

SINUS BLOCK

The sinuses are air filled, bony cavities connected with the nose by means of one or more small openings. If these openings are obstructed by swelling of the mucous membrane lining of the sinuses (as during a cold), equalization of the pressure is difficult. Pain, in the cheekbones on either side of the nose, in the upper jaw or above the eyes, will result. The valsalva procedure will relieve sinus pain.

For both ear and sinus block, the prudent use of nasal inhalants may be helpful. A nasal inhalant containing antihistamine, however, should not be used for the reasons stated in the section on drugs below.

TOOTHACHES

Toothaches may occur at altitude due to abscesses, imperfect fillings, inadequately filled root canals. Anyone who suffers from toothache at altitude should see a dentist. However, the pain caused by a sinus block can be mistaken for toothache.

GASTROINTESTINAL PAIN

Gas pains are caused by the expansion of gas within the digestive tract during ascent into the reduced pressure at altitude. Relief from pain may be accomplished by descent from altitude.

Certain foods, such as beans, spicy food, carbonated beverages, are known gas producers and should be avoided by individuals who know from personal experience that they can cause a problem.

THE COMMON COLD

Don't fly with a cold. A cold that is a mere discomfort on the ground can become a serious menace to pilots and passengers in the air.

Tiredness, irritability, drowsiness and pain are all symptoms of a cold and work together to make a pilot unsafe in the air. More insidious, however, is the effect a cold may have on the sinuses and on the middle and inner ear. Swollen lymph tissue and mucous membranes may block the sinuses causing disabling pain and pressure vertigo during descent from altitude. Infection of the inner ear, that is a common symptom of a cold, can also produce severe vertigo. The tissue around the nasal end of the eustachian tube will quite likely be swollen and middle ear problems associated, under normal conditions (see above), with descent from altitude will be severely aggravated. A perforated eardrum is a possible result. Although a perforated eardrum usually heals quickly, in some cases there is permanent hearing impairment or prolonged infection of the middle ear.

Cold remedies do not prevent symptoms. They usually only bring on other problems, drowsiness being the most common.

Evolved Gases

Nitrogen, always present in body fluids, comes out of solution and forms bubbles as barometric pressure decreases in ascents to higher altitudes. If the bubbles lodge in small blood vessels, they can cause circulation blockage, pain and tissue damage. Certain conditions predispose to the development of decompression sickness. It is more common in the elderly and in females and in people who are inactive. Obese, overweight persons are more susceptible to it as fatty tissue contains more nitrogen.

Bends or cramps are characterized by pain in and around the joints and can become progressively worse during ascent to higher altitudes. The symptoms occur most commonly in large joints, such as the knee or shoulder, but may also occur in joints that have been previously injured. Exercise or movement will make the pain worse. The symptoms can usually be reduced by descent to a lower altitude.

Chokes are pains in the chest caused by blocking of the smaller pulmonary blood vessels by innumerable small bubbles. In severe cases, there is a sensation of suffocation. This is a serious condition and an immediate descent to lower altitudes must be made.

Paraesthesia or Creeps is another decompression sickness caused by tiny gas bubbles under the skin. Symptoms include tingling, itching, cold and warm sensations.

Central nervous system disturbances include visual disturbances, headache and, more rarely, paralysis and sensory disturbances.

Decompression sickness is unpredictable. One of the outcomes may be shock, characterized by faintness, dizziness, nausea, pallor, sweating and even loss of consciousness. Collapse is possible if larger bubbles interfere with the blood supply to the brain or the spinal cord. Usually the symptoms disappear when a return to the ground is made. However, the symptoms may continue and special treatment (recompression) may be needed.

Decompression sickness, caused by evolved gas, is rare below 20,000 feet. The best defence against this painful problem is a pressurized cabin. Some protection against it can be achieved by breathing 100% oxygen for an hour before ascending to altitudes above 20,000 feet. This action washes the nitrogen out of the blood. Oxygen does not come out of solution or form bubbles. Refrain also from drinking carbonated beverages or eating gas-producing foods.

SCUBA DIVING & FLYING

A person that flies in an aeroplane immediately after engaging in the sport of scuba diving risks severe decompression sickness at much lower altitudes than would normally be expected from this problem. The breather tanks, used by a scuba diver to counteract the greater pressure of the water on the body, deliver compressed air that supersaturates the body tissues with nitrogen even in a shallow dive. At a depth of 30 feet, the body absorbs twice as much nitrogen as it would on the ground. Ascending to 8,000 feet ASL could bring on incapacitating bends.

After non-decompression dives, flights up to 8,000 feet ASL should be avoided for 12 hours. On dives where decompression stops were required during the ascent to the surface, the interval should be 24 hours. Regardless of the type of dive, flights above 8,000 feet ASL should be avoided for at least 24 hours even in pressurized aircraft since even pressurized aircraft may lose pressurization. A good rule, if you have dived

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

to a depth below 30 feet, is not to fly for 24 hours to permit the nitrogen content of the body to return to normal.

11.1.7 Vision

Good vision is of primary importance in flying, in judgment of distance, depth perception, reading of charts and instruments. It should be scrupulously protected.

Pilots are exposed to higher light levels than is the average person. Very high light levels prevail at altitude because the atmosphere is less dense. In addition, light is reflected back at the pilot by cloud tops. This light contains more of the damaging blue and ultra-violet wavelengths than are encountered on the surface of the earth. Prolonged exposure can cause damage to the eye and especially to the lens. Sunglasses should, therefore, be worn to provide protection against these dangers and to prevent eyestrain.

Instrument panels should be dull grey or black to harmonize with the black instruments, so that the eye does not have to adjust its lens opening constantly as the line of vision moves from the dark instruments to a light coloured panel.

When flying into the sun, the eyes are so dazzled by the brightness that they cannot adjust quickly to the shaded instrument panel. This situation causes eyestrain and is fatiguing to the pilot. Good quality sunglasses, with high definition, coated against glare and ultraviolet light help to minimize the problem.

Atmospheric obscuring phenomena such as haze, smoke and fog have an effect on the distance the normal eye can see. The ability of the eye to maintain a distance focus is weakened. Distant objects are not outlined sharply against the horizon and, after a short lapse of time, the eye, having no distance point to fix on, has difficulty maintaining a focus at a distance of more than a mile or two (a condition known as empty field myopia). As a result, scanning for other aircraft becomes difficult and requires special effort on the part of the pilot. With the pilot's focal range reduced, the span of time in which to perceive the danger and take evasive action is considerably shortened. Pilots must learn to recognize the limitations of the human eye under varying weather conditions and realize that the see and avoid maxim has limitations under some atmospheric conditions.

A small percentage of the general population is colour blind. For the NORDO pilot who expects clearances by light signals, colour vision (especially red/green) is essential. Because modern cathode ray tube (CRT) instruments, weather radar and collision avoidance displays are introducing more complex colour displays, colour vision is important for pilots flying aircraft with this sophisticated equipment.

Depth Perception

Clues for accurate depth perception are often absent in the air. Clouds are of varying size and there is no way to estimate their distance. Landings on glassy water or on wet runways are a problem as is the condition known as white out that occurs in blowing snow and other winter situations.

Night Vision

At night, the pilot's vision is greatly impaired. The cones that are concentrated in the centre of the eye need a lot of light to function properly. As a result, there is a blind spot in the centre of the eye at night. This blind spot is sufficiently large to block out the view of another aeroplane some distance away if the pilot is looking directly at it.

At night, it is necessary to develop the technique of using peripheral vision. One sees at night by means of the rods that are concentrated on the edges of the eye and are responsible for peripheral vision. It takes the rods about 30 minutes to adjust fully to darkness. Even a small amount of white light will destroy the dark adaptation.

You should wear sunglasses during the day but remove them after sunset. Avoid looking at bright lights when you propose to undertake a night flight. Do everything possible to adapt your eyes to the darkness prior to your flight. Wearing red goggles for 30 minutes prior to a night flight helps the eyes adapt to darkness.

Force your eyes to view off centre. To see at your best, you must look off centre at about 15 to 20 degrees to be in the area of maximum rod density for both eyes. With good off-centre vision, faint distant objects, like the dim lights on a landing strip or another aircraft, will be easily seen.

Don't use yellow or pink highlighting on flight charts. These colours do not show up at night with the red cockpit lighting on. Use blue highlighting instead. Always carry a quality flashlight with a red night vision filter and a spare set of batteries and a spare bulb. Ensure that they are within easy and immediate reach.

Night vision is also sensitive to hypoxia. Supplementary oxygen should be used above 5,000 feet to avoid depriving the eye of oxygen. Dirt and reflection on the windshield cause confusion at night. A very clean windshield is important.

NIGHT LIGHTING OF INSTRUMENTS

Lighting of instruments is a problem in that the instruments must be well enough lit to be readable without the light destroying the pilot's dark adaptation.

Ultraviolet flood lighting of fluorescent instrument marking is probably the least satisfactory. The instruments are marked with fluorescent paint that shows up under fluorescent lighting as a bluish green colour. The disadvantages are that the instruments can't be kept in focus, dark adaptation may be lost, eyes are irritated, vision becomes foggy.

Red lights. Lighting of instruments by indirect individual red lights is unsatisfactory because uniform light distribution over all parts of the instrument cannot be achieved. There is no illumination of knobs and switches. Red flood lighting of the whole instrument panel is more satisfactory. However, the ability to distinguish colours one from another is lost. Coloration of charts is indecipherable and information printed in red becomes unreadable.

White lights. Low density white light is considered the best cockpit lighting system. The instruments can be clearly read and colours recognized. Because the low density white light can be regulated, dark adaptation is not destroyed although it is somewhat impaired.

Thunderstorms

It is not advisable to fly an aeroplane through or near thunderstorms. The blinding flashes destroy night adaptation. Turn the cockpit lights full bright if you are in the vicinity of lightning activity in order to prevent lightning blindness.

Anti-Collision Lights

When flying in the clouds, strobe lights and rotating beacons should be turned off as the reflection off the cloud of the blinking light is irritating to the eye.

Design Eye Reference Point (DERP)

In every aeroplane, there is a position at which the pilot, when seated, is assured of an optimum vision zone. The design eye reference point (DERP) is a certain height above the cockpit floor and a certain distance from a datum line. External visibility is affected by windshield size, posts, glare shield and the fore/aft position of the seat, the latter being the only variable in this list.

Any change in seat position will alter the external field of view. If, for example, a pilot has the seat positioned so that their eyes are at the DERP and then moves the seat rearward and downward, it will reduce the view both above and below the nose of the aircraft. Vision lines inside the cockpit will also be altered. Any change, therefore, from the DERP is a compromise between external and internal vision and one's ability to manipulate the controls.

Aircraft are designed to meet certain cockpit visibility requirements established by the aviation authorities in the country of manufacture. Some manufacturers provide reference points that the pilot is to use in making seat adjustments. These reference points may be something as simple as two balls affixed to the glare shield which the pilot must line up visually. However, many manufacturers do not provide guidance to pilots as to the DERP for their aircraft. As a result, through ignorance, pilots risk restricting their external field of view and jeopardize the safe operation of their aircraft. Determining the DERP for the aircraft you fly is a safety precaution that is wise to make. Write to the manufacturer and request the information.

The following guidelines should be considered in locating the correct seat placement (height as well as fore/aft position): (1) all flight controls must be capable of full travel and free of restriction; (2) flight instruments and warning lights must be visible to the pilot; (3) forward visibility over the nose should not be restricted; and (4) the seat position should be comfortable for the pilot.

11.1.8 Noise, Vibration & Temperature

Noise

Noise is both inconvenient and annoying. It produces headaches, visual and auditory fatigue, air sickness and general discomfort with an accompanying loss of efficiency. Even at levels which are not uncomfortable, noise has a fatiguing effect, especially when the pilot is exposed for a long period as on a lengthy cross-country flight. To arrive at destination suffering from noise induced fatigue and have to make a landing under minimum conditions is clearly an undesirable situation.

Sound is measured in decibels (dB). The zero level is defined as the weakest sound that can be heard by a person with good hearing in a quiet location. The loudest sound that most people can bear is 140 dB. High levels cause pain or nausea. Noise levels approaching these levels should not be experienced without ear protection. In fact, ear protection should be used for continuous noise levels above 80 dB.

Little has been done to reduce and control noise in aircraft cockpits. Tests have measured the sound level in modern aircraft at 90 to 100 decibels. Noise levels in jets can approach 140 decibels.

With noise levels of this magnitude, hearing damage is a distinct problem unless some sort of hearing protection is used. Many pilots report temporary loss of hearing sensitivity after flights. Still others have reported an inability to understand radio transmissions from the ground, especially during take-off and climb when the engine is operating at full power. In fact, there is documented evidence to show that continued exposure to high levels of aircraft noise will result over the years in loss of hearing ability.

The detrimental effect of noise is not a sudden thing but builds up progressively over years of exposure. Pilots of helicopters and aerial application aircraft are particularly susceptible because of the relatively high levels of noise experienced in these cockpits and the long durations of exposure. But even pilots, who put in only three or four hours a week in their aeroplanes, have been found to have slightly impaired hearing after several years.

Everyone experiences some hearing deterioration as the process of growing old. Add this to a level of deafness caused by exposure to noise and it becomes obvious that a pilot reaching middle age could have a serious hearing deficiency.

Protective devices against noise are therefore important, first of all, in helping to reduce fatigue during individual flights and, secondly, in helping to minimize the possibility of hearing loss or deterioration in later years.

The best protection is a pair of properly fitting earplugs. They lower noise levels by as much as 20 to 30 decibels. The use of ear covering devices, such as headsets, can also help if they are tight fitting. If they fit poorly, they can be worse than nothing in that they give the wearer a false sense of security. The use of earplugs as well as headsets is recommended.

The wearing of earplugs does not impair ability to hear. In fact, speech intelligibility is improved because the earplugs filter out the very noises that interfere with voice transmissions.

The regular wearing of earplugs, especially by pilots but also by passengers, is a good precautionary measure to ensure continued good hearing throughout a pilot's lifetime.

Vibration

The powerplant of the aeroplane is the principal source of vibration. At subsonic speeds, this vibration is responsible for fatigue and irritability and can even cause chest and abdominal pains, backache, headaches, eyestrain and muscular tension. If the vibration happens to occur in the frequency of about 40 cycles per second, blurring of the eyes may occur. It is even possible to become hypnotized as a result of rhythmic and monotonous vibrations.

Vibration can rarely be completely controlled but it can be dampened by placing a barrier between the pilot and the source to reduce the effect. Dampening can also be accomplished by reducing the source of the vibration or by modifying the transmission pathway.

Temperature

At temperatures over 30°C, discomfort, irritability and loss of efficiency are pronounced. High temperatures also reduce the pilot's tolerance to mental and physical stresses, such as acceleration and hypoxia.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

At cold temperatures, the immediate danger is frostbite. Continued exposure will result in reduced efficiency to the point where safe operation of the aeroplane is impossible.

HYPOTHERMIA

The most serious result of extended exposure to extremely cold temperatures is a condition known as hypothermia. Hypothermia is a lowering of the temperature of the body's inner core. It occurs when the amount of heat produced by the body is less than the amount being lost to the body's surroundings. As it progresses, vital organs and bodily systems begin to lose their ability to function. It is a condition that can develop quickly and may be fatal.

In the early stages, the skin becomes pale and waxy, fatigue and signs of weakness begin. As the body temperature drops farther, uncontrollable intense shivering and clumsiness occur. Mental confusion and apathy, drowsiness, slurred speech, slow and shallow breathing are the next stage. Unconsciousness and death follow rapidly.

Hypothermia certainly can attack occupants in the aeroplane cockpit if there is no cabin heating system and if they are not adequately dressed to protect against very cold ambient temperatures. Usually, however, hypothermia is considered to be a danger to the pilot who has been forced down and is exposed to the elements. Cold, wetness, wind and inadequate preparation are the conditions which cause it. Wet clothing, caused by weather, immersion in water or condensed perspiration, acts like a wick and extracts body heat at a rate many times faster than would be the case with dry clothing. Immersion in cold water greatly accelerates the progress into hypothermia.

The best protection against this condition is adequate clothing, shelter, emergency rations and, above all, knowledge of the danger. Every wintertime flier should have a survival kit that includes a lightweight tent, plastic sheet, survival blanket, etc., that can be used to construct a shelter. Always wear (or take along as extras) proper clothing for the worst conditions you might encounter. Several layers of clothing are more effective than one bulky layer. Protect high heat loss areas, such as the head, neck, underarms, sides of the chest. Carry effective rain gear and put it on before you get wet. High energy foods that produce heat and energy should be included in the survival kit. Hot fluids help to keep body heat up. Guard against becoming tired and exhausted. A tired person, exposed to a cold, wet and windy environment, is a prime candidate for hypothermia.

HYPERTHERMIA

Hyperthermia (or heat stroke) occurs when the body is unable to dissipate heat either through radiation or by sweating. If the body core temperature rises above 41°C, thermostatic control is mostly lost. People with heat stroke should seek medical treatment as soon as possible.

11.1.9 Sensory Illusions

Under normal conditions, the kinaesthetic sensors (skeletal muscles, bones and joints), vision (eyes) and the vestibular (labyrinth) organs (inner ears) provide the brain with information about the position of the body in relation to the ground. In flying, however, conditions are sometimes encountered which fool the senses.

The eyes are the prime orienting organs but are dependent on reference points in providing reliable spatial information. Objects seen from the air often look quite different than they do when seen from the ground. If the horizon is not visible, a pilot might choose some other line as reference, such as a sloping cloud bank. Fog and haze greatly affect judgment of distance. Lights on the ground at night are commonly confused for aeroplanes. Even stars can be confused with ground lights.

The tension of various muscles in the body assists in a small way in determining position. The body is accustomed to the pull of one G force acting in only one direction. In an aeroplane, if a second force is introduced as in acceleration, deceleration and turns and, if there is no outside visual reference, illusions may result. For example, in a bank, centrifugal force directed outward and the normal downward pull of gravity combine to give an illusion of level flight. Acceleration gives an illusion of climbing and deceleration of diving.

The three semicircular canals of the inner ear are primarily associated with equilibrium. They are filled with fluid and operate on the principle of the inertia of fluids. Each canal has tiny hair like sensors that relate to the brain the motion of the fluid. Rotation of the body tends to move the fluid, causing the displacement of the sensors which then transmit to the brain the message of the direction of their displacement. However, if the turn is a prolonged and constant one, the motion of the fluid catches up with the canal walls, the sensors are no longer bent and the brain receives the incorrect message that the turning has stopped. If the turn does then indeed stop, the movement of the fluid and the displacement of the sensors will indicate a turn in the opposite direction. Under instrument conditions or at night when visual references are at a minimum, incorrect information given by the inner ear can produce vestibular illusions that can be dangerous.

The following factors contribute to visual illusions: optical characteristics of windshields; rain on the windshield; effects of fog, haze, dust, etc., on depth perception; the angle of the glide slope makes a runway appear nearer or farther as does a very wide or very narrow runway; variations in runway lighting systems; runway slope and terrain slope; an approach over water to the runway; the apparent motion of a fixed light at night (autokinetic phenomenon). The visual cues by which a pilot makes judgments about the landing approach are largely removed if the approach is over water, over snow or other such featureless terrain or carried out at night. A particularly hazardous situation is created if circumstances prevent him/her from appreciating ground proximity before touchdown.

The following factors contribute to kinaesthetic illusions: change in acceleration or deceleration; low level flight over water; frequent transfer from instrument to visual flight conditions (choose either VFR or IFR and stick with the choice); unperceived changes in flight altitude.

There is just one way to beat false interpretation of motion. Put your faith in your instruments and not in your senses. **Refer to the attitude instruments constantly when flying at night or in reduced visibility conditions**. Always trust the attitude instruments no matter what your senses tell you.

Spatial Disorientation

Spatial disorientation means loss of bearings or confusion concerning one's sense of position or movement in relation to the surface of the earth. Disorientation rarely occurs without reduced visual references in such situations as fog, cloud, snow, rain, darkness, etc.

A type of spatial disorientation is caused in some individuals by flickering shadows. When, for example, letting down for a landing into the setting sun in a single-engine aeroplane, the

idling propeller can induce reactions that range from nausea to confusion and, in rare cases, complete unconsciousness. Other causes of this sensation are helicopter rotor blade shadows, the flashing illumination caused by anti-collision lights when flying in cloud, and runway approach strobe lights when viewed through the propeller at night.

The term vertigo is sometimes used in relation to spatial disorientation. Vertigo is a sensation of rotation or spinning, an hallucination of movement of either the individual him/herself or of the external world.

Coriolis Effect

Coriolis effect is probably the most dangerous type of disorientation. The three semicircular canals of the inner ear are interconnected. If movement is occasioned in two of them, a sympathetic but more violent movement is induced in the third. This is known as tumbling and causes extreme confusion, nausea, and even rolling of the eyeballs that prevents the pilot from reading correctly the aeroplane instruments. This situation can occur if, when the aeroplane is in a turn, the pilot suddenly turns his/her head in another direction. The rule should always be to avoid head movements, especially quick ones, when flying under instrument conditions.

Somatogravic – False Climb Illusion

The otolith is a small organ which forms part of the inner ear and vestibular apparatus. Its function is to sense and signal to the other organs the position of the head relative to the vertical. This signal has a profound influence on the balance and orientation of the body.

The otolith, simply described, is an erect hair with a small weight or mass at its tip. The base of the hair is embedded in a sensory cell which conveys to the brain information about the angle of the hair.

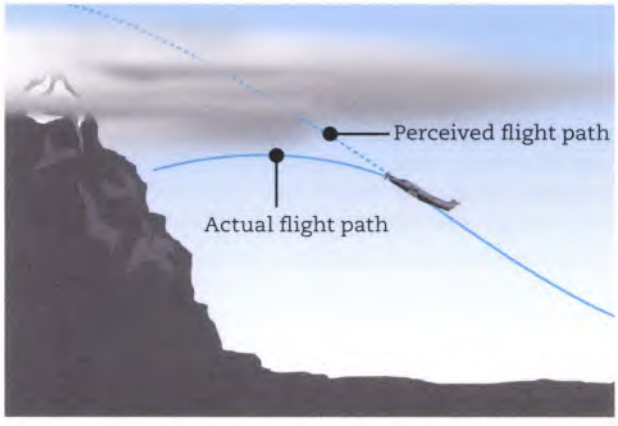


Fig.11.2 **Somatogravic – False Climb Illusion**

When the head is tilted backward, the small mass bends the hair and the message relayed to the brain indicates a backward tilt. If the head is held vertical but is subjected to acceleration, the hair bends owing to the inertia of the mass at the tip of the hair. Both tilt and acceleration, therefore, produce the same response by the otolith. If there are no visual cues to compliment the information from the otolith, the brain is unable to differentiate between tilt and acceleration. If tilt and acceleration are experienced simultaneously, the interpretation is that of a much steeper tilt. This is known as the somatogravic (false climb) illusion.

In such a situation, a pilot is tempted to lower the nose of the aeroplane. This increases the forward acceleration component and increases the illusion of climbing steeply. Owing to lag in the altimeter and vertical speed indicator, the loss of height may go unnoticed.

There are three situations in which the false climb illusion may occur: (1) take-off at night or in IFR conditions; (2) an overshoot in reduced visibility or in IFR conditions; and (3) a climb from VFR into IFR conditions. During the latter situation, the illusion can be compounded by turbulence, in a turn, or by reliance on an artificial horizon that is not quite erect.

With deceleration, a similar illusion occurs. The activation of speed brakes or the lowering of flaps, which both cause sudden deceleration, swing the otoliths forward and produce an illusion of increased descent. This illusion most commonly happens on final approach at slow speed. The pilot's reaction of pulling back on the controls may cause a stall.

All pilots irrespective of experience or skill are susceptible to the illusion. Pilots must learn to anticipate the illusion and ignore it, to establish a positive climb or descent attitude and to rely on the aircraft instruments for confirmation of attitude.

Black Hole Illusion

Darkness, absence of visual cues and few ground lights combine to induce a false perception of altitude and/or attitude that is known as the black hole illusion. Under certain circumstances, during night and in clear weather, when an aircraft is on approach to land over dark terrain with no lights either below or to the sides of the approach path, with only the distant airport runway lights to provide visual stimuli, even the most experienced pilots may visually overestimate altitude and fly too low with the risk of landing short of the runway.

The most relevant source of visual information is the vertical angle, the angle subtended at the eye by the nearest and farthest lights. If, during a descent, a pilot maintains this angle at a constant value, the approach path follows the arc of a circle centred above the pattern of lights towards which the aircraft is descending, with the result that the aircraft would be flown into the ground short of the runway threshold.

The situation can be aggravated by a long, straight-in approach to an airport located on the near side of a small city and by substandard runway and approach lighting.

A back up reference, such as an altitude alerter, a ground proximity warning system or a radio altimeter will help pilots to avoid being caught by this dangerous illusion.

11.1.10 Alcohol

Alcohol, taken even in small amounts, produces a dulling of judgment, comprehension and attention, lessened sense of responsibility, a slowing of reflexes and reduced co-ordination, decreases in eye efficiency, increased frequency of errors, decrease of memory and reasoning ability, and fatigue.

When a pilot undertakes a flight along a given course from one airport to some landing place, hundreds of decisions must be made relating to the operation of the aeroplane and the navigational aspects of the flight. Proper procedures must be accomplished to effect the safe completion of the flight and to ensure that no hazard is created to other aeroplanes in nearby airspace. Obviously, anything that impairs the pilot's ability to make decisions will increase the accident potential.

Alcohol is absorbed very rapidly into the blood and tissues of the body. Its effects on the physiology are apparent quite soon after ingestion and wear off very slowly. In fact, it takes

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

about 3 hours for the effects of 1 ounce of alcohol to wear off. Nothing can speed up this process. Neither coffee nor hard exercises nor sleep will minimize the effects of alcohol.

Scientists have recently discovered that alcohol is absorbed into the fluid of the inner ear and stays there after it has gone from the blood and brain. Since the inner ear monitors balance, the presence of alcohol in the middle ear can be responsible for incorrect balance information and possibly spatial disorientation.

The presence of alcohol in the blood interferes with the normal use of oxygen by the tissues (histotoxic hypoxia). Because of reduced pressure at high altitudes and the reduced ability of the haemoglobin to absorb oxygen, the effect of alcohol in the blood, during flight at high altitudes, is much more pronounced than at sea level. The effects of one drink are magnified 2 to 3 times over the effects the same drink would have at sea level.

A pilot should never carry a passenger that is under the influence of alcohol. Such a person's judgment is impaired. His/her reactions during ascent to higher altitudes are unpredictable. He/she may become belligerent and unmanageable and a serious hazard to the safety of the flight.

The rule for both pilot and passengers in relation to alcohol quite simply should be "**No alcohol in the system when you fly**". The Canadian and U.S. Aviation Regulations require that a pilot allow at least 12 hours between the consumption of alcohol and piloting an aeroplane. In fact, more time is probably necessary. An excellent rule is to allow 24 hours between the last drink and take-off time and at least 48 hours after excessive drinking. The after effects (hangover) of alcohol consumption also affect performance capability, causing headache and impairing emotional stability and judgment.

11.1.11 Drugs

Drugs, as well as the conditions for which they are taken, can interfere with the efficiency of the pilot and can be extremely dangerous. Even over the counter drugs such as aspirin, antihistamines, cold tablets, nasal decongestants, cough mixtures, laxatives, tranquillizers and appetite suppressors impair the judgment and co-ordination. They are responsible for drowsiness, dizziness, blurred vision, confusion, vertigo and mental depression. The effects of some drugs are even more pronounced at higher altitudes than on the ground. Some over the counter drugs taken in combination will react with each other resulting in a larger effect than even the sum of their individual effects. Some prescription drugs, such as antibiotics, are equally or more dangerous. Usually, however, a person sick enough to be on antibiotics is too sick to be flying.

Any use of illicit drugs is incompatible with air safety. Some common over the counter drugs contain prohibited drugs. For example, some headache remedies contain codeine, cold symptom depressants may contain drugs that are on the prohibited list. Check the labels carefully. Professional commercial pilots are subject to random drug testing and the presence of an illicit drug, even if taken unknowingly, may result in immediate grounding, loss of job and possible branding as a drug abuser.

The so-called soft drugs should be particularly avoided as they affect performance, mood and health.

Sedatives and tranquillizers that are prescribed for insomnia, anxiety and depression are unacceptable for pilots.

Antihistamines (for allergic disorders) cause sedation with varying degrees of drowsiness, decreased reaction time, disturbances of equilibrium. Cold cures usually contain an antihistamine. Do not pilot an aeroplane within 24 hours of taking an antihistamine.

Sulfonamides (found in antibiotics) cause visual disturbances, dizziness, impaired reaction time, depression. Remain off flying for 48 hours.

Tranquillizers affect reaction time, concentration and attention span.

Aspirin toxic effects are relatively rare and are almost always associated with large doses. If you take aspirin in small dosage and have had no reactions in the past, it is probably safe to take it and fly.

Motion Sickness Remedies cause drowsiness and depress brain function. They cause temporary deterioration of judgment making skills. Do not take either prescribed or over the counter motion sickness remedies. If suffering from airsickness while piloting an aircraft, open up the air vents, loosen the clothing, use supplemental oxygen if available and keep the eyes on a point outside the aeroplane. Avoid unnecessary head movements.

Reducing Drugs, amphetamines and other appetite suppressing drugs cause feelings of well-being that affect good judgment.

Barbiturates produce a marked depression of mental alertness. Similar symptoms are attributable to nerve tonics and nerve pills.

Anaesthetics with spinal or general anaesthetics, you should not fly until your doctor says it is safe. With local anaesthetics used in minor surgery or dental work, it is wise to wait 24 hours before flying.

Cannabis, including cannabidiol (CBD), taken by any method (including smoking, vaping, eating or by applying it to the skin) for any purpose (including medical, recreational or other non-medical reasons) has the potential to cause impairment and adversely affect aviation safety. In the short-term, its use can create a sense of well-being and relaxation; however, negative short-term effects of cannabis use can include confusion, fatigue, and impairments related to memory, concentration levels and reaction time. Anxiety, fear, panic, delusions and hallucinations are also consequences of short-term cannabis use. Long-term effects of cannabis use can harm memory, concentration, intelligence and decision making. Owing to these harmful side-effects of cannabis use, pilots must abstain from cannabis use for at least 28 days before flying. Notwithstanding the latter, it should go without being stated that recreational drug use has no place in aviation, and any pilot who is found to be flying under the influence of drugs runs the risk of having their medical certificate suspended.

11.1.12 Blood Donations

Because it takes several weeks for the blood circulation to return to normal after a blood donation, it is recommended that pilots who are actively flying refrain from volunteering as blood donors. If a blood donation has been made, you should consult your doctor before flying again. It is recommended that you should wait at least 48 hours.

11.1.13 Fatigue

Fatigue is one of the most common physiological problems for air crew members and will adversely affect individuals who are otherwise in good health. It has repeatedly been cited as the causal factor in aeroplane accidents. Fatigue degrades performance. A tired pilot cannot carry out tasks as reliably and accurately as required. He/she is irritable and less alert, willing to accept lower standards of accuracy and performance.

Fatigue begins when the pilot begins a flight and increases with each hour in the air. As a result, at the time of landing when reflexes and judgment should be keenest, the pilot is most affected by the cumulative effects of fatigue.

The biggest danger of fatigue is that an individual may not recognize its effects.

The onset of fatigue is accompanied by numerous symptoms: deterioration in timing of movements, irritability and lack of patience, a tendency to lock the attention on individual instruments rather than to see the instrument panel as a whole, a tendency to become forgetful and ignorant of relevant cues, a tendency to overcontrol the aeroplane, an awareness of physical discomforts, a loss of "seat of the pants" flying ability, a tendency to accept a wider margin of error than normal.

Fatigue is caused by many things: lack of sleep, poor nutrition, stress, prolonged and repeated flights, aircraft noise, eye strain, vibration, wide variations in temperature and humidity, heavy workload and uncomfortable working conditions, boredom, monotony, night flights, frustrations from work and family.

Acute fatigue is easily treated by a meal and a good sleep. Chronic fatigue is more serious and is caused by difficult or stressful work with inadequate rest and is often aggravated by disturbed Circadian rhythms.

A sound physical condition, a healthy mental attitude, proper diet and adequate rest are a pilot's best weapons in fighting fatigue. On very long flights where the pilot and co-pilot share the piloting duties, the advantage of taking a 15 to 20 minute pre-planned power nap shows beneficial results in improved performance. Conversation and discussion help to keep us awake. Caffeine in moderation helps. Frequent small meals to keep up the blood sugar relieves fatigue.

Circadian Rhythm

Serious problems are associated with disturbed biological rhythms and related sleep disturbance and deprivation. The body operates on a circadian, or 24 hour, rhythm which is related to the earth's rotation time. It is maintained principally by the cycles of light and darkness, but also by meals and physical and social activities. Safety, efficiency and well-being are affected by the disturbed pattern of biological rhythms occasioned by long range flight, irregular schedules and late night flights. Long distance transmeridian air travel, especially, is responsible for sleep disturbance, disruption of eating and elimination habits that result in lassitude, anxiety, irritability and depression, all symptoms of what is commonly called jet lag. Wide differences are found amongst individuals in their ability to sleep out of phase with their biological rhythms. The use of drugs or tranquillizers to induce sleep is not recommended as they have a lasting adverse effect on later performance. The use of alcohol is also not recommended since it is a drug, a depressant and, while it does induce sleep, it interferes with deep sleep.

11.1.14 Pregnancy

Providing the pregnancy is normal and without complications, pilots may continue to fly up to 30 weeks into the pregnancy. There are certain physiological changes that may affect flight safety. In the first trimester, nausea is common and may be worsened by motion, engine fumes and G forces. In the second trimester, anaemia is common and may affect the pilot's susceptibility to hypoxia. At 12 to 14 weeks, the fetus may be subject to seat belt injury. The fetus may be exposed to potentially hazardous conditions, especially cosmic radiation. Cosmic radiation increases with altitude, is greater at the poles than at the equator.

Because 6 to 10% of normal pregnancies deliver preterm, even pilots with a normal pregnancy are considered temporarily unfit after the 30th week of the pregnancy.

11.1.15 Eating

The stresses of flying, or indeed of any activity, consume energy. This energy is derived from oxygen and from blood sugar. The pilot is unwise to fly for too long without eating. His /her blood sugar will be low (hypoglycaemia); that is, his / her energy reserve will be low. Reactions will be sluggish and efficiency will be impaired. It is a good precaution to carry a nutritious snack on long flights.

Overeating is equally as unwise as not eating. Drowsiness and excessive gas formation are the result of over indulgence at the dinner table just before a flight.

In fact, we should all eat three nutritious meals a day, starting with a good breakfast. A doughnut and a cup of coffee is not a substitute for a breakfast or lunch containing complex carbohydrates and some protein.

At altitudes above 5,000 feet ASL, the body experiences a higher loss of water through the surface area of the lungs than it does at sea level. This loss occurs because the percentage of water vapour in a given volume of air decreases with altitude. Because this water loss is not accompanied by a loss of salt, as occurs with perspiration, there is no accompanying sensation of thirst. Especially on long flights at higher altitudes, it is advisable to have a drink of water every hour or so to replace the lost body fluid.

A common cause of incapacitation in the air is gastrointestinal problems caused by stomach cramps, nausea, vomiting and diarrhoea. It is important to avoid foods that may be contaminated. In multicrew aircraft, pilots should not eat at the same time nor eat the same food.

11.1.16 Stress

Flying fitness is not just a physical condition. It has a definite meaning in the psychological sense as well. It involves the ability of the pilot to perceive, think and act to the best of his/ her ability without the hindering effects of anger, worry and anxiety.

Studies have shown that emotional factors, mental upsets and psychological maladjustments are repeatedly present in aeroplane accidents. The ability to think clearly and act decisively is greatly influenced by the feelings and emotions. In fact, every individual will panic earlier than normal if they are suffering from fatigue, illness, worry or anger. But, even well away from the panic threshold, good judgment is seriously impaired under stress.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

There are many factors that contribute to stress in the cockpit. They are generally classed into three categories: physical, physiological or psychological.

Physical stressors include extreme temperature and humidity, noise, vibration, lack of oxygen.

Physiological stressors include fatigue, poor physical condition, hunger, disease.

Psychological stressors relate to emotional factors such as a death or illness in the family, business worries, poor interpersonal relationships with family or boss, financial worries, etc.

It is essential that a pilot be able to recognize when stress levels are getting too high. If you are suffering from domestic stress, if you are undergoing divorce or separation, if you have suffered bereavement, if an argument with your spouse or your boss is still rankling, if worries are building up to an unbearable load, if you have been despondent and moody, the cockpit of your aeroplane is probably no place for you.

Nevertheless, stress levels do naturally build up in the aeroplane cockpit, when there are a multitude of decisions to make and tasks to perform. Stress is, in effect, generated by the task itself and is not always negative. The sympathetic nervous system responds to stress and provides us with the resources to cope with the new sudden demands. However, the stress load may easily become unmanageable and a pilot needs to take measures to manage the stress load so that it does not become so. Pilots need to learn how to reduce or prevent in advance those stressors over which they have control.

Signs of chronic stress are many and varied: loss of a sense of humour, frequent anger, disturbed sleep, weight change, forgetfulness, excessive drinking, repeated mistakes, distraction, backaches, tense stomach, headaches, fatigue, suppressed immune system that leaves you prey to disease. Stress may make you a nag, critical, argumentative. It may erode your self image and leave you full of doubt, cynical, unconfident, directionless and pessimistic.

Stress can be managed. The physiological stressors can be controlled by maintaining good physical fitness and bodily function, by engaging in a program of regular physical exercise, by getting enough sleep to prevent fatigue, by eating a well balanced diet, by learning and practicing relaxation techniques. The physical stressors can be reduced by making the cockpit environment as stress free as possible. A conscious effort to avoid stressful situations and encounters helps to minimize the psychological stressors. Support from family, friends, colleagues, organizations and, if necessary, professional counselling help restore psychological equanimity. Relaxation exercises, meditation, recreation renew and recharge the psyche.

11.1.17 Panic

There are many things that can happen in the air that cause fear and anxiety. These are normal reactions to a predicament that is out of the ordinary. What is to be avoided is allowing that normal anxiety to progress to panic.

Panic is a complete disregard for reason and learned responses, a feeling of extreme helplessness. A pilot in the grip of panic will freeze at the controls, will make a totally wrong response or succumb to completely irrational action.

Fatigue, hangover, emotional stress, chronic worry, illness, all substantially reduce the amount of anxiety an individual can withstand before succumbing to panic.

The best way to prevent panic is through training and frequent rehearsal of emergency techniques. A pilot who knows his/her emergency routines so well that they are automatic will be less likely to panic when faced with a real emergency situation.

Lack of self-confidence is, in itself, self-defeating and an open door to panic. Not that a pilot should be fearless, for the fearless pilot has suspended reality-testing. He/she refuses to admit that there is any situation into which he/she is not competent to venture. Self-confidence is quite another thing. The self-confident pilot can assess the reality of a situation, can call on reserves of training and knowledge to cope with the situation and does not permit emotion to cloud reasoning.

11.1.18 Physical Fitness

The purpose of this book has been to instruct pilots in what they should know to be a competent aviator. What they should do is of equal importance. The most competent, knowledgeable and experienced pilot is in business only so long as their medical is valid. Maintaining physical fitness is of prime importance.

Throughout the flying fraternity, there are thousands of pilots in their senior years who are still enjoying the privileges of their licence and using their aeroplane for pleasure, business and travel. If you want to be flying when you are eligible for the old age pension, now is the time to start looking after your health and maintaining your physical fitness.

The person who is physically active, participating in a regular routine of exercise or sports, will most likely have a healthy heart, lungs and not be overweight. Diet is important, not only to keep weight at an acceptable level, but also in the control of heart disease. The case against smoking as a contributor to lung disease and heart disease is heavily documented. Protection of hearing by wearing earplugs has already been mentioned as has the need to protect the eyes from undue eyestrain.

11.2 Psychosocial Factors

11.2.1 Pilot Decision Making

Aeronautical knowledge, skill and judgment have been considered the three essential faculties that pilots must possess to be professional in the execution of their duties. The knowledge and skill have been taught in ground school and flight training programs but decision making skills have usually been considered a trait that pilots innately possess or that are acquired through experience. In fact, good decision making skills can also be taught.

Training in decision making skills is now a part of the pilot training program. Pilots can learn good judgment just as thoroughly as they learn the mechanical concepts and basic skills of flying. But what is good judgment? It is the ability to make an instant decision which assures the safest possible continuation of the flight.

"Pilot judgment is the process of recognizing and analyzing all available information about oneself, the aircraft and the flying environment, followed by the rational evaluation of alternatives to implement a timely decision which maximizes safety. Pilot judgment thus involves one's attitudes toward risk-taking and one's ability to evaluate risks and make decisions based upon one's knowledge, skills

and experience. A judgment decision always involves a problem or choice, an unknown element, usually a time constraint, and stress." (Transport Canada: Judgment Training Manual).

The causal factor in about 80% to 85% of civil aviation accidents is the human element, in other words, pilot error, a poor decision or a series of poor decisions made by the pilot-in-command. This concept is known as the poor judgment chain. One poor decision increases the probability of another and as the poor judgment chain grows, the probability of a safe flight decreases. The judgment training program teaches techniques for breaking the chain by teaching the pilot to recognize the combination of events that result in an accident and to deal with the situation correctly in time to prevent the accident from occurring.

The Process

Pilot decision making is a process. There must, first of all, be situational awareness, which means you need to determine everything you can about a flying situation and assess whether the information is important. This kind of awareness is acquired only through training, experience, practice and study.

The next step is to establish various courses of action. Give yourself as many **options** as possible and consider the likely outcome of each one.

Now you have to **choose** what action to take and do it before time runs out. Whatever you choose, be sure to leave yourself an "out".

Then you must **act**. Carry out your decision with all your skill.

Monitor the results of your action to be sure you are getting the desired outcome. The **evaluation** of the results is in effect re-evaluating the whole situation and beginning the process again.

Factors

Many factors influence your ability to make good decisions. Clear thinking and careful reasoning enhance the decision making process. Cloudy, confused thinking hampers it.

KNOWLEDGE

Every step of the decision making process requires knowledge. Knowledge is the result of what you have learned in the classroom and in the briefing you received prior to the flight. It is also the result of your preflight planning and preparation and the details you notice from the start to the finish of your flight.

SITUATIONAL AWARENESS

Situational awareness is knowing what is going on around you. Decision making can't even begin unless you are aware of what is happening. Assuming that everything is normal when it is not can be very dangerous. A false assumption, once made, can be difficult to change and can generate a whole chain of incorrect decisions — the poor judgment chain. It is very easy to shape reality to fit your expectation. You see what you expect to see, hear what you expect to hear. You focus your attention on one item and something more important goes unnoticed (known as target fixation). Sometimes your subconscious prefers to ignore the bad news, changing incoming information to provide the message you want to hear.

SKILL

Skill is an important part of the process. Skills should be practiced until they become automatic responses. Emergencies are not planned. They happen when you least expect them. Be prepared.

STRESS

Stress is very much a part of our daily lives. Poorly managed, it can effectively impair our ability to make good decisions. Stress may be considered in terms of one's ability to cope. Trouble arises when the demands of the task exceed the pilot's capacity to deal with them, whether because the demands are overwhelming or because capacity is reduced for some reason. The body reacts to this stress overload by increased heart beat, respiration, blood pressure and perspiration. Stress management is, therefore, an important factor in good decision making (see also **Stress** above).

RISK MANAGEMENT

Any human activity involves some level of risk. There are, of course, risk elements in flying. Assessing that risk is part of the decision making process.

Pilots need to do a preflight inspection of themselves. Are you competent to undertake a flight if you are tired, on medication, not current, under stress? If the level of risk involved in any one of such personal elements is marginal, perhaps the flight should not be undertaken.

Critical decisions about the aircraft must be made on the ground during preflight planning: weight and balance, take-off and landing performance, crosswind limits and cruise performance, condition of the aircraft. Throughout the flight, assessment of the operating systems must also be continually made.

The risks inherent in the environment are an important area to consider. Weather is, of course, the most obvious environmental concern. There is also potential risk in the selection of airports to use. Runway length and width, runway surface, obstacles and landing aids are components of the aviation environment.

The type of operation also introduces a risk element. The risk factor to complete a critical air ambulance mission under adverse conditions would perhaps be more acceptable than the same circumstances for a sight seeing or pleasure flight.

Assessment of risk is assessment of probability; estimation of the "odds". Always leave yourself an "out"; have an escape plan if the situation turns too bad. This is the most important tool of risk management.

An accurate assessment of the risks associated with the risk elements (pilot, aircraft, environment and operation) enable a pilot to arrive at decisions that ensure a safe conclusion to a flight. Maybe the good decision is not to take off at all.

Attitude

Your ability to make good decisions depends to a great extent on your attitude. Attitudes are learned. They can be developed through training into a mental framework that encourages good pilot judgment. The pilot decision making training program is based on recognition of five hazardous attitudes.

1. Anti-authority. This attitude is common in those who do not like anyone telling them what to do.
2. Resignation. Some people do not see themselves as making a great deal of difference in what happens to them and will go along with anything that happens.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

3. Impulsivity. Some people need to do something, anything, immediately without stopping to think about what is the best action to take.
4. Invulnerability. Many people feel that accidents happen to other people but never to themselves. Pilots who think like this are more likely to take unwise risks.
5. Macho. These are the people who need to always prove that they are better than anyone else and take risks to prove themselves and impress others.

Pilots who learn to recognize these hazardous attitudes in themselves can also learn how to counteract them, can learn to control their first instinctive response and can learn to make a rational judgment based on good common sense.

The DECIDE acronym was developed to assist a pilot in the decision making process.

D – detect change.

E – estimate the significance of the change.

C – choose the outcome objective.

I – identify plausible action options.

D – do the best action.

E – evaluate the progress.

Using the DECIDE process requires the pilot to contemplate the outcome of the action taken. The successful outcome should be the action that will result in no damage to the aircraft or injury to the occupants.

When a pilot receives a licence to fly, he/she is being given the privilege to use public airspace and air navigation facilities. The new pilot is expected to adhere to the rules and to operate an aircraft safely and carefully. He/she is expected to use good judgment and act responsibly. Decision making is a continuous adjustive process that starts before take-off and does not stop until after the final landing is made safely, the engine is shut down and the aircraft is parked. Positive attitudes toward flying, learned judgment skills, will improve a pilot's chances of having a long and safe flying career.

11.2.2 Human Factors

The human factor is the most flexible, adaptable and valuable part of the aviation system, but it is also the most vulnerable to influences which can adversely affect its performance. Optimizing the role of people in the aviation environment involves all aspects of human performance and behaviour: decision making, the design of displays and controls and the cabin layout, and even the design of aircraft operating manuals, checklists and computer software.

Human factors is about people in their living and working situations, about their relationships with machines, with procedures, with the environment about them and with other people.

In most cases, accidents result from performance errors made by healthy and properly certificated individuals. The sources of some of these errors may be traced to poor equipment or procedure design or to inadequate training or operating instructions. Reduced levels of human performance capability and limitations in human behaviour result in less than optimum performance.

There would appear to be a direct relationship between workload and performance. At low levels of workload, such as during the cruise phase of long haul flights, performance is poor and the ability to react in an emergency is potentially negatively affected. The standard of performance increases as workload increases up to an optimum level of workload and performance. At extremely high levels of workload (overload), performance is again jeopardized. In the aviation industry, the concept of workload is of primary importance to ensure that the demands of the task never exceed the capabilities of the pilot.

Recognition of human factors is based on the effectiveness, the safety and the efficiency of the system and on the well-being of crew members.

The central figure in the human factors equation is the pilot, or other crew member, who is the most critical but also the most flexible component of the system. However, people have limitations and are subject to considerable variations in performance.

Design of cockpit space is important to pilot performance. Comfortable seats designed to fit the human body, instrument displays designed to match the sensory and information processing characteristics of the user, controls with standardized movement, coding and location, are recognized as important factors in providing a compatible and comfortable working environment. All too often, pilot error can be attributed to knobs and levers that are poorly located, that operate differently from one aeroplane to another, that are improperly coded.

An essential part of flying safely is proper pilot and cockpit organization before a flight. Before you take off on a flight, it is important that you have all the necessary documents, charts and equipment on board, properly stowed and accessible. Nothing should be stowed where it would interfere with the safe operation of the aeroplane. Everything should be organized and neatly arranged so that it is readily available when needed. Loose items should be secured so they will not be thrown around the cockpit during sudden maneuvers.

The non-physical aspects, such as procedures, manuals and checklists, symbology and computer programs, are responsible for delays and errors if these are confusing, misleading or excessively cluttered in their presentation and documentation.

The effect of environmental factors, such as noise, heat, lighting and vibration, are recognized as causal factors in human error, as are fatigue, distorted circadian rhythm, stress.

Crew Resource Management (CRM)

Traditionally, crew members have been trained individually and it was assumed that individually proficient crew members would be proficient and effective members of a crew team. However, flight crews function as groups and group influences play a role in deter-mining behaviour and performance. Leadership, crew co-operation, teamwork and personality interaction are vital factors in crew resource management. Training programs aimed at increasing the co-operation and communication between crew members are vital in ensuring efficient and safe aeroplane operation. Crew resource management training focuses on the functioning of the flight crew as an intact team and provides opportunities for crew members to practice their skills together. The program teaches crew members how to use their own personal and leadership styles in ways to foster crew effectiveness. The

program focuses on the importance of proper communication, division of responsibilities, leadership and teamwork and has established five interrelated concepts to enhance crew skills.

Attention management includes understanding how distractions and error chains can be avoided.

Crew management teaches the importance of proper communications, division of responsibilities, leadership and teamwork.

Stress management focuses on understanding the effects of life stress events and provides stress coping strategies.

Attitude management focuses on methods of recognizing and controlling certain hazardous attitudes and behavioural styles.

Risk management addresses the evaluation of operational hazards.

Personal Minimums

Personal minimums are based on what a pilot should deem to be their maximum acceptable level of risk. You establish, objectively, what you feel your piloting skills render you capable of doing. Thereafter, no matter what the prevailing circumstances, you never let yourself be influenced into exceeding your minimums. Only by means of accruing training, experience and objective self-assessment, should your envelope of minimums ever expand. As your flying career continues to evolve, and no matter to what experience level you assess yourself to have risen, some level of minimums should always underline your aeronautical decision making.

Some regulations dictate minimums for you. VFR rules, for instance, require that you have flight visibility of at least 1 mile and that you're 500 feet vertically clear of cloud. The latter, therefore, are minimum regulatory standards by which to fly VFR. However, your comfort and experience levels may be such that three miles visibility and 1,000 feet clear of cloud is safer for you, no matter what the regulations state you can legally do. Similarly, your aircraft's Pilot's Operating Handbook may dictate that your aircraft's maximum crosswind capability is 16 knots. However, you may feel that 12 knots is the maximum you're willing to ever attempt. Establishing personal minimums means that you choose the minimums that are right for you, and no matter what, you never let yourself break those self-imposed limits.

A multitude of factors should be assessed when it comes to determining what your risk level is and what your minimums should, thus, be. Every flight presents the opportunity to re-affirm one's minimums and/or to assess whether circumstances suggest that an adjustment to one's safety baseline is in order. You should have personal minimums for the weather in which you're willing to fly. You should have personal minimums for winds, turbulence, density altitude and the terrain over which you're willing to fly. You should have personal minimums for the runway lengths upon which you're prepared to take off and land. You should also have personal minimums for how you feel on the given day of a planned flight.

Risk assessment requires self-assessment. The day of a flight, for instance, ask yourself: Did I get enough sleep? How do I feel today? (Am I feeling great or am I feeling tired? Is my mind sharp or am I feeling a little bit "off"?) Subjective assessments such as these require that one be honest and strict with oneself. Don't bias your answers to match the outcomes you want from the day. Have minimums for how you feel and don't push beyond them, for whatever reasons that may arise, when you're in a less than ideal physical or mental state to conduct a flight safely.

Over time and with accumulated experience, one's baseline minimums can be expanded. Consider that a pilot who has thousands of hours of bush flying experience will have considerably different minimums to a newly licenced private pilot who has spent all of their time flying over flat terrain in VFR-only circumstances. Minimums, thus, differ for everyone and for every level of experience.

Document your personal minimums then consult them before every flight. Anticipate issues for every planned flight that could negatively pressure you into stretching those minimums. This will prepare you to say "no" if circumstances try luring you into making a bad choice. Reducing your minimums should come via experience and proficiency, not via happenstance. If you stretch your minimums and get away with it, it may not mean you're better, it may only mean you're lucky. Minimums must always be objective. And they must always be boundaries to which you always adhere for safety's sake.

Automation Complacency

As technology has assumed an ever-increasing presence in the cockpit, pilot complacency towards that technology has emerged as a risk when the technology behaves in unanticipated ways. Automation complacency is, thus, increasing as a risk factor as technology takes over a variety of tasks that were once totally incumbent on the pilot to perform.

Software automation engenders significant benefits. By taking over repetitive, routine tasks, and by deciphering immense amounts of data per second sourced from multiple sensors, automated systems execute consistent, predictable and reliable actions in response to a multitude of circumstances that they are programmed to evaluate. Ultimately, and as it specifically relates to aircraft, automation exists to enhance safety by evaluating the messages from data inputs, then react (if necessary) to those messages. The speed at which this evaluation takes place allows automation software to make decisions and take actions that a human could not make as quickly. Nor could a human take required actions with the same probabilities of success as the software is designed to do. Thus, safety enhancement is foundational as the desired benefit from software automation.

There is, however, evidence that over-reliance on software automation can cause those for whom it is designed to assist – the pilots – to disengage themselves from the tasks over which they once held ultimate command. Furthermore, there are cases when automated systems have responded in incorrect ways that system programmers never foresaw as probable ways of responding. Such cases give way to an argument for pilots to not cede total decision authority to automation when the latter cannot guarantee that it can achieve a state of total operational perfection.

When automated aircraft systems fail to work as intended during a flight, pilots are forced to take manual control. Thrust abruptly into such a role, mistakes run the risk of being made, and accidents can be the undesirable result. Researchers have studied such scenarios with increasing frequency and findings are suggesting that a heavy reliance on computer automation can erode a pilot's expertise. Their attentiveness diminishes, and their corresponding responsiveness when required to assume manual control of their aircraft runs the risk of becoming insufficient for the circumstances.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Excessive automation presents certain risks. In general terms, complacency can settle into the mindset of humans when they are repeatedly exposed to automated systems that never make mistakes. This can lead towards human inattention and resultant surprise when the automated system handles an event incorrectly. In such cases, the automation can initiate damaging actions for which the pilot may not have the time to intervene.

Another risk is that data can be so excessive as to render the human observer with oversight of the system overloaded with its magnitude. He or she then misses meaningful information that is undetectable within the vast flow of information collected by the automated system.

Yet another risk concerns system algorithms that adapt and learn from the constant data that they process. This can result in the optimization of automated responses that become constructed around incorrect interpretations of data that the automated system assessed from its accruing experience.

Be it designed for convenience or for life-and-death action, automation can run the risk of rendering its human beneficiary complacent and detached from the tasks that once were their domain of total oversight. It should, thus, always be at the forefront of the thinking of any pilot to be mindful of the risks of overreliance on automation and of algorithms that may not be fully evolved. It may well be that a well-trained pilot knows best, and knows that there is no reliable replacement for their well-honed expertise and airmanship.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

12 Air Safety

What do we mean by air safety? In essence, air safety is the putting into practice of all that knowledge on aviation and technical matters that a pilot has acquired in the course of his/her aeronautical training and flying career. It is, in other words, perpetual and continued **concern** for the well-being of and **respect** for the personal property and endowed rights of our fellow men and women as well as of ourselves. It is based on sound judgment and a thorough knowledge of the subjects which have been dealt with between the covers of this textbook. However, the ultimate in flight safety is more than just the possession of **knowledge**. It is also the exercise of **common sense** and, perhaps what is more important, of **self-discipline**, that is, the self-discipline to apply the knowledge and the common sense in a positive attempt to do the right thing or make the right decision at the right time regardless of other distracting and prejudicial influences. The safety conscious pilot bases his/her decisions on good judgment rather than on emotional or impulsive whims.

For a lifetime of pleasant and safe flying, not only must pilots have an appreciation of the foundation on which "the rules of flight" were built, but they must also practice these rules at all times.

Government aviation agencies and flight safety experts all agree that the biggest challenge they face is that of making pilots aware of their own limitations based on their knowledge and experience or, to be more explicit, based on their lack of knowledge and inexperience. The conclusions reached by accident investigators tend very substantially to support the widely held opinion that almost every pilot, who has found him/herself in trouble while at the controls of an aeroplane, got into the predicament either because of insufficient appreciation of the degree of competence and skill required during a particular flight or because of over-estimating the limitations of their own ability to cope with the conditions they knew they would encounter.

It is important for pilots to realize not only the value of securing adequate training but also how much retraining they need and how frequently they need such retraining in order to execute their pilot-in-command responsibilities adequately, efficiently and with the maximum amount of safety during flight. It is important for every pilot to review, review and review again those basic aeronautical fundamentals to be sure that the essentials which are important for safe flying are not forgotten. They should never give up trying to learn more about aviation and flight safety. No one really ever graduates from a course in flying. The acquisition of knowledge goes on forever. The wise pilot knows that "When you think you've learned all that there is to know about flying, that's a sign that you'd better quit flying." The pilot who flies an aeroplane as a hobby still requires the skill of the professional pilot and must approach flying with equal earnestness.

It is important that every pilot should feel a sense of responsibility both to him/herself and to all fellow pilots. All pilots share the same airspace and an error in judgment by one can have serious detrimental effects on others. Don't be considered a hazard to yourself and to others.

12.1 State of Mind

Possessing the proper mental attitude towards piloting an aeroplane is the prime factor governing safe flying where the pilot is concerned. It governs all of his/her actions. With the proper state of mind, a pilot is able to make correct judgments as to what are and what are not the important considerations at hand, where emphasis should be placed, what are the pros and cons of various courses of action. Pilots possessing the proper state of mind are positive while being open-minded; they are confident in their judgment because they are aware of their own shortcomings, limitations of knowledge and experience, and because they respect their reasonable doubts. They are self-reliant but are not dogmatic in believing in their inability to be wrong. Confidence without doubt is over-confidence. Freedom from inhibitions, complexes and worries is the pilot's ultimate goal in achieving the ambition of being a safe pilot. The problems of one's personal world do not belong in the cockpit of the aeroplane. If safety in flight depends on the pilot's actions in the cockpit, then it is easy to realize the importance of directing his/her whole attention and concentration, free of extraneous problems and thoughts, to the tasks of flying the aeroplane. A thinking and responsible pilot cares about mistakes and avoids repeating them. A pilot possessing the proper mental outlook will not hesitate to turn back when encountering bad weather. He/she has no wish to run the risk of being a statistic in the next morning's newspaper.

The rules and maxims listed below are the product of the wisdom of experienced pilots and experts in aviation safety. They are not new or startling but are rules that wise pilots have memorized and practiced for years. If followed, they will give you too thousands of safe flying hours and many years to enjoy those things in life that you value and enjoy most of all.

12.2 Checklists for Safety

12.2.1 Checklist for Safe VFR Flight

Use the following checklist as a guide to good flight planning procedures.

1. Before flying.
   - Current on type? If not, get a checkout.
   - Review aircraft operating manual: speeds, fuel consumption/ capacities, systems operation, take-off and landing distances, emergency procedures.
   - Weather briefing: VFR for entire flight? Forecast: 1,000 foot en route cloud clearance above ground? Plan bad weather procedures.
   - Prepared for forced landing? Rations, survival gear, life jackets. Wear or carry clothing for outside conditions.
2. Planning your flight.
   - Calculate gross weight. C.G. within limits?
   - Are VFR charts and Supplement current?
   - NOTAMs: destination airport, snow clearing, airports.

- Study VFR map for route, select alternate airports.
- Prepare chart and flight log: safety altitudes, tracks, headings, groundspeeds, times, approach and departure procedures.
- Sufficient daylight on arrival?
- File flight plan.

3. Preflight.
   - Brief passengers: door, seatbelts, prop hazard, ELT.
   - Check you have: aircraft operating manual, all logbooks, charts, computer, EFB, pencils, survival equipment, clothing and sunglasses.
4. Walkaround.
   - Drain fuel: examine for water.
   - Dipstick fuel: enough for flight plus regulated reserve.
   - All surfaces completely free of frost/ice? (Even a little could be deadly.)
   - Fuel caps secured? Oil sufficient and cap secure.
5. Take-off.
   - Avoid intersection take-offs: go to the end of the runway.
   - Mental review: lift-off speed and engine failure procedures.
   - Plan to abort if not airborne in first half of runway.
   - Engine/prop at full power: temperatures and pressures in the green.
6. Inflight.
   - Map read. Watch chart to ground.
   - Visual contact at all times. Anticipate landmarks ahead.
   - Fuel consumption per plan? When 3/4 fuel gone, plan to refuel.
   - Groundspeed per plan? Revise ETA's.
   - Radio flight service on flight progress and weather.
7. Arrival.
   - 20 minutes before: review **Canada Flight Supplement** or **Airport/Facility Directory**, reconfirm airport information (elevation, runway lengths and heading and circuit height).
   - Review approach speeds, crosswind limit, flaps selection.
   - 10 minutes before: broadcast intentions. Get traffic.
   - 5 to 10 minutes before: altimeter setting, surface wind, traffic.
   - On long descents, warm engine periodically.
   - Check crosswind: if over limit, land elsewhere.
   - Landing lights on.
   - Fly a circuit (avoid a straight in approach). Report joining. Check windsock.
   - Report and keep sharp lookout on base and final.
8. Landing.
   - Recheck windsock on final. Review overshoot procedure.
   - Plan touchdown 200 feet after threshold.
   - Have weight on wheels by first one-third of hard runway or one-quarter if grass.
   - Undershooting or turbulence? Add power early.
9. Shutdown.
   - Passengers remain seated until prop(s) stopped.
   - Flight plan closed.
   - Refuel.
   - ELT off.
   - Tie down, wheel chocks, etc.
10. Emergencies.
    - Engine failure on take-off: attain glide speed, close throttle, land straight ahead, gentle turns.
    - Engine failure in cruise: attain glide speed, close throttle, check mixture and fuel controls, attempt restart.
    - Rough engine: carb heat full on, check mixture, fuel. Low cloud or low visibility ahead: carburetor heat full on, turn around, follow bad weather plan.
    - Uncertain of position: check time flown from last landmark for probable position, go to prominent landmark, map read ground to chart.
    - Lost: slow down, radio for assistance, the 4 C's (climb, confess, consult, comply). If no radio assistance: alert radar, fly 2 minute triangles until help comes, prepare for forced landing before fuel is gone.

12.2.2 Make These Resolutions

Before every flight, make the resolutions listed below.

1. I shall look upon the licence to fly as a privilege to which I shall be entitled only as long as I execute this privilege strictly within the limits of my ability and experience.
2. I shall conduct a thorough inspection of my aeroplane prior to every flight and I shall refrain from flying in any aeroplane with a known operational defect.
3. I shall check the weather prior to every cross-country flight and, when filing a flight plan, shall remember to close it upon arrival at my destination.
4. I shall carry passengers only in an aeroplane with which I am familiar and in which I have had adequate recent experience.
5. I shall not plan any flight beyond the limits which can be reached under prevailing wind conditions with 3/4 of the fuel on board and I shall land at the nearest available airport when my fuel supply indicates one hour remaining.
6. I shall fly at legal altitudes at all times and refrain from making unauthorized low passes, hedge-hopping, buzzing and similar childish stunts which constitute a danger to myself and others.
7. I shall report unusual weather and atmospheric conditions as soon as possible to the nearest radio facility.
8. I shall refrain from flying close to or entering into weather conditions considered marginal with reference to my capabilities, experience and the equipment aboard the aeroplane.
9. I shall offer to yield landing priority to airliners and other high-speed aeroplanes when in the traffic circuit of an airport serving scheduled airlines.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

10. I shall personally supervise refuelling, tie-down and other ground servicing activity which may affect the safety of persons and equipment.
11. I shall refrain from entering an aeroplane when recently having partaken of drugs, alcohol or other debilitating substances, when not having had any sleep during the preceding 16 hours or when physically or mentally impaired for any reason whatsoever.
12. I shall conduct myself in the process of operating an aeroplane and at all other times in a manner giving a favorable impression of aviation and the flying community.

12.2.3 Obey These Important Rules

Obey the rules listed below whenever you fly your aircraft.

1. Check Out — Plan ahead so that you never attempt to exercise the privilege of your pilot certificate in any aeroplane unless checked out by a well-qualified instructor and having successfully completed a minimum of
   - One hour ground familiarization with controls/systems and aeroplane operating limitations.
   - 8 regular take-offs and landings (day or night).
   - 2 short field take-offs and landings.
   - 2 crosswind take-offs and landings.
2. Preflight — Plan ahead so that you never start the engine until
   - You have checked weight and balance data.
   - You have made sure any objects carried in the passenger cabin are properly secured and free of the controls.
   - Prescribed walk around and preflight inspection completed.
   - Fuel quantity double checked for proposed flight plan plus 15 minutes for take-off plus regulated reserve.
   - Fuel contamination checked into transparent container from under engine and wing tank quick drains.
3. Vigilance — Plan ahead so you never occupy any area on the ground or in the air without "double checking" for possible existing or potential hazards.
4. Controls and Systems — Plan ahead so that you
   - Never operate an aeroplane unless you are familiar with the operation and correct use of all controls and systems.
   - Never start engine, start take-off, start landing, start cruising or start descent until all prescribed procedures are accomplished from a written checklist.
   - Never attempt to operate an aeroplane with a known malfunction. If malfunctioning occurs in flight, head for nearest airport.
   - Are always alert for the formation of carburetor ice. Use full carburetor heat at the first indication of carburetor icing.
   - Never raise flaps after landing a retractable gear aeroplane until well clear of the active runway and only after double-checking the control you are activating.
5. Weather — Plan ahead.
   - Preflight — Study the weather establishing en route forecast, en route conditions and escape route to good weather.
   - Inflight — Never get even close to losing good ground reference control. When encountering cloud bases of 1,000 feet or visibility of less than 5 miles, plan to retreat to a good alternate airport. Execute a retreat on encountering cloud bases of 800 feet or under 3 miles visibility (unless current and qualified for IFR).
   - Night — Never, unless assured of 2,000 foot ceiling and 5 miles visibility and assured that no frontal or ground fog or storm conditions will be encountered (unless current and qualified IFR).
6. Speed/Stall Control — Plan ahead so that you never abruptly change attitude of aeroplane nor allow airspeed to drop below
   - At least 160% of stall speed when maneuvering below 1,000 feet.
   - At least 140% of stall speed during straight approach or climb out.
   - At least 120% of stall speed over threshold and ready for touchdown.
7. Navigation — Plan ahead so that you
   - Reach destination one hour before sunset unless current and prepared for night flight.
   - Never operate at an altitude less than 500 feet above the highest obstruction (2,000 feet in mountain area) except on straight climb from take-off or straight-in approach to landing.
   - Predetermine ETA over all checkpoints. If lost, never deviate from original course until orientated. Always hold paper chart so plotted course coincides with flight path.
   - Divert to nearest airport if periodic fuel check indicates you won't have required reserve at destination.
8. Take-off or Landing Area — Plan ahead so that you
   - Never take off or land unless on designated airports with known, current runway maintenance.
   - Restrict operations to runway length equal to aeroplane manufacturer's published take-off or landing distance, plus 80% safety margin if hard surface, double manual distance if sod, and triple manual distance if wet grass (about same traction as ice).
   - Night — Never operate except on well lit, night operated airport, and then using steeper approach attitude to clear unlighted obstacles.
9. Take-Off or Landing Limits — Plan ahead so that you
   - Always plan touchdown within the first 1/3 of a runway in order to roll to a stop within the second 1/3, having the final 1/3 for spare.
   - Abort take-off if not solidly airborne in first 1/2 of runway.
   - Abort landing if not solidly on in first 1/2 of runway. (First 1/4 if wet grass.)
   - Never relax control until the wheels have ceased to roll.

10. Wind Limits — Plan ahead so that you
    - Never attempt taxiing in crosswinds or gusts exceeding 50% of stall speed unless outside assistance is available and used. Taxi very slowly when winds exceed 30% of stall speed.
    - Never attempt take-off or landing when 90° cross surface winds exceed 20% of stall speed or 45° surface winds exceed 30% of stall speed.
    - Never taxi closer than 1,000 ft. from the blast end of powerful aeroplanes, and then only when headed into remaining blast effect.
    - Never get close to powerful aeroplanes on take-off, in air, on landing without allowing time for wake turbulence to subside.
11. Physical Condition — Plan ahead so that you never pilot an aeroplane when
    - Having less than 12 hours from bottle to throttle (24 hours preferably).
    - Extremely fatigued.
    - Taking tranquillizing or sleep inducing drugs.
    - Hypoxic from oversmoking or operating above 10,000 feet (without oxygen).
    - When emotionally upset.
12. Starting Engine — Plan ahead so that you never, never attempt to hand start an aeroplane unless a qualified person is at the controls or, in an emergency, unless all wheels are securely blocked and strong, tight, and secure tie-downs are affixed to both wings and tail.

12.2.4 Do's & Don'ts for Safe Flight

DO get a weather briefing before taking off on any cross-country flight. DON'T assume that the weather will be as it usually is or recently was, or as you wish it to be.

DO seek the advice of others who are better informed about the area's weather flying. Frequently, area and route phenomena are known to local pilots or other individuals who may be junior to you in years and overall flying experience. DON'T be too proud to heed this advice.

DO cancel the flight that may be hazardous. DON'T become a pusher or you might become a statistic.

DO have an alternate plan of action if adverse weather is encountered. DO use it while still VFR. DON'T forget the time honoured 180° method of survival.

DO remember that sucker holes are always present to tempt the inexperienced pilot. DON'T be lured into pressing on just a little farther.

DO reduce airspeed in turbulence. DON'T operate your aeroplane at continuous maximum performance.

DO follow regularly traversed routes through mountains or over unfavorable terrain.

DON'T fail to allow yourself a margin for error. Should you be forced to land, be where you can land safely.

DO obtain sufficient altitude before crossing a mountain range. DON'T be caught in the turbulence or downdrafts of ridge crossing.

DO allow sufficient clearance between yourself and the bases of the clouds. DON'T expect all clouds to have flat bases. Often they are quite ragged and irregular with hills and other high ground penetrating their low-hanging portions.

DO have the utmost respect for thunderstorms. They are dangerous! DON'T fly into or near them.

DO fly as a VFR pilot if you are a VFR pilot. DO exercise caution when engaging in Over The Top flights. The cloud deck may extend farther than you anticipate. Cloud tops may reach altitudes that you and your aeroplane will not be able to maintain resulting in your becoming involved in instrument flight with the consequent violation of safety and the Aviation Regulations. Also remember you are dependent upon an adequate oxygen intake.

DO take the proper training or obtain an instrument rating and fly an IFR equipped aeroplane if you want, on a regular basis, to fly above cloud without reference to the ground or horizon.

DO proceed with your alternate plan if you find your destination weather poor. DON'T hold over an airport waiting for ground fog to dissipate. Go to the nearest airport where weather is suitable.

DO remember that poor weather today will probably be good weather tomorrow or the next day.

DO learn to be relaxed yet alert in the cockpit. If your mind and body are tense, fatigue will set in before the flight is terminated and your ability may become impaired due to such fatigue.

DON'T let anything influence your good judgment.

DON'T get into bad flying habits.

12.2.5 Principles of Safe Take-Off

For a safe take-off, consider the principles listed below.

1. Always use a checklist and always complete the checklist prior to take-off.
2. Review the emergency checklist prior to take-off. You may need the emergency procedure sooner than you think!
3. Always clear area for traffic. Don't take off if you must hurry to avoid traffic.
4. Never take off until you have fully advised the tower, unicom, MF, ATF, etc., of your proposed operation. Don't keep it a secret. If no communication facility is based at the field, transmit blind your departure runway, turn after take-off, and direction of flight.
5. Always have an abort point on runway selected and use it if all systems are not GO at that point.
6. Don't take off at a closed field.
7. Don't attempt to take off if you don't know runway conditions.
8. Don't take off when the crosswind component exceeds the maximum component you have imposed on yourself or if it exceeds the maximum for runway conditions.
9. Always use the centreline of the runway.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

10. Know the critical V-speeds for your aircraft: stall speed (dirty and clean), best angle and best rate of climb. Review them prior to take-off.
11. Always compute density altitude when runway length, temperature, field elevation or obstructions ahead create doubt in your mind. Compute it often enough to remember how to do it!
12. For multi-engine aircraft, all of the above apply as well as the V-speeds and performance limits of single-engine operation.
13. On crosswind take-offs, start the take-off roll with ailerons fully deflected in proper direction and then decrease the deflection as speed builds.
14. Never become airborne, in a crosswind especially, until the aileron controls are effective.
15. Never take off over gross weight or out of C.G.
16. Never take off with an unresolved problem, either with yourself or the aircraft.
17. During take-off, devote full attention to the take-off.
18. With retractable gear, always have a positive climb indication before retracting gear.
19. Even when VFR, don't take off until your radio equipment is set up. It is much easier to do this on the ground than in the air, especially if an emergency comes along.
20. Even when VFR, if you are at a field with an omnitest and you are going cross-country, make a VOR accuracy check. If there is no omnitest on the field, make the accuracy check in the air as soon as possible.
21. Never take off downwind unless special conditions dictate.
22. Review take-off accidents for your type of aircraft.
23. Periodic practice and recurrent dual instruction are the ONLY ways to make sure you are **current, proficient and safe**.
24. Never exceed the maximum recommended flap setting for take-off for your aircraft.

12.2.6 Principles of Safe Landing

When landing, obey the principles listed below.

1. Never land over traffic already lined up on the runway.
2. On approach, line up with the white centerline of the runway and stay lined up during approach, touchdown and rollout.
3. In a crosswind landing, the slip method of alignment with the centerline of the runway will allow you to determine if the crosswind is too strong. If you can't stay lined up by slipping, you cannot land safely.
4. Never land on a runway if the crosswind component exceeds your self-imposed maximum, or the maximum for the aeroplane, or the maximum for runway conditions.
5. Always fix a land/no land point on the runway. When you determine you are overshooting, go around.
6. Never land without completing your landing checklist. The item you forgot may be your retractable landing gear.
7. Never land at an airport if runway conditions are unknown.
8. Never land at a **closed** field.
9. Clear for traffic constantly (the final approach is a high potential area for mid-air collision).
10. Be prepared for an aborted landing under emergency circumstances. **Know the procedure**. Review it briefly while still en route.
11. Learn to use all the aeroplane equipment provided for the landing operation. **Know how and when to use flaps**.
12. In a properly executed approach, you will not need full flaps until on final approach.
13. Never get into the habit of dragging in low on final approach. Learn a method of gauging the right approach angle. Conversely, don't develop the habit of diving on the airport. Pilots who do this may end up overshooting.
14. Review approach/landing type accidents. Learn from the mistakes of others. Learning about accidents first-hand is too costly.
15. Recurrent dual instruction and practice provide the only known ways of staying proficient. **Stay proficient**.
16. When runway length is marginal and runway surface conditions and temperature are factors and when landing at high elevations, compute density altitude.
17. At a controlled field, make initial contact 15 miles out.
18. When landing at a field lacking communication, transmit your position blind. Another pilot may be arriving or departing at the same field.
19. When landing VFR at a field with one or more instrument approaches, keep your approach path well clear of the instrument approach radio aids. These aids act as funnels for all landing traffic and have a high mid-air collision potential.
20. Use the procedures recommended for a precautionary landing when landing at a small or unfamiliar airstrip.

12.2.7 I'M SAFE Checklist

Reviewing a checklist prior to flight can help a pilot determine their personal level of fitness to fly. The I'M SAFE checklist is commonly used for such a purpose. The checklist covers the essential areas of personal fitness expected of pilots. It is a personal self-assessment that every pilot should perform prior to undertaking any duties related to a flight.

Following through with the checklist items should provide the pilot with the opportunity to make an informed Go/No-Go decision with respect to their personal readiness to undertake the flight that they have planned.

I – Illness – The question to ask oneself is whether you may have any kind of illness, acute or chronic, that would, in any way, impair your ability to adequately undertake and successfully complete your duties as pilot-in-command.

M – Medication – Be it over-the-counter, prescribed or recreational, every pilot must ask themselves if their taking of any medication or drug will adversely affect their ability to act as pilot-in-command of their aircraft. It is every pilot's obligation to check with a physician to ensure that there are no doubts about their ability to perform their pilot-in-command duties if taking any medications.

S – Stress – Stress, as described in the Chapter **Human Factors,** can have a debilitating effect on both physical and cognitive performance. Every pilot must ask themselves, prior to undertaking pilot-in-command duties, if there are any personal, work-related or other issues that are causing stress, and if these stressors may be distracting or otherwise impairing of their ability to act effectively as pilot of their aircraft.

A – Alcohol – As previously noted in the Chapter **Human Factors**, it is prohibited to have consumed alcohol within 12 hours of undertaking pilot-in-command duties. Simply put, you must never fly if under the influence of alcohol. Every pilot should apply a zero-tolerance standard to themselves with respect to this rule.

F – Fatigue – Every pilot must ask themselves if they have had sufficient rest in the previous 24 hours. They must ask themselves if they feel alert. If not, they may be unfit to undertake the flying duties that they have planned.

E – Eating and Drinking – It is important that pilots are sufficiently hydrated and nourished prior to undertaking pilot-in-command duties. Food is fuel for the body and for the brain. Proper nutrition and fluids are essential for the body and mind to operate at their maximum capacities`.

12.3 Ensuring Safe Outcomes

12.3.1 Seatbelts & Shoulder Harnesses

Aircraft must be operated with a seatbelt for each person, (other than an infant), on board the aircraft. Furthermore, general aviation aeroplanes built after July 17, 1978, may not be operated without front seats that include a shoulder harness. In the case of aeroplanes manufactured after December 12, 1986, and with less than ten passenger seats, each forward or aft-facing seat must be equipped with a seatbelt that includes a shoulder harness.

Experiments carried out by government testing agencies and by aeroplane manufacturers have proved conclusively that shoulder harnesses provide much more protection than do seatbelts alone. In fact, it is conjectured that, had shoulder harnesses been worn, a significant number of victims of aeroplane accidents may not have been killed.

When seatbelts only are worn, the hips become a pivot point. When the aeroplane decelerates suddenly, the upper body swings like a pendulum from the hips. The head strikes the control panel, the control yoke, an instrument control knob, the windshield or a glare shield resulting in serious and often fatal injury, primarily to the skull and secondarily to the neck. Properly installed shoulder harnesses will restrain the whole upper torso and prevent these type of fatal injuries.

The pilot is responsible for showing passengers how to fasten and unfasten seatbelts and shoulder harnesses and should insist that they be secured during take-offs and landings and, preferably, throughout the flight. Severe turbulence can be encountered unexpectedly at any time, even in clear air. Serious injury can be prevented if the seatbelt is fastened at all times.

Seatbelts should be worn as low as possible across the hips. Single strap or double strap shoulder harnesses should be snug, but not tight, across the chest.

Child restraint systems can only be used when the weight and height of the infant using the system are within the range specified by the system's manufacturer. The system must be properly secured by the seatbelt of a forward-facing seat, and/or as specified by the system's manufacturer.

12.3.2 Airbag Restraint Systems

Airbag restraint systems are certified as standard or optional equipment on a majority of general aviation aeroplanes. They are stored in the seatbelt portion of 3-point restraint systems (i.e. with one shoulder strap) and in the shoulder harness of 4-point systems (i.e. with two shoulder straps).

When the airbag system's sensors detect an impending incident, the seatbelt airbag deploys up and away from the seated occupant, providing protection to the occupant's head, neck and torso. Protection is, thus, provided for forward impact. In the case of 3-point restraint systems, the airbag slows the occupant's forward articulation, reducing loads and forward head excursion. In the case of 4-point restraint systems, the airbag slows any forward motion of the occupant while the dual shoulder harnesses pretention the restraint and stop forward head excursion. The increased restraint surface area provided by a 4-point restraint system and airbag also reduces internal chest loading on the seat occupant, supporting head and neck in forward impacts as well as side impacts.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

While airbag restraint systems are typically standard equipment on new aircraft, older aircraft can have such systems retrofitted to their seatbelt and/or shoulder harness systems. To meet regulatory requirements, airbag restraint systems must meet a 26-G deceleration requirement in their design and operation.

Airbag restraint systems are being incorporated by manufacturers into their aircraft designs such that the airbags are being housed, "automotive style," in the instrument panel.

12.3.3 Flight Helmets

Helmets exist for flying. Pilots who perform aerial work that may be considered of higher risk may assess that the wearing of a helmet is a worthy consideration during their piloting operations.

Helmets serve two main purposes: to house communication equipment and to provide basic head and face protection in the case of an accident. While regulatory requirements do not exist for their use, accident research – particularly from studies done of accidents in the U.S. State of Alaska – has shown that by their wearing of a helmet, pilot lives have been saved in accidents that may otherwise have been fatal. Specifically, helmet use will reduce skull and facial bone injuries that remain the higher percentage injuries suffered by pilots involved in aviation accidents.

Helmets used in aviation are typically worn by pilots engaged in utility flying, such as banner-towing, pipeline patrol, crop dusting, or any type of flying that requires low-level work. Backcountry, or bush style operations are also higher-risk environments wherein the wearing of a helmet may confer enhanced injury protection for pilots and cabin occupants.

A correctly fitted and secured flight helmet can significantly reduce injuries and save lives in the event of a mishap. To be effective, the helmet must be adjusted to fit the head, and the chin strap must be fastened securely to prevent the helmet from coming off during an initial impact. Flight helmets are now light weight. They are designed with noise attenuating ear protection or are shaped to accommodate noise cancelling headsets.

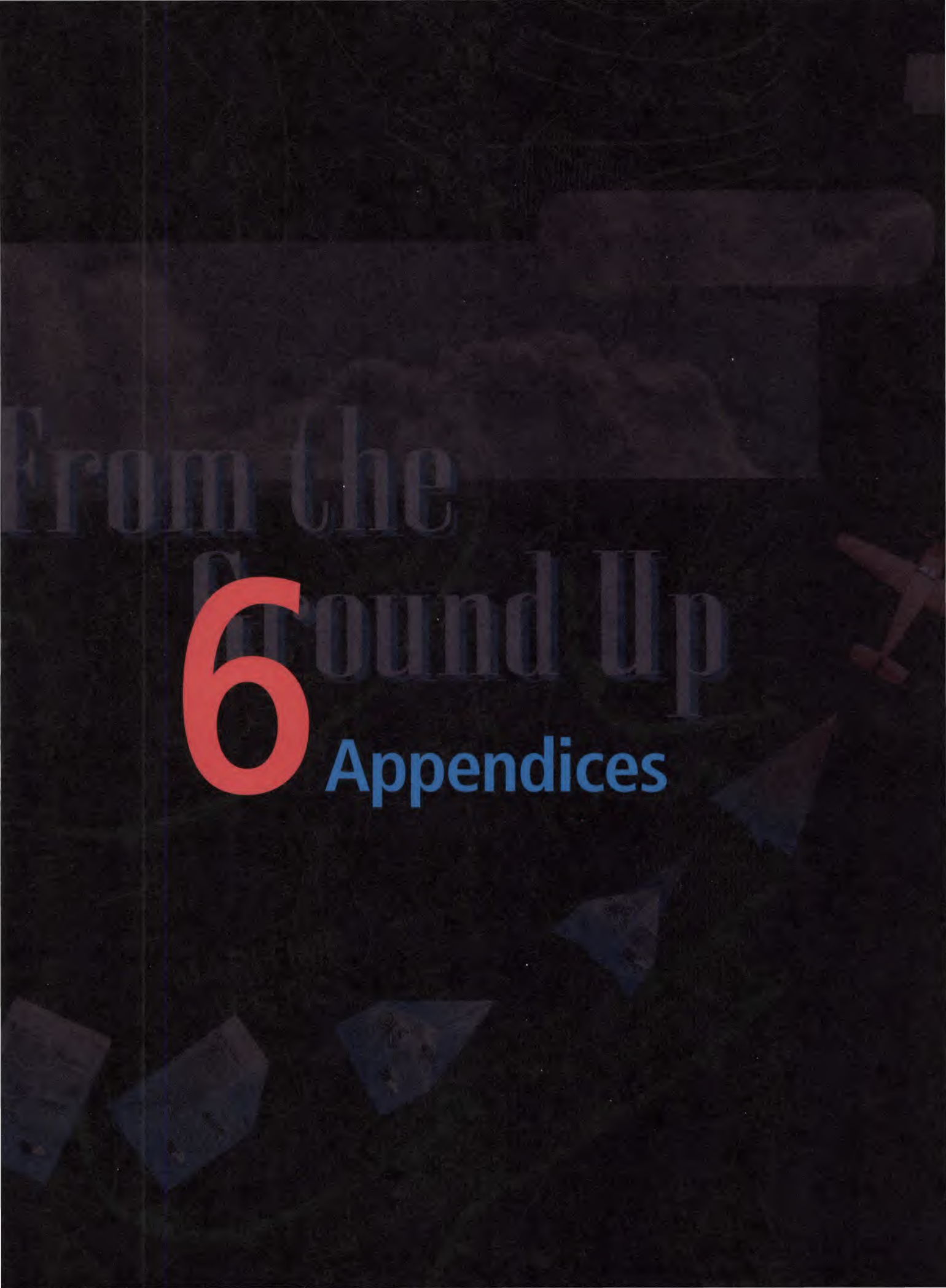
12.3.4 Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detectors

As described in the Chapter **Human Factors**, carbon monoxide (CO) infiltrating into the cockpit will cause seriously harmful effects on aeroplane occupants via its effective disabling of hemoglobin and its resultant insidious depriving of the body of oxygen. It is, therefore, highly advisable that aircraft carry CO detectors in the cockpit to notify pilots at the earliest possible opportunity that CO is present and that immediate action must be taken to avoid the risk of pilot incapacitation.

It is recommended that if a CO detector shows an inflight CO concentration of 10 parts per million (ppm), then the pilot should take action to determine its source and eliminate it. If the concentration level reaches 35 ppm, it is advisable that the pilot land as soon as practicable and, if they have the benefit of its on-board presence, that they use supplemental oxygen while doing so.

To facilitate the reading of a CO detector's display, a digital read-out is beneficial combined with an aural alarm that notifies the pilot that a CO level of concern has been identified by the detector. It is, thus, wise that a CO detector be placed where the pilot can easily see its read-out, and where they can incorporate it into their regular cockpit panel scan, and hear its auditory alarm should it be triggered.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com



6 Appendices

Overview of Appendices

Appendix A

Examination Guide 359
Study Material 359
Sample Examination Questions 361

Appendix B

Wx Chart 377

Appendix C

Glossary 379
Abbreviations 387
The V Speeds 391
Turbine Technology 391
Conversion Tables 392

Appendix D

Index 393

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Appendix A
Examination Guide

The sample examination questions which appear in this appendix are based on both the Private and Commercial Pilot Examination Guides. They are designed to assist you in preparing for your own examination. It cannot be too strongly emphasized that they are **sample questions only**, not the **actual questions** which you will be called upon to answer — so do not attempt to memorize the answers. The questions are offered merely as a guide to the subject matter on which they are based. Study that subject matter until you know it sufficiently well to be prepared to answer any question of a similar nature which could possibly be constructed on an examination paper. Readers from countries outside of Canada should refer to their respective national aviation authorities or flight schools for appropriate examination and licencing requirements.

Always read the statement first. Be sure you understand what it means. Decide the correct answer in your own mind (or plot it if it is a problem) **before you look at the multiple choice answers**. Then select the answer which most nearly coincides with your own reasoning.

The correct one of the four multiple choice answers is identified for all the questions in the table of answers following the final question. Mark your selection of the correct answer before you consult the table.

Do not be discouraged if your answer does not exactly agree with the one which appears in this textbook. Every effort is made to keep this publication completely up-to-date by constant revision but changes occur so fast that it is difficult to keep pace with them all.

Canadian Aviation Regulations (CARs) are also subject to endless change. No attempt has been made in this textbook to reproduce these regulations in their entirety although some of the regulations have been outlined in the Chapter **Aeronautical Rules & Procedures**. The CAR's are divided into eight Parts. Each Part incorporates all regulations relating to a particular area of aviation, as follows: Part I General Provisions; Part II Identification, Registration and Leasing of Aircraft; Part III Aerodromes and Airports; Part IV Personnel Licensing and Training; Part V Airworthiness; Part VI General Operating and Flight Rules; Part VII Commercial Air Services; Part VIII Air Navigation Services. It is important for a student pilot to study the regulations, with particular reference to the sections which apply to the type of licence towards which he/she is working (i.e. private, commercial, recreational, ultralight, etc.).

A.I.M. Canada (Aeronautical Information Manual) is a Transport Canada publication in which all information of interest to pilots and navigators is consolidated. Amendments are published and distributed twice annually. The publication contains information on aerodromes, communications, meteorology, rules of the air and air traffic services, facilitation, search and rescue, aeronautical charts, licensing, registration and airworthiness and airmanship. The publication is intended to consolidate in one publication all preflight reference information required by pilots in planning flights. It incorporates in plain language a description of the Canadian Aviation Regulations. The A.I.M. is a very useful document for pilots to reference on an on-going basis throughout their flying careers.

Canadian Examinations

Private Pilot Licence - Aeroplane. The written examination for a Private Pilot's Licence in Canada consists of a single paper of 100 questions made up of 20 questions on air law, 20 questions on navigation (which includes airways and cross-country procedures), 30 questions on meteorology and 30 questions on general knowledge (which includes theory of flight, engines, airframes and general airmanship).

Commercial Pilot Licence - Aeroplane. The Commercial Pilot's examination consists also of one paper of 100 questions on the following subjects: Canadian Aviation Regulations, air traffic rules and procedures, navigation, flight planning, radio aids to navigation, meteorology, theory of flight, aircraft operating procedures, airframes and aero engines, airmanship.

Recreational Pilot Permit - Aeroplane. The RPP requires that the applicant complete not less than 25 hours of flight training and pass an examination composed of 80 questions, 20 on each of the following subjects: air law, navigation, meteorology and general knowledge (which includes airframes, engines and systems, theory of flight, flight instruments, flight operations and human factors). The holder of a Recreational Pilot Permit is authorized to fly single-engine, piston-powered, non-high performance aircraft with a maximum of four seats; is authorized to fly landplanes or seaplanes, or both, as endorsed, day VFR within Canada; may carry not more than one passenger.

Ultralight Pilot Permit - Aeroplane. The applicant for an ultralight pilot permit must have at least 10 hours of flight time including 5 hours of dual instruction and 2 hours of solo. The examination consists of 80 questions and includes the subject, emergency procedures, in addition to the subjects for RPP (see above).

Student Pilot Permit or Private Pilot Licence for Foreign and Military Applicants, Air Regulation Examination (PSTAR). All student pilots (with the exception of ultralight and glider pilot applicants) must write the PSTAR examination before being issued their student pilot permits. The exam consists of 50 questions on the following subject areas: Canadian Aviation Regulations, air traffic control clearances and instructions, air traffic control procedures as they apply to the control of VFR traffic, air traffic procedures at uncontrolled airports and aerodromes, special VFR regulations, Information Circulars and NOTAM. The pass mark is 90%.

Restricted Radio Operator's Licence. In addition to the knowledge of radio aids required to obtain either a Private or Commercial Pilot's Licence, a Restricted Radio Operator's Licence is required to operate an aircraft radio transmitter. The examination for the licence consists of a few simple questions to ensure that you understand how to operate receiving and transmitting equipment, that you know the regulations applicable to radiotelephone communications and procedures, and that you know the radio regulations relating to distress, urgency and safety. You are not required to know morse code or to understand electronic circuits.

Study Material

In addition to this textbook, A.I.M. Canada, the Canadian Aviation Regulations, there are several booklets that are very helpful in preparing for the written pilot examination.

Sample Examination for Private Pilot Licence — Aeroplane (TP 13014). A small booklet containing questions typical of those found in current Transport Canada examinations. Because this booklet is prepared by the authorities who set the civil pilot examinations, it is a good guide to a candidate preparing to sit for an examination.

Study and Reference Guide for the PSTAR Examination (TP 11919E) contains over 200 questions typical of those found in the PSTAR examination.

Study and Reference Guide for Private Pilot and Commercial Pilot Licences (TP 12880 & TP 12881). A complete syllabus of Canadian pilot examination requirements. Outlines the subject matter and degree of knowledge required to pass the Transport Canada examinations in the following subjects: aviation regulations, airframes and engines, theory of flight, flight instruments, meteorology, navigation and radio aids, and flight operations.

These publications are available from Transport Canada, and can be downloaded from the Transport Canada website.

The Canada Air Pilot, while not a "must" for examination requirements, contains extremely valuable information for both VFR and IFR operations, and should be in the possession of all Commercial and Airline Transport Pilots in Canada. It is published in seven volumes and contains complete and detailed data on instrument approach and landing procedures. Aerodrome charts show airport runways, radio aids, field data, ground facilities, etc.

The above publication is obtainable from NavCanada.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Sample Examination Questions

1 You are to make a 200 nautical mile VFR flight to another aerodrome. Which of these documents do you not need to have on board the aeroplane?
1 The journey log of the aeroplane.
2 The certificate of registration of the aeroplane.
3 The certificate of liability insurance.
4 The weight & balance report for the aeroplane.

2 When operating in accordance with VFR, aeroplanes may not be flown
1 inside control zones.
2 over an unbroken layer of cloud.
3 outside designated airways.
4 in Class D Airspace.

3 A private pilot may conduct a flight without visual reference to the ground or water if
1 endorsed for instrument flight.
2 the flight is conducted in Class B airspace.
3 outside of controlled airspace.
4 cleared for Special VFR.

4 Except when taking off or landing, an aeroplane may not be flown lower than _____ over an aerodrome, unless otherwise directed by the ATC unit.
1 1,000 feet.
2 500 feet.
3 2,000 feet.
4 3,000 feet.

5 You are flying at night at 3,000 ft and observe the white light of an aeroplane at approximately your altitude at your 12 o'clock position. If there is a possibility of collision
1 you must alter course to the right.
2 the other pilot must climb at least 500 ft.
3 you must alter course to the left.
4 the other pilot must alter course to his or her left.

6 When approaching to land, the right-of-way is given to
1 faster aeroplanes.
2 aeroplanes at lower altitude.
3 slower aeroplanes.
4 jet aeroplanes.

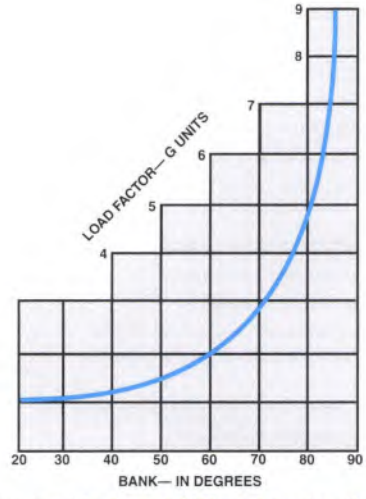
7 All facts relating to maintenance, repairs, new installations and modifications must be recorded in the
1 Certificate of Airworthiness.
2 Pilot's Operating Handbook.
3 Aircraft Journey Log.
4 Aircraft Technical Log.

8 A crack in the skin of a monocoque fuselage
1 might affect the stress capability of the structure.
2 will not affect the stress capability of the structure.
3 increases the load factor.
4 will cause flutter.

9 A device fitted to a control surface to relieve control pressure on that control surface is called a/an
1 trim tab.
2 rudder.
3 mass balance.
4 adjustable stabilizer.

10 The ratio of the lift being provided by the wings of an aeroplane to the weight of the aeroplane is called
1 the compression ratio.
2 the load factor.
3 the aspect ratio.
4 the power load.

11 V_A, the design maneuvering speed, is not indicated on the airspeed indicator, but can be found in the Pilot's Operating Handbook. This airspeed is important because it is the recommended airspeed to be used when
1 maneuvering with both the landing gear and wing flaps extended.
2 flying in extremely rough air or severe turbulence.
3 flying the traffic circuit.
4 maximum range (miles per gallon of fuel) is desired.



Appx.1 **Load Factors at Different Angles of Bank**

12 Referring to the Load Factor Chart in Appx.1, if the maximum flight load factor permitted for an aeroplane is 3.8, what is the maximum bank at constant altitude and at maximum gross weight which could be made without exceeding this load factor?
1 About 67°.
2 Less than 50°.
3 About 76°.
4 Not over 7.6G.

13 A torsion stress is caused by
1 bending.
2 stretching.
3 corrosion.
4 twisting.

14 The five principal factors which affect the magnitude of lift and drag of an aeroplane wing are
1 angle of attack, thrust, gross weight, airspeed, air density.
2 angle of attack, gross weight, lift coefficient, shape of the airfoil, wind velocity.
3 angle of attack, shape of the airfoil, aspect ratio, coefficient of lift, gross weight.
4 angle of attack, shape of the airfoil, wing area, airspeed, air density.

15 When an aircraft is flying in straight-and-level flight, at a constant airspeed,
1 weight and thrust equal lift.
2 drag equals lift and weight equals thrust.
3 weight equals drag and thrust equals lift.
4 lift equals weight and drag equals thrust.

16 The relative wind affects an aeroplane's
1 angle of incidence.
2 dihedral angle.
3 coefficient of drag.
4 angle of attack.

17 When the angle of attack of the wing is increased to the point where the wing stalls, the centre of pressure will
1 move forward and then rearward.
2 move forward.
3 remain stationary.
4 move rearward and then forward.

18 What is profile drag?
1 Form drag plus skin friction.
2 Drag produced by a positive angle of attack.
3 Drag produced by wing tip vortices.
4 Drag produced by the generation of lift.

19 The best lift/drag ratio is achieved when
1 gliding for maximum endurance.
2 gliding for maximum range.
3 climbing at best rate of climb airspeed.
4 climbing at best angle of climb airspeed.

20 When an aeroplane is flying very near the ground and influenced by ground effect,
1 wing tip vortices are strengthened.
2 skin friction is reduced.
3 induced drag is reduced.
4 parasite drag is reduced.

21 On certain aeroplanes, the manufacturer recommends the use of flaps during take-off. Flaps, under these circumstances,
1 increase the upper camber of the wing and produce more lift.
2 decrease the upper camber of the wing and produce more lift.
3 permit a better angle of climb.
4 permit a higher take-off speed.

22 The motion of an aeroplane about its normal axis is known as
1 yawing.
2 looping.
3 rolling.
4 pitching.

23 A mass of streamlined shape fitted in front of the hinge of a control surface is incorporated to
1 reduce the force needed to move the control surface.
2 counteract adverse yaw.
3 reduce the effect of full deflection of the control surface.
4 counteract flutter.

24 An aeroplane that exhibits positive stability on the longitudinal axis and neutral stability on the lateral axis would correct
1 a pitch displacement, but would require positive correction of a roll.
2 a roll displacement, but would require positive correction of a pitch.
3 a yaw displacement, but would require positive correction of a pitch.
4 a pitch displacement, but would require positive correction of a yaw.

25 Lateral stability is improved by
1 a positive dihedral angle of the wings.
2 balanced controls.
3 offsetting the vertical fin.
4 a high aspect ratio wing.

26 In comparison with a take-off and climb under calm conditions, climbing at the same airspeed into a head wind
1 lowers the angle of attack.
2 increases the rate of climb.
3 requires more power from the engine.
4 increases the angle of climb.

27 Three aeroplanes are making co-ordinated, 40° banked turns at a constant altitude. Aeroplane A is flying at 100 knots, B at 150 knots and C at 200 knots. Which of the following statements is correct?
1 C has the greatest rate and largest radius of turn.
2 A has the greatest rate and smallest radius of turn.
3 B's rate of turn and radius of turn is the same as A's and C's.
4 A, B and C have the same rate of turn, but C has the largest radius of turn.

28 An aeroplane which has a straight-and-level stalling speed of 70 knots is in a 60° banked turn. The stalling speed in the turn is
1 70 knots.
2 75 knots.
3 99 knots.
4 140 knots.

29 If a thin coating of frost or light snow has formed on the wings of an aeroplane, the take-off should not be attempted until it has been removed because
1 the coating will disturb the airflow over the wings and destroy some of the lifting capability.
2 the cold air has contracted the covering of the wings, thus changing the airfoil section.
3 the added weight could have overloaded the aeroplane.
4 the cold could have increased the density of the fuel and oil, making the engine less powerful.

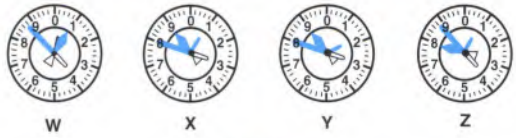
30 An aeroplane stalls at an indicated airspeed of 60 knots at sea level. At 10,000 ft ASL, the aeroplane, at the same weight, stalls at
1 an indicated airspeed of 60 knots.
2 a true airspeed of 60 knots.
3 an indicated airspeed of 70 knots.
4 a true airspeed lower than the indicated airspeed.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

31 When an aeroplane is in a spin (autorotation), the downgoing wing
1 is more affected by the angle of incidence.
2 has a lesser angle of attack than the upgoing wing.
3 has the same angle of attack as the upgoing wing.
4 has a greater angle of attack than the upgoing wing.

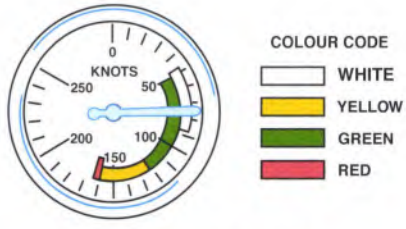
32 An aeroplane flying at 10,000 ft ASL in the Altimeter Setting Region should have its altimeter set to
1 29.92 inches of mercury.
2 the altimeter setting of the nearest aerodrome.
3 the altimeter setting of the destination aerodrome.
4 the altimeter setting of the departure aerodrome.

33 If a pitot pressure source becomes blocked by dirt, water or ice, inaccurate readings will occur in the
1 attitude indicator.
2 vertical speed indicator.
3 altimeter.
4 airspeed indicator.



Appx.2 **Altimeters**

34 Of the four altimeters illustrated in Appx.2, select the one that indicates an altitude of 880 feet.
1 Y
2 W
3 Z
4 X



Appx.3 **Airspeed Indicator**

35 For the airspeed indicator in Appx.3, V_{NO} is
1 the upper limit of the yellow arc.
2 38 knots less than V_{NE}.
3 the upper limit of the white arc.
4 140 knots (the midpoint of the yellow arc).

36 The airspeed indicator in Appx.3 indicates that full flaps may be deployed at speeds below
1 88 knots.
2 100 knots.
3 122 knots.
4 160 knots.

37 In a reciprocating engine operating on a four-stroke cycle, during the compression stroke,
1 both valves are closed.
2 the intake valve is closed and the exhaust valve is open.
3 both valves are open.
4 the exhaust valve is closed and the intake valve is open.

38 In a piston engine, the camshaft
1 rotates at half the speed of the crankshaft.
2 rotates at twice the speed of the crankshaft.
3 rotates at the same speed as the crankshaft.
4 is independent of the crankshaft.

39 The volume of the cylinder at the bottom of the compression stroke compared to the volume at the top of the stroke is called
1 the compression ratio.
2 the piston displacement.
3 the volumetric efficiency.
4 the mean effective pressure.

40 When a check of the dip stick indicates the need for two litres of oil, the attendant tells you that only detergent type oil is available. This means that
1 it can be used only in engines with suitable filters and flexible oil lines.
2 it is the latest type of oil and should always be used when available.
3 it should never be used in engines over 125 hp.
4 the oil contains additives and should be added only to the same type of oil.

41 Which of the following is not a purpose of oil in a piston engine on an aeroplane?
1 Producing fluid drag to increase the output power of the engine.
2 Sealing between the piston rings and the cylinder wall.
3 Separating moving parts within the engine.
4 Cooling the engine by carrying away heat.

42 Using gasoline with a lower octane rating than that recommended for a reciprocating engine may cause
1 detonation.
2 rough operation and lower manifold pressure.
3 pre-ignition and increased output.
4 the spark plugs to foul.

43 In a four-stroke, reciprocating engine, fuel is drawn from the carburetor float chamber into the engine by means of
1 a Venturi effect.
2 an acceleration pump.
3 a turbocharger.
4 a fuel pump.

44 At cruise power, above 5,000 ft, it is generally advisable to lean the engine to "lean best power" to
1 achieve economy of fuel consumption.
2 prevent carburetor icing.
3 prevent detonation.
4 cool the engine.

45 An exhaust gas temperature (EGT) display for a piston engine allows the pilot to
1 detect whether carbon monoxide is leaking from the exhaust gases into the cockpit.
2 detect icing in the fuel lines.
3 adjust the fuel/air mixture accurately.
4 check for the presence of carburetor icing.

46 Carburetor ice may be detected by
1 an increase in rpm.
2 a decrease in manifold pressure.
3 a decrease in exhaust gas temperature.
4 an increase in cylinder head temperatures.

47 If carburetor ice is present, the restriction to airflow frequently causes the mixture to become rich and some power is lost. Applying carburetor heat will sometimes cause a further loss of power. If this happens, you should
1 leave full carburetor heat applied until all ice is dissipated.
2 turn carburetor heat off and adjust the mixture control to obtain maximum rpm.
3 turn carburetor heat off and open the throttle to obtain desired power.
4 decrease the amount of carburetor heat until the rpm increases.

48 One of the principal advantages of the fuel injection system is
1 better general performance.
2 higher horsepower.
3 impossibility of carburetor icing.
4 economy of fuel consumption.

49 A device that uses the energy of the hot exhaust gases to supply the engine with dense air at high altitude is called
1 a turbocharger.
2 a supercharger.
3 an augmentor system.
4 a carburetor.

50 When the magneto switch is in the OFF position,
1 the electrical components installed in the aeroplane will not operate.
2 the contact breaker points are closed.
3 the primary circuit of the magneto is grounded to the airframe.
4 the current in the magneto's secondary circuit is directed to the battery.

51 During a flight at normal cruising speed, if one magneto of a dual ignition system failed completely, it would normally cause
1 a small decrease in engine rpm.
2 excessive vibration of the engine.
3 considerable extra load on the other magneto.
4 the engine to overheat.

52 Coarse pitch of a constant-speed propeller
1 should be selected for landing.
2 is used for take-off.
3 is used when flying at high altitudes.
4 is used for cruise.

53 For taking off and landing in an aeroplane with a constant speed propeller, the propeller is set to full
1 coarse pitch which provides the maximum rpm.
2 coarse pitch which provides the minimum rpm.
3 fine pitch which provides the maximum rpm.
4 fine pitch which provides the minimum rpm.

54 Before starting a cold piston engine, the handbook may recommend pulling the propeller through manually several times. This is normally to
1 allow fuel to reach the carburetor, to prevent the engine "kicking-back" when starting.
2 build up adequate compression for starting.
3 pull fuel into the engine, to break any seal created by water having frozen in the fuel lines.
4 loosen congealed oil and partially to prime the engine.

55 If your aeroplane has a maximum angle of climb at a speed of 82 knots but the manufacturer recommends climbing at 87 knots, the most probable reason for the higher recommended airspeed would be
1 danger of stalling in a climb at the lower airspeed.
2 to maintain a higher head temperature at the higher airspeed.
3 to obtain better visibility with the nose lowered.
4 to obtain better cooling of the engine.

56 What is the most commonly recommended practice for preventing condensation in the fuel tanks?
1 Drain a half litre of fuel from the tank sumps each night.
2 Fill each fuel tank after every flight.
3 Strain all fuel put into the tanks.
4 Install a quick drain gascolator.

57 A layer of dark grey cloud from which continuous rain or snow falls is called
1 cirrostratus.
2 nimbostratus.
3 altostratus.
4 cumulonimbus.

58 When flying through a layer of nimbostratus, an instrument-rated pilot encounters sudden severe turbulence. The most probable cause is
1 embedded altocumulus.
2 embedded cirrocumulus.
3 embedded stratocumulus.
4 embedded towering cumulus or cumulonimbus.

59 The tropopause is lower
1 over the north pole than over the equator.
2 in summer than in winter.
3 over the equator than over the north pole.
4 south of the jet stream than north of it.

60 The clouds which appear, in sequence, in advance of an approaching warm front are
1 altostratus, cumulus, cumulonimbus and nimbostratus.
2 cumulus, cumulonimbus, and nimbostratus.
3 cirrus, cirrostratus, altostratus and nimbostratus.
4 cirrus, cumulonimbus and nimbostratus.

61 A low pressure area in the Northern Hemisphere is
1 a region of relatively low pressure with the lowest pressure at the centre.
2 a region of relatively low pressure with the highest pressure at the centre.
3 also called an anticyclone.
4 a region in which the winds blow clockwise.

62 A steep pressure gradient indicates
1 rising pressure.
2 calm air.
3 light winds.
4 strong winds.

63 An aeroplane is flying in the Northern Hemisphere at 10,000 ft ASL on a track of 200°. To maintain this track, the pilot is holding a heading of 185°. An area of low pressure exists
1 behind the aeroplane.
2 ahead of the aeroplane.
3 to the right of track.
4 to the left of the track.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

64 At night, as the sides of the hills or mountains cool, the air in contact with them tends to become denser and blows down the slope into the valley. This wind is called
1 a mountain wave.
2 a katabatic wind.
3 an anabatic wind.
4 a land breeze.

65 You are flying on a westerly heading and encounter a range of mountains lying in a north to south line. If you attempt to fly through a saddle on a westerly heading with the wind from the west, you would expect
1 to lose altitude rapidly on the west side of the saddle.
2 to gain altitude rapidly on the east side of the saddle.
3 to lose altitude rapidly on the east side of the saddle.
4 to lose altitude rapidly while in the saddle.

66 Lenticular clouds are usually associated with
1 a warm front.
2 a cold front.
3 a mountain wave.
4 an inversion.

67 A sudden, violent change in the speed or direction of the wind that can severely change an aeroplane's performance is called
1 wind shear.
2 wind tip vortices.
3 clear air turbulence.
4 diurnal variation.

68 When unsaturated air is forced to rise, the expansion of the rising air causes it to cool. The rate of cooling is called
1 the environmental lapse rate and is 1.98°C per 1,000 ft.
2 the dry adiabatic lapse rate and is approximately 3°C per 1,000 ft.
3 radiation cooling and is 3°C per 1,000 ft.
4 the wet adiabatic lapse rate and is approximately 2°C per 1,000 ft.

69 The amount of water vapour that a given volume of air can hold at a given pressure is governed by
1 the environmental lapse rate.
2 its relative humidity.
3 its stability.
4 its temperature.

70 In certain circumstances, air at higher altitudes may be warmer than the air below it. This is called
1 convection.
2 a lapse rate reversal.
3 radiation.
4 an inversion.

71 Select the correct statement from the following.
1 Visibility is always good in stable air.
2 An isothermal layer favours vertical motion.
3 A shallow lapse rate indicates unstable air.
4 Vertical currents develop readily in unstable air.

72 An air mass may be defined as a large section of the ____ with uniform properties of _____ and _____.
1 troposphere; temperature; moisture.
2 troposphere; stability; moisture.
3 tropopause; stability; pressure.
4 stratosphere; temperature; pressure.

73 A front is
1 a line of thunderstorms.
2 a narrow transition zone between a cyclone and an anticyclone.
3 a mass of layer cloud which is very thick and which covers a wide area.
4 a narrow transition zone between two air masses.

74 The cloud and precipitation that often develop at a cold front are caused by
1 cold air being heated as it moves over the warm ground.
2 convergence.
3 warm air being forced aloft by the advancing cold air.
4 cold air climbing over the warm air.

75 In order for clouds to form in the atmosphere, relative humidity must be _____, there must be _____ of the air and____must be present.
1 low, cooling, coalescence.
2 low, heating, coalescence.
3 high, cooling, condensation nuclei.
4 high, heating, condensation nuclei.

76 Which type of fog is being described here? "It forms overnight as the air near the ground cools and stabilizes. When this cooling causes the air to reach saturation, fog forms, initially at or near the surface, thickening as the air continues to cool."
1 Radiation fog.
2 Advection fog.
3 Steam fog.
4 Upslope fog.

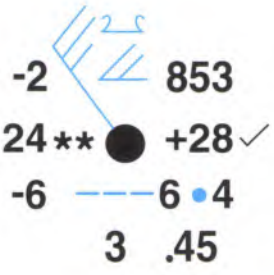
77 The 11:00Z METAR for an airport included the term "FG". A SPECI was issued at 11:05Z and the term had changed to "BR". This indicates that, between the two reports,
1 visibility had become limited by drifting snow.
2 the fog had dissipated and snow pellets were now falling.
3 visibility had reduced significantly.
4 the visibility had increased to at least 1 km.

78 Hoar frost forms on an aeroplane as a result of
1 freezing rain striking the aeroplane.
2 supercooled water droplets freezing on impact.
3 water vapour condensing on the aeroplane and then freezing.
4 water vapour turning directly into ice crystals.

79 As a thunderstorm matures, strong downdrafts develop and cold air rushing downwards from the cloud spreads along the surface well in advance of the storm itself. This is called
1 a microburst.
2 the gust front.
3 thunderstorm turbulence.
4 virga.

80 Mechanical turbulence is the result of
1 diurnal variation of wind.
2 friction between the air and objects on the ground.
3 orographic lift.
4 convection.

81 The contour lines drawn on a 700 hPa upper air analysis chart join places having the same
1 temperature.
2 wind direction.
3 pressure.
4 altitude.



Appx.4 **Sample Station Model**

82 Referring to the station model in Appx.4, the temperature of the station is ___ , the dewpoint is ___ , the wind is from ___ and the barometric pressure is ___ .
1 24, 6, NE, 853.0 hPa.
2 -6, 3, NW, 1028.0"Hg.
3 -2, -6, NW, 985.3 hPa.
4 -6, 02, W, 985.3 hPa.

Sample METARs

CYYC 071300 36020KT 15SM SKC 09/02 A3012
CYQL 071300 36010KT 8SM OVC250 09/02 A3003
CYXH 071300 02025G30KT 10SM FEW020 OVC090 10/06 A2992
CYQR 071300 31020G25KT 4SM -RA BKN015 OVC850 09/08 A2976

CYYC: Calgary CYQL: Lethbridge CYXH: Medicine Hat CYQR: Regina

Appx.5 **Sample METARs**

83 In METARs, cloud heights are reported in hundreds of feet above
1 MSL (mean sea level).
2 the surface at the observation station.
3 the highest obstruction within 5 statute miles of the perimeter of the airport.
4 the highest terrain within a radius of 25 statute miles of the observation station.

84 Consider the METARs in Appx.5. In Calgary's METAR, the terms SKC and A3012 mean
1 there are no clouds and the sea-level pressure at CYYC is 30.12 inches of mercury.
2 there are no clouds below 12,000 ft AGL and the altimeter setting is 30.12 inches of mercury.
3 there are no clouds below 12,000 ft ASL and the altimeter setting is 30.12 inches of mercury.
4 there are no clouds and the station pressure at CYYC is 30.12 inches of mercury.

85 Consider the METARs in Appx.5. The reported weather condition at Regina is
1 very light freezing rain.
2 light rain.
3 moderate rain.
4 light snow showers.

for use	3000	6000	9000	12000	18000
17-21		2922-25	2523-25	2329-28	1336-37
21-06		3231-24	3127-29	3029-32	2944-36
06-17		3435-23	3441-27	3364-26	3286-34

Appx.6 **Upper Wind Forecast (Schefferville, Quebec)**

86 Referring to the upper winds forecast (FD) in Appx.6, the wind direction and speed above Schefferville at 9,000 ft ASL at 23:00Z is forecast to be approximately
1 31 knots blowing towards 270°.
2 27 knots blowing from 310°.
3 31 knots blowing from 270°.
4 27 knots blowing towards 310°.

87 Why does the upper wind forecast for Schefferville in Appx.6 have no entry for 3,000 ft?
1 Because there is expected to be no difference in wind speeds and direction between 3,000 ft and 6,000 ft.
2 Because winds close to the ground are affected by friction and their direction cannot be forecast.
3 Because Schefferville is higher than 1,500 ft ASL.
4 Because winds at 3,000 ft are not included in upper wind forecast.

88 Using the information in Appx.6, what is the forecast environmental lapse rate between 6,000 ft and 12,000 ft over Schefferville at 08:00Z?
1 About half a degree per thousand feet.
2 3° per 1,000 ft.
3 26° per 1,000 ft.
4 Just over 2° per 1,000 ft.

89 Using the information in Appx.6, which of the following statements is true for the Schefferville area at 08:00Z?
1 The atmosphere over Schefferville is stable.
2 The wind veers at increasing altitudes.
3 The atmosphere over Schefferville is unstable.
4 There is a temperature inversion up to 9,000

The following aerodrome forecasts were issued at 1040Z and are valid from 1100Z on the date of issue to 1100Z on the following day.

TAF CYYC 02015KT P6SM SKC

TAF CYQL 36025KT P6SM OVC030 FM071600 31010KT P6SM SCT020 BKN060

TAF CYXH 36020KT 5SM OVC030 FM071400 01015G25KT 5SM SCT040 BKN080

TAF CYQR 31025KT 4SM -TSRA OVC015 FM071800 36015G25KT 5SM SCT0030 BKN090

CYYC: Calgary CYQL: Lethbridge CYXH: Medicine Hat CYQR: Regina

Appx.7 **Sample TAFs**

90 In Appx.7, the TAF for Medicine Hat predicts surface winds_____with the sky_____.
1 from 200° at 36 knots; overcast at 300 ft AGL.
2 from the north at 20 knots; overcast at 3,000 ft AGL.
3 from the south at 25 knots; overcast at 3,000 ft AGL.
4 from 020° at 20 knots; overcast at 3,000 ft ASL.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

91 Consider Appx.5 and Appx.7 which are for the same day. How does the actual weather at 13:00Z at Medicine Hat compare with that forecast for that time?

1 The forecast thunderstorms have not occurred.
2 The ceiling is lower than was forecast.
3 The temperature is higher than was forecast.
4 The change in the winds and cloud layers has occurred earlier than was forecast.

92 By referring to the 1:500,000 chart at the back of the book, identify the geographical co-ordinates for Orillia Airport.

1 44°41'N, 079°19'E.
2 45°20'N, 078°49'W.
3 44°41'N, 079°39'W.
4 44°41'N, 079°19'W.

93 The CFS entry for Vancouver International Airport notes that the time in CYVR is "UTC-8(7)". In the summer, what is the Zulu time when the clocks in Vancouver read 10:45?

1 17:45Z.
2 18:45Z.
3 02:45Z.
4 03:45Z.

94 A curved line on the surface of the earth that cuts all meridians at the same angle is called a/an

1 grivation.
2 azimuth line.
3 rhumb line.
4 great circle.

95 Magnetic variation is

1 errors in the compass caused by the magnetic field from metal in the aeroplane frame and engine.
2 the angle between true north and magnetic north at any given point on the earth.
3 the difference between true track and magnetic track.
4 the difference between the magnetic track and the magnetic heading of the aeroplane.

96 In the Northern Hemisphere, if your aeroplane is on a northerly heading and if you turn towards the east or the west, the compass reading

1 will initially lead or indicate a turn in the opposite direction.
2 is inversely proportional to the magnetic variation for the particular area.
3 will initially lag or indicate a turn in the opposite direction.
4 will be correct if the turn is perfectly co-ordinated.

97 In an aeroplane flying straight-and-level, the magnetic compass will indicate a turn to the left when

1 accelerating on a heading of 270°.
2 accelerating on a heading of 000°.
3 decelerating on a heading of 270°.
4 decelerating on a heading of 090°.

98 Associate the following terms with the appropriate definitions.

A	Isogonic Line	**W**	A line connecting points of equal pressure on a surface analysis chart.
B	Isobar	**X**	A line on a chart joining points of zero variation.
C	Agonic Line	**Y**	A line on a chart joining points of equal variation.
D	Isother	**Z**	A line on a chart joining places or points having equal temperatures.

1 A-Y, B-W, C-X, D-Z.
2 A-X, B-W, C-X, D-Z.
3 A-W, B-X, C-Z, D-Y.
4 A-Y, B-Z, C-W, D-X.

99 In the vicinity of each magnetic pole there is an area

1 in which all aeroplanes must be under positive control.
2 in which you must reset the heading indicator every 3 minutes.
3 in which the compass is unreliable.
4 in which GPS position readings are inaccurate.

100 Which of the following are true for a Lambert Conformal Conical chart projection as used for VNCs?

A Lines of latitude and longitude are straight and cross each other at right angles.
B Lines of longitude are converging lines crossing the curved lines of latitude at right angles.
C A straight line on the chart approximately represents a great circle.
D A straight line on the chart represents a rhumb line.
E Scale errors are small, and so the scale may be considered constant over a single VNC sheet.

1 A — C — D
2 B — C — E
3 A — D — E
4 B — D — E

101 A chart scale is 1:500,000. This means that 1 cm on the chart is equivalent to

1 500 km on the ground.
2 50 nautical miles on the ground.
3 5 nautical miles on the ground.
4 5 km on the ground.

102 Which of these statements is true?

1 The reciprocal of 115° is 225°.
2 The direction NE is 090°.
3 To turn right 90° from a heading of 145° would be a turn to 235°.
4 The reciprocal of 267° is 117°.

103 You plan to conduct a flight from Lindsay (N44° 22' W78°47') to Collingwood (N44° 27' W80° 09') at an airspeed of 120 kts. The wind is forecast to be from 300° at 20 knots. Referring to the 1:500,000 map in the back of the book, calculate the magnetic heading to steer and the anticipated groundspeed.

1 279°M and 139 knots.
2 271°M and 101 knots.
3 281°M and 139 knots.
4 289°M and 101 knots.

104 What is the distance from Lindsay to Collingwood?
1 118 statute miles.
2 59 nautical miles.
3 59 statute miles.
4 68 nautical miles.

105 Based on the distance and anticipated groundspeed from previous questions, how long should the flight to Collingwood take?
1 70 minutes.
2 35 minutes.
3 30 minutes.
4 41 minutes.

106 You are on a flight between Peterborough (N44° 13' W78°21') and Edenvale (N44°26' W79°57'). At 10:15 you cross the eastern shore of Lake Simcoe on track. At 10:25 you see Barrie's Royal Victoria Hospital helipad immediately below you. Using the 1:500,000 map in the back of the book, calculate your groundspeed.
1 140 knots.
2 90 mph.
3 120 mph.
4 120 knots.

107 Based on the groundspeed from the previous question, when do you anticipate arriving over Edenvale?
1 10:41.
2 10:35.
3 10:31.
4 10:45.

108 You are planning a 243 n.m. flight from Calgary to Swift Current at an estimated groundspeed of 140 knots. Your aeroplane's average fuel consumption is 12 gallons U.S. per hour. Its usable fuel capacity is 48 gallons U.S. Allowing for a 45 minute fuel reserve, what should be the safe fuel hours available when you land at Swift Current?
1 1 hr. 30 min.
2 1 hr.
3 45 minutes.
4 1 hr. 15 min.

109 You are to fly between Huronia (N44° 41' W79° 55') and Oshawa (N43° 55' W78° 53'). Using the 1:500,000 map in the back of this book, select some useful waypoints.
1 Hwy 400 — Victor Airway V216 — the town of Uxbridge — Hwy 401.
2 Hwy 400 — Victor Airway V37 — the east shore of Lake Simcoe — the town of Uxbridge.
3 Hwy 400 — the east shore of Lake Simcoe — Alert Area CYA 503 — the town of Uxbridge.
4 Hwy 400 — the west shore of Lake Simcoe — the railroad running north from Toronto to Beaverton — the town of Uxbridge.

110 An airport is
1 an aerodrome with paved runways.
2 an aerodrome in respect of which a certificate is in force.
3 a registered aerodrome.
4 an aerodrome with a control tower.

111 The west end of a runway oriented east and west in Canada is numbered
1 270.
2 90.
3 09.
4 27.

112 Runways are lighted at night by two parallel lines of ___ lights; taxiways by two parallel lines of ___ lights.
1 white; blue.
2 white; green.
3 green; white.
4 white; red.

113 Where taxiway holding positions have not been established, an aeroplane waiting to enter an active runway should hold
1 at the edge of the runway.
2 at least 200 feet from the edge of the runway.
3 behind the threshold line.
4 at least 100 feet from the edge of the runway.

114 You are well advanced on final approach at a controlled airport. You have not received landing clearance and are unable to make contact with the tower controller because another pilot is talking on the tower frequency. You should
1 fly low over the runway and climb at the departure end.
2 pull up and make another approach.
3 continue and land if you are sure that the runway is clear.
4 change direction to fly towards the tower and rock the aeroplane wings gently.

115 You are making a day VFR flight to an aerodrome in Class G airspace. The circuit height at your destination is 1,500 ft ASL, and the airport elevation is 200 ft ASL. As you arrive, there is an overcast ceiling at 1,200 ft AGL and the visibility is 2 miles. Under these circumstances
1 you should fly the circuit at 700 ft AGL (900 ft ASL) to remain 500 ft below the cloud.
2 you should fly the circuit as high as possible while remaining clear of cloud.
3 you are not permitted to enter the circuit because the visibility is less than 3 miles.
4 you are not permitted to enter the circuit because the cloud height does not allow the circuit to be flown at the given height.

116 The lowest altitude at which an aeroplane may overfly an aerodrome when neither landing nor taking off is
1 3,000 ft AGL.
2 2,000 ft AGL.
3 the circuit height at the aerodrome.
4 500 ft above the circuit height at the aerodrome.

117 You have been authorized to taxi to the runway in use. To get there you must cross two taxiways and one runway. Your authorization allows you to
1 taxi to, but hold short of the runway in use without further clearances.
2 taxi to hold short of the runway in use, but you need to get another clearance to cross the other runway.
3 taxi to hold short of the runway in use, but you need to get further clearances to cross each taxiway and runway.
4 taxi to position on the runway in use without further clearances.

118 Accepting a clearance for an "immediate take-off" allows the pilot to
1 complete the run-up and pre-take-off check on the runway.
2 taxi to a full stop in position on the runway and take off without further clearance.
3 back track on the live runway to use the maximum available length for take-off.
4 taxi onto the runway and take off in one continuous movement.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

119 A departing VFR aeroplane will normally clear tower frequency when
1 the flight is clear of the control zone.
2 the flight is 15 miles from the airport.
3 an altitude of 2,000 feet above the ground has been reached.
4 the flight is 10 minutes flying time from the airport.

120 If you are flying through an MF area, you must report your position and intentions before entering the zone and
1 when having entered the zone, when overhead the aerodrome and immediately before leaving the zone.
2 when leaving the zone.
3 when overhead the aerodrome in the zone and leaving the zone.
4 when overhead the aerodrome in the zone and when 5 minutes away from leaving the zone.

121 Pilots flying VFR and intending to land at an aerodrome where no mandatory frequency, aerodrome traffic frequency or ground station exists, should broadcast their intentions on
1 122.8 MHz.
2 121.5 MHz.
3 126.7 MHz.
4 123.2 MHz.

122 A series of red flashes directed to an aeroplane approaching an airport for landing means
1 give way to other aircraft and continue circling.
2 you are in a prohibited area, alter course.
3 cleared to land.
4 airport unsafe, do not land.

123 A flashing white light from the control tower to an aeroplane taxiing or about to take off means
1 return to the ramp or hangar.
2 clear the runway.
3 be on the alert for debris on the runway.
4 delay your take-off.

124 When in VFR flight in the Northern Domestic Airspace, the altimeter should be set to _____ and the direction of flight should be determined by _____ track calculations.
1 29.92"Hg; true
2 the altimeter setting of the nearest station along the route of flight; true
3 29.92"Hg; magnetic
4 the altimeter setting of the nearest station along the route of flight; magnetic

125 To transit VFR through any part of Class C Airspace, pilots must
1 obtain prior permission in writing from the ATC unit.
2 advise ATC of their intentions and obtain a clearance.
3 establish two-way radio communication on 126.7 MHz.
4 have a special Class C endorsement to their licences.

126 To conduct a VFR flight in Class B Airspace, you must
1 advise ATC of your intentions and obtain a clearance.
2 be flying an aeroplane equipped with a full IFR instrument panel.
3 squawk code 1200 on the transponder.
4 have a Class B licence endorsement.

127 A low-level airway consists of Class ___ airspace and a VFR flight ___ .
1 F; requires a clearance to enter.
2 E; must establish two-way radio communication with the controlling ATC before entering.
3 F; requires no permission to enter, but should be alert for other aircraft.
4 E; requires no permission to enter.

128 An airspace classified as Class F and indicated on an aeronautical chart by the code CYA(S) denotes
1 a restricted area with surveillance activity.
2 a restricted area with blasting activities.
3 a danger area with artillery activity.
4 an advisory area with soaring activity.

129 Which of the following extends upwards from the surface of the earth?
1 A Low Level Airway.
2 A Terminal Control Area.
3 A Control Zone.
4 A Control Area Extension.

130 The airspace in a terminal control area around a major airport is normally Class
1 F
2 D
3 G
4 A

131 A flight plan must be filed for all VFR flights
1 to be flown along low-level airways.
2 to be flown at night.
3 to an international destination.
4 to be flown above 3,000 feet AGL.

132 When a VFR flight plan has been filed with a Flight Service Station, the pilot-in-command must report the arrival within
1 24 hours after landing.
2 1 hour after landing.
3 30 minutes after landing.
4 12 hours after landing.

133 In which of the following ways does a VFR flight itinerary differ from a VFR flight plan?
1 An aircraft flying on a VFR flight itinerary is not declared to be overdue until 2 hours after the estimated time of arrival.
2 A flight itinerary may be filed with a FSS, ATC or a responsible person.
3 A flight itinerary does not specify a search-and-rescue time.
4 A flight itinerary may only be filed with a responsible person: it cannot be filed through an FSS.

134 Using the following data, which time should be entered in the "Elapsed Time" section of the flight plan form?
Estimated elapsed time A to B — 1 hour 10 minutes.
Estimated stopover time at B — 45 minutes.
Estimated elapsed time B to C — 1 hour 30 minutes.
1 4 hours 10 minutes (to include fuel reserve).
2 3 hours 25 minutes.
3 2 hours 40 minutes.
4 1 hour 10 minutes.

135 An Air Traffic Control "Instruction"
1 is the same as an Air Traffic Control "Clearance".
2 must be complied with unless it is unsafe to do so.
3 is advice provided by ATC and does not require acceptance or formal acknowledgement by the pilot concerned.
4 must be "read back" in full to the controller and confirmed before becoming effective.

136 You accept a clearance and then find that you cannot comply with it because of safety concerns. You should
1 comply with only that part that does not bring you into a dangerous situation.
2 comply as best you can under the circumstances to carry out the clearance and say nothing to ATC.
3 disregard the clearance.
4 comply as best you can and advise ATC as soon as possible.

137 You are flying an aeroplane outside of a control area on a VFR cross-country flight on a magnetic track of 155°. An appropriate altitude for this flight would be
1 7,000 ft ASL.
2 8,000 ft ASL.
3 7,500 ft ASL.
4 8,500 ft ASL

138 What is the minimum height AGL above which an aeroplane should comply with the Cruising Altitude Order?
1 2,200 feet.
2 3,000 feet.
3 700 feet.
4 3,500 feet.

139 In Canada, flights conducted VFR Over-the-Top are not permitted
1 unless the destination aerodrome issues a TAF.
2 if there is any cloud cover at the departure aerodrome.
3 between two solid layers of cloud.
4 to enter cloud.

140 The minimum flight visibility for aeroplanes under VFR outside controlled airspace is ___ . Within control zones, unless a Special VFR clearance is issued, the minimum flight visibility is ___ .
1 500 feet; 1 mile
2 1 mile; 3 miles
3 3 miles; 3 miles
4 1 mile; 1 mile

141 The pilot of a fixed-wing aeroplane taking off on a day VFR flight must have sufficient fuel to complete the flight with forecast weather conditions, plus reserve fuel to travel
1 150 nautical miles at normal cruise speed.
2 100 nautical miles at normal cruise speed.
3 for 1 hour at normal cruise speed.
4 for 30 minutes at normal cruise speed.

142 Special VFR may be authorized by the appropriate ATC unit to an aeroplane with a functioning two-way radio when flight and ground visibility are not less than
1 5 miles.
2 l/2 miles.
3 1 mile.
4 2 miles.

143 An aeroplane flying in accordance with Special VFR would be flying within a
1 control zone.
2 aerodrome traffic zone.
3 terminal control area.
4 Class G airspace.

144 A pilot has a Special VFR clearance and has been cleared to the circuit. Ahead and below the flight path there is a solid layer of stratus cloud. The responsibility of remaining clear of cloud
1 lies with ATC if the weather is below VFR minima.
2 is shared equally by the pilot and ATC.
3 lies with the pilot.
4 lies with the tower controller because Special VFR only occurs in a control zone.

145 ADIZ rules apply
1 only to aeroplanes flying above Flight Level 180.
2 only to aeroplanes flying at a true airspeed of 180 kts or more.
3 only to commercially-registered aeroplanes.
4 to all aeroplanes.

146 A VOR transmitter is at sea level. If there are no obstructions, then an aeroplane flying at 10,000 ft ASL should be able to receive the VOR signals at a distance of approximately
1 150 nautical miles.
2 75 nautical miles.
3 120 nautical miles.
4 90 nautical miles.

147 The long range capabilities of HF radio are attributable to the behaviour of
1 ground waves.
2 line-of-sight transmission.
3 sky waves.
4 phase differential.

148 Which of the following statements correctly characterize VHF radio?
A One of the disadvantages of VHF is its susceptibility to atmospheric and precipitation static.
B VHF is relatively free from atmospheric and precipitation static.
C Reception distance for usable service is based on "line-of-sight".
D Reception distance remains constant regardless of the altitude.

1 B and C.
2 B and D.
3 A and D.
4 A and C.

149 Your aircraft is fitted with ADS-B In. This allows you to
1 receive wide-area augmentation signals (WAAS) to improve the accuracy of the GPS display.
2 see the position of nearby aircraft equipped with ADS-B Out.
3 transmit the position of your aircraft to ATC more accurately than with a mode C transponder.
4 send weather information (including temperature and air pressure) to Flight Services automatically.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

150 ATIS information for an airport gives information relating to
1 ceiling, wind, altimeter setting, runway in use, traffic density.
2 ceiling, visibility, wind, runway in use, landing clearance.
3 ceiling, visibility, wind, altimeter setting, runway in use.
4 ceiling, wind, altimeter setting, time of next ATIS update, runway in use.

151 You should make radio contact with the control tower
1 upon entering the aerodrome traffic zone.
2 before entering the control zone.
3 immediately before joining the circuit.
4 immediately after entering the control zone.

152 The minimum content of an initial radio call-up to Winnipeg tower by the pilot of C-GULT is "Winnipeg Tower, Piper Warrior . . .
1 Charlie, Golf, Uniform, Lima, Tango at 3,000 ft."
2 Lima, Tango at 3,000 ft."
3 Golf, Uniform, Lima, Tango at 3,000 ft."
4 Uniform, Lima, Tango at 3,000 ft."

153 As you leave Ottawa International airport, the tower controller hands you over to the terminal controller. What would be an appropriate call to make to the terminal controller? "Ottawa Terminal,
1 this is Charlie, Golf, Uniform, Lima, Tango at 1,800 feet climbing to 5,500 feet."
2 Ottawa tower has handed us over to you. We're Golf, Uniform, Lima, Tango."
3 Golf, Uniform, Lima, Tango, passing 1,800 for 5,500 feet."
4 Golf, Uniform, Lima, Tango is departing Ottawa International to the south east. We're at 1,800 feet."

154 You are approaching a controlled airport and the tower controller answers your initial transmission as follows: "Foxtrot Papa Tango November — Runway Two Five — Wind One Eight Zero at One Zero — Altimeter Three Zero Zero Three — Report Five Miles North." From this, you know that
1 there is a low pressure system affecting the airport.
2 you will have a crosswinds from the right while on final approach.
3 your downwind magnetic heading will be approximately 070°.
4 the wind is blowing in a southerly direction.

155 Use the chart included at the back of this book to determine the ATF for Lake Simcoe aerodrome (close to the western shore of Lake Simcoe). It is
1 122.7 kHz.
2 122.7 MHz.
3 122.8 MHz.
4 972 MHz.

156 The name of Lake Simcoe aerodrome on the chart included with this book is enclosed in a dashed box. This dashed box means that
1 it does not have a hard-surface runway.
2 it is not available for all 12 months of the year: it is closed during the winter.
3 Canadian customs service is available at this aerodrome.
4 a pilot must obtain permission from the owner to land there (known as PPR).

157 The label for Lake Simcoe aerodrome on the chart included with this book includes the letter L in a box. This means that
1 runway lighting is available at the aerodrome, but is operated only by the UNICOM operator.
2 ARCAL lighting is available at the aerodrome.
3 the aerodrome is only available during limited hours.
4 there is a rotating beacon at the aerodrome.

158 A communication station that provides airport and vehicle advisory service, assists pilots in planning their flights by providing weather and other information and accepts and relays flight plans is called a
1 commet.
2 flight service station.
3 control tower.
4 flight information office.

159 You are flying VFR and ATC has instructed you to "maintain 3,500 ft and fly heading 170". After flying for some minutes, you realize that ahead and below you is solid cloud over which you will lose visual contact with the ground. You should
1 squawk 7700 on your transponder and wait for ATC to contact you.
2 alter course as necessary to remain VFR and advise ATC.
3 wait until you have lost contact with the ground and then ask ATC for assistance.
4 maintain heading and altitude to follow the instruction issued by ATC.

160 When calling the London Flight Service Station on the radio, you should start the transmission with
1 "London Radio, this is..."
2 "London Flight Service Station, this is..."
3 "London Centre, this is..."
4 "London Advisory, this is..."

161 A radio-equipped aeroplane has been cleared to land at a controlled airport. The pilot should acknowledge the clearance by
1 replying "Wilco".
2 clicking the microphone button.
3 replying "Roger".
4 transmitting the aeroplane's call sign.

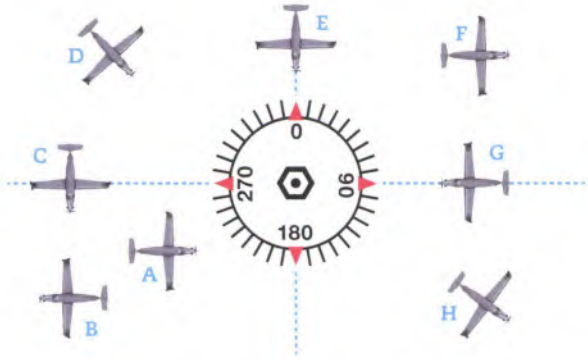
162 In addition to 121.5 MHz, pilots flying VFR in uncontrolled airspace should monitor
1 122.2 MHz.
2 123.2 MHz.
3 243.0 MHz
4 126.7 MHz.

163 The emergency VHF frequency is
1 121.5 MHz.
2 122.1 MHz.
3 118.3 MHz.
4 5280 MHz.

164 A single-engined aeroplane has an engine on fire over a remote area. What radiotelephony call-up signal would the pilot transmit three times?
1 Urgency.
2 Pan Pan.
3 S.O.S.
4 Mayday.

165 You are instructed to fly the 260° radial outbound from a VOR. You would set
1 260 on the OBS and expect a FROM reading with the needle centred.
2 260 on the OBS and expect a TO reading with the needle centred.
3 080 on the OBS and expect a FROM reading with the needle centred.
4 026 on the OBS and expect a TO reading with the needle centred.

166 You are flying inbound to a VOR and the bearing selector is set to 090. Flying a magnetic heading of 090°, you note that the CDI needle starts to move to the left. This indicates that the wind is from your
1 right and you should turn to 060° to intercept the radial.
2 left and you should turn to 120° to intercept the radial.
3 right and you should turn to 120° to intercept the radial.
4 left and you should turn to 060° to intercept the radial



Appx.8 **Aeroplanes around a VOR**

167 With the bearing selector set to 270, which VOR receivers in the aeroplanes in Appx.8 would display a TO reading on the TO/FROM indicator?
1 E, F, G and H.
2 F, G and H.
3 A, D and G.
4 G and B.

168 What is one of the indications you observe when you fly directly over a VOR/DME?
1 The needle will swing through 180°.
2 The DME reading will remain at 0.
3 The bearing selector will return to 0°.
4 The TO/FROM indication will indicate OFF and then display the other value.

169 Which of the following is not a VOR frequency?
1 115.2 MHz.
2 126.7 MHz.
3 117.5 MHz.
4 113.4 MHz.

170 If the aeroplane is equipped with both ___ , a pilot is able to derive both azimuth or directional information and distance information from a VORTAC transmitter.
1 a VOR receiver and an ADF.
2 a VOR receiver and a DME.
3 an ADF and a DME.
4 a VOR receiver and a marker beacon receiver.

171 Refer to the 1:500,000 chart included with this book. The navigational aid located at Midland (N44° 41' W79° 55') is
1 an NDB transmitting on 112.8 kHz.
2 a VOR/DME transmitting on 112.8 MHz.
3 a VORTAC transmitting on 122.8 MHz.
4 an ILS and transmitting on 112.8 MHz.

172 A DME displays the distance between the aeroplane and the ground transmitting station as
1 ground distance.
2 a DME arc.
3 slant distance.
4 altitude plus ground distance.

Appx.9 **ILS Display**

173 The ILS indicator in Appx.9 shows the aeroplane to be off the localizer beam and off the glide path. The pilot must fly ___ to intercept the glide path and correct to the___ ___ to intercept the localizer.
1 upwards; right
2 upwards; left
3 downwards; right
4 downwards; left

174 The glide path of an ILS
1 is normally set at an angle of 8°.
2 is normally set at an angle of 3°.
3 is normally also usable on the back course.
4 activates the localizer indicator of the course deviation indicator.

175 A GPS receiver in an aeroplane
1 cannot be jammed by ground-based devices.
2 determines position and altitude from signals transmitted by orbiting satellites.
3 does not provide position information above 80° north or below 80° south.
4 determines position from signals propagated by geostationary satellites and ground stations.

176 Which statement is not true regarding the GPS system?
1 Small devices can be bought that jam GPS signals within a 10 mile radius.
2 The GPS satellites transmit the time from an accurate clock source.
3 Signals from ground stations transmitted through satellites can improve the accuracy displayed by a GPS receiver in an aeroplane.
4 The GPS satellites are in geostationary orbit.

177 The Wide-Area Augmentation System (WAAS)
1 displays information for a pilot about suitably-equipped aeroplanes in the vicinity.
2 uses error signals from ground stations to allow a GPS receiver to calculate position more accurately.
3 receives the transponder signals from aeroplanes and retransmits this information through satellites.
4 consists of a number of ground stations broadcasting clock signals to allow a Loran receiver to determine its position.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

178 Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring (RAIM) is important in a GPS receiver in an aeroplane because it
1 allows the receiver to use not only the GPS, but also the GLONASS and Galileo satellites.
2 provides a map display visible to the pilot.
3 detects when a GPS satellite is transmitting incorrect information.
4 improves the accuracy of the position that the receiver displays.

179 You are homing directly to an NDB by keeping the ADF needle pointing directly ahead. You notice that your heading indicator is changing. This indicates that
1 you are receiving a false NDB signal caused by reflection off a nearby mountain range.
2 your heading indicator needs to be reset to the compass value.
3 you have passed over the NDB and are now heading away from it.
4 your aeroplane is subject to drift by a wind from the side.

180 You are flying a magnetic heading of 350° and your fixed-card ADF is reading 300°. The magnetic bearing to the NDB is
1 110°.
2 290°.
3 300°.
4 050°.

181 Your heading is 180° and your fixed-card ADF reading is 090°. If you turn to a magnetic heading of 150°, the ADF will read
1 240°.
2 060°.
3 030°.
4 120°.

182 A transponder transmitting on Mode C
1 reports the aeroplane's altitude to the ATC radar operator.
2 causes the target representing the aeroplane on ATC's radar screen to brighten.
3 identifies the aeroplane as being a VFR flight below 10,000 ft ASL.
4 allows the aeroplane's position to be picked up by aeroplanes with ADS-B (In) receivers.

183 For VFR flight at 8,500 ft ASL, unless you have been assigned a code by ATC, you should squawk
1 1400.
2 0600.
3 1200.
4 7700.

184 A pilot experiencing communication failure may alert ATC to the problem by selecting transponder code
1 4700.
2 1400.
3 7600.
4 7700.

185 To minimize the danger of static electricity starting a fire during refuelling, the aeroplane should be
1 bonded.
2 grounded.
3 fitted with static discharge wicks.
4 refuelled immediately after landing.

186 Which of the following statements is correct?
1 An aeroplane's gross weight is also called its "Actual Zero Fuel Weight" (AZFW).
2 The gross weight of an aeroplane changes during flight.
3 The maximum gross weight of an aeroplane is the maximum permitted weight, excluding fuel and oil.
4 An aeroplane can land and take off if loaded below its maximum gross weight.

187 If an aeroplane is improperly loaded and the aft Centre of Gravity limit is exceeded, it will be
1 difficult to put into a stall and spin.
2 difficult to get off the ground.
3 easy to stall and spin and recovery would be more difficult than under conditions of proper loading.
4 nose heavy.

188 Your Pilot's Operating Handbook specifies a basic empty weight of 1,640 lbs. and a maximum gross weight of 2,550 lbs. You are planning a flight with two friends who weigh 172 lbs. and 195 lbs. respectively. You weigh 179 lbs. You have three pieces of baggage weighing 30, 24 and 17 lbs. You have full fuel tanks giving you 48 U.S. Gallons of usable fuel. The take-off weight of the aeroplane would be
1 the same as the maximum gross weight.
2 56 lbs less than the maximum gross weight.
3 5 lbs less than the maximum gross weight.
4 slightly more than the maximum gross weight.

189 You are planning a trip with three friends. The front seat passenger weighs 200 lbs. You weigh 180 lbs. The back seat passengers weigh 145 lbs. and 125 lbs. respectively. You have baggage that weighs 100 lbs. Assume a basic empty weight of 1,507 lbs. for the aeroplane and a full fuel load of 41.5 U.S. gallons. Maximum gross weight for this aeroplane is 2,500 lbs. Use the three charts within the sub-section "Finding Balance by Graph Method" in the Chapter **Airmanship** to do the calculations for this problem and determine which of the following statements is accurate.
1 The total weight is equal to the maximum gross weight and the C.G. is within permissible limits.
2 The total weight is 25 lbs. less than the maximum gross weight but the C.G. is outside permissible limits.
3 The total weight is 25 lbs. less than the maximum gross weight and the C.G. is within permissible limits.
4 The total weight is 25 lbs. over the maximum gross weight and the C.G. is outside permissible limits.

190 You sit in your aircraft at an aerodrome and adjust the altimeter pressure setting to 29.92"Hg. The altimeter reads 3,000 ft ASL. The air temperature is 25°C. The density altitude of the aerodrome is approximately
1 1,370 ft below sea level.
2 4,828 ft ASL.
3 5,610 ft ASL.
4 1,172 ft ASL.

TAKE-OFF DISTSANCE

Flaps Up

T/O Distance (Feet) to clear 50 ft. obstacle at 80 mph (70 kts) Ground run 40% of distance shown.

	Outside Air Temperature			
	4°C	16°C	28°C	40°C
Pressure Altitude	**Distance**			
Sea Level	1590	1700	1800	1920
2000 Feet	1920	1950	2190	2340
4000 Feet	2290	2450	2610	2800
6000 Feet	2740	2940	3140	3380
7000 Feet	3050	3280	3510	3770

Landing and take-off correction: Reduce distances by approximately 10 percent for each 5 knots windspeed.

Appx.10 **Sample Take-Off Distance Table**

191 You are going to take off under the following conditions:
Airport — 5,000 feet above sea level.
Temperature — 28°C
Airspeed — 70 knots.
Altimeter setting — 29.92"Hg.
Airspeed — 70 knots.

Using the values in Appx.10, if you take off directly into a surface wind of 10 knots with your flaps up, your distance to clear a 50 foot obstacle will be approximately

1 2,876 feet.
2 3,130 feet.
3 2,610 feet.
4 2,300 feet.

192 In the example given in the previous question, your ground run will be approximately

1 1,150 feet.
2 1,044 feet.
3 1,380 feet.
4 920 feet.

193 If the surface wind is gusting, causing turbulence as you approach to land, it is important to

1 carry excess airspeed to assure positive control.
2 land as slowly as possible.
3 use full flaps.
4 keep directional control with the ailerons and not use any rudder control.

194 You have been cleared to land at a controlled airport in a gusty wind condition. You are concerned by the wind angle as indicated by the windsock at the approach end of the runway, which you feel now favours another runway. You should

1 use full flaps and approach at a reduced approach speed.
2 alter heading and land on another runway which is more into wind.
3 continue to land as you must obey the landing clearance.
4 overshoot and request an into-wind runway.

195 The wind is blowing at 90° to the runway. The aeroplane you are flying has a stalling speed of 50 knots. What is the guaranteed crosswind component that the aeroplane can handle? (See "Crosswinds" in Chapter **Airmanship**.)

1 10 knots.
2 15 knots.
3 20 knots.
4 5 knots.

196 "Daylight" in Canada, at any place where the sun rises and sets daily, is defined as that period of time

1 starting half an hour before sunrise and ending half an hour after sunset.
2 when the centre of the sun's disc is not more than 12° below the horizon.
3 starting one hour before sunrise and ending one hour after sunset.
4 between sunrise and sunset.

197 An aeroplane flying at night must display on its right (starboard) wing tip a

1 red light.
2 white light.
3 steady green light.
4 flashing green light

198 Which statement concerning wing tip vortices is false?

1 Vortices are caused directly by jet wash.
2 Lateral movement of vortices, even when there is no wind, may place a vortex over a parallel runway.
3 Vortices normally settle below and behind the aeroplane.
4 With a light crosswind, a vortex can remain stationary over the ground for some time.

199 You are a pilot of a light aeroplane on final approach to land following an airliner. You should plan your approach (other circumstances permitting) to remain

1 below the approach path of the large aeroplane and land just prior to its touchdown point.
2 above the approach path of the large aeroplane and land beyond its touchdown point.
3 on the upwind side of the large aeroplane's approach path and land on the upwind side of the runway.
4 on the normal approach path for your aeroplane but at higher speed than normal.

200 A helicopter in forward flight produces

1 turbulence ahead of the helicopter.
2 turbulence which remains at the same level as the helicopter.
3 rotary blade vortices which rise above the helicopter.
4 trailing vortices similar to wing tip vortices.

201 Wing tip vortices generated by a departing aeroplane are most severe

1 immediately following the application of take-off power.
2 during cruise climb configuration.
3 at lift-off.
4 before rotation.

202 You are approaching an aerodrome from the west to land straight-in on runway 09. There is an isolated thunderstorm a few miles east of the field. Given that you will land before reaching the thunderstorm, is it safe to land?

1 Yes, unless the thunderstorm is moving towards the aerodrome.
2 No, because the rising air at the core of the thunderstorm may cause structural damage to your aircraft.
3 No, because the gust front from the thunderstorm may cause severe windshear at the aerodrome.
4 Yes, as long as you do not approach within 2 statute miles of the thunderstorm.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

203 In an unpressurised aeroplane at high altitude, a pilot is susceptible to hypoxia. Hypoxia is
1 lack of sufficient oxygen in the body cells.
2 imbalance of oxygen and carbon dioxide in the body system.
3 spatial disorientation.
4 excess carbon monoxide in the haemoglobin.

204 To prevent hypoxia, a pilot should
1 open the windows and air vents on the aeroplane.
2 use oxygen above 5,000 feet ASL at night.
3 use oxygen above 5,000 feet ASL at all times.
4 breathe into a paper bag.

205 Decompression sickness
1 is caused when dissolved gases come out of solution and form bubbles in the body tissues.
2 is aggravated by smoking.
3 is caused by breathing ozone when flying at high altitudes.
4 causes severe equilibrium problems.

206 An alcoholic drink taken at 5,000 ft as compared to the same drink taken as sea level
1 has no appreciable difference in effect on the body.
2 has a lesser effect on the body.
3 increases the chance of Coriolis effect.
4 has a greater effect on the body.

207 Which of the following statements pertaining to the use of alcohol is true?
1 Blood alcohol concentration below 0.04% will not affect a pilot's judgement.
2 Coffee accelerates the body's ability to recover from the effects of alcohol.
3 The effects of alcohol reduce at higher altitudes.
4 Small amounts of alcohol significantly decrease a pilot's tolerance to hypoxia.

208 Which statement best describes fatigue?
1 A fatigued pilot recuperates more quickly at higher altitudes.
2 Fatigue is a physical, not a mental, condition.
3 Fatigue can be overcome by eating a sugar-rich meal immediately before a flight.
4 Fatigue slows reaction time and contributes to errors.

209 You have taken several alcoholic drinks. You may fly as a crew member
1 when your blood alcohol content (BAC) has dropped below 0.08%.
2 when all effects of the alcohol have worn off.
3 8 hours after the last drink.
4 when all effects of the alcohol have worn off, but not within 12 hours of taking the last drink.

210 A condition in which there is a lowering of the temperature of the body's core is called
1 hyperventilation.
2 Coriolis effect.
3 hypoglycemia.
4 hypothermia.

Practice Examination Answers

1	4
2	2
3	1
4	3
5	1
6	2
7	4
8	1
9	1
10	2
11	2
12	3
13	4
14	4
15	4
16	4
17	1
18	1
19	2
20	3
21	1
22	1
23	4
24	2
25	1
26	4
27	2
28	3
29	1
30	1
31	4
32	2
33	4
34	2
35	2
36	1
37	1
38	1
39	1
40	4
41	1
42	1

43	1
44	1
45	3
46	2
47	1
48	3
49	1
50	3
51	1
52	4
53	3
54	4
55	4
56	2
57	2
58	4
59	1
60	3
61	1
62	4
63	2
64	2
65	3
66	3
67	1
68	2
69	4
70	4
71	4
72	1
73	4
74	3
75	3
76	1
77	4
78	4
79	2
80	2
81	4
82	3
83	2
84	1

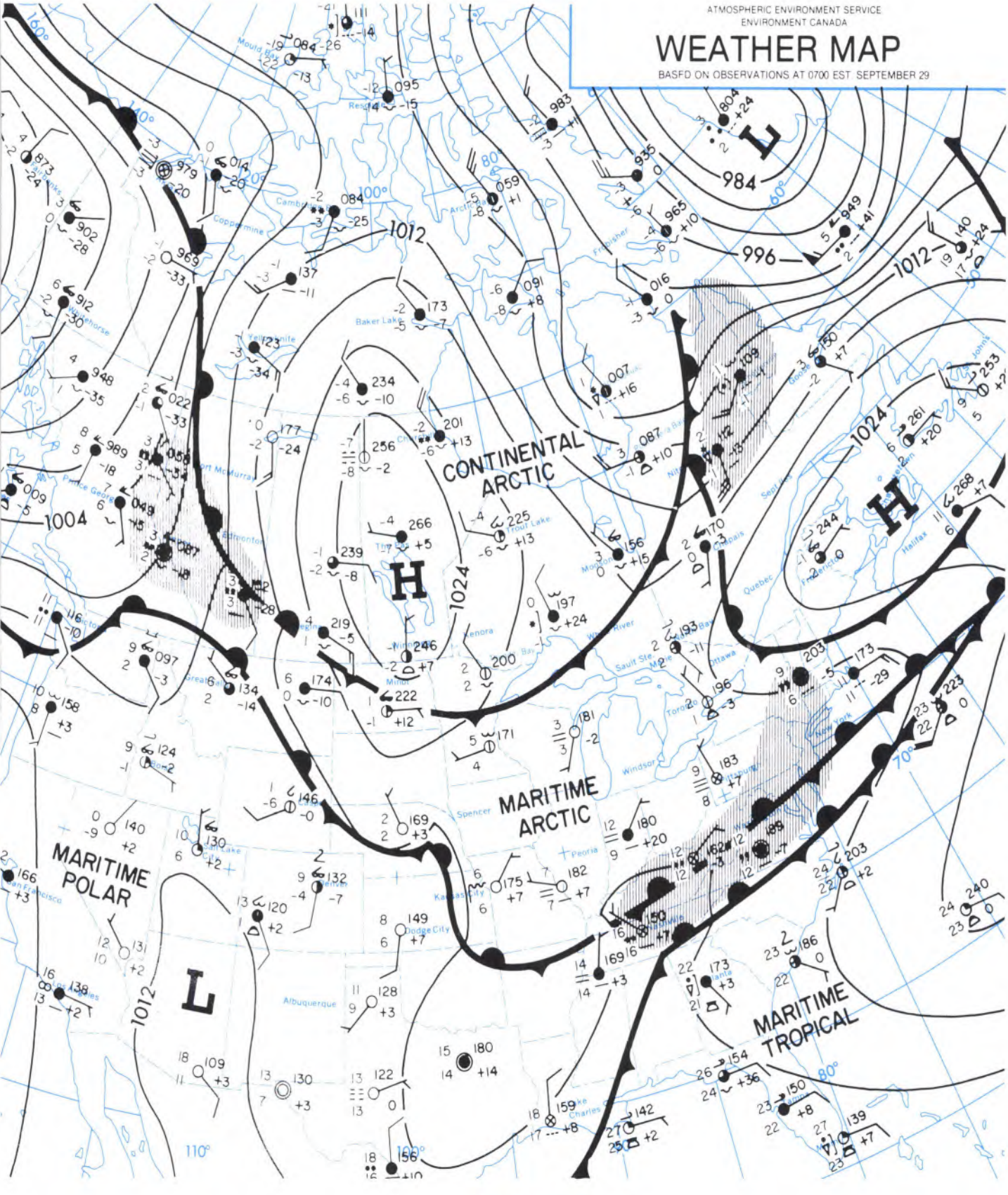
85	2
86	2
87	3
88	1
89	1
90	2
91	4
92	4
93	1
94	3
95	2
96	3
97	3
98	1
99	3
100	2
101	4
102	3
103	4
104	2
105	2
106	4
107	3
108	1
109	4
110	2
111	3
112	1
113	2
114	2
115	2
116	2
117	2
118	4
119	1
120	2
121	4
122	4
123	1
124	1
125	2
126	1

127	4
128	4
129	3
130	2
131	3
132	2
133	2
134	2
135	2
136	4
137	3
138	2
139	4
140	2
141	4
142	3
143	1
144	3
145	4
146	3
147	3
148	1
149	2
150	3
151	2
152	3
153	3
154	3
155	2
156	3
157	2
158	2
159	2
160	1
161	4
162	4
163	1
164	4
165	1
166	4
167	2
168	4

169	2
170	2
171	2
172	3
173	4
174	2
175	2
176	4
177	2
178	3
179	4
180	2
181	4
182	1
183	3
184	3
185	2
186	2
187	3
188	3
189	4
190	2
191	4
192	4
193	1
194	4
195	1
196	1
197	3
198	1
199	2
200	4
201	3
202	3
203	1
204	2
205	1
206	4
207	4
208	4
209	4
210	4

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Appendix B
Wx Chart

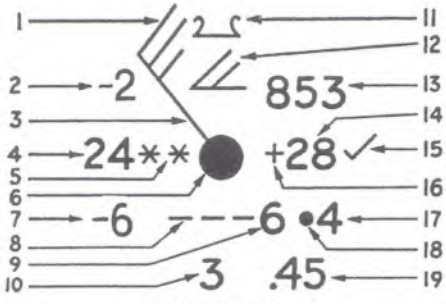


STATION MODEL

Weather stations are indicated on weather charts by a ball or circle, called the Station Circle. This circle is also used to indicate the cloudiness of the sky: black being completely overcast, white being clear, and the percentage of cloudiness between these two extremes being represented by a corresponding percentage of black and white.

The letter "M" in the Station Circle means that the weather report for the station is missing that day. The direction of the wind is indicated by a line radiating from the ball, and the force of the wind is indicated by "barbs" or "feathers."

Around the Station Circle, numbers and symbols are arranged to indicate all the various elements of the weather which have been observed at the station at chart-making time. The complete diagram is known as a Station Model.



Station Model

1. Wind Force (23 to 27 kts.). 2. Temperature in degrees Celsius. 3. Direction of Wind (320°). 4. Visibility in code (24 = 1½ miles). 5. Present State of Weather (Continuous light snow). 6. Cloudiness of Sky (completely overcast). 7. Dewpoint, in degrees Celsius. 8. Low Clouds (Fractocumulus). 9. Amount of Cloud, in code (6 = 7 or 8 tenths). 10. Height of Lower Cloud, in code (3 = 600 - 999 feet). 11. High Cloud (Cirrostratus)*. 12. Middle Cloud (Altostratus)*. 13. Barometric Pressure MSL (985.3 mb.) See "Sea Level Pressure". 14. Amount of Barometric Change in past 3 hrs., in 10ths of millibars (2.8 mb.). 15. Barometric Tendency in past 3 hrs. (Falling or steady, then rising — or, rising, then rising more quickly)*. 16. Plus or Minus indicates Pressure higher or lower than 3 hrs. ago. 17. Time precipitation began or ended, in code (4 = 3 to 4 hrs. ago)*. 18. Past Weather (Rain). 19. Precipitation in hundredths of inches (.45 inches).*

** Omitted when not observed or recorded.*

WEATHER MAP SYMBOLS

The various symbols and code figures which are grouped around the Station Model are shown in the following tables:

SKY COVER

0	○	Absolutely no clouds	5	◑	5/8
1	①	1/8 or less	6	◕	6/8
2	◔	2/8	7	●	7/8
3	◔	3/8	8	●	8/8 (overcast)
4	◑	4/8	9	⊗	sky obscured

Wind Force

0 Calm. 1. 1-2 kts. 2. 3-7 kts. 3. 8-12 kts. 4. 13-17 kts. 5. 18-22 kts. 6. 23-27 kts. 7. 28-32 kts. 8. 33-37 kts. 9. 38-42 kts. 10. 43-47 kts. 11. 48-52 kts. 12. 53-57 kts. 13. 58-62 kts. 14. 63-67 kts. 15. 68-72 kts. 16. 73-77 kts. 17. 103-107 kts.

FRONT SYMBOLS

On Printed Charts	On Weather Map
Cold Front	Continuous blue line
Cold Front (aloft)	Broken blue line
Warm Front	Continuous red line
Warm Front (aloft)	Broken red line
Stationary Front	Alternate red and blue line
Stationary Front (aloft)	Alternate red and blue line (broken)
Occluded Front	Continuous purple line
Occluded Front (aloft)	Broken purple line

Frontogenesis

Symbols

On Printed Charts	On Weather Map
Cold Front	Blue
Warm Front	Red
Stationary Front	Blue and Red

Frontolysis

Symbols

On Printed Charts	On Weather Map
Cold Front	Blue
Warm Front	Red
Occluded Front	Purple
Stationary Front	Blue and Red

Squall Line

Purple

Trowal/Trough

Symbols indicate the position of a trough of warm air aloft.

Purple

Ridge

Blue

Centre of Pressure Movements

Symbols indicate the position of high or low centres of pressure — generally at 12 hr. intervals

Air Masses

cA—Continental Arctic
mA—Marine Arctic
mP—Maritime Polar
mT—Maritime Tropical

PRECIPITATION & OBSTRUCTIONS TO VISION ON SURFACE WEATHER MAPS

Because surface weather maps provide a complete picture of actual surface conditions, they must, in addition to indicating pressure patterns, air masses and frontal systems, show areas and types of precipitation and obstructions to vision. These features, like those already described, are depicted symbolically. To fully interpret surface weather maps, you must be able to recognize and decode the symbols. Be sure to study them carefully and learn each symbol.

SYMBOL	DESCRIPTION OF SYMBOL	TRANSLATION
1.	green shading	continuous rain
2.	green hatching	intermittent rain
3.	green comma	drizzle
4.	green triangle with green period in centre	ice pellets
5.	green star	snow
6.	green curved line (used with comma or period	freezing rain (with period) freezing drizzle (with comma)
7.	green period over green inverted triangle	rain shower
8.	green star over green inverted triangle	snow shower
9.	green T with green lightning symbol	thunderstorm
10.	yellow shading	fog

SIGNIFICANT WEATHER PROGNOSTIC CHARTS — WEATHER SYMBOLS

Boundary of an Area of Significant Weather

Boundary of an Area of Clear Air Turbulence

Moderate Turbulence
Severe Turbulence
Moderate Icing
Severe Icing
shower (symbol for type placed above)

Thunderstorm
Severe Line Squal
Hail
Marked Mountain Waves
Snow
Hurricane

Freezing Rain
Tropical Revolving Storm
Dust or Sand Storm
Rain
Drizzle

Base and Tops in Hundreds of Feet by the convention illustrated: 80/60 Moderate Icing between 6000 and 8000 Feet

NOTE: 1. Light turbulence and light icing conditions are not indicated.
2. or CB assumes moderate or heavier turbulence and icing.

CLOUD

Cloud types are represented by the conventional abbreviation, cloud amount in oktas (eighths) and height of base and tops by the convention illustrated: 3CB 250/40 3/8 Cumulonimbus Base 4000 Feet Tops 25,000 Feet

ABBREVIATIONS

CAT - Clear Air Turbulence
FRQ - Frequent
GRADU - Gradually
LYR - Layers
TEMPO - Temporary
OCNL - Occasional
TURB - Turbulence

FRONTS AND OTHER CONVENTIONS

Warm Front
Cold Front
Occlusion
Quasistationary Front
Trough of Warm Air aloft
Convergence Line
1020 Mean Sea Level Isobars, pressure in Millibars
---50--- 0°C Isotherm height in Hundreds of Feet

H 1020 L x 996 Centres of Low and High Pressure respectively Pressure in Millibars

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Appendix C
Glossary

Absolute Altitude. Actual height above the earth's surface.

Active Runway. Any runway or runways currently being used for take-off or landing. When multiple runways are used, they are all considered active runways. When an aircraft is landing or taking off on an airport surface other than a runway, the direction of flight will determine the active runway.

Advisory Airspace. Class F airspace of defined dimensions within which an activity such as pilot training, soaring, etc. is carried out and of which non-participating pilots should be aware. Non-participating pilots may enter advisory airspace at their own discretion but extra vigilance is essential.

Advisory Service. Advice and information provided by a facility to assist pilots in the safe conduct of flight and aircraft movement.

Aerodrome. Any area of land or water (including the frozen surface) or other supporting surface used or designed, prepared, equipped or set apart for the arrival and departure, movement or servicing of aircraft. It includes any buildings, installations and equipment in connection therewith.

Aerodrome Elevation (or Field Elevation). Elevation of the highest point of the landing area.

Aerodrome Traffic. All traffic on the maneuvering area of an aerodrome and all traffic flying in, entering or leaving an aerodrome circuit.

Aerodrome Traffic Frequency (ATF). A VHF frequency designated for use of radio equipped aircraft operating on the surface or in the vicinity of certain specified uncontrolled airports.

Aerodrome Traffic Zone. Class G Airspace of defined dimensions extending upwards from the surface of the earth.

Aerodynamic Coefficients. Nondimensional coefficients for aerodynamic forces and moments (i.e. drag and lift coefficients).

Airborne Collision Avoidance System (ACAS). An aircraft system based on secondary surveillance radar (SSR) transponder signals which operates independently of ground-based equipment to provide advice to the pilot on potential conflicting aircraft that are equipped with SSR transponders. ACAS equipment designed and manufactured in the U.S. is called Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance System (TCAS).

Air Carrier. A person who operates a commercial air service.

Aircraft. Any machine capable of deriving support in the atmosphere from the reactions of the air.

Aircraft Engine. An engine used for propelling an aircraft. It includes turbochargers, appurtenances and accessories necessary for its functioning, but does not include propellers.

Air Defence Identification Zone. Airspace of defined dimensions within which the ready identification, location and control of aircraft is required.

Airframe. Includes fuselage, booms, nacelles, cowlings, fairings, airfoil surfaces and landing gear of an aircraft and their accessories and controls.

AIRMET (Airmen's Meteorological Advisory). A weather advisory issued to aircraft having limited capability. It advises of weather significant to the safety of the aircraft.

Aeroplane. Power driven heavier than air aircraft, deriving its lift in flight from aerodynamic reactions on surfaces that remain fixed under given conditions of flight.

Airport. An aerodrome in respect of which a certificate is in force.

Airport and Airways Surveillance Radar (AASR). A medium range radar designed for both airway and airport surveillance applications.

Airport Surface Detection Equipment. Radar equipment designed to detect all principal features of an airport including all aircraft and vehicle traffic.

Airport Surveillance Radar (ASR). Relatively short range radar intended for surveillance of airport and terminal areas.

Airport Traffic. All traffic on the maneuvering area of an airport and all aircraft flying in the vicinity of an airport

Airspeed Indicator. An instrument that indicates the speed that an aeroplane is travelling through the air.

Air Time. The period of time commencing when the aeroplane leaves the supporting surface and terminating when it touches the supporting surface at the next point of landing.

Air Traffic. All aircraft in flight and all aircraft operating on the maneuvering area of an aerodrome.

Air Traffic Control Clearance. Authorization by an air traffic control unit for an aircraft to proceed within controlled airspace under specified conditions.

Air Traffic Control Instruction. A directive issued by an air traffic control unit for traffic control purposes.

Air Traffic Control Service. A service provided for the purpose of preventing collisions between aircraft and, on the maneuvering area, between aircraft and obstructions and of expediting and maintaining an orderly flow of air traffic.

Air Traffic Control Unit. An area control centre established to provide air traffic control service to IFR flights and to VFR flights that are subject to control; a terminal control unit established to provide air traffic control service to IFR flights and to VFR flights that are subject to control when operating within a terminal control area; an airport control tower unit established to provide air traffic control service to airport traffic.

Airway. A control area or portion thereof established in the form of a corridor equipped with radio navigation aids.

Airworthy. In respect to an aeronautical product, in a fit and safe state for flight and in conformity with the applicable standards of airworthiness.

Alerting Service. Service provided by ATS units to notify appropriate organizations regarding aircraft in need of search and rescue aid.

Alternate Airport. An aerodrome specified in a flight plan to which a flight may proceed when landing at the intended destination becomes inadvisable.

Altimeter. An instrument that, by measuring the pressure of the atmosphere, displays altitude information.

Altimeter Setting. The barometric pressure reading used to adjust a pressure altimeter for variations in existing atmospheric pressure or to the standard altimeter setting (29.92" Hg).

Altitude. The height of a level, point or object measured in feet above ground level (AGL) or from mean sea level (MSL).

Altitude Reservation. Airspace of defined dimensions in controlled airspace reserved for the use of a specific agency during a specified time.

Angle of Attack Indicator. An instrument that indicates a continuous readout of the margin above the stall.

Approach/Arrival Control. An ATC service provided to expedite the flow of IFR flights inbound within a terminal control area.

Apron. That part of an aerodrome, other than the maneuvering area, intended to accommodate the loading and unloading of passengers and cargo; the refuelling, servicing, maintenance and parking of aircraft; the movement of aircraft, vehicles and pedestrians necessary for such purposes.

Area Control Centre (ACC). A unit located within a control area which provides supervision of IFR en route air traffic within the area. In the U.S., it is called an air route traffic control centre (ARTCC).

Area Navigation (RNAV). A navigation system that permits aircraft operation on any desired course within an area serviced by ground based navigation signals or within the capabilities of a self-contained airborne system.

Arrival Report. A report containing the aircraft registration, the aerodrome of departure, the time of arrival and the aerodrome of arrival.

Attitude Indicator. An instrument designed to provide an artificial horizon as a means of reference for judging attitude of an aeroplane.

Automated Data Interchange System. An aeronautical fixed telecommunications network to ensure the safety of air navigation and the regular, efficient and economical operation of air services.

Automatic Altitude Reporting. The function of a transponder which responds to Mode C interrogations by transmitting the aircraft's altitude in 100 foot increments.

Automatic Direction Finder (ADF). An aircraft radio navigation system which senses and indicates the direction to a L/MF directional radio beacon ground transmitter.

Automatic Terminal Information Service (ATIS). The continuous broadcast of recorded non-control information in selected terminal areas.

Backtrack . The taxiing of an aircraft on an active runway in a direction opposite to the landing or take-off direction.

Balanced Field Length. The field length where the distance to accelerate and stop is equal to the take-off distance of an aeroplane experiencing an engine failure at the critical engine failure recognition speed (V1).

Ballistic Recovery System. A parachute system designed to lower an entire aircraft with occupants to the ground in emergency situations.

Bearing. The horizontal direction to or from any point, usually measured clockwise from true north, magnetic north, or some other reference point, through 360 degrees.

Below Minimums. Weather conditions below the minimums prescribed by regulation.

Blind Spot (or Blind Zone). An area from which radio transmissions and /or radar echoes cannot be received.

Blind Transmission. A transmission from one station to another in circumstances where two-way communication cannot be established but where it is believed that the called station is able to receive the transmission.

Brake Horsepower (BHP). The power delivered at the propeller shaft of an aircraft engine.

Broadcast. A radio transmission that originates from an aircraft and that is not directed to any particular receiving station.

Calibrated Airspeed (CAS). Indicated airspeed corrected for position and instrument error.

Call Up. Initial voice contact between a facility and an aircraft using the identification of the unit being called and the unit initiating the call.

Canadian Domestic Airspace. All navigable airspace of Canada.

Canadian Minimum Navigation Performance Specifications. Specifications relative to the navigation performance capability of aircraft operating in a specified portion of the Canadian Domestic Airspace.

Canard. A control surface incorporating a horizontal stabilizer and elevator attached to the forward part of the aeroplane.

CAVOK. A term used to indicate no cloud below 5,000 feet, visibility 6 miles or more and no precipitation or thunderstorm activity or fog or drifting snow.

Ceiling. The lowest height at which a broken or overcast condition exists, or the vertical visibility when an obscured condition such as snow, smoke or fog exists.

Celestial Navigation. The determination of geographical position by reference to celestial bodies.

Centre. A unit located within a control area which provides supervision of IFR en route traffic within the area.

Certificate of Airworthiness. A conditional certificate of fitness for flight issued in respect of a particular aircraft.

Certificate of Registration. A certificate issued to the owner of an aircraft with respect to the registration and the registration markings for that aircraft.

Classification of Airspace. A, B, C, D, E, F and G.

Clear Air Turbulence. Turbulence encountered in air where no clouds are present.

Clearance Limit. The fix, point or location to which an aircraft is cleared when issued an air traffic control clearance.

Climb (or Climb-out). The portion of flight operation between take-off and the initial cruising altitude.

Climb, Best Angle of. The angle which will gain the most altitude in a given distance.

Climb, Best Rate of. The angle which will gain the most altitude in the least time.

Codes/Transponder Codes. The number assigned to a particular multiple pulse reply signal transmitted by a transponder.

Commercial Air Service. Any use of aircraft for hire or reward.

Community Aerodrome Radio Station (CARS). An air/ground radio station operated by the Territorial Government at airports in the northern areas of Canada.

Compass Rose. A circle graduated in degrees printed on some charts as a reference to true or magnetic direction.

Composite Flight Plan. A flight plan which specifies VFR operation for one portion of flight and IFR for another portion.

Compulsory Reporting Point. A reporting point over which an aircraft must report to ATC.

Contact Approach. An approach wherein an aircraft on an IFR flight plan, having an ATC authorization, operating clear of

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

cloud and with at least 1 mile flight visibility and a reasonable expectation of continuing to the destination airport in those conditions, may deviate from the instrument approach procedure and proceed to the destination airport by visual reference to the surface of the earth.

Contrails (also Vapour Trails). Line-shaped clouds produced by high-altitude aircraft resulting from water being exhausted in the form of ice crystals when combined with changes in air pressure and low ambient temperature.

Control Area. A controlled airspace extending upwards from a specified height above the surface of the earth in which air traffic control is provided.

Control Area Extension. Controlled airspace of defined dimensions within the low level airspace extending upwards from 2,200 feet above the surface of the earth.

Controlled Airport. An airport at which an ATC unit is provided.

Controlled Airspace. An airspace of defined dimensions within which ATC service is provided.

Control Tower. A unit established to provide air traffic control service to aerodrome traffic.

Control Zone. Controlled airspace of defined dimensions extending upwards from the surface of the earth up to 3,000 feet above airport evaluation unless otherwise specified.

Co-ordinates. Intersections of lines of reference usually expressed in degrees, minutes and seconds of latitude and longitude used to determine position.

Course. The intended direction of flight in the horizontal plane measured in degrees from north. (U.S. term. In Canada, called "track") Also, an omni bearing towards a VOR, VORTAC or TACAN navigational facility.

Course Deviation Indicator. A vertical needle incorporated into an OMNI/ILS indicator to show deviation from the selected VOR course or radial.

Critical Altitude. The maximum altitude at which it is possible to maintain a rated power or specified manifold pressure.

Critical Engine. The engine which, should it fail, will have the most adverse effect on the aircraft flight characteristics.

Critical Field Length. The balanced field length as it applies to a particular aeroplane. The critical field length is calculated for each individual aeroplane to meet the balanced field length criteria.

Crosswind. A wind not parallel to the runway or to the path of an aircraft.

Cruising Altitude/Level. An altitude or flight level, as shown by a constant altimeter indication, maintained during level flight.

Customs Notification Service (ADCUS). A service provided, by ATC units, for advance notification to Customs officials for transborder flights at specified Ports of Entry.

Danger Area. Class F Restricted Airspace of defined dimensions established over international waters.

Daylight. The period of time in any day when the centre of the sun's disc is less than 6 degrees below the horizon, and, in any place where the sun rises and sets daily, may be considered to be the period commencing one half hour before sunrise and ending one half hour after sunset.

Day VFR. A flight conducted in accordance with VFR during the hours of daylight.

Dead Reckoning. Navigation by use of predetermined vectors of wind and true airspeed, precalculated heading, groundspeed and estimated time of arrival.

Decision Height (DH). A specified height at which a missed approach must be initiated during a precision approach if the required visual reference to continue the approach to land has not been established.

Defence VFR (DVFR). Flight. A flight conducted in accordance with visual flight rules within an Air Defence Identification Zone.

Density Altitude. Pressure altitude corrected for temperature.

Departure Control. An ATC service for departing IFR, and under certain conditions, VFR aircraft.

Designated Intersection. A point on the surface of the earth over which two or more designated position lines intersect. The position lines may be magnetic bearings from NDBs, radials from VHF/UHF aids, centrelines of designated airways, air routes, localizers and DME distances.

Deviation. The angle through which the compass needle is deflected from magnetic north due to the influence of magnetic fields in the aeroplane.

Discrete Frequency. A separate radio frequency for use in direct pilot/controller communications in ATC which reduces frequency congestion by controlling the number of aircraft operating on the frequency at any one time.

Displaced Threshold. A threshold that is located at a point on the runway other than the designated beginning of the runway.

Distance Measuring Equipment (DME). Equipment used to measure in nautical miles the slant range distance of an aircraft from the DME navigation aid.

Electronic Flight Bag (EFB). An electronic information management device used by pilots to conduct flight management tasks more easily and efficiently and which eliminates the equivalent documents previously produced in paper form.

Emergency Locator Transmitter (ELT). A radio transmitter which operates from its own power source on 121.5 MHz, or on 121.5 MHz and 243.0 MHz, and is activated automatically by the G forces experienced in a crash landing.

Empennage. The tail section of an aeroplane (vertical stabilizer, or fin, horizontal stabilizer or tailplane, rudder, elevators, and all trimming and control devices).

Equivalent Airspeed (EAS). Calibrated airspeed corrected for compressibility factor.

Expected Approach Time. The time at which ATC expects that an arriving aircraft, following a delay, will leave the holding fix to complete its approach for a landing.

Expected Further Clearance Time. The time at which it is expected that further clearance will be issued to an aircraft.

Expedite. An expression used by ATC when prompt compliance is required to avoid the development of an imminent situation.

Fan Marker Beacon. A type of radio beacon, the emissions of which radiate in a vertical fan-shaped pattern.

Feathered Propeller. A propeller whose blades have been rotated so that the leading and trailing edges are nearly parallel with the aircraft flight path to minimize drag and engine rotation.

Final. Commonly used to mean an aircraft is on the final approach course or is aligned with a landing area.

Final Approach. That segment of an instrument approach between the final approach fix or point and the runway, airport or missed approach point, whichever is encountered last, wherein alignment and descent for landing are accomplished.

Final Approach Area. That area within which the final approach portion of an instrument approach procedure is carried out.

Fix. A geographical position determined by visual reference to the surface, or by reference to one or more radio navaids, or by celestial plotting, or by another navigational device.

Flag/Flag Alarm. A warning device incorporated in certain airborne navigation and flight instruments to indicate that the instrument is inoperative or that signal strength is below acceptable values.

Flaps Down Speed. The maximum speed at which the aeroplane may be flown with the flaps lowered.

Flameout. Unintended loss of combustion in turbine engines resulting in the loss of engine power.

Flight Information Centre (FIC). A centralized ATS unit that provides services pertinent to pre-flight and en route phases of flight

Flight Information Service En Route (FISE). The provision and receipt by a FIC of information pertinent to the en route phase of flight.

Flight Information Region (FIR). An airspace of defined dimensions extending upwards from the surface of the earth within which flight information service and alerting service is provided.

Flight Itinerary. Specified information relating to the intended flight of an aircraft, that is filed with either ATC or a responsible person.

Flight Level (FL). An altitude expressed in hundreds of feet indicated on an altimeter set to 29.92" Hg or 1013.2 hectopascals.

Flight Path. A line, course or track along which an aeroplane is flying or intended to be flown.

Flight Permit. A permit issued to an amateur built aircraft or to a private aircraft, that does not qualify for a certificate of airworthiness, for purposes of experiment, test, demonstration or other special flight.

Flight Plan/Notification. Specified information, relating to the intended flight of an aircraft, that is filed with ATC.

Flight Service Station (FSS). An aeronautical facility providing mobile and fixed communications, flight information, search and rescue alerting and weather and flight planning services to pilots and other users.

Flight Time. The time from the moment the aircraft first moves under its own power for the purpose of flight until the moment it comes to rest at the next point of landing.

Flight Visibility. The average range of visibility at any given time forward from the cockpit of an aircraft in flight.

Flight Watch. An en route flight advisory service provided by Flight Service Stations in the U.S. on frequency 122.0 MHz.

Fuel Remaining. The amount of fuel remaining on board until actual fuel exhaustion. It should be expressed in the approximate number of minutes the flight can continue with the fuel remaining. All reserve fuel should be included in the time stated, as should an allowance for established fuel gauge system error.

Full Throttle Altitude. The maximum altitude at which maximum engine power output is available. Above that altitude, the horsepower of the engine will be less than the rated horsepower.

General Aviation. That portion of civil aviation which encompasses all facets of aviation except scheduled air services and nonscheduled air transport operations for remuneration or hire and military aviation.

Glide Path/Glide Slope. A descent profile determined for vertical guidance during a final approach.

Glide Speed for Endurance. The airspeed that gives, with no power, minimum sink.

Glide Speed for Range. The airspeed that results in an angle of attack that gives the maximum lift/drag ratio.

Global Positioning System (GPS). A precise navigation system based on satellites orbiting the earth at very high altitude. Position in 3 dimensions is calculated by triangulation.

Grid Navigation. A navigation system devised for use in areas in close proximity to the north pole.

Gross Weight. The maximum permissible weight of the aeroplane.

Ground Control. The operating position in the control tower that provides clearances and instructions for the movement of airport traffic and the pertinent information to all traffic within the airport perimeter.

Groundspeed. The speed of an aircraft relative to the surface of the ground.

Ground Visibility. The visibility at an aerodrome as reported by an ATC unit, an FSS, a CARS, a Commet station or a ground based radio station operated by an air carrier.

Hang Glider. A motorless heavier-than-air aircraft deriving its lift from surfaces that remain fixed in flight, designed to carry not more than two persons and having a launch weight of 45 kg or less.

Heading. The direction in which the longitudinal axis of an aircraft is pointed, usually expressed in degrees from north (true, magnetic or compass).

Heading Indicator. An instrument designed to indicate the heading of an aeroplane.

Height Above Aerodrome (HAA). The height in feet of the minimum descent altitude above the published aerodrome elevation. HAA is published for all circling minima.

Height Above Touchdown Zone Elevation (HAT). The height in feet of the decision height or the minimum descent altitude above the touchdown zone elevation.

Hertz (Hz). The standard radio equivalent of frequency in cycles per second of an electromagnetic wave. Kilohertz (kHz) is a frequency of 1,000 cycles per second. Megahertz (MHz) is a frequency of one million cycles per second.

High Frequency (HF). The frequency band between 3 and 30 MHz.

High Level Air Route. In the High Level Airspace, a prescribed track between specified radio aids to navigation along which ATC service is not provided.

High Level Airspace. All airspace that is within the Canadian Domestic Airspace at or above 18,000 feet ASL.

High Level Airway. In the controlled high level airspace, a prescribed track between specified radio aids to navigation and designated "J", along which ATC service is provided.

Holding Fix/Holding Point. A specified location, identified by visual or other means in the vicinity of which the position

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

of an aircraft in flight is maintained in accordance with an ATC clearance.

Hold Short. Instructions to hold at least 200 feet from the edge of a runway while awaiting permission to cross or proceed onto that runway.

Homing. Flight toward a navaid, without correcting for wind, by adjusting the aircraft heading to maintain a relative bearing of zero degrees.

Horizontal Situation Indicator (HSI). A navigational instrument that combines the display of a heading indicator with the display of an omni indicator.

Identification Zone. An airspace of defined dimensions extending upwards from the surface of the earth within which certain rules apply for the security control of air traffic.

IFR Aircraft/Flight. An aircraft conducting flight in accordance with instrument flight rules.

IFR Conditions. Weather conditions below the minimum for flight under visual flight rules.

Indicated Airspeed (IAS). The uncorrected speed of the aircraft read from the airspeed indicator. It is the measurement of the difference between impact and static pressure.

Indicated Altitude. The reading on the altimeter when it is set to the current barometric pressure.

Inertial Navigation System (INS). A selfcontained long range navigation system which by means of computers, precision gyros and sensitive accelerometers provides guidance and steering information and accurately displays position, groundspeed and heading.

Initial Approach. That segment of an instrument approach between the initial approach fix or point and the intermediate fix or point wherein the aircraft departs the en route phase of the flight and maneuvers to enter the intermediate segment.

Inner Marker. A marker beacon used with an ILS, located between the middle marker and the threshold of the ILS runway.

Instrument Flight Rules (IFR). Rules governing the conduct of flight under instrument meteorological conditions.

Instrument Landing System (ILS). A precision instrument approach system consisting of a localizer, glide path, outer and middle markers and approach lights.

Instrument Meteorological Conditions (IMC). Meteorological conditions expressed in terms of visibility, distance from cloud and ceiling less than the minima specified for visual meteorological conditions.

Instrument Runway. A runway equipped with electronic and visual navigation aids for which a precision or nonprecision approach procedure has been approved.

Intermediate Approach. That segment of an instrument approach between the intermediate fix or point and the final approach fix or point wherein the aircraft configuration, speed and positioning adjustments are made in preparation for the final approach.

International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO). A specialized agency of the United Nations whose objective is to develop the principles and techniques of international air navigation and to foster planning and development of international civil air transport.

Intersection. (1) A point defined by any combination of courses, radials or bearings of two or more navigation aids. (2) The point where two runways cross or meet within their length.

Jet Stream. A migrating stream of high speed winds present at high altitude.

Joint En Route Terminal System (JETS). An automated ATC system that displays digitally on a radar console altitude information on aeroplanes with Mode C transponder capability.

Known Aircraft. Aircraft of whose movements ATS has been informed.

Local Area Augmentation System (LAAS). A concept which incorporates the use of ground-based transmitters to broadcast precision approach information via VHF radio datalink to aircraft.

Landing Gear Extended Speed. The maximum speed at which an aircraft can be safely flown with the landing gear extended.

Landing Gear Operating Speed. The maximum speed at which the landing gear can be safely extended or retracted.

Landing Run/Roll. The distance from the point of touchdown to the point where the aircraft can be brought to a stop or exit the runway.

Landing Sequence. The order in which aircraft are positioned for landing.

Launch Weight. The total weight of a hang glider or an ultralight aeroplane when it is ready for flight. It includes any equipment, instruments and the maximum quantity of fuel and oil that it is designed to carry but does not include the weight of any float equipment (to a maximum of 34 kg), the weight of the occupant or the weight of any parachute installation.

Load Factor. The ratio of a specified load to the total weight of the aircraft.

Local Traffic. Aircraft operating in the traffic circuit or within sight of the tower.

Localizer. The component of an ILS which provides course guidance to the runway.

Low Approach. An approach over an airport or runway following an instrument or VFR approach, including the go-around maneuver, where the pilot intentionally does not intend to land.

Low Frequency (LF). The frequency band between 30 and 300 kHz.

Low Level Air Route. In the low level airspace, a route extending upwards from the surface of the earth and within which ATC service is not provided.

Low Level Airspace. All airspace within the Canadian Domestic Airspace below 18,000 feet ASL.

Low Level Airway. In the low level airspace, a prescribed track between specified radio aids to navigation along which ATC service is provided. It extends upwards from 2,200 feet above the surface up to, but not including 18,000 feet ASL.

Mach Indicator. An instrument that provides a continuous indication of the ratio of airspeed to the local speed of sound.

Mach Number. The ratio of true airspeed to the speed of sound.

Mandatory Frequency (MF). A VHF frequency designated for use of radio equipped aircraft operating on the surface or in the vicinity of certain specified uncontrolled airports.

Maneuvering Area. That part of an aerodrome intended for the taking off and landing of aircraft and for the movement of aircraft associated with take-off and landing. It excludes the aprons.

Maneuvering Speed. The maximum speed at which the flight controls can be fully deflected without damage to the aeroplane structure.

Manifold Pressure. Absolute pressure measured at the appropriate point in the induction system, expressed in inches of mercury.

Manifold Pressure Gauge. An instrument that indicates in inches of mercury the pressure of the fuel/air mixture in the engine intake manifold.

Marker Beacon. An electronic navigation facility transmitting a 75 MHz vertical fan or bone-shaped radiation pattern.

Mayday. The international radio distress signal.

Mean Wind. Wind direction and speed as determined from a sample reading every second over the last two minutes.

MEDEVAC. A term used to request ATS priority handling for a medical evacuation flight based on a medical emergency in the transport of patients, organ donors, organs or other urgently needed life-saving medical material.

Medium Frequency (MF). The frequency band between 300 and 3,000 kHz.

Middle Marker. A marker beacon that defines a point along the glide path of an ILS, normally located at or near decision height.

Military Operations Area. An airspace of defined dimensions established to segregate certain military activities from IFR traffic and to identify for VFR traffic where these activities are conducted.

Military Terminal Control Area (MTCA). Controlled airspace of defined dimensions designed to serve arriving, departing and en route aircraft and within which special procedures and exemptions exist for military aircraft.

Minimum Crossing Altitude (MCA). The lowest altitude at certain fixes at which an aircraft must cross.

Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA). A specified height referenced to sea level for a nonprecision approach below which descent must not be made until the required visual reference to continue the approach to land has been established.

Minimum En Route Altitude (MEA). The published altitude above sea level between specified fixes on airways or air routes which assures acceptable navigational signal coverage and which meets the IFR obstruction clearance requirements.

Minimum Fuel. An aircraft's fuel supply has reached a state where, upon reaching the destination, it can accept little or no delay.

Minimum Holding Altitude. The lowest altitude prescribed for a holding pattern which assures navigational signal coverage, communications and meets obstacle clearance requirements.

Minimum Obstruction Clearance Altitude (MOCA). The altitude above sea level in effect between radio fixes on a VHF/UHF low level airway which meets the IFR obstruction clearance requirements for the route segment.

Minimum Reception Altitude (MRA). At a specific VHF/UHF intersection, the lowest altitude above sea level at which acceptable navigation signal coverage is received to determine the intersection.

Minimum Safe Altitude. Altitudes depicted on approach charts which provide at least 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance for use within a specified distance from the navigation facility upon which a procedure is predicated.

Minimum Sector Altitude. The lowest altitude which will provide a minimum clearance of 1,000 feet above all objects located in an area contained within a sector of a circle of 25 NM radius centred on a radio aid to navigation.

Minimum Sink Speed. The airspeed that gives, with no power, minimum sink.

Minimums/Minima. Weather condition requirements established for a particular operation or type of operation.

Missed Approach. A maneuver conducted by a pilot when an instrument approach cannot be completed to a landing.

Mode. The letter or number assigned to a specific pulse spacing of radio signals transmitted and received by ground interrogator and airborne transponders. Mode C is used for altitude reporting.

Mountainous Area/Region. An area of defined lateral dimensions above which special rules concerning minimum en route altitudes apply.

Movement Area. That part of an aerodrome intended for the surface movement of aircraft, including maneuvering areas and aprons.

Navigational Aid/Navaid. Any visual or electronic device airborne or on the surface which provides point to point guidance information or position data to aircraft in flight.

Never Exceed Speed. The maximum speed at which the aeroplane can be operated in smooth air.

Night. The period of time when the centre of the sun's disc is more than 6 degrees below the horizon or the period of time commencing one half hour after sunset and ending one half hour before sunrise, in any place where the sun rises and sets daily.

Night VFR. A flight conducted in accordance with VFR during hours of night.

Nondirectional Beacon (NDB). An L/MF radio beacon transmitting nondirectional signals whereby the pilot of an aircraft equipped with ADF can determine the bearing to or from the radio beacon and "home" on or track to or from the station.

Nonprecision Approach Procedure. A standard instrument approach procedure in which no electronic guide path is provided.

NORDO. Aircraft in which no radio equipment is installed.

Normal Operating Limit Speed. The maximum safe speed at which the aeroplane should be operated; the cruise speed for which it was designed.

Northern Domestic Airspace (NDA). All airspace within the Canadian Domestic Airspace that lies north of a line that, specifically defined by regulation, begins at the Alaska/Canada border on the Arctic Ocean and, more or less, extends southward through Yellowknife to Churchill and thence northeast to Frobisher and the Atlantic Ocean.

NOTAM. Notices to airmen are transmitted on the telecommunication networks and are also published in printed form and convey information of special import regarding the facilities in their respective areas.

Now Wind. Wind direction and speed as determined from a sample reading every second and averaged over the last five seconds.

Obstacle Clearance Altitude/Height. The lowest altitude above the elevation of the relevant runway threshold or above the aerodrome elevation used in establishing compliance with appropriate obstacle clearance criteria.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Omega Navigation System. A long range navigation system based on very low frequency navigation signals transmitted by 8 world wide stations.

Omni. The commonly used shortened name for the very high frequency omnidirectional navigation system.

Outer Marker. A marker beacon at or near the glide path intercept altitude of an ILS approach.

Overshoot. A phase of flight wherein a landing approach of an aircraft is not continued to touchdown.

Pilotage. Navigation by visual reference to landmarks.

Pan Pan. The international radio urgency signal.

Pilot-In-command. The pilot responsible for the operation and safety of an aircraft during flight time.

PIREP (Pilot Weather Report). A report of meteorological phenomena encountered by aircraft in flight.

Pitch Setting. The propeller blade setting as determined by the blade angle.

Position Report. A report over a known location as transmitted by an aircraft to ATC.

Positive Control. Control of all air traffic within designated airspace by air traffic control.

Precipitation. Any or all forms of water particles (rain, sleet, hail or snow) that fall from the atmosphere and reach the surface.

Precision Approach Radar (PAR). A high definition, short range radar approach aid. It provides altitude, azimuth and range information.

Preferred Runway. When there is no active runway, the preferred runway is considered to be the most suitable operational runway taking into account such factors as: the runway most nearly aligned with the wind; noise abatement or other restrictions which prohibit the use of certain runways; ground traffic and runway conditions.

Pressure Altitude. The reading on the altimeter when it is set to standard barometric pressure (29.92" Hg).

Prevailing Visibility. The maximum visibility value common to sectors comprising onehalf or more of the horizon circle.

Primary Frequency. The radio frequency assigned to an aircraft as a first choice for air-ground communication.

Primary Surveillance Radar (PSR). A radar system that computes target positions by determining the range and azimuth of transmitted and reflected radio frequency energy.

Procedure Turn. A maneuver in which a turn is made away from a designated track followed by a turn in the opposite direction, both turns being executed so as to permit the aircraft to intercept and proceed along the reciprocal of the designated track.

Propeller. A device for propelling an aeroplane by its action on the air. It comprises two or more blades on an engine driven shaft for the purpose of producing thrust approximately perpendicular to its plane of rotation.

RADAR (Radio Detection and Ranging). A device which, by measuring the time interval between transmission and reception of radio pulses and correlating the angular orientation of the radiated antenna beam, provides information on range, azimuth and/or elevation of objects in the path of the transmitted pulses.

Radar Altimeter/Radio Altimeter. Airborne equipment which makes use of the reflection of radio waves from the ground to determine the height of that aircraft above the ground.

Radial. A magnetic bearing extending from a VOR, VORTAC or TACAN navigation facility, except for facilities in the Northern Domestic Airspace which may be oriented on true north.

Radio. (1) A device used for communication. (2) Used to refer to a flight service station.

Radio Magnetic Indicator (RMI). A navigational instrument coupled with a gyro compass that indicates the direction to a selected navaid and indicates bearing with respect to the heading of the aircraft.

Rate-One-Turn. The turn rate of three degrees per second normally used by aircraft operating at less than 250 kt.

Rating. A statement that, as a part of a pilot licence, sets forth special conditions, privileges or limitations.

Readback. Procedure whereby the receiving station repeats a received message back to the transmitting station so as to obtain confirmation of correct reception.

Remote Communications Outlet (RCO). An unmanned air/ground communications station remotely controlled by an FSS or CARS.

Reporting Point. A geographical location in relation to which the position of an aircraft is reported.

Required Visual Reference. In respect of an aircraft on an approach to a runway, that section of the approach area of the runway or those visual aids that, when viewed by the pilot of the aircraft, enable the pilot to make an assessment of the aircraft position and the rate of change of position relative to the nominal flight path.

Responsible Person. An individual who has agreed with the person who intends to commence a flight that he/she will notify ATC of the non-arrival of the flight at the ETA specified in the flight itinerary.

Restricted Area. Class F Airspace of defined dimensions above the land areas or territorial waters within which the flight of aircraft is restricted in accordance with certain specified conditions.

RONLY. An aeroplane equipped with a radio receiver only.

Rotate. A word used to indicate one of several take-off sequences. The term stems from "rotate about the lateral axis of an aeroplane" and applies to a change of attitude during take-off.

Runway. A defined rectangular area, on a land aerodrome, prepared for the landing and take-off run of aircraft along its length.

Runway Heading. The magnetic or true direction that corresponds with the runway centreline.

Runway Visual Range (RVR). For a particular runway, the maximum distance in the direction of take-off or landing a pilot will be able to see the lights or other delineating markers along the runway from a specified point above the centreline that corresponds to the average eye level at the moment of touchdown.

Secondary Surveillance Radar (SSR). A radar system that requires complementary aircraft equipment (transponder).

Separation. In ATC, the spacing of aircraft to achieve their safe and orderly movement in flight and while landing and taking off.

SIGMET (Significant Meteorological Information). A weather advisory issued concerning weather significant to the safety of aircraft (e.g. tornadoes, thunderstorms, severe turbulence, icing, etc.)

Southern Domestic Airspace (SDA). All airspace within the Canadian Domestic Airspace that lies south of a line, that, specifically defined by regulation, begins at the Alaska/Canada border on the Arctic Ocean and, more or less, extends southward through Yellowknife to Churchill and thence northeast to Frobisher and the Atlantic Ocean.

Special VFR Conditions. Weather conditions in a control zone which are less than basic VFR and in which some aircraft are permitted flight under visual flight rules.

Specified Area. An area in the vicinity of an uncontrolled aerodrome for which a mandatory frequency or an aerodrome traffic frequency has been designated and within which MF or ATF procedures apply. Usually a circle with a 5 nautical mile radius extending up to 3,000 feet above aerodrome elevation.

Speed Brake. Moveable aerodynamic devices on aircraft that reduce airspeed.

Squawk. Activate specific mode, codes or function on an aircraft transponder.

Standard Atmosphere. A standard unit of atmospheric pressure, 29.92 inches of mercury at 15°C at sea level, as defined by ICAO.

Standard Rate Turn. A turn of three degrees per second.

Stop and Go. A procedure in which an aircraft lands, makes a complete stop on the runway and then commences a take-off from that point.

Stopover Flight Plan. A flight plan which in- cludes two or more separate en route flight segments with an intermediate stop at one or more airports.

Straight-In Approach. Entry into the traffic circuit by interception of the final approach leg without executing any other portion of the traffic circuit.

TACAN (Tactical Air Navigation). An ultrahigh frequency air navigation aid which provides suitably equipped aircraft a continuous indication of bearing and distance to a Tacan station.

Tachometer. An instrument that indicates the speed at which the engine crankshaft is turning.

Target. The indication shown on a radar display resulting from a primary radar return on a radar beacon reply.

Terminal Control Area (TCA). An airspace of defined dimensions extending upwards from a defined base AGL within which a terminal control unit provides ATC services designed to serve arriving, departing and en route aircraft.

Tetrahedron. A device located on the airport which is used as a landing/wind direction indicator.

Threshold. The beginning of that portion of the runway usable for landing.

Threshold Crossing Height (TCH). The height of the glide slope above the runway threshold.

Touch and Go. An operation by an aircraft that lands and departs on a runway without stopping or exiting the runway.

Touchdown. (1) The point at which an aircraft first makes contact with the landing surface. (2) In ILS, the point where the glide path intercepts the landing surface.

Touchdown Zone (TDZ). The first 3,000 feet of runway or the first third of the runway, whichever is less, from the threshold in the direction of landing.

Touchdown Zone Elevation (TDZE). The highest runway centreline elevation in the touchdown zone.

Tower. A terminal facility which through use of air/ground communications, visual signalling, provides ATC services to airborne aircraft operating in the vicinity of the airport and to aircraft operating on the movement area of the airport.

Track. The projection on the earth's surface of the path of an aircraft, the direction of which at any point is usually expressed in degrees from north (true, magnetic or grid).

Traffic Circuit/Pattern. The traffic flow that is prescribed for aircraft landing at, taxiing on or taking off from an airport.

Transcribed Weather Broadcast (TWB). A continuous recording of meteorological and aeronautical information that is broadcast on L/MF and/or VOR facilities.

Transponder. A receiver/transmitter which will generate a reply signal upon proper interrogation (SSR).

True Altitude. Exact height above mean sea level.

True Airspeed. Calibrated airspeed (or equivalent airspeed) corrected for air density error.

Turn and Slip Indicator/Turn Co-ordinator. An instrument designed to indicate the direction and rate of turn of an aircraft and the amount of slipping or skidding in the turn.

Ultrahigh Frequency. The frequency band between 300 and 3,000 MHz.

Ultralight Aircraft. A power driven heavier-than-air aircraft designed to carry not more than one person (in the case of a single place) and not more than two persons (in the case of a two place) with restrictions as to launch weight.

Uncontrolled Aerodrome/Airport. An aerodrome or airport without an air traffic control tower in operation.

Uncontrolled Airspace. Airspace within which ATC has neither the authority nor the responsibility to exercise control over air traffic.

UNICOM. Universal Communications. An air/ground communication facility operated by a private agency to provide private advisory station service at uncontrolled aerodromes and airports with no ATS air/ground communications.

Variation. The angle between the true meridian and the magnetic meridian.

Vector. A heading issued to an aircraft to provide navigational guidance by radar.

Vertical Speed Indicator. An instrument that indicates the rate, in feet per minute, at which an aeroplane is ascending or descending.

Very High Frequency (VHF). The frequency band between 30 and 300 MHz.

Very Low Frequency (VLF). The frequency band between 2 and 30 kHz.

VFR Aircraft/Flight. An aircraft conducting flight in accordance with visual flight rules.

VFR Over The Top. Authorization for flight above an en route cloud layer providing certain conditions exist.

Visibility. The ability, as determined by atmospheric conditions and expressed in units of distance, to see and identify prominent unlighted objects by day and prominent lighted objects by night.

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Visual Approach. An approach wherein an aircraft on an IFR flight plan, operating in VFR weather conditions under the control of an ATC facility and having an ATC authorization, may proceed to the airport of destination in VFR weather conditions.

Visual Flight Rules. Rules that govern the procedures for conducting flight under visual conditions.

Visual Meteorological Conditions (VMC). Meteorological conditions expressed in terms of visibility, distance from cloud and ceiling equal to or better than specified minima.

VOR (Very High Frequency Omnidirectional Range) Station. A ground based navigation aid transmitting VHF navigation signals 360° in azimuth oriented from magnetic north.

VORTAC (VOR/TACAN). A navigation aid providing VOR azimuth, TACAN azimuth and TACAN DME at one site.

Vortices/Wing Tip Vortices. Circular patterns of air created by the movement of an airfoil through the air when generating flight.

VOT (VOR Test Signal). A ground facility which emits a test signal to check VOR receiver accuracy.

Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS). A concept which incorporates the use of ground-based stations receiving GPS satellite signals to broadcast navigation information via GPS frequencies to receivers on board aircraft.

Wake Turbulence. The turbulence associated with the pair of counter-rotating vortices trailing from the wing tips of an aeroplane in flight.

Waypoint (RNAV). A predetermined geographical position used for route or progress reporting purposes that is defined as relative to a VORTAC station position.

Wind Direction Indicator. A device which visually indicates the wind direction for the purpose of determining the direction in which landings and take-offs should be made.

Wind Shear. A change, either vertically or horizontally, in wind speed and/or direction in a short distance resulting in a tearing or shearing effect.

Abbreviations

A or AST — Atlantic Standard Time
AAE — Above Aerodrome Elevation
AAS — Airport Advisory Service
AASR — Airport and Airways Surveillance Radar
AAU — Authorized Approach UNICOM
A/C — Aircraft
ACA — Arctic Control Area
ACAS — Airborne Collision Avoidance System
ACC — Area Control Centre
A/D — Aerodrome
AD — Airworthiness Directive
ADCUS — Advise Customs
ADF — Automatic Direction Finder
AFM — Pilot's Operating Handbook
ADI — Attitude Direction Indicator
ADIS — Automatic Data Interchange System
ADIZ — Air Defence Identification Zone
ADS — Automatic Dependent Surveillance
AFTN — Aeronautical Fixed Communication Network
AES — Atmospheric Environment Service
A/G — Air/Ground
AGL — Above Ground Level
AI — Attitude Indicator
AIC — Aeronautical Information Circular
AIM — Aeronautical Information Manual
AIREP — Meteorological Report
AIRMET — Airmen's Meteorological Advisory
Alt — Altitude
Altn — Alternate
AM — Amplitude Modulation
AME — Aircraft Maintenance Engineer
ANAL — Analyzed Charts (Weather)
ANO — Air Navigation Order
AOA — Angle of Attack
AOE — Airport of Entry
ARCAL — Aircraft Radio Control of Aerodrome Lighting
ARTCC — Air Route Traffic Control Center
ARU — Altitude Reservation Unit
ARV — Air Recreational Vehicle
ASDA — Accelerate Stop Distance Available
ASDE — Airport Surface Detection Equipment
ASL — Above Sea Level
ASR — Airport Surveillance Radar
ATC — Air Traffic Control
ATCRBS — ATC Radar Beacon System
ATF — Aerodrome Traffic Frequency
ATIS — Automatic Terminal Information Service

ATM — Air Traffic Management
ATS — Air Traffic Services
ATZ — Aerodrome Traffic Zone
AUW — All-up-weight
AWBS — Aviation Weather Briefing Service
AWIS — Aviation Weather Information Service
AWOS — Automated Weather Observation System
BBS — Bulletin Board Service
BC — Back Course
BDC — Bottom Dead Centre (Engine)
BFO — Beat Frequency Oscillator
BHP — Brake Horsepower
BM — Back Marker
BMEP — Brake Mean Effective Pressure
BRG — Bearing
C or CST — Central Standard Time
C — Celsius
CA — Conflict Alert (ACAS)
cA — Continental Arctic (Air Mass)
CAE — Control Area Extension
Can. — Canada
CAP — Canada Air Pilot
CAR — Canadian Aviation Regulations
CARS — Community Aerodrome Radio Station
CAS — Calibrated Airspeed
CASRP — Confidential Aviation Safety Reporting Program
CAT — Civil Aviation Tribunal
CAT — Clear Air Turbulence
CAT I — Category I
CAT II — Category II
CAVOK — Ceiling and Visibility OK
CAVU — Ceiling and Visibility Unlimited
CBP — Custom and Border Protection
CCI — Condition and Conformity Inspection
CDA — Canadian Domestic Airspace
CDI — Course Deviation Indicator
CFB — Canadian Forces Base
CFS — Canada Flight Supplement
CG — Centre of Gravity
CMNPS — Canadian Minimum Navigation Performance Specifications
CNS — Communication, Navigation and Surveillance
C of A — Certificate of Airworthiness
C of R — Certificate of Registration
COM — Communication
cP — Continental Polar (Air Mass)
CP — Centre of Pressure
CRT — Cathode Ray Tube
CTA — Control Area
CVFR — Controlled VFR
CW — Continuous Wave (Wireless Key)
CZ — Control Zone
DADS — Digital Altimeter Display System
DAH — Designated Airspace Handbook
DCD — Double Channel Duplex
DCS — Double Channel Simplex
dB — Decibel
DERP — Design Eye Reference Point
DEW — Distant Early Warning
DF — Direction Finding
DG — Directional Gyro
DGPS — Differential GPS
DH — Decision Height
DME — Distance Measuring Equipment
DND — Department of National Defence
DOC — Department of Communications
DOT — Department of Transport
D/R — Dead Reckoning
DRCO — Dial Up Remote Communication Outlet
DT — Daylight Time
DVFR — Defence Visual Flight Rules
E or EST — Eastern Standard Time
eAPIS — Electronic Advance Passenger Information System
EAS — Equivalent Airspeed
EAT — Expected Approach Time
EFB — Electronic Flight Bag
EFIS — Electronic Flight Instrument System
EGT — Exhaust Gas Temperature
EHF — Extremely High Frequency
ELT — Emergency Locator Transmitter
EPR — Engine Pressure Ratio
ETA — Estimated Time of Arrival
ETD — Expected Time of Departure
ETE — Expected Time En Route
F — Fahrenheit
FA — Aviation Area Forecast
FAA — Federal Aviation Administration (U.S.)
FAF — Final Approach Fix
FANS — Future Air Navigation System
FAR — Federal Air Regulations (U.S.)
FD — Upper Winds and Temperature Forecast
FIC — Flight Information Centre
FIR — Flight Information Region
FISE — Flight Information Service En Route
FL — Flight Level
FLT PLN — Flight Plan
FM — Frequency Modulation
FMS — Flight Management Systems
FP — Flight Plan
FPM — Feet Per Minute
FPD — Freezing Point Depressant
FSS — Flight Service Station
FT — Aerodrome Forecast
FVFR — VFR Flight Following Service
GA — General Aviation
GASA — Geographic Area Safe Altitude
GCA — Ground Controlled Approach
GDOP — Geometric Dilution of Precision (GPS)
GFA — Graphic Area Forecast

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

GHA — Greenwich Hour Angle
GMT — Greenwich Mean Time
GNSS — Global Navigation Satellite System
GP — Glide Path or Glide Slope
GPS — Global Positioning System
GS — Glide Slope
GPWS — Ground Proximity Warning System
GRI — Group Repetition Interval
HAA — Height Above Aerodrome
HAT — Height Above Touchdown Zone Elevation
HE — High Level Enroute Chart
HF — High Frequency
Hg. — Inches of Mercury
HI — Heading Indicator
HIAL — High Intensity Approach Lighting
HLA — High Level Airspace
HP — Horsepower
hPa — Hectopascal
HR — High Level Air Route
Hrs. — Hours
HSI — Horizontal Situation Indicator
Hz — Hertz
H24 — Continuous Operation
IAF — Initial Approach Fix
IAS — Indicated Airspeed
ICAO — International Civil Aviation Organization
IF — Intermediate Fix
IFR — Instrument Flight Rules
ILS — Instrument Landing System
IMC — Instrument Meteorological Conditions
INS — Inertial Navigation System
IRS — Inertial Reference System
ISA — International Standard Atmosphere
J or JET — High Level Airway
JBI — James Brake Indicator
JETS — Joint En Route Terminal System
kHz — Kilohertz
km — Kilometer
KMH — Kilometers Per Hour
kPa — Kilopascal
kts — knots
L — Litre
LAAS — Local Area Augmentation System
LAHSO — Land and Hold Short Operation
Lat. — Latitude
LDA — Landing Distance Available
LDA — Localizer Type Directional Aid
LHA — Local Hour Angle
LIAL — Low Intensity Approach Lighting
LLA — Low Level Airspace
L/MF — Low/Medium Frequency
LO — Low Level Enroute Chart
LOC — Localizer
Long. — Longitude
LSB — Lower Side Band
LVL — Level
LWIS — Limited Weather Information System
M — Mach Number
M or Mag — Magnetic
M or MST — Mountain Standard Time
mA — Maritime Arctic (Air Mass)
MAC — Mean Aerodynamic Chord
MANOT — Missing Aircraft Notice
MAP — Missed Approach Point
Mb — Millibar
MCA — Minimum Crossing Altitude
MDA — Minimum Descent Altitude
MEA — Minimum En Route Altitude
MEDEVAC — Medical Evacuation Flight
MEP — Mean Effective Pressure
Met. — Meteorology
METAR — Aviation Routine Weather Report
METO — Maximum Except Take-Off Power
MF — Mandatory Frequency
MF — Medium Frequency
MFD — Multifunction Display
MHA — Minimum Holding Altitude
MHz — Megahertz
Min. — Minutes
MLS — Microwave Landing System
MM — Middle Marker
MNPS — Minimum Navigation Performance Specifications
MOA — Military Operations Area
MOCA — Minimum Obstruction Clearance Altitude
mP — Maritime Polar (Air Mass)
MP — Manifold Pressure
Mph — Miles per Hour
MPS — Meters Per Second
MRA — Minimum Reception Altitude
MSA — Minimum Sector Altitude
MSL — Mean Sea Level
mT — Maritime Tropic (Air Mass)
MTCA — Military Terminal Control Area
MVFR — Marginal Visual Flight Rules
N. miles — Nautical Miles
Nav. — Navigation
Navaid — Navigation Aid
NAVSTAR — Global Positioning System
NCA — Northern Control Area
NDA — Northern Domestic Airspace
NDB — Non Directional Beacon
NM — Nautical Mile
NORDO — No Radio
NOTAM — Notices to Airmen
NT Error — Northerly Turning Error
NWS — North Warning System
OAT — Outside Air Temperature
OBS — Omni Bearing Selector
OCL — Obstacle Clearance Limit

OIDS — Operational Information Display System
OKTAS — Eighths
OM — Outer Marker
ONS — Omega Navigation System
O/R — On Request
O/T — On Time
P or PST — Pacific Standard Time
PAL — Peripheral Station
PAPI — Precision Approach Path Indicator
PAR — Precision Approach Radar
PAS — Private Advisory Station
PCZ — Positive Control Zone
PFD — Primary Flight Display
PIREP — Pilot Report
PNI — Pictorial Navigation Indicator
POH — Pilots Operating Handbook
PPS — Precise Position Service (GPS)
PROG — Prognostic Chart (Weather)
psi — Pounds Per Square Inch
PSID — Design Limited Maximum Allowable Pressure Differential
PSR — Primary Surveillance Radar
PSTAR — Student Pilot Permit Exam
QNH — Altimeter Setting
RA — Resolution Advisory (ACAS)
R/A — Radius of Action
RAAS — Remote Aerodrome Advisory Service
RADAR — Radio Detection and Ranging
RAIM — Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring (GPS)
RAMP — Radar Modernization Project
RAPCON — Radar Approach Control
RAREPS — Weather Radar Reports
RASO — Regional Aviation Safety Officer
RAT — Rectified Air Temperature
RCO — Remote Communications Outlet
RCR — Runway Condition Report
RDD-1 — Radar Digitized Display
RFSS — Remote Flight Service Station
RMI — Radio Magnetic Indicator
RNAV — Area Navigation
RONLY — Receiver Only
RPM — Rotations per Minute
RSC — Runway Surface Condition
RTF — Radiotelephony Frequencies
RVCS — Remote Vehicle Control Service
RVR — Runway Visual Range
Rwy — Runway
S.miles — Statute Miles
SA — Aviation Weather Report
SAR — Search and Rescue
SARSAT — Search and Rescue Satellite
SATCOM — Satellite Communications
SAWR — Supplemental Aviation Weather Report
SCA — Southern Control Area
SCS — Single Channel Simplex
SD — Radar Report
SDA — Southern Domestic Airspace
SHA — Sidereal Hour Angle
SID — Standard Instrument Departure
SIGMET — Significant Meteorological Information
SIRO — Simultaneous Intersecting Runway Operations
SM — Statute Mile
SPS — Standard Position Service (GPS)
SSB — Single Side Band (HF Radio)
SSR — Secondary Surveillance Radar
SST — Supersonic Transport
STAR — Standard Terminal Arrival Route
STOL — Short Take-Off and Landing
SVFR — Special VFR
T — True
TA — Traffic Alert (ACAS)
TACAN — Tactical Air Navigation
TAF — Aerodrome Forecast
TAS — True Airspeed
TAT — True Air Temperature
TB — Track Bar Indicator
TC — Transport Canada
TCA — Terminal Control Area
TCAS — Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance System (U.S.)
TCH — Threshold Crossing Height
TCU — Terminal Control Unit
TDC — Top Dead Centre (Engine)
TDZ — Touchdown Zone
TDZE — Touchdown Zone Elevation
T/O — Take-Off
TSB — Transportation Safety Board
TWB — Transcribed Weather Broadcast
Twr — Tower
UDF — UHF Direction Finder
UHF — Ultra High Frequency
UNICOM — Universal Communication, Private Advisory Station
US — United States
USB — Upper Side Band (HF Radio)
UTC — Co-ordinated Universal Time
V — Victor Airway (VOR)
VASIS — Visual Approach Slope Indicator System
VCS — Vehicle Control Service
VFR — Visual Flight Rules
VFR OTT — VFR Over The Top
VHF — Very High Frequency
VLF — Very Low Frequency
VMC — Visual Meteorological Conditions
VNC — VFR Navigation Chart
VOLMET — Inflight Meteorological Information
VOR — VHF Omni-directional Range
VORTAC — VOR/TACAN
VOT — VOR Receiver Test Facility

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

VSI — Vertical Speed Indicator
VTA — VFR Terminal Area Chart
VTOL — Vertical Take-off and Landing
VTPC — VFR Terminal Procedure Chart
WAAS — Wide Area Augmentation System
WAC — World Aeronautical Chart
WAS — Water Aerodrome Supplement
WL — Wavelength
WP — Waypoint
WS — Airmet Message
Wx — Weather
XC — Cross-country
Z or ZULU — Co-ordinated Universal Time
Z — VHF Station Location Marker

The V Speeds

V_A — design maneuvering speed.
V_B — design speed for maximum gust intensity.
V_C — design cruising speed.
V_D — design diving speed.
V_{DF} / M_{DF} — demonstrated flight diving speed.
V_F — design flap speed.
V_{FC} / M_{FC} — maximum speed for stability characteristics.
V_{FE} — maximum flap extended speed.
V_H — maximum speed in level flight with rated rpm and power.
V_{LE} — maximum landing gear extended speed.
V_{LLO} — landing light operation speed.
V_{LO} — maximum landing gear operating speed.
V_{LOF} — lift-off speed.
V_{MC} — minimum control speed. The minimum speed at which it is possible to control the aeroplane in the air, with the critical engine inoperative.
V_{MCA} — minimum control speed in the air in a take-off configuration.
V_{MCG} — minimum control speed on the ground. The minimum speed at which it is possible to suffer an engine failure on take-off and maintain control of the aeroplane.
V_{MCL} — minimum control speed in the air in an approach or landing configuration with an engine inoperative.
V_{MO} / M_{MO} — maximum operating speed. The maximum permitted speed for all operations.
V_{MU} — minimum unstick speed. The minimum speed at which the aeroplane can be lifted off the runway without displaying any hazardous flight characteristics.
V_{NE} — never exceed speed.
V_{NO} — maximum permitted speed for normal operations.
V_{PD} — maximum speed for airframe parachute deployment.
V_{RA} — rough air speed. The recommended speed for flight in turbulence.
V_R — rotation speed.
V_{REF} — landing reference speed.
V_S — stall speed. The minimum steady flight speed at which the air plane is controllable.
V_{SL} — stall speed obtained in a specified configuration. Power-off stall speed ("Clean").
V_{SO} — stall speed in landing configuration.
V_X — speed for best angle of climb.
V_Y — speed for best rate of climb.
V_1 — critical engine failure speed. Take-off decision speed. The speed above which the take-off is continued, and below which the take-off is abandoned in the event of an engine failure.
V_2 — take-off safety speed. Take-off and climb speed.
V_{2min} — minimum take-off safety speed.
V_3 — flap retraction speed.

Turbine Technology

Pilots of turbine aeroplanes should be familiar with the following terms:

N numbers refer to speeds of various components.

N_g — gas generator speed.
N_p — power turbine speed.
N_h — high rotor speed.
N — Compressor speed (rpm or percent) for a single compressor engine.
N_1 — Speed of the low pressure compressor of a dual compressor engine, or the speed of a single compressor engine equipped with a free turbine.
N_2 — Speed of the high pressure compressor of a dual compressor engine, or the free turbine speed of a single compressor engine equipped with a free turbine.
N_3 — Free turbine speed of a dual compressor engine equipped with a free turbine.
Beta Range — the ground range of operation of the propeller in a turboprop configuration. For ground operation, controllable thrust can be obtained by scheduling and co-ordinating fuel flow and blade angle according to the dictates of the power lever. The beta range refers to the angle of travel of the propeller from fine pitch up to the point of reverse propeller angle.

Conversion Tables

LITRES/IMPERIAL GALLONS

Litres	Imp. Gallons	Litres	Imp. Gallons	Litres	Imp. Gallons	Litres	Imp. Gallons
1	.22	31	6.82	61	13.42	91	20.02
2	.44	32	7.04	62	13.64	92	20.24
3	.66	33	7.26	63	13.86	93	20.46
4	.88	34	7.48	64	14.08	94	20.68
5	1.10	35	7.70	65	14.30	95	20.90
6	1.32	36	7.92	66	14.52	96	21.12
7	1.54	37	8.14	67	14.74	97	21.34
8	1.76	38	8.36	68	14.96	98	21.56
9	1.98	39	8.58	69	15.18	99	21.78
10	2.20	40	8.80	70	15.40	100	22.00
11	2.42	41	9.02	71	15.62	200	44.00
12	2.64	42	9.24	72	15.84	300	66.00
13	2.86	43	9.46	73	16.06	400	88.00
14	3.08	44	9.68	74	16.28	500	110.00
15	3.30	45	9.90	75	16.50	600	132.00
16	3.52	46	10.12	76	16.72	700	154.00
17	3.74	47	10.34	77	16.94	800	176.00
18	3.96	48	10.56	78	17.16	900	198.00
19	4.18	49	10.78	79	17.38	1000	220.00
20	4.40	50	11.00	80	17.60	2000	440.00
21	4.62	51	11.22	81	17.82	3000	660.00
22	4.84	52	11.44	82	18.04	4000	880.00
23	5.05	53	11.66	83	18.26	5000	1100.00
24	5.28	54	11.88	84	18.48	6000	1320.00
25	5.50	55	12.10	85	18.70	7000	1540.00
26	5.72	56	12.32	86	18.92	8000	1760.00
27	5.94	57	12.54	87	19.14	9000	1980.00
28	6.16	58	12.76	88	19.36	10000	2200.00
29	6.38	59	12.98	89	19.58		
30	6.60	60	13.20	90	19.80		

LITRES/U.S. GALLONS

Litres	US Gallons	Litres	US Gallons	Litres	US Gallons	Litres	US Gallons
1	.26	31	8.19	61	16.12	91	24.04
2	.53	32	8.45	62	16.38	92	24.31
3	.79	33	8.72	63	16.65	93	24.57
4	1.06	34	8.98	64	16.91	94	24.84
5	1.32	35	9.25	65	17.17	95	25.10
6	1.59	36	9.51	66	17.44	96	25.36
7	1.85	37	9.78	67	17.70	97	25.63
8	2.11	38	10.04	68	17.97	98	25.89
9	2.38	39	10.30	69	18.23	99	26.16
10	2.64	40	10.57	70	18.49	100	26.42
11	2.91	41	10.83	71	18.76	200	52.84
12	3.17	42	11.10	72	19.02	300	79.26
13	3.44	43	11.36	73	19.29	400	105.68
14	3.70	44	11.63	74	19.55	500	132.10
15	3.95	45	11.89	75	19.82	600	158.52
16	4.23	46	12.15	76	20.08	700	184.94
17	4.49	47	12.42	77	20.34	800	211.36
18	4.76	48	12.68	78	20.59	900	237.78
19	5.02	49	12.95	79	20.87	1000	264.0
20	5.28	50	13.21	80	21.14	2000	528.4
21	5.55	51	13.47	81	21.40	3000	792.6
22	5.81	52	13.74	82	21.66	4000	1056.8
23	6.08	53	14.00	83	21.93	5000	1321.0
24	6.34	54	14.27	84	22.19	6000	1585.2
25	6.61	55	14.53	85	22.46	7000	1848.4
26	6.87	56	14.80	86	22.72	8000	2113.6
27	7.13	57	15.06	87	22.99	9000	2377.8
28	7.40	58	15.32	88	23.23	10000	2642.0
29	7.66	59	15.59	89	23.51		
30	7.93	60	15.85	90	23.78		

TEMPERATURE

C°	F°	C°	F°	C°	F°	C°	F°
225	437	155	311	85	185	15	59
220	428	150	302	80	176	10	50
215	419	145	293	75	167	05	41
210	410	140	284	70	158	00	32
205	401	135	275	65	149	-05	23
200	392	130	266	60	140	-10	14
195	383	125	257	55	131	-15	-05
190	374	120	248	50	122	-20	-04
185	365	115	239	45	113	-25	-13
180	356	110	230	40	104	-30	-22
175	347	105	221	35	95	-35	-31
170	338	100	212	30	86	-40	-40
165	329	95	203	25	77	-45	-49
160	320	90	194	20	68	-50	-58

UNITS OF MEASUREMENT

DIMENSIONS	CANADA
Distance	Nautical Miles and Tenths
Altitudes, Heights, Elevations, and Dimensions on Aerodomes and short distances	Feet
Horizontal Speed	Knots
Vertical Speed	Feet Per Minute
Wind Speed	Knots
Wind Direction for Landing and Taking Off	Degrees Magnetic in Southern Domestic Airspace Degrees True in Northern Domestic Airspace
Wind Direction for all other purposes	Degrees True
Cloud Altitude and Height	Feet
Visibility	Statute Miles
Altimeter Setting	Inches of Mercury and Millibars
Temperature Surface Upper Air	Celsius
Weight	Pounds
Time	Hours and Minutes in the day of 24 Hours Beginning at Midnight Greenwich Mean Time

CONVERSION TABLE & FACTORS

Multiply	By	To Obtain
Celsius	9/5 then add 32	Fahrenheit
Centimetres	0.3937	Inches
Fahrenheit	subtract 32 then x 5/9	Celsius
Fathoms	6	Feet
Feet	0.30481	Metres
Gallons (Imp.)	1.20095	Gallons (U.S.)
	4.54597	Litres
Gallon (U.S.)	0.83268	Gallons (Imp.)
	3.785332	Litres
Inches of Hg.	33.86395	Millibars
	0.491174	Lbs.sq.inch
Inches	25.4	Millimetres
Kilograms	2.20462	Pounds
Kilometres	0.62137	Miles (Statute)
Kilometers	0.539553	(Nautical)
Lbs. sq. inch	2.036	Inches of Hg.
Litres	0.219975	Gallons (Imp)
Litres	0.264178	(U.S.)
Metres	3.28083	Feet
Miles (Nautical)	76/66	Miles (Statute)
	1.853249	Kilometers
Miles (Statute)	66/76	Miles (Nautical)
	1.609347	Kilometers
Millibars	0.029531	Inches of Hg.
	0.7501	Millimeters of Hg.
Millimeters	0.03937	Inches
Millimeters of Hg.	1.33315	Millibars
Pounds	0.453592	Kilograms

AVIATION GASOLINE

L	lbs	L	lbs	L	lbs
10	15.8	45	71.1	75	118.5
20	31.6	50	79.0	80	126.4
25	39.5	55	86.9	85	134.3
30	47.4	60	94.8	90	142.2
35	55.3	65	102.7	95	150.1
40	63.2	70	110.6	100	158.0

EQUIVALENTS

Minutes	Hours	Minutes	Hours	Minutes	Hours	Minutes	Hours
5	.1	20	.3	35	.6	50	.8
10	.2	25	.4	40	.7	55	.9
15	.3	30	.5	45	.8	60	1

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

Appendix D Index

A

AAIR ... 117
AAS ... 235
AAU ... 229
abbreviated PAPI ... 101
abbreviated VASI ... 101
aborting a take-off ... 296
absolute altitude ... 42
absolute humidity ... 151
absolute scale ... 152
Ac ... 139
ACA ... 109
ACAS ... 273
ACAS I ... 274
ACAS II ... 274
ACAS III ... 274
Acc ... 139
acceleration ... 14, 19, 202
acceleration pump ... 66
ADB ... 117
ADI ... 275
adiabatic process ... 152
ADIZ ... 132
adjustable pitch propellers ... 77
ADS ... 267, 273
ADS-B ... 273
ADS-B In ... 273
ADS-B Out ... 273
advanced ultralight aircraft ... 330
advection ... 151
advection cooling ... 152
advection fog ... 162
adverse yaw ... 28
aerodrome ... 97
aerodrome forecast ... 187
aerodrome standards and recommended practices ... 98
aerodynamic chord ... 5
aerodynamic response ... 276
aeronautical information manual ... 117, 359
aeroplane heading ... 256
agonic ... 198
aileron drag ... 23
A.I.M. Canada ... 117, 359
aircraft configuration and surface roughness ... 285
Aircraft movement information service ... 122
aircraft radio control of aerodrome lighting ... 99
aircraft surface temperature ... 285
Air Defence Identification Zones ... 132
airframe ... 3, 8, 9, 10
Airframe icing ... 181
air inlet duct ... 91
air mass ... 154
air mass thunderstorms ... 165
airport ... 97
airport advisory service ... 235
airport beacon ... 100
Airport control service ... 122
airport/facility directory ... 97
Airport of Entry ... 126
Airport Surface Detection Equipment ... 270
airspace classification structure ... 111
air time ... 16
air traffic control clearance ... 122
air traffic control instruction ... 122
air traffic management ... 267
air traffic rules and procedures ... 108
Alerting service ... 122, 235
alpha range ... 79
ALSF-2 ... 101
alternating current ... 73
alternating red and green light ... 106
alternator ... 75
altimeter error ... 146
altimeter setting ... 142
Altitude reservation service ... 122
altocumulus ... 139
altocumulus castellanus ... 139
altostratus ... 139
ambient temperature ... 285
AMIS ... 122
ammeter ... 76
anabatic wind ... 145
anaemic hypoxia ... 333, 334
Anaesthetics ... 341
angle ... 32
angle of attack ... 20
angle of incidence ... 25
angle of interception ... 255
anhedral ... 30
Annual Airworthiness Information Report (AAIR) ... 117
annual change ... 198
anti-authority ... 344
anti-drag wires ... 5
antihistamines ... 341
anti-servo tabs ... 12
anvil ... 9
AOE ... 126
APAPI ... 101
apparent precession ... 46
apparent solar day ... 196
approach ... 266
approach lighting systems ... 266
Approach Lighting Systems with Sequenced Flashers — CAT II ... 101
apron ... 97
ARCAL ... 99
arctic control area ... 109
area ... 53
Area control service ... 122
areas which are not built up ... 130
armature ... 73
arrival ... 106
arrival report ... 125
As ... 139
ASDE ... 270
aspect ratio ... 25
aspirin ... 341
asymmetric thrust ... 31
ATIS ... 105, 236
ATM ... 267
attention management ... 346
attenuation ... 168
attitude director indicator ... 275
attitude management ... 346
augmentor system ... 73
augmentor tubes ... 59
authorized approach UNICOM ... 229
autokinetic phenomenon ... 339
Automated Weather Observation System ... 176
automatic collision avoidance system ... 273
automatic dependent surveillance ... 267, 273
Automatic dependent surveillance-broadcast ... 273
automatic terminal information service ... 105, 236
automobile gasoline ... 64
autopilot ... 171
autorotation ... 37
auxiliary gears ... 55
AVASI ... 101
aviation document booklet ... 117
aviation weather briefing service ... 235
aviation weather report ... 176
Aviation Weather Web Site ... 190
avionics ... 232
AWBS ... 235
AWOS ... 176
AWWS ... 190
azimuth ... 197, 215
azimuth card ... 257
azimuth card knob ... 257

B

back course ... 265
backs ... 147
back suction system ... 66
baffles ... 59
balance datum line ... 288
balance moment ... 288
barbiturates ... 341
barometric pressure ... 165
barometric scale ... 40
barotrauma ... 335
base leg ... 102
basic empty weight ... 286
basic ultralight aircraft ... 330
battery ... 283
beam ... 269
bearing ... 197
beat frequency oscillator ... 259
bends ... 336
Bernoulli's Principle ... 20
best angle of climb ... 32
best angle of climb speed ... 299
best gliding speed ... 298
best rate of climb ... 32
beta range ... 79
BFO ... 259
BHP ... 53
black hole illusion ... 340
black-out ... 334
blinking runway lights ... 106
B.M.E.P. ... 54
boil-off ... 61
boost ... 58
bracketing ... 256
brake drum ... 9
brake horsepower ... 53
Brake Mean Effective Pressure ... 54
brake shoes ... 9
broadband ... 9
broadcast ... 103
bucket target system ... 93
Built-up Areas ... 130
bungees ... 11
burner section ... 91
bus bar ... 76
Buys Ballot's Law ... 144
by-pass ... 60

C

cA ... 155
cabin ... 305
cabin briefing ... 307
C/A code ... 268
calibrated airspeed ... 44
CAME ... 118
Canada Air Pilot ... 108
Canadian Aviation Regulations ... 117, 359
Canadian Border Services Agency ... 126
Canadian Runway Friction Index ... 183
Cannabis ... 341
CANPASS – Private Aircraft ... 126
cantilever ... 5
cap cloud ... 145
CARs ... 117, 359
CARS ... 236
CAS ... 44

CAT ... 181
Category I ... 266
Category II ... 266
Category III ... 266
CAT I ... 266
CAT II ... 266
CAT III ... 266
CAVOK ... 179
Cb ... 140
CBP ... 126
CBSA ... 126
Cc ... 139
CDI ... 254, 257
celsius scale ... 152
central nervous system disturbances ... 336
centre of gravity ... 21, 288
centre of gravity range ... 288
centre of pressure ... 20
centrifugal force ... 33
centripetal force ... 33
Cf ... 140
CFPS ... 124
C.G. ... 21, 288
change of latitude ... 196
change of longitude ... 196
check valve ... 66
Ch.Lat. ... 196
Ch.Long. ... 196
chokes ... 336
Ci ... 139
circadian ... 342
circuit breakers ... 76
circuit joining crosswind ... 102
cirrocumulus ... 139
cirrostratus ... 139
cirrus ... 139
Civil Aviation Medical Examiner ... 118
clamshell type doors ... 93
clean aircraft concept ... 36
Clear air turbulence ... 181
clearance limit ... 131
cleared to the circuit ... 105
closing angle ... 212
clouds ... 151
CNS ... 267
coalescence ... 161
coarse pitch ... 77
cockpit ... 306
coded ... 271
cold air mass ... 156
cold front ... 157
cold occlusion ... 158
cold soaking ... 285
cold stream reverser system ... 93
Collaborative Flight Planning System ... 124
combined effect ... 296
commercial pilot – aeroplane ... 359
communications, navigation and surveillance ... 267
compass bowl ... 199
compass card ... 199
compass deviation card ... 200
compass heading ... 215
compass locators ... 258
compass north ... 200, 215
compass rose ... 216
composites ... 4
compression ... 151
compression ratio ... 55
Compression struts ... 5
compressor ... 91
condensation ... 140, 150
condensation-coalescence process ... 171
condensation nuclei ... 150, 151
condenser ... 74
constant pressure ... 150
constant speed propeller ... 78
constant speed propellers ... 78
contact breaker ... 73
continental air ... 154
continental arctic ... 155
continental polar ... 155
contouring ... 168
contour lines ... 175
contours ... 145
controllable pitch propeller ... 78
controllable pitch propellers ... 78
controlled high level airspace ... 109
controlled low level airspace ... 109
convection ... 141, 151
convective instability ... 164
convergence ... 144
convergency ... 204
cooling ... 60
cooling fans ... 59
co-ordinated universal time ... 196
Coriolis effect ... 340
Coriolis force ... 143
corrective advisories ... 273
corridors ... 168
Corrosion Fatigue ... 14
counterclockwise ... 143
couple ... 24
course ... 257
course arrow ... 257
course deviation indicator ... 254
course line computer ... 267
courses ... 252
course selector ... 254
course set knob ... 257
cowl flaps ... 6, 59
cP ... 155
crab ... 212
cramps ... 336
crash activation sensor ... 276
creeps ... 336
crew management ... 346
CRFI ... 183
critical point ... 222
cruising altitude ... 41
Cs ... 139
Cu ... 140
cumulonimbus ... 140
cumulus ... 140, 164, 170
cumulus clouds ... 139
cumulus fractus ... 140
cycle ... 227
cylinders ... 53

D

danger area ... 113
Daylight saving time ... 197
dead load ... 14
Dead reckoning ... 195
decelerate ... 19
DECIDE ... 345
decision height ... 51
decompression sickness ... 336
decreased ... 31
degrees magnetic ... 147
degrees true ... 147
density ... 152
density altitude ... 42, 291, 296
deposition ... 140, 150
DERP ... 338
descriptor ... 178
design eye reference point ... 338
design limited maximum allowable pressure differential ... 12
destination signs ... 98
developed stage ... 37
deviation ... 200
deviation indicator ... 257
dew ... 151
dewpoint ... 150
DGPS ... 268
dial up remote communications outlet ... 236
differential ailerons ... 23
differential GPS ... 268
diffraction ... 230
diffuser ... 91
diffusion ... 316
dihedral ... 30
dip ... 198, 201
directional ... 29
direction sign ... 98
direct measurement ... 67
disc ... 8
disc brakes ... 8
displaced threshold ... 98
disposable load ... 286
dissipate ... 164
distress ... 320
distributor ... 73
diurnal variation ... 151
divergence ... 144
DME arc ... 264
domains ... 185
double channel duplex ... 230
double simplex ... 230
doughnuts ... 8
downburst ... 165, 166
downwash ... 20
downwind leg ... 102
drag ... 5, 21
drag coefficient ... 22
DRCO ... 236
drift ... 215
drift lines ... 216
drizzle ... 161
drooped leading edge flap ... 26
droop wing tip ... 25
dry adiabatic lapse rate ... 152
dry vertical card compass ... 202
during landing ... 301
during take-off ... 301
dynamic hydroplaning ... 313
dynamic stability ... 29
dynamic yaw ... 28
dysbarisms ... 335

E

eAPIS ... 126
EAS ... 44
echo ... 51, 269
economizer discharge needle ... 66
eddy motion ... 141
effective pitch ... 77
eight-stage axial flow compressor ... 91
electrical controllable pitch propeller ... 79
Electronic Advance Passenger Information System ... 126
emergencies ... 350
Emergency assistance service ... 235
emergency locator transmitter type A or AD ... 277
emergency locator transmitter type AP ... 277
emergency locator transmitter type F or AF ... 277
emergency locator transmitter type P ... 277
emergency locator transmitter type W or S ... 277
emergency security control of air traffic plan ... 132
empennage ... 305
empty field myopia ... 317, 337
engine ... 306
engine mount ... 6
En route control ... 271
enroute high altitude charts ... 206
enroute low altitude charts ... 206
Ephemeris errors ... 268
equator ... 195
equilibrium ... 19
Equivalent Airspeed ... 44
ESCAT ... 132

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

EWH ... 101
exhaust cone ... 91
exhaust duct ... 91
exhaust nozzle ... 91
exhaust temperature measurement systems ... 67
external transmission of Loads ... 5
extra equipment ... 286
eye-to-wheel height ... 101

F

FAA ... 117
FADEC ... 75
fahrenheit scale ... 152
false climb illusion ... 340
false ribs ... 4
FAR ... 117
feather ... 79
feathering lever ... 79
feathering switch ... 79
Federal Aviation Administration ... 117
Federal Aviation Regulations ... 117
Ferrel's Law ... 143
FIC ... 235
field inspection ... 322
field level pressure ... 41
filter ... 60
final approach ... 102
fine pitch ... 77
fins ... 59
firewall ... 6
FISE ... 235
fix ... 224
fixed shaft ... 92
flaps ... 26
flashing green light ... 106
flashing red light ... 106
flashing white light ... 106
flexible sealing rings ... 9
flight command indicator ... 275
flight control system ... 275
flight information centres ... 235
Flight Information Service ... 122
Flight information service en route ... 235
flight instructor rating – glider ... 331
flight instructor rating – ultralight aeroplane ... 330
flight levels ... 41, 127
Flight Management Systems ... 275
flight time ... 16
flight visibility ... 163
float ... 65
float buoyancy ... 287
float chamber ... 65
fluids ... 170
flutter ... 14
flying and landing wires ... 5
FMS ... 275
forced induction ... 58
forced landing ... 323
force feed ... 60
forecast charts ... 175
four-stroke cycle ... 55
FPD ... 285
free turbine ... 92
freezing drizzle ... 161, 170
freezing point depressant ... 285
freezing rain ... 161, 170
frequency ... 227
frequency allocation ... 229
frise ... 23
front ... 156, 159
frontal fog ... 163
frontal lift ... 154
frontal surface ... 156, 159
frontal thunderstorms ... 165
frontal turbulence ... 172
frontal wind shear ... 147
front course ... 265
frontogenesis ... 159
frontolysis ... 159
frost ... 151
fuel additives ... 64
fuel and oil ... 287
fuel injection pump ... 72
fuel nozzles ... 91
fuel reservoir ... 72
fuel tank ... 72, 305, 306
fuel vapourization ice ... 69
Full Authority Digital Engine Control ... 75
fuselage ... 305

G

gas generator ... 91
GDOP ... 268
gearbox ... 55
generator ... 75
generator warning light ... 76
geometric dilution of precision ... 268
geometric pitch ... 77
glassy water ... 327
glide path ... 265
glideslope indicator ... 258
global navigation satellite system ... 231
global positioning system ... 267
Global Reporting Format ... 183
GMT ... 196
GNSS ... 231
GNSS navigation ... 267
golf courses and race tracks ... 212
graticule ... 195
greenwich mean time ... 196
grey-out ... 334
GRF ... 183
grommet ... 216
gross weight ... 14
ground ... 73
ground fog ... 162
groundspeed ... 214
ground station error ... 253
ground visibility ... 163
g-switch ... 276
gust ... 146
gust front ... 148, 165
gust load ... 15
gyroscopic inertia ... 45

H

hail ... 165, 166
half-time shaft ... 55
head ... 256
heading ... 215, 255
heading bug ... 257
heading flag ... 258
headwind ... 296
heating devices ... 171
height of the layer ... 179
heights of land ... 212
HI ... 206
high level air routes ... 109
high level airways ... 109
high oil pressure ... 61
high tension ... 73
histotoxic hypoxia ... 334, 341
holding ... 99
holding position sign ... 99
homing assistance ... 236
horizontally opposed ... 54
horizontal situation indicator ... 275
horn shape ... 169
HSI ... 275
hydraulic piston ... 9
hydromatic constant speed propeller ... 78
hydrometeors ... 162
hypoglycaemia ... 342
hypoxia ... 333
hypoxic hypoxi ... 333

I

IAS ... 42, 44
ICAO standard atmosphere ... 138
ice fog ... 163
ice on wings ... 328
ice pellets ... 162
ice prisms ... 162
icing ... 146, 165
idle jet ... 66
IFR ... 122, 164
igniter plug ... 91
imaginary lines ... 197
IMC ... 163
impact ice ... 70
impulse coupling ... 74
impulses ... 53
impulsivity ... 345
incidence wires ... 5
incipient stage ... 37
increased ... 31
indicated airspeed ... 35, 42, 44, 214
indicated altitude ... 42
indicated altitudes above sea level ... 40
indicated horsepower ... 53
induced ... 73
inertia ... 202
Inertial navigation ... 195
inertial reference system ... 267
inflight ... 350
information circulars ... 117
inlet guide vanes ... 91
in-line ... 54
instability ... 29
instrument flight rules ... 122, 163
instrument meteorological conditions ... 163
intensity ... 178
intercept ... 255
intercepting the radial ... 255
internal transmission of loads ... 5
international date line ... 195
inversion ... 153
invulnerability ... 345
inward ... 21
IRS ... 267
Isaac Newton ... 19
isobars ... 142
isogonals ... 198
isogonic lines ... 198
isothermal layer ... 153
isotherms ... 152

J

jet lag ... 342
jet streams ... 148

K

katabatic wind ... 145
kHz ... 227
kilohertz ... 227
kilometer ... 203
kinaesthetic illusions ... 339
kinaesthetic sensors ... 339
knot ... 203
knowledge ... 344
Kreuger flap ... 26

L

LAAS ... 269

labyrinth organs ... 339
LAHSO ... 106
Lambert conformal conic projection ... 204
laminar flow airfoil ... 24, 25
laminar layer ... 23
land and hold short operation ... 106
landing area ... 322
landing compass ... 200
landing gear ... 305, 306
landing load factor ... 15
landing/master compass ... 200
lapse rate ... 152
latent heat of fusion ... 150
latent heat of vaporization ... 150
lateral ... 29
lateral axis ... 28
lateral control ... 5
latitude ... 151
Laws of Motion ... 19
layer ... 154
layers aloft ... 179
LDGPS ... 268
lean best power ... 67
lean mixture ... 63
leanness ... 66
leans the mixture ... 66
left/right needle ... 254
lens-shaped clouds ... 145
lenticular clouds ... 145
LF/MF airways ... 109
LIAL ... 100
lift ... 15, 19
lift coefficient ... 22
lift-drag ratio ... 22
lightning ... 165, 166
Limited Weather Information System ... 176
limit load factors ... 15
line-of-sight ... 230
lines ... 198
lithometeors ... 163
live load ... 14
LMT ... 196
LO ... 206
load factor ... 14
LOC ... 266
local area augmentation system ... 269
local area differential ... 268
localizer ... 265, 266
local mean time ... 196
location sign ... 98
longerons ... 3
longitudinal ... 29
longitudinal axis ... 28
loop antenna ... 259
loss of control ... 323
low engine speeds ... 75
Low Intensity Approach Lighting Systems ... 100
low level nocturnal jet stream ... 148
low level wind shear ... 148
low oil pressure ... 61
lubber line ... 199
LWIS ... 176

M

mA ... 155
MAC ... 5, 25, 288
mach number ... 38
macho ... 345
macroburst(s) ... 148, 165
magnetic bearing ... 252
magnetic declination ... 198
magnetic field ... 73
magnetic heading ... 215
magnetic meridian ... 215
magnetic variation ... 198
magneto switch ... 74
mainframe section ... 91
maintenance check ... 87
MALS ... 100
MALSF ... 100
MALSR ... 100
mandatory frequencies ... 235
mandatory instruction signs ... 99
maneuvering area ... 97
maneuvering speed ... 15, 299, 309
maritime air ... 154
maritime arctic ... 155
maritime polar ... 155
maritime tropical ... 155
marker beacons ... 265
mass ... 152
mass balance ... 28
master compass ... 200
master switch ... 75
mature ... 164
maximum endurance speed ... 298
maximum flap extended speed ... 27
maximum gross weight ... 287
maximum landing weight ... 287
maximum parachute deployment speed, VPD ... 324
maximum ramp weight ... 287
maximum range speed ... 298
maximum take-off weight ... 287
maximum weight — zero fuel ... 287
mayday ... 249
MEA ... 128
mean aerodynamic chord ... 25
Mean Effective Pressure ... 53
mean sea level ... 142
mean solar day ... 196
mean sun ... 196
mean time ... 196
mean wind ... 176
mechanical turbulence ... 141
Medium Intensity Approach Lighting Systems ... 100
Medium Intensity Approach Lighting Systems with Runway Alignment Indicator Lights ... 100
Medium Intensity Approach Lighting Systems with Sequenced Flashing Lights ... 100
Medium Intensity Approach Lighting System with Runway Alignment Indicator Lights (MALSR) ... 100
megahertz ... 227
M.E.P. ... 53
Mercator projection ... 204
mercury barometer ... 141
meridians of longitude ... 195
mesopause ... 138
METAR ... 176, 179
metering valve ... 72
MF ... 235
MHz ... 227
microbursts ... 165, 166
microsecond ... 269
mid-air collision ... 323
Mil ... 97
military ... 97
minimum enroute altitude ... 128
minimum obstruction clearance altitude ... 128
mixed icing ... 170
MOCA ... 128
moded ... 271
mode S ... 231
MOGAS ... 64
moment arm ... 288
moment index ... 288
monocoque ... 4
monospar ... 4
motion sickness remedies ... 341
mountain breeze ... 145
mountain wave ... 145, 331
movement area ... 97
mP ... 155
MSL ... 142
mT ... 155
multipath error ... 268
multispar ... 4
must ... 282

N

narrow field of vision ... 317
nautical mile ... 203
nav warning sign ... 258
NCA ... 109
needle ... 65
needle valve ... 66
negative ... 29
neutral ... 29
Night ... 120
nimbostratus ... 139
nimbus clouds ... 139
NORDO departures ... 106
normal axis ... 28
normal climb ... 32
normal needle sensing ... 255
north ... 73
northeast trade winds ... 144
northern control area ... 109
nose landing gear ... 306
NOTAM ... 359
now wind ... 176
nozzle ... 65
nozzle guide vanes ... 91
nozzles ... 72
Ns ... 139

O

OBS ... 254
obscuration ... 178
obstruction lights ... 100
occluded cold front ... 158
occluded front ... 158
occluded warm front ... 158
occlusion ... 158
octane rating ... 63
ODALS ... 100
OIDS ... 176
oil cooler ... 60
okta ... 179
omni bearing ... 256
omni bearing selector ... 254
Omnidirectional Approach Lighting Systems ... 100
ondensation level ... 140
one horsepower ... 53
opening angle ... 212
operationa empty weight ... 287
operational gross weight ... 287
operational guidance signs ... 98
operational information display system ... 176
operation in close proximity to other aircraft ... 285
operation on snowy, slushy or wet surfaces ... 285
optimum cruise speed ... 299
optional ... 286
orbit visually ... 131
Other Phenomena ... 178
otolith ... 340
outward ... 21
overlap ... 58
oxidation ... 13
oxidation stability ... 61

P

pan pan ... 250
PAPI ... 101
PAR ... 270
paraesthesia ... 336
parallels of latitude ... 195
PAS ... 229
passenger weights ... 287

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

payload ... 286
P code ... 268
performance number ... 63
permanent change ... 188
P factor ... 31
phase difference ... 251
physical condition ... 352
physical stressors ... 343
physiological stressors ... 343
pictorial navigation indicator ... 275
Pilotage ... 195
Pilot flying time ... 119
Pilot incapacitation ... 323
pilot licence – glider ... 331
Pilot monitoring/pilot-not-flying time ... 119
pilot permit – ultralight aeroplane ... 330
PIREPs ... 176
piston puck ... 9
pitch ... 28, 77
pitching ... 29
pitot ... 306
pitot pressure source ... 39
planform ... 25
plotting model ... 175
PNI ... 275
polar easterlies ... 144
polar front ... 156, 157
polar front theory ... 156
poor judgment chain ... 344
Position error ... 43
position line ... 224
position report ... 122
positive ... 29
positive pressure ... 45
pounds of static thrust ... 91
pour point depressants ... 61
power approach ... 33
power loading ... 14
PPS ... 268
practical pitch ... 77
precession ... 45
precipitation ... 160, 161
precipitation-induced fog ... 163
precipitation rate ... 285
precipitation static ... 166
precipitation type ... 285
precise position service ... 268
precision approach path indicator ... 101
Precision Approach Radar ... 270
pressure ... 53, 142, 160, 166
pressure altitude ... 41, 42
pressure bag ... 9
pressure gradient ... 143
pressure pump ... 60
pressure ratio ... 90, 92
pressure ratios ... 92
pressure relief valve ... 60
pressure tendency ... 143
pre-threshold areas ... 98
prevailing visibility ... 163
prevailing westerlies ... 144
preventative advisories ... 273
Primary Surveillance Radar ... 270
primary winding ... 73
prime meridian ... 195
private advisory station ... 229
private pilot — aeroplane ... 359
private pilot licence for foreign and military applicants, air regulation examination ... 359
private use certificate ... 97
projections ... 204
propeller ... 306
propeller slip ... 77
proximity qualifier ... 178
PSID ... 12
PSTAR ... 359
psychological stressors ... 343
pub ... 97
public use certificate ... 97
pucks ... 8
pushers ... 77
Pvt ... 97

Q

quadrantal error ... 262
qualifiers ... 178

R

RA ... 273
RAAS ... 235, 236
radar altimeter ... 51
radar assistance ... 234
radar digitized display ... 271
radar mile ... 269
radial ... 54
radials ... 251
radial spread ... 167
radiation cooling ... 152
radiation fog ... 162
radio ... 227
Radio navigation ... 195
radome ... 168
railway Lines ... 212
RAIM ... 268
rain ... 161, 166
ram jet ... 90
range ... 299
rate of catch ... 168
rate of climb ... 32
RCOs ... 235
reaction ... 90
receiver autonomous integrity monitoring ... 268
reciprocal ... 213
recompression ... 336
recovery ... 37
recreational pilot permit ... 359
red flare ... 106
red lights ... 337
red-out ... 334
red pyrotechnical light ... 106
reducing drugs ... 341
reference phase ... 251
refraction ... 316
Reg ... 97
registered ... 97
relative airflow ... 20
relative bearing ... 259
relative humidity ... 150, 285
relocated threshold ... 98
remote aerodrome advisory service ... 235
remote communication outlets ... 235
remote communications outlets ... 235
reporting point ... 122
required track ... 212
resignation ... 344
resolution advisories ... 273
resolution of forces ... 21
Restricted Operator Certificate – Aeronautical ... 117
restricted radio operator's licence ... 359
resultant ... 215
reverse homing error ... 261
reverse needle sensing ... 255
reverted-rubber hydroplaning ... 313
rhumb line ... 197, 205
rich best power ... 66
rich mixture ... 63
ridge lift ... 331
rigidity ... 14
rigidity in space ... 31
risk management ... 344, 346
roads ... 212
ROC-A ... 117
roll ... 28
rolling ... 29
rotating armature type magneto ... 73
rotor blades ... 91
rotor clouds ... 145
rough water ... 327
RSC ... 183
rubber discs ... 8
rudder ... 5
Runway Condition Code ... 183
runway exit sign ... 98
Runway surface condition ... 183
runway threshold ... 99
runway visual range ... 163
RVR ... 163
RWYCC ... 183

S

SA ... 268
S.A.E. Number ... 61
safe flight time limit ... 85
safety spark gap ... 74
sample examination for private pilot licence – aeroplane ... 360
SATCOM ... 231
satellite communications ... 231
Satellite navigation ... 195
saturated ... 150, 151
saturated adiabatic lapse rate ... 152
Saybolt universal viscosity ... 61
Sc ... 139
SCA ... 108
scavenging pump ... 60
seasonal variation ... 151
Secondary Surveillance Radar ... 271
security ... 250
selective availability ... 268
semi-monocoque ... 4
sense antenna ... 259
separation point ... 34
servo motors ... 276
servo tabs ... 12
shadowing ... 9
shock cords ... 8
shortest distance ... 197
shrouds ... 59
sideslip ... 28
significant weather prognostic (forecast) charts ... 175
Simplified Short Approach Lighting Systems ... 100
Simplified Short Approach Lighting Systems with Runway Alignment Indicator Lights ... 101
simultaneous intersecting runway operations ... 106
single channel simplex ... 230
single spring leaf cantilever ... 6
single strut ... 6, 7
SIRO ... 106
site effect error ... 253
situational awareness ... 344
skill ... 344
slant range ... 264
slant range visibility ... 163
slats ... 26
slots ... 26
snow ... 162
snow and ice crystals ... 170
Snow grains ... 162
snow pellet ... 162
soft hail ... 162
solar radiation ... 151
solenoid ... 75
solid state ignition ... 74
somatogravic illusion ... 340
southern control area ... 108
south pole ... 73
span loading ... 14
spars ... 4

special VFR 129
specified area 103
speed lines 216
speed of slowest descent 298
speed of sound 38
spin 323
spinning 37
splash 60
split axle 6, 7
SPS 268
squall 146
squall line 160
SSALR 101
SSALS 100
SSR 271
St 139
stability 29
stability characteristics 29
stable 153
stage 164
stagnant hypoxia 334
stall condition 34
standard air conditions 39
standard empty weight 286
standard position service 268
standard pressure region 41
Standard time 197
starter motor 75
static balance 29
static discharge wicks 232
static pressure source 39
static stability 29
static yaw 28
station indicator 258
station model 175
station pressure 142
stator vanes 91
statute mile 203
steady green light 106
steady red light 106
steam fog 163
steel 12
steep rain gradient 168
St. Elmo's Fire 166
stopways 98
storage battery 75
strain 14
strained 14
stratocumulus 139
stratopause 138
stratus 139, 170
stratus cloud 170
stratus clouds 139
stratus fractus 139
stress 14, 344
stress analysis 14
stressed skin 4
stress management 346
stringers 4
stroke 53
structural failure 323
struts 5
student pilot permit 359
Study and Reference Guide for Private Pilot and Commercial Pilot Licences 360
Study and Reference Guide for the PSTAR Examination 360
sublimation 150
subsidence 151, 152
suction method 23
Sulfonamides 341
sun 151
Sunrise 120
Sunset 120
supercharger 58
supercharging 58
supercooled 161
supercooled warm rain process 171
supercooled water droplets 140
supply pump 72
surface 296
surface attenuation 230
surface friction 144
surface obstructions 148
surface of discontinuity 156
surface prognostic charts 175
surface wind 159
survival 323
swinging the compass 200

T

TA 273
tail pipe 91
tailwind 296
take-off 322, 350
taking off 327
taking off 327
tappet clearance 59
target 269
target fixation 344
TAS 44
taxiing 327
taxiways 99
TB 254
TCAS 273
TCCA 118
TCu 140
temperature 159, 160
temperature inversions 148
temporary fluctuation 188
temporary remedy 64
temporary restricted areas 114
terminal area charts 206
Terminal control 271
Terminal Radar Service 122
Terminal Surveillance Radar 270
terrain effect error 253
terrestrial radiation 151
tetrahedron 99
theoretical pitch 77
thermal 331
threshold 98
throttle 72
throttle ice 69
throttle valve 65
thrust 76, 91
thrust reaction 90
thunder 165
thunderstorm cell 164
Time (Zulu) 196
TO/FROM indicator 254
too lean 65
too rich 65
topography 151
topsails 25
tornado 166
torque 31
towering cumulus 140
towns 212
TP 11919E 360
TP 12880 360
TP 12881 360
TP 13014 360
trace 269
track 215
track bar indicator 254
track error 212
track line computer 267
track made good 212, 215
tractors 76
traffic alert and collision avoidance system 273
traffic alerts 273
tranquillizers 341
transition point 23
transponder 271
Transport Canada Civil Aviation 118
transverse mercator projection 204, 205
triangle of velocities 215
tripod 6, 7
tropopause 137
trowal 158
true airspeed 44, 214
true altitude 41, 42
true heading 197, 215
true index 216
true meridian 215
TSR 270
tunnel vision 317
turbine nozzle 91
turbine wheel 91
turbocharger(s) 12, 57
turboprop 92
turboshaft 92
turbulence 146, 151, 160, 166, 327
turbulent layer 23
turnaround bay 98
turning moment 24, 202
type of approach 322

U

ultralight aeroplane pilot permit 359
ultraviolet flood lighting of fluorescent instrument marking 337
umulus clouds 170
unfamiliar area 327
UNICOM 229, 236
Universal communications 236
Unpopulated/Open Water Areas 130
unstable 153
unstable approach 311
unusable fuel 287
upper cold front 159
upper level prognostic charts 175
upper level wind and temperature prognostic charts 175
upper warm front 159
upper winds and temperature forecast 188
upslope fog 163
upwind side 102
Urgency 320
U.S. Custom and Border Protection 126
useful load 286
User Fee Airport 126
UTC 196

V

VA 15, 16
valley breeze 145
valsalva technique 335
valve 65
valve clearance 59
valve lag 58
valve lead 58
Valve overlap 58
variable phase 251
VASI 101
VASIS 101
VCS 235
VDF 236
vector 215
veers 147
vehicle control service 235
Venturi 65
vertical 28
vertical currents 146
vertigo 340
vestibular illusions 339
vestibular organs 339
VFE 27
VFR 122, 163

© Aviation Publishers Co. Limited www.aviationpublishers.com

VFR Terminal Area Charts 205
VHF data link 231
VHF/UHF airways 109
victor airways 109
virga 165
viscous hydroplaning 313
visibility 160, 161, 163
vision 339
visual approach slope indicator 101
Visual Approach Slope Indicator System 101
visual flight rules 122, 163
visual illusions 339
visual meteorological conditions 163
VMC 163
Volcanic ash 181
voltage regulator 75
voltmeter 76
VOR 109
VOR check points 254
vortex generators 24
Vx 32
Vy 32

W

WAAS 269
warm front 157
warm occlusion 158
wash-in 25
wash-out 25
water 212
water aerodrome supplement 97
wavelength 227
WCA 216
WDGPS 268
weather briefing 189
weather forecast 185
weather map 142
weather observing service 236
weather phenomena 178
Weather Radar 270
weather radar network 176
weight 15, 39, 296
wet and slushy snow 328
wheel landing 315
white lights 337
white-out 327
wide area augmentation system 269
wide area differential 268
wind 166, 214
wind cone 99
wind correction angle 216, 217
wind direction 327
Wind direction and velocity 285
wind shear 146, 147, 172
Wind shear PIREP 181
windshift 160
windsock 99
wind velocity and direction 322
wing 305, 306
wing bracing struts 5
winglets 22, 25
wing loading 14
wing root 5
wing tip plates 25
wing tip tanks 25
wing tip vortices 22
world aeronautical charts 205

Y

yaw 11, 28
yawing 29

Z

Z time 196
Zulu time 196

Also available from AVIATION PUBLISHERS

FROM THE GROUND UP WORKBOOK

The perfect companion to ***From the Ground Up***, the ***From the Ground Up Workbook*** accurately reflects its status as a significant value-added partner to its source reference namesake. Each chapter of this publication refers to a specific section within ***From the Ground Up*** and provides you with challenging questions, and an excellent means, to test your knowledge and consolidate your understanding of the material covered in ***From the Ground Up***. A long-standing and highly-used learning resource, the ***From the Ground Up Workbook*** is a popular staple in the Canadian ground school environment.

FLIGHT TEST NOTES

Written for all flight test prospects, ***Flight Test Notes*** takes readers step-by-step through the flight test exercises and questions that arise during every student's flight test. It includes detailed descriptions in all areas that examiners will want licence candidates to know and perform. Its content is explicit in advising what to expect in the flight examination. A first-rate and very thorough preparation source written to describe what's required both for the private flight test, as well as for the higher standards expected of commercial students during their flight test. Well-established in the Canadian flight training sphere, ***Flight Test Notes*** is heavily relied upon to help students master the flight test experience.

CANADIAN PRIVATE PILOT ANSWER GUIDE

Students benefit greatly from their use of this popular question and answer book. Intended for all individuals preparing to write their private pilot examination, the content of this publication provides an excellent means for students to study and review essential PPL subject matter. It contains hundreds of questions, all identical to those encountered in the exam itself. All questions contain thorough explanations that accompany the answers. Available as an on-line source as well, the ***Canadian Private Pilot Answer Guide*** is an outstanding way to prepare for your written test.

CANADIAN COMMERCIAL PILOT ANSWER GUIDE

This study guide caters to the higher standards required of students seeking their commercial pilot licence. It contains over 600 questions with their associated multiple-choice answers, all of which cover the broadest spectrum of critical material that is essential for all CPL students to know. Infused with up-to-date content, along with challenging and relevant questions supported by the author's thorough explanations to answers, readers can be assured that they are using not just an excellent exam preparatory resource but also an equally valuable learning asset. Also available on-line to purchasers, the ***Canadian Commercial Pilot Answer Guide*** is a steadfast tool for mastering preparations for Transport Canada's written examination.

CANADIAN INSTRUMENT PILOT ANSWER GUIDE

Written for IFR exam preparation, this title combines challenging questions with detailed explanations for all answers that make up its extensive and exclusive content. As an advanced study guide for students en route to professional careers, as well as for private aviators advancing themselves into the instrument flying realm, the ***Canadian Instrument Pilot Answer Guide*** offers a finely-honed representative sampling of all the fundamental subjects that need to be conclusively understood to properly prepare for the IFR exam. With 450 questions in total, its exceptional format ensures that the most thorough of means is available to readers as they study and review material that is indispensable to their mastery of instrument flying and to achieving IFR proficiency.

For more information, contact your flying school, your local pilot supply shop, or visit us on the web.

AVIATION PUBLISHERS

AVIATION PUBLISHERS CO. LIMITED
Box 1361, Station B, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada, K1P 5R4
aviationpublishers.com

Also available from AVIATION PUBLISHERS

Essential reading for the professional pilots of today, and for those of tomorrow.

Flying Beyond: The Canadian Commercial Pilot Textbook, 2nd Edition

A stepping-stone from our universally-read and highly-acclaimed textbook, ***From the Ground Up***, this authoritative commercial ground school textbook, ***Flying Beyond: The Canadian Commercial Pilot Textbook***, is the perfect educational segue into the higher standards required of students seeking a commercial pilot licence.

Authored by experienced and respected Canadian ground school instructor, Chris Hobbs, ***Flying Beyond*** takes readers further than what they merely need to know to pass their commercial written examination. While conscientiously fulfilling this latter requirement, the content of ***Flying Beyond*** is also written to take students forward on a career path as highly skilled, knowledgeable, and thoroughly educated professional aviators.

The topics in ***Flying Beyond*** are presented in the order given in Transport Canada's syllabus. Subjects include: Human Factors (Psychological and Physiological), Theory of Flight, Airframes and Engines, Aircraft Systems, Flight Instruments, Meteorology, Weather Reports and Forecasting, Pilot Navigation and Radio Navigation, Flight Operations, Air Law, and more.

Each chapter is enhanced with compelling anecdotes that serve as excellent "real-world" learning tools that augment reader perspective and understanding. Furthermore, examples abound throughout the book to further assist readers in their comprehension of subject matter. Finally, frequently placed "exam hints" emphasize upon students content to which they should pay special attention so as to be better prepared for their written commercial exam.

Whether seeking to acquire the basic knowledge necessary to earn a commercial licence, or setting out on a career path in aviation, ***Flying Beyond*** serves both needs comprehensively.

For students seeking more, ***Flying Beyond*** provides it: beyond what you learned for your private licence, and deeply into the broader knowledge base required to get your commercial licence.

Instrument Procedures Manual, 6th Edition

Our latest edition of this renowned instrument pilot textbook, the ***Instrument Procedures Manual, 6th Edition***, also known as the "***IPM***," is setting a new standard for thoroughness, scale and scope on the advanced subject of instrument flying.

For those studying to obtain their Instrument Flight Rules (IFR) rating, this updated ***IPM*** is world-class in its content. It is written to provide students, as well as experienced aviation professionals, with information on today's aircraft, satellite and ground-based instrument systems, departure, en route and approach procedures, and air traffic control regulations.

Nine chapters make up the bulk of this edition of this title. They include: Physiological Factors Related to IFR Flight, Instrumentation and Navigation Systems, Instrument Flight Techniques, Air Traffic Services, IFR Flight Procedures, and Rotor Wing. New content includes chapters on Pilot Performance, Automation and Technology, and International Procedures.

Readers will also find seven extensive Appendices in the new ***IPM***, as well as a very thorough Index. Every phase of flight, from pre-flight to landing, is discussed in terms of a safe and efficient IFR operation.

The author of the ***IPM***, David Holland, amassed over 19,000 hours of flight time during a flying career that spanned over 30 years. He was an Airbus A330 Captain, and an Airbus Check Captain at Air Canada. He was a Transport Canada Pilot Examiner, and a Transport Canada Inspector. He also served in the Canadian Armed Forces as a Captain and Instructor on C130 Hercules aircraft. Now retired from the airlines, he remains active and in demand as president of Aerosolutions through which he does consultancy work in advanced aviation training.

Long considered the authoritative textbook on instrument flying, the ***Instrument Procedures Manual*** is crucial, and essential reading for every serious pilot, be they student or experienced professional.

If you want to know everything, and more, about flying IFR, the ***Instrument Procedures Manual*** is vital to your studies and the indispensable textbook to have.

Ask your local flying school for details, visit your local pilot supply shop, or visit us on the web to obtain information about buying these titles.

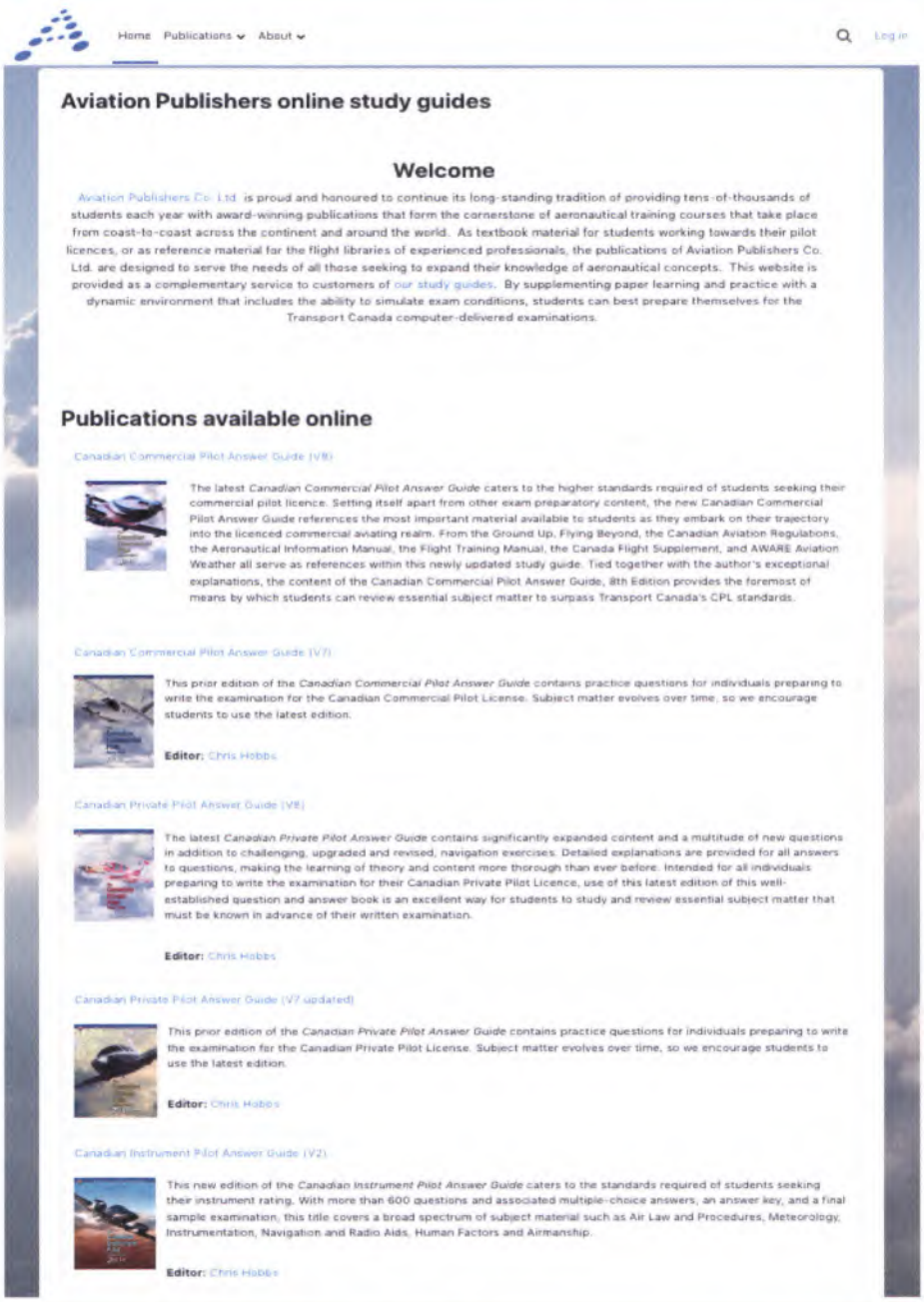
AVIATION PUBLISHERS

AVIATION PUBLISHERS CO. LIMITED
Box 1361, Station B, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada, K1P 5R4
www.aviationpublishers.com

AVPUBONLINE.COM

ENJOY THE BENEFITS OF A WEB-BASED PLATFORM FOR YOUR EXAM PREPARATION.

GET YOURSELF REGISTERED AND STARTED TODAY.


Home
Publications
About
Log in
Aviation Publishers online study guides
Welcome
Aviation Publishers Co. Ltd. is proud and honoured to continue its long-standing tradition of providing tens-of-thousands of students each year with award-winning publications that form the cornerstone of aeronautical training courses that take place from coast-to-coast across the continent and around the world. As textbook material for students working towards their pilot licences, or as reference material for the flight libraries of experienced professionals, the publications of Aviation Publishers Co. Ltd. are designed to serve the needs of all those seeking to expand their knowledge of aeronautical concepts. This website is provided as a complementary service to customers of our study guides. By supplementing paper learning and practice with a dynamic environment that includes the ability to simulate exam conditions, students can best prepare themselves for the Transport Canada computer-delivered examinations.
Publications available online
Canadian Commercial Pilot Answer Guide (V8)
The latest Canadian Commercial Pilot Answer Guide caters to the higher standards required of students seeking their commercial pilot licence. Setting itself apart from other exam preparatory content, the new Canadian Commercial Pilot Answer Guide references the most important material available to students as they embark on their trajectory into the licenced commercial aviating realm. From the Ground Up, Flying Beyond, the Canadian Aviation Regulations, the Aeronautical Information Manual, the Flight Training Manual, the Canada Flight Supplement, and AWARE Aviation Weather all serve as references within this newly updated study guide. Tied together with the author's exceptional explanations, the content of the Canadian Commercial Pilot Answer Guide, 8th Edition provides the foremost of means by which students can review essential subject matter to surpass Transport Canada's CPL standards.
Canadian Commercial Pilot Answer Guide (V7)
This prior edition of the Canadian Commercial Pilot Answer Guide contains practice questions for individuals preparing to write the examination for the Canadian Commercial Pilot License. Subject matter evolves over time, so we encourage students to use the latest edition.
Editor: Chris Hobbs
Canadian Private Pilot Answer Guide (V8)
The latest Canadian Private Pilot Answer Guide contains significantly expanded content and a multitude of new questions in addition to challenging, upgraded and revised, navigation exercises. Detailed explanations are provided for all answers to questions, making the learning of theory and content more thorough than ever before. Intended for all individuals preparing to write the examination for their Canadian Private Pilot Licence, use of this latest edition of this well-established question and answer book is an excellent way for students to study and review essential subject matter that must be known in advance of their written examination.
Editor: Chris Hobbs
Canadian Private Pilot Answer Guide (V7 updated)
This prior edition of the Canadian Private Pilot Answer Guide contains practice questions for individuals preparing to write the examination for the Canadian Private Pilot License. Subject matter evolves over time, so we encourage students to use the latest edition.
Editor: Chris Hobbs
Canadian Instrument Pilot Answer Guide (V2)
This new edition of the Canadian Instrument Pilot Answer Guide caters to the standards required of students seeking their instrument rating. With more than 600 questions and associated multiple-choice answers, an answer key, and a final sample examination, this title covers a broad spectrum of subject material such as Air Law and Procedures, Meteorology, Instrumentation, Navigation and Radio Aids, Human Factors and Airmanship.
Editor: Chris Hobbs

Purchasers of ***From the Ground Up*** may now access an electronic version of the title's Sample Examination by registering at avpubonline.com.

Use the unique Access Code below to gain access to the website where you can interface with the practice questions found in the Appendix of ***From the Ground Up***.

[redacted]

Tackle the same questions as you'll find within Aviation Publishers' study guides by working through the equivalent questions within the realm of a professionally developed web-based platform. You'll discover a crisp "look", tidy and intuitive interactivity, with immediate scoring of answers and feedback of overall results.

Struggling with an answer or concept? We invite you to communicate directly with our editors to help you consolidate your repertoire of aviation knowledge.

Register for the website using the Access Code provided on the introductory page of each *Answer Guide*. Get the most out of your studies by then working through the online versions of our PPL, CPL and IFR study guides.

The avpubonline.com website is provided as a complimentary tool to everyone who has purchased their respective copy of the ***Canadian Private Pilot Answer Guide***, the ***Canadian Commercial Pilot Answer Guide***, and the ***Canadian Instrument Pilot Answer Guide***.

Simulate actual exam conditions and prepare yourself in the most thorough way possible for Transport Canada's computer-delivered examinations.

AVIATION PUBLISHERS

"There is a smoothness and ease-of-reading that make this book a pleasure to read… Everyone out there should read the engine section, which is excellent and covers timing, carburetors, magnetos, solid-state ignitions and even a procedure for a backfire during starting… If you are going to buy a flight manual and only want to have one around the house, this is the one."

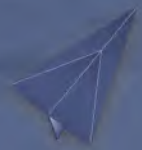
PrivatePilot Magazine

"[**From the Ground Up**] offers a wide range of advice and information, technique and instruction, on practically every aspect of flying – in a single volume… The level of detail and its easy-going writing are way ahead of some of the textbooks we're used to, especially when it comes to radio navigation and aircraft technical explanations… I found **From the Ground Up** so useful that it's becoming part of my deskside library."

Flyer Magazine

"[**From the Ground Up**] is one of the most comprehensive volumes on the subject of flying and learning to fly… It can be read right through, from cover to cover, or can be dipped into for information on specific subjects. Some aviation books cannot comfortably be used in this dual role."

International Flight Training News



Aviation Publishers Co. Ltd.

[redacted]